THE CATEGORICAL NOTEBOOK

A Categorical Compilation of the VARIOUS DOCTRINES OF THE BIBLE

All Categories in this Notebook are based on the Tape and Publication Ministry of R. B. Thieme, Jr. of Berachah Church, 5139 West Alabama, Houston, Texas, 77027. As a pastor-teacher, exercising my spiritual gift since 1951, I have studied the Berachah tapes and publications since 1958. Accuracy has been the rule, however, check out the tapes on each subject for best results. This notebook is not meant to take the place of the tapes!

More copies of this Categorical Notebook are available only from the following address:

Berean Fundamental Church
Ralph G. Braun, Pastor
P. O. Box 1135
Brookings, Oregon 97415

Compiled by Ralph G. Braun, ThM. This Categorical Notebook is based on Isaiah 28:10, 13; 2 Timothy 2:15.

Berean Fundamental Church P.O. Box 1135 Brookings, Oregon 97415
Ralph G. Braun, Pastor

November, December 1972 January, February, 1973

Dear Categorians:

Here is the Categorical Notebook which you requested, complete. We do not send it in three sections any longer. Also it has been expanded to 1,000 pages. Possibly your friends do not have the section 903 to 1000, please tell them to write requesting the latest addition and it will be sent.

Due to new boxing, there should be no damage in shipment. If you have any questions or find any pages missing, mention it to us; we'll answer as soon as possible.

I am a pastor-teacher and my priorities center around my local church and family. Therefore to expedite your order, when it is received, immediately the material is shipped. If your letter requires a personal answer, it will be answered; however there may be some delay due to my heavy schedule.

This notebook is not edited by me; it is a compilation of the points of doctrine given on the Berachah tapes. Please use the tapes as the authoritative source for the categories in the notebook.

Due to the tremendous demand for this notebook it is difficult to keep current on the categorization; so again, this notebook does not take the place of the tapes. Also other publications are available from here such as the Jeremiah compilation. Please write and ask for a publication list sheet. Then we can take care of your order in a systemative fashion.

Distribution of any material is done on a grace basis. That is, no set charge is placed on this notebook or other materials. Whatever is given is between you and the Lord. The contributions enable this ministry to continue, but regardless of whether you are in prosperity or poverty it is our desire that you get the material. It is not free material, it is grace material.

Please do not bother Berachah Church for materials available only from here (such as the Categorical Notebook or other publications on the pub. sheet).

Any checks or money orders should (for the Categorical Notebook or other publications) be made out to the Brookings Berean Church which I pastor.

Thank you and happy studying.

Categorically and absolutely,

Ralph G. Braun

Ralph G. Braun, Pastor-Teacher

RGB:jk

BIBLE CATEGORIES

Table of Contents

Category	Page
Abraham - Isaac	1
Abraham: Seed of Abraham (Romans 4:13)	4
Absolute and Relative Concepts in the Christian Life	5
Acceptability in Session	6
Adam	7
Adam and Eve: Expulsion from the Garden, Gen. 3:22-24	8
Adam and Eve: Investigation and Judgment: Gen. 3:11-20	9
Acts; Book of: "Whom He hath Chosen": Acts 1:2	10
Acts; Book of: Day of the 2nd Advent: Acts 2:20	11
Acts, Book of: Foreknowledge of God: Acts 2:23	12
Acts; Book of: Sin of Annanias and Sapphira: Acts 5:1	13
Acts; Book of: Paul's Sin: Acts 21:26	14
Acts, Book of: "Thou shalt not speak evil of the ruler"	15
Adoption: Romans 8:15, Gal. 4:1-5	17
Adoption in the Ancient World	18
Adultery: Doctrine of	19
Advents: Two Advents of Three Persons	20
"All Things Work Together for Good"	21
Ambassadorship	22
Angelic Conflict	23
Angelic Conflict: Bumping Demons off the Earth	24
Angelic Conflict: Major Passage Outline: Heb. 1-2	25
Anger: Greek Usage Of	30
Antioch: NT Christianity Center	31
Anti-Semitism	32
Apostates	33
Apostles to the Church: Roster	34
Apostleship	37
Appointment: Lev. 2:6	2
Ascension: Jesus Christ	3
Ark: 8 Characteristics, Gen. 6:14-16	4
Ark of the Covenant, Exodus 25:10-11	5
Athlete	6
Atonement: Unlimited	40
Attacks on the Humanity of Jesus Christ	41
Attorneyship of Jesus Christ	42
Authority in the Divine Institutions	43
Authority: Forms of	45
Authority in the Local Church: 1 Peter 5:5	46
Authority of Pastor: Destruction of: 2 Cor. 10:8-9	47
Balaam: Doctrine of	48
Balaam: Reasons He is a Believer	49
Baptisms, Seven (Four Real, Three Ritual)	50
Baptism, Believer's Water: Immersion	51
Baptism of the Cup (The Cross)	53
Baptism of Fire	54
Baptism of the Holy Spirit	55

Category	Page
Baptism of Jesus	56
Baptizing Ministry of John the Baptist	57
Baptism	58
Barrier #1	59
Barrier #2	60
Barrier: Reconciliation	61
Beatitudes	62
Believers: Accusation Against	63
Believer: "He (believer) Cannot Sin"	64
Believer: Free Individual	65
Believer: What Constitutes a Great Man	66
Believer: Inner Struggle	66
Believer: Legalistic (Weak) Romans 14	66
Believer: The Ordinary Life	67
Believer: Six Enemies of the Ordinary Believer	68
Believer: Strong Believer's Responsibility to Weaker	69
Believers: Differences Among	70
Believer: Proverbs 26, Weak Believer	70
Believer: Difference between Believer and Unbeliever	71
Belie r: Unity of	71
Believer: Doctrine of Separation	72
Beloved	73
Bible: Knowledge, Imparting to the Believer	74
Bible: Word of God, Hebrews 4:12	75
Birth: Physical	75
Blessing	76
Blood of Christ	77
Body; Human	79
Body, Physical	80
Bones of Joseph (Bible), Gen. 50:22-26	81
Book of Life, Book of Works	82
Book of Life	83
Bread: Doctrine of: Matt. 4:4	85
Capital Punishment	86
Carnality	87
Canon of Scripture	
Celibacy	8
Christian Way of Life Production	90
Christian Way of Life: Purpose	91
Christian Way of Life: Techniques in Christian Life	93
Christian Way of Life: Vocabulary	94
Christology (Doctrine of Christ)	95
Christophany or Theophany	96
Christology (Doctrine of Christ)	97
Christ: Deity Characteristics	98
Christ: Glories of Christ as Victor in the A-C	99
Christ: The Rock	100
Christ: Matthew 4 Temptations	101
Christ: Trials (6)	103
Christ: Uniqueness	104

Category	Page
Christ: Reasons why Jesus Christ became True Humanity.....	104
Church: Invisible.....	105
Church: Began on Day of Pentecost.....	106
Church Universal: Doctrine of Intercalation (Great Gap)...	107
Church Universal: Jewish Age Believer Becomes Church.....	108
Church Universal: Doctrine of the Mystery.....	109
Church Universal: Team Concept, Details.....	110
Church Universal: Team Concept Principle.....	111
Church Universal: "Upon this Rock" Constructions.....	112
Circumcision: Romans 4:11-12.....	113
Cheating in Business.....	114
Circumcision: Spiritual Significance.....	115
Covenants: Four Unconditional.....	116
Communion Table.....	117
Communion Table: Introduction.....	119
Communism vs. Christian Charity: Acts 2:44 ff.....	120
Comparison: Church Age & the Age of Israel.....	121
Comparison: Indwelling Holy Spirit and the Lord Jesus.....	123
Comparison: Rapture & the 2nd Advent.....	124
Comparison: Sactuary in OT and NT.....	125
Church: Local.....	125
Confessing Sin Biblically.....	126
Confidence.....	129
Conscience.....	130
Creation: Panorama.....	131
Criticism #1, Introductory Principle: Romans 8:33.....	132
Criticism #2, Romans 8:33.....	134
Cross: Taking Up the Cross.....	136
Crowns.....	138
Death of the Lord Jesus Christ.....	139
Death of the Believer: Outline of Dying Grace.....	139
Death: Physical, Believer's Hope.....	139
Deaths: Seven.....	140
Death of the Unbeliever.....	141
Physical Death #1.....	142
Physical Death #2.....	143
Death: Spiritual Death.....	144
Dying Grace: Introduction.....	145
Dying Grace: Doctrine of.....	145
Dying Grace: Job 5:17-27.....	147
Decision Making.....	149
Demon Possession.....	150
Demon Possession: Dictionary of Terms.....	152
Demon Possession: Saul and the Witch at Endor.....	154
Deposits: Doctrine of.....	156
Didasko.....	156
Diabolos - the Devil.....	157
Divine Discipline.....	158
Divine Discipline: How to Always Avoid It.....	159

Category	Page
Divine Discipline: How to Become Mentally Ill	160
Divine Pleasure	160
Dialectical Materialism (Communism)	161
Dialectical Materialism: Joe Stalin's 1932 Conquest Plan	161
Disciples (Apostles to Israel)	163
Dispensations	164
Dispensations: Outline of	165
Divine Guidance: Mechanics	169
Divine Guidance: Moses' Decision	170
Divine Guidance: Principle	171
Divine Guidance: Seven Things Declared to Be Will of God	172
Divine Guidance: Types of the Will of God	173
Divine Institutions	174
Drinking #1	175
Drinking #2	176
"DO"	178
Doubtful Things: Principle Applicable to	179
Edification: Edification Complex of the Soul	180
Election	186
Election: Case for Election	187
Emotion	189
Emotions: Good	190
Environment: Perfect Environment	191
Essence of God	192
Essence Applied: Jesus Christ as Judge	196
Essence Applied: Love	196
Essence Revealed: Light	197
Eternal Decrees	198
Eternal Security Approaches	199
Eternity	201
Eternity: Comparison, Heaven and Hell	202
Eternity: Eternal State of a Believer & Unbeliever	203
Eternity: Minimum Knowledge Requirements, Phase 3	204
Evangelism	205
Eye: Doctrine of	213
Expulsion from the Garden	213
Enemies	213
Expiation	214
Faith #1	215
Faith #2	216
Faith: Measure of: Romans 12:3, 6	217
Faithfulness of God	218
Faith-Rest Technique	219
Faith Synonyms	221
Faith Wedding Between Grace and Faith	222
Family: God's Provision	225
Family: Responsibility of Children	226
Fasting or Feasting	227

Category	Page
Feasts: Jewish	228
First Advent: Herald of	229
First Advent: Prophecy	230
First Born	231
Firsts of the Human Race	232
Flatte...	233
Friendship: Don't Turn Intimacy into Intrusiveness	233
Footstool; Operation: Introduction	234
Footstool; Operation: Church Qualified to Remove Demons	235
Footstool; Operation: Bumping Demons by Church Age Bel...	236
Footstool; Operation: Known Factors, Conclusions	239
Footstool, Operation: Mechanics	240
Foreknowledge	243
Forgiveness	244
Fulness of Time	245
Genesis 6 Infiltration by Fallen Angels	246
Giving: Doctrine of	248
Giving: Principles of	249
God the Father: The Planner	254
Good: Doctrine of Human Good	256
Grace: Doctrine of	257
Grace and Peace: Salutation, Phil. 1:2	259
Grace and Peace: Phase 1, 2, 3	260
Grace, Multiplication of: (1 Peter 1:2, 2 Peter 1:2)	262
Grace in Operation	263
Grace: Orientation To	264
Grace Pipe Illustrated	265
Grace Per Galatians 5:1-5	267
Grace Apparatus for Perception: GAP	269
Grace Apparatus for Perception Diagramed	272
Grace of God: Twelve Principles	273
Grace Doctrine in Operation	273
Grace: Perspicacity	274
Grace: Fullness of God	276
Grace: Foolishness of God & Weakness of God	277
Grace: Every Believer in Full-Time Christian Service	278
Great White Throne Judgment	280
Greek: Tools for Understanding the Original Languages	281
Greek Alphabet	283
Greek: Beginning Vocabulary	284
Greek: Basic Grammar: Vowels, Diphthongs, etc	285
Greek: Verbal Significance	287
Greek Nouns	290
Greek Prepositions	291
Greek Conditional Clauses	293
Growth: Categories of Christian Growth	295
Growth: Commands to Grow, Necessities, Distinctions	297
Growth in the Christian Life: Objectives	298

Category	Page
Happiness	300
Healing: Doctrine of	301
Heaven: Doctrine of	305
Heavens: Three	30[illegible]
Hell: Hades-Sheol	30[illegible]
Hell: No Degree of Punishment in Hell	308a
Heathenism: The Introduction & Summation	309
Heathenism: The A B C's of Heathenism	31[illegible]
Hebrew Alphabet:	313
Hebrews 6:1-6 Explanation	314
Heirship (Inheritance)	316
Holy Spirit: Filling	317
Holy Spirit: Fruit of the Spirit: Gal. 5:22-23	318
Holy Spirit: Glorification of Christ	319
Holy Spirit: Indwelling (Church Age)	321
Holy Spirit: "I will pour out of my Spirit"	322
Holy Spirit in the Millennium	323
Holy Spirit in the Old Testament	324
Holy Spirit: Sealing Ministry	326
Holy Spirit: Five Sins Against	3[illegible]
Holy Spirit: Sustaining Ministry to Jesus Christ	32[illegible]
Holy Spirit: Doctrine of the Transition	3[illegible]
Holy Spirit: Ten Ways to Grieve the Holy Spirit	3[illegible]
Holy Spirit: Teaching Ministry	33[illegible]
Human Spirit's Work	335
Human Spirit: Doctrine of	337
Human Good	338
History of Civilizations as Related to the Word of God	340
Hope	34[illegible]
Humility	34[illegible]
Hypostatic Union (God Man)	3[illegible]
"Imitators of God" (Eph. 5:1)	344
Imputation	34[illegible]
Incarnation Introduction	345
Incarnation Prophesied	347
Inheritance: Doctrine of	348
Intelligence Quotient: Human IQ vs. Divine IQ	349
Inner Beauty	351
Internationalism	352
Internationalism: Philosophy	353
Internationalism: Seven Points	353
Isolation of Sin: Important Doctrine	354
Israel: Basis of Judging (Evaluation) the Jew	356
Israel: Five Cycles of Discipline	357
Israel: Sins of the 5th Cycle of Discipline	36[illegible]
Israel has a Future (Today and in Eternity)	36[illegible]
Israel: Origin of the Jewish Race	36[illegible]
Israel: Regathering and Restoration	3[illegible]
Israel: Responsibility and Failure	3[illegible]
Israel: 12 Tribes of Israel (Chronological Sequence)	366

Category Pa

Israel: 12 Tribes of Israel (Historical Sequence)..... 36
Israel: Uniqueness of the Age of Israel.....

Jealousy.....
Jerusalem: Contrast between the Millennium and New.....
Jerusalem: The Jerusalem Church and Romans.....
Jewish Nation: Founded on Regeneration..... 371
Joy..... 372
Joy (Inner Happiness)...1..... 373
Judas Iscariot..... 374

Judgment Seat of Christ: Introduction.....
Judgment Seat of Christ #2.....
Judgment Seat of Christ: Preparation of the Bride.....
Judgment Seat of Christ: Rewards and Crowns..... 377
Judgments: Seven Major Judgments..... 378
Judging: Doctrine of.....
Judgment: Doctrine or Death Lesson..... 384
Judgment: Doctrine or Death Followup..... 387
Justice: Examples (Pharaoh & Judas)..... 389
Justice of God..... 390
Justification, Imputation..... 391

Killing.....
King.....
Kingdom.....
Kiss: Doctrine of.....

Language of Accommodation.....
Law: What is it?.....
Law: Zealous for the Law.....
Lawlessness (1 John 3:4, Romans 6:19).....
Laws: Four Laws in Operation in the Life of the Believer.
Levitical Offerings.....
Legalism in Salvation and Spirituality.....
Legalism: Systems of..... 402

Legislation: The Doctrine of..... 404
Levites: Levitical Contract.....
Levites: Three Problems in Fulfillment of Lev. Covenant..
Levitical Priesthood: Doctrine of.....
Levites: Propositions Regarding the Change in Priesthood.
Liberalism/Heathenism..... 408
Libido..... 409
Life: Physical.....
Light and Darkness.....
Living in the Word: Tools for the Bible Student..... 412
Living in the Word (The Survey Approach)..... 414
Living in the Word (The Categorical Approach)..... 415
Living in the Word (Meditation)..... 415
Living in the Word: The Use of Bible Doctrine..... 416

Lord Jesus Christ: Acceptability in Session.....
Lord Jesus Christ: Advocacy.....

Category		Page
Lord Jesus Christ:	Burial	419
Lord Jesus Christ:	Cross: Six Hours on Cross	420
Lord Jesus Christ:	Humanity Education	423
Lord Jesus Christ:	Humanity Matured	424
Lord Jesus Christ:	Impeccability	425
Lord Jesus Christ:	Ministry	426
Lord Jesus Christ:	Miracles that Followed Christ's Death	4
Lord Jesus Christ:	Necessity for the God-Man	430
Lord Jesus Christ:	Qualification to be Saviour	43
Lord Jesus Christ:	Superiorities of the Humanity of Christ	43
Lord Jesus Christ:	How Sustained on the Cross?	43
Lord Jesus Christ:	Six Trials of Christ	
Lord Jesus Christ:	Uniqueness	4
Lord Jesus Christ:	Virgin Birth	
Lord Jesus Christ:	Virgin Birth Preparation	
Love: Doctrine of		442
Love, Types of Love		443
"Lovers of Pleasures rather than Lovers of God"		444
Love for Other Believers (Agape)		445
Love (Phileo) in Three Categories: #1, #2, #3		446
Love of God the Father is Manifested		447
Love of God for the Human Race (Believer and Unbeliever)		448
Love of Man for God		449
Lord' Supper		450
"Make": Hebrew Words for		451
Man		452
Man in the "Image of God": Genesis 1:26-27		453
Man, Types		455
Man: Religious Man		456
Manna		457
Marriage:	Biblical Principles	458
Marriage:	Divorce--Deut. 24:1-4	45
Marriage Failure		460
Marriage:	First Marriage in the Human Race	46
Marriage:	Interrelationship, Responsibility	46
Marriage:	Mixed (Unbeliever & Believer) 1 Cor. 7	46
Marriage:	Responsibility of the Man	46
Marriage:	The Right of Remarriage	46
Marriage:	Right Man-Right Woman Categorized	
Marriage:	Selection of a Life-Time Mate	
Marriage:	Sexual Relationship #1	47
Marriage:	Sexual Relationship #2	47
Marriage:	Doctrine of Status Quo	480
Marriage:	Doctrine of the Heart: Canticles	481
Marriage:	Doctrine of Category 2 Love: To Wife	482
Marriage:	Enemy of Category 2 Love: Jealousy	484
Marriage:	Submission of the Wife (Subjection)	485
Marriage:	Utilization of Time	486
Marriage:	Woman as a Responder etc	487

Pa

Marriage: Woman's Capacity to Respond..... 48
Mediator: Necessity For.....
Mediator: Qualification and Provision..... 4
Mediator's Work.....
Mental Attitude: Introduction.....
Mental Attitude: Conscience Lobe and Perceptive Lobe..... 4
Mental Attitude: Thihking Divine Viewpoint..... 495
Mental Attitude: Thought Life..... 497

Mental Attitude: Four Characteristics of One Mind..... 500
Mental Attitude: Commands to Victory in Mental Attitude... 501
Mental Attitude: Forgiveness (Grace)..... 502
Mental Attitude: Results..... 503
Mental Attitude: Victory over Thoughts..... 503

Military Responsibility: Doctrine of Warfare..... 504
Military Leadership: (Within Doctrine of War)..... 509
Military Quotes: R. B. Thieme Jr..... 515

Millennium Characteristics..... 516
Millennium: Conludgments at the End of the Millennium..... 518
Millennium Contrast: Compared with Eternity & New Jeru.... 519
Millennium: Kingdom Issues..... 520
Millennium: Panorama of the Kingdom.....
Millennium: Revolt at the End of the Millennium..... 52
Millennium: Satan's Second Advent..... 52
Mind..... 52

Miracles and Scientific Laws..... 52
Missionary: Characteristics of a Missionary.....
"Minister" as Used in the New Testament.....
Morality: Doctrine of Morality..... 5

Mosiac Law: Doctrine of...l.....
Mosiac Law: Harmony between the Mosiac Law and Justify.... 52
Moses: Five Objections..... 530
Moses: "As Moses Lifted Up the Serpent"..... 53

Murder: Doctrine of..... 535
Mystery: Doctrine of..... 536

Nation: Believer's Responsibility to His Country..... 537
Nation: Believer's Responsibility to His Country #2..... 538
Nation: Nationalism..... 539
Nation: Plotting the Destruction of a Nation..... 5
Nature: The Curse..... 543

Occupation with Christ: Doctrine of..... 544
Old Sin Nature: Introduction To:..... 545
Old Sin Nature: Law of Carnality..... 546
Old Sin Nature: Ananias and Sapphira..... 547
Old Sin Nature: Anatomy (Structure)..... 5
Old Sin Nature: Diagram..... 54
Old Sin Nature: Disposition of the Production..... 55

Category	Page
Old Sin Nature: Identification in Scripture	551
Old Sin Nature: (Means of Passing On)	552
Old Sin Nature: Power over (Remedy)	554
Old Sin Nature: Reactions	555
Old Sin Nature: Saul	556
Old Sin Nature: Struggle With	557
Operation Footstool Introduction	558
Operation Footstool: Christ Qualified to Remove Demons	559
Operation Footstool: Believers Bumping Demons at 2nd Advent	560
Operation Footstool: Enemies in Operation Footstool	[illegible]
Operation Footstool: Known Factors, Conclusions	56[illegible]
Operation Footstool: Mechanics	56[illegible]
Omni-Attributes	56[illegible]
Parables	[illegible]
Parables...Ministry in Parables	[illegible]
Passover Introduction	5[illegible]
Passover: First Passover	[illegible]
Passover: Last Passover	[illegible]
Paul: "For I am an Israelite", Rom. 11:1	575
Peace: Biblical Concept	57[illegible]
Pentecost: Day of	578
Perception: Five Ways to Know God Exists	57[illegible]
Perception: Systems of	580
Perspicacity by Grace	581
Physical Life	584
Plan of God: Doctrine of Divine Decrees	585
Plan of God: As Sovereign of the Universe	588
Position: In Adam, In Christ	589
Positional Truth	590
Positional Truth, Retroactive	591
Prayer, Doctrine of	592
Prayer: False Concepts	593
Prayer: Negative Viewpoint	[illegible]
Prayer: Rebound Prayer	59[illegible]
Prayer: Seven Principles of	59[illegible]
Pre-Canon: Revelation	59[illegible]
Pre-Canon: Temporary Spiritual Gifts	59[illegible]
Predestination	[illegible]
Predestination Correlated with Divine Guidance	
Predestination Chart	[illegible]
Pride	[illegible]
Privacy: Doctrine of	
Prophecies of Genesis	60[illegible]
Prodigal Son: Luke 15:11-24	60[illegible]
Prophecy: Dual Fulfillment of Prophecy	60[illegible]
Punishment: Degrees of	600
Propitiation	60[illegible]

Category	Page
Promises	608
Qualification of the Lord Jesus Christ to Be Saviour	610
Qualified Administrator: The Lord Jesus Christ	611
Rainbow: Rainbow in Relationship to Jesus Christ	612
Rapture	613
Rapture: Comparison Between the Rapture & 2nd Advent	614
Rapture: Enoch, An Example of the Rapture	614
Rapture: Events At	615
Rapture: Instructions While Waiting	616
Rebound: Basis of 1 John 1:9	617
Rebound: Helping Another Believer Rebound	618
Rebound in the Old Testament	619
Rebound in the New Testament	620
Reconciliation	621
Redemption	622
Regeneration	623
Relationship: God the Father to the Human Race	624
Relationship: God the Father to the Lord Jesus Christ	626
Relationship: Jesus Christ to Angels	627
Relationship: Man to Angels	628
Religion vs. Christianity	629
Religion of the GALATIONS: Gal. 4:8-11	630
Remembrance: Doctrine of (Memorial)	631
Repentance	632
Resurrection Body of Jesus Christ	633
Resurrection Morning Order of Events	634
Resurrection: Post-resurrection Appearances	635
Resurrection: Why OT Saints are Resurrected at 2nd Advent	636
Resurrections: Batallion Review	637
Resurrections: Two	639
Rev. 4-5: Reasons 4 Beasts & 24 Elders ARE ANGELS	640
Revelation: Precanon	641
Righteousness: Absolute and Relative	642
Roman Empire	644
Revolt: Emotional Revolt Diagram	648
Revolt: Emotional Revolt Diagram	649
Revolt: Emotional Revolt: Doctrine of Emotions	650
Revolt: Emotional Revolt: Doctrine of the Reins	657
Revolution: Doctrine of	660
Romans 7: Two Marriages	661
Romans 8:28, "All things work . . ."	662
Romans 8:28 Tapestry (Joseph's life) Gen. 37	663
Sabbath	664
Salvation: First Declaration of: Gen. 3:15	666
Salvation in the Old Testament	667
Sanctification	668
Satan's Counterfeits	669

Category

	Page
Satan's Five "I Wills, Isaiah 14:12-15"	670
Satan's Strategy	671
Second Advent: Zechariah 14:1-9	672
Second Advent: Events At	673
Second Advent: Marriage Supper of the Lamb	674
Second Advent: Ten Virgins	675
Marriage in the Ancient World	675
Second Advent: Transitional Day	676
Separation of Church and State	677
Stability in the State	678
Separation from Believers	680
Sin	681
Sin: Categories of Col. 3:5-10	683
Sin: Categories of Galatians 5:19-21	684
Sin: Comparison	685
Sin: Did God Create Sin?	686
Sin: Seven Areas of "Not Thinking Grace"	687
Sin, Slave Market of Sin	688
Sin: Unpardonable Sin	689
Sin Unto Death	690
Sins that God Hates: Prov. 6:16-19	691
Scar Tissue of the Soul	692
Soul	694
Soul: Bible Background	696
Soul: Self-Consciousness	698
Soul: Mechanics	699
Soul Summary: Conclusions	700
Sinai: Relationship Between 10 Commandments & Jeremiah	701
Soul Kinks Leading to Psychosis	703
Spiritual Gifts: Origin	704
Spiritual Gifts	705
Spiritual Gifts: Identification	706
Spiritual Gifts in the Corinthian Church	707
Spiritual Gifts: Healings, Miracles, Faith as Temporary Spiritual Gifts	708
Spiritual Gifts: List	709
Spiritual Gifts: Principle of Temporary Gifts	710
Spiritual Gifts: Prophecy, Knowledge, Discerning Spirits as Temprary Spiritual Gifts	711
Spiritual Gifts: Temporary (Nine)	712
Spiritual Gifts: Temporary Gifts Discontinued	713
Spiritual Gifts: Tongues	714
Spiritual Gifts: Tongues Continues as a Satanic Operation	717
Spiritual Gifts: Tongues Danger as an Emotional Escatic Experience	718
Spiritual Gift: Tongues Description	719
Spiritual Gifts: Tongues, Mechanics as a Satanic Operation	720
Spiritual Gifts: Tongues: Misconceptions & Abuses	721
Spiritual Gifts: Tongues: Perspective of the Gift	722
Spiritual Gifts: Tongues as a Temporary Gift: Its Use on the Day of Pentecost	723

Category		Page
Spiritual Gifts:	Two Prophecies (Tongues and Baptism).....	724
Spiritual Gifts:	Healing Miracles during Lord's Ministry...	725
Spirituality	Introduction.....	726
Spirituality	is an Absolute: Introduction.....	727
Spirituality	is an Absolute (1 John 3:9).....	728
Spirituality:	Believer's Awake.....	729
Spirituality:	Command to Awake, Ephesians 5:14-18.....	730
Spirituality:	Commands Regarding.....	731
Spirituality:	False Criterian For.....	732
Spirituality:	Five Coins: 1 John 2 (two sides).....	734
Spirituality:	God is Light (No Darkness).....	735
Spirituality:	Law of.....	736
Song of Solomon:	102 Principles of Christian Courtship.....	737
Study:	How To.....	775
Suffering	.....	778
Suicide	.....	779
Survival Kit	for the Believer's Life.....	780
Sustaining	of the Universe as Over Against Science.....	783
Stability	of a Nation: The Doctrine of Human Freedom.....	784
Superiorities	of Christ.....	786
Taxation	.....	787
Temptation	for the Believer.....	789
Terms:	Abbreviations.....	790
Terms:	A Dictionary of Terms.....	793
Time:	One Day at a Time.....	797
Time:	Utilization of.....	798
Time-table:	Crucifixion Day.....	799
Time:	Jewish Feasts.....	800
Timetable:	Death, Burial, Resurrection.....	801
Tribulation:	Abomination of Desolation.....	802
Tribulation:	Angels in the Tribulation.....	803
Tribulation:	Anti-Christ.....	804
Tribulation:	Anti-Semitism in the Tribulation.....	805
Tribulation:	Armageddon Campaign, Divine Activity.....	806
Tribulation:	Armageddon Prologue: Demon Activity.....	807
Tribulation:	Armageddon Prologue: Human Activity.....	808
Tribulation:	Armageddon Prologue, Human Activity.....	809
Tribulation:	First Beast: D/RRE.....	811
Tribulation:	Second Beast - Palestine Dictator.....	812
Tribulation:	Daniel's 70th Week.....	813
Tribulation:	Daniel 9:24-27 - Exegesis.....	814
Tribulation:	Deliverance for Believers in Tribulation.....	816

Category		Page
Tribulation:	Evangelists - 144,000	817
Tribulation:	Evangelism in the Tribulation	818
Tribulation:	General Outline of Judgments	819
Tribulation:	Identity of the Two Witnesses - Rev. 11	820
Tribulation:	Internationalism in the Tribulation	821
Tribulation:	Introduction to the Two Sets of Witnesses	822
Tribulation:	Israel's Flight in Mid Trib.:	823
Tribulation:	Length of the Tribulation	824
Tribulation:	Lord's Two Witnesses--Human Heralds	825
Tribulation:	Mark of the Beast	826
Tribulation:	Martyred Believers	827
Tribulation:	Panorama of the Tribulation	829
Tribulation:	Reasons Church Does Not Go Through the Tribulation	831
Tribulation:	Religion in the Tribulation	832
Tribulation:	The Rise and Fall of the Unholy Trinity	834
Tribulation:	Seven Angels of Judgment	836
Tribulation:	7 Heads, 10 Horns	837
Tribulation:	Seven Seals--General Characteristics	838
Tribulation:	Seven Things in Heaven Before Tribulation	840
Tribulation:	Spheres of Influence	841
Tribulation:	Trumpet Judgments	842
Tribulation:	Vial Judgments	844
Tribulation:	Warfare in Heaven	846
Test for Doctrinal Moxie: Questionnaire		847
Trinity		851
Trinity 1		852
Trinity 2		853
Trinity 3		854
Trinity 4		855
Trinity 5		855
Trinity 6		856
Trinity 7		857
Trinity:	Activity	858
Trinity:	Manifestation	859
Trinity:	One in Essence	860
Trinity:	Three in Personality	861
Two Circles #1		862
Two Circles #2		864
Union with Christ		866
United States of America: Ten Misconceptions Prevalent in April 1971		873
United States of America: The Doctrine of Conspiracy		869
Unlimited Atonement		876

Category

Page

"Vengeance is Mine: I Will Repay": Romans 12:19..... 877
Volition: Hardness of Pharaoh's Heart (Right Lobe)..... 878
Volition: Jacob, Esau - Rom. 9:11-14..... 879

Volition of Man..... 880
Volition: "Mercy on Whom I will Have Mercy": Romans 9..... 881
Volition: Pride as a Hindrance..... 882
Volition: The Three Wills..... 883
Volition: Vessels of Wrath, Mercy..... 884

Wedding Between Grace and Faith (Yes, you're right, it's repeated twice--why? Battle Fatigue)..... 886

Woman: Introduction: What is the Woman Like?..... 888
Woman: Eve: First Woman..... 889
Works: Evaluation of Believer's (Church Age)..... 890
Worldiness: 1 John 2:15-17, Mental Attitude of the OSN..... 891

Welfare: Doctrine of..... 892
Wisdom on Old Age: A Description of Old Age from the Book of Ecclesiastes..... 894

Yieldedness, Doctrine of..... 895
Yieldedness: Syntax..... 897

Appendix

Note of Explanation: (Please READ)..... 898

Heart: Doctrine of..... 899

Finis as of May 11, 1971..... 902

(The next possible project--note the use of the subjunctive mood--is the categorization of the Jeremiah series.)

Category

Page

Ingredients of a Good Congregation: Phil 2:25-30 903
Spiritual Gift of Evangelism & its communication Ministry 904
Doctrine of Adam's Rib 907
Tests, failures & successes of Peter 911
Suffering: The Three Groans 912
Guidelines when conversing with Negative People 916
Reversion 918
Doctrine of Reversion Applied 920
Emotions 922
Bible Study Priorities for Babe, Adolescent & Mature Believer 930
George S. Patton Letter 935
The Right Woman Acrostic 937
Use of the term Baptism in Scripture 958
250 Suggested Ordination Questions 966
Divine Essence 978
Second Coming of Christ (Rapture & Second Advent) 980
Doctrine of Tapestry 987
Contrast of Mary & Martha: Luke 10:38-42 989
Doctrines of Depression & Happiness 993
Hebrew & Greek Verb Making Chart 997
Doctrine of the Gospel 998
Salvation in the Old Testament #2 999
Nights of Christmas 1000
Divine Essence Scripture 1001

Abraham - Isaac
(Category - 1)

I. Bible Background: Genesis 22:1-8

Verses 1-2: Testing
Verses 3-10: Obeying
Verses 11-14: Providing

22:1: Abraham means Father of many nations, Genesis 17:5, yet Abraham had just one son who was heir to the promise. Genesis 17:7, "And I will establish my covenant between me and thee and thy seed after thee in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God unto thee, and to thy seed after thee."

You must have everlasting life to inherit an everlasting covenant.

"tempt": Test, 1 Peter 1:7. God does not tempt (solicit to evil.)

22:2: "Take NOW thy son": SPECIFIC TIME
"thine ONLY SON Isaac": SPECIFIC SACRIFICE
"land of Moriah": NO SPECIFIC PLACE

He learned through obedience WHERE TO GO!!!

22:3: Abraham did not argue with God. God had promised a son and a mighty nation. God is immutable - so His promise cannot change. Abraham could have had a nervous breakdown, but he used the Faith-rest technique. Faith-rest was the equivalent of spirituality today.

22:4: He traveled three days - all the time using the faith-rest technique.

22:5: "I and the lad (we) will go yonder and (we will) worship, and (we will) come again to you."

"I and the lad": Abraham believed God, (epignosis--full knowledge in his human spirit therefore he had a frame of reference in this testing--he had a prototype edification complex) Compare with Genesis 21:2, . . . for in Isaac shall thy seed be called." This was a promise and Abraham believed it. If necessary Isaac would be resuscitated. Notice the dogmatism, "We are going up", "We are coming back."

22:8: Isaac was satisfied. He learned the faith-rest technique from his father. Abraham had perfect peace, Isa. 26:3.

22:9: Isaac had volition. He had to agree to be bound. Isaac was physically strong.

22:10: Abraham demonstrated his Faith-Rest by obedience.

22:11: "Abraham, Abraham": The noun repeated in Hebrew means perfect. Abraham was a mature believer by God's standards.

22:12: "fearest": To trust. Abraham passed the test. Implicit obedience.

22:13: "in the stead": Substitution

22:14: "Jehovah-jireh": The Lord will provide
"in the mount of the Lord": Golgotha
"it shall be seen": There is provision - our so great salvation.

22:15-18: The Abrahamic Covenant confirmed. Genesis 12:2-3

II. Seven Lessons from this Passage: (Genesis 22)

A. Waiting on the Lord means testing. 22:1

B. The Lord must always have first place. Col. 3:1-2. Not the gift but the giver is important. 22:2

C. The impossibility of happiness in stress without faith-rest is obvious.

D. It is not enough to know the Word (gnosis--head knowledge in the mind) but must be able to apply it (epignosis--full knowledge) in a crisis. Isaiah 33:6, "And wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times."

E. God remains faithful (Immutability + omnipotence) regardless of our status quo.

F. Principle of substitution: Ram for Isaac. Christ our substitute.

G. We lose nothing by committing it to the Lord. What we commit (deposit with Him) is never lost.

III. Comparison between Abraham-Isaac; and God the Father & the Son

Abraham had a son, Isaac	1. God is the Father of the LJC. 2 Cor. 1:3
Isaac was born into God's family.	2. JC was God's Son from all Eternity. Psalm 2:7
Abraham loved his son dearly.	3. The Father loved the Son. John 3:35.
Isaac carried wood for burnt offering.	4. JC carried His cross. John 19:17.
Isaac obeyed his father in all things.	5. Jesus became obedient, even unto death. Phil. 2:8

Isaac did not know until he was bound that he was to be the sacrifice.	6. Jesus had always known He would be a Saviour. Rev. 13:8
Isaac was strong. He could have snapped his ropes easily, or kept from being bound.	7. Jesus Christ was bound too. He could have snapped His robes easily. OMNIPOTENCE. Matt.28:18
Abraham gave his son willingly.	8. God the Father gave His Son out of love for the world. John 3: 16.
God provided a substitute for Isaac.	9. Jesus was our substitute. Rom. 5:8; 2 Cor. 5:21.
Isaac gave himself willingly.	10. JC gave Himself willingly. John 10:18.
Thru Isaac, Abraham would have many sons.	11. Thru the LJC, God will have many sons. Heb. 2:10.

IV. Analogy: God the Father to Abraham

A. Abraham watched Isaac on the altar.

B. God the Father WATCHED how his beloved Son was mailed to the cross, the INNOCENT for the GUILTY.

C. God provided a ram to take the place of Isaac.

D. NO ONE could take the place of Jesus Christ. No one NEEDS to die for Christ. Our Lord HAD NOT SINNED. HE DID NO SIN. He is R. 2 Cor. 5:21

V. Application of the Passage:

A. But we HAVE SINNED. WE need a sin offering.

B. Sin (Imputed, inherent and personal) put man in the Slave Market of Sin.

C. Jesus Christ left heaven where He had been with the Father eternally and became humanity for the express purpose of removing this barrier between man and God.

D. All sins were poured out upon the LJC on the cross causing spiritual death (separation from God the Father and God the Holy Spirit) for the Lord Jesus Christ.

E. God the Father left the LJC on the cross until His work was finished. John 19:30. Jesus Christ was not delivered and so God's plan of salvation was completed.

F. Romans 8:32 & Romans 5:8-10. He did the most for us--while enemies--now (because of grace) He does much more.

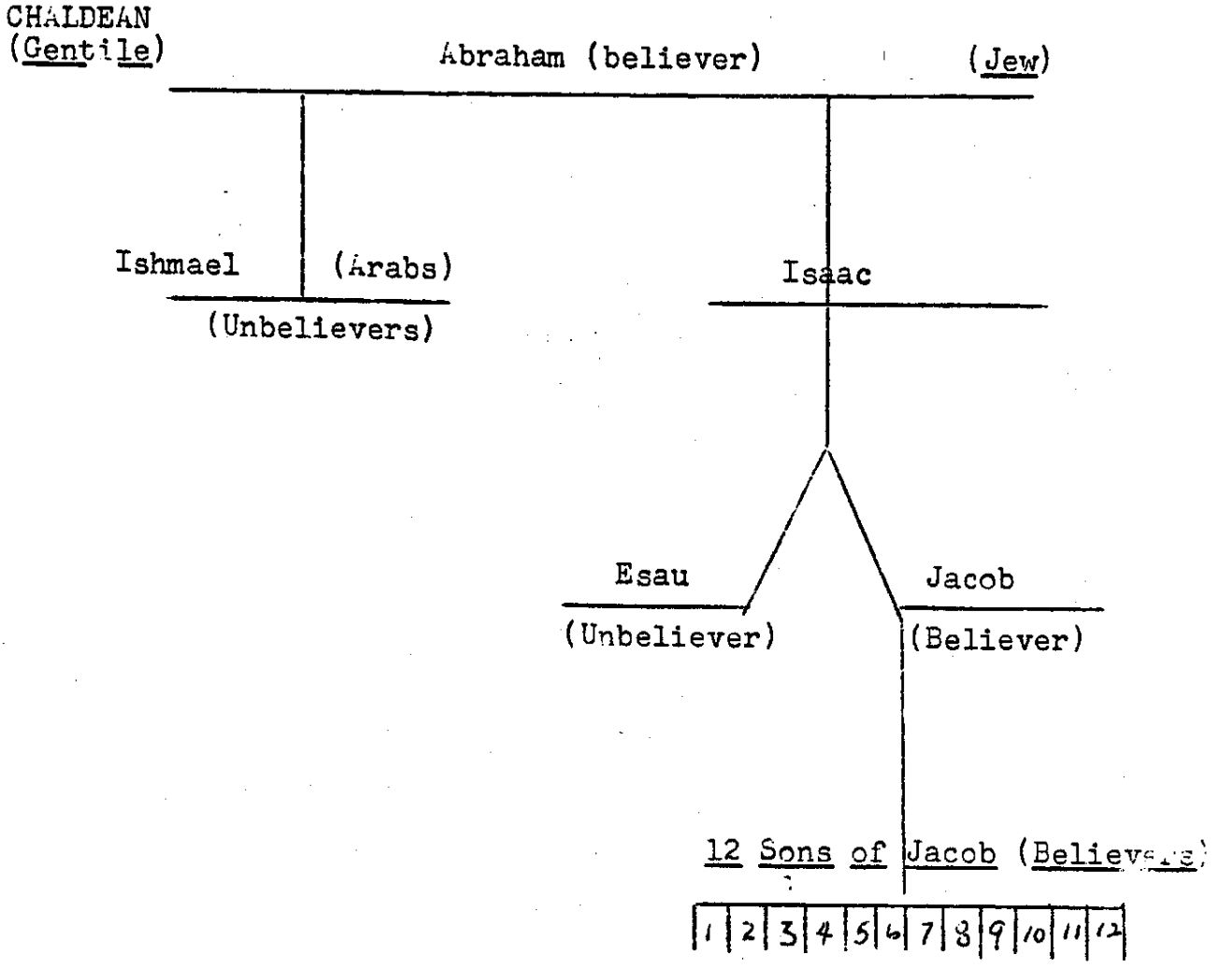
Abraham, Seed of Abraham (Rom. 4:13)
(Category 2)

I. There are three uses for "seed of Abraham."

A. Single Seed: Means one person, Jesus Christ. Gal. 3:16. Jesus is descended from Abraham through Isaac, Jacob, Judah, David.

B. Spiritual Seed: Romans 4:16. Refers to the Jew in the OT who believed in Christ as well as the Gentile in the OT who believed in Christ and who are called the heavenly seed of Abraham. Genesis 22:17 refers to the "stars of heaven" which are all saved individuals in the OT, "sand upon the seashore" are all racial Jews.

C. Physical Seed: Earthly descendents, the racial Jew. Any racial Jew has the genes of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob in him. Significant in passages like 2 Chron. 1:9.



Israel was the only nation founded on regeneration!

Descendents--racial Jews--some born-again, some not.

Absolute and Relative Concepts in the Christian Life
(Category 3)

I. Absolute Concept: Spirituality: Romans 8

A. The believer filled with the Holy Spirit is in fellowship--spiritual. Romans 8:2. The believer not filled (controlled) by the Holy Spirit is out of fellowship - carnal. Romans 8:6, 1 Cor. 3:1-3, 1 John 1:6.

B. Spirituality and Carnality are mutually exclusive and therefore absolutes. Galatians 5:9.

C. Vocabulary indicating the absolute status of:

Spirituality	Carnality
In the Bottom Circle	Out of the bottom circle
Filled with the HS	Not filled with the HS
In Fellowship	Out of fellowship
Walking in the Spirit	Walking in the flesh (energy)
Walking in the Light	Walking in darkness
Controlled by the HS	Controlled by the old sin nat.
Produces Divine good	Produces human good
New man	Old man

II. Relative concept: Growth Hebrews 5:11-14

A. From the standpoint of growth all believers range from a baby to a mature believer, depending upon the amount of time spent "living in the Word."

B. Five things characterize the mature believer.

1. Knowledge: Maximum knowledge of Bible Doctrine. 2 Pet. 3:18 Gnosis (head knowledge in the mind).

2. Wisdom: Application of sophia (same as epignosis) in exhale from the human spirit as a frame of reference. The foundation of the edification structure. Col. 1:28

3. Faith: The constant transfer of gnosis in the mind to the human spirit by faith--resulting in a strong faith--a frame of reference faith--which could be described as faith-patience. James 1.

4. Grace: A maximum use of who and what God is in the life, having absolutely no illusions about your self. The constant viewpoint of grace being used.

5. Production: Increased production goes with Maturity.

C. Maturity is NOT spirituality but a mature believer is spiritual (F-HS) a greater amount of time than a baby is. Production is compound triple divine good: (F-HS, exhale from the human spirit, and edification complex glorification)

Acceptability in Session
(Category 4)

1. Could the humanity of Christ be acceptable to God the Father? Hebrews 1:3, "Who (LJC) being the brightness (shining forth) of His glory (Essence Box) and the express (exact) image of His person, and unholding all things by the word of His power, whom when He had by Himself purged our sins, SAT DOWN on the RIGHT HAND (place of honor) of the majesty (God the Father) on high." Also Heb. 1:13, 12:1-2

2. His acceptability indicated:

   a. Completion of Christ's work in Phase 1: Salvation. Heb. 10:11-12

   b. That the Person of God the Son satisfied the Righteousness of God the Father.

   c. That the WORK OF GOD the Son satisfied the JUSTICE of God the Father.

3. The acceptance of Jesus Christ as a MAN MEANT the acceptance of His SACRIFICE. The acceptance of His SACRIFICE meant the acceptance of all those who seek entrance to the presence of the Father through faith in Jesus Christ.

4. Through His redemotive work, His ascension and session, the LJC accomplished bringing many sons into glory. Heb. 2:9-10.

5. Because the God-Man is accepted, every believer is also accepted by the Father. Eph. 1:6, " . . . accepted in the beloved."

6. Because the God-Man is SEATED, every believer is seated positionally, at the right hand of the Father. Ephesians 2:6. "And hath raised us up together and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus."

Adam
(Category 5)

I. Adam's Condition in Perfect Environment: Innocent

A. Body: Tabernacle--house

B. Soul: Directed toward man - self-consciousness. He was conscious of Eve, of her beauty etc.
Mentality: Adam named the animals, had vocabulary, thought.
Volition: Had the capacity to sin (volition) but not the nature to sin.
Emotion: Appreciated Eve, the Garden, the fruit there.

C. Human spirit: Directed toward God - God-consciousness.

II. Adam's Condition AFTER HE SINNED: -R (Romans 3:23)

A. Body (Outwardly the same, but started to age)

B. Soul: Still directly toward man, still had the five characteristics of the soul, but now had an Old Sin Nature.

1. The OSN was received by an act of negative volition. Romans 5:12.

2. Scar Tissue: On the facets of the soul. Adam's human spirit died when he sinned. Gen. 2:17, Eph. 2:1, 5, spiritual death. We know it was Adam's spirit that died when he sinned (no fellowship with God) but he still could have fellowship with Eve.)

C. Spirit: No human spirit. Dead in Adam. No human spirit in descendents. This is given at the moment of salvation.

III. Adam's Condition after Salvation: +R: Isa. 61:10. Provided by God thru shedding of blood: Gen. 3:21, Heb. 9:22.

A. Body: Outwardly the same, but continued to age unto physical death.

B. Soul: (Soul and Spirit - Heb. 4:12)

Self-consciousness, volition, emotion, conscience, old sin nature and mentality. The Soul has essence. The old sin nature is retained after salvation and is the distorter of the soul.

C. The human spirit is given at the point of salvation (not reactivated). Romans 8:16. The believer is trichotomous (has body, soul, and spirit) 1 Thess. 5:23. An unbeliever is dichotomous.

The human race receives their old sin nature by an act of physical birth, no volition involved.

Adam and Eve: Doctrine of the Expulsion from the Garden. Gen. 3:22-24. (Category 6)

I. Expulsion: Gen. 3:22-24

A. Man, after sin, did not go to the tree of life. If he had, he would have been perpetuated in the sinful state and there would have been no salvation issue.

B. If he had eaten before he sinned, it would have perpetuated him in innocence, not given him Eternal Life.

C. If he had eaten in his sinful state there would have been no VOLITION ISSUE. Volition must continue to be the issue to resolve the Angelic Conflict (see points below)

D. Only way to make VOLITION the ISSUE is to get man out of the garden. The Tree of Life must be put out of man's reach. The Tree of Death (cross) must be put in reach of man. Out of the garden, the issue is the cross. Salvation depends upon the work of God (Grace) never on the work of man (Legalism-human good).

E. In order to turn cursing into blessing, man must be removed from the place where he can perpetuate the curse. Cursing can be turned to blessing by means of the cross.

F. As a result of regeneration man will occupy a position higher and better than anything he possessed in innocence in the garden.

II. Angelic Conflict Sequence:

A. God created angels with volition.

B. Satan acted independently of God (Satan's 5 I wills). Isa. 14:12-15

C. God sentenced Satan. Matt. 25:41

D. Satan impugned the character of God: "How can a loving God cast his creatures into the Lake of Fire?"

E. God's answer: God created man with volition

F. Everytime a member of the human race (created a little lower than the angels) chooses for God, the character of God is vindicated, and Satan loses the argument.

Adam and Eve: Investigation and Judgment: Genesis 3:11-20
(Category 7)

I. Genesis 3:11-13 Investigation:

A. Man: 3:11 who passed the buck to
B. Woman: 3:13 who passed the buck to
C. Serpent: 3:13

II. Genesis 3:14-19: Judgment

A. Serpent: 3:14, CURSED. When God got to the serpent, he quit questioning and cursed the serpent. Then the plan of salvation was declared. 3:15

B. Woman: 3:16

C. Man: 3:17-19

III. The plan of salvation belongs ONLY to the man and woman.

IV. Their is a separation between the serpent and mankind because Satan was not involved in the plan of salvation. He had already been judged and sentenced. Matt. 25:41.

V. Angels were not involved because their position had already been crystalized. They were either elect or fallen.

VI. Lower creation was not involved.

VII. The first declaration of salvation was in Genesis 3:15. See the first declaration of salvation category.

VIII. Genesis 3:20

A. "Eve": Giver of life. Mother of all living. Adam's salvation was based on believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, emphasis is on the Virgin Birth. 3:15

B. "Adam": The father of all death. 1 Cor. 15:22, "In Adam all die spiritually." Romans 5:12, "so death (spiritual) passed upon all men, for that all have sinned" when Adam sinned.

IX. Genesis 3:21, First salvation (first of the human race saved).

Acts, Book of

"WHOM HE HATH CHOSEN" Acts 1:2

(Category 8)

1. Emphasis on the divine perogative in the selection of apostles, anticipates the great failure of the believers at the end of this chapter.

2. The selection of the 12th Apostle to replace Judas is divine perogative and not the believers choice.

3. The election of Mathias is a farce.

4. Paul, not Mathias is the 12th Apostle. 1 Cor. 5:7-10, 1 Tim. 1:12-16.

5. "He chose": Emphasizes the Sovereignty of JC in selection of the apostles.

6. A church election cannot give a person the spiritual gift of anything--they are only given by the Holy Spirit at the moment of salvation.

7. All Spiritual gifts are given at the moment of salvation by the Holy Spirit by the Sovereign will of Jesus Christ. Eph. 4:8, 11; 1 Cor. 11.

8. Jesus Christ, in departure from earth made provision for Spiritual Gifts including apostleship.

9. Gifts are distributed by the Holy Spirit. 1 Cor. 12:1

Acts, Book of
(Category 9)

Day of the 2nd Advent: Acts 2:20

1. Darkness is a reference to the day of the 2nd Advent.

2. The day of the 2nd Advent is characterized by supernatural darkness, for when Jesus Christ returns, every eye shall see Him. Rev. 1:7

3. The darkness is similar to the darkness of the day of our Lord's crucifixion, when He was hid from human eyes.

4. The darkness of the 2nd Advent was designed to focus attention on Jesus Christ. Rev. 1:7

5. In addition, the darkness of the 2nd Advent protects the Jewish believers in Jerusalem besieged by the King of the North. Zech. 12:1-3; 14:1-4; Isa. 63:1-6, Dan. 11.

6. Passages: Isa. 13:9-10; Ezek. 32:7-8; Joel 2:10-11, 3:15; Amos 5:18; Zech. 14:6; Matt. 24:29b; Luke 21:25-27; Mark 13:24; Rev. 6:12.

Acts, Book of
(Category 10)

The Foreknowledge of God: Acts 2:23

1. The omniscience of God planned salvation with the full knowledge of all events in history.
2. Foreknowledge is omniscience. It knows everything without reference to time.
3. Divine foreknowledge does not coerce or influence man's free will.
4. Both divine and human volition coexist as an extension of the resolving of the angelic conflict.
5. God knew billions of years ago how anyone's free will would operate at any point in time.
6. Such knowledge does not coerce free will from acting independently of God.

"They had all things in common": Acts 2:44

1. Believers helping other believers in a time of crisis is the subject of this verse.
2. Persecution of believers resulted in the believers losing property, money, etc.
3. No more communism is found in this verse than in charity. Charity involves human volition.
4. Christianity and communism are mutually exclusive and antagonistic.
5. Christianity emphasizes the Godhead and relationship with God, while communism denies the existence of God.
6. Christianity recognizes the freedoms and rights of man and communism denies all freedoms.
7. This passage does not teach or advocate communism and/or socialism.
8. Under the persecution, the persecuted believers were helped by the unpersecuted believers.
9. When all of Jerusalem was dispossessed, Paul took an offering to them from the believers in North and South Greece.

Acts, Book Of
(Category 11)

Sin of Annanias and Sapphira: Acts 5:1

1. It was a sin inside of the church committed by believers.
2. It was not a sin of omission or not in the giving.
3. It was a sin motivated by approbation lust. They desired to duplicate the giving of Barnabas.
4. It was a sin of competition.
5. Behind their lust for flattery and praise was envy and jealousy, the basis of the sin.
6. They failed to serve as unto the Lord. Col. 3:17
7. There was nothing wrong with keeping back part of the sale. There is no regulation in how much (percentage) a believer should give. The sin is in the lying.
8. They lied to the Holy Spirit because they wanted the church to think that they had duplicated the giving of Barnabas.
9. Behind everything was approbation lust, which causes believers to serve in the energy of the flesh instead of Divine Good.

Mechanics of Opposing the Gospel in Thessalonica: Acts 17

1. Negative volition at Gospel hearing produces a vacuum into which is sucked mental attitude sins and jealousy. 17:5
2. Mental attitude sins not only produce self-induced misery, but lead to acts of violence, antagonism and revenge.
3. In this case, jealousy produces a mob and a riot, which is used to attack Paul and His friends, desiring to run them out of town.
4. The criterion for a mob is emotion and prejudice fostered by the one or ones who formed it.
5. Religion uses riots to disrupt good government and bully government leaders into a course of action which is wrong and dishonest.
6. Therefore, religion uses mobs to get rid of the law. Emotionalism and rioting mobs act upon the government until the government is reduced to the same disrupted and emotional level as the mob.
7. Behind the scene, religion hides its hypocritical face while manipulating the mob, and therefore religion disrupts government.

Acts, Book of
(Category 12)

Paul's Sin: Acts 21:26

1. This sin is a compromise to appease the legalistic Jews in Jerusalem.
2. As a result, Paul has no ministry in Jerusalem, because he, the apostle of grace, abandoned grace.
3. This is the year 58 AD.
4. Jerusalem will get one more crack at the Grace Doctrinal message, the Book of Hebrews written in 67 AD.
5. Paul didn't take a grace stand.
6. Therefore, Paul will not have a grace ministry.

Doctrine of Human Freedom: 1967 Acts--Reel 28 - 2B (four track)

1. Human freedom is an extension of the Angelic Conflict and therefore God is responsible for the protection of the human freedom both for the believer and unbeliever.
2. Human volition is man's privilege, but is destroyed by the OSN.
3. Divine Institutions are designed to protect human freedom.
4. The Plan of God gives human freedom a relationship with God and a purpose in life related to God.
5. Volition and human freedom is the basis for true love.
6. Maturity must be defined in terms of human freedom.
7. Human freedom is the basis for salvation in the grace pattern. Ephesians 2:8-9

Acts: Book of
(Category 13)

"Thou shalt not speak evil of the ruler": Acts 23:5 Reel 30 - 2B

1. Paul is not applying Bible doctrine.
2. Paul has been given to understand that Ananias is the high priest. When his ignorance was corrected, his attitude was corrected.
3. Therefore Paul accepts the responsibility of civil obedience. Romans 13:1-7.
4. Paul recognizes civil authority under D. I. #4 even though the authority is corrupt.
5. Paul understands that two wrongs don't make a right.
6. God has ordained under Divine Institutions certain authority so that the human race can survive under the Angelic Conflict.
7. Paul is opposed to civil disobedience; therefore, the Word of God is opposed to civil disobedience.
8. Paul cites his authority in the Doctrine he is applying. He functions on the Word of God.

"This day": Acts 26:2 Reel 34 - 2B

1. Paul lived one day at a time. See Category.
2. If Paul would look back he would fold up because of his act of legalism (taking a vow in the Temple).
3. If Paul looked forward it would be to Nero - and this was a gloomy prospect.

The Hatred of Religion for Paul: Acts 25:24-25 Reel 34 - 1 B

1. Such passages exposes religion for what it is.
2. Religion hated Paul, was jealous of Paul, and has implacability and vindictiveness.
3. Their antagonism was manifested by yelling and screaming for his death in the courts of the Jews and the Roman courts.
4. Without realizing it, Festus, in his opening remarks, unmasked religion.
5. Religion always places great balue on life until that life opposes them.
6. In Acts 25:25 there is a fantastic amount of hypocrisy: "I found": I've been surprised--he wasn't surprised at all.

7. Festus was willing to sacrifice Paul on the altar of political expediency.

8. Festus had no concern for the proper administration of Roman justice.

9. Festus was only interested in promoting Festus through ingratiation with religious leaders.

10. But Festus now faces the dilemma of Roman law.

11. Paul is no longer under the legal jurisdiction of Festus but Festus must provide a report which justifies Paul's appeal.

Adaptability - Manifestation of the Edification Complex of the Soul (Category 14)

Look up 2 Cor. 6:8-9

1. Antithetical circumstances demonstrate ability to cope with rapidly changing circumstances.

2. The edification complex causes the believer to stand up under circumstances that change to adversity, i.e. honor to dishonor.

3. Therefore, the believer with the edification complex is stabilized, v. 8. Being stabilized, it is adaptable.

4. Definition of Adaptability: Utilization of the edification complex in sudden changes of circumstances.

5. Adaptability manifested by the believer brings glory to God.

6. Stability from the edification complex causes immediate adjustment to rapidly changing circumstances.

7. Adaptability is perpetuation of stability into extremes of suffering.

8. Rapidly changing circumstances causes the believer to become disoriented to the grace of God if the believer is without an edification complex.

9. A believer's happiness does not depend on what people think of him.

10. The edification complex manifests the glory of God under suffering (rapidly changing circumstances).

Adoption: Romans 8:15, Gal. 4:1-5
(Category 15)

1. Adoption today means taking someone who was not born into a family and making them a legal child.

2. The Bible must be interpreted in the time in which it was written (Isagogics). Adoption then always had to do with children BORN into the family. Every father adopted his son at age 14, at which time he received adult status with adult privileges.

3. The Greek word "thesia" means to place. To place one who is already a son--or son recognition. "Thesia" has been translated "adoption".

4. Adoption is one of the 34 things which every believer receives at the moment of salvation.

5. Adoption is always connected with Positional Truth, the top circle which represents Christ.

6. Baptism of the Holy Spirit, which enters the believer into Union with Christ is the mechanics of adoption.

7. Christ is huios (pronounced whee-os) which means adult son.

8. When we are entered into Union with Christ at the point of salvation, we become adult sons Positionally. This is our adoption.

9. At the same time we are entered into fellowship in time, bottom circle. This speaks of our experience in time and experientally we are called nepios (nee pe os) which means little child, or sometimes brephos (bre thos) which means a babe on the mother's breast.

10. As little children (bottom circle) we need to grow up. In 1 John 3:1, "teknon" is for sons - the one who is caught with his hand in the cookie jar.

11. As adult sons we have the right of an adult, operation of volition, heirs, etc.

Adoption in the Ancient World
(Category 16)

1. Adoption today means taking someone who is not born into a family and making him a legal child.

2. Adoption in the ancient world had to do with children born into the family - blood relation.

3. Every father adopted his son at the age of 14.

4. For the first 14 years (in the Roman Empire) a son was put under slaves: Someone took him to school (called in Galatians a pedagogue) and he protected him from being kidnapped. Some tutored him.

5. Sons were barely as good as slaves for the first 14 years.

6. They wore a robe called a toga of youth and it always had the same pattern or design. You could always tell a child's age by the type of robe.

7. On his 14th birthday the whole family were gathered together and the boy was brought in wearing his toga of youth for the last time.

8. His father stepped forward and took the toga by the shoulders and lifted his left hand and drooped it to the floor.

9. A slave standing there took another toga called the toga virilis (Robe of manhood) and gave it to the father who took this robe and put it around his son and then usually for the last time kissed his son.

10. Then he stepped back and said, "My son, you have now been adopted into the family."

11. Adoption meant that they were now an adult and this gave them certain privileges:

    a. Privilege of voting.
    b. Allowed to manage money for the first time
    c. He could now get married
    d. He could enter military service

12. He was now regarded as an adult at age 14. Life span was shorter so they became adults sooner.

13. Adoption dealt with a natural child of a family, an heir.

14. He is now no longer under slaves, but commands them.

15. Adoption meant taking someone already in the family and recognizing him as an adult son.

Adultery: Doctrine of
(Category 17)

Ephesians 4:19, "Who being past feeling have given themselvers over unto lasciviousness, to work all uncleanness with greediness.

1. Adultery is prohibited. Exodus 20:14, Deut. 5:18.

2. Adultery refers to sexual relations before marriage, or extra-marital relations while married with other partners.

3. Fornication referred to sexual relations in the heathen temples making the sex act a form of religion.

4. Category #2 love is sanctioned in marriage. 1 Thess. 4; Heb. 13:4.

5. First big problem: Adultery is a destroyer of the soul. Prov. 6:32.

6. Adultery has an adverse effect on the body. 1 Cor. 6:13-18. Repercussion of the soul extends into the body.

7. Fornication is called an enemy of the soul. 1 Peter 2:11.

8. In this context (Ephesians 4) "pleonezie" translated "greediness" refers to believers building scar tissue through adultery. "Greediness can be translated "insatiable desire".

9. The result is sex frustration and a frantic scramble for sexual experience.

10. This can cause nymphomania, frigidity, etc.

11. However, the principle goes beyond adultery: Mental attitude sins, and so on.

12. Scar tissue on the soul leads to a frantic search for happiness in all the details of life.

13. For the believer minus doctrine, the details of life compound his misery.

14. There is no capacity for happiness of love apart from Bible ctrine in the soul.

15. Therefore, believers with scar tissue are left with frustrated desires and insatiable lusts.

16. Inside mental attitude sins continue to result in seld-induced misery.

17. Scar tissue is only removed by the exhale of Bible Doctrine from the human spirit as it is cycled through the facets of the soul.

18. Which means a crash program is necessary for the believer with scar tissue on the soul.

Advents: Two Advents of Three Persons
(Category 18)

I. First Advent of:

A. Satan: Satan (chief of angels) came into perfect environment and destroyed it (changed it into sinfulness). Genesis 1-3

B. Christ: Christ came to provide salvation. He came to bring man something which was greater than that which he had before in innocence. He came to solve the sinfullness which originated with Satan.

C. Holy Spirit: Came at Pentecost to provide, in the believer (all of whom represent Jesus Christ on earth) exactly what God the Son produced while He walked, in His humanity, on the earth while sustained by the Holy Spirit.

John 14:12 is speaking of greater works in quantity; but same in quality--production of the Holy Spirit. John 16:7-14 is speaking of the Church Age.

II. Second Advent of:

A. Jesus Christ: At the 2nd Advent, Operation Footstool provides 1,000 years of perfect environment.

B. Holy Spirit: The Holy Spirit comes in the millennium. Joel 2:28-29; 2 Thess. 2:7. The Holy Spirit provides appreciation of Christ on earth, when Jesus Christ is absent from the earth: Church Age. In the millennium Christ is present and visible and there will be a new type of spirituality.

C. Satan: At the end of the millennium Satan leads a revolt. Rev. 20:7-9

"All Things Work Together for Good"
(Category 19)

Romans 8:28 is for believers only.

1. Suffering is mixed with the plan of God resulting in Divine Good.

2. This Divine Good is absolute and is a blessing.

3. God only has a short time in which to demonstrate His love to the believer through suffering.

4. The plan of God is perfect; therefore, it is greater than any sufferings or problems.

5. Therefore, when any suffering comes to the believer, God's plan calls for maximum blessings.

6. Romans 8:28 refers to all believers--all things (are not good) but WORK together for good. All things work together for good for ALL BELIEVERS.

7. How would all things work together for good--when a believer is out of fellowship? God's plan provides for divine discipline. What about severe trial like an automobile accident? God's plan for the believer is bigger than the trial--1 Cor. 10:13.

8. This verse, as all verses of Scripture is a grace-faith operation all the way. It must be believed (epignosis) to be enjoyed.

9. Once this verse is understood--other verses such as 1 Thess 5:18 make sense by faith application, "In everything give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you."

10. Romans 8:28 is one of the basic anchor verses in the faith-rest technique. See Category: Promise Sheet.

Ambassadorship
(Category 20)

2 Corinthians 5:20, "Now then we are ambassadors for Christ, as though God did beseech you by us: we pray you in Christ's stead, be ye reconciled to God".

Ephesians 6:20, "For which I am an ambassador in bonds: that therein I may speak boldy, as I ought to speak."

1. An ambassador does not appoint himself. A believer is appointed by the Lord.

2. An ambassador does not support himself - Phil. 4:19. God provides all our needs (D. O. A.).

3. An ambassador does not belong to the country where he is sent. The believer is not of the world, but heaven.

4. An ambassador has instructions in written form. The Word of God is for believers. Believers have the mind of Christ. 1 Cor. 2:16.

5. When an ambassador is recalled, it is because war is being declared. When the Church is recalled, hostility begins in the Tribulation. Church is raptured before the tribulation.

6. An ambassador does not take an insult as personal. God takes care of His name and Word; we are not here to defend, but to spread; the Holy Spirit takes care of the results.

7. The ambassador does not enter a country for his own personal interest. He is a representative of the country he represents. We believers, as ambassadors, represent the Lord Jeus Christ.

8. The position of ambassador--Personal representative as above.

9. The privilege of being an ambassador is the highest calling. We are called to the highest calling for Christ.

10. Perspective is service; prospect is reward. We serve Christ, and are rewarded in Heaven.

Angelic Conflict
(Category 20)

1. Angels are divided into two actegories:

   a Unfallen: Holy & Elect: 1 Tim. 5:21; Mark 8:38
   b. Fallen: Headed by Satan

      (1) Operational (demons) 1 Tim. 4:1
      (2) Imprisoned (2 Peter 2:4, those of Genesis 6)

2. Fallen angels, plus Satan, are sentenced to the Lake of Fire. Matt. 25:41. This sentence took place in the past.

3. Satan objected to the judgment and, in objecting, he charged the character of God. "How can a loving God cast His creatures into the Lake of Fire?" No specific Scripture worded in this way--rather a Scriptural deduction, from many many passages.

4. Satan's negative volition is the pattern for man's negative volition. Isa. 14:12-14.

5. To resolve the Angelic Conflict an inferior creature was placed on one planet, earth. Heb. 2:7

6. Man's volition is tested under two systems:

   a. Before the fall: In innocence he was ignorant of sin, he had no sin nature. Man had volition.

   b. After the fall: In sinfulness he had a old sin nature and volition (free will) AND a new tree - the cross. Man could exercise positive volition - non-meritorious faith.

7. Man's faith in Christ resolves the Angelic Conflict. Issue: Will mankind (inferior to angels by birth) choose the work of Christ? If so this resolves the Angelic Conflict. Heb. 1 & 2.

8. Jesus Christ became a man thru physical birth (virgin birth). By birth, Jesus Christ was lower than the angels. Humanity of Christ is now higher than angels as He sits at the right hand of God. In Christ we, positionally, are at the right hand of God; therefore we are, positionally, higher than angels: therefore we have a servant - a guardian angel, Heb. 1:4-14.

9. Mankind is under angelic observation. The angels learn divine judgment of God by watching the human race. Luke 15:7, 10; Eph. 3:10, 1 Tim. 5:21; 1 Peter 1:12, 1 Cor. 4:9; 6:3, 11:10.

10. Through the fall of man Satan gained control of this planet. Faith in Jesus Christ grees man from Satan's comination. 2 Cor. 4:4, John 12:31, 14:30, 16:11, Eph. 2:2.

Angelic Conflict: Bumping Demons off the Earth (Category 21)

Through the fall of man, Satan gained control of the earth, but not necessarily control of man (redeemed) on earth. Man's volition as an unbeliever can act positively towards the Gospel, and be saved completely independently of Satan in the devil's world.

Man's non-meritorious faith in Jesus Christ resolves the angelic conflict. The angels see why they are condemned through observing mankind trusting in Jesus Christ--that the free will of man does not necessarily choose against God as Satan and the fallen angels did.

This is the answer to "why man" to resolve the angelic conflict. In Operation Footstool (Christ the Victor) the number of believers saved in the Church Age will equal the number of fallen angels. The Church will come back with Christ and will bumpt the fallen angels into the Lake of Fire. In the Millennium there will be believers in resurrection bodies as well as believers in human bodies. Believers in resurrection bodies will help throw fallen angels into the Lake of Fire.

Detailed explanation of the Angelic Bump:

I. The Victory of Positional Truth: 1 Cor. 15:20 ff.

This position is IN CHRIST consequently in position--we are far above angels, either fallen or unfallen.

A. Christ in His humanity--was seated in heaven. Heb. 1:13. No angel has ever been offered that position and never will. But we have that position in Christ.

B. The Body of Christ is formed ONE BY ONE.

C. THERE IS A SPECIFIC TIME when it is completed.

II. The Triumph of the Resurrections:

A. First Phase: Christ's resurrection: 1 Cor. 15:23

B. Second Phase: "Afterward they that are Christ's at his coming . . ." 1 Cor. 15:23 Church raptured

C. Third Phase: "Then (eita)" means next: 2nd Advent. 1 Cor. 15:24-25, Isa. 26:16-21, Dan. 12:1-3. OT believers resurrected.

D. Fourth Phase: Millennium saints raptured, Rev. 20.

Positional truth plus resurrection puts believers in a position to bump fallen angels.

III. Modus Operandi of Bumping Demons at the 2nd Advent

A. Unbelievers are removed through the seals, trumpet, and vial judgments, as well as the final battle of Armagaddon. Rev. 6-19, Zech. 12

B. Demons are removed in that day--2nd Advent: The Mechanics are not given in Zech. 13:2, and Hosea 2:14-23 because the Church was not revealed in the OT. It is a mystery, Ephesians 3:1-10

1. Zech. 13:2, "cut off the names of the idols": Idols equal demon possession.

2. "I will cause the unclean spirit to pass out of the land": This revers to the removal of demons--altho method is not given.

3. Hosea 2:14-23 tells about the removal of demons, note 2:17

C. Method of their removal: Col. 2:14-15

1. Col. 2:14, The Cross: "Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross." Judgment of Satan and sin.

2. Col. 2:15, The Executing of the Sentence, "And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it."

a. "Spoiled": Referring to battle--with

(1) Principalities & Powers--

(2) At times these terms can refer to government leaders as in Titus 3:1.

(3) But here it refers to demons--proof--compare Eph. 6:12 with Heb. 2:14. Also 1 Peter 3:22.

b. "Show of them openly": Public display of victory.

This is the 2nd Advent--Matt. 24:27-31

This is based on the Roman Triumvirate: Referring to the Victor's march--all the prisoners were marched through the streets of rome. (in chains)

c. "triumphing over them in it":

(1) The victors in Rome had a one on one principle

(2) One Roman soldier killed one prisoner--

(3) Until all were killed (bumped off)

IV. Conclusion:

A. Our position in Christ gives us a position above fallen angels. 1:14 "guardian angels"

B. Our position in Christ, and subsequent resurrection at the rapture put us into position to judge angels--and to bump the unfallen ones. 1 Cor. 6:3, "know ye not that we shall judge angels." One on one--Satan judged by Christ, demons by believers.

C. Therefore, every time homosapien believers--the elect angels of God rejoice. Luke 15:10, "Likewise I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth." WHY?

D. This hastens the day of Operation Footstool--2nd Advent. Every time a person believes in Christ--it is sure that one more demon will be bumped off.

E. Therefore Satan tries to delay this:

1. Keep the unbeliever from believing.

2. Keep the believer from true spirituality;

So try to understand the Angelic Conflict from God's standpoint. Also try to understand the Angelic Conflict from Satan's standpoint.

V. Summary:

A. Why man?--has just been explained.

B. Why was sin permitted?

By permitting sin in the human race, God demonstrates through salvation the point that +R snd J meet love and eternal life. The issue: Will man, inferior to angels, equipped with the same free will, choose for or against the Lord Jesus Christ? Heb. 1:4-14, Heb. 2, Col. 2:10-14.

C. The Angelic Conflict also answers "Why suffering?"

1. Suffering demands operation of volition, to utilize or not utilize God's grace. God demonstrates that man's volition after salvation, can make decisions compatible with His will and His Word and further put down Satan.

2. God can demonstrate His love to us through suffering only in Phase 2 (our time on earth as a believer) our greatest blessings come to us through our greatest sufferings when apply doctrine (epignosis) use faith-rest and faith-patience from a frame of reference and keep on being occupied with Jesus Christ.

D. The Angelic Conflict answers, "Why 2 kinds of spirituality?"

1. Church Age: When believers are in fellowship with the Lord they produce the character of Jesus Christ (after He was glorified, John 7:39) as we represent Him on earth while He is away. Gal. 4:19, 5:22-23, Eph. 5:1, 18. The erection of the E. C. reflects the glory of God.

2. Millennium: Spirituality will be associated with emotion and ecstatics because Jesus Christ will be on earth ruling, there will be perfect environment, and religion will be removed. Joel 2:28-29.

D. There are various types of angels:

1. Cherubim (highest and most intelligent) Gen. 3:24, Exodus 25, Isaiah 37:16, Ezek. 1:28)

2. Seraphim: Isaiah 6:2

3. Evangelizing: Rev. 14:6

4. Teaching: Acts 7, Gal. 3, Psalm 63, Deut. 33, Zech. 1:9, 11.

5. Ruling: Rev. 4-5

6. Guardian: Heb. 1:14

7. Abyss: Rev. 9:1

8. Fire: Rev. 14:18

9. Waters: Rev. 16:5

10. Watcher: Daniel 4:13, 17, 23

E. Angels have names, apparently nationalities, races, also different ministeries, also such distinction of some more powerful, more intelligent, more beautiful, more musical than others.

F. There are hundreds of passages dealing with the category of angels in the Bible.

Angelic Conflict: Major Passage Outline: Heb. 1-2
(Category 22)

I. The Superiority of Jesus Christ in the Angelic Conflict: Heb. 1

A. Jesus Christ is BETTER than the Prophets: 1:1-3

1. The Prophets Message was to Reveal Christ: 1:1

2. Our God's Purpose is to Speak through His Son: 1:2-3
(The Seven Glories of Jesus Christ as the Victor of the Angelic Conflict)

B. Jesus Christ is BETTER than the Angels: 1:4-5

1. Incarnation

a. Virgin Birth
b. Death
c. Burial
d. Resurrection

2. Ascension

3. Session: (When Christ sat down)

C. Jesus Christ is BETTER because of the 2nd Advent: 1:6

1. Because of the Doctrine of the First born:

2. Because of the Doctrine of angelic worship:

D. Jesus Christ is BETTER because of His Sovereignty: 1:7-8
(A contrast between Angels and the incarnate Christ).

1. He makes angels His servants: 1:7

2. He uses angels to minister judgment: 1:7

3. Angels don't have a sovereign throne like Him: 1:8

4. Angels don't have administrative government like His--with perfect execution of righteousness. (Impeccibility)

E. Jesus Christ is BETTER BECAUSE of His Appointment: 1:9-12

1. He is appointed to solve the Angelic Conflict: 1:9

2. He is the indestructive appointed one: 1:10-12

F. Jesus Christ is BETTER because of Operation Footstool: 1:13-14 (See categories on Operation Footstool)

1. Only Jesus Christ is Invited to Sit Down: 1:13
2. Believers are also seated in Christ: 1:14
3. Angels then serve believers on earth currently: 1:14

II. The Salvation Issue in the Angelic Conflict: Hebrews 2
(The development of Operation Footstool)

A. The Human Race and the Warning of the Angelic Conflict: 1-4

1. A warning to the Jewish Unbeliever: 2:1 (67 AD)
2. An analogy to the Judgment of Fallen Angels: 2:2,3
3. Special Evangelism to the Jews before the 5th Cycle: 2:4

B. The Ultimate Power of Christ in the Angelic Conflict: 2:5

1. No Angels will rule in the Millennium: (they may serve--but no rulership)
2. Jesus Christ the God-Man will rule in the Millennium.

C. The Contrast between the FIRST ADAM and the LAST ADAM in the Angelic Conflict: 2:6-9

1. The Insignificance of Man: (1st Adam) 2:6
2. The Position of Man: (1st Adam) 2:7
3. The Last Adam and Victory: (last Adam) 2:8
4. The Mechanics of Victory: (last Adam) 2:9

D. The Fruitage of Christ's Work in the Angelic Conflict: 10-13

1. Completion of the Body of Christ: 2:10
2. Oneness in the Body of Christ: 2:1 (positional truth)
3. Documentation of the Plan (whole procedure) the Word: 2:12
4. Revealing the Two Sides to Operation Footstool in the AC: 2:1

E. The Mechanics of Operation Footstool in the Angelic Conflict: 2:14
(one on one--Christ vs. the Devil--neutralized him)

F. The Victory of Operation Footstool in the Angelic Conflict: 2:15-16

1. The Result of the Victory: (deliverance--salvation--no fear of death--apply 1 Cor 15:54-57)
2. The Basis of the Victory: 2:16 (incarnation)

G. The Suffering Issue of the Angelic Conflict: 2:17,18

1. The Suffering Christ as a High-Priest: 2:17,18a
2. The sustaining of the believer as a result: 2:18b

The sum result of these two chapters is found in Ephesians 3:8-10; verse 10 indicating, "to the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly places might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God." Ephesians 6:12 indicates that these are demon powers. Thus because of God's great plan the church, God the Son's body, is used to consummate the Angelic Conflict. Satan is judged and bumped: demons are judged and bumped. Result, perfect environment in the Millennium.

Anger: Greek Usage Of
(Category 23)

1. Thumos: This is boiling agitation of feeling or emotional turbulence, tantrums, and is translated "wrath" in Eph. 4:31. This type of anger is forbidden and involves the emotions. Luke 4:28 describes those in the synagogue "filled with wrath." Also check out 2 Cor. 12:20; Gal. 5:20; Eph. 4:31; Col. 3:8. In Col. 3:8, for example, this "wrath" is not to be in the local church.

2. Paragismos: This is anger accompanied by antagonism, resentment, bitterness, exasperation. This anger is designed to make others angry. It is translated "wrath" in Ephesians 4:26. These emotional outbursts are forbidden. This is a mental attitude sin anger where individuals are angry, they burn on the inside. Ephesians 6:4

3. Orge: This is mental attitude anger which can be legitimate--or it can be used in the wrong manner.

   a. Legitimate orge: This side of orge is commanded, it is legitimate when guided by Bible Doctrine. Mark 3:5, Acts 13:9-11. This does not grieve the Holy Spirit.

      (1) It is a mental attitude of resentment toward heresy--

      (2) It is a mental attitude of resentment toward legalism--

      (3) It is a mental attitude of resentment toward unbelief--

      (4) It is a mental attitude of resentment toward religion or anything antagonistic to the Word. It also can be used in the wrong manner.

   b. Wrong Use: This is resentment that is definitely mental attitude sins.

      Eph. 4:31; Col. 3:8; Matthew 5:22; Luke 14:21; 15:28; Eph. 4:26; Rev. 11:18; and many other passages.

Antioch
(Category 24)

1. In Acts 11:20 the Church at Antioch was founded by men of Cyprus and Cyrene. No apostles were involved in starting this church.

2. The 1st man to go to Antioch was Barnabas, a grace man, who was sent from Jerusalem to check Antioch to see what was going on. Acts 11:22-23.

3. After observation of the Lord's work, he went to Tarsus to find Paul, for Barnabas (who had the gift of prophecy) knew that the Antioch Church needed a pastor-teacher and he sought after the best that could be found--Paul. Acts 11:25-26. The principle: The Church must have someone leading a local church with the gift of pastor-teacher. A Church needs Bible doctrine communicated.

4. The Antioch church actually sent money to the church of Jerusalem t help the destitute believers. Legalism finally dragged down the Jerusalem church--and caused a pile of mental attitude sins. The grace church sustained the legalistic church in their time of need which shows Antioch's orientation to grace. Acts 11:29-30.

5. Antioch was taught grace from the start. Acts 11:23.

6. Antoich was prospered of the Lord by the rapid recorded in Acts 11:24 (growth of expansion).

7. The Antoich church was interested in doctrine. Acts 11:26 ff. This interest in doctrine stabilized the situation and made it possible for the great missionary movement in the 1st century, whereas the Jerusalem area was destroyed in 70 AD.

Anti-Semitism
(Category 25)

I. Genesis 12:1-3 Anti-semitism Clause

Note verse 3, "And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed."

II. Pattern of Anti-Semitism Clause:

Any nation or individual that maltreats (unjustified persecution) the Jews will be punished for it. Illustration: Assyria, Spain, Germany, dreyfus Case. The U. S. Constitution and Declaration of Independence protect the Jews.

III. The Three Categories of an Israelite or Jew:

A. Racial: A Jew is any member of homosapiens that has even one gene of Abraham, Issac and Jacob (it has to be all three).

B. Regenerate: Romans 9:6-14 - A racial Jew that has been born-again.

C. Religious: A racial Jew that has not accepted Jesus Christ as Saviour and has turned to Judaism.

IV. How to Evaluate a Jew:

A. As an individual: Jews are human beings.

B. As a nation (Israeli)

C. As an American citizen - political and social standards.

D. As internationalists (a few are, most are not)

E. As a born-again believer--(Jewish type)--Judge not that ye be not judged!

Apostates
(Category 26)

The book of Jude

I. Characteristics of Apostates:

A. Saturated with human viewpoint: v. 8
B. Despise authority: v. 8
C. Blaspheme God: v. 8
D. Mockers: v. 18
E. Lust-centered: v. 18
F. Trouble makers: v. 19
G. Human-viewpoint because not possessors of the Holy Spirit. v. 19.

II. Categories of Apostates: v. 11

A. Lust for praise (Cain--unbeliever)
B. Lust for money (Balaam--a believer)
C. Lust for power (Korah--a believer)

III. Types of Apostates:

A. Believers: v. 5
B. Angelic: v. 6
C. Unbelievers: v. 7

IV. Illustrations describing Apostates from Nature: v. 12-13

A. "Spots in love": Literally "hidden rocks in shallow water that destroy ships, etc." The apostates sneak into fellowship dinners to gain acceptance and destroy.

B. "Clouds without water": Water represents the Word. Unprofitable clouds in agricultural environment. Drift a great deal of the time.

C. "Trees": Autumn trees which are expected to yield fruit. Autumn trees which are expected to yield fruit. "Twice dead" is Active voice, result of their volition. "Plucked up" is passive voice, receives the action of the verb, i.e. the judgment of God.

D. "Raging waves": They reach the shore and dissipate, destroying themselves by their own power. So apostates destroy themselves.

E. "Wandering stars": Great brief light. Apostates have short, ineffective influence.

V. The Judgment of the Apostates: v. 14-15

A. Jesus Christ at the 2nd Advent: v. 14
B. Jude as a pastor-teacher: v. 15

VI. The Defense against Apostates: v. 17-21

A. The Word of God: v. 17

B. Identification of Apostates (See Characteristics)

C. Personal Worship: v. 20

1. Bible study (Erection of an edification complex)
2. Prayer

VII. Offense against Apostates:

A. Refute: v. 22 (From Greek)

B. Witness: (To unbelieving apostates--v. 23) But there are qualifications on this. Compare 2 John v. 7-11.

C. Have compassion (agapao love) for believers. v. 21 (Don't get mental attitude sins as a result of pressure from apostates. Understand the doctrine of separation--see category. You will not have rapport with them, and from many of them you should separate yourself.

D. Despise the false doctrine of the apostates. v. 23

Apostles to the Church, Roster
(Category 27)

1. The eleven disciples were given the gift of apostleship, making them apostles to the church.

2. The eleven as listed in Acts 1:13 are:

a. Peter (Simon Peter)
b. James, son of Zebedee (brother of John)
c. John, brother of James, writer of 1, 2, 3, John & Revelation.
d. Andrew (Peter's brother)
e. Philip
f. Thomas (Doubting Thomas)
g. Bartholomew (Also called Nathaniel)
h. Matthew the Publican. Tax collector, wrote Matthew
i. James the son of Alphaeus
j. Simon Zelotes (the Zealot, Simon the Canaanite)
k. Judas the brother of James, In Matt. 10 and Mark 3 he is listed as Lebbaeus, whose surname was Thaddaeus.

3. #12 was Paul. Rom. 1:1; 1 Cor. 15:9, Col. 1:1

4. #13 was Barnabas. Acts 14:14, Gal. 2:9

5. #14 was James, half brother of Jesus. The writer of the book of James. 1 Cor. 15:7, Gal. 1:19

6. Apollos appears to be an apostle, 1 Cor. 4:6-9. Silas & Timothy also, compare 1 Thess. 1:1 with 2:6. Silas had a great ministry in witnessing and in the field of music. Timothy did not often use his grace-authority.

Apostleship
(Category 28)

1. Apostleship is a spiritual gift. 1 Cor. 12:28

2. Apostles are appointed (Sovereign decision--no merit involved) by:
   God the Father: Romans 1:1
   Jesus Christ provided the spiritual gifts: Eph. 4:11
   Holy Spirit matches the gift to the individual. 1 Cor. 12:11

3. No apostle was appointed to the church until after the Ascension of Christ. Eph. 4:8-11. Peter was NOT appointed an apostle to the CHURCH in Matt. 16:18-19. The disciples were appointed apostles to Israel (at that time) not to the Church. Note Matt. 10:6, "house of Israel". The "keys" are the perogative of witnessing and they do not carry special authority.

4. An apostle must be an eye witness to the resurrected Christ. 1 Cor. 9:1, 1 Cor. 15:8-9.

5. An apostle had also the gift of miracles. Paul did not have the gift of healing at the end of his life, it was removed from h[illegible] before he died, some ten years before, 57 AD. 2 Cor. 12:6-10, Phil. 2:27 with 2 Tim. 4:20

6. This using of miracles was necessary to sustain their apostolic authority. Acts 5:15, 16:16-18, 28:8-9.

7. There is no perpetuation of apostleship. No sons became apostles. We never receive anything in the Christian life through physical birth. Everything we have comes as a result of spiritual birth, regeneration.

8. Apostles exercised absolute authority (spiritual dictatorship) over the churches until the completion of the canon (66 Bible books) which is now the absolute. Today no one has the right to exercise authority over more than one church. Each local church should be self-sustaining and self-governing.

9. Apostles received direct revelation from God. All revelation today is through the Word. All writers of the NT were either apostles or someone closely associated with an apostle (Mark and Luke).

10. No one today has or will reach apostolic stature. 2 Cor. 12:12. No human being can perform miracles at will today.

11. Once the Canon of Scripture was complete, the gift of apostleship was withdrawn. (Writing of Revelation). The Canon of the New Testament became the basis of modus operandi and the absolute criterion.

12. A[illegible]stle is an Attic Greek Word: Admiral, supreme commander, one who has the highest rank. Apostles exercised absolute authority (spiritual dictatorship) over the churches until the Canon completion, which is now the ABSOLUTE AUTHORITY.

Appointment: Lev. 2:6
(Category 29)

1. God's appointment was for Jesus Christ only.

2. Jesus Christ was appointed to go to the Cross in Eternity Past, Ephesians 1:4, Psalm 2:7

3. Only Jesus Christ was elected to do this and only Jesus Christ has a destiny at the Cross.

4. The believer shares the election and destiny of Jesus Christ upon conversion. He hocks into the great plan of God at that point.

5. Both election and predestination are the same as the plan of God--descriptive of the plan of God.

6. Election and predestination apply to those who are in the plan of God (believers)

7. The free will of Jesus Christ's Humanity had to agree to go to the cross. Heb. 10:5-7; Matt. 20:22; 26:39.

Ascension
(Category 30)

1. This vitally important doctrine has been almost completely forgotten. (Try to find books written on the Ascension).

2. The Ascension is a central doctrine in the Angelic Conflict--without it there would be no positional truth and no bumping of angels. Heb. 1:13 and surrounding context.

3. There is no indwelling ministry of the Holy Spirit until the Ascension. Compare Acts 1 & 2. with 1 Cor. 12:13.

4. There is no priesthood among believers without the ascended High-Priest. Heb. 1:3, 1:13 and the whole context of the book of Hebrews.

5. It is impossible to have a Mediator without the Ascension. 1 Timothy 2:5. God the Father accepts Jesus Christ and we accept Jesus Christ as the mediator. Job 9

6. Jesus Christ would not be our advocate without Ascension, nor could He intercede for us. 1 John 2:1-2.

7. There would be no Church, no Rapture, and no 2nd Advent without the Ascension.

Much more could be said about the Ascension, but it is a central doctrine in the whole plan of God. The above category will give a believer to study further on it.

Ark: 8 Characteristics, Gen. 6:14-16
(Category 30)

1. One material: Gopher wood: The humanity of Christ. Phil. 2:5-8; Heb. 2:16. Growing tree refers to the life of Christ, cutting the tree is a picture of the cross. Whoever provides salvation must die - twice: Spiritually and physically.

   The Ark (Christ) 8 people in POSITIONAL TRUTH, Rom. 8:1. No JUDGMENT to them IN CHRIST Jesus. The world outside was destroyed Those inside were safe.

2. Pitch: Covering, atonement. Waterproofing. Romans 5:11, Heb. 9:22.

3. One set of plans: Specific dimensions. The ratio is what makes the ark stable. God's plan:

   a. Phase 1: Salvation: Believer, Acts 16:31
   b. Phase 2: Time: The Christian way of life. Stay in fellowship, Eph. 5:18, how? by 1 John 1:9. Witness, using pertinent doctrine, John 3:36, Acts 1:8.
   c. Phase 3: Eternity: Spend it with Him. John 14:3

4. One Door: Only one way of salvation. John 14:6, "I am the way, the truth and the life, no man cometh unto the Father, but by me."

5. One Window: Holy Spirit. There is only one way to have fellowship with God and that is rebound, 1 John 1:9

6. Three Floors: Death, Burial, and Resurrection of Jesus Christ. There are three areas of positional truth.

   a. Retroactive Positional Truth: The Cross
   b. Current Positional Truth: Top circle
   c. Experiential Positional Truth: Bottom circle

   There are three categories of sanctification--see sanctification category.

7. The Storm came from below and above. It rained 40 days and nights. Up to this time the earth was watered by mist from below. Gen. 2:6. Noah believed God: It did rain, even tho it hadn't before. Omnipotence + Immutability = Faithfulness.

   A[illegible] inside? God provided a miracle--same as in the disposal of waste products.

   The storm fell ON THE ARK, but NOT on the INSIDE. Union with Christ is judgment proof. Romans 8:1, "There is therefore now no condemnation (judgment) to them which are IN Christ Jesus."

   Judgment fell ON Christ as He hung on the cross.

8. One Category of Survivors - Believers: Twice in the human race are all unbelievers removed from the earth and believers are left on the earth. The flood and the Baptism of Fire (2nd Advent).

Ark of the Covenant (Ex. 25:10-11) (Category 31)

1. The Ark of the covenant (with the Mercy Seat on top) was in the Holy of Holies, in the Tabernacle.

2. Ark of the Covenant speaks of redemption: Christ paid for our sins.

3. Ark was a box made of acacia wood overlaid with gold.

   Wood speaks of the humanity of Christ.
   Gold speaks of the deity of Christ.

   Two together speaks of the uniqueness of Christ.

4. Ark of Covenant was a picture of Christ bearing our sins - Box represents Jesus Christ.

5. Inside of the Box are three things which represent sin:

   a. The Tables of law: Sin in the sense of violation or transgression of God's order.

   b. Pot of Manna: Rejection of God's provision

   c. Aaron's rod that budded: Revolt against God's authority (Levitical tribe)

   2. Cor. 5:21, "He who knew no sin was made sin for us."

6. Over the top of the box was a MERCY SEAT (a solid gold throne) and on each end of the throne was a cherib (highest ranking of all angels.

7. 1st cherub represented the +R of God.
   2nd cherub represented the Justice of God.

8. +R looks down and condemns. Romans 3:23
   Justice looks down and places a penalty. Romans 6:23

9. Once a year on the Day of Atonement, the High Priest went twice (once for himself and once for the people) into the Holy of Holies, and sprinkled the blood of the sacrifice on the altar over the top of the Mercy Seat.

0. +R looks at the blood (which spoke of Jesus' spiritual death) and was satisfied.

1. Justice looks at the blood and was satisfied. (Christ being judged for us).

2. We have in the Ark and the Mercy Seat a picture of God's satisfaction with the work of Jesus Christ (Propitiation) or the divine viewpoint of salvation. +R and Justice are satisfied.

Athlete
(Category 32)

I. Six Analogies: 2 Tim. 2:5 - "strives for masteries"

A. To get into the gymnasium, one must be a citizen. To serve the Lord, one must be born-again.

B. They live in the gym for 10 months. Rebound is preparation in the world, but not of the world. John 17:16

C. They must answer all trumpet calls - Obedience to the Word.

D. Knowing the Word and doing it in the Spirit - exercise.

E. Oil was used on the athlete - Holy Spirit

F. Specific diet. Only can serve to the extent that you feed on the Word.

II. Rewards: 2 Kinds: Seen and unseen

A. Seen: At the games the winner receives ivy leaves.

B. Unseen at the Games:

1. Ride around in the equivalent to the modern day Cadillac.
2. Ode to the athletes
3. Statue erected
4. 10,000 dracma - $50,000
5. Life-time pass to the games
6. Exemption from taxation
7. Children supported and fed.

Atonement: Unlimited
(Category 33)

I. Definition: Jesus Christ died for the sins of the whole human race. (Unlimited atonement)

1 John 2:2, "And He (JC) is the propitiation (satisfaction) for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world."

II. Jesus Christ paid for the sins OF ALL members of the human race, not just for the redeemed (ones who accept JC). 2 Peter 2:1, " . . . even denying the Lord that bought them". (the false prophets, teachers, etc.)

III. He died for all: 1 Tim. 2:6, Heb. 2:9, Titus 2:11, 2 Cor. 5:14, 15, 19; Ezek. 18:4

IV. Application of the Unlimited Atonement to Salvation:

A. Jesus Christ died for all

B. Why? Because (Romans 3:23)

1. "All have sinned": All were spiritually dead.
2. "Imputed sin": All sinned when Adam sinned. All were counted guilty because Adam was counted guilty.

3. 2 Cor. 5:14-15, "if one died for all, then were all dead."

V. The VOLITION of man is the issue in Salvation. Will man choose FOR CHRIST OR AGAINST CHRIST?

VI. If man chooses against Christ, he stands on his own good works against the Good work of Christ - cross.

VII. The issue at the last judgment (Great White Throne) is human good versus Divine Good.

VIII. Unlimited atonement in the Old Testament:

Isaiah 44:22-33

"Jacob": Unbeliever
"Israel": Believer

Attacks on the Humanity of Jesus Christ
(Category 34)

Satan made every attempt in Old Testament times to frustrate the line of true humanity, and the virgin birth.

1. The Murder of Abel: When it became known that the "seed of the woman" (Jesus Christ) was to come thru Abel, Satan inspired Cain (first religious man) to murder. So the line had to come throught Seth.

2. Angelic Infiltration into Human Race: The attempt to destroy true humanity, greatest attack made upon our salvation. It was so successful that the line by which Jesus Christ could come into the world was narrowed down to one family - Noah. (eight people).

3. Several attacks on the line of Abraham.

   a. Sarah wound up in a harem in Egypt
   b. Pharaoh commanded to kill the male line of Israel. Moses in Exodus 1.
   c. Pharaoh attempted to kill Israel immediately after the Exodus. Exodus 14.

4. Numerous attacks on the line of David.

   a. Jehoshaphat's last grandson survived when his mother, Athalia attempted to kill him.
   b. Hezekiah (childless) about to die for discipline.
   c. Haman's plot to annihilate Jews (Book of Esther).
   d. Prospect of Rahab being killed.

5. Joseph's line. Refused to have Mary killed when he found out she was pregnant, before he know about the virgin birth.

Once Jesus Christ is born of a virgin, no longer does Satan try to attack the seed of the woman. Satan's attack now is to:

DISTORT:

IGNORE: Facts concerning the Virgin Birth, and the cross, and central principles of salvation.

DISCREDIT:

Attorneyship of Jesus Christ
(Category 35)

I. Jesus Christ is the believer's defense attorney because:

A. Christ bore the sins (pre and post salvation sins) of the whole world (unlimited atonement) on the cross. 1 Peter 2:24, 2 Cor. 5:21, Rev. 1:5, Col. 2:14, Heb. 9:27-28.

B. The Father judged our sins when Christ was bearing them. Hebrew of Psalm 22:1-6, 1 Peter 3:18.

C. Since a person's sins were judged once at the cross, they cannot be judged again. Romans 6:10. The law of double jeopardy.

D. Therefore, since you can only be judged once for a sin, Satan's accusation is thrown out of court. That sin was judged at the cross.

E. The believer's sins then becomes a family matter. The believer gets chastened, Heb. 12:6. Post-salvation sins are blotted out by rebound, 1 John 1:9.

The basis of defense: 1 John 1:7, "The blood of Jesus Christ keeps on cleansing from all sins".

II. God's Disposition of the Sins of the Human Race:

A. Sins of the Unbeliever:

1. Christ bore his sins on the cross. 1 Peter 2:24. He also rejected human good, Eph. 2:8-9.

2. The unbeliever who rejects Christ, stands on human good and this does not measure up; but his sins are never mentioned because they have already been judged in Christ. Rev. 20:12. Condemned on basis of rejection of Christ, John 3:18.

B. Sins of the Believer:

1. Christ bore his sins on the cross.

2. Therefore, when Satan accuses the believer in heaven, Jesus Christ, our Defense Attorney, pleads our case (five points above) and the case is thrown out of court.

Authority in Divine Institutions
(Category 36)

1. There are Divine Institutions, there are also Christian Institutions (Local Church and organizations within the local church). Divine Institutions found in Genesis 2-11.

2. In each there is authority:

   a. Volition: Authority is the free will of each individual. Whenever you subject yourself to an institution, you are subject to its authority, but you have the right to move out of that situation. This authority (volition) should give you confidence in your own decisions. Adam & Eve in the Garden.

   b. Marriage: Husband is authority, head of the home. Gen. 2:21 ff.

   c. Family: Father and mother (parents) are the authority. Genesis 4-10

   d. Nationalism: Gen. 11:1-9 Government has authority: Common Law (Judge on the bench and policement) and Laws of Limitation for the benefit of others (Civil Code, Drivers License, etc.)

3. Exposition of Romans 13:1-7 (Responsibility of citizens)

   a. God has ordained certain laws for each nation: These laws come out of the Divine Institutions. Rom. 13:1 "power" indicates authority

   b. God is not the author of confusion: 1 Cor. 14:40, "Let all things be done decently and in order." Romans 13:2

      Resistance to authority involves: 13:2

      (1) Criminal activity (internal resistance)
      (2) Subscribing to any form of internationalism, the enemy of Divine Institution no. 4--Nationalism.
      (3) Religion, because religion always sponsors internationalism.
      (4) Socialism tends to make everyone equal. Divine Institution No. 1 (Freedom-volition) gives everyone the right to choose a vocation.

   c. Rulers have the authority to uphold the laws of the land. Romans 13:3. The principle of authority is to reward the good and prosecute the evil: Criminal activity or violation of common law.

   d. For enforcing the laws of the land, there is various degrees of punishment including capital punishment. Rom. 13:4 "for he beareth not the sword in vain": Refers to the Roman method of capital punishment--beheading. Today it would be the electric chair, the gas chamber, the gallows. This is God's method of removing the mad dogs of society, howbeit through due process.

e. The Principle of subjection to the law (two ways). Rom. 13:5

(1) Some are restrained by fear (wrath)
(2) Some are restrained by their conscience

f. For financing the nation, God has ordained the principle of taxation--that is taxation with representation. Romans 13:6-7.

Income tax of the federal variety is actually the most unfair and worst tax possible. Sales tax would be Biblical. But in the state of Oregon, for example, since we already have a state income tax, and federal income tax, sales tax on top of that would be too much.

g. When a national entity violates the Divine Institutions, such as the USSR and Red China, the citizens of that country are under obligation to the Word of God and not the slavery laws of that country which usually means miraculous deliverance or death. Application of the Divine Institutions to the 20th century--April 1970.

h. It is not "as the people (confusion) so the priest or pastor (confusion) but as the PASTOR (Giving out BD) to the people (receiving BD). Compare Isaiah 24:2 with Jeremiah 6:13-19

4. The Salt and Light Principle: Matt. 5:13-16
Not only does a nation have the Divine Institutions for stability, but the believers in that national entity are the core of stability.

a. Salt:

(1) Unseen perservative: It is the believer in fellowship taking in Bible Doctrine, faith transfer, with the result that an edification structure is being erected. The edification structure perserves the nation.

(2) Flavor principle: The Word is alive and powerful when believed by faith--and transferred to the human spirit, and recycled as a frame of reference. The insipid, flavorless individual is the believer out of fellowship, disciplined, his testimony (if any) is trampled under foot.

b. Light: This is the believer with the edification complex reflecting the glory of God. Salt refers to the believer erecting the EC, light refers to the results of that building.

(1) A city is a group of believers with edification complexes--applicable to a church where Bible doctrine is categorically taught.

(2) "Let your light so shine" is a command to get an edification complex thru daily Bible study. v. 16

Authority: Forms of
(Category 37)

There are five basic things that every child must learn from his parents or church before he is launched on society.

I. The Principle of Respect for Authority:

A. Authority of the Word of God: Heb. 4:12
B. Authority of God the Father: Deut. 6:4
C. Authority of a pastor-teacher: Eph. 4; Heb. 13
D. Authority of rulers of state under D. I. #4, Nationalism

1. Local police: Example--stop sign
2. City level: Mayor
3. State level: Governor: Rom. 12. 1 Tim. 2
4. National level: President, Congress, Rom. 13, 1 Tim. 2

E. Authority of a Judge on the Bench--local to national. 1 Cor, 6:1-8
F. Authority of parents under institution of family. Genesis 4-10, Eph. 6:1-4, 2 Tim. 1
G. Authority of business: Boss, employee, Col. 3, Eph. 5, 1 Tim. 6.
H. Authority of the coach: Athletics. 1 Cor. 9:24-27
I. Authority of the military: Chain of Command Matt. 8:8-10
J. Authority of Education: Teacher in a classroom. (Patterned from a pastor-teacher set-up, one in authority.)
K. Authority of human volition: The right to make certain choices for youself under certain conditions.

II. The Principle of Self-Discipline: Doing the pleasant, as well as the unpleasant. 2 Thess. 3:8-15, Gal. 5:23, the word "temperance" means self-control. The entire book of Proverbs.

III. The Respect for the Privacy of Others: Gal. 6:5, various passages in Proverbs, 1 Peter 3:1-7 (wife winning her husband).

A believer is not to stick his nose into other peoples business, to malign, gossip, malign etc. Any passage that condemns gossip is an privacy (invasion of privacy).

IV. Respect for the Property of Others: Any one of the many passages on stealing, protection of property. This also involves borrowing people's items, bringing them back in good shape.

V. Respect for the rights of others: The right of another person to make a volitional decision (when adult) or the right of parents to make volitional decisions for their children. R-H-I-P Rank has its privileges. A general principle running throughout the Word of God. The chain of command principle, the authorative principle and so on.

Authority in Local Church - 1 Peter 5:5
(Categroy 38)

1 Peter 5:5; "Likewise, ye younger, submit yourselves unto the elder. Yea, all of you be subject one to another, and be clothed with humility: for God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble."

1. "Younger": This plural word refers to all members of the local congregation in contrast to the pastor ("elder").

2. Local church cannot function without authority and leadership.

3. The leadership of the local church is divided into two categories:

   a. Teaching: 1 Tim. 3:1-7
   b. Administrative: 1 Tim. 3:9-13

4. Ultimate leadership must exist in any organization; this is vested in the pastor.

5. "Submit": hupotasso This means recognize the chain of command--and consider yourself under the authority of the leadership in a local church.

6. "Submit" is in the aorist tense--is referring to the point of time during the function and activity of the local church in its services, Bible classes, and means of outreach--a member is to submit--not undermine the authority of the pastor. Also if a church has to administer discipline, the member should submit willing to it, or get out.

7. "Submit" is also in the middle voice which means that the subject is benefitted by the action of the main verb. The congregation is benefitted by submitting to the authority of the pastor.

8. Imperative mood: This is a command to all believer. All believers should be members of some congregation. You should go somewhere where you can feed on the Word of God.

Nearly all trouble in a local church comes from the violation of 1 Peter 5:5. Troublemakers are those who undermine the authority of a pastor--by criticism or other methods. This has to be nipped in the bud by a strong pastor-teacher who runs a tight ship as unto the Lord.

Authority of Pastor: Destruction of - 2 Cor. 10:8-9 (Category 39)

2 Cor. 10:8, "For though I should boast somewhat more of our authority, which the Lord hath given us for edification, and not for your destruction, I should not be ashamed."

1. Constant criticism of the pastor destroys his authority.
2. Loss of authority neutralizes any effect of the communication f Bible Doctrine (D. V.) Divine Viewpoint.
3. No communication of Bible doctrine means no soul breathing.
4. No soul breathing means Scar Tissue.
5. Scar tissue on the soul means no function under the plan of God and thinking of human viewpoint.
6. Human viewpoint means disorientation to the plan of God and grace of God.

2 Cor. 10:9, "That I may not seem as if I would terrify you by letters."

1. Human viewpoint attacks or distorts doctrine.
2. Human viewpoint attacks the Word and the reception and communication of it.
3. Divine viewpoint of 2 Corinthians though hard on them, is an expression of God's love and Paul's love and concern.
4. To have sins and carnality exposed is beneficial and therefore results in rebound and the removal of scar tissue.
5. Divine viewpoint results in a desire for doctrine, which removes scar tissue if it exists.
6. ul, using his authority to lead carnal believers to rebound and give and understanding of the grace of God.

All of this necessary in a local church, if it is to be a relaxed church. Many relaxed churches, makes a relaxed nation: Chain of command is as follows: Doctrine is the only hope--the authority!

1. There must be the right man (pastor) communicating BD to the right people (right church) in a geographical location. Heb. 13
2. There must be a right man for a right woman. Eph. 5:22 Authority is established at that point. Right man
3. Then right parents for right children--Authority is husband.
4. Then you have right leaders for the right nation--. The authority is the governmental leader, "ministers of God". Rom. 13:1-7 Scramble 70-19, 2A, 1B March 3, 1970

Balaam, Doctrine Of
(Category 40)

1. Balaam was a Gentile believer who was hindered from cursing the children of God.

2. Balak hired Balaam to curse the Jews.

3. Instead of Balaam being able to curse the Jews, the Holy Spirit would come upon him and he would prophesy the glorious future of Israel.

4. Balak figured he had been cheated.

5. Balaam's lust for money caused him to find another way to get the Jews into a jam.

6. Balaam advised Balak, King of Moab, to neutralize Israel by getting them out of fellowship, by placing beautiful women in the way of their temptation.

7. When Balaam and Balak parted (Num. 24:25) Balaam had earned his fee but not by cursing the Jews.

8. Hence in Numbers 25:1 with 31:16, we have the story of how Balaam earned his fee.

9. The doctrine of Balaam gives the principle of neutralizing believers by getting them out of fellowship, thus separating them from the source of Divine Power.

10. The doctrine of Balaam is any system of works whereby believers get out of fellowship and stay out of fellowship.

Balaam: Reasons He is a Believer
(Category 41)

1. Balaam not only knew the Lord, but confessed the Lord in the presence of Balak and the messengers from Moab. He also asked the Lord's will and to some extent followed it and then went contrary to it. Numbers 22:8, 13, 18, 19, 38; 23:12.

2. Initially Balaam would not leave Pethor without the Lord's permission: Numbers 22:20. He had a lust for wealth, but being a believer, he was under restraint.

3. The Lord Jesus Christ meets Balaam and converses with Balaam along the way. Numbers 22:22. Not conclusive in itself, but strengthens the argument.

4. The Lord puts words in the mouth of Balaam when he tried to curse Israel- the opposite words. Numbers 23:5, 12, 16.

5. Balaam calls Jehovah "his God". Numbers 22:18

6. The Holy Spirit came upon Balaam. Numbers 24:2

7. In 2 Peter 2:15-16 he is called a prophet.

8. In Numbers 31:8 Balaam dies the sin unto death.

9. Parallel to Balaam is Simon in the New Testament.

   Acts 8:13 Simon is a believer.
   Acts 8:21 Simon is out of fellowship.

Baptisms, Seven (Four Real, Three Ritual)
(Category 42)

Baptize means to IDENTIFY: To be made one with. It means something so identified with something else that its nature or character is changed, or it REPRESENTS a real change that has already taken place.

I. Real Baptisms: (Actual identification)

A. Baptism of Moses: The children of Israel are identified with Moses and the cloud as they pass through the Red Sea. 1 Cor. 10:1-2.

B. Baptism of the Cross or Cup: Matt. 20:22; 2 Cor. 5:21. Jesus Christ drank the cup filled with our sins--identified with our sin and bore it on the cross. He was made sin for us. 1 Peter 2:24.

C. Baptism of the Holy Spirit: (Believer) 1 Cor. 12:13. He at the point of salvation is placed into the body of Christ. He is identified then as a believer, as a Christian. Acts 1:5, Rom. 6:3-4, Gal. 3, Col. 2:12, Eph. 4:5.

D. Baptism of Fire: (Unbelievers) The Baptism of Judgment at the 2nd Advent on all unbelievers--battle of Armageddon. Matt. 25:31, 33; 3:11; Luke 3:16; 2 Thess. 1:7-9

II. Ritual Baptisms: Representative identification. Water is used. Water is symbolic of something else, but the individual is really identified with the water.

A. Baptism of John: Matthew 3:6, 11a. Water is symbolic of the Kingdom of God which John preached. People, when baptized by John were indicating, in effect; "I have previously believed in Christ, I am now symbolizing that identification with His kingdom by baptism."

B. Baptism of Jesus: Unique Baptism. Water was used. Jesus Christ was NOT a sinner. Water is symbolic of the Father's will. Jesus Christ identified Himself with the Father's will in the execution of salvation. Matt. 3:13-17. We cannot "follow the Lord in baptism" as to His purpose (securing our redemption) but can in duplication of the mode of his baptism. But it is better to never use the phrase. Also our Lord was obedient to the plan and will of God, in baptism the believer is obedient to the plan and will of God.

C. Baptism of the believer in the Church Age: Matt. 28:19

Water represents the person of the Lord Jesus Christ. Believers are identified with Christ in His death, burial, and resurrection. It symbolizes retroactive and current positional truth. It is the ritual of the real Baptism of the Holy Spirit (above). It is thus a picture of Spirit baptism.

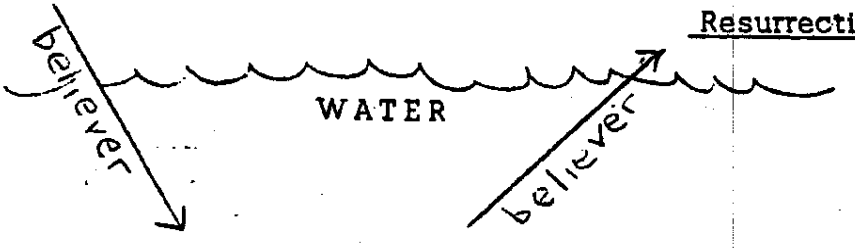
Baptism, Believer's Water: Immersion
(Category 43)

1. Believers have a real identification with Christ in HIS:
   a. Death: Retroactive Positional Truth (RAPT)
   b. Resurrection: Current Positional Truth (CPT)

2. Water baptism is a ritual baptism, the water being symbolic of the person and work of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the person being identified with the water.

3. The person going into the water is identified with the water, and he is:
   a. Saying in effect, "I am identified with Him in His death and in His death He rejected human good."
   b. Giving testimony to RAPT, which is victory over human good.

4. The person coming out of the water is identified with the air which represents:
   a. Identification with Christ in His resurrection, as He is seated at the right hand of the Father.
   b. The believer gives testimony to current positional truth--allowing His resurrection life to live through us.



5. From current positional truth we have the concept of the controlling ministry of the Holy Spirit (being in the bottom circle) which is the means of producing divine good initially. Divine good is always produced by the exhaling of epignosis and the functioning of the edification complex--compound-triple-divine good.

6. The believer is saying, "I know now that the control of the Holy Spirit produces divine good. I am controlled by the Holy Spirit because 1 John 1:9 cleanses from all -R.

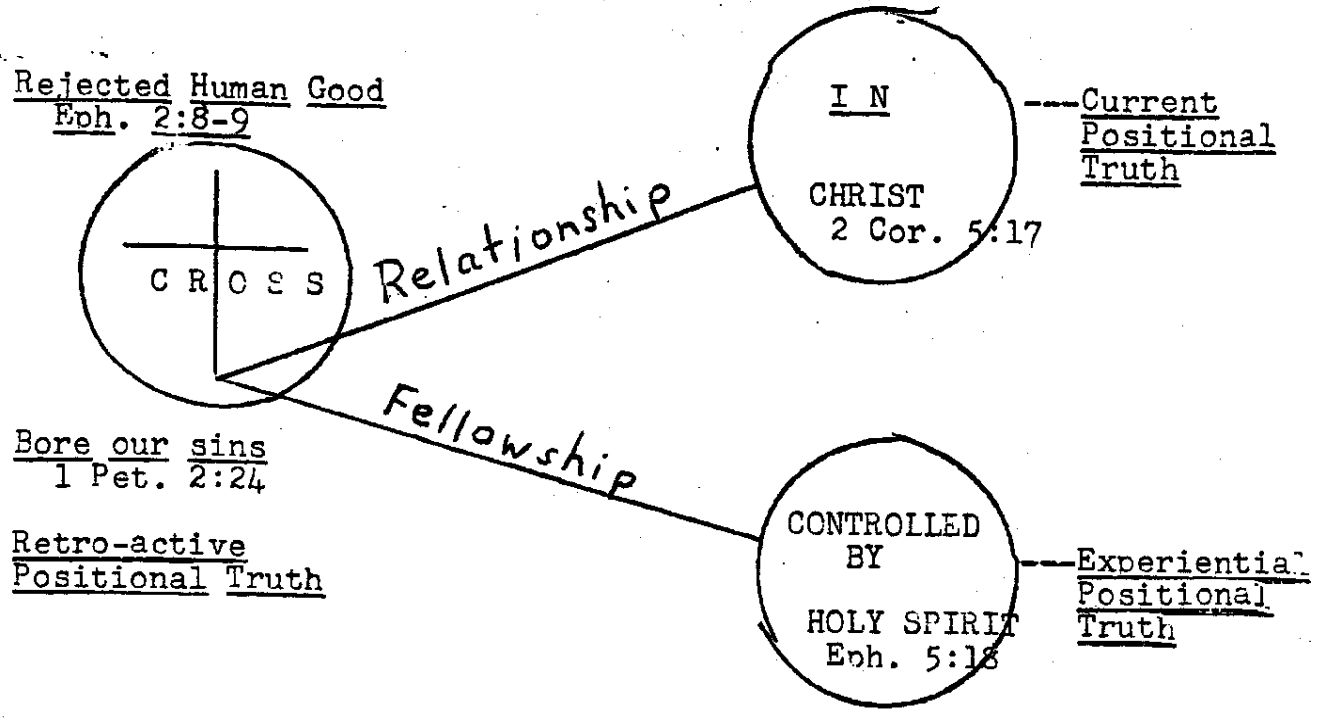
7. Baptism is the transition which indicates that you understand the issue in the Christian life is good vs. good, and that you are now ready to apply retro-active positional truth.

8. The way to understand water baptism is three circles:

   a. Identification with Christ in His deaths (spiritual and physical). Retro-active positional truth--He rejected human good on the cross. Circle of the cross.

   b. Identification with Christ as He is seated at the right hand of the Father (top circle). Current positional truth is the basis of eternal security.

   c Experiential positional truth (bottom circle), the place of the filling of the Spirit (being in fellowship, being controlled by the Holy Spirit, being filled by Him, all synonymous terms) which produces divine good. Gal. 2:20.



9. Ritual without reality is meaningless. Water baptism is the ritual (the picture) of the real (Baptism of the Holy Spirit.)

10. When you are baptized you give testimony to the fact that Christianity is not a religion, but a relationship with Jesus Christ forever.

Baptism of the Cup (the cross)
(Category 44)

1. First use of the word cup: Matt. 26:39. (Cross)

2. The cup contained the sins of the world. Jesus Christ was sinless. 2 Cor. 5:21.

3. The Father judged those sins. Isa. 53:4-6

4. Christ drank from the cup. John 18:11. Drinking from the cup is a picture of the judgment of God's wrath.

5. The Father's wrath (+R and J) fell upon the Son when he drank (when He bore the sins of the world).

6. God's wrath is against sin but the sins were poured out on Christ. He drank the cup to the bottom (bore the sins of the whole world) therefore the Father's wrath was poured out upon Him.

7. The Father rejected human good for future judgment.

8. Individual chooses human good for divine good (the cross). The work of Christ on the cross was divine good.

9. If one rejects divine good (Christ's work) they stand on their own merit (human good).

10. Anyone standing on human good will have a cup from which he will drink, containing the wrath of God.

11. Active Voice: Jesus Christ deliberately drank from the cup. Volition of His humanity.

    Passive Voice: Jesus Christ received judgment for our sins.

12. Alternative: Either accept Christ drinking for you on the cross, or accept the wrath of God on yourself. If you reject the cross, then the alternative is the wrath of God. Either let Christ drink God's wrath for you, or you drink it yourself.

13. In the tribulation Jesus Christ becomes the judge and He pours out the vials (drinking cups) of judgment on religious unbelievers. (Revelation 16)

14. When He came, 1st Advent: He drank the cup.
When He comes 2nd Advent: Unbelievers will drink the cup because they did not accept His drinking cup for them.

Baptism of Fire
(Category 45)

1. The Baptism of Fire is the judgment that comes at the 2nd Advent. Unbelievers are cast off the earth, believers go into the millennium.

2. Doctrine of the Baptism of Fire is stated in: Matt. 3:11-12, Luke 3:16-17, 2 Thess. 1:7-9.

3. Analogy AS the baptism of fire:

   a. Matthew 24:37-41: "As the days of Noah were . . ."

      (1) One taken in judgment: The unbeliever
      (2) One left to go into the millennium: the believer

   b. Note Isa. 13:9-10

4. Parables of the Baptism of Fire:

   a Wheat and tares: Matthew 13:24-30; 36-43

      (1) Wheat: Believers go into the millennium
      (2) Tares: Unbelievers are cast off, burned up--

   b. Matt. 13:47-50

      (1) Good fish: Believers
      (2) Bad fish: Unbelievers

   c. Matt. 24:43-51 The good man of the house.

   d. The ten virgins: Matt. 25:1-13

      (1) Wise: Believers (Jewish) who go into the millennium
      (2) Foolish: Unbelievers taken in judgment

   e. The Sheep and the Goats: Matt. 25:31-46 (Gentiles)

      (1) Sheep: Gentiles who go into the millennium
      (2) Goats: Gentiles who are taken in judgment

   f. The Talent Test: Matt. 25:14-30

      (1) The five and two talent man (Jew) goes into the millennium.
      (2) The one talent man (unsaved Jew) goes into judgment

5. Baptism of fire from the standpoint of the Gentiles. Matt. 25:31-46. "nations" are Gentiles.

6. Baptism of fire from the standpoint of the Jews. The Matt. passages (24 & 25) mentioned above, plus Ezekiel 20:32-38. When the Jews are brought back into the land, the unbelieving Jews are judged and cast off the earth and the born-again Jews will go into the millennium.

7. All unbelievers are cast off the earth and join the rest of the unbelievers in Torments (Sheol-Hades-Hell) to await the last judgment (Rev. 20--the Great White Throne Judgment). Rev. 20:13 speaks of "every man" probably given some type of "resurrection unto damnation" body.

Baptism of the Holy Spirit
(Category 46)

1. The Baptism of the Spirit did not occur in the OT or in any previous dispensation. Acts 1:5 (Future tense)

2. The Baptism of the Holy Spirit was prophesied by John the Baptist. Matt. 3:11; Mark 1:8; Luke 3:16.

3. Baptism of the Holy Spirit was prophesied by Jesus Christ. John 14:20; Acts 1:5.

4. Mechanics of the Baptism of the Holy Spirit is given in 1 Cor. 12:13. The Holy Spirit enters the believer into Union with Christ at the moment of salvation. The Baptism of the Holy Spirit happened the first time on the Day of Pentecost.

5. The unification of believers is dependent upon the baptism of the Holy Spirit (this only occurs at the moment of salvation).

6. The implications of the baptism of the Holy Spirit are given in Galatians 3:26-28. PRINCIPLE: All social distinctions are destroyed.

7. The principle of retroactive identification is brought out in Romans 6:3-4; Col. 2:12.

8. The Baptism of the Holy Spirit begins in the Church Age.

   Compare: Matt. 16:18 (Says the church is future)
   Acts 1:5, 2:3 (Actually took place, doesn't say so)
   Acts 11:15-17 (KEY VERSE - says B/HS took place on the day of Pentecost)
   1 Cor. 12:13, "one body": The body of Christ, Col. 1:18

9. The baptism of the Holy Spirit is the basis for Positional Truth. (Top Circle) Eph. 1:3-6

10. The baptism of the Holy Spirit is not an experience, it is NOT speaking in tongues or ecstatics. Aorist tense of 1 Cor. 12:13, once and for all, plus the phrase "we all" (All who believe) not just some.

    In salvation our volition is involved only in our decision to accept Jesus Christ as Saviour. The 5 things that happen at the moment of salvation are accomplished by God the Holy Spirit (not us) and these are not experienced.

The Baptism of Jesus
(Category 47)

1. Baptism by John came before the baptism of Jesus because it was the herald's baptism, anticipating Jesus Christ.

2. It was the purpose of Jesus Christ to have His herald baptize him. This began his public ministry.

3. In John's baptism the water represented the Kingdom of God, which is the general term for regenerate people from the time of Adam to the end of the millennium.

4. In the baptism of Jesus the water represented the will of the Father in salvation--the cross. UNIQUE BAPTISM. The Kingdom of God here is in the form of the King, Jesus Christ.

5. The will of God must be exercised before the Eternal Kingdom of God can be a reality (Eternal Kingdom of regenerate people). THE CROSS MUST COME BEFORE THE CROWN!

6. As He went into the water He said in effect, "I will die for the sins of the world."

7. As He came out of the water He said in effect,"I will rise again that believers might have resurrection bodies."

8. Baptism of Jesus Christ was the counterpart (ritual) to (for) the reality of the Baptism of the cup (cross).

9. The baptism of Jesus was unique because Christ is unique and it represents His unique work on the cross.

10. He was baptized at the age of 30, at the beginning of His public ministry.

11. Holy Spirit appeared at His baptism to guarantee that He would sustain Jesus during His ministry.

12. No one ever follows the Lord in baptism. (We are not the God-man, we cannot go to the cross). We can be obedient to the Word by being baptized, however.

John's Baptizing Ministry
(Category 48)

1. John the Baptist lived in the Dispensation of Israel.

2. John the Baptist preached Christ as we do today. His message (as declared in Acts 19) was "believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved."

3. When a person believed in Jesus Christ, he took him down to the water, usually the River Jordan.

4. The believer was identified with the water, but the water represented a spiritual identification.

5. The water represented the Kingdom of God. By believing in Jesus Christ they had entered the Kingdom of God and this was their testimony to that fact.

6. The Kingdom of God is a general term for regenerate people from the time of Adam to the end of the millennium.

7. The believer was put under the water, representing his identification with the kingdom that John preached: A kingdom of believers (primarily OT believers, although a few lived into the Church age).

8. Coming out of the water and being identified with the air is a picture of the fact that they possess eternal life.

9. John's baptism was a sign of the interruption of the Age of Israel. In Acts 19:1-6 believers were asked if they had received the baptism of the Holy Spirit WHEN they believed, making them Church Age believers. John's baptism confirmed that they were Jewish Age and therefore by identification of the "laying on of hands" they (Jewish Age believers now come over into the Church Age) were entered into union with Christ by receiving the baptism of the Holy Spirit.

Baptism
(Category 49)

1. The verb "baptize" and the noun "baptism" are Greek words that are not translated but transliterated.

2. Etymology of BAPTIDZO (bop-teed-zo). We know the etymology because of the use of the word in ancient Grecian literature.

   a. Swords dipped in blood identified the sword with warfare. The sword was baptizoed. (Identified with the blood by immersing it in the blood). The sword came out bloody.

   b. Metal identified with water when tempering it. Baptizing the metal.

   c. Sinking of a ship. The ship was identified with the water.

3. Baptize means to IDENTIFY (to make one with).

   a. Something so identified with something else that its nature or character is changed (BUT BAPTISM DOES NOT SAVE).

   b. Water baptism symbolizes the change that has already taken place by believing in Jesus Christ.

4. There are two types

   a. Real: Actual identification

   b. Ritual: Representative identification. The individual is really identified with the water, but the water is symbolic of something else.

5. There are seven baptisms in Scripture: 4 real, 3 ritual

6. The baptism of the believer in the Church Age is the ritual (picture) of the real baptism of the Holy Spirit.

7. Ritual baptism must follow salvation, never precede it.

8. The believer needs doctrine before baptism, i.e. Positional truth; retro-active positional truth, current positional truth, experiencial positional truth, human good versus divine good. (Whoa there, it isn't that bad. Study out positional truth and the other types of doctrine applicable with baptism--and teach it! HE SHOULD UNDERSTAND THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN RELATIONSHIP AND FELLOWSHIP.

9. The believer was baptized in the early church very soon after salvation? Why? Because as soon as the individual was saved, Paul, or any other believer like Philip who was baptized immediately gave them a long lesson in Bible Doctrine. This might have been six or seven hours of instruction. Immediately upon understanding the basics--the individual was baptized.

10. The candidate for baptism is often a victim rather than a candidate. Why? He does not understand the doctrinal why behind the ritual. An individual believer should never be baptized until he understands the points of the 8th increment--above.

Barrier #1 (Wall)
(Category 50)

Romans 5:10		Reconciliation	2 Cor. 5:17-21
MAN	BARRIER	WORK OF CHRIST	GOD
Rom. 3:23 Gal. 3:22-23	1. Sin: Rom. 3:23	Redemption-Unlimited At. 1 Cor. 1:29-30, 1 John 2:2	Rom. 2:11
	2. Penalty of Sin Rom. 6:23	Expiation Col. 2:14	
(IN SIN)			(HOLY)
	3. Physical Birth 1 Cor. 15:22	Regeneration, John 1:11-12, 3:3, Gal. 3:26	
	4. Character of God Psalm 145:17 +R	Propitiation, 1 John 2:2 Romans 3:25	
	5. Righteousness of Man. Isa. 64:6 -R	Justification, Rom. 3:24 Romans 5:1	
		Imputation: Rom. 3:22; 2 Cor. 5:21	
	6. Position in Adam: 1 Cor. 15:22	Position in Christ 1 John 5:11-12	

Reconciliation is Jesus Christ removing the barrier between God and man--so that through believing in Christ--man can have the peace which passeth all understanding.

The issue according to this chart is Christ who did the work on the cross--it is Jesus Christ who died for our sins.

Barrier #2 (Wall)
(Category 51)

I. Part 1: Barrier	Work of Christ
A. Sin: Romans 3:23	Redemption: Purchase from the slave market of sin by Christ. John 8:36, Col. 1:14 Unlimited Atonement: Jesus Christ died for the sins of the whole world.
B. Penalty of Sin: Romans 6:23	Expiation: Jesus Christ paid the penalty--paid my debt to God. He picked up the IOU. Col. 2:14
C. Physical Birth: Eph. 2:5-6	Regeneration: New birth, John 3:3, Titus 3:5, John 1:11-12
D. Character of God: Absolute righteousness, +R. Ps. 145:17	Propitiation: Satisfaction. Person of JC satisfied with +R of God, also the Justice of God. 1 Jo. 2:2
E. Character of Man: Relative righteousness, -R. Rom. 3:10-12, Isa. 64:6.	Justification-Imputation. God pardons the sinner, and accepts him as +R, absolutely righteous. Becasue +R is IMPUTED to man. God calls him JUSTIFIED. 2 Cor 5:21
F. Position in Adam 1 Cor. 15:22	Position in Christ. I am taken out of Adam in position and placed in Christ. 1 John 5:11-12.

II. Part 2:

A. Natural Man: Man is behind the barrier and dead to God. This is spiritual death. Eph. 2:5-6. This barrier cannot be removed by anything man does. Man is helpless to get over the wall, except thru the:

B. Work of Jesus Christ:

Jesus Christ came into the world for the specific purpose of removing this barrier. Heb. 2:9.

"For we see Jesus (humanity) who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honor; that He, by the grace of God, should taste death for every man."

1. The Lord Jesus Christ removed the Barrier (reconciliation) for everyone (unlimited atonement).

2. Issue now: What will you do with Christ? John 3:36

Barrier: Reconciliation
(Category 52)

1. Check thoroughly the other "Barrier" notes.

2. The Holy Spirit takes the work of Christ and makes it real to the individual--man exercises positive volition and is saved.

3. Barrier #2, Part 1 is God's view of Christ's work on the cross: Spiritual and physical death. When Jesus Christ died on the cross, He died twice. Isaiah 53:9, the word "death" is plural in the Hebrew "deaths". He died spiritually for our sins, He died physically so that we may have a new resurrection body.

4. The Lord Jesus Christ did the providing, the Holy Spirit is the instrument of executing salvation for each person.

5. Redemption and unlimited atonement: The WHOLE WORLD was purchased and set free from the slave market of sin. A limited atonement, that Christ died only for the elect, is heresy.

6. Expiation: The debt (spiritual death) was paid. Since I owe God absolute righteousness, +R (basis of spiritual life is +R) and payment by human good doesn't cut it, He suffered spiritual death so that we may have spiritual life--he arose from the dead.

7. This freedom (from the slave market of sin and from debt) is dependent upon the exercise of an individual's positive volition. The gate has been removed.

8. Regeneration: This is the NEW BIRTH. He provides a human spirit whereby MAN has the ability to have fellowship with God.

9. Propitiation: (Satisfaction) At this point God is satisfied with what the work of Christ has done, whereby man is put in a condition: He is purchased, set free, debts paid, and he is given a human spirit--the equipment in order that when the Spirit is in control (as a believer) he can have fellowship.

10. So now MAN is going to be put in a position where he can have fellowship with God.

11. God pardons him, goes on record, and accepts him as +R. Because +R is imputed, God calls him justified.

12. God gives him a position in Christ (union with Christ-spiritual life) where before he had a POSITION IN ADAM (spiritual death). 1 Cor. 15:22.

13. Spiritual life is a composite of:

    a. New birth: Human spirit--ability for man to have fellowship with God--human spirit is the storage area for epignosis.
    b. Imputed +R: A condition necessary for man in order for God to have fellowship with man.
    c. Position in Christ, union with Christ. Shares His spiritual life.

The Beatitudes
(Category 53)
Matthew 5:1-12

The Sermon on the Mount was a crash program to teach his disciples Bible Doctrine. The term "blessed" refers to inner happiness.

1. The beatitude of salvation: 5:3. This is a reminder of the grace of salvation. "Poor in spirit" refers to a spiritual IQ that begins at salvation. A true inner happiness (3rd floor of the edification complex) begins at the cross.

2. The beatitude of suffering: 5:4 "They that mourn": Inner happiness as projected from the edification complex can handle any pressure situation, any suffering situation in life. This believer carries his happiness with him.

3. The beatitude of relaxed power: 5:5. "The meek": This speaks of the 1st floor of the edification complex--grace orientation. This is a believer who is spiritually poised, and is in antithesis to the pride power generated by the energy of the flesh.

4. The beatitude of doctrinal desire: 5:6. "They which hunger and thirst." This the believer daily inhaling and exhaling Bible doctrine through the faith principle. Righteousness is God's brand of goodness.

5. The beatitude of operation grace: 5:7. "The merciful": Mercy is grace in action. Inner happiness is based upon thinking grace at all times. We are saved by grace, and we continue to function by grace.

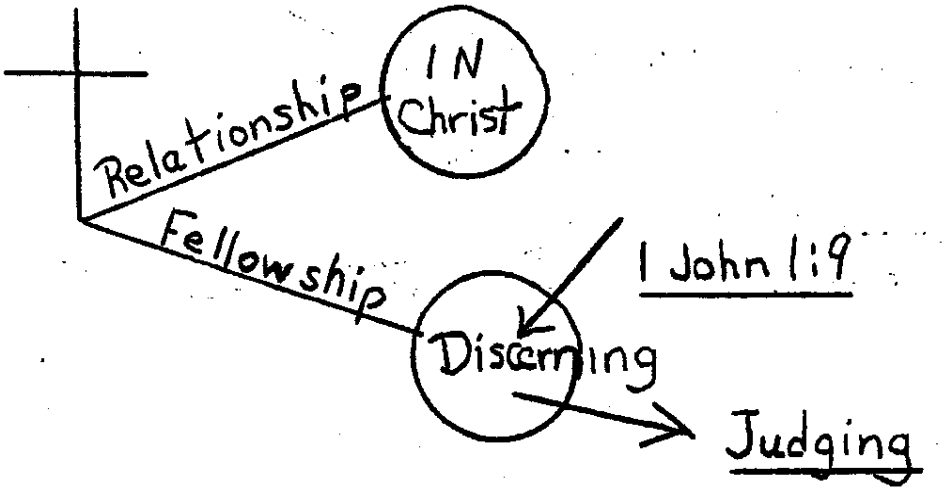
6. The beatitude of rebound: 5:8. "pure in heart": Based on 1 John 1:9. No inner happiness is present when one is out of fellowship. "Shall see God": Refers to occupation with Christ, thinking divine viewpoint as a result of having rebounded. If one has not rebounded, he is not filled with the Spirit. And the F/HS is necessary for the intake of BD, the faith-transfer, and erection of the Edification Complex.

7. The beatitude of witnessing: 5:9. "Peacemakers": One who witnesses to the way of peace between God and man--reconciliation. "Called the children of God:" They are identified with God because they carry his message without mental attitude sins. This speaks of the 2nd floor of the EC, a relaxed mental attitude.

8. The beatitude of persecution and pressure. 5:10-12
Inner happiness is the possession of those who are persecuted for "righteousness sake" (v. 10); and "Christ's sake" (v. 11). So keep on rejoicing (keep on staying in fellowship, regardless). (v. 12). God's plan of grace is greater than any pressure or persecution in life. The idea is to draw upon the grace of God.

Believers: Accusations Against
(Category 54)

1. The believer is prohibited from judging other believers--judging always has a bad connotation in Scripture. However a believer is to discern. Matt. 7:1-2, Rom. 14:4-10, 1 Cor. 2:15



2. A believer in fellowship can evaluate, especially on the basis of a frame of reference, epignosis in the human spirit.

3. But a believer out of fellowship will always be judging--his own sin nature will control his thought and speech pattern.

4. Every believer must live his life as unto the Lord (However parents have jurisdiction over their children).

5. Every believer has the right of privacy before the Lord.

6. God judges believers for judging and carnality. Heb. 12:6

7. A believer is to leave all discipline in the hands of the Lord.

8. Romans 8:33, corrected translation: "Who shall bring any accusation versus the elect of God? Romans 8:33. ANS. NO ONE!

9. Satan is actually the accuser of the brethren. Rev. 12:10

10. A believer must be able to distinguish between the accusing ministry of Satan and the convicting ministry of the Holy Spirit.

Believer: "He (Believer) Cannot Sin"
(Category 55)

1 John 3:9, "Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed (Holy Spirit) remaineth in him: and he cannot sin because he is born of God."

This is a great verse which stresses the absolute concept of Spirituality--that when a believer is in fellowship (controlled by the Holy Spirit) he is not sinning. When he is out of fellowship (controlled by the old sin nature) he can nothing but sin.

The categorical development:

1. This verse refers to the believer controlled by the Holy Spirit.
2. When the Holy Spirit controls the believer, he cannot sin.
3. The Holy Spirit is God and therefore could never sin nor solicit or condone sin.
4. Only ignorance of sin, or negative volition at the point of temptation can break the control of the Holy Spirit.
5. God has provided the means of victory in grace over the old sin nature. The procedure--hovers around the four stages of GAP (Grace Apparatus of Perception). The communicator, the comprehension, the storage (human spirit) and frame of reference (the erection of the edification complex).
6. It is incompatible with the divine nature to originate sin.
7. Grace found a way to overcome the bondage of the OSN - summarized by "cannot sin".
8. To be "born of God" means to live in union with Jesus Christ under the indwelling of the Holy Spirit with a permanent relationship with God the Father.
9. By the filling of the Holy Spirit the believer takes on the family resemblance.
10. The unbeliever has a nature of sin and lives habitually under the OSN.
11. The believer has the nature of God and therefore God has provided basis of taking on the form of family resemblance (F/HS), but in practice of Phase 2, the believer can walk in the light or in darkness.
12. In regeneration we carry the life of God (which cannot sin) but also still have the OSN which can only sin.
13. The believer possesses the ability not to sin (Filling of the Holy Spirit) but by negative volition he can choose to move under the OSN and imitate the unbeliever. In principle, the believer is born of God and cannot sin; in practice the believer can be under the control of the OSN and can produce works of darkness. No such thing as sinless perfection.

Believer: What Constitutes a Great Man
(Category 57)

1. A great believer is a believer who often has had great failures in life. There is no such thing as one who has not failed.

2. John Mark did not allow his failure to keep him down, he rebounded. Compare Acts 13:13 with 2 Tim. 4:11 & Book of Mark.

3. John Mark had to be prepared to take a lot of guff. He had spiritual poise. He withstood ridicule, mocking, maligning. His soul stayed intact, no self-pity, or retaliation.

4. A great believer builds on epignosis. Failure does not stop him, he rebounds and keeps moving. He does not go into operation crybaby. He learns from his mistakes and moves on.

Believer: Inner Struggle
(Category 58)

Galatians 5:10-18

1. Every unbeliever has a soul (ability to understand human phenomena) and an OSN, but no human spirit (ability to understand spiritual phenomena.)

2. Every believer has a soul (self-consciousness, mentality, volition, emotion, conscience and an OSN), a spirit given at the moment of salvation (see 36 things given at the moment of salvation).

3. A believer is a complex mechanism, 2 Cor. 7:5, "For . . . our flesh had no rest, but we were troubled on every side; without were fightings, within were fears." A great battle is carried on inside the believer between the Holy Spirit and the old sin nature. Romans 7 and Col. 3:9.

4. Technically speaking the believer is tempted from two sources: OSN and the world. Satanic and demonic pressure is also in view--especially if a VIP believer.

5. Believers are to keep walking in fellowship and thus not fulfill the lust of the flesh--OSN. v. 16. The Walk equals the Christian way of life. Satan ideas and pressure are taken care of by the erection of the edification complex.

6. Galatians 5:17, "The flesh keeps on warring against the Holy Spirit, and the Holy Spirit against the flesh; and these are in opposition so that ye cannot do the things that ye desire."

7. Galatians 5:18, "But if (1st class condition) you are led habitually of the Holy Spirit, you are not under the law." When the Holy Spirit controls the believer's life, a positive character is produced us, an edification complex of the soul, and it is higher than anything the law could produce. However, it is not lawlessness.

Believer: Legalistic (Weak) Rom. 14
(Category 58)

1. The strong believer (mature) is oriented to grace and the plan of God and operates in fellowship the vast majority of the time in the power of the Holy Spirit.

2. The weak believer is disoriented to grace (especially in the area of being in fellowship or being out and practices one or more forms of legalism. He feels that he needs to confess and renounce, or confess and be sorry, or confess and vow.

3. The weak believer must not be confused with a new believer.

4. The weak believer is strong on scruples but ignorant of doctrine, even though he may have been saved many years.

5. The weak believer, being ignorant of Bible doctrine and Divine Viewpoint, reverts to a soulish conscience as his norm or standard.

6. The weak believer operates on a criterion of feeling, emotion, tradition, background, instead of doctrine. He has a series of responses found in any unbeliever of similar background, i.e. self-righteousness, tabooism, ascetism, horror at certain sins.

7. A weak believer upon finding unexpectedly that another believer has cigarettes laying on the kitchen table, thinks the worse of that individual, and denounces him or her to others. (A typical example).

8. The weak believer operates in the energy of the flesh, producing human good which he construes as production of divine good, so he is under a tremendous delusion.

9. The weak believer is not only legalistic but he is proud and he is critical of the strong believer, always judging him.

10. The weak believer has a long probosis (long nose) which he sticks into the affairs of others by gossiping, maligning, and judging.

11. The weak believer generally sets up a mold and tries to squeeze everyone into it; and in this way is a bully.

12. The weak believer has a guilt complex which makes him emotionally unstable; is very sensitive and demands attention; is easily moved to self-pity and generally operates on approbation lust from the old sin nature.

13. The weak believer is jealous of others and tries to discredit them; therefore he is constantly nitpicking, condemning the activities and projects of others.

14. The weak believer, not being interested in Bible Doctrine, is always interested in unusual experiences of an ecstatic nature.

15. The weak brother persists in being weak because of his rejection of grace doctrine, rebound, the filling of the Holy Spirit, and so on. A legalist can be recovered for grace. A weak brother can become strong thru BD.

Believer: The Ordinary Life
(Category 59)

Acts 9: Ananias

1. The Ordinary Christian life is the most difficult.

2. It has fewer outward stimulants, and requires a steadier and and deeper faith-rest.

3. The common-place of life (the routine of life) is always underrated, for the reason it is common place and routine. Mr. Average Christian fills all the gaps where it really counts.

   a. The gap of giving. Missionaries to the field.
   b. The gap of administration (in a local church).
   c. The gap of prayer, fellowship concept.

4. The obscure ministry that Ananias ministers to Paul has worldwide reprocussions. Ananias is a line-man, a man in the pew--he is the one who actually got Paul started right.

5. To the believer who suffers disappointment and frustration because his life is filled with monotony--BIBLE DOCTRINE ORIENTS THE ORDINARY BELIEVER TO HIS IMPORTANCE, in phase 2. BD makes the difference.

6. The Ordinary Christian has an extraordinary life as he is faithful (faith-rest) and oriented to grace. He has an edification complex--and really he has a very wonderful and unusual life.

7. Under operation grace, there is no such thing as an ordinary life--even tho every life is filled with many details.

8. Ananias demonstrates faithfulness in the little things--the importance of BD in the ordinary life. When Jesus Christ wanted Saul to get a good start he didn't send him to the preacher in Jerusalem. (They were filled with legalism).

   a. In fact Saul had to leave Jerusalem before God would even deal with him (on way to Damascus).

   b. The average Jew in Jerusalm was loaded down with Judaism--that would have harmed Paul in those early days, month, years.

   c. There is a difference between grace and legalism.

NOTE WELL: The most critical time for a new believer is the 1st year of his Christian life.

1. It is during the first year that most people become permanent causalities for Christ during phase 2.

2. They become causalities on the basis of wrong info that they receive after salvation.

3. They must be started out correctly—if not--the believer is still saved, BUT MISERABLE.

Believer: Six Enemies of the Ordinary Believer (Category 60)

Proverbs 27:1-8

I. Pride or arrogance: 27:1-2

A. Boasting of achievements
B. Praising yourself in open or subtle ways

II. Anger or uncontrolled temple: 27:3

A. The Stone stands for the obvious type of anger--the punch 'em in the nose type. Explosive anger.

B. The Sand speaks of a subtle type of anger--

1. The "throwing of sand":
2. Expresses itself by gossip, slander, vindictiveness, retaliation.

III. Envy & Jealousy: 27:4 " . . . who is able to stand before envy?"

This is worse than loss of temper according to this verse.

B. Ananias and Sapphira--illustrates the green-eyed monster of jealousy.

IV. Pseudo-love: 27:5-6

The infatuated with Jesus crowd. In love with love, like the puppy lovers in the spring time. Gush over Jesus, very shallow, absolutely meaningless. The Glory-Hallelujah crowd.

Only agapao and phileo love is genuine--two of the floors in the edification complex.

V. Indifference to the Word of God: 27:7

A. The details of life are more important--

B. Honey is a perfect illustration of BD--and get it at ALL COSTS

VI. A False Scale of Values: 27:8

A. He won't give up his social life to get the Word.

B. He won't go on a crash program of getting Bible Doctrine.

C. Therefore he spends his time erecting a pseudo-edification complex.

Of course these enemies also are occupational hazards of so-called "Christian workers". But all are in full time Christian service, so the above is applicable to all believers.

Believer: Strong Believer's Responsibility to Weaker (Category 61)

1. The strong believer must accept the weak believer, but not his legalism or false doctrine.
2. The weak believer is doctrineless and needs to be taught.
3. The purpose of receiving the weak believer is to communicate doctrine to him, but to accept his viewpoint.
4. Weak believers must be received by strong believers to receive doctrine and to grow.
5. The weak believers must change opinions to conform to doctrine; therefore, he must hear doctrine.
6. A weak believer is in perpetual carnality; therefore, useless.
7. Weak believer needs to rebound first for recovery. The weak believer is reacting to people; strong believers responding to God.
8. The weak believer reacts in two ways:
   a. He will judge, criticize, malign the strong believer.
   b. Or he may use the law of liberty (of the strong believer) for an excuse to sin. 1 Cor. 8:10-11

Check out Romans 14 on the above category.

Believer: Principle of Nothing Unclean for the Believer (Category 62) Rom. 14:1-15

1. Under the Mosiac Law certain foods, vs. 1-14, were claimed to be unclean - pork, etc.
2. But union with Jesus Christ - v. 14 - frees believers from the Mosiac Law, Rom. 8:2-4. He is under a higher law - the law of the filling of the Holy Spirit.
3. Under this new law, categories clean and unclean (foods) are gone. All foods are clean. Principle: CWL is the relaxed way of life.
4. But these are only clean to the believer who is oriented to grace and understands the pertinent doctrine.
   a. Mosiac law rejected certain meats and believer Jews were still offended when others ate pork.
   b. The Gentile's prejudice was based on eating meat offered to idols.

5. The legalistic believer is weak and lives by his background and prejudices from human viewpoint. He is minus doctrine and because of this, he applies his personal prejudices to every situation and tries to superimpose his taboos on others. Soul vs. human spirit. It obscures phase 2 for himself and others. The Christian way of life is what you think.

6. Because of all these factors, the legalistic believer takes a a clean thing (food) and makes it unclean by human viewpoint..

Believers: Differences Among
(Category 63)

1. By the new birth all are equal in position in Christ.

2. But there is a difference in spiritual gifts. 1 Cor. 12

3. One believer may be spiritual at a given point, and another carnal at a given point.

4. There are differences of growth. (Babe, Adolesence, Adult) 1 Jo.2

5. There is a difference in spiritual IQ. 1 Cor. 2.
(Dependent upon how much has been taken into the human spirit by faith-transfer.)

Believer: Prov. 26, Weak Believer
(Category 64)

1. The believer minus doctrine cannot stand human prosperity. It makes him miserable.

2. Prosperity only increases the folly of the ignorant believer (fool). Folly is anything that the ignorant believer thinks or does contrary to doctrine, that is, human viewpoint human activities in which he participates instead of learning doctrine at Bible class.

3. Prosperity or honor hinders the believer minus doctrine.

4. Like snow in summer, he gets his eyes on unusual events, like rain in harvest, his production is limited.

5. The believer minus doctrine gets his eyes on self, instead of keeping his eyes on the Lord.

6. The results are obvious: If a believer does not respond to the Lord he becomes a reactor. Having nothing to feed his spirit, he reacts to the Lord and he reacts from his soul to people.

7. Snow in summer destoys the scenery. The believer has a constructive ministry on earth, not destructive.

8. Animals cannot graze in the snow. The believer minus doctrine creates spiritual drought.

Believer: Difference between Believer and Unbeliever (Why we are Diff) (Category 65)

1. Believers don't belong to the world system or Satan's systems as far as relationship. John 17:5-17.
2. We are not of the world system because we have a different position. (In Jesus Christ). 1 Cor. 15:22.
3. A different birth - spiritual birth. The world only has physical birth. John 3:5-8
4. A different service: We serve the Lord Jesus Christ. The unbeliever serves his father, Satan. John 8:44.
5. A different purpose - the believer is to glorify Jesus Christ. 1 Cor. 6:19-30. The unbeliever works to gratify self.
6. A different power - energy of the Spirit as over the energy of the flesh.
7. A different way of life - CWL - as opposed to religion.
8. A different destiny: The believers destiny is in the presence of the Lord; unbelievers is in the Lake of Fire. 1 John 3:1-3, Rev. 20.

Believer: Unity of (Category 66)

1. All believers are in union with Christ, positional truth. Eph 4:4
2. The Holy Spirit, ONE SPIRIT, indwells all believers. Eph. 4:2-4, 1 Cor. 6:19-20; Gal. 3:2, John 7:37-39, 14:16-17. There is no spiritual superiority because of positional truth.
3. There is the indwelling of Jesus Christ. Eph. 3:17, Rev. 3:20
4. Priesthood: Every believer is his own priest, all are in full time Christian service.
5. Every believer is an ambassador, a representative of Christ on earth. As such every believer is a witness.
6. All have the completed Canon, everything God wants us to know is in writing.
7. We all have the same way of life--supernatural which requires a supernatural execution.
8. There is One hope: All believers have the same future: Eph. 4:3, Resurrection body: 1 Thess. 4:16-18, Phil. 3:21, 1 John 3:1-2
9. One Lord, same Saviour--Eph. 4:3-5, One faith - Eph. 4:3.
10. One baptism: The baptism of the Holy Spirit: Jn. 17:22, Eph. 4:3

Believer: The Doctrine of Separation . . . (Category 67)

1. There are certain types of carnality from which you must separate yourself (in believers). Incest, 1 Cor. 5:10-11. Don't run around with homosexuals, lebsians, perverts)

2. Separation from believers who downgrade or reject Bible doctrine and that may be 99% of the believers in some areas. 2 Thess. 3:6, 3:14-15. YOU CAN TELL WHEN A PERSON IS ON NEGATIVE SIGNALS.

3. Separation from believers who make emotion the criterion and enter into pseudo-spirituality--Rom. 16:17-18.

   a. Stay away from believers who are in the tongues movement.
   b. The Saturday morning breakfast crowd
   c. The fagot on the fire spirituality type

4. Separation from the fast crowd, or wrong crowd believer . 1 Peter 4:4, Prov. 1:10-19.

5. Separation from unbelievers when you as a believer have to compromise in areas of doctrine. 2 Cor. 6:14, Heb. 13:13.

   a. Marriage: Believer and unbelievers marriage prohibited. It isn't wrong to date an unbeliever, it is wrong to get involved with an unbeliever. However dating is not really necessary until you meet your right man.

   b. Frats and Sororities: With compulsory dating, drinking. (West Point, Annapolis, Colo. Spgs are all superior because no fraternities).

   c. Business partnership: Where a believer and an unbeliever are partners in a corporation.

6. Separation from human viewpoint thinking, worldiness. Rom. 12:1-2.

7. Separation from religion and apostacy. 2 Cor. 6:17, 2 Tim. 3:5.

   Religion victimizes believers by putting scar tissue on the soul, or gets believers involved who are negative to doctrine. ACTIVITY IS THE MEASURE OF SUCCESS UNDER SUCH CONDITIONS. NOX NIX.

   For a discourse on religion--see 2 Timothy 3

Beloved
(Category 68)

1. "Beloved" indicates acceptability.

2. "Beloved" is used as a title first for the Lord Jesus Christ (the God-man) seated at the right hand of the Father. Eph. 1:6.

3. Jesus Christ receives all of the infinite love of the Father, as God and as true humanity, and is therefore called "beloved."

4. When a person accepts Jesus Christ as Saviour, he is entered into Union with Christ (John 14:20, 1 Cor. 12:13) and is therefore accepted in the beloved. Eph. 1:6, 1 Thess. 1:4.

5. Because of Union with Christ and being accepted in the beloved, we, in turn are called "beloved."

6. 1 John 3:1-2, we share his title of "beloved."

7. God the Father loves the believer with exactly the same amount of love He has for His son, Jesus Christ, because the believer is in union with Christ and not because of something the believer has done.

8. This love is unchangeable regardless of the condition the believer is in experientially. Col. 3:14, 1 Thess. 1:4.

9. Therefore "beloved" is one of the very significant titles for the believer.

Bible: Knowledge, imparting to the Believer (Category 69)

I. What? God is all knowledge: omniscience

A. The Word of God the Father: Heb. 4:12

B. The Mind of Christ: 1 Cor. 2:16

C. The Voice of the Holy Spirit: Heb. 3:7

II. Why?

A. Guidance: See category on divine guidance

B. Stability:

a. Isaiah 33:6: "Wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times . . ." Knowledge is taking gnosis doctrine into the mind, wisdom is transferring that gnosis into epignosis in the human spirit thru the faith-transfer grace system.

b. Colossians 1:9-10: Paul's prayer for those he had never seen is for each believer there to get an edification complex. Because out of the edification complex comes wisdom, knowledge and spiritual understanding--Paul does not pray for them an emotional experience, prosperity, ecstatics, good health, etc.

C. Confidence: (Knowledge brings confidence)

1. Knowledge transferred to the human spirit is recycled throughout the soul and it brings in more doctrine. This brings confidence. 1 John 2:3, "And hereby we DO KNOW that we KNOW HIM. Confidence of our salvation.

"if we keep His commandments": 1 John 3:23 commands:

a. That we be saved
b. That we be filled with the Holy Spirit (stay in fellowship)

2. This confidence results in the believer being able to claim:

a. Romans 8:28, "All things work together for good so: 1 Thess. 5:18, "In everything give thanks."

b. Why? God is omniscient and omnipotent. Job 24:1, times are not hidden from God. Psalm 31:15, therefore "my times are in thy hands."

III. How: " . . . rightly dividing the Word of Truth" 2 Tim. 2:15 Isaiah 28:10, "precept upon precept": Refers to categories "line upon line": Refers to verse by verse study "here a little, there a little": Some study every day.

Bible: Word of God, Heb. 4:12
(Category 70)

To know the will of God, we must know the Word of God: Heb. 4:12

1. "For the Word of God": The Bible, the mind of Christ.

2. "is quick": The Word is alive, keeps on being living. It was written 1900 years ago and more, but every doctrine, every promise, is just as pertinent today as it was then. It has always been contemporary.

3. "and powerful": It is a source of operational power. Psalm 138:2b, " . . . thou hast magnified thy word above all thy name."

4. "sharper than any two edged sword":

   a. Unbeliever: The gospel--only portion that can be understood by the unbeliever through his soul. (No human spirit)

   b. Believer: (Holy Spirit teaches the human spirit). Doctrines essential for a believer to understand.

      The Essence of God
      Positional Truth--top circle
      Retro-active Positional Truth--cross circle
      Experiential Positional Truth--bottom circle
      Faith-rest, rebound, spirituality, edification complex.

5. "piercing": The Bible is beneficial because of its penetrating power.

6. "dividing asunder of the soul and the spirit": The Bible is the only book that differentiates between the soul and the spirit.

7. "of the joints and the marrow": Material part of the believer. The Bible can distinguish, even as the knife of a surgeon can distinguish. Just as a surgeon penetrates, so the Bible penetrates the invisible inner man.

8. "is a discerner": It is a critic of every thought and motive we will have.

9. "thoughts and intents": Motivation

10. "of the heart": Of the mind

Birth: Doctrine of Physical (Category 71)

1. At physical birth, the life of the soul plus the balance of the soul's essence is supplied.
2. The balance of essence includes self-consciousness, volition, emotion and conscience.
3. The OSN acts upon the soul life to produce spiritual death.
4. All of these are influenced by both mentality and the OSN which are inherited. (Self-consciousness, volition, emotion, and conscience are influenced)
5. The mentality acts upon the soul life producing physical life.
6. Therefore, man is born physically alive but spiritually dead.
7. For this reason, both creationism and Traducianism have a point, but the truth lies between the two. Isa. 57:15-16, "I make the soul life."
8. The format of the soul exists with the embryo, but the soul life does not exist until physical birth.

Blessing (Category 72)

1. Divine blessing is based on divine character only.
2. Therefore "klenomomeno" (translated blessing) precludes human merit or human good as a basis of blessing.
3. God blesses us because of Who and What He is.
4. When the believer through knowledge of Doctrine and orientation to grace understands God's character, we share in His grace.
5. If the believer is oriented to grace, he will have an RMA--relaxed mental attitude, an absence of mental attitude sins.
6. Mental attitude sins not only produces self-induced misery but deprive the believers from blessings of grace.
7. Blessing from God is only obtained in the "inheritance package."
8. Inheritance (or appropriation of inheritance) depends upon the edification complex of the soul.

The Blood of Christ
(Category 73)

1. Blood speaks of the WORK of Christ on the cross; blood represents the judgment of our sins while Christ was bearing them on the cross (spiritual death).

2. The phrase "blood of Christ" is a representative analogy to animal sacrifices in the Old Testament, demonstrating the fact that the work of Jesus Christ was presented by means of these blood sacrifices. Heb. 9:22

3. The physical death of the animal is analogous to the spiritual death of Christ.

4. Every animal sacrifice spoke of Jesus Christ. John 1:29, "Behold the Lamb of God which taketh away the sin of the world."

5. The animal hadn't done anything wrong. The animal was judged. In his judgment, the animal died physically.

6. Jesus Christ hadn't done anything wrong. The animal was judged. In his judgment, sins of the whole world were poured out on Him. He was judged. In His judgment he died spiritually. No blood involved. Matt. 26:46

7. Jesus Christ bled from His hands, from His feet, and from His face where He had been beaten up--literal blood.

8. After He died physically they ran a spear into His side and blood and water (serum) came out, (John 19:34) indicating He was truly dead physically. He did not bleed to death. His throat was not slit.

9. Jesus Christ said, after His work (spiritual death) was finished, "It is finished" and then He said, "Father, into thy hands I dismiss my spirit." He dismissed His spirit, but He did not bleed to death.

10. The bleeding of the animal (his judgment) is analogous to the spiritual death of Jesus Christ (His judgment for us). The judgment of the animal was physical death. The judgment of Jesus Christ for our sins was spiritual death.

11. The analogy is between the physical death of an innocent animal and the spiritual death of the sinless humanity of Jesus Christ.

12. There has to be a meeting of the two sides of the cross and that meeting is in the phrase "the blood of Christ," which refers to the penalty of sin being paid - judgment for sin.

13. In the OT the mercy seat was covered with the blood of the animal which had been judged by physical death.

14. The teaching of the death of Christ (spiritual death - His judgment, Isa. 53:9) before it occurred was by the use of blood sacrifices.

15. The significance of the blood in the death of Jesus Christ is that it relates to the millions of people who were saved in the OT as it relates to us--they are saved just as we are.

16. It sets up an analogy (Christ bearing our sins) between those who anticipated the cross historically and those who look back at it.

17. We must understand the entire significance of the person and work of Christ. On the cross He bore our sins, and made provision for our forgiveness and cleansing. This was through Christ bearing our sins, those sins being judged. The blood of Jesus Christ expresses this.

18. There is no need to offer animal sacrifices any more, because Christ's sacrifice on the cross is once and for all.

19. It is apostacy to "plead the blood", or to ask that the "blood cover us". One does not "claim the blood", instead one claims the promises--erects an edification complex.

20. In Rev. 12:11 "overcoming by the blood of the Lamb" refers to a Tribulational person accepting Christ as personal Saviour, not "by" but "because of" the blood, and being protected because they have entered the plan of God.

21. The blood of Christ (His work on the cross) keeps on cleansing: 1 John 1:7, 9

    a. When you believe in Christ, you are cleansed, and released from the penalty of sin through the person and work of Christ.

    b. When you confess your sin, you are cleansed (Christian way of Life)

Body, Human
(Category 74)

1. The human body is formed by procreation, therefore the human body is a product of inheritance.

2. There are three stages of embryonic function:

   a. 1st stage: BODILY MOTILITY: Muscular contraction caused by mechanical, electrical, and chemical stimuli.

   b. 2nd stage: NEUROGENIC STAGE: Muscular contraction based on nerve cell and nerve ending stimulation.

   c. 3rd stage: REFLEX MOTILITY: Sensory nerves, nerve endings, intermediary and motor nerves stimulate muscular action. Neuro muscular mechanism.

3. After the 3rd stage you have a complete functional state of the embryo, but this is not life. Baby kicking means function, not life.

4. While the body is moving toward neuro muscular function there is formed in the cranium area the FORMAL SOUL, that part of the soul that is inherited.

5. Format soul: (nephesh) is formed with the body and is composed of two factors: (which are inherited).

   a. Mentality: Based on mentality genes of both parents.
   b. The old sin nature which is inherited from the father only.

6. Exception: Lord Jesus Christ; virgin birth.

   a. Mentality inherited from Mary and the line of David.
   b. No old sin nature because no human father.

7. The balance of soul's ESSENCE (self-consciousness, volition, emotion and conscience and the LIGHT OF THE SOUL (n'shemah) are given at birth.

8. An individual is not a person until he is born. He has an embryo and a FORMAT SOUL but he does not become a living person until God instills the soul life at the point of physical birth. This happens the moment the baby gasps for its first breath. See category on Soul: Bible Background: Isa. 42:5.

9. The placenta is an organ of nutrition, respiration and excretion, but the presence of the placenta does not mean that the mother's nervious system and the embryo are in any way connected and she cannot leave any impression in the format soul mentality.

10. The only way the mother might affect the child to a greater reflex motility is by the increased stimulation of heart action through increased circulation.

Body, Physical
(Category 75)

I. The Physical Body:

A. The body is a house (tabernacle) in which we live. 2 Cor. 5:6, 8 speaks of the body as a structure which we vacate when we die physically, and where we are at home when we are alive physically.

B. Point A indicates that the real you is what lives inside of the body (the soul) not the body.

C. The believers body is the temple (tabernacle) of the Holy Spirit. 1 Cor. 6:19. The Holy Spirit indwells, John 14:16.

1. The believer is rewarded for things done while in his physical body. Judgment seat of Christ, 2 Cor. 5:10.

2. Our bodies are going to be changed. Resurrection body is minus the old sin nature, and human good. Phil. 3:21.

D. We are told to keep our body in good physical shape and under control. 1 Cor. 9:27. NOTE WELL: Don't let a habit take away your volition.

F. Matthew 6:25 tells us that we are to take no thought for our body; actually we are not to worry. We are to claim the promises we have for time, we are to live in the Word and be occupied with the Lord Jesus Christ.

F. We are not to be unduly occupied with temporal needs. Phil. 4:19, "But my God shall supply all your need according to His riches in glory by Christ Jesus."

G. The things mentioned in Matt. 6:25 are details in life - God's Word (Doctrine) should be first.

H. This does not mean that we do not tend to these details. We operate under the four Divine Institutions set up by God.

I. The big things in life are the filling of the Holy Spirit, faith-rest, occupation with Christ, living in the Word, erection of the edification complex, all other things are details.

J. God does not coerce man's volition. When we worry and try to solve our own problems, He lets us. When we turn them over to Him, they get solved. Isa. 30:18. The policy is grace.

II. Miscellaneous Information:

A. The body is involved in marriage. 1 Cor. 7:4

B. Sexual death is in the body. Romans 4:19

C. Fornication is a sin against the body. 1 Cor. 6:18

Bones of Joseph (Bible) Gen. 50:22-26
(Category 76)

1. Joseph died, he was embalmed; his coffin remained in Egypt and he was not buried while they were in Egypt.

2. Joseph was #2 man in the Empire (Prime Minister).

3. For 400 years the Jews would go to Joseph's sacrcophagus and learn prophecy and doctrine. "You may die in slavery, but in the 4th generation you will be delivered." Genesis 15:13-16.

4. In slavery they had children, they had family life. In Doctrine, they had inward peace. The bones of Joseph was the Bible long before the Bible was written - Gospel was clearly declared.

5. The Exodus generation that left Egypt was saved (partook of the Passover). They were a mixed multitude: Jew, Gentile, Ethopian, etc. A regenerated generation walked out of Egypt - 2 million people, perhaps 900,000 were adults.

6. Moses took the bones of Joseph with him. Exodus 13:19. "Strictly sworn" means he extracted a promise from the children of Israel.

7. Joshua buried the bones of Joseph in Shechem (word for shoulder power). Joshua 24:32. God's Word is always powerful. He was bured in his own land near his ancestors: In resurrection all will rise from the place in which they were buried.

8. The principle of resurrection is pictured in the Bones of Joseph. Joseph had his eyes on the Lord, he believed in the resurrection.

9. The bones of Joseph tell us that the Word of God is the only answer. Heb. 11:22.

10. The concept of the bones of Joseph is a memorial to the fact that God keeps His word.

Book of Life, Book of Works
(Category 72)

Book of Life: Phil. 4:3, Rev. 3:5, 17:8, 20:12, 15

1. Name of every member of the Human race is written in the Book of Life when he is BORN because Christ died for ALL.

2. Three categories of individuals:

   a. The abnormal person (mentally retarded etc.). He name is in there to stay. God is +R and J. Christ died for this person and his volition, at this point, is not operative.

   b. The normal person's name stays in the Book of Life if he dies (or rapture occurs) before reaching the age of accountability. (Same reason as #a)

   c. The normal individual who has reached age of accountability (God-consciousness). This is covered in the next point.

3. If a normal person dies without receiving Jesus Christ as his Saviour, his name is blotted out. Study Rev. 3:5, "overcometh" is a believer, 1 John 5:4-5. The "white raiment" is imputed +R, 2 Cor. 5:21. Check out Psalm 69:28, also Deut. 29:20.

Book of Works:

1. Contains the names of all UNBELIEVERS along with every good deed he ever did.

2. Book of works mention ONLY at the Last Judgment and only unbelievers are at the Last Judgment. Rev. 20:11-15.

3. Good works is the basis of indictment of unbelievers. Rev. 20:12-13. The unbeliever will stand before the Lord Jesus Christ.

4. The unbeliever matches his good works against Christ's cross work.

5. God in His +R and J evaluates these good works, they do not measure up. Isa. 64:6.

6. Rejection of the Lord Jesus Christ (good works) sends them to the Lake of Fire.

Book of Life
(Category 73)

1. God is Sovereign and can do whatsoever He pleases. Psalm 135:6. He is pleased to give man free will.

2. God is also +R and Justice and can do nothing wrong, also is fair at ALL TIMES.

3. Christ died for the sins of the whole world. 1 John 2:2.

4. He purchased EVERYONE: Ezek. 18:4, "all souls are mine".

5. Therefore the name of every member of the human race is written in the Book of Life when they receive physical life at the point of birth.

6. Known facts about the Book of Life (documented by Scripture)

   a. Believers are In the book of Life. Phil. 4:3

   b. Believers are NOT BLOTTED OUT. Rev. 3:15

   c. Unbeliever is blotted out at death (he is still in his sins). Psalm 69:28, Exodus 32:32-33.

      (1) v. 32; "Moses has his back up at God"
      (2) v. 33, "sinned AGAINST ME". The only unpardonable sin is rejection of Christ. He died for every other sin.

   d. Dead unbelievers are not in the Book of Life. Rev. 20:15, the Great White Throne Judgment.

7. Conclusion: Everyone's name is put in the Book of Life when he is born.

8. Rev. 13:8 and 17:8 indicates that the Mark of the Beast terminates the chance to change their mind about Christ--the same as physical death.

9. Principle: Your name is entered into the Book of Life when you receive physical life - at birth. Your name stays in the Book of Life, if you receive Eternal Life before death.

10. There are three categories of individuals:

    a. Normal person who reaches age of accountability.
    b. Normal person who hasn't reached the age of accountability.
    c. Abnormal person (mentally retarded, etc.) regardless of age.

11. There are three points of time we will consider, one at a time: (1) The point of death, (2) Rapture, (3) 2nd Advent.

    a. At Death: (Point when name is left in or blotted out)

       (1) If 10a has not received Jesus Christ as Saviour, his name is blotted out of the Book of Life. Rev. 3:5, Psalm. 69:28

(2) The volition of 10b is not in operation in this area yet, and his name stays in the book of life. Upon reaching the age of accountability it stays in the book of life although the person is unsaved. God's grace is for the name staying in the book of life until the last moment (death). If 10b dies in his sin, his name is removed at death.

(3) For 10c (abnormal person) his name stays in the Book of Life as his volition will never be normally operative. At death his name still stays in. (Because of +R and J of God.)

13. Jesus Christ purchased all the human race. Issue: Volition

14. As long as you are alive you have a choice. Gen. 6:3, "he is flesh" physically alive, "yet . . . 120 years", he may live as long as 120 years from now, but after that, blotto!

15. AT RAPTURE

a. The believer goes up; unbeliever stays on the earth to go through the tribulation, there will be much evangelism during the Tribulation.

b. If one or both parents are believers, the normal child goes up if he has not reached the age of accountability. Same with a retard. If both parents are unbelievers, he stays with the parents under the concept of DI #3 (family) and will be hearing the Gospel during the Tribulation. The child may or may not accept it (the normal individual).

c. The retard is the same as the child before it reaches accountability, except it is not possible to evangelize him in the Tribulation, he is always safe, as he never reaches God-consciousness. God will always be +R and J.

16. AT SECOND ADVENT:

a. If he has accepted Jesus Christ during the Tribulation, he will go into the millennium in a physical body and replenish the earth. Rev. 20:8, "sands of the sea": A great population at the end of the millennium. This is the normal person who accepts Christ.

b. The child who has not reached accountability in the Tribulation will go into the Millennium where he will have a chance to accept Christ as Saviour.

c. If the retarded person has not died in the Tribulation (and gone to be with the Lord) he will be given:

(1) A resurrection body with Jewish age believers or
(2) Perform a miracle (mentally) and he will have opportunity under concept (b) to accept the Lord Jesus Christ in the Millennium.

Bread: Doctrine of: Matt. 4:4
(Category 74)

I. Matthew 4:3, " . . . command that these stones be made bread"

A. Jesus Christ is very hungry.

B. In order to turn stones into bread, He would have to use His volition apart from the Holy Spirit and the Plan of God.

C. Hence, the relationship of Jesus Christ's humanity and the Holy Spirit are under testing.

D. Jesus Christ is being tempted to obtain a lawful thing (food) in an unlawful way (apart from the power of the Holy Spirit.)

E. Jesus Christ is being tempted as to the sufficiency of the grace of the Father in providing His every need. Human viewpoint here would be, "Do it yourself".

F. Must Jesus Christ grab for Himself, or can He wait for the Father? He knows the Father has a plan, the Cross, for Him. Can He wait for the Father's timing?

G. This introduces the faith-rest, faith-patience issue.

H. At this time the Father will not permit the Humanity of Jesus Christ to die. The Old Testament tells how He will die.

II. Matthew 4:4, " . . . shall not live by bread aline, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God."

A. Bread (physical food) is necessary for life, but bread is a detail in man's dependence on God.

B. It is not the food, but the promise that guarantees the food, that counts. You always have the promise - the Word.

C. While bread is necessary to sustain life, it is a detail in survival.

D. What really sustains the believer is the promise of the Word in Phase 2.

E. Note it says man shall live by "every Word". A pastor-teacher needs to get the whole counsel of the Word. This can be done ONLY through OPERATION ICE.

1. "I": Isagogics: The Bible must be interpreted in accordance with the time in which it was written. Historical, cultural facts and so on.

2. "C": Categories: Bible doctrine subject matter. Isa. 28

3. "E": Exegesis: Verse by verse exposition using the original languages.

Capital Punishment
(Category 75)

1. There are two forms of Capital Punishment:

   a. Animals that kill human beings must be destroyed.
   b. Men or women who take life (murder) must be destroyed.

   Genesis 9:5, "And surely your blood of your lives will I require, at the hand of every beast will I require it, and at the hand of man's brother will I require the life of man."

2. Capital punishment is authorized. Genesis 9:6, "Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed."

3. Man has the authority: Try cases, determine guilt, punish the guilty.

4. There are TWO categories in which man has the right to human life:

   a. Capital Punishment (extends to lower creation)
   b. Warfare. Romans 13:1-7, Joshua 6:21, 8:24. Exodus 20:13 in the Hebrew text says, "Thou shalt not murder".

5. New Testament Bible Background for capital punishment in Romans 13:4.

   "he": One in authority
   "minister of God": Authority in Divine Institution No. 4, government, nations.
   "to thee for good": Administering a Divine Institution (human government) is for the good of the people in that national entity.
   "that which is evil": Violate the common law.
   "be afraid": You will have to pay for violation of common law.
   "sword": Principle of maximum enforcement of the law. Capital punishment.
   "for he . . . evil": He, a judge, has the authority to punish violation of the law.

6. Two principles of subjection to the law are found in Rom. 13:5

   a. "not only for wrath": Restrained by FEAR OF PUNISHMENT.
   b. "for conscience sake": Restrained because of his conscience. (Norms and standards)

7. The principle of law for orderly living is Biblical. A lawless society is a degraded society.

8. If a decadent nation does not enforce capital punishment crime will greatly increase. Then God administers capital punishment through permitting wards, permitting violence of various types.

Carnality
(Category 76)

1. After salvation, the believer continues to possess an old sin nature, 1 John 1:8, Rom. 7:14, 15.

2. The old sin nature is desperately wicked - Jer. 17:9, Psa. 5:2-5.

3. The believer under the control of the old sin nature is described in Romans 7, 1 Cor. 3:1-3 and surrounding context. 1 Cor. 5 and many other passages.

4. The old sin nature frustrates bona fide production in the life of the believer. Romans 7:5.

5. The old sin nature is acquired at physical birth - Psalm 51:5, Romans 5:12.

6. The character of the old sin nation (essence).

   a. Area of weakness - sins
   b. Area of strength - human good
   c. Lust pattern
   d. Trends: Lasciviousness and asceticism

7. The old sin nature is not in the resurrected body. Gen. 22

8. The old sin nature produces filthy rags righteousness. Isa. 64:6

9. Therefore, the old sin nature has many facets. The body of sin. Romans 6:6, Col. 2:11 (Gr.)

Canon of Scripture
(Category 77)

I. Definition: Books of the Bible recognized as genuine and inspired.

II. Principles of Canonicity for the Old Testament.

A. Every book of an acknowledged messenger of God who was commissioned of God to make known His will was accepted immediately as the Word of God.

B. Intra-Biblical information - They knew they had a Canon. Deut. 31:24-26, Neh. 8:1-8, Josh. 1:8, Judges 3:4, Dan. 9:2, Jer. 36.

C. Quotations of OT passages as Scripture: Matt. 22:29, John 5:39, 10:35, "Jesus said"

D. Law of public official action - Neh. 8:5

E. Law of cause and effect (recognition) 2 Kings 22, 23; Neh. 8 (cause of existence).

III. Principles of the New Testament Canon:

A. Apostolic: All written by apostles or someone closely associated with the apostles.

B. The New Testament was universally accepted at the time of writing.

C. Consistency with those already written.

D. Inspiration: Internal and external

E. Recognition by the Church.

F. Reference to Scripture in the CT.

IV. Pertinent Dates:

A. 70-170 AD: NT books are circulated and formed--Canon

B. 170-303 AD: Universal recognition by councils.

C. 303-392 AD: Final councils and final recognition.

Celibacy
(State of being single)
(Category 78)

1. The Bible makes provision for happiness in single status as well as in marriage.

2. There are 4 factors in the concept of single status.

   a. First: There is the GIFT OF CELIBACY: No ormal operation of libido in the life or is able to control waves of libido with no problem.

   b. Second: The operation of the Law of Supreme Sacrifice under which Paul operated. 1 Cor. 9:5

   c. Third: The concept of the eunuch set forth in Matt. 19:10-12. There are three categories.

      (1) Congenital eunuch. One who lacks the ordinary waves of libido (sexual desire) at normal times in life.

      (2) Those who become eunuchs through emasculation (castration)

      (3) The Law of Supreme Sacrifice

   d. Fourth: This is the concept involving those who have married but are now single and have advanced in age. They are enjoined to devote time to prayer and to other things which are important in the Lord's service. It also states in this passage that it is better for the younger women to marry. See 1 Tim. 5:9-10, exegesis.

3. Now that we understand that there is a bonafide single status, believers who are married should stop "looking down their noses" at people who have advanced a little in age and yet are not married.

4. Married or single status should not be the basis of social acceptability.

5. When a person is a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ, his marital status should not be a basis of fellowship.

6. The gift of celibacy takes away the libido factor and replaces it with a response and counter response between a person with the gift of celibacy and God, whereby they can have more spiritual productivity. No one should feel sorry for the celibate.

7. The greatest example of the gift of celibacy is the apostle Paul. Paul found in the Lord inner happiness and fulfillment. Paul was capable of marvelous production and operation.

8. Check this out in a more detailed way by thoroughly studying the category on the Doctrine of the Right Man & Right Woman.

Christian Way of Life Production
(Category 79)

1. The Christian Way of Life (CWL) is generally misunderstood and is the subject of much confusion today. RESULTS of living the Christian life are confused with the MEANS. Spirituality is generally not distinguished from morality or the Mosiac Law.

2. In the CWL, as set forth in the Epistles, the believer is not under the Mosiac law, but when he is controlled by the Holy Spirit, he fulfills the righteousness demanded by the Mosiac law, producing Divine Good and thus glorifying the Lord Jesus Christ.

3. The CWL is the believer using the grace apparatus of perception; to arrive at maturity. The resultant erection of the edification complex reflects the glory of God. See the category on GAP.

4. Nothing in the Christian life can count for God and for eternity apart from a clear understanding and application (gnosis to epignosis) of Bible Doctrine. This involves the understanding of scar tissue, edification complex, grace apparatus for perception, and the angelic conflict doctrines. All are related to the main category of Spirituality.

5. The CWL is higher than morality and the taboos of human life. It is a supernatural way of life, executed by God the Holy Spirit in and thru the believer as he is in fellowship (filled with the Holy Spirit).

6. The CWL is lived a moment at a time, even as you walk only a step at a time, but it progresses steadily as you grow in grace and knowledge (epignosis) of our Lord Jesus Christ.

7. All actions begin in the mind, therefore MENTAL ATTITUDES becomes the key to all actions of the believer.

8. What you think can get you out of fellowship. We are what we think and this is not always evident on the outside.

9. Every thought in life is either one of Divine Viewpoint (what the Word says) or human viewpoint. Isa. 55:8-9.

0. The Divine viewpoint is only possible thru the filling the Holy Spirit. Romans 8:5, "do mind" refers to thinking. They keep on thinking divine viewpoint.

1. Control of the Holy Spirit produces the fruit of the Spirit. Gal. 5:22-23 which is a description of the correct thought pattern in the Christian Way of Life. Also divine good is produced by the exhale of BD, and the erection of the edification complex.

2. The formula for the Christian way of life: C/BD in the F/HS ministering G in a PA emphasizing FT resulting in S/hs, a FR and an EC of the soul. This is a communicator of Bible doctrine being filled with the Holy Spirit ministering gnosis in a public assembly emphasizing faith-transfer in the storage area of the human spirit resulting in a frame of reference and the erection of the edification structure of the soul.

The Christian Way of Life: Purpose
(Category 80)

1. God has a purpose for every believer.
2. God is perfect; His plan is perfect.
3. Therefore, the plan of God operates on grace and excludes all believers.
4. God is free to love all believers and be consistent with His own holiness.
5. Every believer represents Christ on earth, full time. Study 1 Peter 1 on this, or tape Reel 1 of the 1968 study, LB.

The Christian Way of Life: Experiencial Doctrines
(Category 81)

I. General Experiential Doctrine of the Christian Way of Life

- A. Roll with the punch: Romans 8:28. The ability to lean on the Lord and trust Him under difficulty, trial, adversity and pressure.
- B. Don't race your motor: Phil. 4:6-7
- C. Rebound: 1 John 1:9
- D. Use Faith-transfer: 2 Cor. 5:7
- E. Keep moving: Gal. 5:15-16

II. Traits of self-life: Prov. 6:16-19 and other passages

- A. Secret spirit of pride: Feeling of self-importance
- B. Love of human praise: (secret fondness of being noticed to draw attention to one's self)
- C. Impatience & Anger
- D. A touchy, sensitive nature - disposition to resent reproof.

III. Traits of self-will:

- A. Stubborn, unteachable, argumentative.
- B. Peevish, critical, pick flaws
- C. Speaking of other's faults and magnifying one's own virtues.
- D. Discouragement, despondancy.
- E. Apathy, indifference and lack of concern for other.

IV. Experiential Doctrines: Galatians 6

A. Resporing another believer: Gal. 6:1

1. This passage is addressed to believers if (3rd class cond.) another believer is out of fellowship (overtaken in a fault) the spiritual believer is to restore him.

2. Restore in the Word means: (get back into fellowship.

a. Tune up as a motor: 1 Cor. 1:10,"perfectly joined."
b. Equip an army: 2 Cor. 13:11
c. Supply a fleet: 1 Thess. 3:10
d. Mend a fishing net: 1 Peter 5:10,"make you perfect."

3. The attitude of restoration:

a. Consider the source - OSN
b. Grace: God deals with us in grace
c. Fellowship: Encourage believers to have fellowsh with other believers.
d. Doctrine: Tell them about 1 John 1:9. HS makes us aware of doctrine.

B. The Problem of the Troubled believer: Galatians 6:2

1. Keep bearing one another's burdens, and so fulfill the Law of Jesus Christ, i.e. the filling of the Holy Spirit.

2. Three laws of burdens:

a. Bearing burdens of others. Gal. 6:2
b. Bear own burden. Gal. 6:5
c. Cast burdens upon the Lord. 1 Peter 5:7

C. Problem of Self-Deceit: Gal. 6:3-4

"If (1st class condition) anyone thinks himself to be something he is nothing. (From DV he deceives himself). But let everyone prove his own work (in the light of the Word) and then he will rejoice in himself, and not rejoice over another believer." Examine your own works after rebound and not the works of another believer.

D. The responsibility after rebound - Gal. 6:5. Carry your own responsibility before the Lord, representing Him as an ambassador.

E. Fellowship after rebound - Gal. 6:6. Let him that is taught, share it with someone else. Believers are to on what they learn to other believers.

F. Discipline after Rebound: Gal. 6:7-8

G. Grace after rebound: Gal. 6:9-10 Just keep on pluggi on!

Christian Way of Life: Techniques in Christian Life
(Category 82)

1. God has provided for every believer in the Church age which is absolutely unique. Never have believers in the history of the human race had so much with which to do so much.

2. These techniques are mechanics whereby doctrine is translated into your experience.

3. Use of these techniques cause you to glorify God and produce for Him, basis of production in the Christian Life.

4. The Techniques: (Five)

   a. T#1: Rebound: (Confessing sin Biblically). 1 John 1:9 consistently used. Repairs the damage of carnality and neutralizes the effect of human good. Only Biblical means of getting back into fellowship.

   b. T#2: Filling of the Holy Spirit: You are filled with the Holy Spirit when you use rebound--the Spirit controls your life and produces through you. Knowing you are in fellowship produces confidence in the Christian life.

   c. T#3: Faith-Rest: Knowing, believing, and applying the promises and doctrines in Phase 2 (The Christian Walk). Confidence is developed by perpetuation of the faith-rest technique into all sorts of circumstances.

   d. T#4: Occupation with Christ: Results in thinking divine viewpoint as a habit of your life. Heb. 12:2. It is also the result of confidence being thoroughly developed by perpetuation of the 3rd technique. It results in doctrine being your life and everything else a detail.

   e. T#5: Living in the Word: Isaiah 33:6, Psalm 138:2. This is studying, knowing, and using the Word. It is a springboard from which we move into maturity--edification complex construction.

5. The OT believers had 3 techniques:

   a. Rebound
   b. Faith-Rest
   c. Occupation with Christ

6. In the Church Age two more techniques were added

   a. Filling of the Holy Spirit
   b. Living in the Word (Completed Canon--66 books)

Christian Way of Life: Vocabulary
(Category 83)

1. Phase 2 (time) has an initial challenge for the believer.

2. The Christian way of life is a mental attitude. Correct mental attitude comes through the filling of the Holy Spirit and a knowledge of Bible doctrine.

3. To think you have to have words, we call it vocabulary.

4. One of the by-products of the CWL is the development and learning of Bible Doctrine, consisting of a vocabulary to hang your thinking upon. Within this vocabulary are numerous categories which organize and systematize your vocabulary.

5. A category is a vocabulary which is built around a point of doctrine. Every point of doctrine has nomenclature for a title.

6. You can never think beyond your vocabulary. If your vocabulary is small you have a limited field of thinking.

7. When the Holy Spirit teaches the human spirit, you develop a new vocabulary, and then your thinking expands, develops; and you have discernment, stimulation. Then you have ORIENTATION in life.

8. If you grow in the Christian way of life you do not need to have any kind of inferiority complex because of a lack of academic education.

9. You are no longer handicapped by your lack of talent, personality, education, or antying that is considered to be a human handicap.

10. You understand on the basis of GAP (GRACE APPARATUS OF PERCEPTION), not on the basis of human ability, talent, or moxie. GAP includes a Canon of Scripture, local church, pastor-teacher, indwelling Holy Spirit, rebound, breathing apparatus of the soul, the mind, and the human spirit--as well as the priesthood.

11. The human spirit is the storage area for epignosis. It stores the Word of God systematically, 1 Cor. 2:16.

12. Pressure situations require thinking doctrine which requires divine vocabulary (categories etc.)

13. The doctrine of vocabulary is first used by Adam in naming the animals. Genesis 2:19. Adam had to use vocabulary to intelligently name the animals. Among all the animals he found no one he could name Woman (Not named Eve until after the fall--Eve means eternal life).

    This proves that man is not an animal, did not evolve from a lower form of life. See categories on mental attitudes for more information.

Christology (Doctrine of Christ)
(Category 84)

I. His humanity was necessary so He could become a:

A. Saviour: Heb. 2:9-12

B. Mediator: 1 Tim. 2:5

C. High-Priest: Heb. 5:7-9

D. King: Luke 1:31, 32

II. Hypostatic Union: (See category on the hypostatic union)
Defined: Undimished deity and true humanity united in one person forever.

Phil. 2:6-8 Romans 1:2-5 Heb. 2:14-15 Gal. 4:4-5
John 1:1-14 Romans 9:5 1 John 1:1-3

III. Resurrection: (Each member of the Trinity had a part)

A. By the Father: Acts 2:24, 13:30, Romans 6:4, Eph. 1:19-20

B. By the Son: John 2:19, 10:17-18

C. By the Holy Spirit: 1 Peter 3:18, Romans 8:1

IV. Spheres of Christ's Ministry:

A. Law: Matt. 5-7, Grace principles in the law

B. Kingdom: Matt. 13

C. Church: Matt. 16, John 14-17

For the Doctrine of Christ study thoroughly the tapes on Matthew and John.

Christophany or Theophany
(Category 85)

I. Definition: An appearance of Christ in the Old Testament

II. Jesus Christ Appeared:

A. Often as an ANGEL: Gen. 22:11-18, 31:11-13, Exodus 3:2, Exodus 13:21, with 14:19.

B. Occasionally as a Man: Gen. 32:24-32 wrestled with Jacob In Genesis 18 he talked with Abraham. In Joshua 5:13-15, Christ is seen with a sword.

C. Sometimes as an inanimate object:

1. Burning bush: Exodus 3
2. Cloud: Exodus 33:9-23
3. Pillar of Fire: Ex. 33:9-23
4. God of Israel in cloud: Ex. 24:9-18

III. Principles of Christophany:

A. The Angel of Jehovah is Jesus Christ. Gen. 22:11-18

B. Many passages where the Angel of Jehovah is distinct from Jehovah. Genesis 24:7, Zech. 1:12-13, 1 Chron. 21:15. In such passages it is very clear that there is a distinction. The Angel of Jehovah is Jesus Christ, and Jehovah is God the Father.

C. The Angel of Jehovah is the 2nd person of the Trinity. Reason:

1. Distinction between the Angel of Jehovah and Jehovah.

2. The 2nd person of the Trinity, Jesus Christ, is the only visible member of the Trinity. John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Tim. 6:16.

a. The voice of the Father is heard--Matt. 3:17
b. The power of the Spirit is felt--Romans 8:16
c. The presence of Jesus Christ was visible when on earth. (Many passages.)

D. After the Virgin Birth, the angel of Jehovah designation is no longer used.

IV. Reasons why Melchizedek is Not a Christophany:

A. Melchizedek was a historical person. He was a king and a priest. He was a type of Christ, but not Jesus Chirst.

B. Christophanies or Theophanies are never given formal names. Ex: Angel of Jehovah. Also they are never mentioned with specific geographic names such as Salem.

C. God is the messenger in a Christophany--Mel. not God.

Christology (Doctrine of Christ)
By Charles Hodge
(Category 86)

1. All Divine Names and Titles apply to Christ. He is called:

God	Jehovah Lord	God over all
The Mighty God	Lord of Lords	
The Great God	King of Kings	

2. All Divine Attributes are ascribed to Him:

Sovereignty	Love	Omnipresence
Righteousness	Eternal Life	Omnipotence
Justice	Omniscience	Immutability
		Veracity

3. He is the Creator and Upholder of the Universe. All things are created by Him. By Him all things consist. John 1, 1 John 1

4. He is the object of:

   a. All worship, as far as intelligent creatures are concerned--angels worship Him (unfallen) highest creation of all.

   b. Christian sentiment.

   c. Reverance, love, faith, and devotion

5. TO HIM: Men and angels are responsible for their character and conduct.

6. It is required that:

   a. Men should honor Him as they honor the Father.
   b. They should exercise the same faith in Him that they do in God the Father.

7. He declares that He and the Father are one, and that those that have seen Him, have seen the Father also.

8. He calls all men unto Him and promises:

   To forgive their sins
   To send them the Holy Spirit
   To give rest and peace
   To raise them up at the last day
   To give them eternal life (at the moment of believing)

9. God: Is not more than, cannot promise more than, or do more than Christ is said to be, to promise, and to do.

10. He has, therefore, been the Christian's God from the beginning, in ALL AGES, AND IN ALL PLACES!

Christ Jesus: Deity Characteristics
(Category 87)

I. The Six Witnesses to His Deity in John 5:31-47

A. The Holy Spirit: 5:31,32

B. John the Baptist: 5:33, 35

C. His works: 5:36

D. The Father: 5:37,38

E. The Scriptures: 5:39-44. The Pentateuch speaks of the coming of Christ.

F. Pentateuch: "seed:" pictured in the furniture of the Tabernacle. 5:39-44

G. Moses: Pentateuch: 5:45-47

II. Peter's Confession: Matthew 16:16; Mark 8:27-29; Luke 9:19,20; John 6:68,69.

III. Testimony of the centurion at the Crucifixion. Mark 15:39

IV. Testimony of Martha: John 11:25-27

V. The Jews Understood Deity to be His Claim: John 10:33; 8:59

VI. Christ Called Himself God: Mark 14:61,62

VII. The Scriptures Attribute the Essence of Deity to Jesus Christ:

A. Total Essence: Col 2:19

B. Plus R (+R): 1 Peter 2:22

C. Justice: John 5:22

D. Eternal: John 17:5; Isa 9:6; Heb 13:8; Col 1:17

E. Omniscient: John 2:24

F. Omnipresent: Matt 28:20

G. Immutable: Hebrews 13:8

H. Creator: Col 1:16-18; John 1:3,10

VIII. Scriptures Address Christ as Deity: Hebrews 1:8

IX. N e verses in John 1:1; 17:5; 1:14.

Christ: Glories of Christ as the Victor in the Angelic Conflict (Category 88)

Scripture: Hebrews 1:2-3

I. Jesus Christ is heir of all things: 1:2. God the Father appointed JC in eternity past as the heir of all things.

A. Phil. 2:9-11. Jesus Christ is heir of all believers in all dispensations.

B. Believers of the Church Age are joint heirs with Jesus Christ. Hebrews makes JC the focal point of all history.

II. Jesus Christ is the focal point of all History: 1:2 - through Whom (Jesus Christ) also he (God the Father) designed the ages.

A. Jesus Christ created the universe: John 1:2, Heb. 1:10, Col. 1:16

B. But this is not referring to creation, but the design of the structure of history.

C. The emphasis is on angels. This is true as it relates to the Angelic Conflict. Time is a means of resolving the AC.

III. Jesus Christ is the revealer of God: 1:3 "Who (JC) being (absolute status) the brightness of His glory (essence)

A. Jesus Christ is the "flashing forth" of God.

B. Jesus Christ is the only revealed member of the Godhead. John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Tim. 6:16, 1 John 4:12. When God reveals Himself to man, He does so by God the Holy Spirit

IV. Jesus Christ is Co-Equal to God the Father - He has the same essence. 1:3, "The express image of His person."

A. Express image: Exact image
B. His essence is exactly the same as the Father
C. God the Father and God the Son have identical characteristics.
D. God is one in essence--Jesus Christ is not only man, but God also. Phil. 2:6

V. Jesus Christ is the sustainer of the universe: 1:3 "Upholding all things by the word of His power."

"Upholding": Sustain, present active tense: He always has and always will.

B. Jesus Christ created the universe and sustains it. Col. 1:17

C. God the Father designed or planned the universe. God the Holy Spirit created and sustains the universe. Heb. 1:10, John 1:3, Col. 1:16.

D. Power: Inherent power: Omniscient, Omnipresent, Omnipotent.

VI. Jesus Christ is the Saviour of Mankind: 1:3, "When He had by Himself purged our sins":

A. By Himself: Only doctrine sustain Jesus Christ while on the Cross. Reflexive, Jesus Christ did all the work Himself.

B. Aorist tense: He accomplished the work of our salvation in a point of time once and for all.

C. Before Jesus Christ could sit down, He purged our sins. "Purge" means to cleanse.

II. Jesus Christ won the Angelic Conflict: 1:3, "sat down on the right hand of God".

A. Sat down: Aorist

B. Right hand: Position of honor

C. Now all believers can go to Heaven

D. Majesty: God the Father

E. On high: 3rd Heaven

G. Positionally, we are higher than the angels.

Christ: The Rock
(Category 89)
Deut. 32:4

1. The Rock of Salvation: Ex. 17:1-7, Psa. 27:5, 1 Cor. 10:4, John 4:13-14, 7:37-39

2. The Rock of the Jews: Judgment - 1 Peter 2:8

3. The Rock of provision for believers: Isa. 26:3-4, Matt. 7:24-25.

4. The foundation Rock of Israel: Isa. 28:16

5. The Rock of the Church: Matt. 16:16, 1 Cor. 3:11, Eph. 2:22.

6. The Rock of destruction: Daniel 2:35

7. The Rock of resurrection: Numbers 20:7-8, Ex. 17:1-7

8. Jesus Christ is the Cornerstone of the Jewish and Church Age. 1 Cor. 3:11, Eph. 2:20-22.

9. The Rock of Judgment: Matt. 21:44

Christ: Matthew 4-Temptations of Jesus Christ (3)
(Category 90)

I. Principles of the 1st Recorded Temptation: Matt. 4:1-4

A. The temptation dealt with the relationship of Christ to the indwelling Holy Spirit.

B. Jesus Christ was tempted to operate independently of the indwelling Holy Spirit.

C. The temptation was designed by Satan to force Jesus Christ to violate the Kenosis principle and rely upon the omnipotence of His Deity.

D. This temptation was unique because it involved the power to convert stones to bread.

E. Principle: The believer is constantly tempted to rely on the OSN rather than the Holy Spirit: To produce human good rather than divine good.

II. Principles of the 2nd Recorded Temptation: Matt. 4:5-7

A. The 2nd temptation deals with relationship with the Word.

B. Satan attacked the source of resistance.

C. Satan attacked the Word by misquoting, distorting the Word and using passage out of context.

Distortion of Psalm 91:11, v. 6

1. To jump would defy the Law of Gravity
2. God does not protect the operation of negative volition in defiance of a divine law.
3. It would apply, of course, if someone pushed Jesus.
4. No protection for anyone acting independent of the Word or using the Word as distortion.

D. Satan added: "lest at any time"

1. Words were added
2. Satan added to distort
3. There are times when God's protection is promised
4. When the believer uses own volition to operate outside God's Word or Law, there is no protection from God.
5. God does not protect a believer from death by suicide. By committing suicide he deprives himself of further rewards.
6. For Jesus to jump would have been certain death for His humanity.
7. It was not the Father's will for Him to jump
8. A woman fell in the Garden through distortion of the Word in the same manner. (Eve).

E. "Thou shalt not tempt":

1. Jesus turns a first class condition back on Satan

2. It is Satanic to tempt the Lord.

3. Satan quoted Scripture which did not apply; Jesus quoted applicable Scripture.

4. To all believers who are tempted to commit suicide, this is worldliness and Satanic.

5. Your departure from the earth must be strictly the Sovereignity of God.

III. Principles of the 3rd Recorded Temptation: Matthew 4:8-11

A. The 3rd temptation deals with relationship with God the Father's plan.

B. It is the plan that Jesus Christ should rule the world, but the plan demands that the cross be before the crown. Without the cross, there can be no kingdom established of redeemed individuals.

C. In the 3rd temptation, Satan offers a plan that by-passes the cross.

D. The offer of Satan to give Jesus Christ the kingdoms of the world is bonafide because Satan is the ruler.

E. Satan's plan always ignores, rejects, and obscures the Cross.

F. This temptation which is rejected by the Lord Jesus Christ will be accepted by the Beast in the Tribulation.

In summary, Jesus Christ the Last Adam did not sin as the First Adam. Jesus Christ is the VICTOR IN THE ANGELIC CONFLICT. HEBREWS 1 & 2:

Christ: Trials (6)
(Category 91)

1. Before Ananias: John 18:12-24 (night before the crucifixion). Ananias was not a judge, making it an illegal trial. He was political boss of Jerusalem, a former high priest, religious and controlled the money-changing set-up in the temple. Since Christ twice cleansed the temple, Ananias hated Christ, "Get rid of Him!"

2. Before Caiaphas: Matthew 26:57-68. It is still night. The Jews needed two witnesses (Deut. 19:45) according to the law, but they could not get two liars to agree. Being held at night, it was contrary to Jewish jurisprudence. There was no defense attorney which was illegal. There was violence in the courtroom and this was illegal.

3. Before Caiaphas again: Matt. 27:1-2, Luke 22:66-77, Mark 14:53-65. The Sanhedrin realized that the trial at night was illegal, so they had the 3rd trial after daylight. (After 6:00 a.m.) This took only 15 minutes or so. However they were haywire for it was illegal to sentence anyone on a Holy Day (the Passover was being held.)

4. Pilate went to meet them in the 4th trial (1st three were religion-oriented, last three are before the Roman authorities). The Jews could not use capital punishment without the Roman's permission. Pilate went to meet them because the Jews could not come inside a Gentile dwelling on a Holy Day. Issue in this trial was not blasphemy as before, but a charge of treason. Pilate for once was honest in trying to ascertain the guilt or innocence of Christ but he did try to evade responsibility. John 18:28-38, Luke 23:1-7, Mark 15:1-5, Matt. 27:11-14, this was a fair trial.

5. Before Herod. Luke 23:8-12. When Pilate heard that Christ might be under the jurisdiction of Herod, he sent him over to Herod. Herod tried to play with him, mock him, wanted to see Christ perform miracles, finally set him back to Pilate.

6. Pilate said Jesus Christ was innocent in the sixth trial. Jewish leaders were controlled by Satan, and then said, "Don't release unto us the most wonderful person who ever lived . . . release unto us BArabbas, Public Enemy No. 1. They wanted the crown, but they didn't want the Cross. John 18; Luke 22:13-26, Matthew 27:15-26, Mark 15:6-15.

Then Jesus Christ is led to be crucified amidst the mobs crying, "Crucify Him, Crucify Him."

Christ: Uniqueness
(Category 92)

I. Hypostatic Union: Jesus Christ has two natures: Undiminished Deity and True Humanity in one person forever. Jesus Christ is equal to and superior to the human race.

II. Impeccability of Christ: Deity

A. Not temptable

B. Not peccable: not able to sin

C. The humanity was not peccable but temptable.

III. Temptability of Jesus Christ: (Matthew 4)

A. Minus OSN!

B. Virgin birth separated Him from the human race.

C. No imputation of Adam's sin.

D. Both Adam and Jesus Christ started out the same, and both were tempted under the same concept.

E. Temptation was bona fide, but did not come from the old sin nature.

F. He was tempted but never succumbed. Hebrews 4:15

G. Both were tempted by Satan using all his genius and wiles to cause them to act independently of God. Jesus Christ was successful in resisting but Adam was not.

H. Jesus Christ faced unique temptations. No one in the human race has faced these temptations in the same manner or intensity that He did!

Christ: Reasons Why Jesus Christ Became True Humanity
(Category 93)

I. Salvation: So that every member of the human race might have the opportunity of believing in Christ (the majority do not). As Deity, He could not die--doctrine of divine essence. Deity could not be in one spot and is not qualified to die for man. Phil 2; Heb 2:9-12; John 8:58

II. Mediator: Coequal with God and man. The barrier is removed by the cross and Jesus Christ now stands as the mediator. Job 25-53; John 1:1-5; 1:9-14; 1 Timothy 2:5

III. High Priest: The priest must be a man - Hebrews 5, 7, 9.

IV. King: Jesus Christ is the Son of David - 2 Sam 7:17-19; 1 Chron 21; Matthew 27:37.

Church: Invisible
(Category 94)

1. Meaning of the word "Church" (Greek: "ecclesia": "that which is called out."

2. Up until the time of the Lord's ministry on earth the Church was a complete mystery.

3. The Church universal (and invisible in the true Biblical sense) is made up of both Jew and Gentile who accept the Lord Jesus Christ as their Saviour--regardless of their badge or affiliation. Gal. 3:26-28.

4. From the moment of regeneration they cease to be Jew or Gentile, and become 'Church". Gal. 3:26-28, Col. 3:11

5. At the point of salvation the Holy Spirit baptizes all believers into the body of Christ. 1 Cor. 12:13.

6. In 1 Cor. 12:12 the church is called the body of Christ, with many members. Romans 12:4.

7. In Col. 1:18 Christ is designated as the head of the body, the CHURCH!

8. The "Church" is the Lord's redeemed called from the old creation (in Adam) into Christ. 1 Cor. 15:22, 2 Cor. 5:17.

9. The Church is likened to a growing, but not yet completed structure. Eph. 2:21-22, 1 Cor. 3:9.

10. When the last member has been added to his perfect body, or structure, the Lord will remove His church from the earth. John 14:3, 1 Thess. 4:13-17, Eph. 5:27.

11. The Lord Himself builds His church. Matt. 16:18, Acts 2:47b.

12. The Church when in heaven, is called the "bride of Christ." Rev. 19:6-8.

13. Nomenclature (Vocabulary): Position in Christ, "In Christ", Body of Christ, Church Universal, Church Invisible, Bride of Christ.

Church: Began on Day of Pentecost
(Category 95)

1. Meaning of the word "Church": (Ekklesia): "that which is called out." It does have a starting place.

2. John 14:16-20 gives a picture of the Church age relationships with the Holy Spirit and with the Lord Jesus Christ. Christ is absent during the Church age and the Holy Spirit produces His character.

3. Acts 1:5 says the baptism of the Holy Spirit will happen on the Day of Pentecost. Also John 14:20. Acts 11:15 says that the baptism of the Holy Spirit happened on the day of Pentecost which was the beginning of the Church age.

4. Acts 1:5 says the prophecy of the baptism of the Holy Spirit which signals the beginning of the Church age, 1 Cor. 12:13. The Body of Christ is the Church universal.

5. Church started in only ONE LOCAL SPOT. Jerusalem. In 30 years the church had covered the world.

6. In Jerusalem on the Day of Pentecost were 120 Jewis Age believers. Compare Acts 1:12-14 with Acts 2:1-4. They were already regenerated and sealed.

7. Then the Baptism of the Holy Spirit occurred (when the Spirit came to represent Jesus Christ on earth).

8. Those 120 Jewish age believers were indwelt by the Holy Spirit on the Day of Pentecost and baptized (by the Holy Spirit) into the body of Christ. They then preached the Gospel to the "devout" Jews (not saved) present for the Passover feast. Acts 2:3-5

9. At that point (just as now when someone is born again) they were filled with the Holy Spirit (in fellowship), Acts 2:4a.

10. Those Jewish age believers (the 120) received a spiritual gift. Acts 2:4b, example: The gift of tongues.

11. Result: As these Jewish age believers were placed into the body of Christ, they received:

    New to them: Baptism of the Holy Spirit (Union with Christ).
    The Indwelling of the Holy Spirit
    Spiritual gift (at least one)

    They already had: Regeneration and sealing.

12. Now they are Church and have received the same 5 things (work of the Holy Spirit) that anyone born-again in the Church age have. In Acts 19:1-7 Jewish age believers are placed into the Body of Christ through the baptism of the Spirit. In the transition period between the Jewish and Church age--the laying on of hands was a means of identification, an apostle already having been placed in the Church age on the day of Pentecost--identifies with Jewish age believers--and upon doctrinal teaching and laying on of hands they are also placed into the body of Christ.

Church Universal: Doctrine of Intercalation (Great Gap)
(Category 96)

I. Up until the time of the Lord's ministry on earth the Church was a complete mystery. Eph. 3:1-10

II. This doctrine refers to the OT and Gospels where the "Church" could be mentioned, but isn't; where a passage approaches the Church Age (death, burial, resurrection, ascension) and then stops. If the passage has any more to say, it skips the Church Age and goes into the Tribulation, Millennium, etc.

III. Doctrine of the Church Age (mystery) is not in the Old Testament or in the Gospels, minus a few passages. John 13-17, and Matt. 16:18. (Latter passage, the Church is still future).

IV. Examples of this gap: (Where the Church age could or would be mentioned, if it were mentioned in the OT).

A. Lev. 23 between v. 22-23

B. Daniel 9: between v. 26 and v. 27

C. Isaiah 61:1-2 between "year of the Lord" (1st Advent) and "day of vengeance" (2nd Advent).

There are many other passages of this type.

Church Universal: Jewish Age Believer Becomes Church (Category 97)

I. The Jewish age believers were made Church age believers at Ephesus. (Just one illustration of the transition). Acts 19:1-7

A. v. 1: "certain disciples": Jewish age believers.

B. v. 2: "since" should be translated "when". Paul is determining whether they are Old Testament or New Testament believers.

C. v. 3: "unto what": On what basis

"unto John's baptism": Confirms the fact that they were Jewish age believers. (Old Testament)

D. v. 4: "repentance": A complete change of mental attitude concerning Jesus Christ. You do not repent of your sins. The object of the verb "to repent" is Jesus Christ. It is a synonym of believe. The word repent does not include any reference to "sorrow for sin". Repent is simply the mental attitude you have toward Jesus Christ when you believe. When you believe you repent. When you repent you believe.

E. v. 5: "were baptized": Aorist - point of time

"in the name": Into the person of the Lord Jesus Christ. This referring to the baptism of the Holy Spirit, which entered them into union with Christ.

These OT Jewish believers could not have positional truth without the Death, Burial, Resurrection and Ascension. Christ had not died in the Old Testament (historically) therefore no Baptism of the Holy Spirit in the Old Testament. John 7:37-39.

F. v. 6: "laid his hands upon them": To show that Paul was identified with them.

"spake with tongues": To show they were identified with Pentecost.

II. Within one generation, the Age of Israel believers became Church Age believers, in union with Christ, throughout the inhabited world.

Church Universal: Doctrine of the Mystery
(Category 98)

1. Up until the time of the Lord's ministry on earth the Church was a complete mystery.

2. Greek meaning of "mystery": Known to those on the inside and not to those on the outside. The Greek word is transliterated.

3. "Mystery" is the NT has reference to Church age truth.

4. Church age was prophesied in the New Testament by Jesus Christ in Matt. 16:18, and John 14:20 "at that day."

5. Doctrine of the Church age (mystery) is not in the Old Testament or in the Gospels (minus Matthew 16:18, John 13-17 (the Upper Room Discourse). Read Ephesians 3:5 to this effect.

6. The Church age began on the Day of Pentecost. John 14:20, " . . . on that day."

7. The Holy Spirit takes a believer at the point of salvation and enters him into Union with Christ (Union with Christ). This only happens in the Church age.

8. The baptism of the Holy Spirit actually began on the Day of Pentecost, although it is not mentioned until Acts 11:15-16.

   a. v. 15: "as on us at the beginning": Apostles on the day of Pentecost

   b. v. 16: Quotes Acts 1:5

9. Crucifixion, Death, Resurrection and Ascension took place during the age of Israel. The Church Age began on the Day of Pentecost. Tribulation and Millennium are not Church Age.

10. The Church Age is called the "dispensation of the grace of God." (Ephesians 3:2). This is because a maximum amount of grace is available in the Church Age. Example: The Jews had failed in their responsibility, but Jews were first people made "Church".

11. We find the doctrine of the mystery in Ephesians 3:3-6

    a. v. 3: Revelation of the mystery.
    b. v. 4: Knowledge of the mystery.
    c. v. 5: Definition of the mystery.
    d. v. 6: Content of the mystery.

12. The doctrine of the intercalation is, in the Old Testament, where the Church Age could or should be mentioned, and it isn't.

Church Universal: Team Concept, Details
(Category 99)

I. All believers are on the same team. Romans 12:4. But they do not play the same position on the team.

II. We are all members of the same team and we are dependent upon one another. The filling of the Holy Spirit is the basis for making the team work.

III. Only in Union with Christ is there equality:

IV. Areas in Common: (Grace operation all the way)

A. All Believers are:

1. In Union with Christ
2. Indwelt by Jesus Christ
3. Indwelt by the Holy Spirit
4. Priests
5. Ambassadors for Christ
6. Equipped to use Rebound.
7. Equipped with the breathing apparatus of the soul.

B. Every believer has:

1. A human spirit
2. A mind--and facets of the soul
3. the completed canon of Scripture
4. At least one spiritual gift
5. The privilege of prayer and worship.

C. Every Believer is:

1. Commanded to live a supernatural way of life, which requires the filling of the Holy Spirit, the basis for production, the continued use of faith-transfer and the erection of the edification complex. Eph. 3, 5

2. Responsible for representing Jesus Christ accurately. Acts 1:8.

V. Areas of Difference:

A. The Old Sin Nature: Every believer has an old sin nature which differs from the next person in operation of patterns of interest, lust pattern, area of weakness and area of strength. All is unacceptable to God.

B. Spirituality: The believer is either spiritual or carnal at any given moment. In fellowship-divine good is produced.

C. Growth: Different stages: babe, teenager, adult. 1 John 2:12-14

D. Physical or personal differences:

E. Spiritual gifts: These determine authority and responsibility in the Church. In human life authority and responsibity come because of physical birth, ability etc.

In the Christian way of life all authority and responsibility is based upon spiritual birth and the sovereign bestowal of spiritual gifts by the Holy Spirit at that time.

Church Universal: Team Concept Principle
(Category 100)

1. The Lord Jesus Christ is absent from the earth, seated at the right hand of the Father.
2. Every believer represents Him. 2 Cor. 5:20
3. Every believer is part of the body of Christ, in Union with Christ. 1 Cor. 12;13.
4. Because we in Union with Christ the Holy Spirit has sovereignly bestowed upon us at least one spiritual gift. 1 Cor. 12:11
5. The different parts of the body (1 Cor. 12) are analogous to spiritual gifts.
6. This spiritual gift determines position on the team.
7. All spiritual gifts depend upon the filling of the Holy Spirit for operation, for divine production. The filling of the Holy Spirit is more important than any spiritual gift. 1 Cor. 12
8. For MAXIMUM DIVINE PRODUCTION from your spiritual gift you need the filling of the Holy Spirit plus Bible Doctrine.
9. It is to the advantage of every believer to have a spiritual gift.
10. It is to the advantage of the body of Christ to have all of the spiritual gifts that are permanent and operative today.
11. One of the great factors of a local church is the consistent function of believers in fellowship functioning in service through the area of their spiritual gift.
12. What you do in the Christian Life in way of service depends upon your spiritual gifts, plus knowing the techniques and growing up (development of the edification complex).
13. We all have the same POSITION IN CHRIST: All Chiefs from the standpoint of position.
14. But in time (on earth) we have different spiritual gifts: Some are chiefs, some are sub-chiefs, and many Indians. Some gifts carry more authority than others.
15. Distinction of gifts does not in any way make you inferior or superior. Each gift determines the believer's responsibility.
16. Check out the Categories on Spiritual Gifts.

Church Universal: "Upon this Rock" Constructions
(Category 101)

1. Although God saw fit not to make known this mystery prior to the Church Age, He had planned the "Church universal" before the foundation of the world. Eph. 1:4. BY THE WAY--this has nothing to do with the Universal Church denomination in America today--it is apostate all the way.

2. The structure of the Church could not begin until after the Lord Jesus Christ had died, risen and ascended up into heaven and was seated at the right hand of God.

3. The Church is called the "body of Christ", Ephesians 1:22-23. Christ is the head of the body, the church. Col. 1:18

4. The construction of the Church is given in Ephesians 2:19-22.

5. The founder of the Church is Jesus Christ (Eph. 2:20b) the Chief Cornerstone (who is SALVATION for both Church Age and previous dispensations) and brings Jew and Gentile together IN CHRIST in the Church Age.

6. The HISTORICAL FOUNDATION of the church is the NT gifts of apostleship and prophecy, which were possessed by the early church leaders and historical founders of the Church! Eph. 2:20a

7. Matt. 16:18, " . . . upon this rock I will build my church . . ." Christ is the rock. 1 Cor. 10:4b; Psalm 18:31. A Rock is hard and solid, a safe and sturdy foundation on which to put up a building of any size. You would not erect a building on a pebble.

8. All believers in this dispensation are considered "living stones" who are "acceptable to Jesus Christ."

9. The meaning of the name "Peter" (his new name) was "the little rock" or "a little chip off a big rock."

10. Peter understood that he was exactly like any other believer, a small living stone, which, when fitted together, made up the Church Universal.

11. Peter understood that he was NOT "THE ROCK" on which the Lord's Church would be built, but that Christ would be the foundation. 1 Peter 2:4-9.

12. Matt. 16:18-19, "I will build my church": Future. The "keys of the kingdom": Perogative of witnessing.

13. The building groweth": (Eph. 2:21) as each new believer is added to the body of Christ by the baptism of the Holy Spirit. 1 Cor. 12:12.

14. Holy Spirit holds this Church (building together). Within each individual there should be an edification-complex also.

Circumcision: Romans 4:11-12
(Category 102)

1. Circumcision was a sign and a seal. Romans 4:11

2. The true significance of circumcision is not in its perpetuation but in its institution. Romans 4:11.

3. First, circumcision was a sign that salvation had already taken place - Abraham was already saved.

4. Then it was a seal - a seal indicates the validity of the thing to which it is attached (salvation package).

5. The seal has no value - it is just a wax with an imprint.

6. Circumcision was a seal attached to something valuable. The seal is no good without the substance. The substance is salvation.

7. Abraham's circumcision is the seal, just as water baptism is the seal today.

8. When Paul wrote this, the religious Jews (ignoring the substance) had taken the seal and tried to make it valuable. They contended that salvation was by circumcision, a ritual.

9. Circumcision was to Abraham what ritual (water) baptism is in the Church Age to us, in that water baptism indicates that we have been saved.

10. The circumcision of the Jews before salvation was anticipated by the parents that they would teach their children, it anticipated their salvation. Circumcizing the child on the 8th day indicated faith-rest on the part of the parents, they anticipated that their child would be saved in the future and enjoy the unconditional covenants promised to Abraham and his seed.

11. Abraham was saved by faith, however, long before he was circumcized.

12. Because Abraham was saved in status quo of uncircumcision, it makes hime the father (pattern) of all who believe, whether Jew or Gentile.

13. Since circumcision does not save, then salvation is not a Jewish monopoly in the Old Testament.

14. Those who followed the pattern of Abraham (Faith) were saved, +R was imputed to them whether Jew or Gentile.

15. This excludes the Mosiac Law as a way of salvation, because the Mosiac Law was given to the Jews.

Cheating in Business
(Category 102)

Ephesians 4:28, "Let him that stole steal not more: but rather let him labor, working with his hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth."

1. The phrase, "Let him that stole' is a present act participle.
2. The believer with scar tissue operates under mental attitude sins and is a slave to the details of life.
3. A believer with scar tissue will have materialism lust.
4. In the darkness of his soul he seeks to gain money to gratify his lust pattern.
5. Removal of scar tissue changes the pattern of dishonesty in business.
6. As the scar tissue is removed, the edification complex is erected.
7. Erecting an edification complex changes the behaviour pattern of business procedure.
8. Since the believer in business is in full time Christian service, he must conduct that business as unto the Lord.
9. The full-time Christian service demands honesty in business practice, otherwise, there is a loss of testimony.
10. The edification complex stabilizes the believer in business. It reflects the glory of God.

Circumcision: Spiritual Significance
(Category 103)

I. First Concept:

A. The initial act of circumcision in the human race involved Abraham. Genesis 17:8-11

B. This initial act of circumcision is identified with possessing the land of Canaan by Abraham's seed. Abraham separated him self unto the Lord and the Lord's promise.

C. Circumcision in its initial activity was the seal of faith in God's promise, indicating that Abraham believed God's Word. Gen. 17:10-11

II. Second Concept: Romans 4:11, Abraham

A. Circumcision is a sign of imputed righteousness.

B. It is the sign that one has believed and is cleansed by the blood and has credited to his account +R of God.

III. Third Concept: Colossians 2:11-12

A. Circumcision is a picture of retro-active positional truth, identification with Christ in His death.

B. Principle: There can be no victory in the Christian experience apart from victory over the old sin nature.

C. One phase of this victory is application of retro-active positional truth to experience. Romans 6:1-13

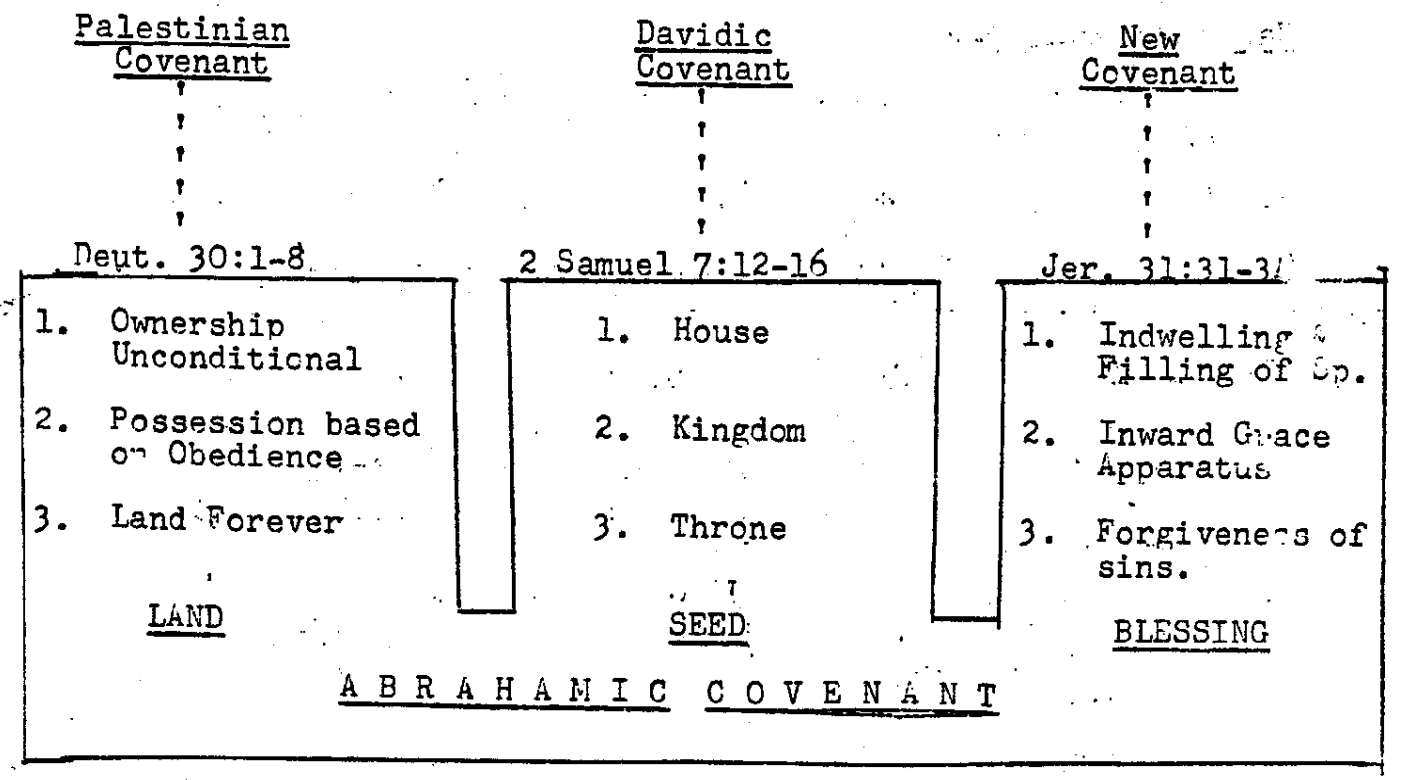
IV. Fourth Concept:

A. Circumcision is a sign of regeneration.
B. Circumcision was to the one who was born again in Israel what water baptism is to the one who is born-again in the Church Age.
C. One exception: 8th day circumcision was a dedication on the part of the parents (no decision by the child) that they would declare the message of the Christology of the Mosiac Law to their children. They anticipated by faith that their children would become believers.

V. Fifth Concept: Joshua 5

A. Circumcision is a picture of rebound: Principle of the circumcision at Gilgal.
B. Rebound is necessary for service.
C. Jericho fell because the children of Israel were in fellowship (grace). God did the doing but God's grace must flow through a cleansed channel (because of rebound).
D. There can be no victory over Jericho until there is victory over carnality. Circumcision denotes separation from the flesh - this is accomplished by use of 1 John 1:9, self-judgment.

Covenants: Four Unconditional
(Category 104)



I. The Abrahamic Covenant:

The Abrahamic Covenant is found in the conversation between God and Abraham in Genesis 12, 13, 15, 17, 22. Abraham and his seed are promised land (the land of Canaan), seed (descendents) blessing (through faith) forever if they utilize His grace. This is the basic covenant--

II. Palestinian Covenant: Deut. 30:1-8

This covenant based on the Abrahamic amplifies the land promises. Israel's ownership of the land is unconditional but possession is based upon obedience--to the plan of salvation and growth in grace.

III. Davidic Covenant: 2 Samuel 7:12-16

This covenant amplifies the seed promises of the Abrahamic Covenant. Among the seed (descendents of Abraham) would be the God-man Jesus Christ. Christ is the Qualified Saviour.

IV. New Covenant: Jeremiah 31:31-34

The New Covenant amplifies the blessing promises of the Abrahamic Covenant. It provided for conversion through the blood of the everlasting covenant, and inward Grace Apparatus.

Communion Table
(For believers only)
(Category 105)

THE FOUR PURPOSES OF COMMUNION: 1 Cor. 11:20-34

I. Harmony: vs. 20-22

A. You should come together habitually for church service. Also Hebrews 10:25

B. Love feast (church supper) was eaten before Communion

C. Emphasis was not to be on eating but on sharing - harmony as the Body of Christ.

II. Remembrance of the Lord Jesus Christ. vs. 23-26

A. Bread: Speaks of the Work of Christ, emphasis on the PERSON of Christ (incarnation). Impeccability - 2 Cor. 5:21. " . . . I am the BREAD of life, he that cometh to me shall never hunger . . ." John 6:35

B. "which is broken": Jesus Christ dying on the cross. He was "bruised". Isa. 53:5. No bones were broken - John 19:33, 36. This fulfilled Scripture: Ex. 12:46; Num. 9:12.

C. Eating of the bread is a picture of faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

D. CUP: Speaks of the WORK OF CHRIST, emphasis on the shedding of blood.

E. "The New Testament in My Blood" is a New Covenant (salvation) through the death of Jesus Christ.

F. We are to keep on doing this in REMEMBRANCE.

III. Restoration: vs. 27-32

A. We, as believers in the Church Age, have two rituals:

1. Baptism: ONCE - speaks of Positional Truth
2. Communion: MANY TIMES - speaks of fellowship with God in time.

B. We are not to partake of communion while out of fellowship. "unworthily".

C. "Let a man examine himself": (himself, not others) to see if he is in fellowship, and partake when in the bottom circle, or get back in, if not in fellowship.

1. No church board, church government is to bar a believer from communion, it is a personal and individual matter.

2. There is no Biblical basis for closed communion

D. If you partake of communion while out of fellowship you are subject to damnation. This is divine discipline, chastisement for the believer out of fellowship.

E. Because believers take communion while out of fellowship many are:

1. "weak": Feeble, loss of energy

2. "sickly": Chronic invalid

3. "and many sleep": Christian death

F. If we judge ourselves and rebound, we avoid divine discipline.

IV. Fellowship: vs. 33-34

A. When you come together for the love feast (church supper) "tarry" (wait) for all and partake together.

B. If you are hungry, eat at home so that you can wait for one another (be courteous) and, as a result, be in fellowship before you partake of communion.

Communion Table: Introduction
(Category 105)

I. Two Ordinances for the Church:

A. Baptism: Picture of the believer in the top circle. Ritual which depicts union with Christ.

B. Communion Table: Ritual which depicts bottom circle. This is done repeatedly.

Baptism is connected with our relationship with Christ, communion with our fellowship.

II. Questions Regarding Communion:

A. Should we serve wine or grape juice?

Answer: Grape juice because fermentation was the same as leaven, and leaven was removed from the Passover period

B. Who is eligible to distribute the elements?

Answer: Every believer is a priest, therefore any believer has a right to distribute the elements. However, in the framework of the local church, the administration is responsible for its distribution.

C. Who is eligible to partake of the elements?

Answer: Any believer in FELLOWSHIP with the Lord.

D. Can the Lord's Supper be taken at home?

Answer: Yes. For the first 300 years the believers in the Lord Jesus Christ did not meet in buildings as we do now but in homes, etc. Example: One church in Jerusalem met in John's home (John Mark) or his mother's home. They also meet in grottoes, caves, open fields, etc.

E. How often should one partake of communion?

Answer: "this do ye, as oft as ye drink it": 1 Cor. 11:25. The early church partook of the Lord's Supper every Lord's day, their entire service was different, involving evening worship for three or four hours. There is no stated time element in frequency of holding communion. Note 1 Cor. 14 - length of service, also Acts 20:6-12 where the service is being held at night--and it is very long.

F. What is the significance of Communion?

Answer: Harmony, Remembrance, Restoration, Fellowship

Communism vs. Christian Charity: Acts 2:44 ff.
(Category 106)

1. All Bible Doctrine is 100% in opposition to communism.

2. Dialectical materism has as its criterion rationalism. There is NO good--in Communism--ever.

3. Bible Doctrine has as its criterion the Word of God.

4. The Word of God is the chief source of opposition to communism, now and forever.

5. This passage (Acts 2:45) troubles some people who are ignorant of the conflict between Christianity and Communism.

6. Christianity says:

   a. Accept Jesus Christ as Saviour
   b. Solution to man's problem is personal
   c. Regeneration is the only answer.

7. Communism says:

   a. Reject God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit.
   b. Solution to man's problem is collective. Greatest good for the greatest number.
   c. Changed environment is the answer, the communist says.

8. "Had all things common": This is not communism but Christian charity; the principle of believers helping believers in time of emergency or catastrophe.

9. This was an emergency situation. Believers, because of their faith in Christ, were ostracized by both Hellenistic Jews (Grecians) and by the Judaistic Jews. Two cultures were in conflict in Palestine for about 100 years. As a result many believers found themselves in dire straits - without food, shelter, or help of any kind.

10. Persecution came from Roman 10%ers reporting Christians to the procurator who would take them to the praetoriam where they would be tried. If found guilty, the Romans would confiscate their possessions and 10% would go to the informer - so there were many informers in Jerusalem. This explains the background for the emergency.

11. This passage indicates how the early church met this catastrophe. Believers helped each other. They provided charity, helping those in need.

12. There is no more communism in what the believers did here than there is in any system of charity.

13. Charity is the operation of the individual's volition in helping those in catastrophe or less fortunate conditions. If there is coercion then it becomes an infringement on freedom.

14. Christianity and communism are not only exact opposites, but antagonistic.

15. Christianity emphasizes the God-head and relationship with God whereas Communism denies God and glorifies man (man by man's efforts can create a perfect world).

16. Christianity recognizes the freedoms and rights of individuals, including the right of private business and property, private ownership of business, etc. (Nationalism).

    a. Communism rejects all of these things.

    b. Communism says everything belongs to the state.

17. This passage does not teach or advocate communism or socialism. The Bible says that the poor will always be around. You cannot legislate away poverty through poverty programs.

    a. In this Acts passage you have believers operating under the principle of divine good.

    b. Socialism at its best, can only produce human good, but Christianity (believers filled with the Holy Spirit) at this point is producing divine good.

    c. Divine good is not only produced by the filling of the Holy Spirit, but by the application of Bible doctrine to experience and the reflecting of the edification complex.

18. Under the persecution background of this passage dispossessed believers were helped by those who had materialistic things.

19. When the situation in Jerusalem became critical so that all believers were dispossessed, it was the Apostle Paul who went through Northern and Southern Greece, Macedonia and Achaia and took up an offering for the relief of the poor saints in Jerusalem. This permitted the survival of the believers who remained in that difficult spot.

20. But in Acts 2:44, they are sharing--Christian charity.

Comparison
(Category 107)

Church Age	Age of Israel
1. Salvation by faith in Christ Jesus. Acts 16:31	Salvation by faith in Christ Jesus. Romans 1:1-4
2. Every believer in union with Christ. 1 Cor. 12:13	No union with Christ in death, burial, and resurrection.
3. Church: Neither Jew nor Gentile. Gal. 3:28	Jews and proselytes
4. Jesus Christ indwells every believer.	Jesus Christ did not indwell believers.
5. Holy Spirit indwells every believer. John 14:17	Holy Spirit empowered certain individuals for special jobs, at specific times. Moses, Num. 11:16-17, David, 1 Sam. 16:13.
6. Universal priesthood of every believer. 1 Peter 2:5,9	Specialized priesthood (Tribe of Levi, Numbers 18:20-32.
7. Completed Canon of Scripture.	Canon incomplete. 1 Cor. 13:9, 10
8. Filling of the Holy Spirit is spirituality, supernatural way of life. Eph. 5:18 compared with Gal. 5:22-23.	The faith-rest technique is spirituality. Heb. 11
9. Emphasis on role and responsibility of individual believer. Every believer is an ambassador for Christ, in full time Christian service. 2 Cor. 5:20.	Emphasis on special leadership, such as prophets, kings, etc. David: 1 Sam. 16:13
10. Only rituals (ordinances) are communion and baptism. 1 Cor. 11:23-34; Acts 8:36-38	Much ritual: Shadow revelation concerning Jesus Christ. Heb. 10
11. No sabbath. We worship every day. Hebrews 14:5-6	Sabbath: Ex. 20:8-10

Comparison: Indwelling Holy Spirit and Lord Jesus
(Category 108)

1. Indwelling was prophesied for this age (Church age).

   a. Holy Spirit: John 7:39, 14:16-17
   b. Jesus Christ: John 14:20

2. This was impossible before Jesus Christ was glorified. John 7:39.

3. Distinction must be made between the indwelling Holy Spirit and the indwelling Lord Jesus Christ.

4. The Lord Jesus Christ indwells the believer. John 14:20, Gal. 2:20, 2 Cor. 13:5, Col. 1:27.

5. The Holy Spirit indwells the believer. John 14:16-17, 1 Cor. 3:16, 1 Cor. 6:19-20, Romans 8:9-10, Gal. 3:2, 4:6.

6. The Lord Jesus Christ indwells us for the purpose of fellowship. Rev. 3:20.

7. The Holy Spirit indwells us to provide the power to execute the Christian way of life--and to glorify the Lord Jesus Christ. John 16:14, Eph. 5:18, Gal. 5:22-26.

8. The power of the Holy Spirit is turned on through the cleansing provided through the use of 1 John 1:9. The Holy Spirit is God and God cannot control if there is sin in the life.

9. The Holy Spirit is the only one who can glorify Christ in the Church age.

10. Relationship with Jesus Christ means a relationship with the Holy Spirit.

Comparison: Rapture & the 2nd Advent
(Category 109)

Rapture		2nd Advent
Only believers can see Him. Private. Heb. 9:28, Acts 1:11	1.	Every eye shall see Him. Public. Rev. 1:7
Christ meets believers in the air. 1 Thess. 4:17	2.	Christ stands on the Mt. of Olives. Zech. 14:4.
Believers taken off the earth. John 14:3	3.	Unbelievers taken off the earth. Matt. 24:37-39.
Believers go to heaven. 1 Thess. 4:17	4.	Believers come back to earth with Christ. 1 Thess. 3:13, Col. 3:4, 2 Thess. 4:13, Zech. 14:5.
Bible does not state when this will be.	5.	Jesus Christ comes back seven years later. Matt. 24:29-30
Believers rewarded. 1 Cor. 3:11-15, Rev. 22:12	6.	Unbelievers judged. Baptism of fire. Matt. 25:31, 32, 46.
Source of comfort to believers. 1 Thess. 4:18	7.	Source of terror to unbelievers. Rev. 6:15-17
No recorded changes in nature.	8.	Many changes in nature. Isa. 35
World not judged (People)	9.	World (people) judged. Jude 15
Is a mystery: 1 Cor. 15:51 (Something which was hidden in the OT)	10.	Subject of extended prophecy in OT and NT.
Unconditional covenants to Israel are unfulfilled.	11.	Unconditional covenants are fulfilled.
No dealing with Satan	12.	Satan bound 1,000 years. Rev. 20:2.

Comparison: Sanctuary in OT and NT (Category 110)

Old Testament	New Testament
1. Tabernacle (tent in the desert). Ex. 25:8	1. Body of the believer. 1 Cor. 3:16, 6:19
2. Children of Israel didn't earn or deserve the honor of having the presence of God in their midst.	2. Believers in Church age do not deserve to be a dwelling place of God either, for we too have sinned. Romans 3:23.
3. The tabernacle was an object lesson teaching the person & work of Jesus Christ.	3. Believer glorifies Christ by being filled with the Holy Spirit thereby showing forth His character.
4. Special priesthood, only one priest went into the sanctuary.	4. Every believer a priest and a sanctuary.
5. Just one tabernacle	5. Every believer a sanctuary.

Church: Local (Category 111)

1. The local church is the basis for missionary activity. Acts
2. The Church (sound, categorical) should be supported in the CA.
3. A sound missionary organization proceeds out of sound local churches, and missionaries founded sound local churches.
4. Began by meeting in houses. Rom. 16, Acts 12, Col. 4
5. When churches were persecuted they met anywhere they could.
6. Membership: Anyone who was born-again, recognized the authority of the pastor or pastors and attended regularly.
7. The church at _____ meet in many different homes. Therefore elders is in the plural. It took several pastor-teachers to minister the Word in the cities.
8. The sermons were long, very long. 20:6-12 (Acts)
9. No church buildings until the union of the church and state - the last sanctuary (temple) was destroyed in 70 AD. Buildings came after 300 AD.
10. The observed the Lord's Supper every Sunday.
11. The Word of God should be taught daily, so believers can get doctrine daily. Doctrine, gnosis and epignosis is the life of the believer.

Confessing Sin Biblically
(Category III)

I. Introduction:

A. "Confess": Homo: same, logeo: To name, to admit, to acknowledge, to cite. These two Greek words give the idea of two people coming to a common agreement on a matter.

B. 1 John 1:9 is addressed to believers only (context).

C. Confession is potential - 3rd class condition. Maybe the believer will confess sin Biblically, maybe he won't--but if he does the "Lord is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness".

II. The Basis of Confession:

A. Divine Mechanics: At the cross Jesus Christ bore all sins; the Father judged those sins so they can never be judged again. Only way to be cleansed is to agree that this is a sin and it was judged. 1 John 1:7, 9.

B. Human Mechanics: Use 1 John 1:9. Identify the sin, name it.

III. Conditions of Rebound:

A. "If we confess": No works attached, admit the sin, which is citing the sins or sins that God the Holy Spirit has pointed out. The Holy Spirit points out sin, John 16:7-11. The believer realizes what the Holy Spirit points out.

B. How does He point sin out?

1. Through loss of peace: Phil. 4:6-7
2. Through severe chastening: Heb. 12:6
3. Through a guilty conscience: Heb. 13:18
4. Through sorrow: Psalm 32

Note well that sorrow does not cleanse sin, NEVER! Only admitting the sin to God does. But the Holy Spirit definitely can point out the sin in one way or another. The above four points are not exhaustive.

C. God forgives then, on the basis of confession, not on the basis of how we feel about it, or on penance, or on a promise for our future conduct.

D. Basing our forgiveness on something we do constitutes works, and is not what the Bible says.

E. Just as God deals with man in grace at salvation (God does everything, man does nothing) so also He treats us in grace in the matter of restoration to fellowship.

F. This causes us to realize that we are unable to accomplish anything apart from His power and strength thru the Holy Spirit, that pleases Him; that we must depend upon Him for everything.

IV. Result of Confession: (1 John 1:9)

A. "faithful and just": He will always do the same thing: forgive. He is just in doing this because of the cross.

B. "to forgive us our sins": Our known sins are forgiven.

C. "cleanse us from all unrighteousness": The unknown or forgotten sins are also forgiven. GRACE

D. This cleansing prepares us for the controlling ministry of the Holy Spirit in our lives, who is no longer grieved (by sin) or quenched by (human good).

E. Confession gives control to the Holy Spirit (filling of the Spirit) and the believer is spiritual.

V. The Issue in Confession:

A. Confession does not pay the penalty of sin. The penalty of sin was paid on the cross.

B. Penalty of sin is NOT the issue in confession. Issue is whether or not we want to be restored to fellowship with God on His terms.

C. Confession is the means that God has provided for us to be restored to a proper fellowship with God when we have sinned and so we realize our complete dependence upon Him to handle sins in our lives. This is orientation to grace, phase 2 (The Christian Way of Life).

D. Confession was not given to us to keep us from sinning. That comes as we grow thru knowledge and application of doctrine to experience, or by divine discipline.

E. Divine discipline is from a loving Father who wants to impress upon us the seriousness of the offense so that we will not want to do it again, just as a human father may do.

F 1 John 1:9 is not the license to sin, but the license to serve. Confession gives control back to the Holy Spirit, who does the serving, producing Divine Good, which is glorifying to God. The old sin nature produces human good, which is not glorifying.

1 John 1:9 works--whether you believe it does or not--because the Bible says so, and you ARE filled with the Holy Spirit upon confession of sin.

G. Faith in this fact is one of the results of the filling of the Holy Spirit, the realization that spirituality is attained by confession alone.

H. The grace of God (confession) never leads to excesses of any kind, but the old sin nature does.

I. Jesus Christ defends us when Satan accuses us whether or not we confess when we are wrong. Why? Jesus Christ paid for that sin.

J. Why confess it if it is paid for? Confession is the means of breaking the control of the old sin nature and the means whereby man CANNOT take the credit (non-meritorious).

K. Synonyms for the term: "Confess." It is possible that someone may say, "too much stress is put on one verse of Scripture" so below are verses that teach exactly what 1 John 1:9 teaches.

A. "Yield": Romans 6:13

B. "Present": Romans 12:1

C. "Awake thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead". The word "dead refers to temporal death, out of fellowship. Eph. 5:14.

D. "Mortify": Col. 3:5 (to put to death thru rebound)

E. " . . . put off the old man . . . and have put on the new man . . ." This involves rebound and the resultant building of an edification complex.

F. " . . . let us lay aside every weight . . . and the sin": Heb. 12:1

G. "Put on the whole armour of God . . .": Eph. 6:11 Initially put in place by rebound.

H. "For if we would judge ourselves . . . 1 Cor. 11:

Confidence
(Category 112)

1. Confidence comes from: Getting gnosis in the mind through the filling of the Holy Spirit, transferring it to the human spirit by faith with the resultant frame of reference and construction of an edification complex. This gives stability, confidence

2. To have confidence you need to have daily doctrinal intake and application--to constantly use the breathing apparatus of the soul.

3. Regardless of what happens to his country, to our world, regardless of disaster, catastrophe which might surround us, God's plan moves on day by day. You as a believer, are a part of the plan, therefore you must regard every day with confidence.

4. The secret to your stability under all conditions is your confidence based on knowing doctrine, gnosis--epignosis and the reflecting of the glory of God. (The edification complex) Ephesians 3:13-21 with 4:21-32.

5. Therefore your life will glorify Him. Your stability, confidence, and inner resources will have impact.

6. When you know doctrine so well that you can't forget it, you use it and have CONFIDENCE.

7. 1 John 5 is the chapter of confidence based on KNOWING:

   a. v. 14: Confidence in knowing the will of God.
   b. v. 15: Confidence in prayer
   c. v. 16-17: Confidence in being alive
   d. v. 18: Confidence in function

      (1) Spirituality
      (2) Eternal Security

   e. v. 19-20: Confidence in relationship
   f. v. 21: Confidence in separation

8. Do not confuse confidence with ego. A person can be dogmatic (confident) regarding doctrine, BUT THIS IS NOT EGO.

9. Confidence comes from having inner resources (Doctrine in the mind) which produces stability in the life.

Conscience
(Category 113)

1. Two Greek words: sun-eide'sis (soon e day sus). Eidesis is the noun which comes from the verb: oida (oi da) which means to have inherent knowledge. (A verb taken and frozen into a noun)

2. Conscience is the basis (standard) for the modus operandi of the human being. Romans 9:1-2. It is located in the frontal lobe.

3. Everyone has a conscience to the extent that he has information. Knowledge is your ruler.

4. The conscience is a measuring rod in the frontal lobe based on knowledge and background in the frontal lobe.

5. Factors that make up knowledge in the frontal lobe are:

   a. Background: (This often hinders the believer in understanding what Christianity really is). Anything the unbeliever can do is not the Christian way of life. Filling of the Holy Spirit is the Christian way of life.

   b. Training: From your parents, school, from the crowd with which you run--etc.

   c. Culture: This has a byproduct, education.

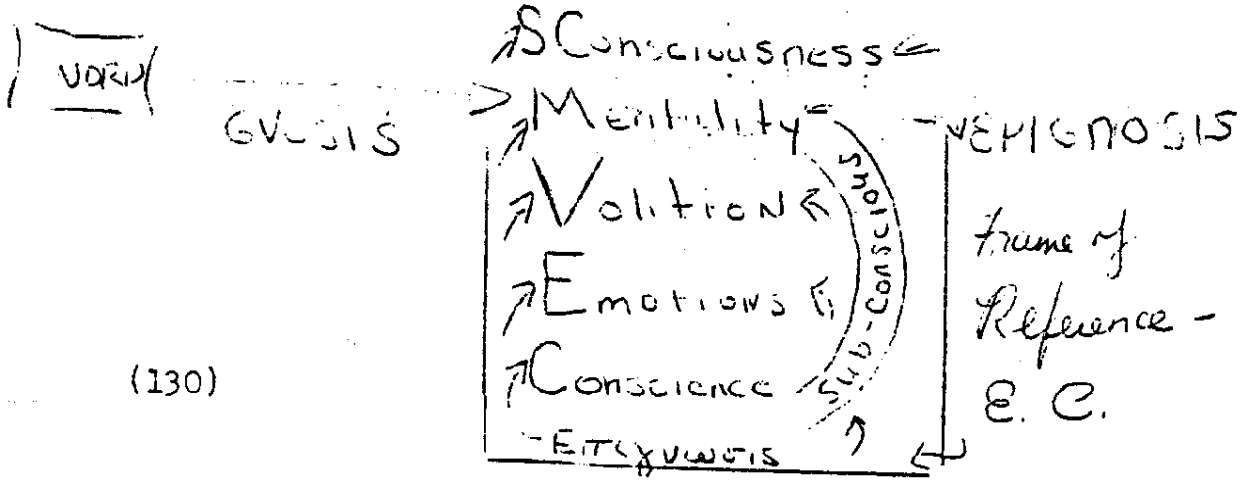
6. This knowledge forms the factor by which we say that something is right or wrong, that this person is good or bad. Acts 24:16.

7. The conscience of the UNBELIEVER is fed from the soul.

8. The conscience of the BELIEVER is regulated by the Word, providing he stays in fellowship, and by studying the Word allows the human spirit to fill up with epignosis. Then information from the human spirit is piped to diffenent facets of the soul, including the conscience. Actually one then has a new conscience--a conscience that functions on divine norms and standards.

9. The new believer has a deficiency of conscience (of soul) and needs epignosis to fill up that deficiency. Eph. 3:19.

10. The guilt complexes, inferiority complex, all can distort the conscience. The answer is growth.



Panorama of Creation
(Category 114)

PAST

I. Original Creation:

A. Time: Unknown

B. Created by the Lord Jesus Christ

Genesis 1:1 "created": Barah (to create out of nothing)
Psalm 33:6 "by the word of the Lord": Instantaneous
Heb. 11:3 "By the words of God": Instantantaneous.

C. Created not a dump: Isaiah 45:18, "For thus said the Lord (Jesus Christ) that created (barah) the heavens; God Himself (Lord Jesus Christ) that formed (yahtsar) and made it; He hath established it, He created it not in vain (not a dump) He formed it to be inhabited . . ."

II. Destruction of Original Creation: Time: Unknown

A. Revolt of Satan: Isa. 14:12-15

B. Effect of the Revolt on Angels: Two categories

1. Elect (holy). Those who chose for God, 1 Tim. 5:21 Mark 8:38.

2. Fallen: Those who chose for Satan when Satan fell. Matt. 25:41.

a. Operational demons: Eph. 6:12, well organized.
b. Bound (in Tartarus): 2 Peter 2:4

Results of the Conflict between the Angels: Genesis 1:2

"And the earth was (became) without form (a dump) and void (barren) and darkness (not light in it) was upon the face of the deep."

D. Subsequent Judgment from God because of Conflict:

1. Isa. 24:1
2. Jeremiah 4:23-26 (v. 25, "there was no man": No man in original creation.

III. Reconstruction: Time: Unknown. Done by the Holy Spirit

A. Genesis 1:2b: "Spirit of God moved (ahsah) upon . . ."

B. Psalm 104:30: "thou renewest the face of the earth."

FUTURE

IV. Destruction of the Reconstruction:

A. Time:

B. 2 Peter 3:4-13

1. v. 5: "heavens were of old": ORIGINAL CREATION OF Genesis 1:1.

2. v. 7: "heavens and earth which are now": RECONSTRUCTION

a. "which are now": (which now exist)
b. "are kept in store"
c. "reserved unto fire": Stored up for an explosion

3. v. 8: Elapse of time does not hinder the FAITHFULNESS OF GOD! Promise made 1,000 years ago is good today.

4. v. 9: God's faithfulness in provision of salvation. Time is an element in man's promises but not in the promises of God.

5. v. 10: God's faithfulness in FUTURE JUDGMENT.

6. v. 13: New heavens and new earth: ETERNAL CREATION.

V. New Heavens and New Earth:

A. Time: End of Millennium

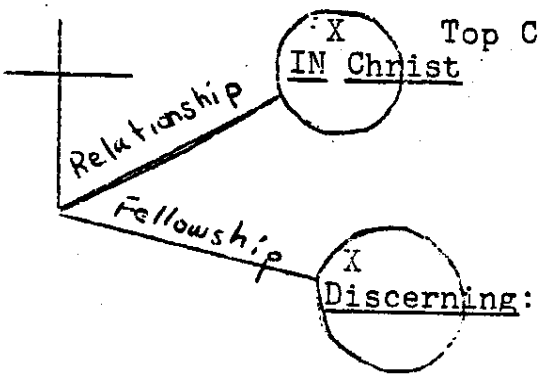
B. Scripture: Rev. 21:1, 5

Criticism #1, Introductory Principle: Rom. 8:33
(Category 115)

Translation of Romans 8:33, "Who shall bring accusation against the elect of God?" Elect: Refers to every believer in Jesus Christ, either spiritual or carnal.

1. The believer is prohibited from judging other believers. Matt. 7:1-2, Romans 14:4, 10. When you judge others you are challenging the Plan of God. You are not greater than the Plan of God. Your critical thoughts are outside the will of God.

2. However a believer has the right to discern when in fellowship. 1 Cor. 2:15. When the Holy Spirit is in control, what would otherwise be destructive criticism, becomes constructive discernment. See diagram:



Top Circle (Believer NEVER gets out of the top circle)

X = Believer out of fellowship JUDGES. Needs to use 1 John 1:9. Only the believer in fellowship can discern.

3. Every believer has a right to privacy before God.

4. Every believer must live his own life as unto the Lord. You are answerable to the Lord. Divine Institution #1 (Volition)

   a. You have the right to self-judge (youself) when out of fellowship. (This consists of allowing the Holy Spirit to point out sin in your life, and then citing it to Him, 1 John 1:9.)

   b. An unbeliever who is a judge or a policeman is given authority under divine institutions 1 and 4 to judge others actions.

   c. A parent out of fellowship still should follow the divine institutions (volition, marriage, family, nationalism) in judging his children.

   BUT the main thing is for the believer to stay in fellowship and DISCERN!

5. God will judge the believer for his failures and for his carnality. Heb. 12:6

6. God's plan does not require help (judging) from other believers.

7. Leave Discipline in the hands of the Lord (except in your own family as a parent to child relationship). He is your best and only Judge.

8. Satan is permitted to accuse believers, but only him. Rev. 1[illegible] 10b.

9. It is a sin to judge the life of an unbeliever. It is wrong to intrude into his privacy by judging or maligning him, in fact it is a sin. In fellowship you need discernment, a believer is not to be an idiot. But what he does is his body.

10. It is not wrong to discern the false thinking of an unbeliever, or discern the apostacy of an unbeliever when you are giving the Gospel to the unbeliever, or helping a believer grow in the Lord.

11. When does discussing someone become gossip? If you can answer this question Biblically you are mature--having an edificatio[illegible] complex of the soul.

Criticism #2: Romans 8:33
(Category 116)

1. Romans 8:33, "It is God that justifieth": Criticism of any believer (destructive) is never valid. Constructive discernment in fellowship given with His leadership is. (bona fide)

2. The plan of God is the work of God, accomplished by God apart from human advice or help.

   a. Phase 1: The work of the Lord Jesus Christ on the cross: Provision. The work of the Holy Spirit at the point of believing: Mechanics.

   b. Phase 2: Work of the Holy Spirit in controlling the life.

   c. Phase 3: Work of the Father in eternity.

3. In criticising the believer or judging the believer, the Father does the work in Phase 2. (Christian way of life).

4. Grace then depends upon who and what God is, not who and what man is; therefore, under grace, only God has the right to judge. (Apply the Essence Box). Also in DI #1, 2, 3 gives the right to the Holy Spirit to judge your sins.

5. Therefore there is no place in the Plan of God for the believer to malign, gossip, judge, take vengeance, or accuse another believer. Prov. 6.

6. Part of God's work in the Plan of God includes Divine Discipline.

7. When a believer judges another believer he is guilty of subtle but blasphemous legalism. The believer justifies his criticism, says he is operating under the principle of human good, but human good is legalism. The believer with scar tissue is a vicious judger--worse than any unbeliever can be.

8. When Satan accuses a believer (like Job 1 & 2) Jesus Christ acts as the defense attorney (1 John 2:1-2). The case is always thrown out of court--it is a family affair.

Cross: Taking Up the Cross
(Category 116)

Matthew 10:38: "And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth after me, is not worthy of me".

I. This is the first reference to the cross in Matthew.

II. This does not refer to the cross of Christ but to the Roman custom of crucifixion (they had crucified literally hundreds of thousands of people).

III. The Jews understood what it meant to take up the cross. Rome had crucified many of the Jews for different offenses.

IV. It was the Roman custom for the condemned person to carry his own cross to the point of execution.

V. It was a sign of both condemnation and disgrace to be seen carrying a cross.

VI. In this context carrying the cross represents giving up the greatest things in life (such as going overseas in missionary work when you are very close to your inlaws--or very effective in teaching the Word in the states.) IT IS PUTTING DOCTRINE BEFORE ANYONE.

VII. The Lord was not thinking of His own crucifixion. However this is a perfect illustration: In going to the cross to die for our sins, Jesus had to sever his own family connections:

A. In the first three hours He severed His human family connections.

1. He said to Mary: "Woman, thy son": (Referring to John)
2. He said to John: "Thy mother": (Referring to Mary)

John 19:27, "Then saith he to the disciple, behold thy mother!"

B. In the last 3 hours when He was bearing our sins, the family connections with the Father and Holy Spirit were severed (as far as His humanity, NOT deity).

Psalm 22, "My God, my God why hast thou forsake me?". God could not look upon sin when His Son was bearing it--and the Holy Spirit could not sustain Him either at that time.

Bible doctrine sustained him during that time. Psalm 138:2,

During this time when Christ was bearing our sins and fellowship with the Father and the Holy Spirit was severed, Jesus Christ referred to them as God.

When He had finished bearing our sins, He again was restored to fellowship, "Father into thy hands, I commit my spirit."

Crowns
(Category 117)

Crowns are indicative of reward for the believer who has logged time in fellowship and operated as unto the Lord.

1. Crown of Righteousness: Operation of the faith-rest technique by believers. (Phase 2). 2 Tim. 4:7-8

2. Crown of Joy: Believers with edification complexes--helping other believers, winning souls etc. Phil. 4:1, 1 Thess. 2:19

3. Crown of Glory: Glory refers to reflexion--of His shining forth. Refers to rewards for pastors with maturity--edification complex of the soul possessed. 1 Peter 5:4

4. Crown of Life: For those who endure terrific testing, temptation and yet stay occupied with Christ. Rev. 2:10, James 1:12. Utilization of the faith-patience precept.

5. Crown of thornes: Not referring to rewards for church age believers. Speaking of the Lord bearing the curse of sin. Matt. 27:29

6. Incorruptible crown: 1 Cor. 9:21 Referring to the nature of the rewards, they will be spiritual rewards--that never fade away or perish like the Roman "garland leaves".

7. Many: Rev. 19:12

Death of the Lord Jesus Christ
(Two Deaths (Unique)
(Category 118)

I. When He was on the Cross:

A. Isaiah 53:3, He suffered great anguish, extreme mental and physical pain, because He bore a heavy burden.

B. Isaiah 53:6, God the Father laid on Jesus Christ the sins of the whole world.

C. Bore our sins: 1 Peter 2:24, 2 Cor. 5:21, Col. 2:14, Heb. 9:27, 28, Rev. 1:5

II. He died TWICE: Isaiah 53:9 is "deaths" (intensive plural) in the Hebrew. Note the Cambridge Bible, there it is translated deaths.

A. He died spiritually: (Humanity, not deity) in bearing our sins--no fellowship with God during the time He was bearing our sins.

1. Psalm 22:1, God the Father and God the Holy Spirit turned their backs on Jesus Christ on the cross. "My God (the Father) my God (the Holy Spirit) why hast Thou forsaken me?"

2. Note also Matt. 27:46, Mark 15:34. Jesus Christ at this point called the Father, "God", while He was bearing our sins. But once it was completed and spiritual death was PAID FOR, and atonement was a accomplished fact, He again called him the Father.

3. Luke 23:46: "Father, into my hands I commend my spirit . . . and He gave up the ghost.

B. He died physically:

1. John 19:30, "It is finished". Now He called Him "Father" not "God" because spiritual death was lifted, the sins of the world had been judged. Fellowship was restored. Everything had been accomplished as far as spiritual death, bearing our sins.

2. But Christ died twice that we might be born twice. Even as Adam in his fall became spiritually dead, and later died physically, so the Last Adam, Christ, identified with our sins in spiritual death, and also died physically. The shedding of blood (literal) indicates Christ bearing our sins, and resultant cleansing upon our receiving His provision. It was necessary for Christ to die both physically and spiritually.

3. If you are not born twice--you will have eventually three deaths:

a. Spiritual death
b. Physical death
c. 2nd death (Great White Throne Judgment)

4. His physical death and resurrection guarantees us a new resurrection body. He had to die physically in order to be resurrected.

5. His death physically signified that the wages of sin (spiritual death) was PAID FOR, and atonement was an accomplished fact.

Death of the Believer
Outline of Dying Grace ...
(Category 119)

I. The Doctrine of Dying Grace: (Central passage - Job 5:17-27)

A. Dying Grace Removes Fear of Death: Psalm 23:4

B. Dying Grace Depends on Who and What God is: Psalm 116:15

C. Provision of Deliverance in Extreme Difficulty: Job 5:17-21a.

D. Dying Grace Promises Inner Peace: Job 5:21b-24

E. Dying Grace Gives Comfort to Those Left Behind. Job 5:25

F. God takes the Believer at the Right Time: Job 5:26-27

II. The Believer After Death:

A. No Judgment in Eternity: Romans 8:1

B. No Sin Nature in Eternity: 1 Cor. 3:11-16

C. Face to Face with the Lord in Eternity: 2 Cor. 5:1-8

D. All Sorrow Removed in Eternity: Revelation 21:4

E. An Inheritance for all Eternity: 1 Peter 1:4, 5

F. Death Means a New Eternal Home: John 14:1-3

G. Death Means a Fuller Realization of Eternal Life: 2 Cor. 4:18

Death: Physical, Believer's Hope
(Category 119)

1. v. 13: "asleep": This is sleep of the body. Soul and spirit are never said to sleep. The wakening of the body is the resurrection.

   "I would not have you to be ignorant." The Thessalonians had been listening to false teachers regarding those dead IN Christ.

   "ye sorrow not, even as others who have no hope".

   a. John 11:25-26: "I am the resurrection . . ."

   b. Rev. 21:4: "no more sorrow, no more tears . . ."

   c. 2 Cor. 5:8, "To be absent from the body is to be present with the Lord." (face to face)

2. v. 14: "if": a first class condition (if and we do)

   "them which sleep in Jesus": Church age believers who have died.

   "will God bring with Him": 2nd Advent

3. v. 15: "prevent": Hinder

4. v. 16: "dead in Christ": Church Universal, invisible, body of Christ.

5. v. 17: "we which are alive and remain": Living believers

   "caught up together with them": With the dead In Christ.

6. v. 18: "comfort one another":

The soul and spirit at the rapture go where the body checked out. They rejoin the body (which has since become dust in most instances) and the moment the soul and spirit hits the body--it becomes anew resurrection body. The dead IN Christ rise first, then the living believers are caught up and they all rendezvous with the Lord in the air.

Children who have not reached the age of accountability (where their volition is operative) will go to heaven (Christ died for all - Unlimited Atonement). Children who have reached the age of accountability will stay on earth.

Deaths, Seven
(Category 120)

1. Physical Death:

   a. Believer: Soul and spirit leaving the body. Phil. 1:21, 2 Cor. 5:8.

   b. Unbeliever: Soul leaving the body. Luke 17:22

2. Spiritual Death: We are born spiritually dead, but physically alive. The meoment the baby gasps its first breath of air--he gets his soul. The minute the soul hits the old sin nature (supplied by the father) he dies spiritually. Jesus Christ was always spiritually alive--no old sin nature. But for three hours he became spiritually dead (bearing our sins in His humanity), but it wasn't for His own sin. He had no personal sin or old sin nature. Eph. 2:1, Rom. 5:12, 6:23.

3. Second Death: Rev. 20:11-15 (Last judgment). This is the perpetuation of spiritual death into eternity.

4. Positional death: Romans 6:1-14, Col. 2:13, 3:13. This is identification with Christ in His deaths.

5. Temporal Death: A believer out of fellowship. Romans 8:6, 13; Eph. 5:14, 1 Tim. 5:6. James 1:15, Rev. 3:1, 1 John 3:14, Luke 15:24, 32.

6. Operational Death: James 2:26, No production

7. Sexual Death: Romans 4:17-21, Heb. 11:12. The inability to procreate.

Reasons for Christian Death
(Category 121)

1. Glorify the Lord: John 21:19, Luke 16, Lazarus. It makes the living go on a crash program.

2. Work is finished: General reason. 2 Tim. 4:7; Rev. 11:7; Luke 23:46

3. Maximum discipline: 1 Cor. 3:17, 11:30, 1 John 5:16. The sin unto death. Examples: David was under it--Psalm 38. Partaking out of fellowship with the Lord's Supper caused the sin unto death, 1 Cor. 11:23-34. There are many, many examples.

4. Suicide: Superimposition of the believer's will over God's will. A believer who commits suicide does go to heaven. Christ died for the sin of suicide--and then there is the doctrine of positional truth.

Death of the Unbeliever
(Category 121)

1. The human race is divided into two groups:

   a. The believer: He who has accepted Jesus Christ as Saviour.
   b. Unbeliever: He who has rejected Jesus Christ as Saviour. John 3:36

2. The unbeliever goes through life with only one birth. He has only a body and a human soul. No new birth, therefore no human spirit. His human spirit is dormant, not active.

3. When the unbeliever dies, his soul (alive) leaves the body and goes to a place called Torments (Hades-Sheol). See Category.

4. This is a temporary spot, a temporary place of suffering of the soul (no second chance) unil the final disposition of the body at the last judgment. Torments is not purgatory in the Word of God. Unbelievers who die, NEVER get a second chance.

5. For the believer in eternity there is no more sorrow or tears. (no suffering). Rev. 21:4

6. In the case of the unbeliever the soul will sorrow eternally. Luke 16:19-31. Note "weeping" as per Matt. 22:13, 24:51, 25:30, Luke 13:28.

7. At the 2nd resurrection (unto damnation--Great White Throne) the soul of the unbeliever will be resurrected, very probably in the same body. Matt. 10:28 has some kind of body for the flame.

8. From then on the soul and the body suffer, for the unbeliever is then cast into the Lake of Fire, which has already been prepared for Satan and his angels. Matt. 25:41.

9. This is the 2nd death: Eternity in the Lake of Fire. The 2nd death (Rev. 20:14) is a perpetuation of spiritual death into eternity. It is ETERNAL SEPARATION FROM GOD.

10. In John 5:29 the 2nd resurrection is called a ressurrection of damnation (condemnation).

11. The unbeliever is resurrected in his body of corruption so that he might receive units of wrath for all of his good deeds that he has deposited during his life-time. Romans 2:5.

Physical Death #1
(Category 122)

1. In the physical death of the believer, the soul and the spirit leave the body and go into the presence of the Lord. 2 Cor. 5:8.

2. In PHYSICAL DEATH of the UNBELIEVER, the soul leaves the body and goes to Hades to await the last Judgment - the Great White Throne judgment.

3. The body is deserted in physical death. The gases which form the chemistry of the body go into the soil or the air. Heathenism emphasizes the body, funerals, etc.

4. The believer is going to get a resurrection body. Phil. 3:21

5. A believer's soul is saved. The soul and human spirit go into the presence of the Lord.

6. The soul and the spirit remain in the presence of the Lord until the rapture, when the dead IN CHRIST rise first. The soul and spirit come down to wherever the death occurred and receive a resurrection body and meet the Lord in the air.

7. The bodies of the living believers are changed and they meet the Lord in the air. 2 Cor. 5:8.

8. The soul and spirit will have perceptive ability regarding things in heaven in their vicinity, but probably will not be aware of what is going on down on earth. (Witch of Endor incident was demonism and the Holy Spirit interferred).

9. Rev. 21:4, "And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away."

Death: Physical Death of Believer #2
(Category 123)

1. v. 1: "For we know": Believers in the Church age
"if": 3rd class condition--maybe we will, or maybe we won't die before the rapture; which may be any time.

"earthly house": Physical body
"tabernacle": Tent: body is a temporary structure
"dissolved": Body returns to chemicals after death
"building of God": Permanent structure - resurrection body.

2. v. 2: "in this": temporary body
"we groan": Present tense: We keep on groaning
"earnestly desiring": Intensely desiring to check out without physical death.

3. v. 3: "if": 1st class condition, and we are
"[illegible]at being clothed": Resurrection body
"not being found naked": Physical death before the rapture. The physical body (corpse) without the soul and spirit is naked. Application: A casket should never be open (in a Christian funeral). Heathenism makes much over the corpse.

4. v. 4: "in this tabernacle": Those alive right now.
"not for that we should be unclothed": Not worried about receiving a resurrection body.
"that mortality might be swallowed up of life": That we might enter into the rapture without physical death.

5. v. 5: "hath wrought us for the selfsame thing is God": God God has so purposed that we should have a resurrection body like the Lord Jesus Christ. Proves this by giving us a down-payment: "The earnest of the Spirit": DOWNPAYMENT, the indwelling presence of the Holy Spirit.

6. v. 6: "we are always confident": Present: keeps on being confident. Should be normal Christian life.
"knowing": Perfect tense. Knowing the past and keep on knowing forever.
"home in the body": Alive

7. Faith-rest technique

8. "absent from the body": Physical death
"present with the Lord": Face to face

   a. Phil. 1:21, ". . . for to me to live in Christ (filling of the Holy Spirit.)

   b. ". . . and to die is gain": Greater than the filling of the Holy Spirit.

Death: Spiritual Death
(Category 12)

1. Adam (innocent) was created spiritually alive- had fellowship with God.

2. Adam sinned (FIRST SIN of Human Race - negative volition) and died spiritually (no fellowship with God, - R). Basis for IMPUTED SIN. 1 Cor. 5:22a, Rom. 5:12b.

3. Adam acquired (brought into existence) the old sin nature, which is the BASIS for INHERENT SIN, and from which comes all personal sin, causing temporal death (out of fellowship).

4. Romans 5:12, "Wherefore, as by one man (Adam) sin (FIRST old sin nature) entered into the world, and death (FIRST spiritual death) by sin (FIRST sin of the human race---negative volition); and so death (spiritual death) passed upon all men, for that all have sinned." (when Adam sinned). IMPUTED SIN.

5. Human Race (of Adam's seed) is born spiritually dead because of an old sin nature.

6. Human Race is born a SINNER because of his old sin nature (inherent sin). Inherited because of a human father.

   The old sin nature is the source of all personal sin and temporal death (out of fellowship) in time.

SPIRITUAL DEATH		SPIRITUAL LIFE
-R	CONDITION	+R
(-R cannot have fellowship with +R)		
No human spirit 1 Cor. 2:14	ABILITY	Human spirit Romans 8:16
	POSITION	

   1 Cor. 15:22, "For as in Adam all die (spiritually); even so IN Christ shall all be made alive (spiritually)."

7. Unbeliever is spiritually dead (Under imputed sin), has an old sin nature (is a sinner) and is condemned. John 3:18.

8. Believer is spiritually alive (under imputed +R) has an old sin nature (still a sinner but saved) but is NOT condemned. John 3:18 BUT the old sin nature is under condemnation - Romans 8:3.

9. The remedy for the old sin nature for the believer now is retroactive positional truth.

10. The old sin nature in control in time causes TEMPORAL DEATH (out of fellowship). The Holy Spirit in control causes TEMPORAL LIFE (in fellowship).

Dying Grace: Introduction
(Category 125)

1. Phase 2 (The Christian Way of Life) can be divided into two parts: Living and dying.

2. Phase 2 dying may be a long period or a short period, but for the believer (and the believer only) God provides a time of happiness and peace just prior to death.

3. Often this happiness is expressed just prior to the sudden death of the young or middle aged. This is often said to be a tragedy because they had been SO happy. THAT HAPPINESS AND THE EXPRESSION OF IT is simply Dying Grace which the Lord apparently gives to those believers whom He removes instantly.

4. In the case of prolonged death, such as cancer, Dying Grace is provided in a different way:

   a. During prolonged illness the believer is given a wonderful testimony.

   b. The Lord helps that believer to have inner happiness and peace in the midst of pain.

   c. There is no fear of death, no concern of death, no falling apart in the midst of death.

5. For the believer who dies over a prolonged period of time, God will provide in such a way that this time of dying is the most productive and actually the most wonderful part of Phase 2.

6. There is a point of esctatics at the time of dying. 2 Cor. 12:1-5. If you are with a believer who dies, you may notice a smile at the moment of death, or the believer may comment about the room becoming light, or utter the name of the Lord.

7. All believers get in on Dying Grace, regardless of how they have lived. We don't earn or deserve Dying Grace. IT IS GRACE. It is who and what God is, not who and what we are.

Dying Grace, Doctrine of
(Category 125)

1. Dying Grace removes fear of death. Psalm 23:4

   a. "valley of the shadow of death": Period of dying
   b. "I will fear no evil": I will not fear death

2. If it is an instantaneous death, you will have a period just prior to it of great peace and happiness. If it is a period of prolonged dying, there will be a period of great happiness and peace, power and blessing in your life.

3. Dying Grace depends on who and what God is and He provides it for all believers. We do not earn or deserve it, therefore it is not dependent upon how we have lived in this life. Psalm

116:15, "death of His saints". ALL BELIEVERS ARE SAINTS, not just those who honor Him in life. THIS IS THE GRACE OF GOD: DYING GRACE.

4. Dying Grace is expressed in Job 5:17-27

5. Dying Grace promises inner peace. Job 5:21b, 24a

6. Because of Dying Grace, believers can laugh at death (Job 5:22), not humorously, or hysterically, but the believer can laugh inside because it is wonderful to be relaxed about death. You can look death in the face and laugh because you know God has provided Dying Grace.

7. You are not afraid of doing certain things in life, such as riding on airplanes, getting out in holiday traffic, etc. Why? Because you have a confidence based upon the edification complex. It is not a reckless laugh, but with a complete confidence because you know (epignosis) God has taken the sting out of death.

8. No matter what the circumstances may be, the believer can be relaxed about death. If it is sudden, there will be great happiness just before; if it is prolonged there will be great happiness during the interim of the prolonged dying.

9. The dangerous things in life cannot touch you until the Lord is ready to take you. Job 5:22b, 23, 24. Psalm 31:15, " . . . my times are in thy hands."

10. Dying Grace gives comfort to those left behind. Job 5:25, "thy seed". Loved ones are to go right on living.

11. God takes the believer at the right time. Job 5:26. Analogy is to Corn: When you arrive at death, as a believer, your time (whether young or old) is FULL, because this is GOD'S TIME to call you home. Psalm 116:15, "Precious is the sight of the Lord is the dying of His saints." Some corn gets rip sooner than the rest and IT IS PICKED when it is ripe.

12. God has a purpose for every life, and when God takes a life, whether the person is just a child a year or two old, a young person in the teens or in the twenties, HE ALWAYS TAKES THE LIFE AT THE RIGHT TIME.

13. When the believer departs, regardless of age, IT IS FULL AGE.

14. We are commanded to know the DOCTRINE OF DYING GRACE, "and know thou it for thy good." Job 5:27

    a. Then you are able to say, "O death, where is thy sting? O grace, where is thy victory?" 1 Cor. 15:55

    b. The sting has been taken out of death and the grave has been robbed of its victory for the believer who knows Dying Grace.

Dying Grace: Job 5:17-27
(Category 126)

This portion of Job 5 expresses Dying Grace, but the subject begins appropriately with living.

1. v. 17: "Happy is the man whom God correcteth": An integral ingredient of discipline for the believer is happiness. Heb. 12: 11.

2. v. 18: Divine discipline is profitable. It helps the believer to mature.

3. v. 19: These problems are listed in the verses which follow:

4. v. 20: God provides deliverance in time of extreme difficulties of life. Two given: famine, warfare.

5. v. 21a: No matter how you are maligned, here is a promise of deliverance. You are the gainer, but they are the loser providing you leave it to the Lord and do not retaliate. Psalm 64:6, 7; Romans 12:19.

6. v. 21b: "destruction": Death. When death comes, you will not be afraid because God has provided Dying Grace.

7. v. 22: "destruction": Death. "thou shalt laugh": Not recklessly, humorously, or hysterically, but the believer can laugh inside because you have the doctrine of Dying Grace and complete confidence in God's Word.

   "neither shalt thou be afraid of the beasts of the earth": At the time Job was written, wild animals roamed the earth and often caused the death of mankind. This simply means that you shall not be afraid of the things on the arth that cause terror, even death. You are not afraid of certain things in life, such as flying, traffic, etc., where danger is involved--because you can laugh at death, you have inner peace.

8. v. 23: The dangerous things in life cannot touch you until the Lord is ready to take you. You can be in the midst of battle, you can be in the midst of the most terrible and the most extreme situations in life, and you are absolutely in the Lord's hands, YOU ARE SAFE. You can laugh at death all around you simply because you understand Dying Grace.

9. v. 24: "tabernacle": Body, tent. Temporary house. The body is not a permanent type dwelling place, it wears out, it is eventually removed and in its place, for the believer, there will be a permanent type habitation.

   "shall be in peace": While dying. Dying grace principle. You will know that while you are dying, even though the body is the source of pain and agony in many cases, and even though you see your own body deteriorating through some sort of disease or injury, yet you will have peace. "Habitation" is heaven. "Shalt not sin" is ultimate sanctification.

10. v. 25: Dying grace gives comfort to those left behind. This verse in the middle of all this it to point out to those left behind that their loved ones in the Lord are under the principle of Dying Grace; that they are not to grieve as others who have no hope. Your life must go on. Your life can be destroyed by bitterness, hysteria, or abnormal grief after the death of a loved one.

"thy seed": Love ones

"shall be great": Much. They go right on living. These are idiomatic phrases, which mean: You know that you have to go on living, that you have a purpose in life and that you must not allow the death of any loved one to destroy or hinder that purpose.

11. v. 26: GOD TAKES THE BELIEVER AT THE RIGHT TIME.

"full age": The right time. The point here is not old age, for a shock of corn does not have a very long life. As corn ripens and ears become full it is harvested. When you come to die as a believer (whether young or old) your time is full, because this is God's time to call you home.

This is a promise that when God takes His own home, that person has lived a full life. "Precious in the sight of the Lord is the death of His saints." All believers are included: Psalm 116:15.

Do not question God's omniscience when He takes a person out at an early age, or even at an old age. When we see old people who are mean and vicious and then some lovely young person is taken, there seems to be no justice; BUT WHEN GOD TAKES A PERSON HOME HE KNOWS (OMNISCIENCE) EXACTLY THE RIGHT TIME.

Analogy: All corn does not ripen at the same time. It is picked as it ripens. God has a purpose for every life, and when God takes a life, regardless of age, HIS AGE IS FULL, AND IT IS THE RIGHT TIME.

12. v. 27: "know thou it": The Doctrine of Dying Grace--a command!

"for thy good": If you know and apply the Doctrine of Dying grace, you will be able to laugh at death. This is the laugh of faith. You look at death through faith. You look at death through the Word of God.

You will be able to say, "O death where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory."

Then the sting will have been taken out of death and the grave robbed of its victory.

Decision Making (Category 127)

Scripture: Hebrews 11:24-26, "By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasurers in Egypt, for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward."

Moses applied five grace principles in making his decision to identify with his people instead of Egypt. Remember, Moses was the heir to the throne of Egypt--Moses would have been one of the greatest Pharaoh-'s of all time.

I. "By Faith:" In the process of making a decision Moses was in fellowship and used the faith-rest technique. In decision making make sure you are in the bottom circle.

II. "Refused to be called": In making a decision one must be able to refuse and choose. This is thinking divine viewpoint as over against human viewpoint. This is application of epignosis. Many people cannot make a decision because they cannot refuse. They want the best of two worlds.

III. "choosing rather": Moses in considering the facts, took in the panaroma of the consequences of his decision. At the point the decision he made looked very foolish, but time bore out the wisdom of his decision. Moses was spiritually self-sufficient, he was responsible for his own actions.

IV. "esteeming the reproach": The word "esteem" means Moses in fellowship considered all the angles. But he had epignosis in his human spirit, and knew the will of God meant much more than all the glitter in Egypt. Being a believer does not rule out thinking.

V. "for he had respect": When Moses finally made the decision to identify with his own people, it was with eternities values in view. He "endured as seeing Him who is invisible." The world that Moses could see by faith was more real to him than the world he could see by rationalism and empiricism.

Conclusion: When you make a decision, never look back--keep on moving. Don't shift back and forth--and muse, "Now did I or did I not make a right decision?". This is verse 27, "By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king. . ."

Demon Possession
(Category 128)

I. Demon Possession was very dangerous to the well-being of a national entity; therefore, punishable by death. Lev. 20:27.

II. In Psalm 96:4 "idols" means "demons". All idol worship is worship of demons; every idol has one or more demons connected with it. Lev. 17:7, 1 Cor. 10:19-21.

III. When God judged the Egyptians with the death of the newborn, He judged their gods (demons).

IV. Apostasy connected with demons: Deut. 23:15-18, Psa. 106:37; 1 Tim. 4:1.

V. Satyrs are demons. Jer. 13:21, 34:14

VI. Two ways for Unbelievers to become demon possessed

A. Active submission - Unlawful isolation of dormant faculties of the soul - see Doctrine of the Soul. An example would be the use of extra sensory perception (ESP) under demon possession. Necromancy faked. Actually selling the body to Satan.

B. Passive submission:

1. Idolatry
2. Soma mysteries (Hindu)
3. Through drugs (LSD, etc.)
4. Certain types of dances (Dervish, etc.)
5. Mesmerism (hypnotism)
6. Contemplating infinity.

VII. The soul is the fortress of the body. Doctrine in the human spirit is protection from demon influence of the believer. (epignosis). A believer cannot be indwelt by a demon.

VIII. Illustration of demon possession: Mark 5, Lev. 17:7, Deut. 32:17, 2 Chron. 11:15, Psalm 136:37.

IX. Principles of Demon Possession as illustrated in Mark 5:

A. Loss of individuality

B. Abnormal behaviour

C. Society cannot solve the problem

D. Had volition (the individual could exercise volition, least part of the time, apart from the demons. This is why demon possessed people can get saved. The demons can come out prior to salvation, or at salvation.

E. More than one demon can occupy a person.

F. Demons perfer a certain area.

G. Demons indwell animals as well as humans.

H. When it involves mental illness, mental illness is removed when the demon is removed. (Demon-induced illness).

X. General Characteristics of Demon Possession:

A. Loss of individuality

B. Loss of consciousness

C. Abnormal behaviour

1. Convulsions: Mark 1:26, 9:20. (However people who are NOT DEMON POSSESSED have convulsions, so think straight here!) And so with several of the other categories.

2. Violence: Matthew 8:28

3. Abnormal strength: Mark 5:4, Luke 8:29

4. Raving: Mark 5:5

5. Self-mutilation: Mark 5:5

6. Frothing at the mouth: Luke 9:39, Mark 9:20

7. Nakedness: Luke 8:27

8. Living in the tombs: (Any unacceptable place or manner of living) Mark 5:3

9. Grinding of teeth: Mark 9:18

D. Loss of health:

1. Dumbness: Mark 9:17, Luke 11:14

2. Deafness and dumbness: Mark 9:17, Luke 11

3. Blindness and dumbness: Matt. 12:22

4. Epilepsy: Mark 5:15 (Not of course always caused by demon possession, can be caused by organic malfunction)

5. Mental illness: Mark 5:15

6. Accident prone: Matt. 17:15

XI. Problem of 1 Timothy 4:1, every system of pseudo-spirituality has demons behind it.

XII. Solution: 1 Tim. 4:16, Bible Doctrine, gnosis in the mind transferred by faith into the human spirit.

Demon Possession: Dictionary of Terms
(Category 129)

I. Necromancy: The art of attempting to contact the dead.

A. Is communication with the dead possible? Biblical answer, No! It is not possible to contact the dead! The spirit of departed dead cannot communicate or return to fellowship with living loved ones. 2 Samuel 12:23, Luke 16:27-31

There is one exception and that is where God permitted Samuel to come back and tell Saul how he would die the sin unto death.

B. Is communication with the dead necessary? Biblical answer, No! Since we have the Word of God we know what loved ones are doing after death, whether either believer or unbeliever.

C Is communication with the dead permitted? The answer is No! God does not condone the seance, or condone necromancy from any angle. Why? Because there are certain things unsaved people can do which brings them into contact with demons--and it will mislead them in regard to eternal things. Lev. 19:31, 20:26, 27; Deut. 18:9-12, 2 Kings 23:24. An engastromothus demon is often involved.

D. With whom do people communicate when in touch with the spirit world:

1. Isaiah 8:19: With ventroloquist demons who mimic the departed dead, or control the vocal cords of the living.

2. Isaiah 29:4--demons which control the vocal cords.

3. Fakery can also be involved--. Necromancy, fortune tellers, tea loves, hypotism, tongues--all can be the result of demon-possession, fakery, or emotional wide-swings. It can run the gamet from one extreme to another.

II. Familiar spirits: Demon or demons who indwell a medium who is trying to contact the dead (really imitating the dead). The actual demon involved in necromancy.

A. Wizard: a male medium

B. Witch: a female medium

A wizard or witch is indwelt by a demon. The demon provides information concerning the departed dead, or will control the vocal cords (Ob, pronounced ave demon--Hebrew) -- in either a high or low voice. Often a perfect imitation of the departed ones voice.

III. Spirit of divination: Greek "puthon" from which we get python.

A special type of demon that predicts the future--what the stock market will be doing two months from now--what the rulers

of various nations will be doing in the future. Jean Dixon of Washington D. C. has been doing this, and made a good living at it. Now she is in healing, and is facing a rap for not paying certain taxes.

IV. Astromancy: Prediction of events and discerning people by means of stars. The same as astrology.

A. Watch out for astrology: Lots of it is hoco-pocus, other times--it takes place just because of the law of averages.

B. Horoscope: Your sign. A bunch of malarky.

V. Hepatoscopy: Discernment from the livers of fowls and animals. Ezek. 21:21.

VI. Sortilogy: Divination by lots: Lev. 16:7-10

VII. Hydromancy: Divination by water: Gen. 44:5

VIII. Rhobdamancy: Divination by sticks

IX. Child sacrifice: Divination by killing a child.

When you get into trouble stick with the Word of God--don't go to these people listed in the Portland papers, Madam so and so.

Demon Possession: Saul and the Witch at Endor
(Category 130)

Exposition of 1 Samuel 28:

1. 28:1: "Philistines": Dorian Greeks--same as Spartans--who settled in S. Palestine. Palestine: Means the land of the Philistines. Goliath was a Greek. They have invaded Israel and Saul is worried.

2. 28:3: Now Samuel is dead--physically dead--no more alive.

   a. Samuel had previously kicked out all the male mediums--

   b. But there will be a few woman mediums (witch) left.

3. 28:5: Saul was afraid, lost his manhood, tho a believer. In verse 6 he is out of fellowship, of course his prayers are not answered.

4. 28:7: He finally tries a demon-possessed woman: He takes off his full dress uniform and masquerades.

5. 28:8: Crank up this demon--lets get going.

6. 28:9: The woman is wary--knows the law of the land. She doesn't know she is talking to Saul, so we know the disquise is working.

7. 28:10: He swears by God, takes an oath

8. 28:11: Bring up Samuel

   a. Between 11 and 12 we have the whole seance where she goes under demonism--tries to crank the ob demon up--she has gone into her trance--and now the demon is supposed to start making mimic noises like Samuel.

   b. But this seance got out of hand--

9. 28:12: God interrupts the seance--demon starts to sputter--and the Lord actually brings up Samuel--and it scares her half to death--and she screamed--she actually sees SAUL, as well as SAMUEL.

   a. You don't scream at a seance--you may moan or groan, but the medium has just violated rule no. 1 of demon possession. This scream was different from the whisper (high-pitched) or the low moan--guttural sound.

   b. And poor dumb Saul--he doesn't know what is going on--he thinks this is routine. The demon apparently says to the medium, "Hony, you've got a problem, you've got Saul--I'm checking out of this thing--I'm not going to have anything to do with it--.

10. 28:13: "Don't be afraid": Saul tells her. She replies that she saw "gods". This is actually Samuel whom she can see, but Saul cannot.

11. 28:14: Samuel will speak to Saul

Ten points on an interrupted seance:

a. Verse 12 indicates that both the witch and the demon lost control of the seance. Satan himself couldn't counter-trump this.

b. God interrupted the seance to bring back Samuel and of course the witch was frightened.

c. The witch or medium had power to contact demons, but no power to contact the dead.

d. Her terror at the appearance of Samuel is an exposure of spiritism, as either demonism or fakery.

e. The witch was most frightened because of a supernatural power greater than Satan, greater than her own was involved and she lost her poise, her cool.

f. Notice that Saul was not frightened, but thot this was routine 6.

g. It is important to emphasize that the witch, not Saul was frightened.

h. Demons can impersonate the dead--but they can not produce the dead! Key point! They can not talk with the dead.

i. In verse 13, the witch describes Samuel as God--because she know there was only one power greater than demons--gods. She thought God Himself had come into the scene.

j. Communication with the dead on the part of mediums is always cryptic, nebalous, abstruce--general.

k. But in verses 15-19 Samuel speaks very clearly--and at length. (On the death of Saul, and his friends next day).

l. Notide that Saul and his sons would be in paradise with God, v. 19. They were believers.

12. 28:16: This is the status quo of a believer under the sin unt death.

13. 28:19: You are going to lose the battle. "Moreover the Lor will also deliver Israel with thee into the hand of the Phil ines: and tomorrow shalt thou and thy sons be with me; the Lord also shall deliver the host of Israel into the hand of the Philistines."

14. Saul in 1 Samuel 31:4 dies the next day--suicide. 2 Samuel 1 the messenger covers up for Saul to make it look like not suicide. However, even tho Saul committed suicide he went to heaven. Christ died for the sin of suicide too.

Deposits: Doctrine of
(Category 131)

1. The believer makes a deposit with God at the point of salvation. 2 Timothy 1:12.

2. The Lord makes a deposit with the believer in phase 2 of Bible doctrine and divine operating assets. 2 Tim. 1:14

3. The believer in phase 2 makes a deposit with the Lord. Psalm 55:22, 1 Peter 5:7, 4:19.

4. The believer in phase 2 makes deposits with the unbeliever - the Gospel. Romans 1:14.

5. The believer in phase 2 makes deposits with other believers, the communication of doctrine. 2 Timothy 2:2.

Didasko
(Category 132)

Ephesians 4:21, "If so be that ye have been taught by him, as the truth is in Jesus." Didaske = taught. Aorist Passive Indicative

1. The public assembly of a local church requires a pastor-teacher and congregation of believer-priests.

2. In compliance with the principle of privacy of the priesthood, God has ordained the public communication of Bible Doctrine.

3. Only in the communication of Bible doctrine in public assembly does the believer have the privacy to learn Bible doctrine and live his life as unto the Lord.

4. One on one teaching becomes an intrusion on the privacy of the priesthood. It constitutes bullying, etc.

5. Therefore, proper ingredients for the transfer of Bible doctrine to the human spirit involves the following grace facets:

   a. The Canon of Scripture: 2 Tim. 3:16
   b. The local church: 1 Thess. 1:1
   c. Pastor-teacher: Eph. 4:11
   d. Indwelling of the Holy Spirit: 1 Cor. 6:19
   e. Rebound (Confessing Sin Biblically): 1 John 1:9
   f. Breathing apparatus of the Soul: Eph. 4:23
   g. The mind of the believer: Phil. 1:5
   h. The human spirit of the believer: Romans 8:16
   i. The believer as a believer-priest: 1 Peter 2:5

Diabolos - the Devil
(Category 132)

I. The devil is smarter than any believer and is a genius. Isaiah 14:12-17; Ezek. 28:11-19; Eph. 2:2; John 8:44; 1 John 3:8.

II. His name - Lucifer- "great shining light"; son of the morning, principle of the power of the air--etc. Isa. 14:12

III. The devil is the ruler of this world. Luke 4:5,7; John 12:31 14:30; 16:11; 2 Cor. 4:4; Eph. 2:2.

IV. Devil's strategy to the unbeliever (keep him unsaved). 2 Cor. 4:3-4; Luke 8:12; 2 Thess. 2:9-10.

V. Devil's strategy with regard to nations--make them go international--knock out the four divine institutions. Rev. 12:9, 20:3, 20:8.

VI. The devils strategy with regard to believers: 2 Cor. 2:1

A. Accusing: Rev. 12:9, 10; Zech. 13:1-2. Jesus Christ is the believer's advocate - 1 John 2:1.

B. Keeping believers from the Word: 1 Tim. 4:1, Eph. 4:14, 2 Cor. 11:3, 1 Chron. 2:1.

C. Frustrate will of God:

1. Operational: James 4:7
2. Geographical: 1 Thess. 2:18
3. Mental: Eph. 4:4

Encourage to worry: 1 Peter 5:7-9

E. Obscure occupation with Christ: 1 Kings 19:10, Jer. 17.4, Heb. 13:5-6 (details of life). Details of life take the place of occupation with Christ.

F. Gets believers involved with social gospel improvement deals.

G. Fear of death: Heb. 2:14-15

VII. Religion is the devil's creation, his ace trump, and is a counterfeit system.

VIII. He trains false teachers to advance idolatry.

A. Habakkuk 2:18-19 Idolatry
B. Matthew 7:15 Self-righteous
C. Galatians 4:17-18; 2 Tim. 3:5-7, Court believers
D. 2 Cor. 10:12 Appeal to ego
E. 1 Tim. 1:7-8 Legalistic
F. 1 John 4:1 Satan never gives up--he will always have a false system.

Divine Discipline
(Category 133)

1. Discipline is for believers only. Heb. 12:5

2. Discipline is based on love -- when a believer is out of fellowship discipline is designed to get him to confess. Heb. 12:6.

3. Discipline never implies loss of salvation. Gal. 3:26, Heb. 12:6

4. Divine discipline is chastisement for sins of the believer in the immediate vicinity of sin.

5. Discipline is removed by rebound (confession). 1 John 1:9, 1 Cor. 11:31,"if we judge ourselves."

6. When suffering continues after rebound, the purpose is for blessing. Job 5:17-18.

7. All divine discipline is confined to time, no discipline in eternity. Rev. 21:4.

8. If you suspect suffering in your life, and have rebounded, look for something near at hand. Discipline always relates to sins in the immediate past, Heb. 12:15. Exception: The sin unto death. 1 John 5:16.

9. The other side of eternal security is discipline for believers out of fellowship. Certain sins bring TRIPLE COMPOUND DISCIPLINE. Matt. 7:1-2.

Divine Discipline: Chain Sinning
(Category 134)

1. By bitterness or hatred in the frontal lobe.

2. By guilt complex or by constantly associating all suffering with some sin in the past.

3. By public confession of sin

4. By trying to hurt, discipline, or condemn someone else. Matt. 7:12.

5. By blaming others for sins and failures.

6. By discussing sins and past failures with others in order to gain their sympathy.

Divine Discipline: How to Avoid It Always

(Category 134)

Hebrews 12

I. Rebound-Filling of the Holy Spirit: Heb. 12:1 (lay aside weight) Result of confession of sin Biblically, production, the fruit of the Spirit.

II. Faith-rest life: Heb 12:1, "... let us run with patience." This is faith-patience--also spoken of in James 1.

III. Occupation with Christ: Heb 12:2, "Looking unto Jesus ..."

IV. Avoid the sins of the mind: Heb 12:3, "wearied" means to become mentally ill.

V. Have victory over the old sin nature: Heb 12:4

A. Rebound
B. Keep moving
C. Isolate sin
D. Grow up
E. Stand on the principle of grace
F. Faith-rest technique
G. Retro-active positional truth

V. Live in the Word: Heb 12:5

VI. Operation of Grace Apparatus for Perception:

A. Stage 1: The communicator of the Word--using I-C-E. (Isagogics, Categories, Exegesis) like Paul in Ephesians

B. Stage 2: The comprehension of the believer hearing the Word. Eph 3:18 Gnosis coming into the mind as a staging area.

C. Stage 3: The transfer by faith of gnosis to epignosis in the human spirit. Full knowledge--believed doctrine.

D. Stage 4: Epignosis in the human spirit results in a frame of reference--referring to the spiritual IQ in the human soul. Usable, believed faith--applied doctrine for use at a moment's notice.

E. Stage 5: Because of a frame of reference the believer is able to exhale epignosis. He is able to apply the Word of God to experience--this is the production of divine good also.

F. Stage 6: As all these stages operate under the filling of the Holy Spirit--the Holy Spirit builds an edification structure of the soul. This is stability at top notch. This structure includes epignosis (residual doctrine) as the foundation of the ECS and the five stocks are as follows: Grace orientation, mastery of the details of life, relaxed mental attitude, capacity to love (categories 1,2,3) and inner happiness. This is stability, Biblically thinking.

Divine Discipline: How to Become Mentally Ill as a Believer (Category 135)

Hebrews 12:3, "Wearied from fainting in your mind".

A prime factor in causing mental illness in believers is when the believer under discipline fights it, refusing to properly use 1 John 1:9.

The following harbored continually can cause mental illness.

1. Operation guilt complex.
2. Harboring bitterness toward any member of the human race. Heb. 12:15.
3. Hatred toward anyone.
4. Jealousy or envy.
5. Fear about the present and future, death, etc.
6. Anxiety (worry about little things).
7. Desire in the mind for revenge.
8. Judging another believer, running him down to others.

Results of divine discipline: Heb. 12:11

1. Restrainer of sin.
2. Teaches believer lessons which result in growth.

Divine Pleasure (Category 136)

1. God is pleased to save those who believer in the Lord Jesus Christ. 1 Cor. 1:21.
2. God is pleased to appoint His Son as Saviour and to reconcile the world to Himself. Col. 1:19-20.
3. God is displeased with the Old Testament offerings because they were not efficacious and could not save. However, the OT saints were benefitted from the beginning because they illustrated the Gospel.

Dialectical Materialism (Communism) (Category 137)

1. Marx, writing in the Communist Manifesto, said "Communism abolishes eternal truth, it abolishes all religion and morality." It therefore acts in contradiction to all past historical experience.

2. Another principle in which Marx firmly believed was that of dialectical materialism.

3. The word "dialectics" has a very special meaning for Communists. It represents the idea of conflict in all material things.

4. The dialectical method consists of three elements:

   a. The thesis which is the positive force or concept.
   b. The antithesis which is the opposing force or concept.
   c. The synthesis which is the NEW CONCEPT produced by the conflict of the other two.

5. Marx combined this idea with the athiestic view that the universe is completely material. He believed everything in the universe is constantly changing and at the same time is in conflict. Thus he arrived at the principle of dialectical materialism.

6. Marx regarded bourgeois society (the very rich) as the thesis and the proletariat (wage earning class) as the antithesis while the Communist society was the synthesis (a class-less society) which would eventually result from the conflict between the employer class and the working class.

7. In any discussion of the principles guiding Marx, it should always be born in mind that a denial of the existence of God is the foundation upon which his entire philosophy rests.

Communism: Joe Stalin's 1932 Plan for Conquest of the USA (Category 138)

Joe Stalin in 1932 devised a plan for conquering the USA by peaceful means. He had a six paragraph program in which he said if this program is followed to the letter, the USA would be destroyed in a generation, or at the most in 50 years. The following points shows how the USA has been attacked by IDEAS! Remember this was devised in 1932. That is 38 years ago.

1. Point 1: The use of philosophy, mysticism, the development of liberal cults, the furthance of atheism, agnosticism; purpose: to nullify, to discredit, to destroy the teaching of the Word of God. So Joe Stalin realized first of all the importance of getting rid of Bible Doctrine.

2. Point 2: The destruction of marriage and the introduction of theoretical racial practice (marriage of black and white).

3. Point 3: The third paragraph dealt with culture. Cultivate the ugly, the futuristic, the aberrant in art, literature, drama, and music. He said, "Any nation or any people who utilize aborginal type music (the drum) are easy to conquer"-and he said that throughout the history of the world wherever you find the drum and the people dancing around the drum and wherever you find the beat you find a decadent people--they make great slaves. They are easy to conquer, they are a people to be exploited. And if Stalin was correct, we have a generation right now that can be exploited right now--good music is practically gone. (We're not knocking the drums in a high-school band).

He said that you must attack the culture of the people, and if they have anything that talks of freedom, if their music gives them any type of rapport of freedom, then their music will give them something to resist. Today--what do we have, "Two pieces of spagetti and a beat."

4. Create unrest, suspicion, and revolt among the working classes. Promote class warfare (like today on our campus--in the postal strike, demonstrations and so on). Class warfare is being promoted by communism and has been for a long time. And Joe Stalin spelled it out--how to conquer the American people without firing a shot. All you have to do is get them class conscious and promote class warfare. Point 4

5. Point 5: Economy: Standardize the cheap and shoddy. Advocate state monopoly of ownership (In other words if you are going to conquer a people let the government take over the industry). Why? Immediately, you have inefficiency--and all you need is inefficiency at the top to take over a nation. He advocated taking over free enterprise. He indicated that no nation can survive 200 years of inefficient leadership.

Then he said, "You have to get off a monetary standard". Withdraw all gold and anything else that is used for a monetary standard. He said, "Exchange all gold with foreign currency whenever possible." This is going on right now--and gold deposites--are being drained over the years from Ft. Knox.

6. Point 6: Set up the idea of thinking internationally. He said if you can get people to think in terms of brotherhood, to think in terms of internationalism, you destroy their patrictism. He said when you destroy the patriotism of a people you destroy the freedom of the people, the freedom of the people to give their lives to fight or defend their country.

He said that you must attack any school or organization that provides officer personnel for the military--military schools. He said, like West Point must be destroyed--also programs must be stopped like ROTC. Unrest can be caused by the youth of a country.

Also all preparation for defense, all patriotic effort must be neutralized, and young people must be persuaded to be in pacifi.

Well--what has happened in 38 years? There is a communistic conspiracy--in fact a well organized brilliant--movement to overthrown the USA.

Disciples (Apostles to Israel)
(Category 38)

1. The Lord Jesus Christ chose the 12 disciples. Matt. 10:1, Mark 3:13-14, Luke 6:13.

2. The Lord Jesus Christ gave them special powers to perform miracles and heal the sick. This was their calling card so that people would listen to their message.

3. A list of the disciples were (as given in Matt. 10).

   #1: Simon Peter
   #2: Andrew (Peter's brother)
   #3: James, son of Jebedee
   #4: John (James' brother) Writer of John, 1-2-3 John, Rev.
   #5: Philip
   #6: Bartholomew
   #7: Thomas
   #8: Matthew, the tax collector, writer for Matthew
   #9: James, son of Alphaeus
   #10: Lebbaeus Thaddaeus (In Luke and Acts he is listed as Juda brother of James)
   #11: Simon the Canaanite (In Luke and Acts he is listed as Simon.
   #12: Judas Iscariot

4. The disciples at this time were appointed apostles to Israel, NOT to the church. Matt. 10:6 says, "house of Israel." Later on the day of Pentecost (when the Church began) they received the spiritual gift of Apostle to the Church. Acts 2 etc.

5. Peter was NOT appointed an apostle to the Church in Matt. 16:18-19. The "keys" are the perogative of witnessing and they do not carry special authority.

6. They remained Apostles to Israel all during the Jewish Age.

7. During the 10 days before the Day of Pentecost the eleven decided to fill the place vacated by Judas, an unbeliever, who betrayed the Lord and committed suicide. Matt. 10:4, Acts 1:15-26.

8. This was out of line as Jesus chose the disciples and appointed them apostles of Israel.

9. These 11 (not Matthias whom they elected, Acts 1:26) were given the gift of Apostleship, on the Day of Pentecost, the day the church began. See categories on the Day of Pentecost, the gift of Apostleship, and Apostles to the Church, Roster.

Dispensations
(Category 139)

1. Paul taught Dispensations. Ephesians 3:2, "If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward". (1st class condition) This means that Paul has himself taught the dispensations.

2. Dispensations are periods of human history (categories) expressed in terms of Divine Revelation (Divine viewpoint).

3. God administers the human race. (Dispensations). The human race is an estate. God administers that estate in a certain way.

4. God's administration means delegation of authority in each dispensation. God appoints the administrator (believers). Romand 3:2; Acts 15:14.

5. Administrators may fail or succeed; regardless of which, God's plan moves on. (Essence of God). Esther 1:2; 2:8. In Esther 2:8, "And it came to pass" indicates God's plan is always carried out.

6. There is only one administrator for each Dispensation. 1 Sam. 12:22.

7. The four dispensations and their administrators are:

   Age of the Gentiles: Gentile believers
   Age of the Jews: Israel
   Age of the Church: Church
   Age of the Millennium: Christ

8. Every dispensation involves revelation which was not given in the previous dispensation, as well as a recognition of that which was. Accumulative.

9.

GREEK	ENGLISH	EMPHASIS
oikonomos	Dispensation	Period in which there is an administration, responsibility as an administrator.
aion	"in other ages": Eph. 3:5	Time period

10. Promises found in any dispensation that are grace promises, are always applicable to any believer in any dispensation. Isa. 41:10.

11. The ultimate in Dispensations is the application of Doctrine to experience, so that at all times your life is personally oriented to life - phase 2. If you understand the chronology of times you don't confuse "Law" with "Grace", you aren't trying to make the "Church Age" world a "millennial" world and so on.

Outline of Dispensations
(Category 140)

Introduction

A. Definition: A dispensation is a period of human history expressed in Divine Viewpoint.

B. Key vocabulary:

1. Chronos: Means chronological or time in its sequence of events. For example, the dispensation of Israel has a sequence of three main events; period of the Patriarchs, Law and 5th Cycle of Discipline. It is often translated "times." (1 Thess. 5:1).

2. Kairos: Means to take a period of time and break it up into ages.

3. Oikonomos: Means stewardship and is often translated Dispensations. It actually means administration.

4. Aion: Also dispensation and is translated age. It is an era when God works through an organization.

I. Age of the Gentiles:

A. Outline: Genesis 1-11

		Scofield Designation
1. Age of Positive Volition:	Ch. 2	Age of Innocence
2. Age of Negative Volition	Ch. 3	Age of Conscience
3. Age of Nationalism	Ch. 11	Age of Human Government

B. Characteristics:

1. One language
2. One race (and still they DID NOT get along)
3. Four Divine Institutions developed and attacked by Satan
   a. Attack on Positive Volition: Genesis 3
   b. Attack on Marriage and the Family: Gen. 6 (angelic infiltration of the human race)
   c. Attack on Nationalism: Genesis 11:1-9
4. Scope: From Adam to Tower of Babel
5. No Canon of Scripture: Revelation, but not in written form.
6. Salvation was by faith in Jesus Christ as today.
7. No basic missionary agency. Evangelism, but no missionary agency. Family is the basis of evangelism.

I. Age of the Jews

A. Outline: Genesis 12: Malachi minus millennial passages such as Isa. 11, 35, 64, 65. Also Matthew, Mark, Luke, John except John 13-17. Also Revelation 6-19.

1. Age of the Patriarchs: (Abraham to the Giving of the Law)
2. Age of the Law: Moses to Christ
3. Tribulation: Rapture of the Church until the Second Advent.

B. Characteristics:

1. Many languages: Nations were separated
2. Many races
3. Specific Missionary Agency (Regenerate of Israel). Israel was to give the gospel to people speaking different languages. Abraham was the founder of this Missionary base. Abraham was a Gentilewho became a Jew through regeneration. This missionary base must be characterized by security. See the category on the four unconditional covenants with eternal life clauses (Abrahamic, Palestinic, Davidic, New).
4. Since you have a Missionary Base, there must be discipline for failure (5 Cycles of Discipline--Lev 26:27-46).
5. Scope: From Abraham to the Second Advent, minus Church Age.
6. Salvation: Not saved by keeping the law, but through faith in Christ Jesus.
7. Spirituality: Faith-rest, rebound, and occupation with Christ.

III. Age of the Church:

A. Outline: John 13-17, Acts, New Testament epistles (except for certain portions that deal with the Tribulation). Rev 1-3.

1. Pre-canon period: Up to the completion of the Canon in 96 AD with the writing of the book of Revelation.
2. Post-canon period: From 96 AD to the rapture

B. Characteristics: (Believer's Unique Assets)

1. Positional Truth: Union with Christ. Christianity is not a religion but a relationship.
2. Universal indwelling of the Lord Jesus Christ. (fellowship)
3. Universal indwelling of the Holy Spirit. Only a few OT saints were indwelt, and that for special purposes.
4. Universal priesthood of the Believer. (Never has God given so much power and meaning to a believer. Every believer is an ambassador and therefore in full-time Christian service.)
5. Completed Canon of Scripture (after 96 AD)
6. A supernatural way of life (there is nothing we can do in the flesh which pleases God.)
7. Filling of the Holy Spirit is the means of executing this supernatural way of life (coupled with rebound, 1 John 1:9).
8. Salvation by faith in Jesus Chirst.

IV. The Age of the Millennium:

A. Outline (Phases) Rev. 20, Isaiah 11, 35, 64, 65 & many other portions.

1. 2nd Advent of Christ
2. Baptism of fire: Armageddon. Christ will separate believers from unbelievers.
3. Perfect environment for 1,000 years.
4. End of 1000 years, 2nd Advent of Satan and the revolt.
5. The destruction of the universe
6. Last judgment: Rev. 20:11-15, Great White Throne

B. Characteristics:

1. No religion on earth, only Christianity. Rev. 20:1-3
2. Greatest period of spirituality ever known on the earth. Joel 2:28, 29; Isa. 65:24
3. Israel restored as a Nation of God. They were disbursed until the 2nd Advent. Zechariah 8:20-23. Isa. 35:3-10, Isa. 65:19. Present day Zionism is of Satan.
4. Universalism will be on a bona fide scale for the first time. When Christ reigns, internationalism will be legitimate as Christ is the sole ruler (world peace results).

   a. Universal peace: Isa. 2:4, Hosea 2:18, Psalm 45:9 Micah 4:3.
   b. Universal prosperity: Psalm 72:7, 16
   c. Universal knowledge of God. Isa. 11:9
   d. Perfect World Government: Zech. 14:9, Isa. 11:1-2, Psalm 72

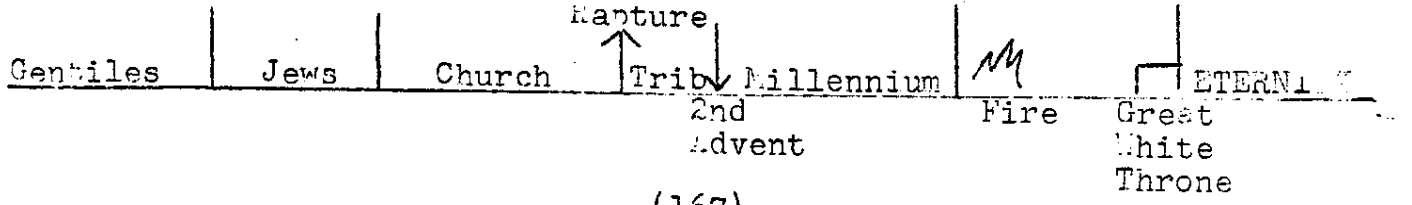
5. Radical Changes in nature:

   a. Creation loosened from the bondage of sin. Romans 8:19-22.
   b. Animals lose their ferocity. Isa. 11:6-9, 65:25.
   c. Plant life will abound. Isa. 35:1, 2, 7

6. Unbelievers are removed from the earth at the beginning of Millennium. (Battle of Armageddon). However about half-way through this age unbelievers will begin to [illegible] up--and there will be many of them by the end of the millennium (Rev. 20:7-9). Even in perfect environment some unbelievers won't believer.

7. Life will be extended on earth, capital punishment will be seldom used, there will be perfect justice by a perfect judge. These will be immediate punishment for sin.

8. Salvation is still by faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. OT sacrifices will be resumed.



Divine Guidance: Categories of the Will of God
(Category 141)

I. The Operational Will of God: What does He want me to do?

A. This is the SAME for EVERY BELIEVER.

B. The Believer is to be filled with the Holy Spirit, use GAP in its six stages, thus building an edification structure of the soul.

C. Corresponds with Principle #2 YIELDEDNESS. (F-HS)

D. Specifics (Divine operating assets) in the will of God (operational will): All given by grace:

1. Canon
2. Local Church
3. Pastor-teacher, evangelist, other spiritual gifts
4. Indwelling Holy Spirit
5. Rebound
6. Breathing apparatus of the soul
7. The mind
8. The human spirit
9. The priesthood

Also:

1. Faith-rest technique
2. Living in the Word
3. Occupation with Christ
4. Prayer
5. Witnessing, etc.

II. The Viewpoint Will of God: What does He want me to think?

A. This is the SAME for EVERY BELIEVER.

B. His viewpoint will is what we think. Divine viewpoint.

C. Divine viewpoint comes from epignosis in the human spirit.

D. Corresponds with Principle #1: Knowledge (epignosis).

E. With epignosis in the human spirit comes growth (maturity) the erection of the edification complex.

III. Geographical Will of God: Where does He want me to go?

A. This is DIFFERENT for EACH BELIEVER (except married couples)

B. Is there a specific area of service for this specific time?

C. The issue: If you are filled with the Holy Spirit, and respect the authority of the communicator, comprehend the gnosis, transfer to the human spirit which makes a frame of reference (epignosis) plus exhaling and the edification complex--you'll have no problem with geography.

Divine Guidance: Mechanics
(Category 142)

I. Introduction: Acts 11:1-16

A. v. 1: Peter received the news of the Gentile Pentecost.

B. v. 2: Followed by inevitable opposition from legalism.

C. v. 3: There is criticism of Peter so Peter begins to relate various factors in God's leading as he came into contact with the Gentiles in the house of Cornelius in Caesarea.

II. Mechanics of Guidance:

A. Guidance Through Prayer: Guidance through prayer is authenic only when a believer is confronted with a situation which is not specified by some direct command in Scripture. v. 5.

Example: A believer should never pray about marrying an unbeliever. 2 Cor. 6:14 commands no marriage is to be contracted between a believer and an unbeliever. However the believer should use prayer in the doctrine of right man and right woman. Heb. 4:16. Guidance is used in a specific instance by prayer and other D. O. A.

B. Guidance Through the Mind: v. 6

"I Considered": To put your mind down on something. Objective thinking, excludes emotion. To ponder it carefully. Scar-tissued, subjective thinking gums the works.

God always leads in compliance with His Word. God never leads contrary to the Word. Basically guidance comes through the Word, but the Word must be in the human spirit in order to be applied, for only doctrine in the human spirit can be applied.

The Word comes into the mind as a staging area--so this second stage is GAP is very necessary, but don't stop there.

C. Guidance Through the Word of God: v. 7-10

Peter was guided through divine revelation, which today is the WORD OF GOD AND ONLY THE WORD OF GOD.

D. Guidance Through Providential Circumstances: v. 11

Three men had arrived even while Peter was still on the rooftop. They had left Caesarea some time before and had made the days journey to Joppa, and to the house. This was providential circumstances.

We are to test a providential circumstance. It must not conflict with the statements, doctrines, and principles of the Word of God.

Hanging out fleeces today is OUT! We don't need fleeces, we need the WORD OF GOD, and the resultant erection of the edification complex. It is a sign of lack of truth and stupidity when we hand out fleeces. Gideon (Judges 6:36-40) was a pitiful believer--and the only reason God honored that fleece was His marvelous and matchless grace.

E. Guidance Through the Holy Spirit: v. 12

The Holy Spirit never guides the believer apart from the Word of God. The Holy Spirit cannot guide apart from the filling of the Holy Spirit and the knowledge of doctrine.

1. v. 7: "hearing the voice": Word

2. v. 5: "seeing the vision": Canon

3. v. 12: "Spirit bade me go": Teaching ministry of the Holy Spirit.

F. Guidance Through Comparison: v. 13-15

The parallel phenomenon of Pentecost in Jerusalem confirmed the fact that Gentile believers were just as much "church" (body of Christ) as Jewish believers. Eph. 2:14.

G. Guidance Through Scripture Memory: v. 16

Peter remembered what Jesus spoke in Acts 1:5. The memory of Scripture contributed considerably to his guidance. Peter remembered it at the proper time, and therefore was guided by it.

Divine Guidance: Moses' Decision
(Category 143)

1. "By faith Moses when he was come to years (40 years of age)." In making a decision the believer must be in fellowship, exercising the faith-rest technique.

2. "Refused to be called": Moses exercised his volition to refuse

3. "Choosing rather to suffer affliction . . ." The will of God eliminates one thing--and enables to choose another.

4. "Esteeming the reproach of Christ": Think the matter through using Divine Viewpoint! Select the pertinent doctrines and apply.

5. "For he had respect unto the recompense of the reward": He made the decision with eternities values in view!

Divine Guidance: Principle
(Category 144)

I. Knowledge of the Will of God: Romans 12:2

(Knowledge can be headknowledge (gnosis) or full knowledge (epignosis). Both are necessary--fact goes into the vous, mind, and then faith transfers the fact into usable knowledge in the human spirit. Romans 12:1-2. "renewing of your mind" is the recycling of epignosis throughout the facets of the soul.

A. Many things are stated directly to be God's will:

1. 2 Cor. 6:14, " . . . be not unequally yolked together with unbelievers." (for example)

2. Other things are not directly stated and must be determined by deduction from known doctrine.

B. There is no guidance for the believer apart from a knowledge of the Lord and the filling of the Holy Spirit.

II. Yieldedness to the Will of God: Romans 6:13, Romans 12:1

A. Yielding is not a one-shot experience:

1. A person in the bottom circle (in fellowship) is yielded. Out of fellowship he is not yielded.
2. The practice of being yielded is 1 John 1:9. Confess.

B. Command: Romans 12:1, "present": Aorist tense. This is using 1 John 1:9 in the point of time that it is needed.

C. The principle of yieldedness is found in Romans 6:13

D. The mechanics of yieldedness is the use of 1 John 1:9.

E. Definition: Being willing to do the will of God before you know what the will of God is.

III. Guidance through Spiritual Growth:

A. Command: 2 Peter 3:18, "But grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ." Grace is the sum total of the plan of God.

B. A full knowledge (residual doctrine, foundation of the edification complex) is acquired through the daily intake of the Word and GAP (grace apparatus for perception). This results in maturity.

C. Divine guidance involves one step at a time. Each step must be growth and advance.

IV. There are three hindrances to doing the will of God: Ignorance, carnality, and lack of growth (lack of an EC of the soul.

Divine Guidance: Seven Things Declared to Be the Will of God (Category 145)

I. It is the will of God that every member of the human race be born-again. 2 Peter 3:9, " . . . not willing that any should perish." 1 John 2:17 with 1 John 3:23.

II. It is the will of God that all believers be sanctified. (We are speaking here of experiential sanctification which is STAYING IN FELLOWSHIP). 1 Thess. 4:3, carries the idea that a believer is to be set apart unto God by being in fellowship with Him so that believers will be under his direction. See the category on sanctification.

III. It is the will of God that all believers be controlled (filled) with the Holy Spirit. Eph. 5:18

IV. It is the will of God that we give thanks in everything: 1 Thess. 5:18 correlated with Romans 8:28. If you are going to do the will of God, if you are going to be guided by God this must be your mental attitude. Suffering is designed to bless us, therefore I can give thanks in suffering. Discipline is designed to remind us to use 1 John 1:9.

V. It is the will of God that believers suffer: 1 Peter 3:17 Since it is God's will that you suffer (1 Peter 4:19) then the purpose of suffering is blessing. Suffering is:

A. God's way of blessing the believer;
B. God's way of bring maturity (edification complex) in a quicker way;
C. God's way of directing our attention to the things that are really important in life such as:

1. Fellowship with Him
2. Knowing Doctrine

VI. It is the will of God for every believer to trust the Lord: Proverbs 3:5-6, "Trust in the Lord with all thine heart (mind) and lean not unto thine own understanding (human viewpoint) in all thy ways acknowledge Him and He shall direct thy paths".

VII. It is the will of God for every believer to be productive: 1 Peter 2:15

All production is in the area of divine good: The filling of the Spirit, the exhale of epignosis, and the erection of the edification complex. This is compound triple divine good.

Divine Guidance: Types of the Will of God
(Category 146)

I. The Directive Will of God: Tantamount to the Sovereign Will of God. His choice for your life.

II. The Permissive Will of God: Where the negative volition in man is permitted to operate contrary to the will of God. Man goes negative against directive will. +R (absolute righteousness) says God cannot coerce man. Justice disciplines man.

III. The Overruling Will of God: Supercedes the directive and permissive will of God, and involves the frustration of Satan's will. God controls the circumstances but does not interfere with the operation of ones volition, like Jonah. God takes every situation in the life of the believer and makes it work together for the believer's good.

IV. Illustrations:

A. Illustration No. 1: 2 Cor. 6:14

1. Directive will: Do not marry an unbeliever. Sovereign will.
2. Permissive will: Marry one anyway, resulting in misery and divine discipline

B. Illustration No. 2: 1 John 3:23a

1. Directive will: That all be saved, 2 Peter 3:9. Sov. will of God.
2. Permissive will: God will not overrule volition because of +R. Justice must condemn the negative signals (-V). Note the last judgment for unbelievers.

C. Illustration No. 3: 1 John 3:23b, Eph. 5:17-18

1. Directive Will: That every believer be filled with the Holy Spirit. Sovereign will.
2. Permissive Will: Every believer is not filled with the Holy Spirit (+R doesn't interfere) however Justice executes divine discipline.

D. Illustration No. 4: Balaam, Numbers 22:12 - 31:8.

1. Directive will:
   a. Thou shalt not go (depends upon human viewpoint)
   b. Thou shalt not curse (cursing depends upon Satanic or demon influence).
2. Permissive will: God permitted Balaam to go, did not coerce volition.
3. Overruling will: God overruled this because it involved demons, and involved cursing the children of Israel. God protects His people from Satanic action.

Divine Institutions
(Category 147)

I. Definition of a Divine Institution: A principle of divine operation directed toward the human race for its orderly direction and perservation.

II. God set up the four Divine Institutions (Volition, marriage, family, nationalism).

A. Volition: The right to be dependent upon God, or to act independently of Him. The individual has the right, the authority to make certain decisions and to be responsible for those decisions. The human race uses DI #1 to get into DI #2. Genesis 2 & 3 (Animals named, choise in Garden)

B. Marriage: Basic organization in a national entity. Genesis 2:18-25. The husband is the authority, is to be head of his home. Marriage is for believers (2) and unbelievers (2). If the Biblical doctrine of marriage is violated--on a wide-spread scale a nation can be destroyed.

C. Family: The institution set up to raise and train children as far as respect for authority, for the rights of others, for the privacy of others, to respect common law, to respect the property of others, plus many other principles. Genesis 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10. The parents have the authority in this institution.

D. Nationalism: Genesis 10-11 Nationalism is the means of protecting and perserving the human race, so that no segment of individuals gets enough power to destroy the rest of the human race, and eventually themselves.

1. Nationalism is an human barrier against the supremacy of evil in the world controlled by Satan, and protects from the power lust of the old sin nature.

2. The purpose of nationalism is to provide protection so that the INDIVIDUAL VOLITION can operate under MAXIMUM FREEDOM and liberty.

3. Internationalism is anti-Biblical. Like the United Nations, communism, any religious or political group that is international in scope.

4. The authority is vested in the govermental leaders. Romans 13:1-7, 1 Timothy 2.

III. God set up the four divine institutions:

A. For the entire human race (not for believers only)
B. For the preservation of the human race.
C. So that the angelic conflict can run its course.
D. So that the human race is free to accept Jesus or reject Him

IV. A DI is different from a Christian institution (local church, believers only).

Drinking: #1
(Category 147)

I. There are Four Principles to be Applied when Liquor is Involv
(Drunkenness is always condemned as sin in the Word of God)

A. The law of liberty: 1 Cor. 8:8 Under this law a belie.er would be free to drink moderately, sparingly--but all i we must be balanced out. Nothing is gained by drinking, however.

B. The Law of expedience: 1 Cor. 6:12 This law rules out drinking because of the weaker brother, because in America drinking is a stumbling block, is a hindrance to a clear witness of Christ.

C. The Law of love toward a weaker brother: 1 Cor. 8:9

A believer should refrain from drinking because some believers cannot drink in moderation--either you--or those who observe you.

D. Law of Supreme Sacrifice: It may be legitimate for some believer to drink in moderation, but as a believer there are certain things that a believer does not do for the greate. glory of God. DO NO CONFUSE THIS WITH LEGALISM! 1 Cor. 9:1-6.

II. Drunkeness is not a sickness; it is a sin. 1 Peter 4:3-4, Eph 5:18, Gal. 5:21.

III. General Principles:

A. Leaders of nations should never drink. Prov. 20:1, 31:4-5

B. There are uses: proper and improper: Prov. 23:20; Isa. 5 1, 22; 28:7-8; Eph. 5:18; 1 Cor. 5:11; 6:10; 1 Tim. 3:3, 8; 1 Pet. 4:3.

C. The cup at the Lord's Supper was not alcoholic. Wine should never be used. It was at the Passover (in background) and the Law forbade leaven and fermentation.

Drinking #2
(Category 148)

I. Four Words in the Word of God are translated "wine:" Three Hebrew (first three) and one Greek.

A. Yayin: Fermented wine like Noah, Nabal and the alcoholics of Ephraim drank. It was used more in the OT than the other two words.

B. Titrosh: Non-fermented wine, often translated "new wine," made for the Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread.

C. Shekar: Beer in the OT. It was made from pomegranates, honey or barley. It is stronger than the 3.2% alcoholic beer today.

D. Oinos: This is the Greek equivalent of the Hebrew word "yayin." It sometimes means non-fermented wine (non-alcoholic) boiled juice of the grape.

II. Bible principles about Drinking:

A. Drunkenness & excessive drinking are sins and are not condoned in the Word of God: Prov 20:1; 23:20.

1. Excessive eating is also a sin: Deut 21:20; Prov 23:21.
2. Mixed drinks--sin: Isaiah 5:11,22.
3. Priests and prophets drank--no good: Isa 28:7,8.
4. Believers are commanded not to get drunk: Rom 13:13; 1 Tim 3:3,8; 1 Cor 5:11; 6:10; 1 Peter 4:3; Eph 5:18.
5. Believers should not be shocked when they see another believer drunk. Just because a person becomes a believer does not mean he can in some instances stop drinking immediately, Eph 5:18. They need another believer's help through doctrine not through criticism.

B. Case Histories: Drunkenness condemned:

1. Noah: Genesis 9:21
2. Nebal: 1 Sam 25:36-37
3. People of Ephraim: Isa 28:1
4. Lot: Gen 19:32

Each of these have different repercussions.

C. Wine is permitted under certain conditions (Prov 31:4-7; 1 Tim 5:23) as medicine--taken in small amounts for disorders of the brain and nervous system, stomach and circulatory system.

1. When one is "about to perish" drinking in medicinal amounts is permitted. It can be used as a sedative. The "heavy heart" is one who needs help in deep affliction.

2. When a person's problems overcome so they become psychotic or neurotic, alcohol can be used as a sedative (under doctor's orders in medicinal amounts).

3. Wine (1 Tim. 5:23) for the stomach's sake means Timothy had some type of gastric disorder but it didn't warrant taking a "little nip".

D. Definite prohibition of drinking:

1. One in a position of leadership (Proverbs 31:4-5). This means presidents, government leaders, congress, etc. Drinking can impair judgment and slow down reflexes. Leaders have to have good judgment in making decisions. Drinking hinders clear thinking. Prov. 31:5.

2. Wine and church leaders: 1 Tim. 3:8

E. In church history, some have drunk wine with their meals in moderation, such as Calvin, Spurgeon, and Luther. There are areas of the world where believers drink wine at mealtime. That does not mean we can use the activity of believers in other geographical areas. Principle: Do not compare yourself to other believers.

F. Moderation in drinking is ruled out when the laws of love and expediency are applied as well as the law of supreme sacrifice. It can be a means of stumbling to the new believer or unbeliever.

G. When a person, believer or unbeliever, permits his problems to overcome him, he uses drinking as sublimation. A person should claim the Word under pressure, not sublimate.

H. Jesus Christ turned the water to wine: John 2:1-11. This was real wine, alcoholic beverage, the best wine ever, but from v. 4, we know that He Himself did not drink. See John tapes

III. Negative effects of alcohol:

A. Depressive, not a stimulant. Creates impulsive behaviour as well as abusive behaviour.

B. Diseases caused by drinking:

1. Cirrhosis of the liver
2. Delirium Tremans
3. Psychosis: Brain defect--lying to a fantastic degree
4. Wernickes: Affects the eyes
5. Marchiafavis - Bigranis: Brain disease

IV. The drinking problem is not an issue in salvation. Jesus Christ is THE issue. (Cf. Wedding Feast at Cana). Faith alone opens the door to Heaven. This is no loophole for drinking. (Wives, do not nag husbands)

V. One does not lose his salvation because of drinking. Children should be taught the reality of drinking; what horrible effects it has, but not as a taboo.

VI. All these points should not be construed as a permit to drink.

"DO"
(Category 149)

1. Do comes from 3 different Greek word in the KJV.
   a. #1 "do": katergazomai: Something on the inside working itself to the outside.
   b. #2 "do": prasso: Practice something therefore do it.
   c. #3 "do": poieo: "To do"(Only legitimate translation)
2. The believer poieos when he sins.
   The unbeliever prassos when he sins.
3. Difference between the two verbs is one of category, not relativity.
4. When the believer is under the control of his old sin nature, he imitates the unbeliever, who sins prasso.
5. All through the Pauline epistles:
   a. Poieo: Used for the believer committing any and every sin.
   b. Prasso: Used when an unbeliever does it.
6. Bible background: Romans 7:14-21:
   a. v. 15: #1, #2, #3
   b. v. 16: #3
   c. v. 18: #1 "perform"
   d. v. 19: #3, #2
   e. v. 20: #3, #1
   f. v. 21: #3
7. Bible background: Galatians 5:16-26
   a. v. 17: #3
   b. v. 21: #2

Doubtful Things: Principle Applicable to (Category 150)

I. The area of doubtful things cannot be solved by direct prohibition in the Bible: "thou shalt not"

II. These problems can be solved by yourself by four basic Bible principles given in 1 Cor. 6, 8-10; Gal. 5.

A. The Law of Liberty: 1 Cor. 6:12, Gal. 5:1, 13

1. Directed toward ones self
2. I have the right to walk in fellowship, to serve the Lord. I have the liberty to operate outside the demands of the old sin nature.
3. This is not the liberty to sin. Romans 6:1, 15

B. The Law of Love: Gal. 5:13

1. Directed toward other believers.
2. I have the right to do certain things but I will refrain from doing them (not because they are wrong, but because:

a. Of love (agapao) for the weaker and often legalistic brethren;

b. To keep them from being upset, disturbed or critical.

c. I want to help other believers, rather than hinder, them (a sign of maturity).

C. The Law of Expediency: 1 Cor. 6:12

1. Directed toward the unbeliever.
2. Unbeliever has set up in his mind (right or wrong), for the believer.
3. I have the right to do certain things, but I will refrain because it might offend an unbeliever and keep him from seeing the real issue: CHRIST DIED FOR HIS SINS.

D. The Law of Supreme Sacrifice: Example: Paul, 1 Cor. 9:5

1. Directed toward God.
2. There are normal pleasant things in life that neither the weak believer nor the unbeliever would object too, which I may need to set aside to serve the Lord to the maximum. See categery on the utilization of time.

III. The question of what is right and what is wrong for me to do, as a believer, when it is not specifically forbidden by the Lord, is easily resolved by these four laws. But the believer is NEVER to cater to legalism.

Doctrine of Edification
Principle of Ephesians 4:24
(Category 151)

I. The etymology (word as used when Bible written) of the Greek word (Koine Greek builds the nouns on compounds).

A. Noun: "oikos": A structure, a house

B. Verb: "demo": To erect, to build

II. Three nouns are used for edification:

A. "oikodome": The act of building or erecting a structure, the process of construction (Eph. 4:12, 16, 29).

B. "oikodomia": The result of construction; the completed structure, hence, a complete edification complex of the soul (1 Tim. 1:4). The term "complex" is not used in the sense of inferiority complex or superiority complex -- but of a "building complex", a multi-storied building having certain characteristics.

C. "oikodomos": The builder or contractor, which is Bible Doctrine taken into the mentality of the soul and transferred by faith into the human spirit. The "taken into" part is GAP (The Grace Apparatus for Perception).

The GAP has nine factors: Canon, local church, pastor-teacher, indwelling Holy Spirit, rebound, lungs of the soul (inhale and exhale), the mind, the human spirit, and the priesthood of the believer. Acts 4:11.

GAP also has six stages in taking in the Word and applying it:

1. Communication of the Word (Operation I-C-E)
2. Comprehension of the Word (gnosis in the vous)
3. Storage area (faith transfer to human sp.)
4. Frame of Reference (epignosis in the human)
5. Exhale of BD (application of the Word)
6. Erection of Edification Structure (foundation & five floors).

III. The Biblical Usage of Edification:

A. The Concept of erecting or building an edification complex (structure) of the soul (Eph. 4:12, 16, 29).

B. The Condition of a local church where the believers possess edification complexes of the soul. (Acts 9:31).

C. The Contrast with the gift of tongues. The objective of the Christian life is the erection of an edification complex in the soul, not speaking in tongues. (1 Cor. . :3, 4, 12, 26).

D. HUMAN knowledge puffs up but doctrine taken into the soul through filling of the Spirit EDIFIES 1 Cor 8:1.

E. Communication gifts are designed for the edification of the believer 1 Cor 10:8; 13:10; Eph 4:12.

IV. Synonyms for the Edification Complex:

A. Light: Psalm 119:130; Eph 5:8,9,13; 1 John 2:8-11.

B. Christ formed in you: Gal 4:19.

C. Christ at home in your hearts: Eph 3:17.

D. The fullness of God: Eph 3:19.

E. The image and glory of God: 1 Cor 11:7.

F. The new man: Eph 4:24.

G. Obeying the truth: 1 Peter 1:22.

H. Imitators of God: Eph 5:1.

V. The Prerequisites of Edification

A. The filling of the Spirit

1. Basis for inhale of doctrine (John 14:26; 16:12-14; 1 Cor 2:9-16).

2. Rebound is the means of the filling of the Spirit (Prov 1:23; 1 Cor 11:31; 1 John 1:9).

B. Knowledge (gnosis) through the daily intake of doctrine (Eph 4:20-24; 1 John 2:3).

C. Faith-transfer: Transferring gnosis in the mind (staging area) to epignosis in the human spirit by means of faith. This epignosis or residual doctrine forms the basis of the edification building (complex or structure with five floors) Ephesians 3:13-21; Colossians 1:9-14; 2:7; 3:10.

A, B, C steps can be broken down into six stages, the six stages of GAP--see Category on GAP!

VI. The Illustration: Involuntary respiratory center (IRC)

A. The automatic breathing apparatus is located at the brain stem.

B. Maintains breathing while asleep.

C. Equivalent to the filling of the Spirit.

D. Oxygen in the air is analogous to Bible doctrine.

E. In holding the breath, carbon dioxide builds up in the blood until it triggers the IRC, causing the individual to gasp for breath.

F. However, IRC is non-operative unless oxygen (doctrine) is available.

G. In the inhale, air goes into the bronchus (right and left) then into the primary, secondary, tertiary; then into the tiny sack where oxygen is extracted to go into the blood. In a deep inhale 3000 cubic centimeters of air are taken into the lungs. The maximum exhale runs about 1500 c's.

H. Air remaining in the lungs is called RESIDUAL OXYGEN. This is equivalent to RESIDUAL doctrine stored in the human spirit, which has been transferred from the mind by faith.

I. On this, the residual doctrine, the edification complex is constructed.

VII. The Results of the Edification Complex (general)

A. The Word of Truth is Applied: Epignosis exhaled out the right and left bank of the soul. This is production of divine good. This is the salt and light principle. Eph 4:23,24; Matt 5:13-16

B. The Glory of God is Reflected: Any reference to "light" or "lights" on the part of believers is applicable here. 1 John 1:7; Philippians 2:15 and many, many other passages.

C. The Stability of the Believer is Apparent: Colossians 2:7, "Rooted and built up in Him, and stablished in the faith, as ye have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving."

D. The Stockpiling of Epignosis in the human spirit (a spiritual IQ). Ephesians 3:19

E. The Christian Fulfills the Purpose for which he is on Earth. 2 Cor 13:10,11. The whole issue in the Christian life is edification or destruction. Destruction does not mean loss of salvation in this passage but no erection of an edification complex, instead rubble, stubble--building an edification complex with pseudo-building materials. 1 Cor 3 indicates that the building must have the proper materials.

VIII. The Results of the Edification Complex: Ephesians 4:20-32

A. The Divine Viewpoint replaces the human viewpoint: 4:25

B. Discernment minus mental attitude sins: 4:26

C. No room for Satan's doctrine in the soul: 4:27

D. The production of divine good in business: 4:28

Pages 183-193
Are Missing

C. His Deity could not provide Eternal Life: therefore He became true humanity (God-Man) in order to die. Heb. 2:14-15.

D. God will share His Eternal Life with believers. John 10:27-28, 1 John 5:11, 12a.

E. Conversely the unbeliever does not share God's Eternal Life. 1 John 5:12b.

VI. Omniscience:

A. God is ALL KNOWLEDGE (Omniscient) Col. 2:3

B. Therefore He reads our minds; 2 Tim. 2:19. He knows who is born again and who is not.

C. God does not use His Omniscience to be unfair. Ex. Pharaoh and Judah.

D. Therefore Romans 8:28; God, in His Omniscience, works all things (good and bad) together for the good of those who belong to Him.

E. Knowledge is imparted to the believer through the Word (1 Cor. 2:16, Heb. 4:12) by the Holy Spirit. 1 Cor. 2:9-12, 2 Tim. 2:15.

VII. Omnipresence:

A. God is everywhere at the same time. Prov. 15:3.

B. We cannot hide ourselves or our sins from God. Psalm 139:7-12.

C. We can faith-rest any situation because of God's omnipresence. Matt. 28:20, "Lo, I am with you alway . . ."

VIII. Omnipotence:

A. God is limitless in ability and authority. Matt. 28:18

B. He upholds all things by the Word of His power. Heb. 1:3

C. He has power to save. Phase 1: Heb. 7:25

D. He has power to keep. Phase 2: 1 Peter 1:5

E. He has power to rise in resurrection: Phase 3: 1 Cor. 15:43.

F. He will share His power with the believer. Phil. 4:13

IX. Immutability:

A. He is neither capable of, nor susceptible, to change. Mat. 3:6a, Heb. 13:8.

B. God (Trinity) is always all of the characteristics in the Essence Box.

C. Because He is immutable He always keeps His promises.

D. Immutability + Omnipotence = faithfulness.

E. When we read that God repented or changed His mind (Anthropopathism) that doesn't mean that God has changed, but that people have changed and that God must treat them differently.

X. Veracity:

A. Definition: He is perfect truthfulness, there never is a time when He is in error.

B. God cannot lie.

1. Titus 1:2, " . . . which God, that cannot lie."
2. Heb. 6:18, " . . . impossible for God to lie."

C. His veracity (truth) is eternal.

Psalm 117:2, " . . . truth of the Lord endureth forever."

D. Veracity in salvation. John 14:6

"I am the way, the TRUTH, and the life . . ."

E. We can depend upon His veracity to sustain us. Psalm 91:4, "His truth . . . shield and buckler.

F. His veracity provides truth in doctrine.

Essence Applied: Justice
Jesus Christ as Judge
(Category 158)

1. Jesus Christ is God.
2. He is +R and cannot be unrighteous, unfair.
3. He is Justice, it is impossible for Him to render an incorrect decision. Therefore He is absolute law.
4. He is Love. His love gives the basis for compassion in the law, without violating the law.
5. He is Omniscient - knows all the facts always.
6. He is Omnipresent, therefore He is a personal witness in every case.
7. He is Immutable, so His judgments never vary or change. They are always compatible with His character.

Essence Applied: Love
(Category 159)

1. God's love is perfect, even as God is perfect. Psalm 18:30
2. Divine love comes from God and is based on His essence.
3. He is Sovereign and He CHOSE to love the human race.
4. He is +R and therefore His love is perfect.
5. He is Justice and therefore His love is never unfair.
6. He is Eternal Life and Immutability - He never changes His love
7. He is OMNISCIENCE - He loves us even though He knows what we are thinking.
8. He is Omnipresent: He knows what we are doing and He still loves us.
9. He is Omnipotent: He has the ability to make us realize and understand His love.
10. He is Veracity: He is honest in His love toward us.

Essence Revealed
(Category 160)

I. Like all colours in light are not manifest at the same time, so all characteristics of God are not manifest at one time.

II. Light spectrum:

A. All light is pure white.

B. Light also has all colors. The only time you see color is when the light strikes something.

C. When you are wearing red, yellow and blue are absorbed, red is reflected.

D. When you are wearing yellow, blue and red are absorbed, yellow is reflected.

E. When you are wearing blue, red and yellow are absorbed, blue is reflected.

F. If all light is reflected, you have white.

G. If all light is absorbed, you have black.

III. Characteristics of God are rarely all manifested at one time, just as the various colors of light may not all be manifested at the same time. Example:

A. Salvation: Sovereignty, love and eternal life.

B. Propitiation: Sovereignty, Righteousness, Justice, Love and Eternal Life.

C. Judgment (unbeliever): Sovereignty
Righteousness
Justice
Omniscience
Omnipresence
Immutability
Veracity

D. Faithfulness of God: Love
Immutability
Veracity

E. Divine Decrees: God's Plan: Sovereignty
Omniscience

All, but these two specifically

Eternal Decrees
(Category 161)

I. Doctrine of the Decree:

All of God's acts are the result of a Divine Plan made sometime in eternal ages past, as declared in Scripture.

A. The Decree is given in Psalm 2:7.
B. The Eternal Purpose is given in Eph. 1:11, 3:11.
C. Acts 2:23, "Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God . . .," indicates a CONFERENCE in eternity past.

II. The Conference in Eternity Past:

A. John 5:20, 8:26, 10:18b, Psalm 2:7 and Psalm 110:1 all reveal that three members of the Godhead were present and that the plan was discussed with them.

B. In Psalm 40:8, Heb. 10:7-8, Jesus speaks of doing the will of the Father, indicating that God the Father is the Author or Planner of the universe and all that is in it; and that the Lord Jesus Christ was there when planned.

III. The Plan:

A. The plan is perfect, even as its author is perfect. Psalm 18:30.

B. The plan is summed up by one word: Grace. Eph. 2:4-9

C. Plan is centered in a person, the Lord Jesus Christ. Eph. 1:4-7, 1 Peter 1:20-21, Heb. 1:1-5, Rev. 13:8.

D. In the plan God conceived of the existence of man and God revealing Himself to man.

E. Knowing man would sin and turn against Him, He planned for the redemption and reconciliation of sinners thru the death of a sinless substitute.

F. The 2nd person of the Trinity agreed to take the punishment for sinful man. Heb. 10:9-10.

IV. The Fulfillment:

A. The plan of grace is progressively revealed and unfolded throughout Scripture until the "fulness of time" came (Gal. 4:4) when the Son of God was manifested to fulfill the Father's plan. 1 John 3:5.

B. Heb. 2:9, "taste death for Every man": Unlimited Atonement.

C. The plan is of grace, free to all who accept: Rom. 3:27

D. Eternal Decrees is the statement (revealing) of God's plan for the human race. (Omniscience).

Eternal Security Approaches (26)
(Category 162)

1. Positional Approach: Romans 8:1, Eph. 1:3-6, Jude 1. Every believer is in union with Christ (top circle). Romans 8:38-39, Col. 2:6-12.

2. Logical Approach: Romans 5:9, 10, 15, 17, 20 with 8:32. God did the "most" for us when we were His enemies and will do "much more" for us as His sons. Romans 8:38-39.

3. The Hand Approach: John 10:28, Psalm 37:23-24. The believer is held by God's hand, and He will never let go.

4. Experiential Approach: 2 Timothy 2:12-13. Though a believer may say he no longer believes, God remains faithful, because He is immutable. The Lord Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit indwell you and He cannot deny himself.

   a. 2 Tim. 2:12 speaks of rewards: "Deny us" (believers) rewards. When a believer denies Christ, he is out of fellowship and therefore not producing.

   b. 2 Tim. 2:13, "believe not": (Stops believing). A believer denouncing Jesus Christ, yet He keeps on abiding faithful--He cannot deny the unconditional quality of our salvation.

5. Family Approach: Gal. 3:26, John 1:12. We are born into God's family and cannot be unborn.

6. Inheritance Approach: 1 Peter 1:4-5, based on Omnipotence. Heirs of God.

7. Body Approach: 1 Cor. 12:13, 21. Christ, the head of the body can never say to any member of the body (a believer) that He does not need him.

8. Sovereignty of God Approach: 2 Peter 3:9, with Jude 24.

9. Greek tense Approach:

   a. Aorist tense: (once and for all) Acts 16:31
   b. Perfect tense: (saved in the past with the result that you keep on being saved forever). Eph. 2:8-9, Col. 2:6, Rom. 8:1

0. Sealing ministry of the Holy Spirit Approach: Guarantee for protection and safe delivery at destination (heaven). 2 Cor. 1:22, Eph. 1:13, 4:30, 2 Tim. 2:19.

1. Title Deed Approach: Jude 24, 25; 1 Peter 1:5 - God will keep any promise made.

2. God's Essence Approach: God never goes back on His character. Romans 8:35, (love) Rom. 8:38, 39; Rom. 14:4.

3. Marriage Approach: Rev. 19:1-10 (Eternal Relationship)

4. God's Faithfulness Approach: 2 Tim. 2:11-13, 1 Cor. 3:4-5, Rev. 19:11.

15. Jesus Christ's work on the cross approach: Heb. 10:14. Denying eternal security is to deny the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ and reduces the sacrifice of Jesus Christ to the level of offering bulls and goats. The sacrifice of Christ abides: John 5:24, Heb. 10:14.

16. Fact of the new creation approach: Col. 2:10, " . . . ye are complete in Him." 2 Cor. 5:17, Eph. 2:6

17. Assignment approach: Assigned eternal life, Acts 13:48 (Greek)

18. How a believer is described approach: Col. 3:12; elect, holy beloved.

19. The verse approach: Passage upon passage, verse upon verse screams eternal security. Prov. 24:12, 14; 1 Cor. 3:11; Psalm 37:24, 28; Col. 2:6, John 5:14-16, 36; Rom. 14:4, Col. 2:13; John 5:24.

20. The Father undertakes for the believer approach:

    a. The Unconditional Covenants: Abrahamic, Palestinic, Davidic. New). See category on the covenants.

    b. Infinite power of the Father to set free, save, and keep: John 10:29; Rom. 4:21, 8:31, 38, 39; 14:4; Eph. 1:19-21, 3:20; Phil. 3:21; 2 Tim. 1:12; Heb. 7:25; Jude 24.

    c. Infinite love of God: Romans 5:7-10; Eph. 1:4

    d. Influence on the Father of the prayer of the Son of God. John 17:19-20.

21. The Holy Spirit undertakes for the believer approach:

    a. Regeneration: Entrance into that which cannot be removed. John 3:4-6; 1 Peter 1:23; 2 Peter 1:4; 1 John 3:9.

    b. Indwelling: Holy Spirit is given, Romans 8:15; 1 Cor. 2:12, 6:19; 1 John 2:27

    c. Baptism: Spirit, not water, by which the believer is joined to Christ as to stay eternally in new creation. 1 Cor. 12:13; Gal. 3:27.

    d. Sealing: Eph. 1:13-14; 4:30

22. God the Father cares approach: John 3:16

23. God the Son cares approach: John 10:11, 15, 17

24. God the HS care approach: John 14:17, 18, 26, John 16:7-14

25. Unbeliever's care approach: Luke 16:26-31. Even the man in hell had a concern for his unbelieving brothers.

26. Angel's care approach: Luke 15:7, 10

Eternity
(Category 163)

1. Very little is known about eternity.

2. The Universe in which we now live is going to be completely destroyed by fire. 2 Peter 3:5, 3:7-13, Rev. 21:1.

3. Vocabulary in reference to heaven and earth:

   a. Original creation: Gen. 1:1, 2 Peter 3:5
   b. Restored earth: Genesis 1:3-31, 2 Peter 3:7
   c. New heavens and new earth: Rev. 21:1, 1 Peter 3:13

4. "New heaven" is residence of the Church, although the New Jerusalem will play an important part in our eternal home. Reason: Jesus Christ will headquarter there and we are the bride of Christ. (No separation in eternity)

5. "New earth": This will be the residence of Israel. This is the fulfillment of the Abraham and Palestinian Covenant. Land (specific) was promised to Abraham and his descendents--forever. The eternal aspect of the promises--brings a new earth in the picture.

6. Three characteristics of the eternal state: Rev. 21:3-5

   a. Jesus Christ will be present and accessible to all.
   b. Perfect happiness
   c. Perpetual newness

7. There will be nations in eternity as a memorial to the Grace of God in preserving the human race so they could be born-again. Nationalism is the basic principle of survival for the human race.

8. The New Jerusalem (which comes from God) arrives as a completed package. Apparently it is suspended above the earth.

9. The New Jerusalem is headquarters for the universe of Eternity and the personal residence of the Lord Jesus Christ.

0. The New Jerusalem fulfills a promise to Abraham still outstanding. Heb. 11:9-10 (Faithfulness of God). Abraham lived in a tent, died in a tent, and was promised a city in the future.

1. The Holy City of Eternity illustrates something of the glory of Eternity. The description of the New Jerusalem is in Rev. 21:9-22:5. Multiply this by infinity and you have a picture of the Eternal state.

2. Angels guard the gates (peon work). Regenerate man (in his position now--and later also in body--resurrection body--is and will be higher than angels.

3. The Eternal State thus is indescribably beautiful.

Eternity: Comparison, Heaven and Hell
(Category 164)

Heaven	Hell
Believers: John 14:1-6	1. Unbelievers: John 3:36b
Life: John 5:24, 29a	2. Death: Prov. 14:12, John 5:29b
Prepared: John 14:2-3	3. Prepared: Matt. 25:41b
Perfect Knowledge: Isa. 11:9	4. Knowledge too late.
Glory: 2 Cor. 4:17	5. Lake of fire: Rev. 20:14
Fellowship: 2 Cor. 5:8	6. No fellowship: Rev. 21:8
Residence of God and Angels: Heb. 12:22-24	7. Residence of Satan and demons: Matt. 25:41b.
Rest: Rev. 14:13	8. No Peace: Isa. 57:21
Worship: Rev. 19:1	9. No Worship: Matt. 25:30
Perfect Happiness: Rev. 21:4-5	10. Misery, torment: Luke 16:24, Rev. 20:10.
No more sin: Rev. 21:26	11. Live in their sins forever. John 8:24
Service: Rev. 22:3	12. No service
With Christ Forever: John 14:3	13. Without Christ: Matt. 25:41
Light: Rev. 21:23	14. Blackness of darkness: Jude v. 13
Body: Like Christs: Phil. 3:21	15. Body able to burn forever: John 5:29b.

Eternity: Eternal State of a Believer & Unbeliever
(Category 165)
(Soul)

1. Man's initial relationship to God is one of the creature to the Creator.

2. God is the God of the whole human race by virtue of creation, whether acknowledged or not. Jer. 32:27. But He is NOT the Father of the human race, only of those who believe. Gal. 3:26

3. Man is a living soul. Gen. 2:7

4. All souls belong to God. Ezek. 18:4a, Dan. 5:23b

5. Man's ETERNAL RELATIONSHIP to God is determined by his response to God's offer of salvation by faith in Jesus Christ. John 3:36

6. There are two kinds of people in the human race: Believer & unbeliever; saved soul and lost soul.

7. There are two destinations:

   a. A place of bliss: John 14:1-3, Rev. 21:1-22:7
   b. A place of torment (torture): Luke 16:19-31, Rev. 20:15

8. The SAVED SOUL anticipates: (Believer)

   a. "a resurrection to life": John 5:29

      "good": The good (Acceptance of Jesus Christ)
      "evil": The evil (Rejection of Jesus Christ)

   b. "a far better place": Phil. 1:23
   c. Eternity in the very presence of God. 2 Cor. 5:8
   d. An inheritance reserved in heaven. 1 Peter 1:4
   e. Reunion with loved ones in the Lord. 1 Thess. 4:16-17

9. The LOST SOUL: (Unbeliever) faces:

   a. A Christless Eternity (separation from God)
   b. "resurrection of damnation": John 5:29
   c. "the lake of fire": Matthew 25:41, Rev. 20:15
   d. "fear": Rev. 21:7

10. The soul of the believer is:

   a. Phase 1: Saved: 1 Peter 1:9, Mark 8:36-37, Psalm 19:7, Psalm 34:22.
   b. Phase 2: Stabilized: Acts 14:22, by epignosis in the human spirit.
   c. Phase 3: Delivered: 2 Cor. 5:8; Phil. 3:21, Resurrection body--no old sin nature.

Eternity: Minimum Knowledge Requirements, Phase 3----- Things that make up our Hope (Category 166)

1. The believer's hope is that we KNOW facts concerning Phase 3, eternity.
2. Absent from the body--we are face to face with the Lord. 2 Cor. 5:8.
3. No judgment (condemnation). Romans 8:1
4. The appointment of the 2nd death is cancelled. Heb. 9:27-28
5. We have a new home, a new dwelling place. John 14:1-3
6. We have an eternal inheritance. 1 Peter 1:4-5
7. No more sorrow, no more tears. Rev. 21:4
8. Will have a resurrection body with which we will live with Jesus Christ forever. 1 Thess. 4:16-18, Phil. 3:21, 1 John 3:1-2, 1 Cor. 15:51-57.
9. "For to me to live is Christ, and to die is gain." Phil. 1:21

Evangelism (Category 167)

1. Knowledge of salvation is necessary to evangelize. The issue of witness is Jesus Christ, His person and work. 2 Cor. 5:17-21
2. Witnessing for Jesus Christ is responsibility of every believer: Acts 1:8, 2 Tim. 4:5, Col. 2:14.
3. Effectiveness and clarity in witnessing depends on the believer's understanding of the last judgment. Rev. 20:11-15, Heb. 6:1.
4. Witnessing is impossible apart from the filling of the Holy Spirit. John 16:8-11.
5. Pertinent content of Scripture is the believer's weapon in evangelism. Heb. 4:12, Eph. 6:17, 1 Cor. 1:18.
6. Dynamics in witnessing include the mental attitude of the believer while he witnesses. Romans 1:14-16
7. There are two areas of witnessing for Jesus Christ.
   a. Testimony of the lips: 2 Cor. 5:17-21
   b. Testimony of the life: 2 Cor. 3:3
8. Reward for witnessing: 1 Cor. 3:11-16

Evangelism
Personal Evangelism
(Category 167)

Every believer is responsible for making Christ known because as a believer priest, he has a right to represent God before man since Jesus Christ is absent from the earth (2 Cor. 5:21). In witnessing you are to MAKE THE ISSUE CLEAR, AND THE ISSUE IS THE PERSON OF CHRIST.

I. Doctrines you must know to witness:

A. Redemption:

1. The human race is born in the slave market of sin and only a free man (free from imputed and inherent sin and personal acts of sin) can buy man's freedom.

2. Only Jesus Christ qualifies because of His virgin birth. When He died on the cross, He purchased man's redemption from the slave market of sin. Rom. 5:1-21

B. Regeneration:

1. Nicodemus was a Pharisee and a ruler of the Jews. He was highly religious, was a "do-gooder" and "hustler" in the Judaistic program. John 3:1-2.

2. Jesus showed him immediately that he needed to be born-again. Nicodemus needed to be born into God's family. You must have a relationship with the Lord before you can have fellowship with Him. John 3:3

3. A person is either a child of God (Gal. 3:26) or a child of the Devil (John 8:44). Physical birth is not enough.

4. The mechanics of regeneration are given in John 3:5. "Water" is the Word of God (Eph. 5:26) and with the Holy Spirit (John 16:8-11) man is regenerated.

5. Faith in Jesus Christ is the answer to the problem of regeneration.

C. Positional Truth: (Eph. 1:6, 2 Cor. 5:17, 15:22, Romans 8:32 ff.

1. Every person living has a position: "In Christ" or "in Adam."

2. The result of being in Christ is life; in Adam, death

3. The characteristics of our position in Christ:

a. It is not experiential nor an emotion.
b. It is not related to human merit.
c. It is not progressive and cannot be improved.
d. It is eternal in nature.

e. It is known only by revelation - the Word of God.
f. It is obtained en toto at the moment of salvation.

D. Unlimited Atonement:

1. When Christ died, He died for the sins of the whole world so that everyone might be saved. However the individual must exercise positive volition in Christ.

2. Our responsibility is to appropriate what He did by faith (Rom. 5:6, 1 Tim. 2:6, 4:10, Titus 2:11, Heb. 2:9, 2 Peter 2:1, 1 John 2:2).

E. Impuration:

1. 2 Cor. 3, 4 shows that every believer is a minister and has the responsibility of witnessing.

2. 2 Cor. 5:21 is a summary of salvation. God the Father made God the Son to be sin on our behalf, that we might be made the righteousness of God in Christ. On the cross Jesus Christ died spiritually (for us) before He died physically.

3. In salvation our sins are blotted out, we have eternal life, and credited to our account is perfect righteousness.

F. Grace:

1. Definition: Grace is God's complete provision for all our needs - what He is free to do for us in the person of Jesus Christ. Grace is undeserved and unmerited.

2. Grace is salvation

a. Believers are to the praise of the glory of His grace and accepted in the Beloved. Eph. 1:6-7.

b. Grace is given by means of Jesus Christ (1 Cor. 1:4-5).

c. Jesus Christ is full of grace and truth (John 1:14)

d. Grace provides salvation (Titus 2:11, Eph. 2:8-9).

e. The more you work for salvation, the deeper in debt you go. Romans 4:4.

3. Grace is the Christian way of Life:

a. Confession: 1 John 1:9

b. Spirituality: A relationship with the Holy Spirit by faith.

c. Prayer: Heb. 4:16
d. Good works: 1 Cor. 15:10
e. Suffering: 2 Cor. 12:1-9
f. Release of power: 2 Tim. 2:1
g. Growth: 2 Peter 3:18
h. Stability: 1 Peter 5:12, Heb. 13:9

G. Necessity of Staying in Fellowship: 1 John 1:9

1. The objective of the Christian way of life is to stay in fellowship, transfer the Word to the human spirit and erect an edification complex of the soul. Col. 2:6, Eph. 3 & 4.

2. This is the basis of power or the filling of the Spirit, for understanding absorbing doctrine, and for momentaries of the Christian way of life such as the fruit of the Spirit. Gal. 5:22-23

3. Confession of sin does not always remove discipline (Heb. 12:6), but the only place to take discipline is in temporal fellowship.

H. The True Nature of Religion:

1. Jesus indicted religion in Matthew 23. It blinds to the truth about the person of Jesus Christ.

2. A religious person is a "tough nut to crack" in witnessing.

3. Satan is the father of religion (John 8:44, 2 Cor. 11:3, 4, 13, 15) and has his own communion table (1 Cor. 10:20-21).

I. Modus Operandi on Debatable Issues:

1. There is a tremendous realm of activities in life that cannot be classified as good or bad according to God's Word. However, there are three laws which will answer this question.

2. Corinth was a good-time city, a "Vanity Fair" of the Roman Empire; there were many heathen temples there containing a bar, a bank, a prostitution center, and the best cafeteria in town. However, meat served in the cafeteria and adjacent market had been offered to idols in the heathen temple.

3. The Laws:

a. The Law of Liberty Toward Self: (1 Cor. 8:1-6)

(1) In Corinth the debatable issue was meant (v. 1) The Corinthian believers knew meat was nothing for they had been liberated from heathenism.

(2) However, knowledge can lead to egocentricity but love builds up (v. 2). Believers do exist who do not have the knowledge that an idol is nothing.

b. The Law of Love Toward Believers (1 Cor. 8:7-13)

(1) Definition: Because of my love for my Savior and fellow believers, there are certain things which I will refrain from doing.

(2) We are to beware (v. 9) that our liberty doesn't become a stumbling block to a weaker believer. Weak believers often saw the other believers in a restaurant (1 Cor. 8:7-13); shambles or meat market (1 Cor. 10: 23-26); and at a dinner party (1 Cor. 10:27-31) where meat was served.

(3) Through the use of the law of liberty the weak brother may get out of temporal fellowship (1 Cor. 8:11 - not "perish"). Actually you sin against Christ when you cause a a fellow believer to get out of temporal fellowship.

(4) The law of love is a higher law than the law of liberty. (The law of liberty is not the liberty to keep on sinning, but the liberty to serve the Lord without sin's domination.

c. The Law of Expediency Toward Unbelievers (1 Cor. 10:23-33)

(1) Definition: Because of my witness for Jesus Christ to unbelievers, there are some things I can't do and have a testimony for Him.

(2) No one is to seek his own area of pleasure (v. 24) but everyone is to seek another's good.

(3) If a Corinthian believer (v. 25-27) were invited to an unbeliever's home, he was not to make an issue out of the meat but to make Jesus Christ the issue.

(4) However, if the unbeliever made an issue out of the meat, he was to refuse it, taking a stand.

4. The general rule: Do everything to glorify the Lord Jesus: v. 31

II. Principles of Personal Witnessing:

A. God the Holy Spirit is the Sovereign Executive of Personal Evangelism.

1. Before His ascension Jesus Christ spoke of the coming of the Holy Spirit in John 16:7-11

2. It is the work of God the Holy Spirit to convince ("reprove") the unbeliever of:

   a. Sin: The sin of unbelief or rejection of Christ (v. 9). This is the only unpardonable sin in the Church Age.

   b. Righteousness: This is a righteousness belonging to a Person, Jesus Christ. God the Father accepted God the Son at His ascension because He had a perfect righteousness (in His humanity). Believers have this righteousness imputed to them at salvation. (v. 8, 10).

   c. Judgment: (v. 8, 11) Satan will spend eternity in the Lake of Fire (Matt. 25:41) and those who reject Jesus Christ share the judgment and destiny of Satan (Rev. 20:10-15)

B. The Bible is the Weapon of Personal Work:

1. Don't argue about whether the Bible is the Word of God, just use it. Heb. 4:12.

2. It is what the Holy Spirit uses to convince the unbeliever.

C. The Believer is the Agent of Personal Evangelism:

1. Every believer is an ambassador (Acts 1:8, 2 Cor. 5: 17-20) and is responsible for the dissemination of the Gospel.

2. Mass evangelism is no substitute for personal evangelism (Prov. 11:30).

3. Paul did not need a letter of commendation (2 Cor. 3:1) for he had led the Corinthian believers to the Lord.

4. They were his epistles or letters of commendation (v. 2) and they were on his heart. They were also known and read of all men. Believers are observed by unbelievers.

5. The believer is an epistle of Christ (v. 3) written with the Holy Spirit, not ministered by the Mosiac Law. They were empowered by the Holy Spirit who indwelt them.

6. The believer is equipped to witness for Christ by the Holy Spirit.

7. We have this light (Christ) in our body (earthern vessel) and we are to give out info concerning Christ. (2 Cor. 4:7)

8. It may be given out under pressure (v. 8, 9) but unbelievers will sit up and take notice.

9. Knowing the future judgment we constantly persuade men. (2 Cor. 5:11)

10. We thus conclude (v. 14) that if one (Christ) died for all, then were all dead; a believer is not to live selfishly (v. 15).

11. As a new creature he has a new responsibility (v. 17). He has been given a ministry of reconciliation (v. 18). Sin is no longer an issue. Jesus Christ who bore out sins on the cross is the Issue. We present the fact that Christ died for our sins. He took the penalty for them, the judgment! This must be made clear.

12. We are ambassadors for Jesus Christ (v. 19, 20). God speaks to unbelievers through believers.

13. Every believer is a witness (1 Cor. 4:7-14). Paul reminds the Corinthians that they should be in the arena as gladiators, not the stands as spectators.

D. Make the issue clear. Give out information about Jesus Christ.

E. Be interested in others. Listen to people and wait for the right opportunity to present Christ.

F. Avoid useless arguments. You may win an argument and lose a soul.

G. Don't be side-tracked by false issues such as "What about the heathen?" or "Is the Bible the Word of God?"

H. Deal with the person alone.

I. Use prayer whenever possible.

J. Don't use technical, theological language.

III. Techniques of Personal Witnessing: (There are merely suggestive use your own techniques--no one method is the "sure fire way". It is always the Word and the ministry of the Holy Spirit that does the work.)

A. Christianity definition technique: Ask people for their definition of Christianity.

Difference between good and bad technique: Show that there is no absolute criterion between good and bad among friends, and then show that God is absolute righteousness.

C. What is the worst sin? technique. Get people to give the answer and then show rejection of Christ is the worst sin an unbeliever can commit.

D. Investigation of Christ technique: Get people to investigate who Jesus Christ is. Either He is God or a liar. He can't be just a "good" man. He has to be the Son of God.

E. Influence of Christianity technique: History gives evidence of its influence among nation etc.

F. Memory Card technique: Place Bible verses on cards and have a person check you on them for memorization.

G. Quote a verse technique: Quote a Bible verse, as from Proverbs, to provoke some thought in a conversation.

H. What is a good Church? technique. Show the Church is not of primary importance at this point, it is the person of Jesus Christ that is the issue.

IV. The Pattern for Personal Witnessing: (1 Thess. 2)

A. The Presentation: 1 Thess. 2:1-12

1. They made an effective contact (v. 1)

a. "Brethren" refers to believers in the Lord Jesus. Paul was in Thessalonica only three weeks.
b. Their witness was not empty ("in vain")

2. They presented the Gospel in spite of opposition (v. 2)

a. They had just come from Philippi where they were shamefully treated, and put in prison, but they kept on proclaiming Christ.
b. Satan tried to cut them off at Philippi. The greatest opposition to personal witnessing is the old sin nature.

3. The Gospel must never be "watered down" (v. 3)

a. It had not been given in deceitfulness of uncleanness or guile (literally huckstering).
b. The Gospel had not been "watered down" or diluted.

4. The believer is tested by the Lord (v. 4a)

a. They were tested ("allowed") by God for the purpose of approval.
b. They had received the Gospel as a deposit.

5. Since God has deposited in us the Gospel, we must not please men but God (v. 4b-6)

a. God is the Depositor and He tests ("tries") our hearts.
b. Flattery is no good. Do not witness for materialistic purposes. It is better to offend people than to offend God.

6. We must love men in presenting the Gospel: 1 Thess. 2:7-9.

   a. Paul was as a nurse with the Thessalonian believers (v. 7) and worked hard. He didn't want to be a financial burden to them.
   b. An interest in people is produced by the Holy Spirit

7. The Gospel must be followed up (v. 10-12)

   a. Behaviour follow-up (v. 10): See from our lives Christ makes the difference.

   b. Verbal follow-up (v. 11). As a spiritual leader and father, he exhorts them and comforts them.

   c. Purpose of followup: (v. 12) To walk worthy of God.

B. The Response: (1 Thess. 2:13-16)

1. They received the Word as authority: (v. 13a)

2. They applied the Word (v. 13b). It is the Word that keeps working.

3. They stood up under pressure and persecution (v. 14-16), opposition, and suffering.

   a. The churches in Judea had been persecuted by the Jews who wanted to wipe out Christianity.

   b. These believers had been treated similarly.

C. The Reward: (1 Thess. 2:17-20)

1. Fellowship: (v. 17) He wanted to see them again.

2. Hope: (v. 19) Personal witnessing gives the believer a new realization of his own hope.

3. Job (v. 19) Winning a soul to Jesus Christ gives job, a reward in time, and also a crown in eternity.

Eye: Doctrine of
(Category 168)

1. The PLAN OF GOD was never designed to please the eye. John 9:39-41, 2 Cor. 5:7
2. Satan's system (Kosmos) exploits the eye. 1 John 2:16.
3. Perceptive power can destroy or illuminate. Matt. 6:22-23.
4. The eye of man, apart from regeneration, shows man's fickleness. Prov. 27:20, 17:29.
5. Materialism feeds on the eye. Prov. 28:22
6. The eye is the means of promoting jealousy and envy. 1 Sam. 18:9.
7. Man's basic nature is to exploit the eye. 1 Sam. 16:7
8. Jesus Christ himself, when He rules the universe will not do so by means of the eye. Psalm 2:9

Exoulsion from the Garden
(Category 169)

1. Scripture is Genesis 3:22-24.
2. Man, after he sinned, did not go to the tree of life. If he had eaten of the tree of life, he would have been perpetuated in a sinful state and could not have been saved.
3. God's grace throws man out of the garden in order to turn cursing into blessing.

Enemies
(Category 170)

1. World: A thought pattern which seeks to build up self and exclude the Lord Jesus Christ. Solution: Stop! (Renew) Romans 12:1-2; 1 John 2:15-16.
2. Flesh: Old sin nature.
   Solution: Run! 2 Tim. 2:22. (Stay in fellowship)
3. Devil: Promotes good in the name of good, not in the name of God.
   a. Religion, legalism
   b. Angelic conflict

   Solution: Resist: James 4:7, 1 Peter 5:7-9, Eph. 6:10-20.

Expiation
(Category 171)

I. Barrier: Penalty of Sin:

A. The +R of God is offended by sin. Rom. 3:23, Isa. 59:2.

B. +R cannot have fellowship with -R. Isa. 59:2.

C. God is perfect Justice, which demands that disobedience against His laws be punished. John 3:36.

D. Justice placed a penalty on sin: Spiritual Death. Rom.6:23

E. Since +R cannot have fellowship with -R, I owe God perfect righteousness in order to fellowship with him. But I can't supply it--no matter how much I desire relationship with God.

F. The solution: Expiation

II. Work of Christ: Expiation

A. Definition: Act of making SATISFACTION for an offense, by which the GUILT is done away with and the NECESSITY OF punishment is cancelled.

B. In ADAM we are counted guilty. 1 Cor. 15:22, Imputed sin is seen by God as -R, Romans 3:23. We are spiritually dead.

C. The penalty for this -R (imputed sin) is spiritual death, which is not fellowship with God.

D. Since -R comes between man and God (Isa. 59:2) (+R cannot have fellowship with -R) the human race owes God +R. Romans 3:23 b.

E. The Lord Jesus Christ took every "I O U" of the Human Race and carried it to the cross on Himself. Col. 2:14.

"Blotting out (cancelling an IOU) the handwriting of ordinances (the IOU: IOU God perfect righteousness) that was against us, which was contrary to us (we are -R), and took it out of the way, nailing it to His cross."

F. Jesus Christ was judged for our sins (-R): Spiritual death.

G. His spiritual death satisfied the JUSTICE of God so IN CHRIST we are counted NOT GUILTY, 1 Cor. 15:22.

We are seen by God as +R (2 Cor. 5:21) and as spiritually alive, so the GUILT is done away with and the NECESSITY OF PUNISHMENT is cancelled, because +R has been imputed.

Faith #1
(Category 172)

1. Faith is the only system of human perception which is non-meritorous in nature.

2. Faith is the only system of perception which will unlock spiritual truths. Rationalism and empiricism will not do it. 1 Cor. 1:18-2:16

3. Faith in its verb form (to believe) is a transitive verb - it must have a subject and an object. The whole merit of faith is in the object.

   a. To believer: (in salvation)
   b. Subject: Whosoever
   c. Object: The Lord Jesus Christ

4. Faith (as far as relationship with God is concerned) has a two-fold object:

   a. In Salvation: Object of faith is the Lord Jesus Christ--Acts 16:31, John 3:15.
   b. In Time: Object of faith is the Word of God--which gives us the mind of Christ, and He is thereby exalted.

5. All of the believing in the world secures nothing but condemnation from God, but one little bit of faith with an object (Lord Jesus Christ) secures salvation. The efficacy of faith lies in the object of faith.

6. Faith is progressive in the Christian life (growth) but non-progressive in salvation.

7. The noun <u>faith</u> is ΠΙΣΤΙΣ.

   The verb <u>to believe</u> is ΠΙΣΤΕΥΩ. Note the same root.

8. To believe in Christ therefore is to have faith in Christ. To have faith in Christ is to believe in Christ.

9. Faith (pisticism) is the only one which will mate with God's plan of grace. (See category on the wedding of grace and faith).

10. A believer can use rationalism and empiricism in his job, for example in a bona fide way. (Rationalism: use of the mind, intellectual approach, Empiricism: use of the senses to draw conclusions) But rationalism and empiricism never reveal spiritual truth.

11. Spiritual IQ (the amount of epignosis in the human spirit) is developed by faith-transfer. See the doctrine of GAP, and its six stages.

Faith #2
(Category 173)

Part I: Eating and Drinking as a Picture of Faith:

A. Faith has no merit in itself.
Eating has no merit in itself. John 6:31-40
Drinking has no merit in itself. John 4:14

B. Just as everyone has the ability to eat food and drink water, so everyone has the ability to be saved. (Ability = God doing the work). John 6:31-40, John 4:14

C. All members of the human race (moral, immoral, religious) have faith. But faith doesn't save. IT IS FAITH IN JESUS CHRIST THAT SAVES!

D. Faith has no merit in itself, it is always in the object of faith that does the work.

E. Phase 1: The Lord Jesus Christ does the work and we believe in Christ for salvation.

F. Everyone is saved exactly the same way. Example: Once you eat the bread (faith in the Lord Jesus Christ) the bread (the Lord Jesus Christ) is inside. John 14:20 with John 6:[illegible]-59. Once you believe in Jesus Christ, Christ is in you.

Part 2: Development of Faith

A. Word: Romans 10:17, " . . . faith cometh by hearing and hearing by the Word of God."

B. Exercise:

1. Using faith-rest in everyday living: Heb. 4:1-3
2. Using faith-patience in everyday living: (The faith of the edification complex) James 1:3

C. Suffering: 1 Peter 1:7-8, " . . . trial of your faith."

D. Filling of the Spirit: Gal. 5:22-23, " . . . faith . . .".

E. Occupation with Christ: Heb. 12:2, "finisher": indicates that occupation with Christ builds faith.

F. Exhale of epignosis from the human spirit: Eph. 3:17-20

G. Maturity: 1 John 5:4-5, Heb. 11:6

The strongest faith of all is the faith reflected from the edification complex of the soul. Col. 2:6-7

Faith, Measure of: Rom. 12:3, 6
(Category 174)

1. Faith is thinking, making use of recycling doctrine, applying the Word of God from a frame of reference. Eph. 3-4, Col. 1

2. The content of what you are thinking is what gives faith validity.

3. Doctrine in the human spirit expresses itself through faith.

4. A spiritual IQ (epignosis in the human spirit) is what gives faith expression, power, animation, vigor, and inner beauty.

5. There is no limit to the amoun of faith you can have, but your faith is no stronger than your doctrinal content.

6. Faith merely expresses doctrine.

7. Faith becomes of larger and larger caliber when Bible Doctrine comes through it--expressing itself and apply itself to various situations in life.

8. Faith appropriates the first point of Bible Doctrine at the point of salvation, but the process is reversed after you are saved - you need doctrine to give faith power.

9. For the believer's life to be meaningful, he must depend upon:

   a. Intake of Bible Doctrine: Gnosis

   b. Exhale of Bible doctrine to experience: Epignosis

10. When we stagger we don't lack faith but we lack the object of faith: (The Word of God as epignosis and therefore to be applied.

Scriptures for the above: Ephesians 3-4, Colossians 1

The Faithfulness of God
(Category 175)

"Faithful is He that calleth you, who also will do it." 1 Thess.5:24

"Calleth you": Refers to the point of time when you accept Jesus Christ as your personal Saviour and appropriate God's faithfulness

"will do it": Refers to the future or eternity; God has a future for you.

God expresses His faithfulness in eight different ways to the believer.

1. The Faithfulness of God to FORGIVE SIN: 1 John 1:9

   "If we confess our sin HE IS FAITHFUL and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness."

2. The Faithfulness of keeping us saved - eternal security - 2 Tim. 2:13.

   "If we believe not, YET HE ABIDETH FAITHFUL: He cannot deny Himself."

3. The Faithfulness of God in stabilizing us: 2 Thess. 3:3

   "But the Lord is faithful, who shall stablish you, and keep you from evil."

4. The Faithfulness of God to us in times of pressure: 1 Cor. 10:13

   "There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but GOD IS FAITHFUL, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it."

5. The Faithfulness of God in providing for us under the partnership of Christ: 1 Cor. 1:9

   "GOD IS FAITHFUL, by whom ye were called into the fellowship of His Son, Jesus Christ our Lord."

6. The Faithfulness of God in keeping His promise to us: Heb. 10:23

   "Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; for HE IS FAITHFUL that promised."

7. The Faithfulness of God to us in suffering: 1 Peter 4:19

   "Wherefore let them that suffer according to the will of God commit the keeping of their souls to him in well doing, as unto a FAITHFUL CREATOR."

8. The Faithfulness of God in providing for the believers eternal future: 1 Thess. 5:24

   "Faithful is He that calleth you, who also will do it."

Faith-Rest Technique
(Category 176)

I. Part 1:

A. Definition: Knowing, believing and applying promises and doctrines. Isa. 33:6, "And wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times." Faith rest is based on daily doctrinal intake, and application of epignosis to experience.

B. Basis of faith-rest is:

1. Positional Truth: Top circle of illustration. Rom. 4:1

2. You must be in fellowship: Bottom circle. Romans 14:23b, " . . . for whatsoever is not of faith is sin."

C. Principle of the Faith-Rest Technique:

1. The faith-rest technique is from God who is perfect.
2. No human deed or work can be added to perfect Divine provision.
3. Hence the believer must cease from his deeds, human good, and enter tinto a rest where he does no work. (Holy Spirit) does the work). Heb. 3:7-4:16
4. This requires faith, not works.
5. Faith is the absence of human merit. Merit is the object of faith.
6. Under faith-rest the object of faith is doctrines, principles, promises.
7. Mechanically these doctrines, promises, principles must be mixed with faith: Heb. 4:1-2

II. Part 2:

A. Promises: 7,000 for use in time (while the believer is on the earth).

1. 1 Peter 5:7, "Casting all your care upon Him; for He careth for you."

2. Isaiah 41:10, "Fear thou not; for I am with thee; be not dismayed; for I am thy God: I will strengthen thee; yea, I will help thee; yea I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness."

3. Psalm 55:22, "Cast thy burden upon the Lord, and He shall sustain thee; He shall never suffer the righteous to be moved."

4. Psalm 56:3, "What time I am afraid, I will trust in Thee"

5. Psalm 4:8, "I will both lay me down in peace and sleep; for Thou, Lord, only makest me dwell in safety."

B. Therefore run the Word through the six stages of GAP:

1. Get under the teaching of a Communicator of Bible doctrine who uses isagogics, categories, and exegesis. If one is not available locally get tapes of one who does. Develop discernment in regard to pastor-teachers.

2. Comprehend the Word as gnosis in the mind. Ephesians 3:18. The mind is used as a staging area in this 2nd stage.

3. Faith-transfer: The gnosis in the mind is believed, and transferred to the human spirit by faith. Eph. 3:18

4. Frame of Reference: This results in the recycling of epignosis, the use of the Word in the life. Eph. 3:19 " . . . filled with all the fulness of God."

5. Application: Because of epignosis in the human spirit and the resultant frame of reference, the Word of God can be applied, exhaled toward God and man.

6. As the previous stages function through the filling of the Spirit and the operation of faith, an inner building is constructed. Built on epignosis, it has five stories, grace orientation, relaxed mental attitude, inner happiness, capacity to love, and mastery of the details of life.

Use of the Word thus gives inner rest, the desire to study the Word more and more, we continue to find that the Lord has provided everything we need.

C. So:

1. 1 Thess. 5:18, "In everything give thanks; for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you."

2. Philippians 1:6, "Being confident of this very thing, that He which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ."

Because:

3. Romans 8:28, "And WE KNOW that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to His purpose."

4. 1 Sam. 17:47b, " . . . the battle is the Lords . . ."

I. Doctrines:

A. Essence of God: Basis for believing.

1. Positional Truth (Eternal Security) Phase 1 (salvation)
2. Spirituality: Phase 2 (Christian life)
3. Eschatology: Phase 3 (Eternity)

B. Example of applying "Essence" to any situation:

1. Sovereignty: The F-R is in His plan.

2. Righteousness: God is perfect goodness--any trial will be good for me.

3. Justice: God's plan for me is fair--always.

4. Love: Every situation is in the realm of His love for me.

5. Eternal life: His life is shared through every experience: John 14:19, " . . . because I live, ye shall live also."

6. Omniscience: He knows about my trial, or suffering before it ever happened.

7. Omnipresence: Matt. 28:2, " . . . lo, I am with you always." He is everywhere, therefore He is always with ME.

8. Omnipotence: He has the power to do whatever He wants to.

9. Immutability: He never changes toward me. All of these characteristics remain the same all of the time.

10. Veracity: He is the perfect truth, so what He says in His Word is true, and what I apply in my life is true.

IV. Application:

A. Principle Passage: Hebrews 3:7-19

B. Application: Exodus 17, Numbers 20

Faith: Synonyms
(Category 177)

I. There are a number of synonyms found in the Scripture for faith, five of which are common: Emphasize non-meritorious principle:

A. "Call upon the Lord": Joel 2:32, Acts 2:12, Rom. 10:13

B. "Drink and eat": Communion service. 1 Cor. 11:24-26

C. "Come": Matt. 11:28

D. "As received Him": Receiving a gift. John 1:12

E. "Obeyed the Gospel": Romans 10:16

II. You will find where salvation is being discussed, the word "believe" (or a synonym for faith) in context. 1 John 5:..

Faith: Wedding Between Grace and Faith
(Category 178)

I. Grace and Faith are like the right man and the right woman in Category 2 love (love between man and woman). Doctrine of Adam's rib. Gen. 2:21-25

A. Grace is analogous to the right man.

B. Faith is analogous to the right woman.

II. The Relationship of Grace to Faith is as follows:

A. Grace initiates: John 1:14, 1:17

B. Faith responds: Eph. 2:8-9

III. Just as there is only one man for one woman so then in the analogy grace is the only one for faith, and faith is the only one for grace.

IV. Grace and Faith meet at the Cross by God's Design and marry. Eph. 2:8-9

A. God has designed the right time for the right man and the right woman to meet. (Based on grace), not the BIG SEARCH.

B. And God has designed the right place for grace and faith to meet, and that place is the cross.

C. Just as marriage is the framework of category 2 love, so the cross is the framework for grace and faith. 1 John 5:4-5.

V. At the Cross, Faith responds to Grace resulting in the salvation of the one believing. Ephesians 2:8-9. This union results in a spiritual conception--the new birth. Grace initiates (God's plan--person and work of Christ) and faith responds.

VI. As in marriage--the wife keeps on responding to the husband, so in the Christian way of life faith keeps on responding to grace.

A. You were married on a faith principle: Also saved on a faith principle.

B. You kept enjoying marriage by faith--keep on walking by faith.

C. Now after you have become a believer by faith in Christ, it is faith-rest, transferring gnosis to the human spirit by faith. Col. 2:6, 2 Cor. 5:7, Heb. 11:6.

VII. Faith Excludes Works or Human Merit

A. When you marry the wrong woman, it is hell on earth--and that is exactly what happens when you marry works.

B. Works is the harem that faith will not tolerate (spiritual adultery).

1. Believe and (Won't save)
2. Confess and (Won't allow growth)

Bringing works to grace results in spiritual idiocy. And the only thing you will understand is prophecy, and you will be cross-eyed spiritually.

C. The harem of works is human good or legalism. Gal. 2:16 (Harem is the works of the law).

1. So faith excludes works or human merit, works is the wrong woman, works is the harem that faith will not tolerate. Eph. 2:9, Titus 3:5.

2. For example, "Believe and be baptised" would be bringing a human work to salvation. It is, "having believed, be baptised."

3. In spirituality, it would be a believer confessing and being sorry for his sin, confessing and vowing to never do it again, confessing and asking forgiveness--. These are works which add to God's grace application. 1 John 1:9.

D. Grace is a true man---when a smelly human work tries to make union (harem operation) he steps aside--grace is only made for faith.

VIII. Since Faith is the ONLY true responder to grace, faith transfers gnosis (knowledge) in the mind to epignosis (full knowledge) in the human spirit. Eph. 3:17

IX. Grace and Faith become one at the cross, therefore they must live together in Phase 2.

A. If you are born-again, then once in your life you have tasted grace.

B. Divorce is when the believer switches to the works concept, instead of the grace concept.

X. Therefore all other works concepts of perception are excluded:

A. Rationalism: Intellectual approach--use of logic, academic approach based on reason alone. Liberalism---religion.

B. Empiricism: The five senses approach: Seeing is believing. As Thomas--if I can touch Christ, I'll believe it is Christ. Pentecostalism--the tongues movement today.

Works is to grace what scar tissue is to the lungs of soul.

C. Faith: The only bona fide method of perception.

XI. The Marriage of Grace and Faith at the Cross Demands Production in Phase 2:

A. When grace and faith acts on a promise--that produces full knowledge--and God labels it true lasting production.

B. The continual use of faith--to God's grace plan causes continual conception in Phase 2 (the Christian way of life) in the human spirit.

C. Therefore the responder--which is faith--transfers that doctrine from the mind to the spirit--here doctrine conceives and becomes epignosis.

1. Gnosis (head knowledge) does not produce
2. Epignosis (full knowledge in the human spirit) does produce.

XII. This Conception in the Human Spirit leads to four kinds of Children and removes one type of offspring:

A. First Child: Frame of reference children. Cycling of epignosis from the human spirit to the mind--doctrine is built on doctrine.

B. Application Children: Epignosis is exhaled out the right bank and left bank of the soul, toward God and toward others.

C. Eyesight Children: Epignosis gives sight to the soul. See God with the eyes of faith.

D. Edification Complex Children:

On residual doctrine is built the following structure:

1. Grace Orientation
2. Inner happiness
3. Mental attitude love (Relaxed mental attitude)
4. Capacity to love in all three categories
5. Mastery of the Details of life.

All of point 12 are developed from such passages as Col. 1, Eph. 3 & 4, 1 Cor. 1 & 2, and other passages.

D. Scar Tissue Children Removed:

A Point to Ponder:

Conception cannot take place in your mind, if conception could take place in your mind you could use human IQ plus divine IQ and there is only one type of IQ in the Christian life--that is epignosis in the human spirit--it is never your genius, your human ability, or talent.

You can use your human mind under the filling of the Spirit to do you job if it calls for rationalism or empiricism, but you cannot use your human mind for anything like turning gnosis to epignosis. You human mind is only a staging area, a transfer area. You may have the highest IQ in town and be the sorriest believer in the area.

Family: God's Provision
(Category 179)

I. God's Attitude and Will toward the Family:

A. God's attitude toward the human race is grace. He has provided for them what they do not earn or deserve. Salvation: John 3:16.

B. The family is a Divine Institution provided for the whole human race by God, the institution set up for the raising and training of children.

C. It was instituted by God and blessed. Gen. 1:28

D. Marriage, DI #2, the institution set up for the establishment of a home for the family, was founded on love (a mental attitude), and so was the family, DI #3. Gen. 2:22-24, Eph. 5:28-33.

II. Family Inter-relationships:

A. Children are a blessing, (Gen. 4:1, Psalm 127:3-5), but often they are a headache because of failure on the part of the parents and/or children to be obedient to the instructions in the Word. Prov. 17:21, 23:24.

B. One of the most common problems in the home is that of rebellion and resentment, problems of mental attitudes.

C. There is a bona fide, independent use of volition on the part of a maturing adolescent, tempered with a mental attitude respect toward parents and use of good judgment.

Example: Dating a boy, or girl who is a believer, and/or a believer learning Bible Doctrine and the parents do not like his or her personality, but the young people are compatible in the realm of personality. Therefore in using their own volition, they should show their mental attitude respect openly.

D. The key to better understanding the home is the proper Mental Attitude of parents and children.

E. Both parents and children must face this problem and seek a solution in order that harmony might prevail so that your children may be a lump in your throat and not a pain in your neck.

F. The proper mental attitude in the home and elsewhere comes through the filling of the Holy Spirit and the knowledge of doctrine.

G. The Christian Way of Life (in the home and outside the home) is a supernatural way of life (Rom. 8:2) which cannot be lived apart from the control of the Holy Spirit. Rom. 7:6b.

Family: Responsibility of Children
(Category 180)

I. Toward God:

A. Children are responsible to make a decision regarding salvation. God desires YOU.

B. It is only after you have made this decision (and only you are responsible for that decision) that you can truly be a "wise son" (daughter). Proverbs 1:7

C. The believing child is responsible for his relationship with the Lord:

1. Learn the Word (Bible Doctrine)
2. Use the techniques for the Christian life

a. Deut. 24:16 - Rebound
b. Prov. 1:7, faith-rest etc.
c. Eph. 4:16, edification complex as quickly as possible

II. Toward Parents:

A. Rebellion against parental authority is sin. Sin withholds good things from you. Jer. 5:25, Prov. 30:11

B. Rebellion against parental authority may ultimately result in violent death: Prov. 30:17, Matt. 15:4.

C. Child is commanded by God to obey parents (as a minor) and to honor them (for life). Ex. 20:12, Col. 3:20, Deut. 5:16, Eph. 6:2. To honor is to respect their better judgment, their instructions, their advice and their rules. To think highly of them.

D. Honoring is for the duration of a child's life, obeying is not.

E. Children should understand their responsibility toward God and their parents and perform it. The whole package is called appreciation.

F. Children with believing parents should be thankful for them and respond with helpfulness and cooperation. They should realize how valuable this Christian training is.

G. Children are to obey their parents (believer or unbeliever) even if you think they are unwise. This is their responsibility. Trust the Lord to direct you (Prov. 3:5-6) and let Him show your parents that they have been unwise.

H. Heed parental instruction (listen and do). Prov. 1:8, 23:12

I. Children must provide for aged and needy parents. 1 Tim. 5:4

Fasting or Feasting: Matt. 9:9-15
(Category 181)

1. Fasting is taking time ordinarily used for eating or sleeping and going on a crash study of Bible doctrine, or application. Fasting does not gain points with God. It is not dieting. One does not fast to impress God, or to persuade Him so that He is impressed with your ascetisism.

2. He challenged Matthew to follow Him. Matt. 9:9. Matthew was busy "sitting at receipt of customs". He was a tax collector. He found Jesus Christ as Saviour so "he arose and followed Him."

3. v. 10, Jesus was at a dinner party in Matthew's house. Luke 5:27-30, Mark 2:14-15.

4. "Many publicans and sinners" (who had no illusions about themselves or the religious people) came, looked in to see who was there and "sat down". They came in because Jesus Christ was filled with the Holy Spirit and was relaxed. The disciples were with the Lord and were relaxed also.

5. OUTSIDE: 2 groups observed great religious feasts (fasting).

   a. Pharisees: Unsaved, religious, self-righteous.
   b. Disciples of John: saved, religious, self-righteous

6. INSIDE: 2 groups with the Lord Jesus Christ

   a. Publicans (tax collectors) unsaved Jews (except Matthew) minus self-righteousness.
   b. Sinners (prostitutes) unsaved Jewish girl-friends, minus self-righteousness.

7. TWO THINGS HAPPENED THAT NIGHT:

   a. Group OUTSIDE criticized Jesus because--
   b Group INSIDE had a dinner party instead of fasting.

8. The "Disciples of John" (born again legalists, self-righteous believers) put themselves in the same category as the unbelieving Pharisees (v. 14 "we and the Pharisees"). They criticize Jesus Christ and His disciples for being inside with the publicans and sinners and for not fasting.

9. Fasting is using time normally used for something else (such as eating and sleeping) for Bible study and prayer.

10. Challenge here: Are you going to be inside feasting with the Lord Jesus Christ or outside fasting with the self-righteous religious people who do this so they can receive glory?

11. In other words fasting is often used by the legalistic crowd for a points system--a "faster" of this nature is critical of those who do not fast, they tell how they fast and so on.

Feasts: Jewish (Category 182)
Lev. 23

These feasts were only legitimate before the Church Age, before Canon of Scripture was completed.

1. Passover: Jesus Christ's death - the Cross. See 1 Cor. 5:7. Christ died on the last Passover. (one day in length)

2. Unleavened Bread: Spoke of fellowship with the Lord. One week in duration.

3. First Fruits: Jesus Christ's resurrection and resurrection of all believers. (1st Sunday in Unleaven Bread Feast is when it was held): It was a gift offering - Lev. 2:12. Jesus Christ rose on the First Fruits.

4. Pentecost: Beginning of the Church. Holy Spirit indwells all believers. 50 days after the First Fruits. It begins the 5th Cycle of Discipline and dispersion of Israel. Sunday was when it was held.

5. Trumpets: 2nd Advent: Israel regathered, end of 5th cycle of disciples.

6. Atonement: Salvation of Israel, result of baptism of fire. This is Yom Kippur. Speaks of the fulfillment of the four Unconditional Covenants to Israel at the 2nd Advent.

7. Tabernacles: Millennial reign of Christ (7 days). Feast of Dedication, Feat of Lights, Dec. 25, 164 B.C.

Between #4 and #5 is the Church Age.

Fishers of Men
(Category 183)

1. Fishermen must be a desire to fish. Believers as a result of being in fellowship and growth will be enthusiastic about the Lord and proclaiming the Gospel. Matthew 4:19, " . . . follow me, and I will make you fishers of men."

2. Fishermen must be equipped to fish. You have to know doctrine, and be constructing an edification complex.

3. Fishermen must know where fish are located. We are in the world but not of the world.

4. Fishermen must know how to bait a hook. Believer must know methods of personal evangelism.

5. Fishermen must keep out of sight or he'll frighten the fish. Issue must be the Gospel and not our personality.

6. Fishermen rewarded when he never gives up. (Stay in fellowsh

First Advent: Herald of
(Category 184)

1. When a King comes he is always preceded by a Herald. The Lord Jesus Christ is the King of Kings.

2. In Isaiah 40:3 the Herald is called "voice of him that crieth in the wilderness . . ." John the Baptist preached in the wilderness. Matt. 11:7.

3. John the Baptist is the Herald of the 1st Advent.

4. Matt. 11:14 says that if they receive Jesus Christ at the 1st Advent, this Herald (John) will be Elias and not John the Baptist.

5. Elijah apparently was scheduled to be the Herald at the 1st Advent, IF THEY ACCEPTED JESUS CHRIST: but if they rejected Him, then Elijah would be Herald at the 2nd Advent (Triumphant Return).

6. In Malachi 4:4-5 it is announced that Elijah will come and prepare the way for the Lord, as a Herald at the 2nd Advent, "day of the Lord" 2 Advent) indicating the possibility of rejection at the 1st Advent.

7. John is not Elijah and said so. John 1:21

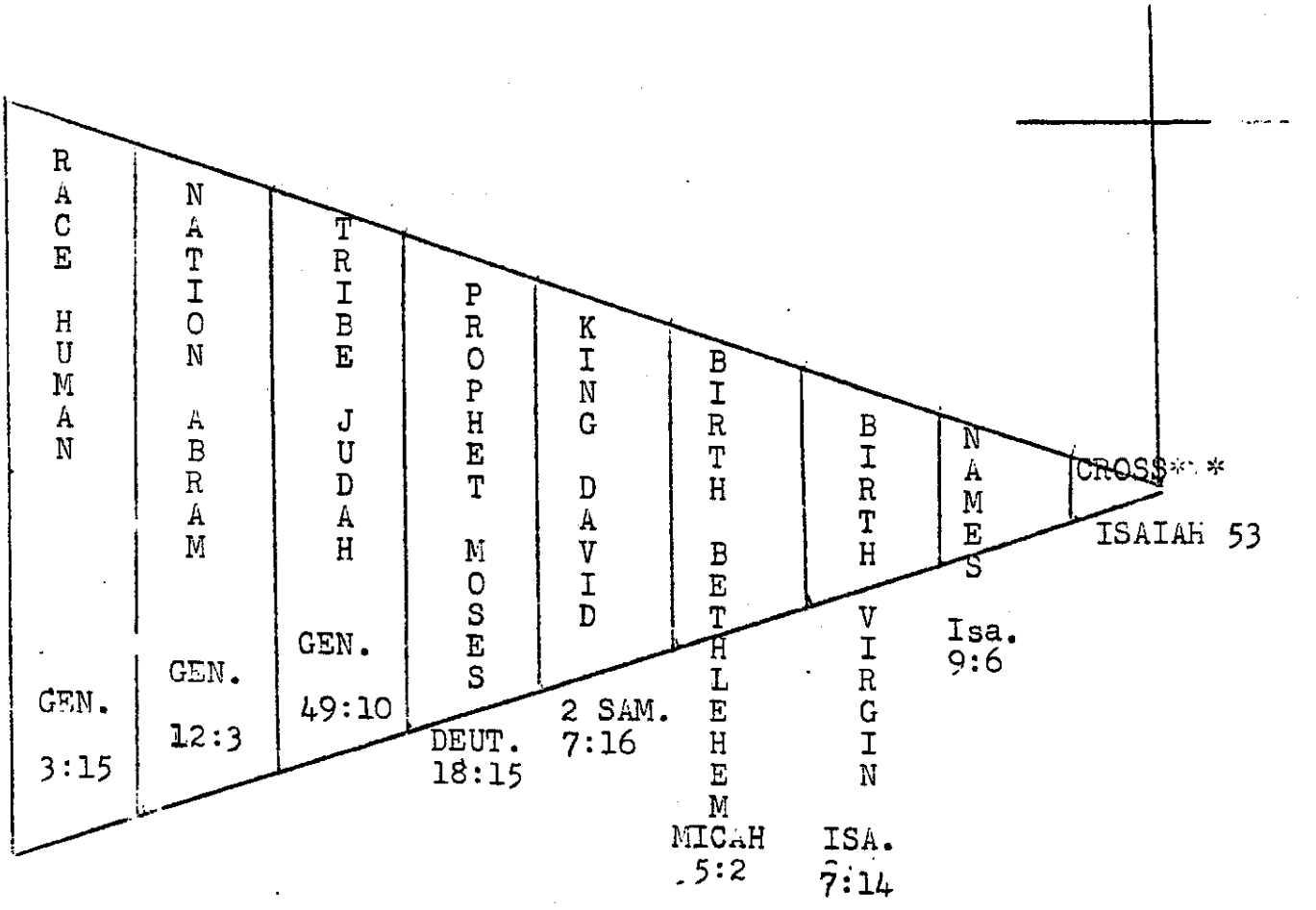
8. Luke 1:16-17 points out that John as a Herald has the same spirit and power as Elijah.

9. They rejected Jesus Christ as Messiah, therefore this Herald is John (Matt. 17:10-13) who took Elijah's place.

10. John said he was the Herald of the 1st Advent. John 2:28-31

11. Even though God is OMNISCIENT and He knew that Jesus Christ would not be accepted at the 1st Advent. He makes provision for man's free will.

First Advent: Prophecy
(Category 185)



Note how the prophesies narrow down the potential One who would on the cross. He would be of the human race, of the nation of I[illegible]l, of the Tribe of Judah, a Prophet like unto Moses, a King like un[illegible] David, His Birthplace would be Bethlehem, His birth would be Virgi[illegible] His names, among others are Wonderful, Counsellor, the mighty God, the everlasting Father, the Prince of Peace and finally He would die on a cross.

Thus He is the ONLY ONE qualifed to be our Saviour.

First Born
(Category 186)

I. Definition: Primogeniture - eldest son's exclusive right of inheritance.

II. First born connotes 3 things technically used in connection with Israel. Rulership, priesthood, double portion.

III. In connection with Israel: (12 Tribes). Reuben was the FIRST BORN, but Reuben lost his rights as first born.

A. Reuben's failure: Instability in the mental attitude (Genesis 49:3-4) lead to unstable actions. He was also guilty of incest. Gen. 35:22-23.

B. Reuben lost the: (1 Chron. 5:1-2)

1. Rulership to Judah: Note Davidic Covenant (David came from the Tribe of Judah). 2 Sam. 7:8-16

2. Priesthood to Levi: Numbers 18:20-24. Levi was equally guilty with Simeon (Gen. 34:25-31) but eventually Levi used the grace of God (rebound) and Simeon did not. Cursing was turned to blessing.

a. Cursing: Never inherit the land
b. Blessing: Appoint to the Priesthood

Levi's rebound is found in Exodus 32, Deut. 33, Nu. .

3. Double Portion to Joseph: Gen. 49:22-26. This became the largest tribe. Ephraim (largest) and Manasseh (Joseph's sons) outnumbered the others.

IV. In Connection with the Lord Jesus Christ:

A. RULERSHIP: Absolute ruler in His humanity. He is the absolute ruler in His humanity. Called "first born" i. Luke 2:7; Col. 1:15. He is the head of the corner, 1 er 2:5-7.

1. He is ruler over the regenerate of Israel in Eternit as the Son of David.
2. He is Head of the Church invisible and universal - Church age.

B. PRIESTHOOD: High priest. Heb. 4:14. Believer's in union with Christ are believer priests. 1 Peter 2:5-9.

C. DOUBLE PORTION:

1st: Son of God
2nd: Believers in union with Christ also the sons of God
1st: Saviour - 1st Advent: 2nd: Ruler: 2nd Advent
1st: Spiritual Death: Psalm 22:1
2nd: Physical death: Luke 23:36
1st: JC seated at right hand. 2nd: Believer in Christ

Firsts of the Human Race
(Category 187)

1. Gen. 2:9, First Test for Volition: One tree. Negative volition was only way man could sin in innocence.

2. Gen. 2:17, First Warning: "Dying (spiritually) thou shalt surely die (physically)" as an end result of spiritual death.

3. Gen. 3:1-5, First Temptation: Satan appealed to their ego. Maligns God.

4. Gen. 3:6, First Sin: Sin of negative volition. Both were guilty, but there was a difference. Eve was deceived; Adam deliberately sinned. 1 Tim. 1:14.

5. Gen. 3:7-8, First Result of the First Sin: Adam died spiritually (no fellowship with God). -R cannot have fellowship with God. Adam acquired an old sin nature, bringing into the realm of existence an old sin nature.

6. Gen. 3:7, First Act of Legalism: Man attempting to solve man's problems by his own works. Sewed fig leaves together. Frightened because -R separated them from God. Isa. 59:2.

7. Gen. 3:9, First Act of Grace: God spoke to them FIRST. He "called unto Adam". Adam was head of the Human Race. God knew where Adam was, didn't need to call. Omniscience, Omnipresence.

8. Gen. 3:15, First Declaration of Salvation: Jesus Christ is the Seed of the Woman. (Descendent)

9. Gen. 3:21, First Salvation for the Human Race:

   "Lord God made coats of skin": God did the work. Coats of skin were obtained by the shedding of blood. Heb. 9:22, 1 Peter 1:18, 19.

   "and clothed them": They were spiritually dead. No fellowship with God (-R).

   "clothed": +R was imputed to them. Isa. 61:10.

   Issue:

   a. Good versus Good: (Human good versus Divine good)

   b. Coats of skin versus fig leaves.

Flattery
(Category 188)

Proverbs 28:23, "He that rebuketh a man afterwards shall find more favor than he that flattereth with the tongue."

1. Flattereth: Causative hiphil stem - means to smooth, to flatter, or to flirt.
2. Motivation to flatter: Mental attitude sins plus the desire--t. have the details of life--produces self-induced misery.
3. Such motivation is connected with the details of life.
4. The person who flatters has no capacity for love; therefore, h. must flatter in order to gain approbation.
5. Patronizing or flattering stimulates ones approbation lust.
6. Flattery is human viewpoint designed to gain happiness through the details of life and approbation lust.
7. Bible doctrine is permanent, flattery is temporary.
8. The believer who lives on flattery is enslaved by it.
9. Believers cannot be sustained or helped by flattery; never!

Friendship: Don't Turn Intimacy into Intrusiveness
(Category 189)

Proverbs 25:17, "Withdraw thy foot from thy neighbor's house; les he be weary of thee, and so hate thee."

1. Respect the privacy of others.
2. Respect the belief of others, you cannot have a woman's love if you destroy her free will.
3. Understand the social capacity of others.
4. Since you are a believer there can be no true friendship without occupation with Christ.
5. The capacity to love is the 4th floor of the edification complex and comes from application of epignosis from the human spirit. This capacity to love (phileo) is the true basis of friendship.
6. There must be a sensitivity to another friend--so that you do not overstay your visit, or be a burden, or cause misery.
7. Orient to your sufferings, do not habitually complain. The 1st floor of the edification complex.
8. Avaid those things which cause the other person to be tense: i. e. legalism, M. A. S, sins of the tongue.

Operation Footstool Introduction
(Category 190)

I. Definition of Operation Footstool: Heb. 1:13, 10:13

A. Operation footstool is an idiom in the ancient languag representing the fact that your enemies are conquered.

B. This footstool operation refers to Jesus Christ in Hi humanity having victory over Stan on the cross, and Church age believers (in Christ) bumping one demon each (one on one) at the 2nd Advent.

II. Operation footstool is prophesied in Psalm 110:1. The following steps are necessary in dealing with Satan and demons.

A. Virgin Birth
B. Cross: Death, Burial
C. Resurrection (of humanity of Christ)
D. Ascension
E. Seated at the right hand of God the Father
F. Formation of the Body of Christ (Positional Truth)
G. Rapture
H. Cleansing the bride (Church) of human good, preparing to return with Christ.
I. 2nd Advent
J. Satan bound, demons bumped.

III. Angelic Conflict Resume:

A. God created angels with volition.
B. Satan acted independently of God. 5 "I wills".
C. God sentenced Satan. Matt. 25:41
D. Satan impugned the character of God: "How can a lovin God cast His creatures into the Lake of Fire?". Human viewpoint does not consider the entire ESSENCE BOX, b only love.
E. God's answer: God created man with volition. Every time a member of the human race (created a little lower than the angels) chooses for God, the character of God is vindicated, and Satan loses the argument. This resolves the Angelic Conflict.

IV. Conclusion: See Exegesis of Operation Footstool

A. When the number of believers (Church Age - Body of Christ) equals the number of fallen angels (operating under Satan on earth) the rapture of the Church will take place. The body will be complete.

B. Seven years later, when Jesus Christ returns (2nd Advent) there will be one part of the Body of Christ to bump each fallen angel (one believer dumping one fallen angel).

C. In this way each fallen angel will have proof of having a counterpart in lower creation (the human race).

Operation Footstool: Church Qualified to Remove Demons
(Category 191)

1. Man is lower than angels: Heb. 2:7

2. God the Son became humanity - made a little lower than the angels. Heb. 2:9, "But we see Jesus (Humanity) who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death . . ."

3. The God-man is made higher than the angels at the point of ascension. 1 Peter 3:22, "Who (Jesus Christ) is gone into heaven and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject to Him."

4. God the Father told God the Son to sit down at his right hand. For the first time in eternity the Humanity of Jesus Christ was higher than angels. (His Deity always was). Hebrews 1:13, "But to which of the angels said He at any time, sit on my right hand until I make thine enemies thy footstool."

5. As BELIEVERS, we are "heirs of salvation" (IN CHRIST) and we are positionally higher than angels. Heb. 1:14. If you as a believer do not understand the doctrine of positional truth you will never understand operation footstool or the Angelic Conflict.

6. Only the Church (the body of Christ) is IN CHRIST, AND therefore higher than angels positionally and would have the right to bump angels.

7. RESULT: Each believer has a guardian angel. Heb. 1:14, "Are they not all ministering spirits (angels) sent forth to minister for them who are the heirs of salvation."

8. The guardian angels are probably the angels that fight with Michael and bump fallen angels at Mid-Tribulation. These would be the same in number as the church.

9. Old Testament saints may be equal in number to the bound fallen angels (the ones that got involved in Genesis 6). They are not IN CHRIST and therefore not higher positionally than angels. Bound angels need no bumping.

Study very carefully the next category. It gives the mechanics of bumping the demons. Check it out with an open Bible. The Angelic Conflict and Operation Footstool pull together all the various doctrines of the church age and enables you to see why God set up the church age the way He did. God's plan is perfect!

Operation Footstool: An Amplification of Church Age Believers Bumping Demons at the Second Advent (Category 192)

An understanding of this operation CANNOT be understood without an understanding of positional truth (our standing) in Christ.

I. The Victory of Positional Truth: 1 Cor. 15:20 ff.

A. In Adam "all die": An individual dies spiritually as he is born physically.

B. In Christ "all made alive": When born-again, individual is made spiritually alive.

1. This builds up the body of Christ--Christ's humanity is seated (1:13 in Hebrews) never said that to an angel.

2. We are in Christ, placed there one by one, BUT THERE IS A CERTAIN TIME WHEN THAT BODY IS COMPLETED.

C. There are two resurrections: John 5:29 (Just as there is two categories of homospaiens (believer and unbeliever).

There are four phases to the resurrection of life:

1. The Resurrection of Christ (In His Ascension forty days later, He was the first MAN to be in the presence of God in heaven).

2. The Resurrection of the Church: 1 Cor. 15:23, "Afterward they that are Christ's at His coming . . ."

3. Then (eita) means next: The Resurrection of Old Testament and Tribulation Saints at the 2nd Advent. 1 Cor. 15:24-27, Isa. 26:16-21, Daniel 12:1-3, Rev. 11:18.

4. Then the Resurrection of the Millennial Saints: Rev. 11:18

There is one phase to the resurrection of damnation: The Great White Throne Judgment, Rev. 20:11-15

II. The Victory of Removed Demons: Zech. 13:2, Hosea 2:14-23

A. Note the tribulational battles: Zech. 12 (Context)

B. Note conversion emphasis during the tribulation and at the 2nd Advent. Zech. 13:1.

C. Removal of demons:

1. "Cut off the names of the idols": (idols = demon possession).

2. "cause prophets": (Unbelievers, false teachers, destroyed in the battle of Armagaddon at the 2nd Advent.)

3. "unclean spirits will pass out of the land": This is the REMOVAL OF DEMONS AT THE 2nd Advent.

4. Hosea 2:14-23--note v. 17: "demons removed"

NOTE: odus operandi not given in the OT because the church was not revealed in the OT. The Church was a mystery--Ephesians 3:1-10.

III. Method of Removing Demons: Col. 2:14-15

A. The Cross: Gen. 3:15, 1 John 3:8, etc. The Fact: Satan was judged on the cross.

B. The Executing of the Sentence: The Battle (anagalous to the cross)

1. "Spoiled": The Battle--the cross

a. Principalities: Demonic powers
b. Powers: Demonic powers

(In this context it refers to demonic powers--i a context like Titus 3:1 it can refer to gover t leaders.)

c. Proof: Eph. 6:12--that in the Colossian context i does not refer to governmental leaders--it refer to demonic powers. Look up 1 Peter 3:22 also.

2. "Show openly": Public display of victory: In analogy, this is the 2nd Advent. Matt. 24:27-31

Parallel in history: The Roman Trimvirate: The victors march--all the prisoners were marched through the streets of Rome. (in chains).

3. "triumphing over them in it":

a. The victors in Rome had a one on one execution.
b. One Roman soldier killed one prisoner
c. Until all were bumped off.

C. Conclusion:

1. Our position in Christ gives us a position above fallen angels. YOU CANNOT UNDERSTAND THIS DOCTRINE, unless you understand POSITIONAL TRUTH and can apply it. (to th doctrine). The believer in position is above unfall angels, this is why we have guardian angels. The believer is also higher in position than fallen ange

2. Our position in Christ puts us into position to jud angels (fallen). 1 Cor. 6:3, "know ye not that we shall judge angels?" It is a one on one, Christ-Satan, believers-demons.

3. Therefore, every time homosapien believes, angels of God rejoice. Luke 15:10, "Likewise I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth."

4. This hastens the day of Operation Footstool: 2nd Advent. Every time a person believes in Christ--it is sure that one demon will be bumped off.

5. Therefore Satan tries to delay Operation Footstool: 2nd Advent.

   a. By keeping the unbeliever from believing.
   b. By keeping the believer from true spirituality.

BUT GOD'S PROGRAM GOES RIGHT ON!

Operation Footstool: Enemies in Operation Footstool
(Category 193)

I. There are three categories referred to as enemies in Scripture:

   A. Death: 1 Cor. 15:26
   B. Human Race: Romans 5:10
   C. Fallen Angels:

II. Who are the enemies in Operation Footstool?

Heb. 1:13 in the Greek quotes Psalm 110:1 in the Hebrew:

"Thine enemies": Hebrew: Qal Active Participle (Declarative)
Greek: Present: Keep on being

III. Death: Not the enemy because "thine enemies" refers to a being (created).

IV. The Human Race does not "keep on being" the enemy involved in Operation Footstool because:

   A. When a member of the human race believes in Jesus Christ, he is no longer an enemy of God but a child of God.

   B. The unbeliever is no longer behind the barrier. Eph. 2:15, 16, "enmity" has been removed. There is no longer a barrier.

   C. The only separation between God and man is now the person of the Lord Jesus Christ. Salvation is dependent upon man's volition. The work has been done.

   D. Human race is redeemed, not conquered.

V. Conclusion: Therefore only the fallen angels keep on being the enemies.

Operation Footstool: Known Factors, Conclusions
(Category 194)

1. Jesus was made lower than angels that He might die for every man. Heb. 2:9.

2. After His ascension and His acceptability in session He was and is higher than angels. Heb. 1:13, 1 Peter 3:22.

3. The length of His session is until His enemies are made His footstool, an idiom in the ancient languages, representing the fact that your enemies are conquered. Heb. 10:13.

4. This was said to Jesus at the beginning of the Church Age, indicating that the Church would be involved in the process of making His enemies His footstool. Heb. 10:12, Acts 1:8.

5. Believers in the Church Age are IN CHRIST and are therefore POSITIONALLY higher than angels. Heb. 1:14.

6. At the 2nd Advent they will actually be higher than angels, in their resurrection body, minus the old sin nature and minus human good.

7. Body of Christ (Church age believers) is being completed on earth by the conversion of individuals and when completed it is raptured. 1 Thess. 4:16-17.

8. Satan and fallen angels are the enemies of Christ.

9. Col. 2:14-15 shows that Jesus Christ triumphed over them in PRINCIPLE at the cross and will, IN FACT, at the 2nd Advent. Col. 2:10 with Zech. 13:2.

10. Jesus is to sit until His enemies are made His footstool so when He leaves His seat at the right hand of the Father, this indicates that His enemies have been made His footstool.

11. At the RAPTURE of the Church, Jesus Christ leaves heaven--to get His church--is no longer seated. 1 Thess. 4:16.

12. At the RAPTURE the body of Christ is complete.

13. Conclusion is that the body of Christ has something to do with making His enemies His footstool. At the point of the rapture a number of believers in the body of Christ = number of fallen angels (enemies).

14. Why aren't the demons bumped at the rapture?

    a. The body of Christ needs to be actually higher than angels, not just positionally: So the Judgment Seat of Christ (during the seven years of Tribulation) is a preparation time for the body to become the bride.

b. God promised Israel 7 more years. These are the 70 weeks of Daniel (last week in particular--seven years). These are the years of the Tribulation, which is completion of the Jewish Age. These have to be completed before the millennium can be ushered in.

c. The demons are operational during this 7 years.

d. They are not bumped IN FACT until the beginning of the millennium, when Satan is imprisoned and all demons are removed to make way for the perfect environment of the millennium. Rev. 20:2.

15. Reason for the bumping is so that each fallen angel will have proof of having a counterpart in lower creation. This solves the Angelic Conflict.

16. The Angelic Conflict:

a. God created angels with volition.
b. Satan acted independently of God. 5 "I wills"
c. God sentenced Satan. Matt. 25:41
d. Satan impugned the character of God: "How can a loving God cast His creatures (angels) into the Lake of Fire?". Human viewpoint does not consider the entire Essence Box, but only love.

17. GOD'S ANSWER: GOD created man with volition. Satan thought everyone would decide against God. By getting man to sin, Satan thought he would prove God's unfairness. Surely God would not send man to the Lake of Fire--not this creature He had made to have fellowship with Himself!" God loves His creatures too much!! Satan reasoned, if man doesn't have to be punished, why should he (Satan)?

Every time a member of the human race (created a little lower than the angels chooses for God, the character of God is vindicated, and Satan loses the argument. This resolves the Angelic Conflict.

18. Michael's angels (Rev. 12:9) are possibly guardian angels of the Church Age believers = in number to the fallen angels.

Now if you are gnashing at the teeth saying, "I just can't get this - sounds good, but I just don't believe it." My word to you is "Relax doc!!" It takes time to understand Bible doctrine. And perhaps you don't understand how gnosis (knowledge in the mind) is converted to epignosis (full knowledge--understandable--knowledge) in the human spirit.

Don't throw out the baby with the bath. Many believers say, "I don't understand it--therefore I reject it." Put this on the back-burner and let it simmer a while. Don't get on negative signals--and get under discipline.

Happy studying!

Operation Footstool Mechanics
(Category 195)

Part I:

1. Israel is under the 5th Cycle of Discipline. They no longer represent Jesus Christ on the earth. This explains the Chur Age.

2. Israel is replaced on earth by the Church - the body of Chr .

3. Christ is absent from the earth, but He is represented on by the body of Christ--the Church.

4. The body of Christ is being completed on the earth- conversi of individuals.

   Mechanics: Positional Truth
   Union with Christ
   Baptism of the Holy Spirit
   Eph. 1:20-25

5. Positionally the believer is higher than angels because of his union with Christ.

6. God the Father said to God the Son, "sit thou at my right har until . . ." at the beginning of the Church Age (Acts 1:11). This would indicate that the Church would be involved in the process of making His enemies His footstool.

7. Deduction: The number of believers (both dead and living) in union with Christ at the rapture--equals the number of fallen angels. Each believer in the Church Age bumps a demon. Zech. 13:2 with 1 Thess. 3:13, Col. 2:14-15, Rev. 19:6-8, 1 Cor. 15:24, 25.

8. When the body is complete, the body (church) is taken out, toto.

9. The bride (Church) returns with Christ at the 2nd Advent. 1 Thess. 3:13.

10. There is no reason for bringing the bride back except to bump the demons, because the bride (Church) is a heavenly people.

11. This resolves the Angelic Conflict: Every angelic rejector (demon) has an opposite number in the body of Christ, which proves that God is fair and vindicates the character of Christ.

12. Preparation of the bride includes: Resurrection body, no old sin nature, human good judged so the bride is cleansed. 1 Cor. 3:11-16.

13. At the 2nd Advent follows Operation Footstool. The demons are the enemies and are made the footstool of the Lord Jesus Christ.

Psalm 110:1. Satan is imprisoned, demons are removed from earth. Col. 2:15 Greek, compares with Col. 2:10, Zech. 13.

14. Removal of demons changes the environment of the earth, making perfect environment on the earth. Rev. 19:6-8.

    a. Number of born-again believers in union with Christ (position) = number of demons.

    b. Demons removed from the earth after the bride appears.

    c. With removal of demons we have removed religion, legalism, apostacy.

II. Conclusion

1. When the number of believers (Church Age, body of Christ equal the number of fallen angels operating under Satan on the earth the rapture of the Church will take place. The body will be complete.

2. Seven years later, when Jesus Christ returns (2nd Advent) there will be one part of the Body of Christ to bump each fallen angel.

3. In this way each fallen angel will have the proof of having a counterpart in lower creation.

4. The fact that Jesus Christ is still sitting shows that the enemies are not YET His footstool.

Foreknowledge
(Category 196)

1. The Omniscience of God planned salvation with full knowledge of everything that would ever happen historically.

2. Foreknowledge is omniscience. The omniscience (all knowing) of God knows everything without relationship to time.

3. Divine foreknowledge however does not coerce or influence man's free will.

4. Both divine and human volition co-exist as an extension and resolving of the Angelic Conflict.

5. God knew billions and billions of years ago the way each free will would operate at any point in history.

6. Such knowledge of God does not coerce the free will of man from acting independently of God.

7. Foreknowledge is simply the omniscience of God in operation.

8. The word foreknowledge in the Greek is:

   a. proginosko

   b. pro: Before hand, ahead of time

      ginosko: Know

      To know ahead of time.

Forgiveness
(Category 197)

1. Sins were paid at the cross. Isa. 53:6

Phase 1:

2. At the point of salvation the person's sins are blotted out. 2 Cor. 5:21.

3. All sins prior to salvation are removed, forgiven, forgotte Like divorce, adultery, drunkenness, etc. Psalm 103:10-12.

Phase 2:

4. All sins were paid for at the cross. 1 Peter 2:24, 1 John 2:2. 2 Peter 2:1.

5. Rebound is an extension of propitiation.

6. F -giveness was provided at the cross.

7. Rebound (confession) appropriates this forgiveness. A belie.er does not ask for forgiveness--that forgiveness has already been wrought. A believer is to cite the sin, name it to God--and th forgiveness is realized. This is one of the first things that a new believer is to learn, but there are believers saved for half a century--that still don't see it and never will!

8. Rebound results in cleansing (experiential +R). 1 John 1:9.

1 John 1:9, " . . . <u>forgive</u>, <u>even cleanse</u>." They were paid for and forgiven at the cross. ALREADY FORGIVEN. 1 John 1:9 is the mechanics of appropriating this forgiveness by agreeing with the judgment that took place at the cross. 1 John 1:9 is the me of cleansing.

9. <u>Divine mechanics</u> go back to the cross where all sins were j and forgiven.

Human mechanics simply go to 1 John 1:9 where we agree with judgment that took place at the cross, where we appropriate th forgiveness and are cleansed.

10. The Holy Spirit is God. God is +R. Psalm 145:17. Therefore the Holy Spirit can only fill the believer when he is in fellowshi cleansed.

Fulness of Time
(Category 198)

Galatians 4:4, "But when the fulness of time was come, God sent forth His Son, made of a woman, made under the law."

I. "Fulness of time":

- Maximum amount of illness

B. Minimum amount of Satanic miracles

C. So Christ's credit card (healing) was effective to the maximum.

D. All legalistic religions had been tried and found wanting. Judiasm was the last to prove itself, unable to provide salvation.

E. Every religious system that has been developed since the cross is merely a repetition of some system that existed before.)

F. Paux Romana (peace for Rome) provided stable condition for His ministry:

1. Police protection: (Crowds followed Him--minimum amount of killing, harassment, etc.

2. Good communication for that day, Koine Greek langua[illegible].

II. "God sent forth": Aorist tense. In a point of time God the Father sent God the Son on a mission - Phase 1 (salvation).

III. "His Son": Adult son (deity)

IV. [illegible]ade of a woman": Jesus Christ took on Himself humanity so that we might receive adoption.

V. "made under the law": Born a Jew under the authority of the Mosiac Law. Humanity of Jesus Christ was subject to the Law. Jesus Christ fulfilled the law. Matt. 5:17, Romans 10:4. Believers of the Church Age are not subject to the Law. However the law is fulfilled (ten commandments) when the believer walks in fellowship.

Genesis 6 Infiltration
(Category 199)

1. The existence of higher creation is declared in Scripture. There is no creation between man and angels.

2. Angels are invisible except when God permits them to take on human form. Example: Angel Gabriel who taught Daniel. Two angels also destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah were visible.

3. Be sure to understand the four civilizations:

   a. Antediluvian Civilization: Before the Flood
   b. Postdiluvian: After the Flood
   c. Millennial: 1,000 years
   d. Eternal: Rev. 21-22

4. In the Antediluvian Civilization (before the flood) there was a tremendous concentration of fallen angels (Satan made a great attempt to eliminate mankind). Gen. 3:15 bothered Satan.

5. One of his attempts to keep Jesus Christ from coming into the human race through a true human mother is recorded in Gen. 6:1-6. We assume that this was Satan's motive for the Genesis 6 infiltration into the human race.

6. Genesis 6:1-2

   a. "men": Homosapiens

   b. "daughters": Apparently an excess of girls existed.

   c. "sons of God": beni ha elohim (Hebrew) refers to angels, never to mankind. Job 1:6, 2:1, 38:7; Use the same Hebrew word. These are fallen angels.

   d. "fair": Very beautiful

   e. "took": Angelic volition

   f. "wives": Plural, most had more than one. This was the beginning of Satan's plan. "Marriage" in the angelic realm was stopped after this (Judgment from God) as now angels are not married nor given in marriage. Matt. 22:30.

7. Apparently angels (even though a superior type of creation) procreated in a manner similar to members of the human race; just as animals (lower creation) procreate and reproduce their own kind.

8. Satan's master plan to cut off the cross was to infiltrate the human race with some angelic males finding human females and procreating, thereby developing a race that was not true homosapiens.

9. Noah's line remained true humanity. 6:9. The rest of the race was infiltrated by angels which resulted in supermen: Hercules, Atlas, Castor, Pollox.

10. God's reaction to Satan's plot. 6:3, "My spirit" = Holy Spirit. "shall not always strive": Make the Gospel clear to the unbeliever who is spiritually dead.

"flesh": As long as man is alive, he has a choice. Application of verse 3 today, man's life span is 120 years at most. Then: they heard the Gospel for 120 years. For 120 years the Holy Spirit evangelized through various people (Enoch, Methuselah, Noah).

Note: The human race gets his old sin nature from man (male). The super race got its old sin natures from the fallen angels, the fallen angels being male.

11. The only people who accepted Christ were eight humans who remained true humanity, and were in the ark, starting the new civilization: Postdiluvian.

12. Result of Infiltration of Angels: 6:4-5

a. v. 4: "giants": Nephalim = fallen, corrupt ones.
"mighty men": Heroes
"men of renown": Supermen. This is the hero phase of Greek mythology.

b. v. 5: "wickedness of man": A concentration of wickedness, along with the destruction of true humanity.
"his heart": Frontal lobe. Mental attitude sins--are the greatest source of wickedness.

13. These fallen angels are in prison now. Jude 6, 1 Peter 3:19-22, 2 Peter 2:4-5. The angelic hell is called "Tartarus" in the Greek. They are not operative now.

14. They continue to be in the angelic prison until the middle of the Tribulation, at which time Satan is cast to the earth (denied access to heaven) and the events of Rev. 9:1-11, demons released from the angelic hell (called the bottomless pit there).

15. v. 8: "found grace": Salvation

v. 9: "just": Justified

"perfect in his generations": True humanity.

"walked with God": Phase 2, plus doctrine, walked in fellowship.

Giving: Doctrine of (Category 200)

Acts 20:35, "It is more blessed to give than to receive".

1. Giving expresses the principle of grace.
2. The principle of grace depends upon the character of the giver.
3. The person gives because of who and what he is; not because of the needy that deserve it.
4. Often the needy are in the opposite position of deserving it.
5. But deserving is not the issue in giving.
6. The issue in giving is your stability of character. Operation grace is the issue.
7. The recipient is the object of grace, not the object lesson of grace. The giver is the object lesson of grace.
8. You don't give because anyone earns or deserves it.
9. The more frequently a believer gives, the more often he is reminded of the principle of grace.
10. The more he is reminded of grace, the more he is orientate grace.
11. Giving depends upon the character of the giver, thus give gimmicks must be avoided.
12. Approbation lust destroys the object lesson of grace.

Giving: Principles of
(Category 201)

I. Introduction:

A. Three Money Problems:

1. Illusions about money (human viewpoint)

a. Money is happiness: False, BD brings happiness.
b. Money is security: False, Only true security is IN CHRIST.
c. Money is not needed--just bum around (hippy mentality). False: Money is a bona fide medium of exchange.

2. Dangers of money:

a. To the unbeliever

(1) Salvation has been paid for (1 Peter 1:[illegible]19) It cannot be purchased with money (Mark [illegible]36-37).

(2) Money causes the rich to put their faith in the wrong thing (Mark 10:23-25).

(3) Money keeps the rich unbeliever from seeking salvation in the right manner (by means of God's Word) - Luke 16:19-21.

(4) Money has no credit with God at the last judgment, only imputed righteousness. Prov. 11:4, 28.

b. To the believer:

(1) Money can keep a believer from honoring Jesus Christ, the purpose for which he is left on the earth (Eccles. 5:10-20, 6:2). Solomon was a rich king. But it crowded the Lord out.

(2) Money can be a course of temptation. (1 Tim. 6:7-19)

(3) Believers should spend their money wisely (1 Tim. 6:8). Investigate carefully before you give. Don't give to groups and organizations that send people to hell. Give money for the glory of the Lord.

(4) Believers do not give into the storehouse treasury (Mal. 3:10). The local church needs money, but you don't give it through the church only.

(5) 2 other passages deal with the believer and his money are James 4:13-5:6 and Acts 5:1-10.

B. The Percentage of Giving:

1. In the Old Testament

a. They gave tithes to the Levites to maintain the temple (Numbers 18:21-24).

b. They gave tithes to the Lord's feasts and sacrifices (Deut. 14:22-24).

c. They gave 1/3rd of their income every 3rd year for the poor in Israel (Deut. 14:28, 29). Israel tithed 2/10 or 3/10 of their incomes.

2. In the New Testament:

a. The criterion in the Church Age is "as God has prospered" (1 Cor. 16:2).

b. The Bible recognizes that a Christian who doesn't provide for his family is worse than an infidel (1 Tim. 5:8). Tithing in the N. T. is never enjoined. Remember the Mosiac Law has been set aside since the day of Pentecost when the Church Age began.

c. "As God has prospered": May be more than 10% or less than 10%.

II. The Example of Giving in Macedonia: 2 Cor. 8:1-6

A. Historical Setting:

1. These were born-again believers ("brethren") in N. Greece (Macedonia). They are believer-priests and have the right to give.

2. Out of poverty (they had been robbed by the Roman Empire to put down a revolt) they still gave.

3. Paul wanted them to know ("wit") the GRACE OF GOD which was given ("bestowed") upon the churches of Macedonia.

B. Biblical principles of Giving: 24 principles of giving will be listed from different passages.

Principle #1: All the true giving is defined as mental attitude, not an overt act. 2 Cor 8:2

Principle #2: Christian giving must be free from pressure and apart from coercion: Free will, volition must operate. 2 Cor. 8:3

Translation, "For I bear them record that according to their ability and over and beyond their ability of their own free will they gave."

Principle #3: They Considered it a Privilege to Give: 2 Cor. [illegible]

Translation: "Praying or begging us with much intreaty they con[illegible]ly begged for the favor and partnership in ministering of the saints." They begged to give. Giving under pressure contradicts GRACE.

Principle #4: Giving Starts with Self and not with Money: 2 Cor. 8:5. They were in fellowship before they gave.

III. Exhortation to the Corinthians: 2 Cor. 8:7-15

Principle #5: Giving is a Grace, a Part of Operation Grace. 2 Cor. 8:7. " . . . see that ye abound in this grace also."

Principle #6: Christian Giving is Love Giving, not Law Giving. 2 Cor. 8:8. We give because we want to (love), not because we have to (law giving).

Principle #7: As Jesus Christ voluntarily gave Himself, we in giving must have the same attitude of volition: Willingly. 2 Cor. 8:9 If you cannot give voluntarily, DO NOT GIVE AT ALL.

Principle #8: Don't let PAST FAILURES stop you from Giving. 2 Cor. 8:10. Certainly there are times when we fail in our giving--if so just pick yourself up and keep moving.

Principle #9: Giving is in Accordance with what you have. 2 Co[illegible]:11. This fits in with the principle of giving as God prospers. (1 C[illegible]. 16:2).

Principle #10: Even if a Believer has nothing to give, it is fully accepted by God, provided you have a willing mind to give. 2 Cor. 8:12. The greatest test of our volition and mental attitude is our thinking concerning the giving of money. 2 Cor. 9:7

Principle #11: Equality: 2 Cor. 8:13-15. When one member of the body of Christ is unable to give, others make up for their lack so there is an equality in sustain the local church, and arms outside the local church.

IV. Personal Commendation of Titus: 2 Cor. 8:16-17

He was honest and headed the delegation to collect the offering for the Jerusalem church.

V. Practical Handling of Money: 2 Cor. 8:19-22

Principle 12: Money given to the Lord's work should be handled orderly and honestly. 2 Cor. 8:19-20

No preacher should handle one cent of the churches money. This is a detail work for deacons (administrators). The delegation was sent to Corinth to transport the collection. There were a number of administrators of money.

Principle #13: All Receipts should be Accounted for to the Congregation. Designated monies should always be disbursed accordingly

VI. Further Principles Regarding Money, Giving in Christianity:

Principle #14: Both the Giving and Administration of Money should Glorify the Lord. 2 Cor. 9:1-.

Principle #15: A collection, offering, or Christian giving should not embarrass anyone: 2 Cor. 9:3-4

"Ready" in verse 3 is "prepared". If evangelistic meetings are held with unbelievers present, an offering plate should not be passed under their nose. Salvation is the issue, not taking an offering. All expenses of a "revival" should be taken care of beforetime.

Principle #16: Blessing in the Christian Life results from giving to the Lord and not spending money for self-pleasure. 2 Cor. 9:5

A. Tithing is never enjoined in the NT. We have two chapters (2 Cor. 8, 9) on giving. Paul was a Hebrew of Hebrews, and if it were possible to Christianize tithings, here was his chance to do it.

B. "Bounty" used twice is BLESSING. Paul calls their giving a blessing.

C. Tithing is a LAW principle. There is not a fixed standard except GRACE. A fixed standard in giving denies the whole principle of grace (prospering). 1 Cor. 16:2.

D. Tithing is mentioned in the Gospels as an historical incident. Jesus condemns it in Matt. 23:23; Luke 11:42, in a derogatory manner.

Principle #17: The more you give, the more you receive back. 2 Cor. 9:6. This is the principle of Proverbs 11:24-25--farmer planting seed. The more he sows, the more he harvests. Some believers claim God blesses them because they tithe. THIS IS FALSE. God blesses because ones mental attitude is right, and knows the doctrine of grace giving.

Principle #18: Giving is a Mental Attitude: 2 Cor. 9:7

"Cheerful" is hilasterion in the Greek. Many translate it as hilarious--not so--that would be transliteration. The meaning is "mentally stimulated."

Principle 19: God's divine essence guarantees these things. 2 Cor. 9:8-9. Sovereignty, immutability backs up the doctrine on grace.

Principle 20: The more money you give as a believer, the more money God supplies so you can keep on giving. 2 Cor. 9:10

God provides the seed in the first place, He is in it all the way.

Principle 21: Giving Results in Enrichment: 2 Cor. 9:11a

"bountifulness" means blessing. The more faith you exercise, the more enrichment you receive. All non-meritorious action

Principle 22: Biblical Giving Results in Thanksgiving Expressed and Glorification of Grace: 2 Cor. 9:11b-13

Biblical giving is a testimony of the grace of God.

Principle 23: Giving also stimulates prayer, love and an admirat of grace in you. 2 Cor. 9:14. "Long is present tense.

Principle 24: The Example of Christ. 2 Cor. 9:15

A. I can never approximate what Christ gave me in salvatic He is the unspeakable gift. No words can describe it. He gave Himself. The cross serves as an example of illustration to greater giving.

B. True Bible giving is the result of occupation with Christ. It is sacrifical giving, not tithing. It is gratitude to Him on the basis of who and what He is.

God the Father: The Planner
(Category 202)

1 Cor. 8:6a, " . . . the Father of whom are all things . . ."

GOD THE FATHER IS THE ONE WHO PLANNED EVERYTHING IN:

I. Eternity Past:

A. Understand the doctrine of eternal decrees
B. Understand the doctrine of election
C. Understand the doctrine of predestination

II. For the Present:

A. He planned Creation

1. Psalm 102:25, "of old hast thou laid the foundation of the earth . . ." It had been planned.
2. Gen. 1:3, 6, 9, 11, 14, 20, 24, 26, 27 creation planned.

B. He planned salvation: Phase 1, Eph. 3:11

C. He has a plan for time: Phase 2: Filling of the Holy Spirit.

1. Issue: Spirituality

a. Command: Eph. 5:18, be filled with the Holy Spirit.

b. How? Confession of sin. 1 John 1:9

c. Reasons:

Eph. 1:11-12, "That we should be to the praise of His glory . . ."
Eph. 1:10, "For we are His workmanship, created IN Christ Jesus unto good works . . ."

We are in union with Christ (top circle) therefore we should stay in fellowship (bottom circle) because "they that are in the flesh (old sin nature) cannot please God." Rom. 8:8.

2. Production: (only possible when F/HS)

a. Prayer: Toward God (attention focused)

(1) Command: Eph. 6:18, "praying always . . . in the Spirit".

(2) Necessity for the filling of the Holy Spirit.

Psalm 66:18, "If I regard iniquity . . ."
Romans 8:26, " . . . know not what we should pray for as we ought; but the Spirit maketh intercession for us . . ."

(3) How? See the category on PRAYER

b. Absorption of Doctrine: Toward self

(1) Command: "Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman . . ." 2 Tim. 2:15

2 Tim. 3:16, "All Scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine (categories) for reproof (show us areas where we sin) for correction (F/HS is the correction for sin) for instruction in righteousness (Positional and Experiential Sanctification - The Top and Bottom Circle.)"

(2) Necessity for the Filling of the Spirit:

1 Cor. 2:13, "the Holy Spirit teacheth"
John 16:13, " . . . He shall guide you in all truth." The Holy Spirit teaches the human spirit.

(3) How? Isaiah 28:13

"precept upon precept": Categories. Ex
seven deaths, seven baptisms, etc.
"line upon line": Verse by verse
"here a little there a little": Every

c. Witnessing: Toward others.

(1) Command: Acts 1:8, "ye shall be witnesses . . ."

(2) Necessity for the F/HS: Power and Guidance. Acts 1:8, " . . . ye shall receive power . . ." God can only use you when filled with the Holy Spirit. John 16:13: " . . . He (HS) will guide you in all truth . . ."

(3) How? See category on Witnessing.

III. For the Future: Phase 3

A. See Category on Eternity

B. See Category on Eternal state, believer and unbeliever.

IV. Summation

A. Perfect Planner: God the Father
B. Perfect Plan: Salvation
C. Perfect Saviour: Lord Jesus Christ
D. Perfect Plan for Time: Romans 8:28-29
E. Perfect Plan for Eternity: Absent from the body, pre
with the Lord. 2 Cor. 5:8

Good, Doctrine of Human Good
(Category 203)

I. Concepts Regarding Human Good:

A. Human good is identified as DEAD WORKS. Hebrews 6:1 (Divine viewpoint of human good)

B. Human good will not save man. Eph. 2:8-9, Titus 3:5

C. Human good deceives man into thinking he can save himself. (Adam and Eve's first act from the old sin nature was human good. Genesis 3:7).

D. Human good is not the same as morality. Morality makes the divine institutions work.

E. Human good is not acceptable to God. Isaiah 64:6

F. Human good was rejected at the cross. Titus 3:5, Eph . . 9

G. Human good is condemned by God and will be judged. Ecclesiastes 12:14.

H. Human good is the basis of indictment at the Last Judg . . . Rev. 20:12-15 (v. 13-14 specifically). Negative volit . . (unbeliever) towards Jesus Christ gets you to the last jusgment.

II. Human Good in Regard to the Believer:

A. #1 enemy in the Christian Life is human good. Human good soothes the conscience and keeps the believer fr n using rebound. (1 John 1:9).

B. Human good continues to be unacceptable to God after salvation. Romans 8:8.

C. Doctrinal basis for handling the old sin nature, and the human good that comes from it, is RETRO ACTIVE POSITIONAL TRUTH.

D. Ignorance of BD + carnality = human good.
Knowledge of doctrine plus being in fellowship (F/HS) = OG.

E. Human good competes with the human good of the unbelie . . You cannot compete with unbelievers on this basis. Yo life is lived through the filling of the Holy Spirit.

F. Human good is condemned by God. Romans 8:8. Human . . has no part in eternity and is therefore judged and permanently removed. 1 Cor. 3:11-15

III. God's Final Disposition of Human Good: 2 Peter 3:10

See Category: Old Sin Nature: Dispocition of Production of

Grace: Doctrine of
(Category 204)

There is a two-fold danger in the Christian life, the careless, irresponsible sins of the Gentile, and the cold, legalistic thinki of the Jews. The doctrine of grace gives the proper perspective t the Christian life, as well as the correct balance. The term grace or its connected terms is used some 200 times in Scripture. It is w to note that we inlawed to Christ, not OUTLAWS!

I. Definition: Grace is the work of God on behalf of man ap from man's ability or merit. (Non-merited favor just doe click with some). Now we go from a working definition to concept:

II. The Concept of Grace: In concept grace depends upon the character of God--GRACE DEPENDS upon who and what God is-- and NEVER who and what man is. THEREFORE GRACE EXCLUDES H GOOD AND HUMAN MERIT.

III. Formulate concept in an Equasion: The equasion of grace.

Grace is God doing the work (Divine Good) and man receives what God has provided in a non-meritorious way. GOD GETS THE CREDIT.

Legalism or religion equals man doing the work, human good, and God is supposed to bless man on the basis of what man does, or can make of himself. Man gets the credit.

IV. The biggest thing God can do for you is to make you like His Son. And God decided to do this BEFORE man existed. The designation of the plan can be called "Operation Grace." Gal. 4:19, Gal. 5:22-23, Romans 8:28-29.

A. Positionally you are like His Son: Phase 1

B. Experiencially you are like His Son: Phase 2

C. Physically you will be like His Son: Phase 3 (resurrection body)

V. Every believer has tasted the grace of God--no exceptions:

A. At least once in your life you came into contact with grace, and you responded. 1 Peter 2:3.

B. 1st class condition--if you have tasted of the grace of God, and you have.

C. Tasting of the grace of God involves two concepts in salv.

1. Reconciliation: From man's standpoint. When JC died on the cross--he did the most for us--obtained our pe e through purchase. Now He does much more--Romans 5, compared with Romans 8:32.

2. Propitiation: From God's viewpoint: God is S, +R, J, 1 John 2:1-2. God's +R and justice (holiness) was satisfied by the work of the Son.

Therefore God is free to love without having to fool with His holiness--Sovereignty makes a holiness bypass, on the basis of propitiation.

God the Father can love you and still be consistent with His own holiness because of propitiation.

VI. *This is most important BECAUSE it gives God's attitude toward you right now!

God is constantly waiting to pour out His grace on every believer. Isaiah 30:18-19, "He is tapping His foot waiting to pour out blessing on you." What is holding it up?

A. Out of fellowship, resultant carnality.
B. And He has to spend so much time chastening you, whipping you--He can't pour out His grace on you as per production.

VII. The believers greatest occupational hazard is disorientation to the grace of God. Gal. 5:4, Heb. 12:15.

A. Out of fellowship
B. Negative signals toward Bible Doctrine
C. Creation of a vacuum--where you suck in legalism, religion, false doctrine, human viewpoint, etc.
D. Occupation with the details of life.

VIII. Grace and salvation is stated as a principle (Grace is involved in salvation).

Psalm 103:8-12
Romans 3:23-24
Romans 4:4, 5:20
Eph. 2:8-9
2 Cor. 8:9
Heb. 2:9
Titus 2:11 :7

IX. Grace and the Christian Walk are stated as a Principle:

A. Grace is involved in prayer: Heb. 4:16
B. Grace is involved in suffering: 2 Cor. 12:9-10
C. Grace releases divine power: 2 Tim. 2:1
D. Grace forms stability: 1 Peter 5:12
E. Grace is involved in growth: 2 Peter 3:18. That is why a legalist never grows up--remains spiritually a baby.
F. Modus vevendi (our whole manner of life is grace).

X. Grace is the basis for Production of Divine Good:

A. 2 Cor. 15:10, 6:1, 9:8, 11

B. 1 Peter 2:19, "For this is grace (charis) not as translated "thanksgiving in the KJV".

Grace and Peace, Salutation (Phil. 1:2)
(Category 205)

1. "Grace and peace" salutation is given in:

Gal. 1:3	2 Thess. 1:2	1 Peter 1:2
Eph. 1:2	1 Tim. 1:2	2 Peter 1:2
Phil. 1:2	2 Tim. 1:2	2 John 1:3
Col. 1:2	Titus 1:4	
1 Thess. 1:2	Philemon 1:3	

2. It is technical in order: Grace always comes before peace.

3. "Grace" is the title for God's plan: Operation grace. Ph[illegible] 1: Salvation; Phase 2, Time; Phase 3, Eternity.

4. Grace is: The work of God on behalf of man. All that God is free to do for man on the basis of the cross (the maximum expression of grace).

5. Definition of grace: Unmerited favor. God does the work- [illegible] does not earn it, deserve it, or work for it. GOD GETS THE GL[illegible]Y. Isa. 30:18-19.

6. "unto you": Dative of Advantage. It is to the advantage of a person to come under the grace of God.

7. "and peace": Inner stability is always a result of grace. Com[illegible] from utilization and appropriation of grace.

8. "from": Apo equals from the ultimate source (origin of grace and peace.)

9. "God our Father": First source. Author of the Divine plan (the planner).

10. "and the Lord Jesus Christ": Second source. He executed the plan and went to the cross which made provision for entrance [illegible] o the plan of God. Phase 1, 2, 3. (Plus R and J were satisfi[illegible]t the cross).

11. The Holy Spirit is not mentioned in a salutation because, [illegible]e the Holy Spirit is co-equal with the Father and the Son, th[illegible] ministery of the Holy Spirit is a behind the scenes ministry:

    a. Phase 1: Mechanics of Positional Truth
    b. Phase 2: Glorification of Christ. John 16:14

12. The Holy Spirit is never mentioned in a salutation but is mentioned in the benediction in 2 Cor. 13:14.

Grace and Peace: Phase 1, 2, 3
(Category 206)

Introduction

A. See the previous category on Grace and Peace: Salutation

B. Entrance factor (1 Peter 2:3). Every believer has tasted God's grace at least once - at the cross. Cross is the maximum expression of grace: God did the doing and man does the receiving.

C. The Christian Way of Life was predesigned, it is a plan. Romans 8:29. In all phases we, as believers, are to be "conformed to the image of His Son." Predestinate is proorizo which means predesign. How this is accomplished follows:

I. Phase 1:

A. Grace in Phase 1: Ephesians 2:8-9; Titus 3:5; Romans 4:4. Jesus Christ went to the cross and became our substitute. All sin went to the court at the cross. All sins were poured out upon Christ and were judged.

B. Because all sins were judged, sin is no longer the issue. The issue is the person of the Lord Jesus Christ.

C. Acts 16:31, "believe" is grace because there is no merit involved on our part. The merit belongs to the Lord Jesus Christ, He did the work. He took our place, became our substitute.

D. Peace in Phase 1: Peace with God. (Barrier removed). Peace is a technical word for man's response to Grace. Peace can never come to you apart from Grace. When an unbeliever responds by faith to Grace, the result is PEACE, Phase 1. Eph. 2:14-18. See Category on reconciliation.

E. Union with Christ (given in Eph. 2:15b, 18) "being conformed to the image of His Son": Phase 1.

II. Phase 2

A. Grace in Phase 2:

1. Prayer: Heb. 4:16, " . . . find grace in time of need".
2. Suffering: 2 Cor. 12:9-10, "My grace is sufficient . . ."
3. Power: 2 Tim. 2:1, "be strong in . . . grace . . . in Christ."
4. Growth: 2 Peter 3:18, "Grow in grace and knowledge".
5. Stability: 1 Peter 5:12, "grace of God wherein ye stand"
6. Divine Production: 1 Cor. 15:10, "labored . . . through grace."
7. Modus vivendi of Service: Heb. 12:28, " . . . let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear (trust)".

B. Service in Phase 2 is Through Grace: Command: Eph. 5:18, how? 1 John 1:9. By being cleansed we are acceptable for service.

C. Being filled with the Spirit results in the production of the fruit of the Spirit, which glorifies Jesus Christ.

D. Additional documentation that the Fruit of the Spirit is the result of 1 John 1:9 is found in "joy." 1 John 1:4, "...your joy (your personal possession) may be FULL" and it is only full when there is no sin in your life - as seen by the rest of 1 John 1.

E. Peace in Phase 2 is also fruit of the Spirit and comes [illegible] no sin in the life, consistent use of 1 John 1:9. Gal. 5:22-23, " . . . love, joy, peace."

F. Grace in Phase 2 is 1 John 1:9 (in addition to point 1). We don't merit this; naming our sin is without merit. We don't work for it: God does the cleansing. THEREFORE IT IS GRACE. NO WORK ON OUR PART INVOLVED.

G. Four areas of human pride which reject grace:

1. Pride of the believer who rejects eternal security - he thinks his sin is greater than God's plan.

2. Pride of the believer who succumbs to the pressures of adversity - he thinks his sufferings are greater than God's plan.

3. Pride of pseudo spirituality - he thinks his human good is greater than God's plan.

4. Pride of the emotional believer. He thinks how he feels is more real than Bible doctrine.

H. Believer's greatest danger is not using the grace of God, 1 John 1:9. Heb. 12:15, "fail (to use) the grace of God" by not using 1 John 1:9. The Believer needs to keep short accounts with God.

I. God's plan for the believer is to be "conformed to the image of His Son": Phase 2 is: Consistent use of 1 John 1:9 which gives control to the Holy Spirit, who produces the Fruit of the Spirit which is the character of the incarnate Christ as He walks on earth.

III. Phase 3:

A. Grace in Phase 3: 2 Cor. 5:8, "face to face with the Lord".

B. Peace in Phase 3: Inner happiness, Rev. 21:4

C. Conforming to the image of His Son: Phil. 3:21, Body like the Lord Jesus Christ, etc., perfectly cleansed.

Grace, Multiplication of: (1 Peter 1:2, 2 Peter 1:2 (Category 207)

1. Multiplication of Grace is God's extension to the believer. Orientation to Grace is man's appropriation of what God has extended, resulting in awareness and blessing.

2. Grace is multiplied to you from the day you are born-again and it will go on forever and ever.

3. God's grace is not like a cake that has to be divided among x numbers of believers. Grace is NEVER divided but is ALWAYS MULTIPLIED. There is always enough grace for everyone.

4. God always has something for you in His plan and His resource are infinite and therefore grace will be multiplied to you throughout all eternity as well as in time.

5. His resources are so infinite that there is no necessity for dividing grace.

6. We can never remove ourselves from the sphere of God's grace, nor can anyone else. Romans 8:38-39. Eternal Security is Grace and you have it whether or not you know it, or believe it.

7. Believer never escapes the multiplying grace of God even though he doesn't understand what Grace is all about. God blesses in Grace, disciplines in Grace.

8. Grace is multiplied in: 1 Peter 1

   a. Election: v. 2a--we enter election through grace.
   b. Regeneration: v. 3a
   c. Resurrection: v. 3b
   d. Inheritance: v. 4
   e. Eternal Security: v. 5
   f. Suffering: v. 6-8
   g. Deliverance: v. 9-10
   h. Studying the Word of God: v. 11-12

9. Peace is also multiplied in:

   a. Mental attitude: v. 13a
   b. Hope: v. 13b
   c. Holiness: v. 14-16
   d. Prayer: v. 17
   e. Redemption: v. 18-19
   f. Predestination: v. 20
   g. Dependence on the Father's plan: v. 21
   h. Production of the Holy Spirit: v. 22
   i. Word of God: v. 23-25.

10. Both multiplications end the same way: Emphasis on Bible Doctrine.

11. God is "tapping His foot" waiting to bless us. Isa. 30:18-19, "therefore will HE BE EXALTED." Grace glorifies God.

Grace in Operation
(Category 208)

1. God, in His Sovereignty, decided in Eternity Past (Eph. 3:11) t treat man in Grace. Eph. 2:8-9.

2. But grace can only express itself in love and eternal life, as love is the motivator of grace.

3. But God does not ignore the rest of his character.

4. Absolute righteousness and Justice stood in the way because s stood like a wall or barrier between God and man.

5. +R cannot have fellowship with -R. (Man is -R) (God is +R)

6. Justice demanded a penalty for sin. Romans 6:23.

7. The penalty for sin is death (spiritual death = no fellowsh with God).

8. Adam and Eve sinned and died spiritually (Gen. 2:17). They we incapable of having fellowship with God. Genesis 3:8.

9. The human race is born spiritually dead - Imputed sin, Rom. 5:1

10. In His LOVE God sent His Son to the cross to die for the sin of th whole world. John 3:16, 1 John 2:2.

11. On the cross Jesus Christ paid the penalty of sin (spiritual death) and removed the barrier.

12. God cannot just love the human race and ignore His +R and Justic .

13. The work of the Lord Jesus Christ satisfied the +R of God.

14. The Work of the Lord Jesus Christ on the cross satisfied the Justice of God, making provision for salvation.

15. So Love and Eternal Life are free to flow through the grace p to man.

16. Now the only barrier between man and God is the Person of th Lord Jesus Christ.

17. If you don't receive Christ satisifying the +R and J of God, then you are subject to His +R and Justice.

Grace: Orientation To
(Category 209)

1. Orientation to grace is knowing:

   a. God treats you in grace because of His character (not because of who and what you are).

   b. You treat others in grace because you are operating on Divine Viewpoint (point a).

2. Blessing from God is based on HIS CHARACTER. Grace is what God is free to do for any believer through Jesus Christ. We are blessed by God the Father because we are in Union with God the Son and God the Son is acceptable to God the Father.

3. It is impossible for any believer to get out of the sphere of grace. You can operate contrary to it, but you can never get away from it: Eternal Security, Divine Discipline, etc.

4. God is tapping His foot (Isa. 30:18-19) waiting to bless us and we turn off the blessing.

5. Grace isn't limited to us but our understanding of appropriation and our orientation to grace is limited by our lack of doctrine.

6. When you orient to grace, God's grace provides for every situation (failure, success, suffering, etc.) in which you find yourself.

7. The believer, oriented to grace, has a mental attitude of grace toward other believers.

8. Believer oriented to grace thinks Divine Viewpoint.

9. The believer oriented to the grace of God regards every day as a gift from God. Romans 14:5-6.

10. God has designed Phase 2 to be lived one day at a time.

11. If the believer is ever going to become productive he must be oriented to the grace of God. If the believer is going to be oriented to the grace of God he must know Bible doctrine, that is the plan of God.

Grace Pipe Illustrated
(Category 210)

I. Sovereign Decision:

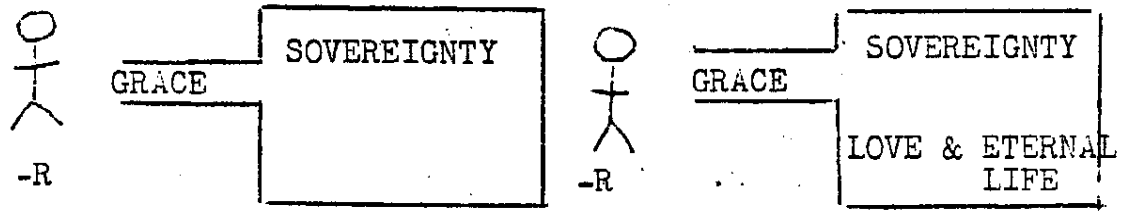
A. God has absolute authority over the universe and has the right to do as He pleases. Psalm 135:6

B. Long before man became a sinner, God, in His sovereignty made a decision (Eph. 3:11) to treat man in grace. Eph. 2: 8-9.

C. Even though God knew man would become sinful, God:

1. Would still treat him in grace. Romans 5:8
2. Would love the sinner even though he doesn't deserve it.
3. Still wanted to have fellowship with man.
4. Still wanted to send His love and Eternal life to

D. But grace can only express itself in Love and Eternal life: LOVE is the MOTIVATOR OF grace.

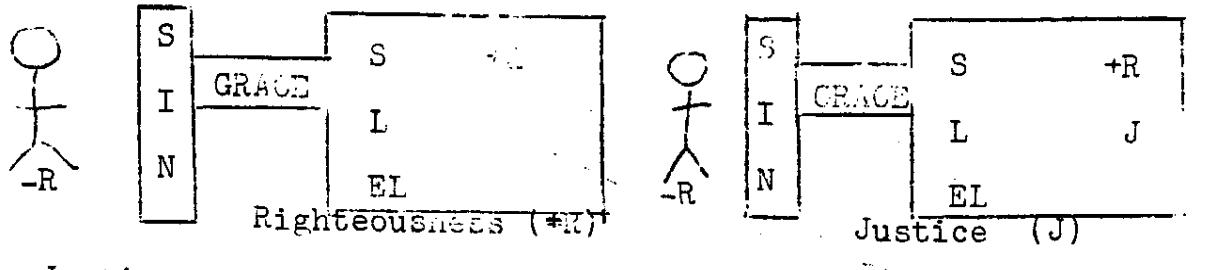


II. Righteousness (Plus R)

A. A barrier stood in the way so Plus R could not go through the Grace Pipe to man.

B. God cannot have fellowship with unregenerate man who is not as good as God is good. Romans 3:23.

C. Plus R cannot have fellowship with -R. Isa. 59:2.



III. Justice

A. God's Justice does not go through because God's Justice demands a penalty for sin. Romans 6:23.

B. The wages of sin is death (spiritual death, which is no fellowship with God).

C. Adam and Eve sinned and died spiritually. Romans 5:12. The human race is born spiritually dead, imputed sin, incapable of having fellowship with God unless and un they accept the work of Jesus Christ on the cross.

IV. Love:

A. Man did not deserve love from God, GRACE.

B. God hates SIN, BUT loves the SINNER. Romans 5:8.

C. Man's sin stood in the way of God's love flowing through Grace Pipe to man.

D. +R and J were not satisfied yet.

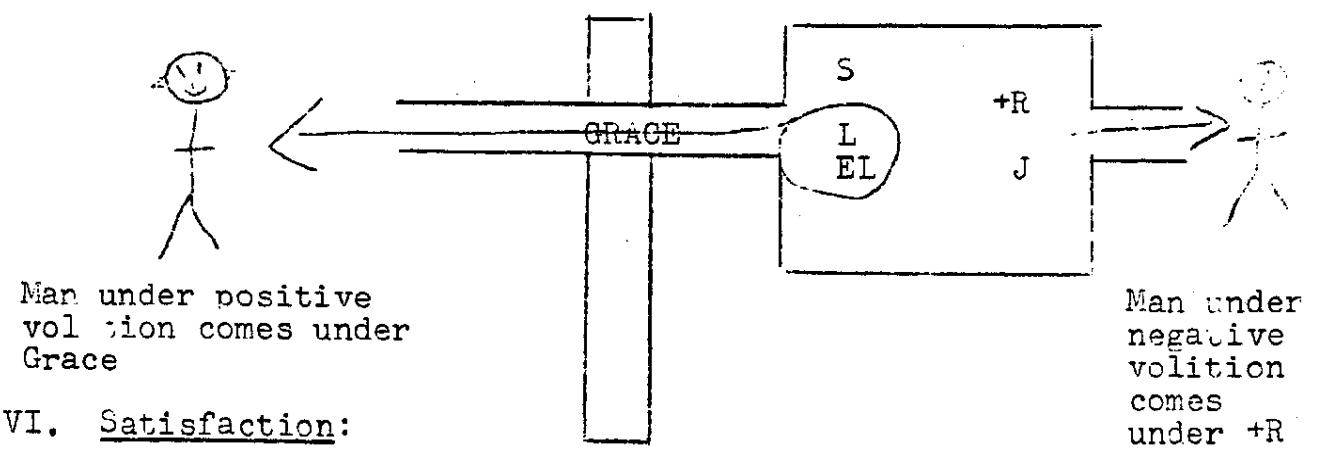
E. In His LOVE God sent His Son to the cross to die for the sins of the whole world. John 3:16, 1 John 2:2.

V. Barrier Removed:

A. The penalty of sin is death (spiritual death).

B. The Lord Jesus Christ paid this penalty (spiritual dea on the cross.

C. AND REMOVED THE BARRIER. See categories on Reconcili on and Barrier. Col. 1:20-22.



Man under positive vol tion comes under Grace

Man under negative volition comes under +R and J

VI. Satisfaction:

A. God cannot just Love the human race and ignore His Righteousness and Justice.

B. The person of Jesus Christ satisfied +R of God.

C. The work of Jesus Christ on the cross satisfied the Jus ice of God, giving man spiritual life.

D. So Love and Eternal Life are free to flow through the GRACE PIPE to man.

E. NOW the only barrier between man and God is the perso of the Lord Jesus Christ. What are you going to do wit Christ?

VII. Summation:

God, in His Sovereignty, decided to treat man in Grace. +R and J stood in the way because sin was in the way. +R cannot have fellowship with -R. Justice demanded a penalty for sin. In His Love God sent His Son to the cross to die for the sin of the whole world and pay the penalty for sin. So +R and Justice are satisfied and Love and Eternal Life are free to go through the GRACE PIPE to man.

The believer on positive volition comes under the Grace of God because he has been to the cross where +R and J were satisfied.

Unbeliever on negative volition has to satisfy +R and J because he doesn't go to the cross where +R and J were satisfied. In paying the debt, the penalty himself, the Lake of Fire is the consequences.

Grace per Gal. 5:1-5
(Category 211)

I. Warnings Against Entanglements: Gal. 5:1

. "For freedom, Christ has freed us once and for all. Keep standing; therefore, and stop being entangled again with the yoke of bondage."

B. Christ has set us free to:

1. Execute the Christian Way of Life
2. Freed us from things which slow us down

C. Trying to keep the Mosiac Law can hinder us from executing the Christian Way of Life. We are not under the Mosiac Law, but under the higher law produced by the filling of the Holy Spirit. Gal. 5:22-23.

D. We now have the power to honor Jesus Christ, the purpose for which He has left us here.

E. Believers are to keep standing fast - v. 1b.
We have a "pat hand-royal flush". Believers have everything, they have the Grace Apparatus for Perception. See Category.

II. The Futility of Salvation by Works: Gal. 5:2-3

A. Translation: "Behold, I Paul say to you, that if (3rd class condition) you are circumcized, Christ is profitless. For I testify again to every man that is circumcised, that he is a debtor to do the entire law."

. Circumcision was an indication that a person would adhere to the Mosiac Law--the rest of his life. If a person is going to be saved by a system of works, legalism, Christ is profitless.

C. This passage is concerned primarily with the Christian Way of Life. Works are not to produce spirituality. Works cannot produce salvation. Today circumcision is

not an issue in the Gentile world, but today it is believe and join a church, believe and be baptized, believe and forsake your sins. Or in the CWL it is confess and feel sorry, confess and vow to never do it again. It can be any work added to salvation or spirituality. A work--added is an insult to the blood of Christ.

D. The believer wants to return to the Mosiac Law as a way of life, must accept the responsibility to do the entire Law. 5:3

E. Salvation is either:

1. By man alone - that is works.
2. By God and man - that is works.
3. By God alone - that is faith.

F. The Galatian believers have been "taken in" by legalism and were trying to live under the Mosiac Law as their Christian way of life. Spirituality by works only put a believer in a straight jacket.

III. Falling from Grace: Galatians 5:4

A. Translation: "Christ is become (aorist tense) null and void to you, whoever of you are being vindicated by means of the Law; you are fallen out of the sphere of grace." (You don't operate on the basis of the grace principle).

B. Salvation is in the sphere of grace. God provides for all our needs. Spirituality is also in the sphere of grace. Falling from grace refers to not using grace. not utilizing it. For the unbeliever, it would keep him in status quo unbelieve--because grace and faith must be wed to be saved. For the believer, to not use grace, would be to get out of fellowship. Remember, when in doubt, think grace!

C. Thus a passage like this does not refer to loss of salvation but "falling from the sphere of grace" means to operate outside the concept of grace.

IV. SUMMARY of our New Freedom or Grace: Gal. 5:5

A. Our "new freedom" is not freedom to live it up, but to serve the Lord apart from the bondage of the OSN.

B. Translation: "For we by means of the Holy Spirit keep waiting for the hope which is righteousness by faith.

C. "Hope of righteousness": is an appositional genitive which means it is a hope which is experiential righteousness.

D. There is an experiential righteousness in the CWL. Produced by the Holy Spirit in believers by faith, not by the Mosiac Law.

Grace Apparatus for Perception
(Category 212)

In taking in the Word and understanding it--it depends upon Who and what Jesus Christ is, and not who and what we are. He has provided everything necessary for taking in the Word and converting it to applicable doctrine.

A Key Passage: Ephesians 3:14 to 3:21

I. Grace Apparatus for Perception (referred hereafter as GAP) was designed by God the Father in Eternity Past to fulfill the purpose of learning doctrine by grace. Eph. 3:14

II. Human IQ is excluded from GAP: 1 Cor. 1:18 - 2:1-16

Human ability, human persuasion, human talent is bypassed in getting Bible doctrine. Your spiritual IQ is measured by how much epignosis you have in your human spirit.

III. The grace provision for understanding doctrine:
Eph. 3:17, "That"... refers to the mechanics--how does His system operate?

A. The Canon of Scripture: Rev. 21:18-19. No one earned or deserved the 66 books of the Word of God.

B. The local church for the communication of doctrine in a public assembly: 1 and 2 Timothy, Titus

C. A Pastor-Teacher communicating Bible Doctrine. Eph. 4:11-16.

D. The Indwelling of the Holy Spirit as the teacher of Bible Doctrine: John 16:13; 1 Cor. 6:19-20

E. Rebound for the filling of the Holy Spirit: 1 John 1:9; Eph. 5:14-18.

F. The breathing apparatus of the Soul: Inhale, exhale. Eph. 4:23; Psalm 42:1; 119:131.

G. The mind (nous) - doctrine comprehended as gnosis, 2 Pet. 3:18; Rom. 12:2.

H. The human spirit: epignosis--Heb. 4:12; Rom. 8:16; Eph. 3:16-18; 1 Cor. 2:1-6.

I. The Priesthood: Privacy & reception of doctrine. 1 Pet. 2:5,9; Rev 1:5-6. This is for privacy among other things.

IV. The Six Stages of taking in the Word and understanding it:

A. The Communicator: In Ephesians and Colossians the communicator was Paul. In a public assembly in a local church or at Bible classes the communicator is a pastor-teacher. To an unbeliever the communicator may be any believer, or a believer with the gift of evangelism.

A Sunday School teacher is a communicator of Bible doctrine. Any communicator must be filled with the Holy Spirit, and the believer listening must be filled with the Holy Spirit. DON'T JUST READ THIS. LET IT SINK IT! You must understand the cross and two circles at the present time--NOW before the six stages of GAP will function!

B. The Comprehension, Eph. 3:18, "May be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length and depth and height;"

1. This is taking gnosis into the mind (knowledge in the vous). This will be head knowledge, it is not applicable. However, this knowledge is a must--because it must be perceived--understood--AND THEN either received and rejected.

2. The mind at this point is a staging area--where faith can be applied, or unbelief.

C. Storage: The human spirit: Romans 8:16, Eph. 3:18, " . . . what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height"

1. Stage three takes place when faith is applied to gnosis in the mind. "I believe that . . ."

2. Immediately gnosis becomes epignosis--residual, usable doctrine in the human spirit.

3. Only true doctrine, epignosis is transferred to the human spirit. False doctrine will not transfer. See the doctrine of the human spirit.

D. Frame of Reference: The frame of reference is pleroo--Ephesians 3:19, "filled with all the fulness of God". Epignosis fills up the deficiency of the soul. The frame of reference is the epignosis in the human spirit--which allows the Word to be applied, to be used. Epignosis is cycled through the filling of the Holy Spirit into the mind as a frame of reference. As you cycle you have your frame of reference.

1. The purpose of the frame of reference is to comprehend more advanced doctrine.

2. To set up divine norms and standards in the conscience. (Development of a new conscience)

3. To look at life from the divine viewpoint.

4. To give correct content to your prayers.

5. To give accuracy in your witnessing.

6. To resolve all of the problems of the subconscious mind. (Bad dreams, guilt complex, etc.)

E. Application: This 5th stage of GAP has to do with the exhale of the Word of God--toward God and man--applying epignosis to experience. This involves Eph 4:23, "And be renewed (invigorated) through the breathing of your mind." The results of GAP are found in Eph 5:24-32. For example:

1. The Divine Viewpoint replaces Human Viewpoint: 4:25
2. Discernment minus the mental attitude sins: 4:26
3. No room for Satan's doctrine in the soul: 4:27
4. The Production of Divine Good in Business: 4:28

(and so on)

F. The Building of the Edification Complex is being accomplished:

1. The foundation for this building is residual doctrine--epignosis. Eph 4:12,13
2. The first floor is grace-orientation: Eph 4:29.
3. The second floor is mastery of the details of life: this involves the whole book of Proverbs.
   a. A believer out of fellowship is always a slave to the details of life. example--Paul in prison. Even though he was in prison, he was not mastered by it.
   b. A believer in fellowship can enjoy the details of life. If he has them--he can enjoy them, if he doesn't have them--he still has BD, the edification complex.
4. The third floor is a relaxed mental attitude: agapao love as in Gal 5:22,23.
5. The fourth floor is the capacity to love: phileo love 1 Cor 16:22, Titus 2:4, Rom 12:13; Heb 13:2.
   a. Towards God: 1 Cor 16:22.
   b. Towards wife or husband: Titus 2:4
   c. Toward people: Rom 12:13
6. The fifth floor is inner happiness: Philippians develops the third floor of the edification complex. Phil 1:4, "... with joy;" 4:4, "Rejoice in the Lord alway; and again I say, Rejoice."

Grace Apparatus for Perception: Diagramed
(Category 213)

Please see Page 184 for similar diagram.

Grace: Perspicacity
(Category 215)

Definition of Perspicacity: Acuteness of sight or discernment--sharp insight. It is the ability of grace to execute the right mental attitude or effect orientation, to enable one to have no illusions about themselves.

I. Vocabulary

A. Knowledge of doctrine in the mind (nous) is gnosis (knowledge).

B. The difference between "gnosis" and "epignosis" is "by means of faith." Ephesians 3:17

C. When you transfer gnosis to epignosis, human IQ is never a factor.

D. The ultimate in perspicacity by grace is having Doctrine residuing in the human spirit.

E. The human spirit contains the divine IQ and in the human spirit divine IQ is measured according to the amount of epignosis there.

F. The unbeliever doesn't have a human spirit (not even a dead one) and his perceptive ability is only human ability.

G. But human ability and talent play no part in the spiritual IQ of grace.

H. So an unbeliever can be a genius and not understand basic doctrine, while a believer with a low human IQ can understand the most profou and advanced doctrine because of GRACE (Grace found a way).

II. Basic Doctrines to know in understanding perspicacity in grace:

A. Scar Tissue

B. Grace Apparatus of Perception

C. Edification Complex of the Soul

D. Angelic Conflict

III. The Deficiency of Human IQ in grace perspicacity

A. Human IQ is often considered a factor in learning doctrine.

B. This would imply that a low IQ believer is handicapped.

C. However, every believer under grace is given the same perceptive equipment (canon of Scripture, etc.).

D. The ability to learn doctrine is dratalog in Eph 3:16 and ezischag in 3:18 of Ephesians.

E. Regardless of human IQ, the believer is not handicapped in learning doctrine. The Father provides the acuteness of insight (perspicacity) in learning doctrine.

F. In Ephes. 3:17 note " . . . in love", this refers to the filling of the Holy Spirit; therefore, the filling of the Holy Spirit precedes ability to comprehend. Eph. 3:18. It is therefore impossible to even get gnosis in the nous without the filling of the Holy Spirit.

IV. Some Clinical Observations:

A. Human IQ can't see God, but epignosis gives vision to the eyes of the soul (apertures of). Eph. 1:18, "The eyes of your understanding being enlightened . . ."

B. Rationalism and Empiricism puts a veil over the eyes of the soul causing the love from Jesus Christ to be hidden. Eph. 4:18-19, 1 Cor. 1:18ff., 2 Cor. 4:4.

C. Doctrine removes the veil from the mind of the soul. 2 Cor. 3:14-16.

D. Doctrine stored in the human spirit is not only the foundation for the edification complex, but basis of seeing love from Jesus Christ with the eyes of the soul. This provides incentive for positive to continue in doctrine.

E. This results in being filled (pleroo) with the fullness of God. Eph. 3:19

V. Summary: (Perspicacity of grace)

A. There is no merit in the perceptive system of faith. (Whole book of Galatians)

B. Merit lies in the object, Jesus Christ.

C. This is compatible with God's fairness, justice and sense of humor.

D. Because faith is the only non-meritorious system of perception common to all in the human race, it is compatible with God's plan of grace.

E. We aren't born with the same IQ. We are born unequal mentally.

F. Philosophy has superior human knowledge through rationalism and empiricism, but all believers have the same perceptive apparatus.

G. We are saved by faith from the Kingdom of Darkness to the Kingdom of God. This same faith transfers gnosis from the nous to epignosis in the human spirit. Gnosis is not applicable until it becomes epignosis.

Grace: Fullness of God
(Category 216)

Ephesians 3:19, "And to know the love of Christ, which passeth knowledge, that ye might be filled with all the fulness of God".

I. The Greek Word pleroo means:

A. To fill up a deficiency

B. To fully possess

C. To fully influence

D. To fill up with a certain quality

Epignosis in the human spirit and no scar tissue in the soul takes care of this deficiency--THE WORD OF GOD!

II. The Importance of pleroo:

A. This word was used of Jesus Christ as a child functioning under GAP and building an Edification Complex. Luke 2:40

B. This word is used of the believer in the Church Age functioning under GAP and building an EC. Eph. 1:23, 3:19, 4:10, Col. 1:9.

C. This word is used of the believer controlled by the Holy Spirit: Eph. 5:18 (Filled with the Holy Spirit)

D. This word is used of a pastor which fulfills the Word God. Col. 1:25. And the pastor pleroos in that first stage of GAP, operation ICE. Isagogics, Categories, and Exegesis.

E. This word is used of the fulfillment of inner happiness in the soul. 1 John 1:4, John 16:24, 17:13.

Grace: Foolishness of God & Weakness of God
(Category 217)

1 Cor. 1:25, "Because the foolishness of God is wiser than men; and the weakness of God is stronger than men."

I. The Foolishness of God: "Moros": Human IQ

A. Human IQ assigns foolishness to God, rationalism and empiricism always discredit God or the Word in one way or another.

B. Thus, human perspicacity can only blaspheme God by assigning to Him words like "moros".

C. God appears foolish to human viewpoint. That is why human IQ assigns foolishness to God.

D. This is why Paul picks up unbeliever's word to make a sarcastic comparative - sanctified sarcasm.

1. God and the plan of God are perfect.
2. Man and his plans are imperfect and sinful.
3. Man distorts truth by contending God is foolish.
4. Paul reverses the distortion by stating the absolute.
5. The foolishness (man assigns to God) is wiser than the wisest of men.
6. Greeks in their rationalism regard the Cross as foolishness, but the foolishness of God is wiser than the genius of man.

II. The Weakness of God: "Asthenes":

A. The Greek asthenes means feeble, without energy, power, or human strength.

B. This is the blasphemous assumption of theological empiricism where Jews want miracles from God and system of works from men.

C. God didn't meet the demands of their Scar Tissued souls, causing the Jews to assign the characteristic of weakness to God. They assigned to him weakness from their frame of reference and human IQ.

D. They regarded the cross as a sign of weakness because Jesus Christ didn't come down.

E. Such human viewpoint and conclusion of human IQ is empiricism.

F. God's plan of grace demanded that Jesus Christ stay on the cross and be judged for the sins of the world. Human viewpoint empiricism demanded that He come off the cross. Therefore the phrase used by Paul is a common phrase ascribed to the fact that Jesus Christ didn't save the Jews.

Grace: Every Believer in Full-Time Christian Service
(Category 218)

I. The Christian in business (employer or employee) is in "full-time" Christian service just as a missionary, pastor, evangelist or Christian worker is in full time Christian service. Why?

A. Every believer has the same salvation: Jude 3

B. Every believer is an ambassador of Christ: 2 Cor. 5:20

C. Every believer is exhorted to "walk in the Spirit", to "grow", to erect an edification complex: Gal. 5:16, 2 Peter 3:18, Eph. 4:11.

D. There is a difference in spiritual gifts--given by grace, and a difference of growth at any given period. 1 Cor. 12

E. However, no one can dedicate himself to full time Christian service, he is born-again into it.

II. Example: The Christian in business is regarded as being in full-time Christian service: Exposition of 1 Timothy 6

A. Principle 1: The work-a-day world is divided into two categories--labor and management. 1 Tim. 6:1.

B. Principle 2: In business the chain of command must be recognized: 1 Tim. 6:1-2

C. Principle 3: Hard work (mentally & physically) is the oil of success in the business world. Genesis 3:19 as well as the phrase " . . . rather do them service," in 1 Tim. 6 . This phrase means "slave the harder."

D. Principle 4: The boss is not to exploit his employees. the labor is worthy of his hire (vica-versa, the employee is to put in a full days work.) 1 Tim. 6:2

E. Principle 5: The believer is to represent God in his business or where he works. 1 Tim. 6:3. YOU REPRESENT GOD IN YOUR AREA OF WORK, FULL TIME, JUST AS I DO AS PASTOR OF THIS CHURCH.

F. Principle 6: Dishonesty in business (either mental attitude sins or sins of the tongue--or even overt sin) destroys your testimony as a believer in business. A believer out of fellowship will eventually be inconsistent in some way.

1. Griping
2. Cheating
3. Not putting more than a full day if necessary
4. Not following orders to the letter, knifing behind the back, embezzeling and so on.

We are making money in the USA through capitalism (bona fide) and giving it away through socialism.

Eventually socialism kills capitalism, kills the goose that lays the golden egg. Socialism is based on paper credit--socialism is being used today to kill off the USA, however it is a killer and destroyer and not a cure. In Russia and China, communism and socialism, does not carry them. They actually use capitalistic ideas to keep cash flow going, like the necessity of having a gold standard, limited private ownership of land and so on.

G. Principle 7: The oil that makes business run as smoothly as possible is "godliness accompanied with contentment."1 Tim. 6:6

1. Godliness (This gives stability in business)

a. Refers to reflecting the glory of God: 1 Cor. 6:20. The shine of the edification complex.

b. Refers to Christ's character being formed within: Gal. 4:19

c. Refers to the filling of the Spirit: Gal. 5:22-23

2. Contentment: The resultant mental attitude of stability, of spiritual self-sufficiency. Not restless, contend, satisified.

H. Principle 8: If a believer in business (employee or employer) has inner spiritual stability (as described above) his outward needs are very simple. 1 Tim. 6:7-8 It is actually the luxuries of life that cause inflation, and one of the factors in the weakness and instability of a nation.

I. Principle 9: Your mental attitude toward money is an indicator of an edification complex or lack of it. 1 Tim. 6:9-10. Money is only a detail of life--if you have it you can enjoy it (granted you are mature) if you don't have it--you still have Bible doctrine. Phil. 4:11.

J. Principle 10: You, in business, in your-work-a-day world need a crash program--it is the ultimate answer. 1 Tim. 6 ff. This crash program involves daily categorical Bible study

Working hard does not necessarily mean 16 hour days on the job. Don't confuse hard work with long hours. There is no contradiction between the need for daily Bible study (1 Cor. 4:16) and the command to work hard (mentally or physically) in Genesis 3:19.

Conclusion: Obvious the gift of pastor-teacher takes the most study of any spiritual gift. But when a pastor-teacher does the spade work, your study time in the business world is greatly cut down. It is categorized, your study involves studying the portion of the Word that the pastor-teacher is teaching--among others. Spiritual self-sufficiency is the goal.

The Great White Throne Judgment
(Category 219)

I. The Purpose of the Last Judgment: (Great White Throne)

A. Is to give the unbeliever an opportunity to present his defense before the sentence is carried out. (Justice & -R)

B. Is NOT separation of believer and unbelievers, as ONLY unbelievers are to be judged.

II. The Unpardonable sin: (Rejection of Christ - John 3:36) is the reason the individual is at the Last Judgment.

Matt. 12:31, and Mark 3:28-29 is rejection of Jesus Christ in another dispensation.

III. The unbeliever, by rejection of Jesus Christ, stands on his own good works (his defense) instead of accepting the WORK of Christ on the cross.

IV. Jesus Christ was judged for the sins of the WHOLE WORLD. 1 John 2:2. Consequently no one is ever judged for their sins at the Great White Throne, or even the believer at the Bema Judgment (1 Cor. 3). Sins are NOT mentioned at the Last Judgment. Apply the law of double jeopardy.

V. Therefore God, in His justice, evaluates the unbelievers good works. They do not measure up as "our righteousnesses are as filthy rags in His sight." Isa. 64:6. They are -R. -R cannot have fellowship with +R.

VI. Rev. 20:11-15: THE GREAT WHITE THRONE

A. v. 11: "him that sat on it": The Lord Jesus Christ. He was judged for the sins of the whole world, and now He judges. John 5:22, 27 hath committed all judgment to the Son.

B. v. 12: "dead": Spiritually dead. Not born again. "stand before God": The resurrection unto damnation. "books": Books of works, also the book of life--only believers in that one. The books of works contain all the human good of unbelievers from Cain on.

C. v. 13: "judged . . . according to their works": Works is the basis of indictment. Works do not measure up.

D. v. 15: "whosoever was not found written in the Book of life was cast into the lake of fire." Rejection of JC is why the unbeliever is cast into the Lake of Fire. What the unbeliever does--good or bad is not the issue.

1. Sins (Everyones) were paid for at the cross.
2. God is evaluated - it doesn't measure up.
3. Therefore, no degrees of punishment in hell. They are all there for the same reason: REJECTION OF CHRIST.

Greek: Tools for Understanding the Original Languages .... (Category 220)

I. Tools for the Hebrew Language:

A. Basic: (Both good, Weingreen is clearer on first lesson.)

1. A Practical Grammar for Classical Hebrew, by J. Weingreen, Oxford Press.

2. Hebrew Grammar: Kyle Yates

It is very difficult to get Hebrew from scratch strictly on your own. It is suggested you find someone that knows a little Hebrew to help you over the first three or four lessons. After this the text is self-explanatory.

B. Interlinear: No complete interlinear is available, however, after completing the grammar, the Hebrew word can be determined by using an ASV of the Bible, or using a Strongs or Young's Concordence.

C. Analytical Lexicon: Gives the parsing of every verb and declension of every noun in the Old Testament.

Analytical Hebrew and Chaldee Lexicon by B. Davidson, Samuel Bagster and Sons, publisher.

D. Lexicon: Gives the meanings of the Greek words.

1. Simple: Gesenius Hebrew English Lexicon to the Old Testament, translated by Samuel P. Tregelles, Eerdmans Publishing Co.

2. Exhaustive: Hebrew Lexicon by Brown, Driver, & Briggs.

II. Helps on the Greek Language:

A. Basic:

"The Language of the New Testament", by Eugene Van Ness Goetchius, Charles Scribner's Sons. (also accompanying workbook). See book review, BIBLIOTHECA SACRA Jan. 196[illegible].

"Essentials of New Testament Greek", Ray Summers, Broadman Press, Nashville. (older, 1950)

B. Intermediate:

"Grammar of the Greek New Testament," by Dana & Mantey. Used by 2nd year students at Dallas Theological Seminary.

C. Advanced: "Grammar of the Greek New Testament in the Light of Historical Research", by A. T. Robertson.

D. Interlinear Greek-English New Testament: Use the one that is based on Nestle's Text.

E. Analytical Lexicon: Analytical Greek Lexicon, Samuel Bagster and Sons, Ltd. (Parses verbs, declines nouns)

F. Lexicon:

1. Simple: Abbot-Smith Greek Lexicon, T & T Clark, Edinburg.

2. Advanced: Arndt & Gingrich Greek Lexicon, Universi[illegible] of Chicago Press. The best to get in the long run.

III. Other Greek Helps from the English Standpoint:

A. Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words, W. E. Vi[illegible] Fleming Revel Company. Excellent, a must.

B. A new 8 volume set on the Greek words is currently being translated from Kittel's German Testament. Only three o[illegible] four volumes are currently available.

C. Any of the works by Kenneth S. Wuest such as "Studies in the Vocabulary of the Greek New Testament."

D. Synonyms of the New Testament, by Richard C. Trench.

E. The Vocabulary of the Greek New Testament by Moulton and Milligan.

IV. Hebrew and Greek Bibles to Use:

A. Hebrew Bible: "Bibla Hebraica": Kittel, Stuttgart.

B. Greek Text: "Novum Testamentum Graece": Eberhard Nestle, Stuttgart (published by the American Bible Society). The latest edition.

Greek Alphabet
(Category 221..)

1.	Alpha	α	a as in father	13.	Nu	ν	n
2.	Beta	β	b	14.	Xi	ξ	x as in exci-
3.	Gamma	γ	g as in got	15.	Omicron	ο	o as in obey
4.	Delta	δ	d	16.	Pi	π	p
5.	Epsilon	ε	e as in get	17.	Rho	ρ	r
6.	Zeta	ζ	dz	18.	Sigma	σ, ς	s
7.	Eta	η	a as in late	19.	Tau	τ	t
8.	Theta	θ	th	20.	Upsilon	υ	u as in unity
9.	Iota	ι	i as in pit	21.	Phi	φ	(Phy)
10.	Kappa	κ	k	22.	Chi	χ	(Chy) as in chemical
11.	Lambda	λ	l	23.	Psi	ψ	(Psigh) ps as in taps
12.	Mu	μ	m	24.	Omega	ω	o as in note

The believer should learn both the Greek and Hebrew alphabets thoroughly. This will enable him to use lexicons and study helps such as Abbot-Smith, Arndt and Gingrich, Harper's Analytical Greek Lexicon. Bagster's Analytical Hebrew and Chaldee Lexicon coupled with Vine's expository Dictionary of New Testament Words.

Also you can find the exact Greek or Hebrew word from the English in either the popular Strongs or Youngs concordance. It all starts with learning the alphabet thoroughly.

Greek: Beginning Vocabulary .....
(Category 222)

I. Verbs: (Present Indicative Active) (1 person singular)

1. ἄγω: I am leading
2. ἀκούω: I am hearing
3. βλέπω: I am seeing
4. ἔχω: I am having
5. λύω: I am loosing
6. γινώσκω: I am knowing
7. γράφω: I am writing
8. διδάσκω: I am teaching
9. ἐγείρω: I am raising
10. λαμβάνω: I am taking
11. λέγω: I am saying
12. πέμπω: I am sending

II. Nouns: (In Vocabulary Form, the Noun always has an Article)

ὁ: The masculine definite article, "the".

ἡ: The feminine definite article, "the".

τό: The neuter definite article, "the".

1. ἄγγελος ὁ: messenger
2. ἀδελφός ὁ: brother
3. δοῦλος ὁ: slave
4. καρπός ὁ: fruit
5. λόγος ὁ: word
6. ἄνθρωπος ὁ: man
7. ἀπόστολος ὁ: apostle
8. ἄρτος ὁ: bread, loaf
9. γάμος ὁ: marriage
10. δῶρον τό: gift
11. θάνατος ὁ: death
12. ἱερόν τό: temple
13. λίθος ὁ: stone
14. νόμος ὁ: law
15. οἶκος ὁ: house
16. ὄχλος ὁ: crowd, multitude

Greek: Basic Grammar: Vowels, Diphthongs, Breathing Marks Accent Marks, Punctation Marks
(Category 223)

I. The Greek Vowels: (Given with their English equivalents)

α (a)

ε (short e)

η (long e but pronounced more like as as in late)

ο (short o)

ι (i)

υ (u)

ω (long o)

Of these vowels ε and ο are always short; η and ω are always long; α, ι, and υ may be long or short, only by observation will the student be able to determine the tone quality of α, ι, υ.

II. The Diphthongs: (two vowel sounds fused into one)

αι = ai as in aisle

αυ = au as in kraut

ει = ei as in height

οι = oi as in oil

ευ = eu as in feud

ηυ = approximately the same sound as ευ

υι = pronounced like wee

III. Every Greek word beginning with a vowel or a diphthong must have a breathing mark. There are two breating marks in Greek:

A. Smooth Breathing is indicated by the mark ᾽.

B. Rough breathing is indicated by the mark ῾, and calls for an h-sound to begin the word.

Thus ἡδη is pronounced ēdē, while ἡμερα is pronounced hāmera.

Also the letter ῥ always has the rough breathing mark when it is the initial letter in a word as in ῥημα.

IV. Accent Marks: There are three accent marks in Greek

___/___: Acute accent as in ἀκούω.

______: Grave accent as in τὸν.

___⁀___: Circumflex as in δοῦλον.

The accent stands over the vowel of the accented syllable, and in a diphthong over the 2nd vowel.

The last syllable of a word is called the ultima.

The next to the last syllable is called the penult.

The one before the penult is called the antepenult.

In pronounciation stress the accent--as we do in the English.

V. Punctation Marks: In Greek there are four.

A. The comma (,) corresponds to our comma.

B. The period (.) corresponds to our period.

C. The colon (·) corresponds to our colon or semi-colon and is written above the line.

D. The question mark (;) is made like our semi-colon.

Greek: Verbal Significance
(Category 224)

I. Every Verb has a Four-Fold Navigational Fix: (Tense, Voice, Mood, Etymology)

A. Tense: An expression of the action or time of the verb kind of action.

1. Present tense: Habitual action in present time. "Our lambs are going out": Matt. 25:8

2. Imperfect tense: Continuous action in part time: "And the multitudes were asking Him questions": Luke 3:10

3. Future tense: Action planned for a future time: " . . . shall not see life": John 3:36

4. Aorist tense: Punctiliar action, occuring action, a point in time divorced from time (No English equivalent). "The Temple was built in 46 years": John 2:20

5. Perfect tense: Completed action with finished results in the present time. Eph. 2:8-9, "For by grace are ye saved . . ." (Present perfect)

6. Pluperfect: Completed action with finished results in past time. (Past perfect) John 19:22, " . . . what I have written, I have written."

B. Voice: The relationship of the subject to the main verb.

1. Active Voice: The subject produces the action of the verb. Acts 16:31, "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ . . . and thou shalt be saved." Believe is active--you must believe, you must initiate the action of believing faith.

2. Passive Voice: The subject receives the action of the main verb. The voice of grace: Eph. 2:8, "By grace are ye saved." When you believe (active voice) you receive salvation (passive voice).

3. Middle Voice: The subject is benefitted by the action of the main verb. John 15:16, "Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you" (I have chosen you for my benefit).

C. Mood (Mode): The attitude of the speaker or writer toward reality. The four moods show the way an action is to be regarded: As a fact, a command, wish, or potential action.

1. Indicative: The mood of reality: It means the event actually occured as indicated. This is a simple assertion or statement, or asks a simple question. This is the most commonly used mood. "In the beginning was the Word.": John 1:1

2. Imperative: The mood of command: "Keep on doing this in remembrance of me . . ." 1 Cor. 11:24. "Love your enemies": Matt. 5:44.

3. Subjunctive: Potential mood, it could happen potentially John 14:31, "Let us be going".

4. Optative: Expresses a wish, 2 Thess. 3:5, "May the Lord guide your hearts."

D. Etymology: How the word was used at the time in which it was written, used to bring out the true meaning of a word.

Eph. 4:14 (English): "That we henceforth be no more children, tossed to and fro and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, and cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive."

Eph. 4:14 (Greek, partial translation) "If you don't kr doctrine as a Christian, its like shooting craps with th devil, and the devil has loaded the dice so the odds a against you."

II. Every Verb has a conjugation (parsing) so that we know precisely how to translate it.

A. Present Indicative Active: This is the basic conjugatio Grammars begin here in parsing.

The basic word to parse will be λύω.

1st Person: λύω : I am loosing

2nd Person: λύεις : You are loosing

3rd Person: λύει : He, she, it is loosing

1st Person: λύομεν: We are loosing

2nd Person: λύετε : You are loosing

3rd Person: λύουσι : They are loosing

Infinitive _____: To be loosing

Thus the Present Indicative Active endings are:

ω	ομεν
εις	ετε
ει	ουσι

Be sure to master the above forms, go over and over them.

B. Present Indicative Middle: And so on.

Get a chart which shows all the parsings of the verbs. For lack of space no more endings will be spelled out here.

III. Other Verbal Forms:

A. Participles: Participles are verbal adjectives. They share the characteristics both of verbs and adjectives.

1. As a Verb: As a verb a participle has a subject, and if it is the participle of a transitive verb in the active voice, it may have an object. It has tense and voice.

2. As an Adjective: As an adjective the participle agrees with the noun which it qualifies (that is with its subject) in number, gender, and case.

3. Article: When the article is used with the participle, it can be used as a substantive (a noun, pronoun, or other word or phrase having the function or inflections of a noun.)

Example: Ὁ πιστεύω (believing) used with the article becomes "the one believing."

4. As Action Words:

a. Present participle: Generally speaking the present participle denotes the action taking place at the same time as the action of the main verb.

b. Aorist participle: The aorist participle denotes action which took place before the action of the main verb.

B. Infinitive: Infinitives are verbal nouns

1. As a Verb: As a verb it has a subject expressed or understood; and it may have an object; it is qualified by adverbs, and has tense and voice.

2. As a Noun: As a noun it may stand as the subject or object of another verb. Its case is shown by the case of the article, for the infinitive itself cannot have inflections. The tense has its significance in the kind of action. The infinitive may be separated from its article by other words.

3. Its simple form: λύειν Present Active Infinitive. This is translated, "to be loosing."

Greek: Nouns
(Category 225)

All nouns in Greek are either: 1) masculine, 2) feminine, or 3) neuter. This can be determined usually by their declension (noting the endings for different cases).

I. The Definite Article (see page 284)

A. ὁ : The masculine definite article, "the".

B. ἡ : The feminine definite article, "the."

C. τό : The neuter definite article, "the".

If a definite article is used with a noun, the gender of the article has to agree with the gender of the noun.

II. The Declension of λόγος using eight cases:

	Singular		Plural	
Nominative	λόγος	: a word	λόγοι	: words
Genitive	λόγου	: of a word	λόγων	: of words
Ablative	λόγου	: from a word	λόγων	: from words
Locative	λόγῳ	: in, or at, a word	λόγοις	: in or at words
Instrumental	λόγῳ	: with or by a word	λόγοις	: with or by words
Dative	λόγῳ	: to or for a word	λόγοις	: to or for words
Accusative	λόγον	: a word	λόγους	: words
Vocative	λόγε	: O word	λόγοι	: O words

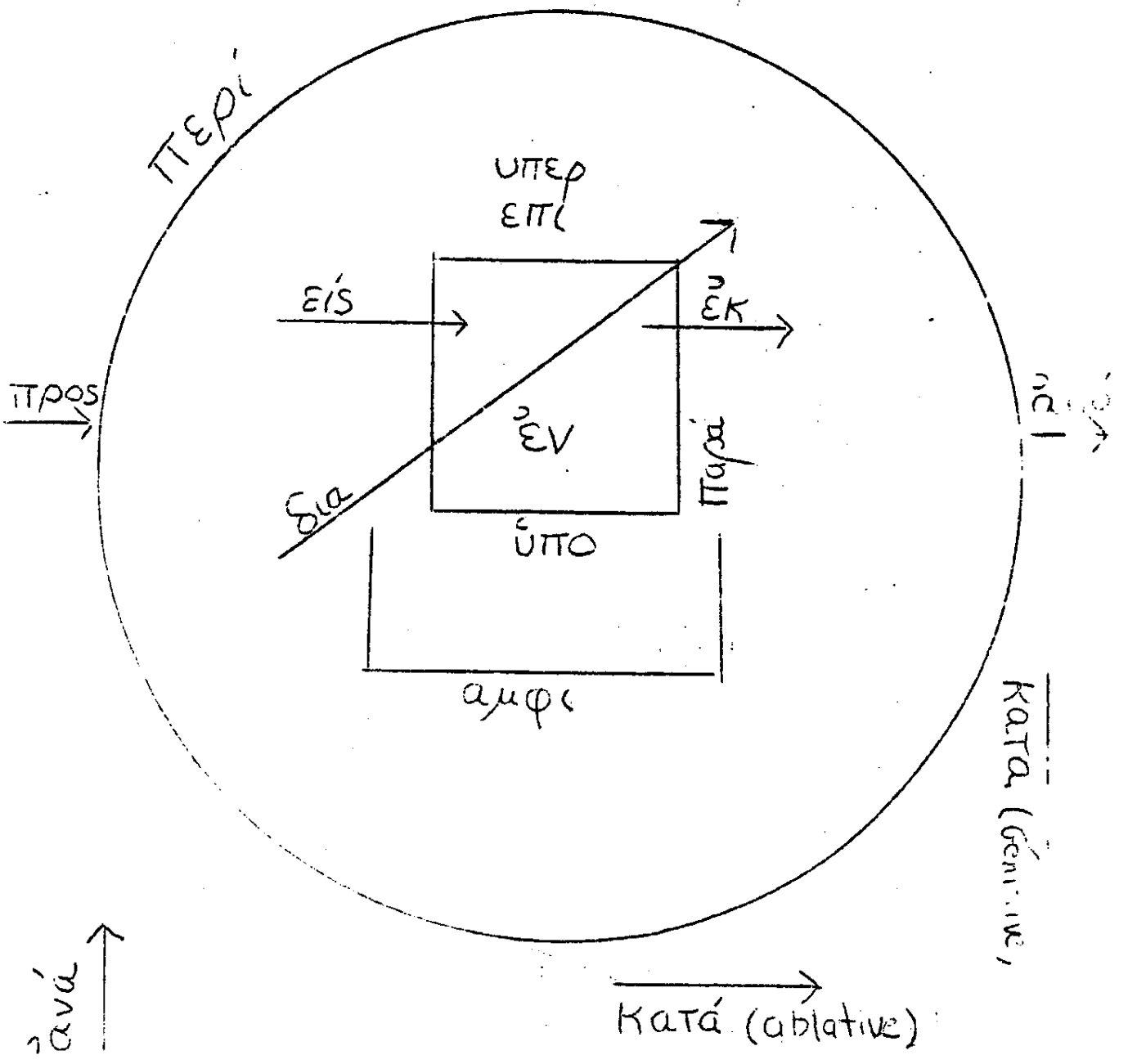
III. The Basic Idea of the Case:

-ος	(οι)	Nominative:	Designation
-ου	(ων)	Genitive Ablative	Description Separation
-ῳ	(οις)	Locative Instrumental Dative	Location (or position) Means Interest
-ον -ε	(ους) (οι)-	Accusative Vocative	Limitation Address

IV. There are Three Declensions of Nouns in the NT. The above is 2nd declension.

Greek: Prepositions
(Category 226)

I. Graphic Scheme of the Greek Prepositions:



II. Prepositions are adverbs specialized to define more clearly the meanings of cases, many of which come to be used in composition with verbs:

A. Thus a preposition may stand alone. Like ἐκ in 1 Cor. 7:

B. It may intensify the action of the verb. Like ἐκβάλλω in Gal. 4:30

C. It may change the meaning of the verb and blend with it. Like ἀναγινώσκω in Matt. 24:15. γινώσκω, I know wi ἀνα added means I read.

III. The Preposition List and Definitions

1. ἀνά: With accusative: up, again
2. ἀντί: With ablative: against, instead of
3. ἀπό: With ablative: from, away from
4. ἀμφί: to surround
5. διά: With genitive: through
   With accusative: because of
6. ἐκ: With ablative: out of (before a vowel this becomes .)
7. εἰς: With accusative: into, unto
8. ἐν: With locative: in, on
   With instrumental: by
9. ἐπί: With genitive: upon, on (emphasizing conta , at or by.
   With locative: upon, on, at, over (emphasi position).
   With accusative: upon, on, to up to (emph ing motion or direction)
10. κατά: With ablative: down from
    With genitive: down upon
    With accusative: along, according to
11. μετά: With genitive: with
    With accusative: along, according to
12. ὀπίσω: Behind
13. παρά: With ablative: from
    With locative: before, by the side of, beside
    With accusative: beside, beyond, along
14. περί: With genitive: about, concerning
    With accusative: beside, beyond, belong
15. πρό: With ablative: before
16. πρός: With locative: at
    With accusative: to, toward, with at
17. σύν: With instrumental: with, together with
18. ὑπέρ: With ablative: in behalf of, instead of
    With accusative: Over, above, beyond
19. ὑπό: With ablative: by (agency)
    With accusative: under

IV. Interpreting the Use of the Prepositions

A. Take the Basic Meaning of the Case

B. Take the Basic Meaning of the Preposition

C. Consider the Context

Greek: Conditional Clauses..
(Category 227)

I. Definition of Conditional Clauses (1,2,3,4th class condition)

A. Conditional sentences are sentences which contain a subordinate clause which states a supposition and a principle clause which states the result of the fulfillment of this supposition.

1. The subordinate (if) clause is called the protasis.
2. The principal (conclusion) clause is called the apodosis.
3. Example: If you study hard, you will get a good grade.
(if clause) (conclusion clause)

B. Either clause may come first in the sentence.

1. 1st class condition: Assumed to be true.
(if and its true)

2. 2nd class condition: Assumed to be false.
(if it's true, but it's not)

3. 3rd class condition: May be true or false, a probability
(May confess sins Biblically, may not, but if the believer does--he will be cleansed and forgiven.) 1 John 1:9.

4. 4th class condition: Remotely possible. (if it is true, but it probably is not)

The form of the condition has only to do with the way the writer or speaker views the statement. What is stated as truth may actually be untrue. Peter said in Mark 14:31 that he would die before he would deny Christ . . . he regarded it as true, but it wasn't.

II. Recognization of Conditional Clauses:

If Clause	Conclusion clause
1st Class: ei + Indicative mood, any tense	Any mood (usually indicative Any tense

Examples: Galatians 5:18, Matt. 4:3, John 14:7, John 15:8

2nd Class:

a.	Present time: ei + imperfect. See Luke 7:39; John 15:19, 22	av + Imperfect
b.	Past time: ei + Aorist or Pluperfect. See John 11:32, Matt. 11:21	av + Aorist or Pluperfect

All in the indicative mood

3rd Class

ean + Subjunctive mood, see Rom. 7:2, Mat. 9:21 1 John 1:9	any form of verb

4th Class

ei + Optative mood see 1 Peter 3:14, 1 Cor. 14:10	av + Optative mood

No complete example of the the 4th class condition is found in the NT.

III. Practice: What class do the following come in:

Luke 11:19
1 John 1:8
Heb. 6:3
2 Tim. 2:12
Matt. 24:33
Luke 7:39
John 4:10
Matthew 4:9
Luke 4:3
Mark 1:40
1 Cor. 15:37
John 5:46

Conclusion: These categories can give you the feel of the Greek language, but a little knowledge of Greek or Hebrew can be very dangerous. These categories are designed to guide you in the use of the tools available to you.

Also--these categories by no means covers even the basics of Greek grammar. However, they do cover the references to the Greek mentioned by R. B. Thieme Jr. in the Berachah tapes, generally speaking. Happy studying!

Growth: Categories of Christian Growth
(Category 228)

I. From the standpoint of growth, all believers fall into three categories (1 John 2:12-14).

A. Babe: The "little children" of 1 John 2

B. Adolescent: (sophomore believer) the "young men" of 1 John 2.

C. Mature: The "fathers" of 1 John 2.

II. Rate of growth depends upon the amount of time spent living in the Word according to GAP. Gnosis has to be converted to epignosis by faith. Doctrine must be properly absorbed. Heb 5:13

A. A Babe: "little children"

1. Can produce divine good through the filling of the Holy Spirit but spends quite a bit of time out of fellowship.
2. He is not oriented to the grace of God, plan of God.
3. Often has a maximum amount of human viewpoint in the frontal lob but very little divine viewpoint in the human spirit.
4. Is unstable
5. Cannot talk or communicate intelligently--does not have a frame of reference.
6. Has to be entertained, amused, must receive the maximum attention of others.
7. Cannot eat solid food--but can take in the basics--

B. Adolescent: "young men"

1. Can produce divine good through the filling of the Spirit and exhale of Bible doctrine.
2. Gets violently out of fellowship, potential troublemaker, but does use 1 John 1:9 quite consistently.
3. Is starting to get epignosis into the human spirit--a growing frame of reference is applying--but still has much growing to do. Thinks he is more mature than he is.

C. A Mature Believer:

1. Can produce Divine Good through:
   a. The filling of the Holy Spirit
   b. Exhaling from the human spirit's frame of reference
   c. Erection of the edification complex
2. Has maximum amount of epignosis in the human spirit.
3. Is oriented to the grace of God, enjoys the mastery of the details life, has a relaxed mental attitude, has the capacity to love God, wife, children, others and is enjoying inner happiness.

capacity to love God, wife, children, others, and enjoys mastery of the details of life.

4. He or she has maximum production because of no sca tissue and maximum knowledge of soul breathing.

5. Thus stays in fellowship a maximum amount of time and out of fellowship only a minimum of time.

III. Believers in ONE LOCAL CHURCH may range all the way from babyhood to complete maturity.

IV. Many things are required of mature believers that are not required of babies.

V. Mature believers (pastor-teachers, Sunday School teachers, etc) should teach the babes:

A. The Cross and the Two Circles (Positional truth; relationship, also fellowship; use of 1 John 1:9.)

B. The six stages of GAP

C. Scar Tissue: Its causes and removal

D. The essence of the old sin nature

E. The angelic conflict (and so on)

VI. The Mature Believer fulfills the salt and light principle in preserving a nation. Matt. 5:13-16.

Growth: Commands to Grow, Necessity for Growth, Distinctions
(Category 229)

1. There are degrees of growth, but there are no degrees of spirituality. While one helps the other, they are different in every respect.

2. Growth in the Christian life does not remain static, there is progression and retrogression.

3. One of the great objectives in the Christian life is to get the one who is born-again to grow.

4. A zeal without knowledge is UNFRUITFUL, note Romans 10:2-4.

"For I bear them record that they have a zeal of God, but not according to knowledge. For they being ignorant of God's righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God. For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to everyone that believeth." Also check out 2 Timothy 3:7

These two passages refer to gnosis in the mind--head knowledge but no epignosis in the human spirit. Thus the faith principle is not used.

5. Doctrinal facts are to be sucked into the mind, but it is a staging area for positive volition to convert gnosis into epignosis. The recycling of epignosis through the mind causes more gnosis to be taken in for transfer.

6. The six stages of GAP must be followed daily.

7. Commands to grow:

   a. 1 Peter 2:2, "As newborn babes, desire (appetite) the sincere milk of the Word, that ye may grow thereby."

   b. 2 Peter 3:18, "But grow in GRACE and in the knowledge . . ."

      This is gnosis knowledge--referring to stage 2 of GAP. Don't discount this stage, fact is the fuel that is converted to epignosis.

8. Stability comes from the use of epignosis in the CWL. Note Isa. 33:6, "And wisdom (synonym of epignosis) and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times . . ."

9. Paul prays that the Colossians might get epignosis into the human spirit in Col. 1:9-10. The resultant frame of reference allows--application of BD to experience.

10. The pity of the USA presently, 1970, is that many believers are stuffed with gnosis, but have never believed what they have put into their minds.

Growth in the Christian Life: Objectives
(Category 230)

I. Objective in Growth:

A. Discernment: 2nd and 3rd John

B. To be spiritually self-sustaining: 1 and 2 Timothy, Titus

C. To stop scar tissue build-up: Eph 4:17-20

D. To develop the operation of soul-breathing: Eph 4:23; Ps 42:1; 119:129-131

E. To be properly structuredin edification: (building up of the new man) Eph 4:12, 16 and so on.

1. Residual doctrine: epignosis in the human spirit--to be used as a frame of reference.
2. Orientation to grace: See categories on GRACE
3. Mastery of the details of life
4. Relaxed mental attitude: No mental attitude sins, the flow of agapao love.
5. Capacity to love: Phileo love, a rapport love with God, wife, children, and others.
6. Inner happiness: the mark of maturity

II. Doctrine in the frontal lobe is a prelude to epignosis in the human spirit.

A. Discernment is applying epignosis to teaching and finding out if it is true or false 1 John 4:1.

B. Criticism of the person doing the teaching falls into the category of judgment and is wrong Matt 7:1,2.

Principle: It is not the MAN but the MESSAGE. This principle applies to both good and bad teaching.

III. Minimum requirement in Growth:

A. Understand relationship: Doctrine of positional truth (both RAPT and OPT) which gives stability in eternal security.

B. Understand fellowship--the filling of the Holy Spirit and rebound, 1 Jn 1:9.

C. Understand GAP in its six stages; Communication, Comprehension, Storage, Frame of Reference, Exhale, Edification Structure.

D. Understand how to use promises, techniques, doctrines and principles--in that order.

IV. The Scar Tissue Issue:

A. A believer is free of Scar Tissue at the moment of salvation, Isa 44:22

B. But through mental attitude sins, and adultery scar tissue is formed. Prov 6:32; 2 Tim 3; plus many other scriptures such as Ephesians 4.

C. For a thorough study of Scar Tissue study John 12:39-40; Eph 4:17-21; Prov 6:32. Also see the category on scar tissue of the soul.

V. The Soul-Breathing Issue:

A. The human spirit (Romans 8:16) is the storage closet (Eph 3:18) for doctrinal doctrine (epignosis).

B. The soul and spirit are connected--and epignosis superimposes itself on the facets of the soul. The soul has lungs, is equipped to breath. Note Eph 4:23 (in the Greek); Psalm 42:1; 119:131, "I opened my mouth, and panted."

C. The Mechanics of Soul-breathing:

1. Inhale Bible Doctrine--self-consciousness exhales awareness of Christ, who and what He is!

2. Inhale Bible Doctrine--mentality exhales divine viewpoint in the thought-life.

3. Inhale Bible Doctrine--volition exhales the will of God.

4. Inhale Bible Doctrine--emotion exhales appreciation for the will of God.

5. Inhale Bible Doctrine--conscience exhales divine norms and standards.

6. Inhale Bible Doctrine--the entire soul is breathing and the old sin nature does not distort the soul and God is glorified.

Inhale = gnosis, exhale = epignosis.

VI. The Structure of Edification Issue:

A. As the soul breathes--a pattern is followed in growth, which is identified with this vocabulary; edification structure.

1. Residual doctrine (the foundation of the edification complex)
2. Orientation to grace
3. Mastery of the details of life
4. Relaxed Mental Attitude
5. Capacity to love
6. Inner happiness

B. As the Soul breathes and the edification complex is being built--the believer reflects the glory of God 1 Cor 6:20; Luke 8:16-18; Matt 5:13-16.

Happiness
(Category 231)

1. God had perfect happiness in eternity past and forever. Happiness is the extension of a relaxed mental attitude.

2. In eternity past, God desired to share this happiness with mankind in time. Genesis 2

3. The doctrine of divine decrees (plan of God) included one way to have wonderful happiness in time. Philippians--note especially chapter 2.

4. Man enters the plan of God by faith in Jesus Christ, therefore he has the potential of happiness--beginning at salvation, but dependent upon the building of an edification complex.

5. Any happiness that the unbeliever has is temporary, superficial, and nonsustaining.

6. God designed this happiness for believers to be permanent and stabilized. Based on His own character. See Essence of God

7. Such happiness is:

   a. A mental attitude of joy: Gal. 5:22
   b. Produced by the filling of the Holy Spirit: Eph. 5:18, Gal. 5:22
   c. Perpetuated into the 3rd floor of the "new man" structure (edification complex of the soul).

8. Such joy or inner mental happiness exhibits itself in a capacity to love, an overt rapport toward God, family and others. Such happiness is an indication of living in the Word: Matt. 4:4, Jer. 15:16.

9. This happiness depends upon epignosis in the human spirit, not the details of life for perpetuation. The believer can carry his happiness with him. Whether circumstances are pleasant or unpleasant--he is the same. John 13:17, 1 John 1:4

10. Happiness provided by God is always in the plural.

    a. "Ashre": Heb. - happinesses
    b. "Makarioi": Happinesses - Greek

11. The basis for happiness is the filling of the Spirit plus the Grace Apparatus for Perception.

12. See the category on the Beatitudes.

Healing: Doctrine of
(Category 232)

I. There are Three Categories of Illness:

A. Physiological: A physical illness; organic disease

B. Psychosomatic: Mental illness

C. Demon induced illness: When demons possess unbelievers they can produce certain kinds of diseases. Also Satan and or demons are permitted by God at times to affect believers health from the outside. No believer can be indwelt by a demon.

1. Satan was permitted (from the outside) to buffet P l with a thorn in the flesh type of disease or pain 2 Cor. 12:7.

2. Satan was responsible for Job's illness: Job 2:6 . Permitted by God (since Job is a believer).

3. Satan uses demons to produce disease in individ' ls:

a. Acts 10:38, " . . . and healing all who were oppressed of the devil": These illnesses had as their source, the devil.

b. Luke 13:16 (vs. 10-17)

The cause of this woman's disease is demon possession. The doctors could not heal her- because she was bound by Satan. Doctors today are baffle with demon induced illness. THIS IS NOT A PASSAGE AGAINST DOCTORS!

**********There is two ways--of getting well according to James 5. Prayer here is the spiritual aspect, praying for the individual. The anointing of oil is medical help. This was doctoring in those days--- see the parable of the Good Samaritan. (Luke 10: 30-37.) Oil was used medicinally. Don't read our 1970 modern medicine picture into NT times!

In this Luke 13 passage Christ heals. Note that in cases where demon possession causes illness the casting out of the demon cu the illness. This is TERMED healing, Matt. 10:1, Mark 1:32-34, 6 13, Acts 8:7, 19:12.

In cases where demon possession did not cause illness--they ar st cast out--no mention of healing.

4. Satan uses Demons to cause deafness, dumbness (I ALL OF THIS IS CAUSED BY DEMONS HOWEVER) and paral s. Matt. 9:32-33, 12:22; Mark 5:5, Mark 9:17-18.

5. Satan is able to heal people by his power:

a. Matt. 7:21-23 This passage describes a very prevalent situation today in the large "mass healing" meetings.

(1) The use of "me, Lord, Lord" refers to the constant use of the name of Jesus Christ in apostate meetings of the healing and tongues variety. 7:21

(2) "Many": Many are duped into believing Satan's power is God's power.

(3) "prophesied . . . cast out demons . . . done many wonderful works (in thy name--in the name of Jesus Christ)

This includes prophecies, healings, tongues--and other rank apostacy of this day.

(4) "I never knew you . . .": These are unbelievers.

(5) "ye that work iniquity": Their prophecies casting demons and MANY wonderful works are called iniquity (sin). God's power is not sin--therefore this power by which they operate is SATAN'S.

For example: A demon-possessed faith-healer (unsaved) will be very nice, very well-dressed, very well versed in using the name of Jesus Christ repeatedly--doing everything IN THE NAME OF JESUS. Note the use of "in thy name" in Matt. 7:22.

He will use emotion, he will take up a huge offering, he will have an empiricism (senses) approach. The people who come up to be healed may have demon induced illness, or they may not. But the demon possessed individual cooperates with the individual with demon-induced illness. When he shouts "heal" the demon comes out of the victim and the demon induced illness is no more. The whole crowd of simple and stupid believers or non-believers watching shouts, "Praise God" etc. If the faith healing is not demon possessed--and the victim is not demon possessed it is purely psychomatics--emotianally charged atmosphere which makes the person think they have faith--and think they are healed.

b. 2 Thess. 2:9, " . . . with every kind of power and signs and lying wonders." This is Satanic power in the Tribulation, and its mystery of iniquity is already at work in the Church Age.

II. When Someone Gets Well in a Miraclous way it can be one of Four Sources.

A. God: God is the divine healer--and ONLY DIVINE HEALER

1. He heals sovereignly when He does and on the basis of grace and who and what He is.

2. God does not heal through a spiritual gift of heal... there is no spiritual gift of healing since the Ca... of Scripture has been completed.

3. There is no bona fide faith-healing operating on eart... All are deceivers and frauds, very stupid, very since... and very much showmen in enacting their thing. SEE SPIRITUAL GIFTS CATEGORIES FOR SCRIPTURE ON WH... healing was a temporary spiritual gift.

4. When God heals directly He heals without:

   a. Oil
   b. Hankerchiefs dipped in the Jordan, or in some radio preacher's olive oil from the Holy Land.
   c. Without someone commanding God to heal!
   d. Without sending in your offering
   e. Without some mumbo-jumbo deal called tongues
   f. Generally this appeals to the thothless, brainless, simpleton, unthinking emotional crowd.

5. When God heals He heals on the basis of His charact...

   a. People don't get healed because they are "worthy" to be healed.
   b. People don't get healed because they "have fa... Then the gimmick--they are told if they didn't ... healed, "well, you didn't have enough faith."
   c. In every case where God heals, it does not de... upon the faithfulness of the individual, the faith ... the individual, the works of the individual, it dep... upon the Sovereignty of God, not human approbati... GOD DOES AT TIMES SOVEREIGNLY HEAL PEOPLE.

6. There is not "healing in the atonement" as taught by A. B. Simpson and others. Isa. 53:5 in the Hebrew is "By His bruise we are drawn together." So the first of four reasons why people have a miraclous healing--is the the healing is directly caused by God.

B. Caused by Medical Research and Application: It seems to be prevalent among a certain type of 20th century believer to poo-hoo doctors, medical research, they are "going to dis... ly depend upon God."

   1. But they use hearing aids
   2. They wear glasses
   3. They have false teeth

   Even Paul had physician friend (Luke) with him at times on his travels. ...nd Luke practiced medic... .

C. Caused by Satan: (Unbeliever)

   1. In cases of demon possession

   2. Faith-healer in cooperation with the devil (whom h... calls Jesus) heals in connection with demon-induc... illness.

IV. Caused by a change of mental attitude: Psycosomatics

The frontal lobe gets upset, and it sends signals down to the body and that causes everything from hypertension to rash.

A Now when the mind affects the body, and suddenly there is an emotional charged experience when a very determined and sincere type says you are going to be healed--it actually in some cases was only a change of mental attitude.

B. Here is an individual who is convinced mentally that they have a tumor, cancer, warts, an ulcer or something else.

1. They go to a faith-healer and he goes through his mumbo-jumbo.

a. First swingy hymns: Loud speakers with a big bass beat.
b. There is a great deal of repetition of the name of Jesus.
c. There is a great deal of emphasis on the "wonderful crowds" present, a lot of public relations, testimonials to prove that "God is working." Their motto is diametrically opposed to Christianity, they say SEEING IS BELIEVING, FEELING IS BELIEVING, TOUCHING IS BELIEVING, HEARING IS BELIEVING, SMELLING IS BELIEVING (Jesus filled the room with a heaven-scent fragrance.) This is empiricism. Only faith unlocks the Word, first in salvation and then proper spirituality.
d. There is tremendous emphasis on the offering, and some project like a tent or truck to proclaim the Gospel.
e. And more singing, and maybe a verse or two on what Jesus did with hankerchiefs-and oil.
f. Then the grand climax is the healing service.

All of this is pure deception, and phony all the way. It is the chief form of apostacy in the 70's. On the basis of Bible doctrine don't get mixed up in it.

2. Now as the healing exhibit moves into high gear--he does his "formula" on the stage--and it is a sight for real all the way. The Word says, "We walk by faith, not by sight" 2 Cor. 5:7, Col. 2:6.

a. Suddenly the internal problems disappear--and they walk off the stage.
b. The emotional surge of the meetings has given them the adrenalin that they need to throw their crutches away.

Purely psychological: Doctors are saying that 60% of the patients that walk in the office and say, "Doc, I've got an organic problem, a physical problem" actually have a mental handup. Get the mental hangup removed, and their physical body doesn't ache.

Heaven: Doctrine of
(Category 233)

I. Eternity (Phase 3) has three designations:

A. New Heaven: Rev. 21:1

B. New Earth: Rev. 21:1

C. New Jerusalem: Rev. 21:2, 10

II. The Eternal New Heaven:

A. Replaces the old heavens which are burned with fire: 2 Peter 3:10, 13.

B. This is the eternal residence of the Church which will be constructed out of innumerable light years of space. The expanse is fantastic. 2 Peter 3:13, study closely Rev. 21-22 in regard to "light." There is a tremendous emphasis on light in eternity.

C. Characteristics which apply to the eternal state--will apply to heaven--so read through the entire category.

III. The Eternal New Earth: Rev. 21:1

A. This will replace the present earth: 2 Peter 3:13.

B. This is the result of the eternal, literal promises of the Abrahamic & Palestinic Covenants.

1. Land (literal) was promised to Abraham and his seed forever. Genesis 17:8, "And I will give unto thee, and to thy seed after thee, the land wherein thou art a stranger, all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession; and I will be their God."

2. Some things can be learned about the new earth from the millennial earth, however the new earth will be much more tremendous than the millennial earth. Check out the millennial passages in the Bible.

3. This on the basis of the Unconditional covenants will be the eternal residence of the OT saints, tribulational saints, and no doubt the millennial saints. (All believers except Church Age believers).

IV. The Eternal New Jerusalem: This fulfills 3 separate functions:

A. Headquarters for the universe of eternity: Described in Rev. 21:9-27. Note especially Rev. 21:24. It is the personal resident, therefore, of the Lord Jesus Christ. Rev. 21:22. The bride will be there upon occasion.

B. Fulfills a promise made to Abraham still outstanding. Hebrews 11:9-10. Abraham lived in a tent, died in a tent, and was promised a city in the future.

C. Illustrates something of the glory of eternity: Look at the description of its beauty in Rev. 21.

V. Three Characteristics of the Eternal State: Rev. 21:3-5

A. Personal presence of the Lord Jesus Christ: 21:3

1. "Tabernacle of God" refers to the Lord Jesus Christ

2. Jesus Christ will be accessible to all: 21:22

Principle: Since the tabernacle is beautiful and Jesus Christ dwelt in the tabernacle in the past as per the shekinah glory, He will be in His glory and will not have the humiliation associated in the past with the cross.

3. Rev. 21:23 indicates that Jesus Christ (Lamb) has a resurrection body full of light--your resurrection body also will contain light. Person will not be recognized on the basis of light being refracted or reflected but on the basis of having light inside. Concept of the Tabernacle.

B. Perfect Happiness in Eternity: Rev. 21:4
"wipe away all tears": Tears that come from pressure and sorrow, not happy tears. FOUR THINGS ARE REMOVED:

1. "no more death": Often the focal point of human fears, the word is associated with pain, painful dying.

2. "no more sorrow": Mental agony or pain.

3. "no more crying": Manifestation of pain

4. "no more pain": Physical pain

"are passed away": Aorist: Point of time

C. Perfect and Perpetual Newness: Rev. 21:5

1. "Behold I make all things new": Perpetually new, never gets old.

2. "Write: for these words are true and faithful".

Veracity and immutability guarantee the glories of the eternal future. No rust, no corruption. No sin. Rev. 21:27.

Conclusion: Many other things could be said of heaven and the eternal state. This will be left for further categorization and study.

Heavens: Three
(Category 234)

1. There are three heavens: 2 Cor. 12:1-3. If there is a "third" heaven, there must be two others, a "first" and "second."

2. First heaven: The atmosphere around us, probably up to 90-100 miles out. Gravity may be the boundary. Often mentioned.

3. Second heaven: The abode of angels. Includes the galaxies, stars and planets. Billions and billions of light years of space with millions of celestial bodies moving at rapid rate of speed. Isaiah 14:13 and other passages. One comes to this conclusion by a close study of the category star. Star or stars refers to angels, and the abode of angels. Study it out.

4. Third heaven: The presence of God - throne room. Billions and billions of light years away. Where Jesus Christ is right now. Hebrews 9:24. It is called the heaven of heavens. Deut. 10:14. Angels are also in the 3rd heaven. At this time Satan has access into the third heaven when God the Father abides. Job 1 & 2. He will not have that access after the middle of the Tribulation. Compare Rev. 9:1 ("star" refers to Satan) with Rev. 12:3-4.

5. Satan was the cherub who guarded the Throne and when he fell he influenced a number of the angels, probably one-third. Ezekiel 28:14, "Thou art the anointed (Messianic) cherub (angel, highest rank) that covereth (that guards) . . . holy mountain of God." Rev. 12:4 refers to a third part of the stars (angels) of heaven. See Categories on Angelic Conflict, as well as on Satan (Satan's five "I wills").

6. Now Satan goes up to the throne room on those occasions when the angels assemble. Rev. 21:10, Job 1-2, Zech. 3. Other times he is in the 2nd heaven or on earth. He apparently commutes all over in fulfilling his rulership of the earth.

Hell: Hades-Sheol
(Category 235)

I. The overall designation for the place of ALL departed souls (believers and unbelievers) in the OLD TESTAMENT (note, OT) is Hades or Sheol.

A. Sheol is the Hebrew word for the lower parts of the earth, and is translated "hell".

B. Hades is the Greek word for the lower parts of the earth and is translated "hell."

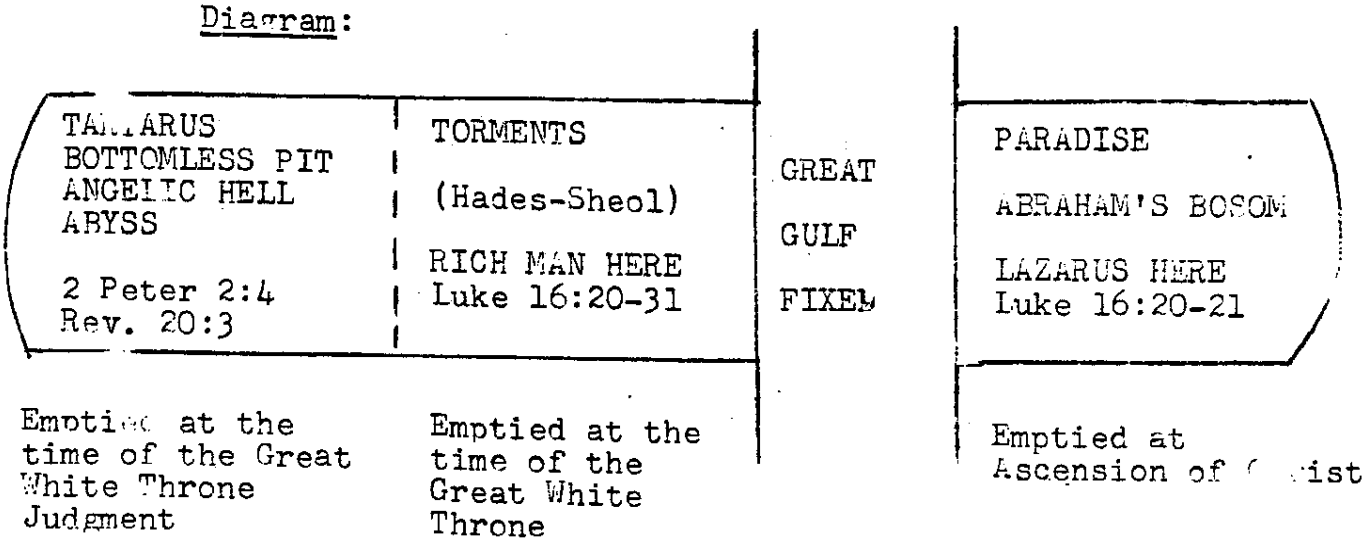
II. In the OT Sheol (Hell) was made up of three parts:

A. Tartarus is that portion of hell where the bound fallen angels are located. 2 Peter 2:4.

B. Torments is that portion of hell where unbeliever's souls are awaiting the Last Judgment (the Great White Throne). Luke 16:23, Rev. 20:11-15.

C. Before the ASCENSION of Jesus Christ, Paradise was located in Hell. A great gulf existed between Torments and Paradise.

Diagram:



III. Paradise is NOW in heaven (in the 3rd heaven where the Throne Room is located. 2 Cor. 12:1-4. In the pre-ascension days (OT) the rich man in Torments (in Hades) saw Abraham and Lazarus (beggar-born again in Paradise (afar off) but still in Hades. Luke 16.

IV. The transfer took place when Jesus ascended. Ephesians 4:8-10.

A. "captivity": They are just soul and spirit (no body)

B. "captive": They are still soul and spirit - no resurrection body yet.

V. Unbelievers are brought from Torments to face the Last Judgment (Great White Throne) where they are judged according to their works and cast into the Lake of Fire: Hell, Tophet, Gehenna. May have a body which can burn forever. John 5:29b, Matt. 10:28

Hell: No Degree of Punishment in Hell
(Category 235a)

1. The Lake of Fire is a literal place - literal fire, real brimstone. Rev. 14:10-11; 19:20; 20:10; 21:8.

2. Degrees of punishment tend to destroy the literal Lake of Fire. (It is not hotter in some places than in others). Matt. 25:41, Rev. 20:10, 14, 15.

3. Degrees of punishment is contrary to the Doctrine of Unlimited Atonement.

4. Degrees of punishment destroy the true issue of salvation, that is rejection of Jesus Christ. Sin is NOT the issue. (One rejector receiving less punishment than another). The issue is that Christ died for our sin!

5. This theory is actually based on the Hegelian theory: THAT EVERY THESIS HAS AN ANTITHESIS.

6. If there is an antithesis in the context, it will be stated Like in John 3:36.

7. Examples:

   Thesis: It says there will not be sorrow in heaven.
   Antithesis: It says there will be sorrow in hell.

   Thesis: It says there will be rewards in heaven.
   Antithesis: None stated. IT DOES NOT SAY there will be degrees of punishment in hell. It seems logical--but often human viewpoint does seem logical.

8. One can be dogmatic--there will be no degrees of punishment in hell on the basis of how sinful the unbeliever was on earth.

9. The only possibility of degrees of punishment in hell, would be on the basis of human good. The one who has the largest pile of human good--gets the hottest place. There is no Scripture for this either.

Heaven: Doctrine of
(Category 233)

I. Eternity (Phase 3) has three designations:

A. New Heaven: Rev. 21:1

B. New Earth: Rev. 21:1

C. New Jerusalem: Rev. 21:2, 10

II. The Eternal New Heaven:

A. Replaces the old heavens which are burned with fire: 2 Peter 3:10, 13.

B. This is the eternal residence of the Church which will be constructed out of innumerable light years of space. The expanse is fantastic. 2 Peter 3:13, study closely Rev. 21-22 in regard to "light." There is a tremendous emphasis on light in eternity.

C. Characteristics which apply to the eternal state--will apply to heaven--so read through the entire category.

III. The Eternal New Earth: Rev. 21:1

A. This will replace the present earth: 2 Peter 3:13.

B. This is the result of the eternal, literal promises of the Abrahamic & Palestinic Covenants.

1. Land (literal) was promised to Abraham and his seed forever. Genesis 17:8, "And I will give unto thee, and to thy seed after thee, the land wherein thou art a stranger, all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession; and I will be their God."

2. Some things can be learned about the new earth from the millennial earth, however the new earth will be much more tremendous than the millennial earth. Check out the millennial passages in the Bible.

3. This on the basis of the Unconditional covenants will be the eternal residence of the OT saints, tribulational saints, and no doubt the millennial saints. (All believers except Church Age believers).

IV. The Eternal New Jerusalem: This fulfills 3 separate functions:

A. Headquarters for the universe of eternity: Described in Rev. 21:9-27. Note especially Rev. 21:24. It is the personal resident, therefore, of the Lord Jesus Christ. Rev. 21:22. The bride will be there upon occasion.

B. Fulfills a promise made to Abraham still outstanding. Hebrews 11:9-10. Abraham lived in a tent, died in a tent, and was promised a city in the future.

C. Illustrates something of the glory of eternity: Look at the description of its beauty in Rev. 21.

V. Three Characteristics of the Eternal State: Rev. 21:3-5

A. Personal presence of the Lord Jesus Christ: 21:3

1. "Tabernacle of God" refers to the Lord Jesus Christ.

2. Jesus Christ will be accessible to all: 21:22

Principle: Since the tabernacle is beautiful and Jesus Christ dwelt in the tabernacle in the past as per the shekinah glory, He will be in His glory and will not have the humiliation associated in the past with the cross.

3. Rev. 21:23 indicates that Jesus Christ (Lamb) has a resurrection body full of light--your resurrection body also will contain light. Person will not be recognized on the basis of light being refracted or reflected but on the basis of having light inside. Concept of the Tabernacle.

B. Perfect Happiness in Eternity: Rev. 21:4
"wipe away all tears": Tears that come from pressure and sorrow, not happy tears. FOUR THINGS ARE REMOVED:

1. "no more death": Often the focal point of human fears, the word is associated with pain, painful dying.

2. "no more sorrow": Mental agony or pain.

3. "no more crying": Manifestation of pain

4. "no more pain": Physical pain

"are passed away": Aorist: Point of time

C. Perfect and Perpetual Newness: Rev. 21:5

1. "Behold I make all things new": Perpetually new, never gets old.

2. "Write: for these words are true and faithful".

Veracity and immutability guarantee the glories of the eternal future. No rust, no corruption. No sin. Rev. 21:27.

Conclusion: Many other things could be said of heaven and the eternal state. This will be left for further categorization and study.

Heavens: Three
(Category 234)

1. There are three heavens: 2 Cor. 12:1-3. If there is a "third" heaven, there must be two others, a "first" and "second."

2. First heaven: The atmosphere around us, probably up to 90-100 miles out. Gravity may be the boundary. Often mentioned.

3. Second heaven: The abode of angels. Includes the galaxies, stars and planets. Billions and billions of light years of space with millions of celestial bodies moving at rapid rates of speed. Isaiah 14:13 and other passages. One comes to this conclusion by a close study of the category star. Star or stars refers to angels, and the abode of angels. Study it out.

4. Third heaven: The presence of God - throne room. Billions and billions of light years away. Where Jesus Christ is right now. Hebrews 9:24. It is called the heaven of heavens. Deut. 10:14. Angels are also in the 3rd heaven. At this time Satan has access into the third heaven when God the Father abides. Job 1 & 2. He will not have that access after the middle of the Tribulation. Compare Rev. 9:1 ("star" refers to Satan) with Rev. 12:3-4.

5. Satan was the cherub who guarded the Throne and when he fell he influenced a number of the angels, probably one-third. Ezekiel 28:14, "Thou art the anointed (Messianic) cherub (angel, highest rank) that covereth (that guards) . . . holy mountain of God." Rev. 12:4 refers to a third part of the stars (angels) of heaven. See Categories on Angelic Conflict, as well as on Satan (Satan's five "I wills").

6. Now Satan goes up to the throne room on those occasions when the angels assemble. Rev. 21:10, Job 1-2, Zech. 3. Other times he is in the 2nd heaven or on earth. He apparently commutes all over in fulfilling his rulership of the earth.

Hell: No Degree of Punishment in Hell
(Category 235a)

1. The Lake of Fire is a literal place - literal fire, real brimstone. Rev. 14:10-11; 19:20; 20:10; 21:8.

2. Degrees of punishment tend to destroy the literal Lake of Fire. (It is not hotter in some places than in others). Matt. 25:41, Rev. 20:10, 14, 15.

3. Degrees of punishment is contrary to the Doctrine of Unlimited Atonement.

4. Degrees of punishment destroy the true issue of salvation, that is rejection of Jesus Christ. Sin is NOT the issue. (One rejector receiving less punishment than another). The issue is that Christ died for our sin!

5. This theory is actually based on the Hegelian theory: THAT EVERY THESIS HAS AN ANTITHESIS.

6. If there is an antithesis in the context, it will be stated. Like in John 3:36.

7. Examples:

   Thesis: It says there will not be sorrow in heaven.
   Antithesis: It says there will be sorrow in hell.

   Thesis: It says there will be rewards in heaven.
   Antithesis: None stated. IT DOES NOT SAY there will be degrees of punishment in hell. It seems logical--but often human viewpoint does seem logical.

8. One can be dogmatic--there will be no degrees of punishment in hell on the basis of how sinful the unbeliever was on earth.

9. The only possibility of degrees of punishment in hell, would be on the basis of human good. The one who has the largest pile of human good--gets the hottest place. There is no Scripture for this either.

Heathenism: The Introduction & Summation
(Category 236)

I. Introduction:

A. Heathenism is not a synonymous term with an aboriginal group of people or culture.

B. There are two points in life that need to be considered in the study of heathenism: God-consciousness, gospel hearing.

C. Negative volition at the point of God-consciousness results in personal heathenism. Negative volition at the point of God consciousness and Gospel hearing results in a heathenistic culture or nation.

D. Positive volition at the point of God-consciousness creates a vacuum into which gospel information is drawn.

E. Negative volition at the point of God-consciousness creates a vacuum into which religion is drawn.

F. Heathenism starts from man's volition. Any negative volition decisions are detrimental to a person's children and to their grandchildren. (Ex. 20--iniquity of the fathers to the 3rd & 4th generation). This pattern can only be broken by positive volition at God-consciousness and Gospel hearing.

G. If a person goes Positive at God-consciousness, God is obligated to show him the Gospel. Ex. Nebuchadnezzar. John 7:17.

H. If a person goes negative at God-consciousness, God is not obligated to show him the gospel, but many times He does. Ex. Pharaoh.

II. Summation: (Use introduction plus summation)

A. If you start with darkness (many systems of heathenism, resulting from negative volition at God-consciousness) you can never work up to the light (gospel). You don't find God through the steps of heathenism. IF YOU START WITH LIGHT (Positive volition at God-consciousness) you can have light (the gospel). If you reject light (negative volition at God-consciousness) your mind is darkened. No matter what system, culture or modus operandi of worship you develop, all of it is darkness.

B. God does not initiate the three deliveries made in Romans 1:24-28, but He simply delivers the individual to his own volition - he has been guilty of negative signals.

C. When born-again, the Holy Spirit puts certain restrains on the OSN. In heathenism the restraints on the OSN are removed--which results in various operations of the lusts in the OSN.

Heathenism: The A B C's of Heathenism (Category 237)

I. Existence of Human Volition (Independent of God's will)

A. See Category on Volition: Three wills

B. Angelic Conflict:

1. God created angels with volition.
2. Satan acted independently of God. Isa. 14:12-15 Satan said "I will" 5 times. Elect angels went with God; fallen angels went with Satan.
3. God sentenced Satan. Matt. 25:41.
4. Satan impugned the character of God: "How can a loving God cast His creatures into the Lake of Fire."? This is human viewpoint.
5. God's answer: God created man with volition.

C. Man has Volition with Positive and Negative Poles:

1. Two tests: In the Garden, tree is the test, man failed and died spiritually.

2. Out of the Garden, the tree is the cross. The issue is always left with man: free will.

3. Choice: God's work or man's work.

D. Co-existence of Two Wills:

1. Sovereignty of God (Absolute will of God). Psalm 135:6. 2 Peter 3:9, " . . . not WILLING that any should perish but that all should come to repentance". (Change of mind about the person of the Lord Jesus Christ).

2. Free Will of Man: He is able to act independently of God. God (in His Sovereignty) gave man free will.

E. Origin of Sin:

1. In Angels: Satan's will

2. In Man: Adam's will (he chose). Result: Spiritual death and the Old Sin Nature. Romans 5:12, 1 Cor. 15:22.

II. World Evangelism: The world has been evangelized in every century, in fact, in every generation. Note 1 Timothy 3:16, Acts 17:6, Col. 1:16, Acts 2, Psalm 19:1-3. Romans 10:18, "sound" of a human voice. Gentiles were evangelized, and many believed.

Secular history records the evangelization through the centuries. For example: Cambridge-Oxford Ancient History--the standard top-notch historical reference series on history is a good one to see the backdrop of human events in the light of God's dealing with man.

III. Five Points of Heathenism:

A. Application of Divine Essence to the Situation:

1. Sovereignty: " . . . not willing that any should perish."
2. +R and Immutability + Eternal life makes it possible for God to be unfair.
3. Justice: God cannot render a bad judgment
4. Omniscience: God is cognizant of individuals. He knows what everything is thinking.
5. Omnipresence: God cannot overlook ANYONE!
6. Omnipotence: God is able to do anything!

GOD CAN ONLY, THEREFORE, BE FAIR

B. Application of Doctrine of Unlimited Atonement:

1. Christ died for all: 1 John 2:2, 2 Peter 2:1, 1 Tim. 2:6, Heb. 2:9, 2 Cor. 5:19.

2. Why? Romans 3:23, "All have sinned" (when Adam sinned) 2 Cor. 5:14-15, "if one died for all, then were all dead".
3. But ALL do not accept the work of Christ. THEREFORE volition of man is still the issue.

   a. John 3:15, " . . . whosoever believeth in Him should not perish but have eternal life.
   b. John 3:36, "He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life; and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him."

C. Application of Divine Sovereignty (God's volition)

2 Peter 3:9, " . . . not willing that any should perish . . .". Therefore God has a responsibility to act in compatibility with His character.

D. God's Responsibility:

1. There are two points in discussing man's awareness of God: God consciousness & Gospel hearing

2. Scriptures stating man seeks after God (Acts 17:27, Psalm 42:1, 2) means seeking in the manner of the existence of God (God-consciousness).

3. Scriptures stating that man does not seek after God (Psalm 10:4, Romans 3:11 means man does not seek in the matter of the Gospel (gospel hearing).

4. At the point of God-consciousness man can:

   a. Desire to know God - Positive Volition
   b. Not desire to know God - Negative Volition

5. If man rejects God (at the point of God-consciousness) then God has no responsibility to present the gospel to him.

   Result: He is judged on the basis of negative volition, no desire to have relationship with Jesus Christ. Rejection of Jesus Christ.

6. HOWEVER, many times God will still give the gospel. Example: Pharaoh

7. If man (ANY member of the human race, regardless of geographical isolation, or linguistic barrier) desires to know God (point of God-consciousness) he will receive doctrinal information on which to make a decision - the gospel. John 7:17, Titus 2:11, Jer. 29:13.

8. In fact, God is OBLIGATED to put that person who goes on positive volition at God-consciousness in a position where he will look at the Gospel. Example: Nebuchadnezzar. John 7:17, "he SHALL KNOW", not just hear it.

9. At point of God-consciousness man uses: Volition
   At point of Gospel hearing man uses: Volition & faith

E. Heathen are heathen because they have used negative volition at:

   1. Point of God-consciousness: Romans 1:19-20
   2. Point of Gospel hearing man uses: Volition & faith

Exegesis of Romans 1:18-21 (High points)

v. 18: "ungodliness": Negative volition at Gospel hearing.
"unrighteousness of men": Negative volition at Gospel hearing.

v. 19: 20: Point of God-consciousness, "they . . . them":

v. 21: "knew God": Gospel hearing (not saved)

"neither were thankful": Rejected cross

"glorified him not as God": Negative volition

"vain . . . imaginations": Perverted in their thoughts, in their mental attitude.

"foolish . . . darkened": became idolators

Hebrew Alphabet
(Category 238)

1.	Aleph	א	aw-lef	12.	Lamed	ל	law-med
2.	Beth	ב	bayth	13.	Mem	מ	mame
3.	Gimel	ג	ghee-mel	14.	Nu	נ	noon
4.	Daleth	ד	daw-leth	15.	Camek	ס	saw-mek
5.	He	ה	hay	16.	Ayin	ע	ahyim
6.	Waw	ו	wow	17.	Phe	פ	fay
7.	Zayin	ז	zahyin	18.	Tsade	צ	tsaw-day
8.	Cheth	ח	khayth	19.	Qoph	ק	cofe
9.	Teth	ט	tayth	20.	Resh	ר	raysh
10.	Yod	י	yod	21.	Sin, shin	שׁ שׂ	siyn, shem
11.	Kaph	כ	caf	22.	Tau	ת	tau

Using the verb "to kill", the following Hebrew stems are standard:

1. Qal stem: Active voice, indicative mood, DECLARATIVE: "kills"
2. Niphal stem: Passive voice, DECLARATIVE: "was killed"
3. Hithpael stem: Reflexive middle (like the Greek) DECLARATIVE: "suicide" (he killed himself)
4. Piel stem: Intensive, active: "he kills violently"
5. Pual stem: Intensive, passive: "was killed violently"
6. Hiphil stem: Intensive, causative, active: "to cause to kill"
7. Hophal stem: Intensive, causative, passive: "caused to be killed"

The believer should be familiar with both the Greek and Hebrew alphabet, and basic grammar because knowing the original languages are the basis for accurate Bible teaching.

Hebrews 6:1-6, Explanation
(Category 239)

1. In Hebrews 5:1-10 Paul is giving them the Doctrine of the High Priesthood of Christ, when he stops and tells them why he is going to do chapter 6 before he continues.

2. They cannot take it because of the lack of growth and they are out of fellowship. They should be teachers but they still do not understand the basics.

3. v. 1 should read: "Knowing what you are leaving, let us go on unto perfection (keep moving to maturity) not laying again the foundation (the basics) of:" (then the verse gives a list of the basics.

4. These basic doctrines are:

   a. Repentance from dead works: Human good. Filling of the Holy Spirit is the means of not producing dead works (human good).

   b. Faith toward God: Faith-rest life

   c. Doctrine of baptisms: There are seven

   d. Laying on of hands: Identification, a doctrine used especially at this time.

   e. Resurrection of the dead: Doctrine of resurrections

   f. Eternal Judgment

5. When this list is referred to again, as it is in verse 6, only the first is mentioned, but all six are referred to. This is seen in the Greek grammar.

   One of the laws of interpretation of Scripture reads: "The use of a word in context is determined by the FIRST USE of the word". Repentance was used in v. 1 as the head of a list of basic doctrines - the ABC'S.

6. v. 3 says that God will permit them to grow up. 1 class condition.

7. v. 4 starting with "for those who were once enlightened . . ." and through v. 5 is a parenthesis and refers to believers. This is once and for enlightened and once and for all tasted.

   "tasted" is the same word as is used in Heb. 2:9 where it says Jesus Christ should "taste death for every man". This was not just a sip.

8. In v. 6, "if they shall fall away" should be translated "having fallen away."

9. This is an aorist participle and should precede the action of the main verb: "it is impossible to renew".

believers and they are going to the temple (which was still in existence at this time) and offering sacrifices and confessing their sins to the priest. They were not oriented to dispensations.

11. These were believer priests and by doing this they were saying in effect that the sacrifice of Jesus Christ is not efficacious "crucifying the Son of God afresh".

12. They have "fallen away" NOT FROM THEIR SALVATION, but from their temporal fellowship with God because of what they had been doing.

13. v. 4-6 should read:

"Having fallen away (having gotten out of fellowship) it is impossible [for those who were once (and for all) enlightened, and have (once and for all) tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers (partners) of the Holy Spirit, and have (once and for all) tasted of the good word of God and the power of the world to come] to renew (to teach them) again unto repentance (the list of basic doctrines - see point 5) seeing (so long as) they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put Him to an open shame." (Offering of sacrifices in the temple.)

14. They are out of fellowship and it is impossible to teach them again the list of basic doctrines mentioned while they are still offering these sacrifices and are out of fellowship.

15. To teach a believer, who is out of fellowship, any doctrine, especially rebound, a human illustration is needed. See Romans 6:19, "manner of men": A human illustration.

Heirship (Inheritance
(Category 240)

1. Christ is the heir of all things. Heb. 1:2
2. Heirship is based on Sonship. Rom. 8:16-17
3. This heirship demands eternal life. Titus 3:7, 1 Cor. 15:50
4. Heirship denotes sharing the destiny of Christ (joint heirs). The Lord Jesus Christ is the heir of God. Ephesus 1:11, Romans 8:17.
5. Heirship is based on election. Heb. 9:15
6. Heirship connotes eternal security. 1 Peter 1:4-5
7. Heirship is provided for us on the basis of grace. Gal. 3:29
8. The indwelling Holy Spirit is the down payment on our inheritance. Eph. 1:14, Gal. 4:6
9. Salvation is the qualification for heirship. Col. 1:12
10. Heirship is the plan of God. Eph. 1:11
11. Unbelievers shall not have an inheritance. 1 Cor. 6:9-10, Gal. 5:21.
12. Inheritance is perfect eternal prosperity. Operation PEP
13. Four characteristics of our inheritance, 1 Peter 1:4, "To an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you."
    a. Incorruptible: Inheritance cannot be destroyed by death
    b. Undefiled: Cannot be defiled by the old sin nature
    c. Fadeth: Cannot be destroyed by catastrophe, either natural or human.
    d. Reserved: Cannot be destroyed by time.
14. Inheritance is a link to Phase 3.

Romans 8:17, "And if children, then heirs; heirs of God and joint-heirs with Christ . . ."

Holy Spirit: Filling
(Category 241)

1. The Holy Spirit INDWELLS for the purpose of glorifying the Lord Jesus Christ; this indwelling teams up with the filling of the Holy Spirit to glorify however. Indwelling alone does not guarantee glorification of Christ.

2. The Indwelling of the Holy Spirit is permanent. John 14:16.

3. Command in Ephesians 5:18 is: Be habitually refilled with the Holy Spirit.

4. At any point in our lives we are either SPIRITUAL (filling--controlling ministry of the Holy Spirit) or Carnal (unconfessed sin in the life) 1 Cor. 3:1-3.

5. Sin grieves the Holy Spirit (Eph. 4:30) and human good quenches His power in us (1 Thess. 5:19).

6. Therefore it follows that the hindrance to the filling of the Holy Spirit is unconfessed sin in the life, and thus to be filled with the Holy Spirit, sin must be confessed (1 John 1:9) which results in the Holy Spirit filling the life, motivating and producing divine good.

7. Result: Christ is glorified in the believer's life because the Holy Spirit produces the fruit of the Spirit in the believer, which is the character of Christ.

8. Nothing good is produced in the Christian life apart from the filling of the Holy Spirit. Romans 8:8, Gal. 3:3.

9. Imitation is the great issue in spirituality.

   a. The Believer in fellowship imitates God:

      Eph: 5:1, Greek says, "Keep on becoming an imitator of God, beloved children." Eph. 1:6, "accepted in the Beloved"

   b. Believer out of fellowship imitates the unbeliever. 1 John 1:6, 2 Cor. 3:3.

10. Results of the filling of the Spirit:

   a. Imitation of Christ: John 16:14, 2 Cor. 3:3, Phil. 1:20 Gal. 4:19
   b. Perception of the Word: John 14:26, 16:12-14, 1 Cor. 2:9-16.
   c. Witnessing: Acts 1:8, 2 Cor. 3-5
   d. Guidance: Rom. 8:14, Eph. 5:16-18
   e. Assurance: Romans 8:14-16, Gal. 4:5-6 (Knowing eternal security is true)
   f. Worship: Phil. 3:3, John 4:24
   g. Prayer: Eph. 6:18 with Psalm 66:18
   h. Helping other Christians to rebound: Gal. 6:1

Holy Spirit: Fruit of the Spirit: Gal. 5:22-23
(Category 242)

I. Definition: The fruit of the Spirit is the character of Christ being formed in the believer while being filled with the Spirit.

II. Types of Production of the Fruit of the Spirit:

A. Inward or selfward:

1. Love: Mental attitude - what you think. 1 Cor. 13:4-7. Mental attitude which describes the divine attitude of love. A relaxed mental attitude toward the human race, free from envy, jealousy, hatred, implacability, etc.

2. Joy: Stimulated mental attitude of inner happiness. Comes from knowing doctrine.

3. Peace: Mental attitude stability

a. First: Peace with God (Reconciliation) Rom. 5:1
b. Next: Peace of God (filling of the Holy Spirit)

B. Outward or Neighborward:

4. Longsuffering: Relaxed overt attitude toward the human race. Result of having love, joy, peace. This is faith-rest under pressure from people and circumstances. Eph. 4:1-3, " . . . walk worthy . . . in love". (In the filling of the Holy Spirit)

5. Gentleness: Mental attitude of kindness and grace toward others (give others the benefit of the doubt). 2 Tim. 2:24, "strive" bully others--wrong. Speaks of good manners.

6. Goodness: Overt expression of grace. If you think gentleness, you will act goodness. Eph. 4:32, 1 Thess. 5:15, Col. 3:13.

C. Upward or Godward:

7. Faith: Using faith as the sole means of perception in transferring gnosis to epignosis, not operating on rationalism and empiricism.

8. Meekness: Humility. The mental attitude of grace with regard to divine provision. An attitude of grace orientation--not who and what we are, it is who and what He is. Passive--we receive humility.

9. Temperance: Self-control. Self-discipline. Controlling your tongue, thoughts, actions. When it is time to study, you do it. 1 Cor. 9:27.

When you are in fellowship (filled with the Spirit) you do not necessarily manifest all of the fruit of the Spirit, but various situations bring out various manifestations.

Holy Spirit: Glorification of Christ
(Category 243)

1. The Holy Spirit did not come to indwell all believers until the Lord Jesus Christ had ascended and was glorified: in the Church Age. John 7:38-39.

2. The purpose of the INDWELLING of the Holy Spirit in this dispensation is not to glorify the Holy Spirit (John 16:13) but to glorify Christ (John 16:14) while He is absent from the earth.

3. The purpose for the INDWELLING of the Holy Spirit in the body of the believer is to glorify the Lord Jesus Christ and are so commanded in 1 Cor. 6:20. This is accomplished by the filling of the Holy Spirit. Eph. 5:18, with 1 John 1:9.

4. The believer's body is the temple of the Holy Spirit (1 Cor. 6:19) and this glorification occurs on the inside of the believer. 1 Cor. 3:16.

5. When the believer is filled with the Holy Spirit (in fellowship) his life is written by the Holy Spirit (2 Cor. 3:3) declared to be the epistles (letters) of Christ written by the Holy Spirit.

6. When the believer is filled with the Holy Spirit, Christ is at home in the body. Eph. 3:16-17. V. 17, " . . . that Christ may dwell" means to "dwell down" to be a home in the soul.

7. Therefore the transitional command: Romand 13:14, " . . . put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ": Filling of the Holy Spirit produces the fruit of the Spirit.

   " . . . make not provision for the flesh . . ." (the old sin nature) Use of 1 John 1:9 provides cleansing, then the Holy Spirit controls, then the use of GAP (Grace Apparatus for Perception) operates and the edification complex is built. Christ is glorified. Jo 16:14

8. When the believer is controlled by the Holy Spirit, the Lord is glorified : Phil. 1:20, with 1 Cor. 6:19-20.

9. When the believer is filled with the Holy Spirit, the character of the incarnate Christ is formed in his life. Gal. 4:19, Gal. 5: 22-23.

10. The "fruit of the Spirit" (Gal. 5:22-23) is the character of Christ as He walked on the earth.

11. All believers are ambassadors for Christ (2 Cor. 5:20) but when a believer is out of fellowship his representation of Christ is not Christ glorifying.

12. The carnal believer is commanded to wake up (Be filling with the Holy Spirit) and let the Holy Spirit glorify Him. Eph. 5:14-18

13. The glorification of Christ is done through the shining forth of the edification complex. Believers are "lights", reflectors.

14. As one is filled with the Spirit, takes in the Word and transfers it by faith--he gets a frame of reference, is able to apply the Word of God to experience. The ultimate in growth is this edification complex based on epignosis (residual doctrine.)

On this is built:

a. Orientation to grace
b. Relaxed inner mental attitude
c. Inner happiness
d. Capacity to love (phileo love)
e. Mastery of the details of life

This combined structure brings maximum glory to God. The believer is reflecting the glory of God.

15. A key passage . . . is Eph. 4:17-23

a. v. 17: As a believer don't walk like an unbeliever!

b. v. 18: A believer can walk in darkness and blindness! (Just like an unbeliever) Vacuum in the mind.

c. v. 19: Such a walk in the believer causes scar tissue of the soul.

d. v. 20: Believer, sharpen up--DON'T ACT LIKE AN UNBELIEVER!

e. v. 22: Rebound--the first solution to scar tissue

f. v. 23: Soul breathing--the 2nd solution to scar tissue

g. v. 24: The edification complex, 3rd solution to scar tissue.

Holy Spirit: Indwelling (Church Age)
(Catergory 244)

1. The Holy Spirit INDWELLS every regenerate person. Rom. 5:5, 8:8-9.

2. The Holy Spirit indwells at the MOMENT OF SALVATION. Gal. 3:2, 4:6.

3. In the Old Testament times, the Holy Spirit empowered certain believers TEMPORARILY for specific purposes. 1 Sam. 16:13 with Psalm 51:11.

4. In the New Testament (Church Age) from the Day of Pentecost to the rapture of the Church, the Holy Spirit indwells every believer at the moment of salvation. 1 Cor. 12:13b.

5. The indwelling of the Holy Spirit cannot be lost; it is permanent as is salvation. John 14:16-17.

6. The indwelling of the Holy Spirit is the POTENTIAL POWER RESIDENT IN THE believer, the use of which depends upon the filling of the Holy Spirit. 1 John 1:9.

7. New Testament: The indwelling of the Holy Spirit makes the body of the believer the sanctuary (temple of God). 1 Cor. 3:16, 17; 1 Cor. 6:19.

   Old Testament: Sanctuary was the tabernacle (tent in the desert)

8. Because we are INDWELT we should stay FILLED. 1 Cor. 6:20

9. Sin will NOT remove the INDWELLING HOLY SPIRIT in the Church Age. John 14:16.

10. Provision has been made for sin in 1 John 1:9.

11. The purpose of the INDWELLING of the Holy Spirit is to enable the believer to:

    a. Understand spiritual truth: John 16:13, 1 Cor. 2:12

    b. Glorify Christ by living a supernatural life. John 16:14, 1 Cor. 6:20, Gal. 5:22.

    c. Witness for Christ. Acts 1:8

Holy Spirit: "I will pour out of my Spirit"
(Joel 2:28-32 as quoted in Acts 2)
(Category 245)

1. A quotation does not always interpret, a quotation sometimes illustrates, as in Acts 2:17.

2. Peter quotes Joel 2:28-32 in Acts 2:16-21.

3. This NOT the fulfillment of Joel 2:28-32 but is an illustration to refute the accusation of drunkenness.

4. These believers are actually using the gift of tongues under the power of the Holy Spirit and can no more be charged with drunkenness than the believers in the Joel passage.

5. These people are familiar with the Book of Joel. They knew that the activities of Joel 2 reflected spirituality in the millennium.

6. The Joel 2 passage by interpretation is the millennium. The phenomenon which they observed is in the first 38 years of the Church Age.

7. Peter does not say that the Joel passage is fulfilled. He is merely establishing a parallel between the phenomenon which is described in Joel 2 and the phenomenon which is occuring at that moment.

8. Joel passage could not be fulfilled at this point because of the doctrine of the mystery. See Category on Church Universal--doctrine of the mystery. Eph. 3:1-6, Col. 1:25-26, Rom. 16:25-26.

9. The book of Joel is in the OT and no Church Age doctrine is given in the OT, therefore Joel is not talking about the Church Age.

10. The Joel passage refers to the Spirit-filled believer in the millennium only (interpretation). Therefore, what is being said here, is that the Joel passage merely illustrates, but does not fulfill.

11. The charge of drunkenness is going to be refuted by Peter by saying that what they see is not drunkenness, it is a spiritual phenomenon. They are no more drunken than the millennial saints as depicted in Joel 2:28-32.

12. Acts 2:16: "this is that": THIS IS THE SAME KIND OF THING AS THAT. The Day of Pentecost occurrence parallels the millennium.

Holy Spirit in the Millennium
(Category 246)

1. Believers of all ages will be in resurrection bodies in the millennium with the exception of (see point 2).

2. Tribulation believers who are alive at the 2nd Advent will go into the millennium in their physical bodies.

3. These believers in physical bodies will be indwelt by the Holy Spirit.

4. All believers in physical bodies (non-resurrection bodies) will have old sin natures:

   a. Physical birth from these believers who are indwelt by the Holy Spirit will produce unbelievers with old sin natures. Therefore they must personally believer in Christ.

   b. The old sin nature is restrained in the millennium because:

      (1) The Lord Jesus will be present and visible. (Omniscient)
      (2) Believers in resurrection bodies will be present and observing.
      (3) Angels will be observing
      (4) Universal indwelling of the Holy Spirit
      (5) Maximum knowledge of doctrine

5. When Jesus Christ returns to the earth at the 2nd Advent, Operation Footstool is completed: All demons are removed from the earth, including Satan, therefore no religion.

6. Because Christ is on the earth and it is not necessary to produce the character of Christ, spirituality becomes a matter of ecstatics - an appreciation of the person of Christ as He lives and reigns on the earth.

7. There will be great spirituality in the millennium. The Lord Jesus Christ will be present, and there will be perfect environment. Joel 2:28-29.

   a. v. 28: "afterward": After the 2nd Advent
      "my spirit": Holy Spirit
      "upon all flesh": Tribulation believers alive at the 2nd Advent in physical bodies.
      "prophesy": OT manifestation of the Spirit's control

   b. v. 29: "upon the servants and upon the handmaids": All believers in the millennium will be indwelt by the HS.

8. Isa. 65:24, Prayer system of the millennium. All will be controlled by the Holy Spirit.

9. System of worship in the Millennium. Zech. 14:16-17

Holy Spirit in the Old Testament
(Category 247)

I. God the Holy Spirit is Eternal Life. Heb. 9:14

II. God the Holy Spirit has helped mankind and influenced the world from the beginning. Gen. 1:2b.

III. In Creation:

A. The Father planned or designed. 1 Cor. 8:6a, Ps. 102:25
B. The Son did the creating. Eph. 3:9, Col. 1:16
C. The Holy Spirit restored original creation after it was destroyed. Psalm 104:30, Genesis 1:2b.

IV. After Creation the Holy Spirit did not leave the world but continued to:

A. Reveal God's will to men.
B. Inspire the prophets to write Scripture: 2 Peter 1:21
C. Work miracles thru the prophets and preachers.

V. Purpose of the Holy Spirit in the Old Testament:

A. God is Sovereign: Psalm 135:6, "Whatsoever the Lord pleased, that did He . . ."
B. Holy Spirit empowered some believers in the OT, but not all.
C. It was not God's purpose to fill or live in every believer in the Old Testament.
D. God CHOSE to give certain believers the Holy Spirit for His purpose; it was not their qualification, but was God's SOVEREIGN decision.
E. It is not who and what they were but who and what God is.
F. The Holy Spirit was WITH all believers (OMNIPRESENT) but the Holy Spirit was not IN (empowering) all believers.
G. In OT times one could ask for the Holy Spirit and receive Him under special conditions. Elisha's request was granted. 2 Kings 2:9, 15.
H. The Father is the one who sends the Holy Spirit on these special missions. Matt. 10:20 "Spirit of your Father."
I. Empowering of the Holy Spirit could be lost. David prayed, "take not thy Holy Spirit from me." Psalm 51:11, this prayer was a result of sin in his life.
J. Empowering of the Holy Spirit was removed when the work was finished.

John 14:17b: "with you": para + accusative = alongside of
"shall be": future from then
"in you": en + Dative = in

VI. Three Occasions in the OT where the Holy Spirit had a ministry with a carnal believer:

A. Balaam: Numbers 24:2
B. Samson: Judges 13:25, 14:6, 15:14
C. King Saul: 1 Sam. 19:23-24 (Today, sin in the life hinders the Holy Spirit's power but not His indwelling).

VII. Those Empowered in the Old Testament:

A. Joseph was the first believer mentioned as being empowered. Gen. 41:38, empowered with the Holy Spirit to perserve a nation from starvation during a famine.

B. Bezaleel, Aholiab: Workers on the tabernacle were given special wisdom and ability through the power of the Holy Spirit. Ex. 35:30-35.

C. Workers on Aaron's garments. Ex. 28:3.

D. Moses and the elders (70) who helped him were empowered by the Holy Spirit to lead the children of Israel out of Egypt. Numbers 11:16-17

E. King David was empowered. 1 Sam. 16:13

F. King Saul was empowered. 1 Sam. 10:6
Perhaps Saul could have been Israel's greatest king but through sin and continued disobedience, the Holy Spirit left Saul. 1 Sam. 16:14. The Lord allowed mental illness.

G. The prophets were empowered. Elijah, Elisha, 1 & 2 Kings. (Isaiah, Daniel; 2 Peter 1:21)

H. Samson, a judge, was empowered. Judges 13:25; 14:6; 15:14.

VIII. SUMMARY:

A. The Holy Spirit empowered SPECIFIC PEOPLE for SPECIFIC JOBS.

B. The Holy Spirit gave some people special understanding and wisdom:

1. Became great leaders of God's people, such as some of the judges.

2. Reveal God's word (Writers of the OT)

C. The Holy Spirit gave some special skills, or unusual physical strength for use in God's service, such as:

1. Workers on the tabernacle.

2. Samson

D. The Holy Spirit was removed because:

1. Work was finished, or

2. Because of sin

Holy Spirit: Sealing Ministry
(Category 248)

I. The sealing work of the Holy Spirit is the basis of our ETERNAL SECURITY. Eph. 4:30.

II. Three phases to salvation is given in Eph. 1:13:

A. You must hear the Word of truth. "after that (when) ye heard the Word of Truth."

B. You must believer. " . . . in whom also after that ye believed."

C. "Ye were sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise."

III. Sealing indicates:

A. A seal is used on invoices to authenticate them - to establish them as genuine.

B. A seal indicates ownership. We are in the plan of God. We belong to God.

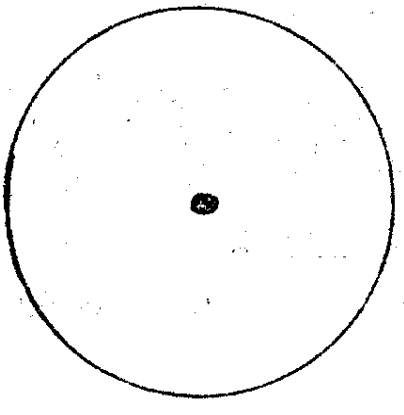
C. A seal ratifies (approves) treaties and documents. The Holy Spirit ratifies the New Covenant (salvation).

D. A seal is used to guarantee, preserve, and protect. Holy Spirit is the guarantee of our Eternal Security.

IV. A Portion of our Inheritance: Eph. 1:14

A. The Holy Spirit is the "earnest" (down-payment) of our inheritance until the "redemption of the purchased possession". (Resurrection of the believer's body at the Rapture). 1 Thess. 4:16-18.

B. "Earnest" in the Greek means a dot with a circle around it.



The Lord has put a circle around us. We are His possession. Our POSITION in Christ.

C. "Who hath also sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts." 2 Cor. 1:22

Holy Spirit: Five Sins Against
(Category 249)

I. By Unbelievers Only:

A. Resistance of the Holy Spirit. Acts 7:51. Rejection of the Lord Jesus Christ in the Church Age. Pre-salvation ministry of the Holy Spirit is a convicting ministry (John 16:7-11) of:

1. Sin of unbelief
2. +R of God, -R of man.
3. Judgment

Rejecting Jesus Christ is resisting this ministry of the Holy Spirit.

B. Blasphemy against the Holy Spirit. Matt. 12:31-32

Rejection of Jesus Christ while Jesus Christ was ministering on the earth (previous dispensation: Jewish age). Jesus Christ was filled with the Holy Spirit during His earthly ministry and to not trust in Him was blasphemy against the Holy Spirit. An unpardonable sin.

II. By Believers: (All are a result of being controlled by the old sin nature)

A. Lying to the Holy Spirit: Acts 5:3
False motivation - Approbation lust sin.

B. Grieving the Holy Spirit. Eph. 4:30

Producing sins from the area of weakness in your old sin nature: Moral issues (immorality), sins of the tongue, mental attitude sins. Any sin in the life of the believer which involves a moral or ethical issue.

C. Quenching the Holy Spirit: 1 Thess. 5:19

Producing human good from the area of strength in the old sin nature, such as witnessing, giving money, etc., to gain approbation. Human good soothes the conscience and keeps the believer from using rebound. (1 John 1:9)

Do it as unto the Lord, or don't do it!

Disobedience to God's Word that doesn't involve an ethical or moral issue.

Holy Spirit: Sustaining Ministry to Jesus Christ
(Category 250)

1. Prophecy of the sustaining ministry in the life of Jesus Christ was given over 700 years before He came. Isa. 11:2-3, 42:1-4, 61:1-2. Isaiah prophesied that when Messiah would come, the Holy Spirit would sustain, empower and fill Him so that the Father's perfect will would be accomplished in His life.

2. Holy Spirit sustained the humanity of Jesus Christ at His birth. Matthew 1:18-21, Luke 1:35.

3. Jesus Christ was sustained by the Holy Spirit only in His humanity because Jesus Christ is co-equal with the Holy Spirit in His deity.

4. As the God-Man He revealed the Essence Box. Heb. 1:3

5. As humanity He relied on the sustaining ministry of the Holy Spirit, and was led and guided by the Holy Spirit. Matt. 4:1, Mark 1:12.

6. He didn't depend upon His divine attributes to perform functions. Heb. 2:14-15. Phil. 2:6-8, Greek says, "He emptied Himself."

7. Jesus Christ subordinated His Deity to the Will of the Father. He did not use the characteristics of His Deity independently of the Father's plan.

8. Therefore, Jesus Christ, during His incarnation, depended entirely upon the sustaining ministry of the Holy Spirit.

9. He did not give up His Divine Essence. (Deity was always present omnipresent) but He walked as a man, and as true humanity (indwelt by the Holy Spirit).

   a. He was never commanded to be filled with the Holy Spirit
   b. He was always filled with the Holy Spirit
   c. Holy Spirit was given without measure to Him. John 3:34

10. The Holy Spirit was present in a special way at the baptism of Jesus Christ to guarantee that He would sustain Jesus Christ during His ministry. Matt. 3:16

11. The Holy Spirit empowered the humanity of Jesus Christ during His ministry, in His preaching and performing miracles in the power of the Holy Spirit. Luke 4:14, 15, 18. Matt. 12:18, 28. "if": 1 class condition and I do.

12. Jesus Christ gave himself for crucifixion in the power of the Holy Spirit. Heb. 9:14.

13. The ministry of the Holy Spirit ceased when Jesus was on the cross. Psalm 22:1, 22:3, Matt. 27:46. The first "my God" refers to God the Father, the second "my God" refers to the Holy Spirit.

14. Holy Spirit had a part in the resurrection of Jesus Christ. Romans 8:11, 1 Peter 3:8, Romans 1:4.

15. Present ministry of the Holy Spirit to Jesus Christ is to glorify Jesus Christ in the life of the believer. John 16:14, John 7:39.

    a. The believer in fellowship is set to glorify Christ.

    b. Glorifying Jesus Christ is a result of soul breathing and the edification complex. The manifestation of the new nature.

16. Jesus Christ set the pattern of the Church Age.

Holy Spirit: Doctrine of the Transition (Category 251)

1. Just as the Holy Spirit sustained the humanity of Christ during His ministry, the Holy Spirit sustains the believer. John 14:12. Top Circle: Indwelling; Bottom Circle: Filling.

2. Sustaining ministry depends upon the filling of the Holy Spirit. Eph. 5:18, with 1 John 1:9.

3. When the believer is filled with the Holy Spirit, the character of Christ is formed in His life. Gal. 4:19.

4. Therefore the transitional command:

   "Put on the Lord Jesus Christ . . .": the filling of the Holy Spirit. Romans 13:14 accomplished by 1 John 1:9.

Ten Ways to Grieve the Holy Spirit Eph. 4:17-30
(Category 252)

I. Thinking as an Unbeliever: Human viewpoint: Eph. 4:17

A. A carnal believer imitates an unbeliever.

B. Starts in the mind; believer thinks as an unbeliever, i.e. human viewpoint. The thought pattern of the carnal believer produces the behaviour pattern of an unbeliever.

C. Christianity emphasizes what is on the inside - what motivates the believer. Prov. 23:7.

D. Walk of the unbeliever: Vanity, emptiness of divine viewpoint.

E. The believer thinks as an unbeliever--because he is minus doctrine.

II. Ignorance of the Word - Principle: Principle: No Doctrine. Eph. 4:18

A. The ignorant believer keeps on being ignorant of the supernatural Christian way of life. Believers do not live the Christian way of life because they are minus doctrine, promises, techniques, and dispensations.

B. The believer receives (passive voice) darkness by catering to human viewpoint.

C. Principle: When you do not know the Word, you are alienated from God's life even though you are born again and have eternal life; therefore, you fail to live the CWL.

D. Believers minus doctrine operate on tradition, emotions, and rationalism.

III. Moral apathy or making a vocation of lasciviousness: Uncontrolled lust: Ephesians 4:19.

A. The carnal believer is callous to doctrine and betrays himself to unbridled lust - lasciviousness and dotes on the details of life like power, prominence, etc. Callousness takes place and THEN vocation: Lasciviousness.

B. When the believer is minus doctrine and looks at life from the human viewpoint, he is in status quo moral apathy. He has no concern for others. Example: Not helping your country when it is fighting for its freedom.

C. "Past feeling": v. 19 Idiom for callousness or insensitivity to moral issues; as a result, they have given themselves over to lasciviousness - resulting in:

1. Darkness

2. Alienation

3. Callousness

IV. Ignoring Bible Teaching: Ephesians 4:20-21

A. The believer does not learn this negative attitude from the Lord Jesus Christ.

B. The order of learning the Word of God is hearing and teaching. v. 21

C. Negative volition to Bible doctrine leads to negative volition to doctrinal teaching.

D. Why, having started with DV (believer accepting Jesus Christ as Saviour) have you reverted to human viewpoint (believer rejecting Bible teaching). 1 Cor. 2:16.

V. Activity of the Old Sin Nature: Ephesians 4:22-24

A. Negative command: v. 22

1. "That . . ." A purpose clause indicating to stop grieving the Holy Spirit.

2. The old sin nature is in a constant state of corruption, and believers can only "put it off" by rebound, and the resultant control of the Holy Spirit.

3. You put off the old sin nature as you would put off soiled clothes. The standard, or criterion of your ways--are not to be those of the sin nature--either human good or sin.

4. "old man": The old man is the old sin nature.

B. Positive command: v. 23

1. "Be renovated inwardly (present passive imperative) in the breathing of your mind."

2. This refers to the inhale and exhale of Bible doctrine according to GAP. (See Category on the Grace Apparatus of Perception).

3. Principle: The Christian Way of Life starts on the inside

C. Second Positive Command: v. 24

1. "Put on (present imperative) the new man, which by the standard of God is created (aorist participle) in +R and true holiness."

2. You as a believer are a "new man" (new in position, 2 Cor. 5:17) and should have a desire to put on the new nature. You must be a new creature (born-again) before the "new man" operation begins.

3. Plus R and True Holiness refer to our position in Christ, separated to God.

4. "is created" is passive voice. The new man receives this quality--righteousness and holiness. The new man is the edification complex, which is created in the believer through GAP.

VI. By false doctrine or lying: Ephesians 5:25

A. When the believer has an empty mind, it fills up with false doctrine.

B. "Lying" is literally "the lie" or falsehood - perversion of Bible doctrine.

C. "Putting away": Aorist middle--you are benefitted

D. Then by contrast "speak truth".

VII. Incorrect Use of Anger: Ephesians 4:26

A. See the three Greek words for anger under the category of Anger: Page 30.

B. Be you angry (orge - present middle imperative) and sin not. Orge here is used of an anger against false doctrine--have discernment minus the mental attitude sins. Don't get out of fellowship when you thihk of false doctrine.

C. Wrath is paragismos--this involves the emotions and is forbidden. "Sin not": The believer does not resent the person, but the false doctrine.

D. "Let not": (Present Active Imperative) Make it your habit to live each day, one day at a time. The principle of v. 26: Righteous indignation can be good; however, the improper use of anger is sinful and grieves the Holy Spirit.

VIII. Submission to Satan (Giving room to him) Ephesians 4:27

A. In developing an edification complex, one does not give room to the devil.

1. Satan cannot indwell a believer, but he can influence a believer. Satan indwelt Judas, but he influenced Peter.

2. Satan gains room or a place when we go legalistic, religious, operate on human good--being out of fellowship and so on.

B. Ignorance of Doctrine makes a believer vunerable to the devil's wiles. Believer should understand the cross and the two circles, GAP, essence of God, essence of the OSN, doctrine of scar tissue, and doctrine of the angelic conflict.

IX. Dishonesty in Business: Ephesians 4:28

A. "Stop stealing now." Paul is saying, "you are in the process of stealing--so stop it now." Pres. act. imperative.

B. In place of stealing, engage in legitimate business practices. The Believer has the right to make a living, to labor, working very hard.

C. "That he may give": The believer also has a responsibility to give to others in need.

D. The believer in business is in full time Christian service just as much as any minister or missionary. Dishonesty neutralizes this portion of our Christian duty, therefore, grieves the Holy Spirit.

X. The Sins of the Tongue: Ephesians 4:29

A. "Every word that is corrupt, out of your mouth, let it not proceed, flow out, but that which is good, to the use of building up, edifying, that it may give (minister) present grace to the hearers."

Instead of the sins of the tongue--build an edification complex.

B. "Good": Good that is intrinsically good--divine good, the divine viewpoint of life. We are to pass grace on to others by the use of the tongue.

C. Corrupt - Bad, rotten

D. Most believers today try to minimize the sins of the mind and of the tongue, and build up the sins of the overt nature.

E. See the Doctrine of the sins of the tongue

v. 30: The 10 grievances in Ephesians 4: They can be put into three groups: The sins of the mental attitude, the sins of motivation, the sins of the behaviour pattern.

v. 31: The results of grieving the Holy Spirit

v. 32: The results of the filling of the Holy Spirit.

Conclusion: The only answer to sins of any type--is maturity--growing--constructing an edification complex of the soul!

Holy Spirit: Teaching Ministry
(Category 253)

I. The Indwelling of the Holy Spirit is PERMANENT, John 14:16, the power resident being POTENTIAL, depending upon whether or not you are FILLED. Eph. 5:18, says: " . . . keep on being filled with the Holy Spirit."

II. " . . . He shall teach you all things and bring all thing to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you". John 14:26. (Bible is the means of knowing what He said. The Bible is the mind of Christ. 1 Cor. 2:16).

A. The Holy Spirit enables you to learn the Word when filled with the Holy Spirit.

B. The Holy Spirit shall bring all things to your REMEMBRANCE.

C. You can only remember that which you have studied. " . . . whatsoever I have said unto you": is the Bible.

III. The Holy Spirit teaches the human spirit: 1 Cor. 2:10-16 with Romans 8:16

IV. We receive Divine Guidance through the teaching of the Holy Spirit. John 16:13-14.

V. To know the Will of God (Guidance) we must know the Word of God. 2 Tim. 2:15; 3:16

VI. Result of teaching: 2 Tim. 3:16

"profitable for doctrine": Categories
"for reproof" Shows when and where we sin
"for correction": 1 John 1:9 is the correction for sin, resulting in cleansing and the filling of the Holy Spirit.
"for instruction in righteousness": Sanctification: Positional & Experiential. (Top and Bottom Circle)

VII. How to learn the Word of God: Isa. 28:13

"precept upon precept": Categories
"line upon line": Verse by verse
"here a little and there a little": Some every day

VIII. The Holy Spirit cannot teach the believer unless he exposes himself to Bible Doctrine and is filled with the Holy Spirit.

Human Spirit's Work
(Category 254)

I. Basis for the Work:

A. See Category: Holy Spirit, Glorification of Christ

B. Christ is at home in your hearts when the believer is filled with the Holy Spirit and developing an edification complex: Eph. 3:17

C. The human spirit is acquired at the moment of salvation, Romans 8:16. Eph. 2:1-5 as well, the word "quickened" referring to the giving of a human spirit.

D. The Holy Spirit teaches the human spirit. Romans 8:16, 1 Cor. 2:11-16.

E. The human spirit is that "new creature" (2 Cor. 5:17) and the new man or new nature so called is the edification complex, Ephesians 3:16-19.

F. The human spirit (which the unbeliever does not possess) is that part of us which understands and stores spiritual categories: Eph. 3:16-20

v. 16: "strengthened with might": Operation of the Spirit
"Spirit in the inner man": Holy Spirit indwells

v. 17: "that Christ": That THE Christ
"may dwell": Be at home (talking about Phase 2)
"that": With the result that
"being rooted": rizoo: Foundation of a root, filling of the Holy Spirit.
"and grounded": Themelioo: Lay a foundation--epignosis in the human spirit establishing a frame of reference and an edification complex.
"in love": In the sphere of Divine love, which is only possible through the filling of the Holy Spirit.

v. 18: "comprehend": Katalambano (Greek). Kata, preposition of norm or standard: That is doctrine. Lambano means to grab, or seize.

Comprehended doctrine is epignosis in the human spirit. This epignosis (full knowledge--the Word believed by faith) is stored in shelves in the h.s.

We are to comprehend:

"breadth": platos: General doctrine
"length": mekas: Dispensations
"depth": bathos: Angelic Conflict
"height": hupsos: Positional truth--RAPT, CPT, EPT

These are the main dimensions of the human spirit--however room for every word that came out of the mouth of God to be stored.

v. 19: "to know": From experience--the love of Christ "which passeth knowledge": There is something that surpasses the gnosis--head knowledge of God's Word--that is epignosis.
"might be filled with all the fulness of God": This is the edification complex of the soul--the mature believer.

II. The Work of the human spirit: (See categories on the soul)

A. The human spirit sends doctrine to our self-consciousness, resulting in occupation with Christ. (Soul breathing: inhale BD, exhale awareness of Christ, who and what He is)!

B. The human spirit sends doctrine to our mind resulting in thinking divine viewpoint. The believer inhales BD into the mentality and exhales a divinely controlled thought life. This carves out the scar-tissue and allows the vacuum in the frontal lobe to be filled with divine viewpoint.

C. The human spirit sends doctrine to our volition and we do the will of God. The believer inhales Bible doctrine and exhales the will of God (willing to do it and does it). No inhale of Bible Doctrine and our own will is paramount.

D. The human spirit sends doctrine to the emotion and we have appreciation of God--and we are not dominated by our emotions. The believer inhales BD and exhales appreciation of the will of God. On inhaling of BD, gnosis--the believing of that gnosis becomes epignosis in the human spirit--this results in a frame of reference in the mind. From this frame of reference comes an apprecation of God. If the emotions do not have epignosis controlling them--then havoc is the result and often getting into false doctrine.

E. The human spirit sends doctrine to the conscience and we have divine norms or standards. When the believer inhales Bible doctrine he exhales divine norms or standards, not his own background prejudices, and opinions.

F. Doctrine in the human spirit frustrates the old sin nature.

No soul breathing (inhaling and exhaling of BD) and the old sin nature controls and follows a zig-zag pattern between human good from the area of strength and sins from the area of weakness.

Human spirit sends doctrine to the soul	With Doctrine		Without Doc.
	Self-consciousness	= O/C	O/Self
	Mentality	= DVP	HVP
	Volition	= W/G	W/of man
	Emotions	= A/G	A/of self
	Conscience	= D/N	H/Norms
	Old Sin Nature	= Frust. of OSN	Zig Zag

Human Spirit: Doctrine of (Category 255)

1. The human spirit is distinguished from the human soul. Heb. 4:12.

2. In the original creation of man the human spirit was received along with the human soul--Gen. 2:7, "breath of lives . . ." Fired one of each into each nostril.

3. The unbeliever does not have a human spirit: 1 Cor. 2:14 As a dichotomous being; body and soul, the unbelievers efficiency is rated in terms of IQ.

4. The believer is trichotomous, 1 Thess. 5:23, why? Because the human spirit is acquired at the moment of salvation, along with the Holy Spirit. Human IQ is then, no longer a handicap.

   Spiritual perception is the Holy Spirit teaching the human spirit via the human mind.

5. In the communication of the Gospel to the unbeliever the Holy Spirit acts as the human spirit for the perception of salvation information. John 16:8-11, 1 Cor. 2:14-16.

6. The human spirit is the storage space for categories of doctrine. Eph. 3:18-19. Doctrine in the human spirit becomes residual doctrine upon which the edification complex is constructed. Eph. 4:20-24.

7. The spiritual IQ of the believer is related to the human spirit. Job 32:8, Romans 8:16.

8. The filling of the Spirit is necessary to get doctrine from the Bible to the mind to the human spirit. John 14:26, 1 Cor. 2:9-16, 1 John 2:27.

9. The believer possesses the human spirit as the basis of his spiritual IQ. Ephesians 3:16-19, therefore doctrine stored in the human spirit is the area of refreshment: 2 Cor. 7:13.

   a. Basic doctrine builds up a frame of reference
   b. Advanced doctrine builds upon basic doctrine--and builds your edification complex.

10. Doctrine stored in the human spirit is the basis of grace orientation (1st floor of the edification structure, and so on). Philemon 25.

Human Good
(Category 256)

1. Human good is dead works. Heb. 6:1

2. Human good will not save mankind. Titus 3:5, Eph. 2:8-9.

3. Human good is not acceptable to God ever. Isa. 64:6, Rom. 8:8.

4. Human good is condemned by God. 1 Cor. 3:11-16, Eccl. 12:14.

5. Human good is the basis of judgment:

   a. In the unbeliever at the last judgment (Great White Throne) Rev. 20:11-15
   b. In the believer at the Judgment Seat of Christ. 1 Cor. 3:11-16, 2 Cor. 5:10, Rom. 14:10.

6. Human good is a product of the old sin nature (carnal). Isa. 64:6a

7. Human good was rejected at the cross (human works are never accepted for redemption)and accumulated human good--will be burned at the judgment seat of Christ. 1 Cor. 3:11-16

   a. Divine good: Gold, silver, precious stones. In fellowship rewarded.

   b. Human good: Wood, hay, stubble: Carnality--burned.

8. Psalm 18:2, David says human good is not included in the plan of God. God is so great that He does not rely on our human good or anything we can do.

9. Grace depends on Who and What God is and there is no room for human good in His plan.

10. Human good is not categorized as sin, altho it is just as unacceptable to God. Human good is different from sin in that h/g does not involve a moral issue. Giving money, for example, to a local church would not be classed as sin, but if the person were unsaved--it would be human good. If it were a believer out of fellowship it would be human good.

11. Human good is actually religion--a person either working his way into heaven (an impossibility) or a believer thinking human good is acceptable.

12. Human good is not confessed as sin. It is taken care of by staying in fellowship. When in fellowship divine good is produced.

13. Human good is actually a Satanic concept: One of the greatest exhibits of the cunning nature of Satan is the promotion of his doctrine through the social gospel, concepts of world peace, internationalism, economic ventures, "do-gooders", doing good in the name of good, and religious endeavors. 2 Thess. 2:9, 1 Tim. 4:1 ff. Satan would love to abolish war--and get the credit for it.

A distinction should be made between human good and morality. Morality does not save, however morality is a by-product of Christianity. Morality is essential for the orderly function of the human race under the four divine insitutions (volition, marriage, family, nationalism).

15. Thus morality is designed by God for the continuance of the human race in the Angelic Conflict--and protects human freedom as a basis for response to evangelism. Whereas morality is not condemned in this capacity--human good is always condemned.

16. Morality minus spirituality causes legalism, religionism, self-righteousness and hypocricy in the believer.

17. The answer to human good is divine good. Divine good is produced in the believer in three ways: (Through Bible Doc.)

    a. Filling of the Spirit: Gal. 5:22-23

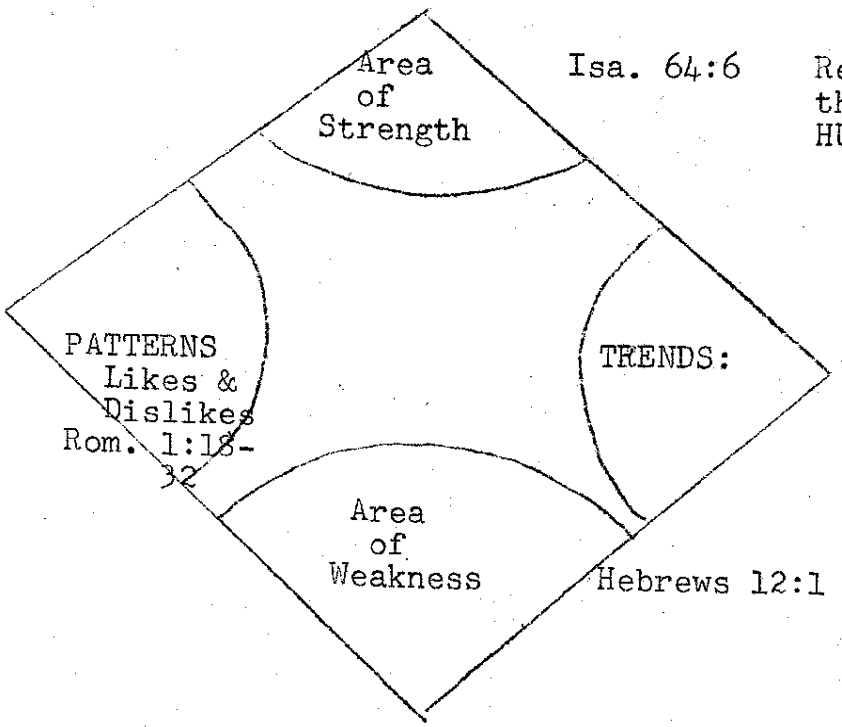
    b. From the exhale of Bible doctrine from the human spirit: Ephesians 4:23 and following. Luke 2:40-52

    c. From the erection of the edification complex of the soul: John 1:14.

    Jesus Christ illustrates all three in John 3:34, Matt. 4:1a, Luke 2:40-52, John 1:14.

18. One of the great themes of the Bible is good vs. good. Human good versus divine good. Satan promotes a human good, God produces divine good!

19. Diagram of the Old Sin Nature:



Isa. 64:6 Rejected and condemned at the cross. Titus 3:5 HUMAN GOOD

Asceticism: Heb. 6:1
Lasciviousness: Mark 7:21-23

Hebrews 12:1 Sins (borne at the cross) 1 Peter 2:24

History of Civilizations as Related to the Word of God
(Category 257)

1. The divine interpretation of history is set forth in the Word of God. The Bible gives the mind of Christ in regard to the ups and downs of civilizations.

2. According to the Bible when there is a saturation of Bible doctrine in any one generation or period of History there is prosperity and blessing from God. Example: The period from 516 BC to 420 BC, and the period from 400 BC to 323 BC. Also the time of the Antonine Ceasars; 96 AD to 180 AD. Great Britain became great because of her adherence to BD. When BD was forsaken, down went the nation, likewise the Unites States of America.

3. History has proved that God established four divine institutions for both believers and unbelievers for modus operandi in the devil's world. (Volition, marriage, family and nationalism, Gen. 2-11).

4. God in history operates through different administrations or dispensations. Ephesians 3:1-10.

   a. Gentiles: Gen. 1-11 See Category on Dispensations
   b. Jews: Gen. 12-Gospels, also Rev. 6-19
   c. Church: Epistles plus Acts
   d. Kingdom: (Millennium: Rev. 20, Isaiah 65, many passages in minor prophets.

5. History proves that we learn from history that we learn nothing from history:

   a. Nations forget that adherence to Bible Doctrihe is the answer to stability.

   b. Nations forget that a strong military is the answer to stability from animal-like agression from the goons. See Category on the Doctrine of War.

6. Much history can be gleaned from an intensive study of the battles and battle-fields of by-gone decades and centuries.

7. Systematize the Berachah tapes as per historical background--century by century emphasizing the battles of history. When you get this done (about 10,000 hours of study) I'd love to have a copy. The finest use of history in interpretating the Word of God (isagogics) is found in the Berachah tapes--. Don't let all this systematized historical material go to waste.

Hope
(Category 258)

1. The hope of Israel is of their coming Messiah (2nd Advent) and His kingdom on earth=-plus the new earth of eternity. Study Luke 1:54, 67-79; 2:28; Acts 26:6-7; 28:20; Eph. 2:12.

2. The Abrahamic Covenant as amplified by the Palestinic, Davidic, and New Covenant promised Israel land (Canaan) seed (Messiah) and blessing (being born-again). The Messiah would have an eternal throne. See the Categories on the Covenants. Israel's hope lay in the promises of God.

3. Abraham was promised a city (the New Jerusalem). Abraham tho a millionaire was a tent dweller. His hope was vested in the this promise mentioned in Hebrews 11:9-10

4. The hope for the Church is centered on the "blessed hope" of the rapture, the return of Christ to catch up His body. Titus 2:13-15, 1 John 3:2-3, 1 Thess. 4:13-18 and so on.

5. The Word indicates that strength in phase 2 depends upon the the believers hope (sureness) concerning phase 3.
1 John 3:3, "And every man that hath this hope in Him purifies himself, even as He is pure."

6. Hope is the mental attitude that results from application of doctrines such as eternal inheritance (1 Peter 1:4-5), the new home yet future (John 14:1-3) the resurrection body (1 Cor. 15:51-57, 1 Thess. 4:16-18, Phil. 3:21, 1 John 3:1-2.)

7. Hope is derived from passages such as Rev. 21:4 which states that there will be no more tears, death, pain.

8. Hope is a kin word with encouragement. It is tremendous to know that an appointment with the Great White Throne has been cancelled when we believe in Jesus Christ. Heb. 9:27-28.

9. Hope is also a kin word to confidence. When we use the grace apparatus of perception we grow in grace and the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. When the believer is oriented to the plan of God in eternity, he orientes to the plan of God in time.

10. Because of the hope we have in Christ, death has lost its sting and the grave its victory: 1 Cor. 15:54-58.

11. Thus the word "hopeless" should not even be in the vocabulary of a believer.

Humility
(Category 259)

1 Peter 5:5, "Likewise ye younger, submit yourselves unto the elder. Yea, all of you be subject one to another and be clothed with humility: for God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble."

1. The Greek word for "humility" is tapeinophrosune. Humility is a mental attitude though pattern of grace.

2. Grace thinking recognizes that we, at no time, earn or deserve any blessing from God.

3. Humility understands that everything depends on Who and What God is and has done. Humility is not self-effacement ("Aw, shucks that was nothing.") nor is it telling your failures, telling jokes on yourself to show how stupid you are.

4. Humility-grace thinking causes a believer to have no illusions about himself. Thus the believer has an edification complex--instead of an inferiority complex, or superiority complex. He has a relaxed mental attitude.

5. Mental attitude humility produces RMA towards believers that have authority over you. Only mental attitude grace can give a believer submission to teaching authority of another.

6. Pride is the opposite of humility and always resents and rejects the authority of a pastor.

7. Thus humility greatly increases the learning of Bible doctrine. And of course this causes one to become spiritual self-sustaining.

8. A believer that has the correct Biblical concept of humility is a wonderful believer to be around, relaxed, dogmatic, confident, sure, not doubleminded.

9. In the Old Testament this word appears as a noun 3 times and in all its forms about 40 times. It is found in the New Testament approximately 15 times.

10. Meekness (found in Gal. 5:23 as one of the fruit of the Spirit) is closely related to humility. It is also a mental attitude--of not being pushy, self-centered, demanding. It is not a word denoting weakness--Moses was called meek, Numbers 12:3 and he was a man not a mouse. "Now the man Moses was very meek, above all the men which were upon the face of the earth."

11. Dr. Chafer in Vol. 7, "Doctrinal Summarization", page 190 said, "Since man has no merit in himself before God but receives all that he has, humility is only the right and natural attitude. Christ was humble, still not because He was a sinner or meritless. To become conscious of humility is its utter ruin."

Hypostatic Union (God-Man)
(Category 260)

1. In the person of Christ are two natures, inseparably united without mixture or loss of separate identity, without loss or transfer of properties or attributes--the union being personal and eternal.

2. Scriptures involving hypostatic union: Phil. 2:5-11; John 1:1-14; Romans 1:2-5, 9:5; 1 Tim. 3:16, Heb. 2:14.

3. The incarnate person of Christ includes undiminished deity. Jesus Christ is God, co-equal with the Father and the Holy Spirit, He possesses the same essence.

4. Jesus Christ is also true humanity. He had body, soul and a human spirit. Because of the virgin birth, Jesus Christ was born with an old sin nature.

5. The two natures of Christ are united without transfer of attributes.

6. In the incarnation no attribute of the essence box was changed.

7. Therefore the union of the divine and human nature of the incarnate Christ is both hypostatic and personal. Heb. 1:3

8. This does not mean that deity possesses humanity or even that deity indwells humanity.

9. Both the attributes of the divine and human nature belong to the person of Christ. They are never changed.

10. We have categories of attributes, three basic ones:

    a. Attributes true of His whole person (Prophet, priest, king, saviour, redeemer).

    b. Attributes true of His deity (eternal) John 8:58 (but the whole person is the subject).

    c. Attributes true of His humanity (thirsty, tired, hungry, etc.) John 19:28, but the whole person, the subject.

11. Everything Christ spoke while he was on earth during the 1st Advent came from one of three sources.

    a. From His deity he said, "Before Abraham was I existed eternally." John 8:58

    b. From humanity, "I thirst", John 19:28

    c. From His hypostatic Union: Matt. 11:28, John 14:6

12. Why did Jesus have to become humanity? To be our Saviour, Heb. 2:14-15, Phil. 2:7-8; To be our mediator, Job 9:32-33 (equal to both God and man) 1 Tim. 2:5-6. To be our High Priest: He had to be God and man, Heb. 7:4-5, 7:14, 7:28; 10:5, 10-14, 2 Sam. 7

"Imitators of God"
Eph. 5:1
(Category 261)

1. As members of the family of God, we should bear the family resemblance. Gal. 3:26; 1 John 1:1.

2. Jesus Christ as God is the manifest person of the Trinity. John 1:18; 6:46; 1 Tim. 6:16, 1 John 4:12. Jesus Christ as humanity set the pattern for the filling of the Holy Spirit. In His humanity, Jesus Christ was the most perfectly adjusted person. Luke 2:40, 52.

3. Believers are commanded to become imitators of the manifest person of the Godhead, Jesus Christ. Eph. 5:1, Gal. 4:19.

4. The Greek word translated "followers" is actually "imitators."

5. This command can only be executed by the filling of the Holy Spirit. Gal. 3:16-17; Phil. 1:20-21.

6. This is compatible with the ministry of the Holy Spirit in the Church Age: John 7:39; 16:14; 1 Cor. 6:19-20.

7. The filling of the Holy Spirit produces the character of Jesus Christ. Gal. 5:22-23, 2 Cor. 3:3.

8. This fulfills the command of Eph. 5:1

Imputation
(Category 262)

1. Definition: The act of God whereby He credits perfect righteousness to the believer in Christ.

2. 2 Cor. 3-4 shows that every believer is a minister or has the responsibility of witnessing for Jesus Christ.

3. 2 Cor. 5:21 is a summary of salvation. God the Father made God the Son to be sin on our behalf, that we might be made the righteousness of God in Christ. On the Cross Jesus Christ died spiritually (for us) before He died physically).

4. In salvation our sins are blotted out, we have eternal life, and credited to our account is perfect righteousness.

Incarnation Introduction
(Category 263)

I. The Incarnation is the revealing of God, through the humanity of Jesus Christ, to the human race.

II. Manner of Revelation: God chose to reveal Himself by the:

A. Written Word: Bible is the mind of Christ, 1 Cor. 2:16

B. Living Word: The Lord Jesus Christ, John 1:1. "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God."

III. Prophecy of the Revelation: See the next category

IV. The Revelation:

A. John 1:14, "And the Word was made (become) flesh . . ."

B. Col. 1:15, "Who (Lord Jesus Christ) is the (exact) image (Deity) of the invisible God, the firstborn (humanity) of every creature."

V. The Purpose of the Revelation:

A. To SPEAK the words of the Father. John 3:34, 12:49-50

B. To REVEAL the Essence Box (as the God-man on earth)

1. John 10:30, "I and my Father are one."

2. Hebrews 1:3a, "Who (Jesus Christ) being the brightness (the shining forth) of His glory (Essence Box); and the express (exact) image of His person . . ."

3. John 1:18, " . . . no man hath seen God at any time, the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, He (Lord Jesus Christ) hath declared Him (the Father)".

C. What we know about the Father, we know from Jesus Christ. God's love, grace, judgment can only be known through the person of the Lord Jesus Christ.

D. To show the believer in the Church Age that he should walk in the power of the Holy Spirit just as Jesus Christ walked in the power of the Holy Spirit. John 3:34.

E. The revelation of the essence box by Jesus Christ. (Humanity revealed Deity)

1. Sovereignty: Eph. 3:11 with John 5:20 (Conference). Fact that He was revealed shows sovereignty.

2. Righteousness: Romans 3:24-25, " . . . declare His +R"

3. Justice: Luke 23:39-43, thieves on the cross. He is just to forgive, just to condemn.

4. Love: John 15:13, "Greater love hath no man than this that a man lay down his life for his friends."

5. Eternal life: John 8:58, "Before Abraham was, I AM"

6. Omniscience: Matt. 26:34, He knew Peter would deny him.

7. Omnipresence: John 3:13, He was in heaven and talking to Nicodemus

8. Omnipotence: Matthew 8:27, "Even the winds and the sea obeyed Him."

9. Immutability: Heb. 13:8, " . . . Jesus Christ, the same yesterday, today, and forever."

10. Veracity: John 14:6, " . . . I am the way, the truth, the life . . ."

VI. Offer of the Revelation: Heb. 10:9, "Lo, I come to do thy will, O God . . ."

VII. Necessity for the Revealing:

VIII. Qualification of the Revealer:

Incarnation Prophesied
(Category 264)

I. How: Isaiah 7:14

"a sign": Virgin Birth. Supernatural manifestation.
"a virgin": Identical quotation in Matt. 1:23 except Isaiah passage in Hebrew, Matthew passage in Greek.

A. Hebrew: Virgin means virgin in almost every case, but on rare occasions it was used simply of a young married woman. Here it refers to virgin, and virgin ONLY because of Matthew 1:23 quotation.

B. Greek: Means just ONE thing, virgin. Never can be translated in any other way.

"behold": Command to focus attention on this. Could not be an unique person unless He was born of a virgin.

"Immanuel": God with us. Undiminished deity and true humanity is united in one person forever.

II. Who: (makeup) Isaiah 9:6

"a child is born": Humanity

"a son is given": Deity. Adult Son - Essence

"government": 2nd Advent, to reign in the millennium

"everlasting Father": Father of eternal life, source of eternal life.

"Prince of peace": Prince who provided peace between man and God. RECONCILIATION.

III. Where: Micah 5:2, "Ephratah": Also name for Judah.
Matt. 2:5-6 Bethlehem of Judah was positively identified.
" . . . whose goings forth . . . everlasting": Jesus Christ has always existed, baby was God.

Doctrine of Inheritance
(Category 265)

1. Christ is the heir of all things. Heb. 1:2
2. Heirship is based on Sonship. Rom. 8:16-17, Gal. 3:26
3. Heirship is based on the death of another. Rom. 5:18
4. From the divine viewpoint--heirship demands eternal life. Titus 3:7, 1 Cor. 15:50, 1 John 5:11.
5. Heirship means to share the destiny of Jesus Christ, who is the heir of all things (God) Eph. 1:11; Rom. 8:17.
6. Heirship is based on election. Heb. 9:15
7. Indwelling Holy Spirit is the down-payment of our inheritance. Eph. 1:14.
8. Heirship means eternal security. 1 Peter 1:4-5
9. Heirship is based on grace. Gal. 3:29
10. Salvation is the qualification for heirship. Col. 1:12, Eph. 1:11, Heb. 2:14.
11. We can know the glory of our inheritance. Eph. 1:18
12. Our inheritance cannot be squandered.
13. God can only treat heirs in love, mercy, etc.
14. IMAGINE: BEING HEIRS IN THE PLAN OF GOD! This is a tremendous doctrine.

Intelligence Quotient: Human IQ vs. Divine IQ
(Category 266)

1. Scriptural background for IQ: 1 Cor 1:18-25, 2:1-6 refers to human IQ, the use of rationalism and empiricism by unsaved mankind. 1 Cor. 2:6-16, Ephesians 3:16-20 is speaking of divine IQ--the amount of epignosis in the human spirit.

2. Human IQ applied to Christianity always distorts Christianity into a religion:

   a. Rationalism: The liberal main-line denominations that appeal to the intellect, and dialogue.

   b. Empiricism: (Use of the senses to perceive): The Pentecostal types that appeal to the emotions--a sight religion filled with apostacy.

3. The means of operation in Christianity is faith in the tenants of Scripture thus glorifying the Lord.

   a. Faith causes gnosis to be transferred to epignosis.

   b. Faith operates in producing Divine IQ (in the human spirit)

   c. Faith alone is the system of perception, and the key (along with the filling of the Spirit) to cause the grace apparatus of perception to work.

4. When you transfer gnosis to epignosis, human IQ is never a factor (because human IQ is built on rationalism and empiricism) and spiritual IQ by faith alone. Ephesians 3 passage.

5. Thus it is the human spirit that constitutes the divine IQ--from that comes the sprouting (roots) and from that (grounded) you have your edification complex. Consequently the divine IQ that you posses is the amount of epignosis you have in your human spirit. Check out the Eph. 3 passage.

6. The unbeliever does not have a human spirit. Therefore his perceptive ability is strictly a matter of human ability.

7. But, human ability and talent, play no part in the spiritual IQ of grace.

8. Thus an unbeliever can be a genius and not understand basic doctrine, while a believer can possess a low IQ (human IQ) and understand the most profound and advanced doctrine. Thats grace.

9. Conclusions: Human IQ has often been considered a factor in learning doctrine, but it is not a factor.

   a. This would imply that the low IQ (human) believer would be handicapped by lack of moxie (brains).

   b. But, human IQ is never a factor in learning Bible Doctrine.

c. Every believer is a priest--every believer under grace has been given the same perceptive apparatus. Everything that is necessary. There is no exception.

d. This includes the Bible, the local church, the pastor-teacher, the indwelling Holy Spirit, the human spirit and so on.

e. The ability to learn is verified by two verbs of ability in context:

1. Eph. 3:16: Kratiaoo: Inner ruling power (ministry of the Holy Spirit). The ability to learn under the filling of the Holy Spirit.

2. Eph. 3:18: ezischuo: Ability to inhale Bible doctrine into the soul's mind and transfer it to human spirit by faith.

10. The human IQ cannot see God, but epignosis gives vision to the eyes of the soul. Even gnosis in the mind cannot see God. Eph. 3:19.

11. Rationalism and empiricism put a veil over the eyes of the soul so that love from Christ is hidden. Eph. 4:17-19

12. Doctrine removes the veil from the mind. 2 Cor. 3:14-16.

13. Scar tissue is removed through the exhale of BD. Eph. 4:23 ff.

14. Human IQ is always meritorious. There is no merit in the perceptive system of faith.

15. The merit lies in the object of faith.

16. Because faith is the only non-meritorious system of perception, it is totally compatible with God's plan and God's grace. Consequently we do not walk by sight, but by faith.

17. We are not born with the same IQ, unequal mentally.

18. Even tho a philosopher has a superior human knowledge--he cannot compete with God's Grace Apparatus of Perception, given to each believer at the moment of salvation.

19. Not one person has ever, or will ever attain heaven because of a superior intellect. Human ability, human merit does not cut it.

20. The entire process of learning and applying doctrine must be compatible with grace.

Inner Beauty
1 Tim. 2:9-10
(Category 267)

1. What you think cannot be seen (male or female) but the result of what you think is apparent.

2. Emphasis in 1 Peter 3:3-4 is on the inner life.

3. If you depend on outer attractiveness to appeal to your husband (or anyone else) and exclude inner beauty, you cannot succeed in witnessing for Christ to him or to anyone else.

4. When you stay filled with the Holy Spirit you have an inner mental attitude of love, minus jealousy, hatred, envy, implacability, etc., and this results in inner beauty.

5. Part of a woman's inner beauty is her love for her husband.

6. Inner beauty survives the attacks of time while exterior beauty is corruptible and destroyed by time.

7. The Bible tells us the EMPHASIS should not be on the outer appearance to the exclusion of inner beauty. 1 Peter 3:3, 1 Tim. 2:9-10.

8. There is no prohibition of outward appearance, but if you are beautiful on the outside and have bitterness, hatred, envy, jealousy on the inside, there is no impact for Christ on the unbelieving mate, or anyone else.

9. Inner beauty is in the mind: It is what you think. INNER BEAUTY IS AGELESS.

10. A woman cannot win her unbelieving husband to the Lord apart from inner beauty, which is accomplished through the Filling of the Holy Spirit and knowledge of doctrine. This results in an edification complex (built upon residual doctrine, grace, inner happiness, relaxed mental attitude, capacity to love, and mastery of the details of life).

11. This is the woman's charm, but it also belongs to all believers who will be controlled by the Holy Spirit and have doctrine in the frontal lobe. 1 Tim. 2:9, 10, 15. The doctrine in the frontal lobe has been turned into epignosis--and cycled up to the frame of reference in the mind.

    v. 9: "modest apparel": Well arranged apparel, associated with:
    "shamefacedness": Mental attitude grace
    "sobriety": Stability of mental attitude
    "not with": Emphasis should be on the inside

    v.10: "godliness": God-likeness

    v.15: "if": 3rd class condition, "in faith": Faith-rest technique. "charity": F-HS. "sobriety": mental attitude stability.

Internationalism
(Category 268)

1. A major passage on internationalism is Genesis chapter 11, the Tower of Babel episode. God's divine attitiude toward internat.

2. Internationalism is the governing of more than one nation under one head.

3. Believers are told to be faithful to their national entities. Romans 13:1-7.

4. No form of internationalism is acceptable to God. This includes political internationalism such as Communism, Socialism, and religious internationalism such as certain oriental religions, the Roman Catholic Church, the World Council of Churches. The United Nations is a form of political internationalism.

5. Christianity is 100% opposed to any form of internationalism.

6. Internationalism is a vicious attack on Divine Institution #4 (Nationalism) and also destroys Divine Institution #1 (Volition).

7. The Tower of Babel was a combination of political and religious internationalism.

8. Internationalism is a Satanic device to try to frustrate the plan of God by breaking down, infiltrating, and opposing the plan of God.

9. Whenever Satan starts a religious organization to counter-act doctrine (the Word of God) a demon organization is always involved.

10. When Satan finds the need to establish a new religion somewhere, that new religion is compatible with the culture of that area. (Like Mormonism).

11. Some of Satan's religions are internationalist in character and some are local. Mormonism began as a localized religion and since has become international. (As Jehovah's Witnesses etc.)

12. During the Church Age religious internationalism will be active, but it will never be as strong as the Tribulation, when it will reach its maximum.

13. Internationalism results in:

    a. Maximum destruction of bodies on this earth.

    b. Minimum use of free will: minimum freedom.

    c. Maximum heathenism (neg. vol. at the point of God-consciousness.)

    d. Minimum amount of evangelism.

Internationalism: Philosophy
(Category 269)

To get a concept of Satan's Internationalism study the following passages (besides Genesis 11): Romans 12:9-10, 1 Thess. 2:9-10, Isaiah 14:14-19, Rev. 20:8, 12:9-10.

1. Satan is said to be the god of this world. 2 Cor. 4:3-4. Satan is the Father of religion.

2. Satan is said to be the prince of this world. John 12:31, 14:30.

3. The prince of the power of the air in Eph. 2:2.

4. Satan is the ruler of this present world system. Job 1:7, 2:2. " . . . walking up and down . . . going to and fro" is an idiom for rulership in the Hebrew.

Internationalism: Seven Points
(Category 270)

Scripture: Genesis 11:1-4

1. Idealistic rebellion vs. God: He told them to spread out after the flood, but they built up because they did not believe in the Lord's admonition. Gen. 9:1, 7.

2. Volitional rebellion vs. God (man in mass). As above he was to scatter. A decadent nation tends to mass in cities--one of the characteristics of the 4th cycle of discipline: Lev. 26:25.

3. Governmental rebellion vs. God: (Built a city) They should have continued with an agriculture economy which afforded the privacy needed to raise a family.

4. Physical revolt vs. God: Their reaction to the Flood of past history was to build a tower above the high-water mark of the Flood. Also man thought that the arm of the flesh was strong enough to save.

5. Spiritual revolt vs. God: The tower was to reach heaven. They felt that an international brotherhood was the answer--and that man's work would get him to heaven.

6. Personal revolt: Egotism. Man by man's abilities can solve man's problems. Not so.

7. Structural revolt: The philosophy that materialism is the god of man and can solve the problems of man.

Internationalism actually abolishes national government, private property, marriage & family life, it makes the state responsible for education and needs. Also inheritance is abolished, as is Bible Christianity and patriotism.

Isolation of Sin
(Category 270)

I. When you sin and rebound immediately that sin is forgiven. 1 John 1:9.

II. When God forgives us, He forgets the sin.

III. Since God has forgotten the sin, we are to forget it. Phil. 3:13.

A. Look at that sin from Divine Viewpoint - forget it.

B. Look at other people's sin from Divine Viewpoint - if they rebound, God forgets it, and we have no right to remember another's sins.

IV. If we remember a sin we have confessed, it becomes the basis of perpetuating that sin and perpetuating divine discipline. If you are under divine discipline, when you rebound, one of three things happen:

A. Divine discipline is removed.
B. Divine discipline turns into one of the other reasons for suffering, so divine discipline is turned to blessing.
C. Divine discipline is lessened; principle of cursing turned to blessing.

V. If you remember a confessed sin, you create or sprout a new sin from a dead sin (seed). Now you may be under divine discipline but NOT from confessed sin but from NEW sin. Perpetuated divine discipline is caused by perpetuated sin.

VI. Isolate a confessed sin by the Faith-Rest technique. Believe is 1 John 1:9. Result: Inner happiness, inner peace; inner power.

VII. Doctrine of converting sins or sprouting a new sin from a dead seed (confessed sin). There are three areas of converting sins:

A. Mental

1. Hatred: If you have confessed a sin (involving you and someone else) and when you see this person, you have mental attitude hatred, you have sprouted sin of hate (new sin) from a dead sin. Result: Divine discipline for mental attitude hate.

2. Guilt Complex: "Whatsoever is not of faith is sin." Romans 14:23. We are forgiven on the basis of God's grace and what the Bible says, 1 John 1:9, not on the basis of your faith. If we confess, we are forgiven.

B. Tongue:

1. Gossip: Running someone down and it is not true.

2. Malign: Running someone down and it is true. Rom. 12: 19, " . . . vengeance is mine; I will repay, saith the Lord . . ."

3. Public confession of sin (which often passes for revival).

4. By blaming others for your sins, operation patsy.

5. By discussing past failures with people in order to get their sympathy.

C. Overt Activity: Harassment, violence, revenge activity.

VIII. All believers have failed; all have OSN; we must:

A. Rebound: 1 John 1:9

B. Forget it: Phil. 3:13

C. Isolate it: Heb. 12:15

D. Move on: Phil. 3:14

Exposition of Heb. 12:15

"looking diligently": Constantly ride herd on yourself. Check yourself that you don't perpetuate your confessed sins. Faith-rest technique on 1 John 1:9.

"fail of the grace of God": Failing to use the grace of God. Don't miss using the grace of God, by allowing one confessed sin (dead sin) be the basis for another new sin.

"any root of bitterness springing up": New sin from dead sin.

"trouble you": Remembering past sin makes guilt complex.

"thereby many be defiled": When you carry a guilt complex, others are affected.

IX. If you don't isolate your sin all other doctrines will not get you out of sin. So this is an important doctrine.

Israel: Basis of Judging (Evaluation) the Jew (Category 271)

1. There are three types of Jews:

   a. Racial
   b. Religious
   c. Regenerate

2. The first warning against Anti-Semitism is given in Gen. 12:1-3. Anti-Semitism is hostility toward the Jews (like the unregenerate Arab has).

3. A Jew should be evaluated as an individual--just as you do any Gentile.

4. A Jew should be evaluated as an American citizen, his patriotism, his politics etc. Jews fought in wars for the USA, they died at the Alamo, etc.

5. Evaluate the Jew as a nation of Jews - the nation is called Israeli today - which is not under God. Zionism is the attempt to fulfill the covenants under man's ability, rather than under God's ability, 2nd Advent.

6. Palestine is a Gentile name for Israel, it comes from the proper name Philistia, and is not an accepted name from Israel's thinking.

7. The Jews are under the 5th cycle of discipline (dispersion among the Gentile nations) and will be until the 2nd Advent. Israel back in the land today is simply based on unbelief.

8. There are certain Jews who are internationalists. Communism was founded by Marx and Engel, both were German Jews. These Jews should be evaluated as a Gentile. Their actions should be condemned on the basis of the Word.

9. A Jew who becomes a believer in Jesus Christ is no longer evaluated as a Jew, but as a member in union with Christ in the body of Christ.

10. At times conservatism (which has excellent goals) can lose sight of their goal because certain conservative organizations become anti-Semitic. They blame all the world's problems on the Jews. They blame the Jewish dollar for financing communism and international conspiracies. Certainly, some money does come from the Jews. But Gentiles contribute too. British-Israelism is a false concept--anti-Semitic at its core. It is not true that Israelites are good guys, and the Jews bad guys.

    Beware of anti-Semitism. Many goofy publications are put out today knocking the Jews. Possibly Barry Goldwater's defeat in 1964 was due in part to anti-Semitism on the part of certain conservatives.

    Genesis 12:3, "I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed."

Israel: Five Cycles of Discipline
(Category 272)
Lev. 26:14-46

I. Definition: National judgment for disobedience to the Word. Hosea 4:1-6

II. As the nation accumulates disobedience and rejects the Word, the judgment (divine discipline) increases. Illustrated by the ministry of Isaiah, Jeremiah, Daniel etc.

III. They bring some discipline upon themselves through rejection of the Word concerning divine institution #4. (Nationalism)

IV. The Cycles of Discipline: (5) VERY IMPORTANT: MASTER

A. First Cycle of Discipline: Lev. 26:14-17

1. Kings who do not care for the best interests of the people. "appoint": v. 16

2. Loss of health: v. 16 Big emphasis on health--the more emphasis on health, the less health the nation enjoys. Hospitals overflow. (Mental disorders become rampant, as today when 60% admitted today have mental disorders.) Note the terms "consumption, burning ague"

3. Terror: v. 16, fear, thus a frantic search for security. A big emphasis on life insurance, savings, welfare plans, etc. Terror or fear on the part of the people causes many laws to be passed for the social betterment of the people, these laws turn around, trapping and suffocating them instead.

4. A break in the economy: v. 16 "sow your seed in vain", also refers to believers not having any impact upon the spiritual condition of their community.

5. Believers not walking in victory (not understanding spirituality). Leb. 26:17 Defeated.

B. Second Cycle of Discipline: Lev. 26:18-20

1. The first cycle is increased in intensity. v. 18

2. People characterized by pride, self-righteousness, religion is predominate, NOT Christianity. v. 19

3. Lots of zeal, but not according to Bible Doctrine. v. 20

4. Economic disaster, famine, v. 20

C. Third Cycle of Discipline: Lev. 26:21-22
All cycles intensify--carrying along the previous cycle.

1. Internal violence: "wild beasts" refers to violence in a nation, the Bible must be interpreted in the time in which it is written. v. 22

2. Rebellious teenagers: Increase in crime, no respect for authority. Property vandalized. v. 22

3. Cities desolate because of mass demonstrations. v. 22

4. Travel curtailed: v. 22 "highways desolate"

D. Fourth Cycle of Discipline: Lev. 26:23-26

1. "And I will bring a sword upon you": This refers to not doing well in military battles. It can be invasion by the enemy--it can be not winning in some foreign area. v. 25

2. " . . . quarrel of my covenant": The unconditional covenants of grace--Abrahamic-Palestinic in particular. Israel forget the grace of God. v. 25

3. "gathered together within your cities": A nation that actually lives in its cities (like the US presently). Huge population centers that become areas of crime--and sadism. v. 25

4. Economic recession and inflation: v. 25-26

a. "Pestilence": Refers to epidemics of disease, mal-nutrition, physical weakness due to lack of good food. v. 25

b. " . . . into the hands of your enemies": Decisive defeat with all the horrors that go with it. v. 25

c. "broken the staff of your bread": An idiom for a broken economy--resultant loss of savings, economic stability. v. 26 Inflation is dangerous.

d. "ten women . . ." Surplus of women, men killed in battle. v. 26

e. "deliver . . . your bread . . . by weight": Food rationing. v. 26

f. " . . . ye shall eat, and not be satisfied:" A hungry nation. v. 26

The United States is most certainly in the 3rd cycle, and probably the 4th cycle of discipline. Presently, September 1970, we are in a period of grace. The danger SIGNAL in this 4th Cycle is SEVERE INFLATION!

E. Fifth Cycle of Discipline: Lev. 26:27-46, Deut. 28:49-57

1. Why this type of judgment?

   a. Rejection of the Word of God. Zech. 7:4-14
   b. Rejection of the Sabbatical Year.
   c. Egyptian Alliance
   d. Idolatry: Jer. 17:1-4
   e. Dependence on man. Jer. 17:5-9
   f. Emotionalism: Jer. 17:10
   g. False scale of values: Jer. 17:13
   h. Forsaking the Lord. Jer. 17:13

2. Characteristics of the 5th Cycle:

   a. Cannibalism: v. 29
   b. Horrible and wide-spread death: 1,900,000 Jews were killed in a 90 day siege in 70 AD. v. 30
   c. Destruction of Jerusalem and of the temple: v. 31
   d. Utter desolation of the land of Israel. v. 32
   e. Dispersion among the Gentile nations. v. 33
      Also check Deut. 28:58-67

Israel today continues under the 5th cycle of discipline. This continues until the 2nd Advent.

V. Administrating of the 4th Cycle of Discipline in History: Administered once to Northern Kingdom and Twice to Southern:

   A. Northern Kingdom: Ten tribes 2 Kings 17:1-5
      Date not known.

   B. Southern Kingdom:

      1. 1st Administration: 721 BC (when the Northern Kingdom fell under the 5th Cycle) to the Fall of Jerusalem to Nebuchadnezzar and the Chaldeans in 586 BC. (135 years).

      2. 2nd Administration: 63 BC to 70 AD
         (The 5th Cycle continues on till the present)

VI. Administration of the 5th Cycle of Discipline in History:

   A. Northern Kingdom: One: 721 BC by Sargon 2 until the 2nd Advent. 2 Kings 17:6, 23.

   B. Southern Kingdom (Judah)

      1. 1st Administration: 70 years Babylonian Captivity. 586-516 BC. From fall of Jerusalem to the rebuilding of the temple.

      2. 2nd Administration: 70 AD (Fall of Jerusalem to Rome until the 2nd Advent (millennial temple). The temple built at Jerusalem in the Tribulation is NOT bonefide.

Israel: Signs of the 5th Cycle of Discipline
(Category 273)

I. The prophecy of the gift of tongues. Isa. 28:11. See the categories on the sign gifts. Tongues are only bonefide between Acts 2 and 70 AD, or roughly 40 years. It was a warning that the 5th cycle was coming (evangelizing Jews with Gentile languages). When the 5th cycle hit--no need for tongues, also no need because of the completed canon of Scripture. 1 Cor. 13:8.

II. The coming of Messiah was a sign of the nearness of the 5th cycle of discipline.

A. The Virgin Birth of Christ was a sign to the Jews. Isa. 7:14.

B. Betrayal of Messiah by Judas Iscariot was a sign of the 5th cycle.

C. Uniqueness of the death of the Messiah: That Christ was crucified was not unique. Crucifixion was common in the Roman world. What was unique was Isaiah 53:9, "deaths". Hebrew: This is the Intensive Plural. Christ died spiritually when He bore our sins, and died physically when His work was finished.

See the categories on the seven deaths in Scripture, the death of our Lord, and the uniqueness of His death.

D. Resurrection of the Messiah: Isa. 52:13, 53:10

III. The 40 years of evangelism to Israel before the final blow of the fall of Jerusalem. (30-70 AD.) Compare Malachi 1:5 with the book of Acts.

IV. The Book of Acts is an Expansion of Malachi 1:5.

V. Warning and Prophecy of the Seige of Jerusalem and its fall, by Jesus Christ. Luke 21:20-24

Israel Has a Future (Today and In Eternity)
(Category 274)

1. See the Category on Israel: Origin of the Jewish Race.

2. The nation Israel was founded on regeneration. Abraham, Isaac, Jacob etc. Then on down through history the leadership of Israel had some outstanding believers: Moses, Joshua, David, and so on.

3. Born-again Jews have a future:

   a. In the Tribulation: Witnessing, custodianship of the Word.
   b. At the 2nd Advent: The covenants (unconditional) are fulfilled. Will thus enjoy the kingdom on earth.

4. The purpose of the Jewish nation:

   a. Custodianship of the Word. Romans 3:2
   b. Responsible for its dissemination.
   c. Provided the genealogy for the line of Jesus Christ.

5. The 5th cycle of discipline during the Church Age is the result of their failure in fulfilling this purpose. (Point 4), first two points.

6. Racial Jew is under a curse today and is scattered (5th cycle of discipline), all over the world, yet he does not lose his identity.

7. Only way cursing can be turned into blessing for the racial Jew today is for that Jew to personally accept Jesus Christ as Saviour.

8. In the Church Age, the Jew is under a double curse:

   a. Spiritual death
   b. 5th Cycle of discipline

9. Cursing can be turned into blessing. In the Church Age regeneration makes him church (no longer a Jew - Gal. 3:28) and is removed from the double curse.

10. The Jew in the Church Age will never be a part of Israel, but the moment he accepts Christ, he enters into Union with Christ and becomes church, part of the body of Christ.

11. Those Jews who were alive on the day of Pentecost and were believers; were entered into the Church Age by being made body of Christ, and were no longer regenerate Jews, but Church, body of Christ.

12. The regenerate Jews of the Age of Israel are a part of that kingdom which will exist in the future at the 2nd Advent, promises under the 4 unconditional covenants.

13. The way to evangelize Israel is to give them the gospel (Rom. 1:16) not to try to make the Old Testament clear. Paul was a Jew now church. Rom. 1:11, 1 Cor. 12:13.

Israel, Origin of the Jewish Race
(Category 275)

1. Three words for the Jewish race: Hebrew, Jew, Israel.

2. There are three concepts (types of Jews:

   a. Racial: Anyone with the genes of Abraham, Isaac, Jacob
   b. Regenerate: Remnant according to faith in Jesus Christ
   c. Religious: Non-regenerate

3. All nations are founded on physical birth except the nation Israel was founded on the new birth.

4. For the first three generations the basis for the nation Israel was regeneration - a nation founded on the new birth.

5. Abraham was a Chaldean (natural birth). In regeneration he became a Jew. He "crossed over the river", became a Hebrew (first missionary).

6. Abraham was saved in Ur of the Chaldees as a Gentile. +R was imputed and Abraham was justified. In the book of James, 2:21, Abraham was justified (vindicated in the eyes of the unbeliever, phase 2) when he offered Isaac.

7. God said, "I will make of thee a great nation": Israel. Gen. 12:2, Deut. 7:6.

8. In the land (Canaan) Abraham was circumcized, which was the sign that he was now a Jew.

9. Abraham was the pattern for salvation in the Old Testament for both Gentile and Jew, as he was both a saved Gentile and a saved Jew.

10. Abraham had two sons: Ishmael and Isaac.

11. Ishmael (from which comes the Arabic race) was not born-again and remained a Gentile. Isaac was born-again and became a Jew.

12. Isaac had two sons: Esau and Jacob. Esau was not born-again and remained a Gentile. Jacob was born-again and became a Jew.

13. All Jacob's sons were RACIALLY Jews (new nation: Israel). They were believers.

14. All people born from then on through the OT and beyond were RACIAL JEWS, but not necessarily regenerate. The Jewish race from the Tribes of Israel on is based on genes, not on regeneration as in the first three generations. This is why the phrase, "God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob" is often used. Others have the genes of Abraham, but not the genes of Isaac and Jacob. Example: Arabs.

15. The Jews are a race which does not lose identification, part of their discipline. German Jew, American Jew, etc.

Israel, Regathering and Restoration
(Category 276)

I. Regathering

A. The 5th Cycle of Discipline will be removed at the 2nd Advent, therefore: (See point B)

B. Israel is going to be regathered at the 2nd Advent. Matt. 24:29-31, Mark 13:24-27, Isa. 11:10-16 (below), Ezek. 20:34.

C. Isaiah 11:10-16, regathering passage.

1. v. 10: "root of Jesse": Jesus Christ, root-shoot. Foundation.
"his rest": Salvation
"that day": Millennium

2. v. 11: "remnant": Regenerate of Israel.
"Cush": Ethopia
"Elam": Syria
"Shinar": Babylon
"Hamath": Syria
"islands of the sea": The entire world

3. v. 12: "he": Jesus Christ
"ensign": Regimental flag
"outcasts": Jews under the 5th cycle of discipline

4. v. 14: Move across water without hindrance. Fulfillment of the Palestinian Covenant.

5. v. 15: "tongue": Red Sea
"river": Euphrates

6. v. 16: "remnant": The 10 tribes

D. The Feast of the Trumpets is a picture of the regathering of Israel in the future. Joel 2:1, 15-21.

E. The fact that there are Jews in the land today only shows that Satan is active today.

F. The Jews are under the 5th cycle of discipline which means they are going to be scattered until Jesus Christ returns and then Jesus Christ and only Jesus Christ will (can) regather them.

G. He will whistle for them and the Jews will come back into the land. Isaiah.

H. In the meantime you are going to find Jews scattered in many lands, speaking many Gentile languages. Because of these languages they will be able to evangelize during the Trib. (144,000)

I. There will be some Jews in the land during the Tribulation, under a dictator.

J. When David's greater son (Jesus Christ) comes back as King, then the Jews can come back. No Jew is in the land, legitimately, without the King.

K. The King is in heaven, when He returns, He will be in the land - then the Jews can go back.

L. Jews are under a double curse today:

1. Spiritual death
2. 5th Cycle of Discipline

M. The only way a Jew can get out from under the 5th cycle of discipline today is by way of regeneration, which results in:

1. Spiritual life (Regenerate)
2. No longer a Jew, but Church (body of Christ)

II. Restoration:

A. Jews will be restored as a Nation - Israel (under God) at the 2nd Advent of Jesus Christ.

B. Four Unconditional Covenants will be fulfilled at the 2nd Advent. See Category on these covenants.

C. Isaiah 35:1-10

1. v. 1: "wilderness": Desert, "rose": Crocus
2. v. 2: "glory of Lebanon": Trees, in the desert
3. v. 3: "confirm": Make strong
4. v. 4: "come with vengeance": 2nd Advent. Baptism of fire--judges unbelievers.
5. v. 5: Believers alive at the 2nd Advent are NOT given resurrection bodies. Health is restored. They populate the earth. Capital punishment is the only death.
6. v. 6: "streams in the desert": Nature will improve
7. v. 7: "dragons": Jackals, live in the desert
8. v. 8: Highway is so wide you can't wander off it. "unclean": Unbeliever.
9. v. 10: "ransomed": believers

D. Isaiah 65:17-25

1. v. 20: Reference to capital punishment
2. v. 21: Jews back in the land, idiom meaning, "not conquered".
3. v. 22: Private ownership of property
4. v. 23: War will not come along and destroy what is accumulated.
5. v. 24: Prayer system of the Millennium
6. v. 25: Humanly impossible to do these things

E. Zechariah 8:20-23

Israel: Responsibility and Failure
(Category 277)

1. Once internationalism is outlawed (Gen. 11) and with the inauguration of nationalism, we have a scattering of nations geographically, linguistically, and racially. This demands missionary activity.

2. Abraham was the first foreign missionary. He was a Gentile and became a Jew.

3. First title for a missionary was "Hebrew," which means "one who crosses over the river."

4. Abraham became a Hebrew. He crossed over the River Euphrates and came into Canaan and evangelized. Converts: Aner, Mamre, Eschol and many others. Gen. 14:13.

5. In the age of Israel, Jews were responsible for custodianship of the Word and dissemination of the gospel. Romans 3:2.

6. Israel was a missionary base because they had custodianship of the Word.

7. Those who became born-again were to grow in grace and knowledge and to evangelize.

8. Jews were to go to the Gentiles and bring them the message of the gospel. Example: Jonah.

9. The first failure:

   Jews generally failed to accept Jesus Christ as Saviour. They accepted the Mosiac Law as a way of salvation, and sought human righteousness as the basis of salvation rather than Divine righteousness, which can only be credited to the individual on the basis of faith in Jesus Christ.

10. Second Failure: Having failed at the point of salvation, they failed at the point of missions.

11. You cannot become a missionary unless you are born-again.

12. Their failure led to a change in dispensation and in administrators and the 5th cycle of discipline for Israel.

13. During the 5th cycle of discipline, the Church is the missionary base.

14. Even though Israel failed, God used other means and Gentiles were saved in Old Testament times. Romans 9:30-33. In fact, probably more Gentiles were saved in the OT than Jews--according to this passage.

15. Jews had a perfect system for disseminating the gospel: Levitical feasts, offerings, Holy Days, etc. They will again evangelize during the Tribulation. This is part of their future.

Israel: 12 Tribes of Israel (Chronological Sequence)
(Category 278)

Genesis 29, 30 and 35:18

1. Reuben, son of Leah. Gen. 29:32.

   As first born he should have:

   a. Rulership of the tribe: Lost it to Judah

   b. Priesthood of the tribe: Lost it to Levi

   c. Double Portion: Lost it to Joseph (Ephraim & Manasseh)

2. Simeon, son of Leah: Gen. 29:33
3. Levi, son of Leah: Gen. 29:34, Priestly tribe.
4. Judah, son of Leah: Gen. 29:35
5. Dan, son of Bilhah (Rachel's handmaid): Gen. 30:6
6. Naphtali, son of Bilhah. Gen. 30:8
7. Gad, son of Zilpah (Leah's handmaid): Gen. 30:11
8. Asher, son of Zilpah. Gen. 30:13
9. Issachar, son of Leah: Gen. 30:18
10. Zebulun, son of Leah: Gen. 30:20
11. Joseph, son of Rachel: Gen. 30:24

    a. Double portion tribe.

    b. Went to two sons of Joseph: Ephraim and Manasseh

12. Benjamin, son of Rachel. Gen. 35:18

Israel: 12 Tribes of Israel (Historical Sequence)
(Category 279) Genesis 49

1. Reuben, son of Leah. v. 3 Depicts character of Israel from the time of Malachi up to the time of Christ.

2. Simeon, son of Leah. v. 5 Depicts character of Israel from the time of Malachi up to the time of Christ.

3. Levi, son of Leah. v. 5 Depicts character of Israel from time of Malachi up to the time of Christ.

4. Judah, son of Leah. v. 8. Picture of Israel at time of the 2nd Advent.

5. Zebulun, son of Leah. v. 13. Depicts Israel scattered among the nations during the Church Age.

6. Issachar, son of Leah. v. 14 Depicts Israel scattered among the nations during the Church Age.

7. Dan, son of Bilhah. v. 16 Depicts the apostate Jews in the Tribulation. The Dictator of Palestine, the false prophet, will come from this tribe.

8. Gad, son of Zilpah. v. 19 Picture of the believing Jews during the Tribulation.

9. Asher, son of Zilpah. v. 20 Picture of the believing Jews during the Tribulation.

10. Naphtali, son of Bilhah. v. 21 Picture of the believing Jews during the Tribulation.

11. Joseph, son of Rachel. v. 27 Another picture of the 2nd Advent of Christ, especially to Israel.

12. Benjamin, son of Rachel. v. 27 Son of my right hand. Pictures the rule of Christ during the millennium.

The Three Great Prophecies of Genesis:

a. Salvation: Gen. 3:15

b. Origin and Trend of the races: Gen. 9:25 - Ch. 10

c. One National Entity: Gen. 49 (the above)

Israel: Uniqueness of the Age of Israel
(Category 280)

Just as the Church today has monopolies, so there existed in the Jewish Age eight items of Jewish monopoly, all listed in Romans 9:4-5.

1. "the adoption": Which means they were God's special nation. They were the custodians of Divine Revelation and responsible for its dessemination. Ex. 4:22, Deut. 7:6, Amos 3:2, Isa. 66:2.

2. "the glory": The personal presence of Jesus Christ, the Shekinah glory which resided in the Holy of Holies was the Lord Jesus Christ. James 2:1.

3. "covenants": Four unconditional covenants: Abrahamic, Palestinic, Davidic, New.

4. "the giving of the law": A conditional covenant, the Mosiac law.

   a. The Mosiac law was given to the Jews only. Ex. 19:3, Lev. 26:46, Romans 3:19.

   b. The Mosiac law was never given to the Gentiles. Deut. 4:8

   c. The Mosiac law was never given to the Church. Acts 15:5, 24, Romans 6:14, Gal. 2:19, 5:18-23.

5. "the service": Type of worship conducted under the Mosiac law, by the Levitical Priesthood. The ritual of the OT was centered about the person of the Lord Jesus Christ and was to teach them of their responsibility in disseminating the truth.

6. "the promises": Three categories of Divine promise:

   a. Messianic promises dealing with the coming of Messiah.

   b. Temporal promises for human problems. Psalm 37, 55:22, Isa. 41:10.

   c. Promises of the future: 2nd Advent, millennial, reign and fulfillment of the 4 covenants (unconditional).

7. "the fathers": Regenerate ancestory. Israel was the only nation founded on regeneration.

8. "of whom as concerning the flesh":

   a. Jesus Christ in His humanity, is a Jew: Rom. 1:3.

   b. Jesus Christ is in the direct line of David.

"Christ came, who is over all, God blessed, forever."

Jealousy
(Category 281)

1. Jealousy is a mental attitude sin. Matthew 27:18, Mark 15:10

2. Jealousy removes all happiness from the believer--because it is a mental attitue sin and produces self-induced misery.

3. Some persons cannot stand the success of others and cannot stand for others to get any credit; therefore, jealousy destroys their RMA.

4. The Pharisees were jealous of Jesus Christ. Matthew 27:18, Mark 15:10.

5. Jesus Christ now departs because of this attitude. He cannot minister in the area of jealousy.

Jerusalem: Contrast between the Millennial and New
(Category 282)

Millennial Jerusalem Zech. 2, Ezek. 40-48	Eternal Jerusalem Rev. 21:9-22:5
1. Natural light	1. Supernatural light: Rev. 21:11
2. No walls (wall of fire) Zech. 2:4-5	2. Walls in eternal Jerusalem Rev. 21:12
3. A temple: Ezek. 40-48	3. No temple in the eternal Jerusalem. Rev. 21:22
4. Animal Sacrifices: Ezek. 47:1	4. No animal sacrifices
5. Living water comes out of the temple in MJ. Ezek. 47:1	5. Water of life comes out of the throne in the NJ. Rev. 22:1
6. Unsaved people in the millennial temple: Zech. 12:6, 14:11.	6. Only saved people in the New Jerusalem. Rev. 21:24
7. Trees for food: Ezek. 47:7-12	7. Only the tree of life: Rev. 22:2

No question, there is a great contrast between the Millennial Jerusalem and the New Jerusalem.

Jerusalem: The Jerusalem Church and Romans
(Category 282)

Scripture: Acts 21:18-40

1. While the Jerusalem church gives no help to Paul; the Roman Empire will because of a well-structuredcommon law system.

2. The Romans here are unbelievers which brings us to a principle: Principle: Where law and order exist, it is better to fall into into the hands of an unbeliever than into the hands of the religious, or carnal believers.

3. The Roman Empire gives Paul a fair shake in contrast to the Jerusalem church. The Jerusalem church gave Paul a bad time and bad advice (to go to them temple).

4. Paul would have been beaten to death except for the rescue of SPQR (the Senate and the people of Rome) and under D. I. #4.

5. The greatest believer in the Church Age (Paul) should have been welcomed with open arms by the Jerusalem Church and given the widest possible hearing.

6. Instead we see them encouraging the apostle of grace to abandon grace for a legalistic principle in the temple.

7. Paul was alone in the temple at the mercy of the crowd and they would have killed Paul except for the overruling will of God using the Roman tribune.

8. The Jerusalem Church offers no prayer for Paul as they did for Peter.

9. The Jerusalem Church had neither power or protest with man; they had no power or prayer with God.

10. Ignorance of doctrine and compromise has ruined Jerusalem Church who had been starving, and were being fed that moment by the money Paul had brought.

11. It's going to be hard for Paul to explain the reasons for this riot to the unbelievers in general.

Jewish Nation: Founded on Regeneration
(Category 283)

1. The Jewish racial line came through Isaac.

2. The difference between Isaac and Ishmael is regeneration, not physical birth.

3. Each had volition; Isaac had positive volition, Ishmael had negative volition.

4. God in omniscience always knew in which way each person would respond.

5. The Abrahamic Covenant is based on regeneration, hence the promises made to Abraham and believed by him can only be passed on to another believer--in this case Isaac.

6. Ishmael was a natural, but not spiritual seed of Abraham, Isaac was both natural and of the spiritual seed.

7. The will of God had not failed the Jews, but the Jews in Paul's day had failed the will of God by negative volition towards Jesus Christ.

8. Therefore, as natural or racial--but not spiritual seed of Abraham--they could not receive the promises made to Abraham.

9. Physical descent or natural birth is worthless in transmission of divine promises. They can only be transmitted in regeneration.

10. Likewise Jacob and Esau have the same father--and mother, but the difference again is in spiritual birth.

Joy
(Category 284)

1. Joy is the Greek word "kara" for mental happiness.

2. Joy is a monopoly of believers (inner happiness).

3. It is possible for an unbeliever to be happy because happiness depends upon circumstances, but it is IMPOSSIBLE for an UNBELIEVER to have JOY or INNER MENTAL HAPPINESS.

4. This belongs to the believer in the Lord Jesus Christ and is one of the by-products of Christianity.

5. The unbeliever is a slave to circumstances and if the circumstances are right he is happy, if the circumstances are unpleasant he is miserable.

6. The unbeliever cannot rise above his circumstances, he can only compensate through sublimination, escapism, etc., and at the other end of the line he has the same old misery.

7. In contrast, the believer has something which is fantastic: joy (inner happiness) in the midst of all kinds of circumstances. Phil. 4:11.

8. Often the tragedy is that the believer imitates the unbeliever, operating in the power of his old sin nature.

9. As long as the believer operates in the power of his old sin nature, you can't tell him from the unbeliever, and he by-passes the joy that is the monopoly of the believer.

10. This joy is appropriation of the believer through the filling of the Holy Spirit using GAP.

11. Joy is NOT some emotional turbulence. JOY IS INNER ORIENTATION TO THE GRACE OF GOD.

12. Joy (believer's inner happiness) is the 3rd floor of the believer's edification complex. The 1st floor involves grace orientation, then an RMA, then finally inner happiness. Also the capacity to love and mastery of the details of life finish out this inner building, inner structure.

13. This edification complex (the new man) reflects the glory of God.

14. Thus joy is one of the main points that has to be resident in the believer to glorify God--to reflect His glory.

Joy (Inner Happiness)
(Category 285)

"So that I rejoiced the more": 2 Cor. 7:7

1. Happiness is older than the human race. Happiness is resident in the Trinity--a result of the character of God. Gal. 5:22-23 describes the character of Christ--and included is joy.

2. In Eternity Past God desired to share his happiness with man in time (doctrine of divine decrees). This has to be done through salvation--and getting into BD. Eph. 1:3.

3. God's happiness is transferred to man via grace. Eph. 2:8-9. GAP is designed to bring happiness to the believer. 1 John 1:4.

4. Such happiness is definitely confined to the plan of God. Acts 16:31-34. Salvation means the possibility, but not the reality automatically of such happiness.

5. Ultimate happiness is found in the edification complex of the soul. John 17:17, 17:13. Note the word pleroo in Eph. 3:19.

6. Happiness prior to salvation is temporary and superficial. It does not sustain in any pressure or any adversity. It is fleeting and unstable. Daniel 5:1-6

   a. The unbeliever's human happiness depends upon circumstances as a rule--or compatibility with a human being.

   b. For happiness the unbeliever often goes into a form of slavery. (Like dope, drinking etc.)

7. God has designed Phase 2 happiness to be permanent and stabilized through the edification complex. John 17:13, 17:17.

   The edification complex sustains in every circumstance--therefore GAP is the basis of this happiness. 1 John 1:4.

8. Principle: Divine happiness is double happiness:

   a. Filling of the Holy Spirit: Produces the fruit of joy. Gal. 5:22-23.

   b. The edification complex produces joy: Col. 1:9-10

   c. The word "blessed" in the Hebrew (Ashere) and in the Greek (makarioi) is plural. "Happinesses".

9. Inevitably the perpetuation of inner happiness is the doctrine of GAP used daily. James 1:25, Matt. 4:4, Jer. 15:16. Many believers don't take enuf doctrinal fuel to gas up the inner happiness principle.

10. Happiness (divine) protects from three areas of disillusion.

    a. Disillusion from the circumstances of life: Phil. 4:11-12

b. Disillusion from the details of life: Heb. 13:5-6

c. Disillusion with believers: Heb. 12:2-4

You will sooner or later discover that just because a person is a Christian--does not mean that he is nice, honest, truthful, or even dependable.

Disillusion with believers is a very serious and very dangerous situation, because you may use this as an excuse to get away from Bible Doctrine. You get away from the Word. Angelic Conflict knocks you out.

YOU shouldn't have your eyes on people in the first place! Jer. 17:5, "Cursed is the man that puts his trust in man."

11. Inner happiness enhances the capacity for love: Jer. 15:16, John 13:17, 1 John 1:4.

12. The believer is commanded to be happy--and God never makes a command--unless He provides a way for provision. Phil. 4:4.

Chairete: Present active indicative, 2 plural of chairo.

Judas Iscariot
(Category 286)

1. Opportunities for Judas to believer:

a. John 6:7, "Tribe of Judah"
b. Luke 6:16, Called
c. Matthew 10:4, One of the 12
d. John 12:6, Treasurer
e. John 13:26, At Last Supper

2. The Sowing of Judas:

a. Covetous: John 12:4-6
b. Thief: John 12:6
c. Satan-possessed: John 13:27, Luke 22:3
d. Bargain: Mark 14:10
e. Bribed to be a traitor: Matthew 26:14-16

3. The Reaping of Judas:

a. Repent: Matt. 27:3 (The Greek is metamelomai--or regret.)
b. Restitution: Matt. 27:4
c. Death: Matt. 27:5, Acts 1:18
d. Replacement: 1 Cor. 15:7-10

Judgment Seat of Christ: Introduction
(Category 287)

1. The Judgment Seat of Christ (often called Bema) is for Church Age believers only. Romans 14:10b (context). Refers to a brother which is a believer in the Church Age.

2. The Judgment Seat of Christ is for ALL believers (CA) carnal or spiritual, 2 Cor. 5:10, 1 Cor. 3:12-15. Therefore all believers go up in the rapture whether or not they are in fellowship.

3. JSC takes place in heaven immediately after the rapture, while the Tribulation is going on down on earth.

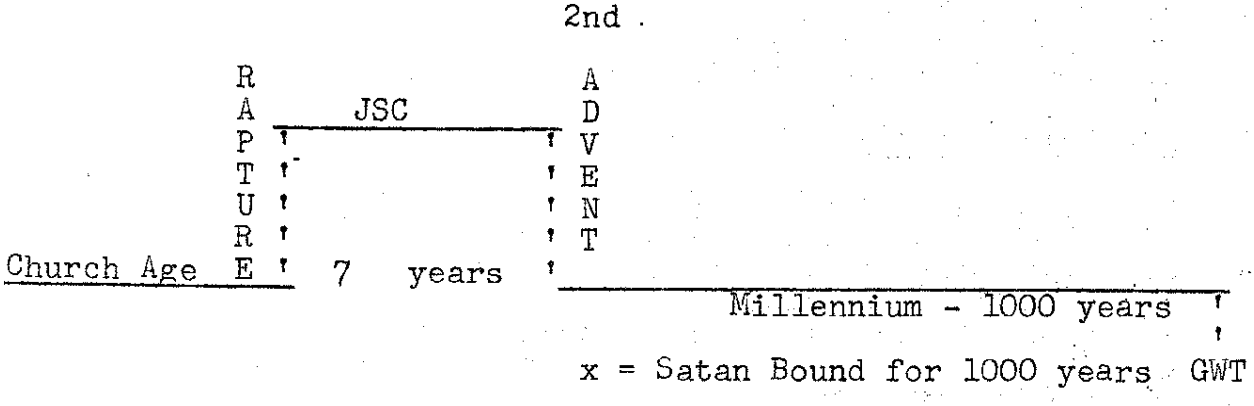
4. JSC has to be between the Rapture and 2nd Advent because the church comes back with Christ as the "Bride of Christ" cleansed of human good. Rev. 19:14, "armies . . . white and clean." Armies of angels and Church age believers. Col. 3:4, Jude 14.

5. On earth the Church is called the body of Christ. In heaven the Church is called the bride of Christ. 1 Cor. 12:12.

6. The bride must be prepared for the groom. This occurs in heaven during the Tribulation on earth.

7. JSC (believers) is NOT the same as the Great White Throne Judgment (unbelievers).

8. The Last Judgment for unbelievers takes place at the end of the millennium.



9. Scripture for the Judgment Seat of Christ is found in 1 Cor. 3, and the Great White Throne in Rev. 20:11-15, contrast them. The first involves Church Age believers, the latter unbelievers of all ages.

10. The JSC is one of the SEVEN MAJOR JUDGMENTS.
See categories on the 7 major judgments and also next category on the Judgment Seat of Christ.

Judgment Seat of Christ: Preparation of the Bride
(Category 292)

1. The Church (composed of believers) is called the body of Christ while it is on earth. 1 Cor. 12:12ff. (ff= following)

   a. It is growing, being completed. Eph. 1:21, 22; 1 Cor. 3:9; Matt. 16:18, Acts 2:47b.

   b. Members have different responsibilities because of spiritual gifts. Romans 12:4-8, 1 Cor. 12:11ff.

2. The Church is called the Bride of Christ in heaven and undergoes preparation during this seven years of Tribulation on earth. Emphasis while in heaven is on preparation and display.

3. This preparation is three fold:

   a. Resurrection body: 1 Cor. 15:51-57, 1 John 3:1-2, Phil. 3:21, 1 Thess. 4:16-18

   b. No old sin nature: Phil. 3:21, " . . . body like that of the Lord Jesus Christ": The LJC did not have an old sin nature. 2 Cor. 5:21.

   c. All human good is taken from the bride. 1 Cor. 3:12, 15. Believer is cleansed (liberated) from human good so he won't be embarrased. Unbeliever is bound up with human good and cast into the LAKE OF FIRE.

4. Reward is given for Divine Good. 1 Cor. 3:14

5. So when the bride returns with Christ she will:

   a. Not have an old sin nature.
   b. Never again perform human good, or sin.
   c. Come back to reign.

6. It probably will take seven years to burn away the human good. God deals with individuals, not with the masses. Couple this with the fact that He bore individual sins on the cross and one concludes that He probably deals individually with rewards.

Judgment Seat of Christ #2
(Category 288)

1. The Judgment Seat of Christ is one of seven judgments.

2. The Judgment Seat of Christ (JSC) takes place in heaven during 7 years of the Tribulation on earth. Romans 14:10-12 "all" = believers of the Church Age (no unbelievers).

3. The JSC is for ALL believers (carnal and spiritual) 2 Cor. 5:10. Therefore all believers go up in the Rapture, whether or not they are in fellowship.

4. JSC is the place of the evaluation of the believer's production. Gold, silver, precious stone CANNOT BE PRODUCED BY AN UNBELIEVER. 2 Cor. 5:10.

5. That done IN the Bottom Circle (Place of the filling of the Holy Spirit) is gold, silver, precious stones. 1 Cor. 3:12-15. This is DIVINE GOOD. The edification complex is constructed on the basis of divine good. These building materials have to be divine viewpoint building materials.

6. That done OUT of the Bottom Circle (Place of the control of the old sin nature) is wood, hay, stubble. This is HUMAN GOOD. The building materials of the edification complex is not human activity of the flesh.

7. DIVINE GOOD is rewarded.

8. At the rapture each believer receives a resurrection body, minus the old sin nature. Phil. 3:21.

9. On earth the Church is called the Body of Christ. 1 Cor. 12:12.

10. At the end of the Tribulation (7 years) believers (Church Age) will come back with the Lord Jesus Christ (2nd Advent) as the Bride of Christ, cleansed of all human good. 1 Thess. 3:13, Zech. 14:5b.

11. Believers will rule with the Sovereign King (LJC) for 1,000 years-Millennium. Rev. 20:2-4.

12. Believers in physical bodies at the 2nd Advent keep on having children during the Millennium.

13. The evaluation of the works of OT saints, tribulational, and millennial believers will be at the end of the millennium. Rev. 11:18b.

JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST, Rewards & Crowns
(Category 289)

I. Rewards:

A. Anything we know about rewards is given in generalities in Scripture, such as:

1. Crowns
2. Accolades, "well done thou good and faithful servant . . "
3. Living it up, "no more sorrow"

B. Rewards can be likened to a Thanksgiving Dinner. Each eats a different amount, but each is satisfied. (No OSN with its lust pattern in heaven).

C. There will be a difference, but it will be a matter of responsibility, not rewards (comparable to our spiritual gifts in the Church Age).

D. Jehovah is the Rock of Ages.

E. Church: Heavenly Kingdom - Universal Priesthood.

1. Church is IN the rock.
2. Abode is NEW HEAVENS - in charge of galaxies, celestial bodies, heavens etc.
3. New Jerusalem--administrative center--and since the bride is one with the Lord Jesus Christ, much time will be spent there. The place is being prepared. John 14:1-3.

F. Israel: Earthly kingdom - Specialized Priesthood

1. Israel is ON the rock.
2. Abode is the NEW EARTH.

II. Crowns:

A. Righteousness: 2 Tim. 4:7-8. Production of divine good--given for time logged in fellowship.

B. Joy: Phil. 4:1; 1 Thess. 2:19. Helping other believers; winning souls.

C. Glory: 1 Peter 5:2-4, given to pastors, ministers who minister in fellowship and develop the gift of pastor-teacher, or evangelism.

D. Life: Rev. 2:10; James 1:12. Occupation with Christ, enduring testing, doctrine in your life is your life, everything else is a detail.

E. Other mention of crowns in Scripture:

1. Incorruptible: 1 Cor. 9:25
2. Many: Rev. 19:12
3. Thorns: Matt. 27:29

As Spiritual gifts are to the Church Age, perhaps crowns and rewards are to eternity. Think it through.

Judgments, Seven Major Judgments (Category 290)

1. Major Judgment of History: 32 AD (Approx.) Jesus Christ was judged for our sins on the cross. 2 Cor. 5:21, 2 Peter 2:24, 3:18.

2. Self-Judgment of believers - Rebound. 1 John 1:9, 1 Cor. 11:31, OT: Psalm 32:5, 51:1-5, Isa. 43:25-28.

3. Judgment of Believer's work (evaluation of production)

   a. Judgment seat of Christ (Church age believers) 1 Cor. 3:11-16, Rom. 14:10b (after rapture).

   b. Rest of the believers. Rev. 11:18b

      "the prophets": OT saints
      "to the saints": Tribulational saints
      "them that fear thy name": Millennial saints

4. Judgment of the Living Jews at the 2nd Advent (Baptism of Fire)

   a. Ten Virgins: Matt. 25:1-13
   b. Parable of the 5-2-1 Talents: Matt. 25:14-30
   c. Ezekiel 20:22-38
   d. Matthew 13:24-30 Wheat and tares
   e. Unbelievers cast off the earth. Believers continue into the Millennium.

5. Judgment of the Living Gentiles at the 2nd Advent (Baptism of Fire)

   a. Matthew 25:31-46, "goats": Unbelievers
   b. Matthew 24:37-41, analogy to Days of Noah

6. Judgment of Satan and Fallen Angels:

   a. Matt. 25:41, cast into the Lake of Fire forever!
   b. At the end of the millennium: Rev. 20:8-10

7. Judgment of Unbelievers: Rev. 20:11-15

   All unbelievers are resurrected, judged, according to their works and cast into the lake of fire, because of their rejection of Christ.

Judging: Doctrine of
(Category 291)

I. Κρίνω: krino: Translated in a number of ways--"to judge."

A. To select, to perfer: Romans 14:5, "One man esteemeth one day above another: another esteemeth every day alike. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind." Legitimate

B. To judge: 1 Cor. 10:15, "I speak as to wise men; judge ye what I say." Right sense, discernment.

C. To reach a decision: 1 Cor. 7:37, " . . . hath so decreed." Right sense, context determines.

D. To hold court (legal term):

1. Right of Paul and congregation to hold court: 1 Cor. 5:12. "For what have I to do to judge them also that are without? (unbelievers). Do not ye judge them that are within (believers in local church)?" (In regard to believers this is legitimate.)

2. Paul before the Roman Court: Acts 25:10, " . . . where I ought to be judged." It is legitimate for courts to judge cases.

3. Settling a dispute or quarrel: 1 Cor. 6:6, "But brother goeth to law with brother, and that before the unbelievers". Krino here is translated "goeth to law." In this sense (between two church members) judging is not legitimate.

4. Divine court: 2 Timothy 4:1, " . . . Christ who shall judge the quick (living) and the dead at His appearing and His kingdom." Legitimate, of course.

5. To pass judgment upon, thus to express an opinion:

a. Matthew 7:1-2, "Judge not, that ye be not judged. For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged: and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again." Not bona fide. This would be a believer out of fellowship.

b. Luke 6:37, "Judge not, and ye shall not be judged; condemn not, and ye shall not be condemned: forgive, and ye shall be forgiven." Counsel, don't judge!

***c. John 7:24, "Judge not according to the appearance, but judge righteous judgment." Valuable verse. This is carnal judgment, but there is also a bona fide discernment.

6. To pass an unfavorable judgment upon, to criticize, to find fault with, to condemn.

a. Romans 2:1, "Therefore thou art inexcusable, O man, whosoever thou art that judgest: for wherein thou judgest another, thou condemnest thyself, for thou that judgest doest the same things." This is either a mental attitude sin, or a sin of the tongue or both. Romans 2:23 carries the same connotation.

b. Romans 14:3, "Let not him that eateth despise him that eateth not; and let not him which eateth not judge him that eateth: for God hath received him." In other words, keep your nose out of other people's business.

c. Romans 14:10, "But why dost thou judge thy brother? (Yes, WHY DO YOU DO IT?) or why dost thou set at nought thy brother? for we shall stand before the judgment seat of Christ." Delegate all judgment to the Lord.

***d. Romans 14:13, "Let us not therefore judge one another any more: but judge this rather, that no man put a stumblingblock or an occasion to fall in his brother's way". Here krino is used in a bad sense, and also a good sense.

e. 1 Cor. 4:5, "Therefore judge nothing before the time until the Lord come, who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts: and then shall every man have praise of God."

f. 1 Cor. 10:29, "Conscience, I say, not thine own, but of the other: for why is my liberty judged of another man's conscience." In essence Paul is saying, "Why is my freedom of action to be unfavorable judged by another man's scruples?" Live and let live. Live your life as unto the Lord, not unto people.

g. Colossians 2:16, "Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the sabbath days . . ." That is, let the other believer live his life as unto the Lord.

h. James 4:11-12, "Speak not evil one of another brethren. He that speaketh evil of his brother, and judgeth his brother . . . there is one lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy: who are you that keeps on judging another?" You put yourself up as God--play the Holy Spirit when you judge in this manner!

i. A good concluding verse for krino is Romans 14:22, " . . . happy is he that condemneth (judgeth) not himself in the thing which he alloweth." (This is freedom from a guilt complex).

One can conclude from the study of krino that the word is used in a good sense (discernment) and in a bad sense (condemnation--carnal judgment). The context determines, and maturity makes the application clear. This doctrine has many tenacles, many facets. A continued and diligent study will make the concepts clear. WHATEVER YOU DO, DON'T ABORT THE DOCTRINE. If you are unsure of an area--put it on the back burner--don't get upset and pull the plug!

II. ἀνακρίνω : anakrino: "to pass judgment upon" which comes to mean "to examine."

A. To examine for answers: (A legitimate positive attitude toward the Scriptures).

1. Acts 17:11, "These were more noble (open-minded) than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the Word with all readiness (eagerness) of mind, and searched (examined) the Scriptures (DAILY), whether those things were so."

2. 1 Cor. 10:25, 27, " . . . eat, asking no question, for conscience sake . . . whatsoever is set before you, eat, asking no question for conscience sake."

Anakrino is translated "asking no question." This simply states that in cases like this you are to not make an issue out of food set before you.

B. To discern (while in fellowship). The proof that krino or anakrino takes on a good connotation under certain conditions, is found in this passage among others. The term spiritual indicates that a believer in fellowship can discern without condemnation from God.

1 Cor. 2:14-15, "But the natural man (unbeliever) receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him; neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned (anakrino). BUT he that is spiritual (in fellowship) judgeth (discerns) all things, yet he himself is judged of no man."

III. διακρίνω: diakrino: "to judge through"

A. To be at odds with oneself, to doubt, to waver:

1. Romans 4:20, "He (Abraham) staggered (diakrino) not at the promise of God . . ."

2. Romans 14:23, "And he that doubeth (diakrino) is damned if he eat, because (he eateth) not of faith: for whatsoever is not of faith is sin." This is an introspective judging which proceeds out of a guilt complex. Not bona fide.

B. To make a distinction: 1 Cor. 4:7, "For who maketh thee to differ from another . . ." This is describing the sin of impartiality . . . exalting one person over another. Not recognizing that a person is what he is because of the grace of God.

C. To pass judgment: 1 Cor. 14:29, "Let the prophets speak two or three, and let the other judge." Legitimate in the context between 30-70 AD.

D. To judge oneself: 1 Cor. 11:31a, "For if we would judge (anakrino) ourselves, we should not be judged (krino).

E. To render a decision: 1 Cor. 6:5, "I speak to your shame. Is it so, that there is not a wise man among you? no, not one that shall be able to judge between his brethren?" Here judge is used in the sense of discernment.

IV. διάκρισις : Diakrisis (krisis comes from krino)

Hebrews 5:14, "But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age (mature believers, believers with edification complexes) even those who by reason of use have their senses excerised to discern both good and evil."

Only the mature believer is able to consistently discern. James 3 backs this up as well. (Doctrine of the tongue).

V. κριτικός : Kritikos (from which we get the word critical)

This word is used once in the Word of God--a quality ascribed to the Word of God as an absolute criteria of judgment.

Hebrews 4:12, "For the word of God is quick (living) and powerful, and sharper than any two edged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner (kritikos--criticizer) of the thoughts and intents of the heart."

It stands to the everlasting credit of Bible Doctrine that if you know the Word Biblically and categorically--and use it while in fellowship--that you will discern as well.

VI. δοκιμάζω : dokimadzo, "to test, to prove, to scrutinize, to make a decision.

A. 1 Cor. 16:3, "And when I come, whomsoever ye shall approve (dokimadzo) by your letters them . . ."

B. Philippians 1:10, "That ye may approve (dokimadzo) things that are excellent . . ." Discernment in separating the better from the best--etc.

C. 1 Thess. 2:4, "But as we were allowed (approved) of God to be put in trust with the gospel even so we speak; not as pleasing men, but God, which trieth our hearts."

D. 1 John 4:1, "Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try (to test, to prove, to scrutinize--dokmadzo) the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world." To test them--put them alongside BD, Bible doctrine is the X-ray that points out the problem.

This is a powerful word for discernment that is used in a good sense--the application of BD to experience.

Conclusion

The doctrine of judging will be categorized and diagramed on next page.

I. Categorization of the Doctrine of Judging:

A. _____, can be used in a good sense, and it can be used in a bad sense. 1 Cor. 10:15 compared with Matthew 7:1-2.

B. Context determines in which sense krino is used. (Study the verses given in this category). Note especially John 7:24, Romans 14:13.

C. In order to teach the doctrine of judging, one must have vocabulary to communicate. Therefore:

1. The term judging will be used for improper destructive criticism, either by a believer out of fellowship, or an unbeliever under certain conditions.

2. The term discernment will be used for proper evaluation of people, events, problems, and is the monopoly of the believer in fellowship, under the control of the Holy Spirit.

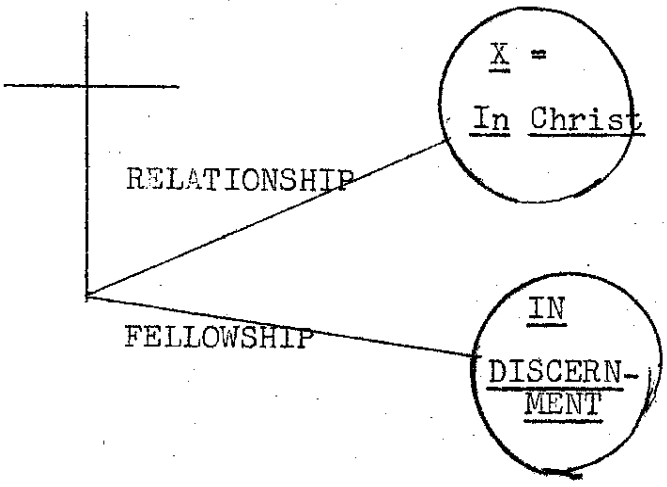
D. Obviously a believer must evaluate, must test, must prove, must make decisions many times each day. To fulfill divine viewpoint he must be in fellowship when he does this.

E. When a believer is out of fellowship, he may or may not evaluate correctly. However nothing he does is acceptable to the Lord for he is out of fellowship, and operating on the basis of human good (source, old sin nature). His evaluation may not be based on facts, and in essence, do a great deal of harm.

F. The absolute criterion for discernment, evaluation, is the Word of God. Hebrews 4:12.

G. Only maturity, that is, an edification complex of the soul, can handle this doctrine. Thus the believer is to grow up as rapidly as possible. Heb. 5:11-14, James 3.

II. Diagram of the Doctrine of Judging:



Answer--proper use of 1 John 1:9.

Judgment: Doctrine or Death Lesson
(Category 293)

I. Exodus 20:1-12: Principle: The Lord keeps people out of bondage.

A. v. 2: " . . . out of the house of bondage"
In application today:

1. He can keep people out of the slavery of a hippy mentality.
2. Out of the slavery of drugs.
3. Out of the slavery of marrying the wrong woman.
4. Out of the slavery of any situation of life.

B. v. 3-4: Religion causes slavery: Christianity establishes true freedom--true liberty--true peace.

C. v. 5: God is jealous: Possessiveness with sin--God owns you as a believer.

1. Hatred of God by people, indifference to Him goes in 3 or 4 generation family curse cycles.

a. Four generations of remiss parents, and offspring on rebellion way destroys a country.

b. So teenagers of that nature--are killed in one way or another--PRINCIPLE: "It is better to destroy teenagers than to let them grow up to a new generation." Proof verse & passage: Deut. 21:18ff.

2. God is dedicated to perserving the human race.

D. v. 6: "And manufacturing grace": How does God manufacture His grace? Out of His own character.

II. Exodus 34:6-7

A. v. 6: "And the Lord passed by before him (Moses) and proclaimed (shouted). God shouted at Moses. What? About the character of God.

B. v. 7: "Keeping mercy for thousands": God perserves grace for thousands of generations. How?

1. "forgiving iniquity": Literally, " . . . lifting up a punishment for sin" (The cross).

2. "forgiving transgression & sin"

a. "transgression": Known sins--rebound
b. "sins": unknown sins taken care of by rebound--the Father cleanses when sin is confessed.

3. "will not clear the guilty": If an individual does not utilize God's grace, he cannot be cleared (unbeliever).

4. "third and fourth generation": EACH GENERATION stands on its own feet. God NEVER punishes the children for the sins of the parents, but parents affect their children's response to God. If you are under a family curse the only way to get out is to believe in Christ for salvation.

Proverbs 14:34, "Righteousness exalteth a nation, but sin is a reproach to any people."

III. Proverbs 30:11-17 (Four generation curse) LOOK IT UP! STUDY!

A. 1st Generation: Rejects authority 30:11

The mental attitude toward parents determines your mental attitude toward everything. Like--marijuana is illegal, but who cares. Speed limits are to be kept--but who cares. A national mentality on this--destroys a country.

B. 2nd Generation: Self-righteous--a law unto themselves. 30:12. They have dung in the face, similar to the priests in Malachi 2:3. "I don't want God, the Bible, I can live my own life--spend my life the way I want. REBELLION!"

C. 3rd Generation: A mature self-righteousness--pride--self-sufficiency in the flesh. All of the above but more defiant, rebellious, mocking, sordid. Prov. 30:13

D. 4th Generation: Violence, mental attitude of robbery, pillage, rape, eliminate the economy--hippy mentality. It describes a bunch of traitors, paracites, no initative--kept alive by the food stamps provided by a middle class tax-payer.

1. They are never satisfied: 30:15-16

2. POINT OF DOCTRINE: VIOLENT DEATH: 30:17

a. "mocketh at his father . . . mother": To deride, to make fun of, to not respect. To treat his mother with contempt.

b. "ravens (buzzards) of the valley shall pick it out" This is an idiom for violent death. Why BUZZARD FODDER.

If a teenager does not have the proper mental attitude toward his parents--will not toward any other form of authority. Thus--in lawlessness--a young person can die violently.

c. How can teenagers die--how can youth die--?

Plus breaking common law--like speeding.

(1) World War 3 if there is one--we hope not!
(2) Civil War: Between blacks and whites
(3) Revolution: This would be horrible

IV. Deut. 21:15-17: Parental Objectivity. Principle: Parents must be objective in their training of children.

V. Deut. 21:18ff. Principle: Under certain conditions--it is better to destroy teenagers than to let them grow up to reproductive age and slavery. This is a tough passage of Scripture! But it gives divine viewpoint--this is what God thinks of rebellion against parents. If this cancer spreads--IT IS HORRIBLE!

A. Deut. 21:18: The setting--very clear--and parental discipline doesn't do the job--.

B. Deut. 21:19: He is brought to the authority--he goes thru the proper court system.

C. Deut. 21:20: The charge

1. He is a glutton: Applicable today to an acid head--one hooked on drugs.

2. He is a drunkard: While still in his teens.

D. Deut. 21:21: DEATH. Why? To protect the next generations. What kind of parents are acid-head types? Drunkards? Things can get so bad in a nation--that the only solution is this. However, this isn't done -- so God has to allow other methods of "wipe-out". By allowing a foreign power to come in and kill.

VI. The Solution: Deut. 6:4 Salvation and growth in Bible Doctrine

A. 6:4, "The Lord Jesus Christ our God is one Lord . . ." (one in essence)

1. "love": The filling of the Spirit 6:5
2. "all thine heart": Frame of reference "
3. "all thine soul": Edification complex "
4. "all thy might": Mental attitude "

B. 6:6 Talking to parents--keep on getting mature--get a frame of reference.

C. 6:7 "teach": To jab, to inculcate, Piel--habitually teach them.

D. 6:8-9: Visual aids--

E. 6:17: Bible doctrine from the human spirit--exhaled.

VII. Deut. 7:9-11

A. 7:9, "Know therefore . . . is faithful": Story of God's grace in history. " . . . to a thousand generations"

B. 7:10-11, "And repayeth them that hate him to their face, to destroy them . . ." Doctrine or death???? What is your response????

Judgment: Doctrine or Death Follow-up
(Category 294)

I. History records that whole generations of young people have been wiped out? Why? For example:

A. In 70 AD when the Jews went under the 5th Cycle, 1,900,000 of the Jews died in a 90 day period. A high percentage of these Jews were young people, possibly 500,000 of them. Why did they die?

B. Likewise in WW 2 of the 6,000,000 Jews who died--again a certain percentage of these were young people. Actually a whole generation of German Jews were wiped out. Why?

C. Gentile nations including Russia, Germany, France, China have had large numbers of young people die. Why? Could it happen in the USA? Could a generation of young people die?

Yes, wide-spread rebellion to authority and law causes a NATIONAL MENTAL attitude of lawlessness. To protect the human race divine judgment often has to be meted out.

II. Exposition of Proverbs 29:1 (Why people die in the above manner.)

"He, that being often reproved hardeneth his neck, shall suddenly be destroyed, and that without remedy."

A. "He": Any individual--however Proverbs was written to the youth of that day. Compare Prov. 30:11, 17, Matt. 15:4, Ephesians 6:1-3.

B. "being often reproved": Being often warned, 2 Tim. 3:16, and not heeding that warning, a believer puts himself under chastisement. He is bucking in his volition (goes on negative).

However someone says, "I've bucked authority several times, and I'm not dead." Why not? THE GRACE OF GOD!

C. "hardeneth his neck": Term for scar tissue: He bows his neck, he tells authority to go jump into the lake--and keeps on doing his thing. This is also applicable to an unbeliever who dies in his sins--because of his rebellion against authority.

D. "shall suddenly be destroyed" Destroyed means to "burst in pieces"--an idiom for death or possibly becoming a human vegetable in an accident.

1. For the believer this is removal through the sin unto death. 1 John 5:16.

2. For the unbeliever this is dying in his sins. Acts 7:51.

E. "and that without remedy (cure)":

1. 2 Chron. 36:16, "But they mocked the messengers of God, and despised his words, and misused his prophets, until the wrath of the Lord arose against his people, till there was no remedy."

2. Prov. 6:15, "Therefore shall his calamity come suddenly; suddenly shall he be broken without remedy."

"Remedy" means no cure--not solution. It is a picture of a believer checking out under discipline, or an unbeliever checking out in his sins.

III. Consider the two ages of accountability:

A. For salvation: That can be as early as 3 years of age, usually not later than 12.

B. In the Christian Way of Life: That is 20 years of age.

1. From whenever you accepted Christ till you turn 20--you are to crash program BD.

2. Exodus 30:14 (Responsible for worship)

a. Up till the age of 20 your parents are responsible for you spiritual worship. They are perfectly in their rights to suggest that you go to Bible class. But at 20--you should be spiritually self-sufficient, and able to stand on your own two spiritual feet.

b. You may not like it--but if you are going to amount to anything--you've got to GET THE WORD!

3. Numbers 1:3: You have a military commitment. (At 20)

4. Numbers 14:29: "Your carcases shall fall in this wilderness; and all that were numbered of you, according to your whole number, from 20 years old and upward which have murmured against me." Two exceptions: Caleb & Joshua.

C. OK, over 20 years of age, you can die--what keeps you alive between 13 and 19? Matthew 15:4, Ephesians 6:1-4?

1. Your mental attitude toward your parents--and thus to God, His word, the pastor and so on.

2. For example I can tell which of you kids respect your parents by the way you respond to the Word in this class.

IV. Conclusion:

A. A youth who dies between 13 and 19--most likely checks out because of a bad mental attitude toward parents, he doesn't respect them--and thus doesn't live long. Eph. 6:1-3.

B. An individual over 20 can check out under the sin unto death because of rebellion toward BD. (Believer). This is called the sin unto death. (388)

Justice: Examples (Pharaoh and Judas)
(Category 295)

I. Introduction:

A. In His JUSTICE gives gives everyone an opportunity to be saved (even though in His foreknowledge He knew they would not accept Jesus Christ as Saviour).

B. He didn't use His foreknowledge to be unfair.

II. Example #1: Pharaoh

A. "And Pharaoh hardened his heart at this time also . . ." Exodus 8:32. Pharaoh went negative towards the Gospel.

B. "And the Lord hardened the heart of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and he pursued after the children of Israel . . ." Exodus 14:8. Meaning: God took the stops off of Pharaoh's negative volition. God kept putting more and more information (in the form of plagues (miracles) in front of Pharaoh and he kept going on negative signals.

C. The Holy Spirit has a restraining influence (ministry) insofar as negative volition is concerned in the world. 2 Thess. 2:7

D. The reason the Tribulation is so horrible is that the Holy Spirit is removed per se. (Universal indwelling of believers)

E. Plagues were evangelism to Pharaoh and others. The mixed multitude that left Egypt included believers of other nationalities than Jewish, who were saved because of this evangelism.

III. Example #2: Judas:

A. Even though, in His Omniscience, God knew that Judas would reject Him, He allowed Judas to become a disciple.

B. Even though, in His OMNISCIENCE, God knew Judas would be dishonest, He didn't say "no" when the disciples elected Judas to be treasurer.

C. All the evangelism passages in the Sermon on the Mount were for the express benefit of Judas, and he still rejected. Man has free will. Christ never coerced Judas' volition.

D. He felt sorry for his sin (regretted, metamellomai--not repented, metavoeo). He even made restitution. But he died, never having accepted Jesus Christ as Saviour. Matt. 27:3.

IV. God is always fair, and just!

Justice of God
(Category 296)

I. The Fairness of God's Justice

A. God is perfect in Justice: Isaiah 45:21, Psalm 89:14

B. God is absolutely fair and impartial. 2 Chron. 19:7, Rom. 3:26, Rev. 15:3.

C. God has the absolute right and authority over His creatures by virtue of creation. God has the perfect right to dispose of His works as it may please Him. SOVEREIGNTY. Psalm 115:3, 135:6.

D. God gave good and righteous laws to man. (+R)

Gen. 2:17; " . . . thou shalt not eat . . ."
John 14:6, "I am the way . . ." (+R demands +R, Romans 3:23).

II. The Demands of God's Justice:

A. God is a judge: Psalm 50:6b

B. As a Judge He places a penalty on sin. Justice demands a penalty. Romans 6:23, "The wages of sin (imputed sin) is death". (Spiritual death)

C. God demands that disobedience against His laws be punished. Deut. 18:18-19.

III. The Satisfaction of God's Justice:

A. God's Justice is satisfied because of God's provision: Jesus Christ paid the penalty. Col. 2:14

1. Person of JC satisfied with +R of God. 2 Cor. 5:21
2. Word of JC satisfied the Justice of God. Isa. 53:11

B. Therefore:

1. God is JUST TO FORGIVE the individual who uses positive volition and accepts the WORK OF JESUS CHRIST. Romans 8:1, no condemnation. 1 John 5:11-12.

2. God is just to condemn the individual who uses negative volition and rejects the work of Jesus Christ. John 3:18, 36--alternatives.

C. The Principle: Grace Always Precedes Judgment. Malachi 1-2. 420 BC to 400 BC, during a time when Malachi in a period of grace preached the Word. They got with it!

Justification, Imputation
(Category 297)

I. Barrier: Character of Man (-R)

A. God's Viewpoint of Man. Romans 3:10-12

B. God's Viewpoint of man's viewpoint. Isaiah 64:6

C. Our iniquities have separated us from God. Isaiah 59:2 (-R)

II. Work of Christ: Justification

A. Definition: Remission of sin and absolution from guilt and punishment. An act of grace by which God pardons the sinner and accepts Him as righteous on account of the atonement of Christ.

B. Because God the Father is satisfied (Propitiation) we are freely justified (justification). Romans 3:24. "Being justified freely by His grace through the redemption that is IN Christ Jesus."

C. Romans 5:1, "Therefore being justified by faith we have peace (reconciliation) with God through our Lord Jesus Christ".

D. Post-salvation justification--book of James. Your outer production, as a believer, vindicates (justifies) you and your stand for Christ, in the eyes of the unbeliever. The book of James is the view of the believer as seen from the eyes of the unbeliever.

III. The Work of Christ: Imputation

A. Definition: The charging to the account of one, something which properly belonged to another. LJC shares His +R with the believer.

B. Man (-R) meets God (+R) at the cross and God imputes man with +R. Romans 3:22.

2 Cor. 5:21, "For He (God the Father) hath made Him (God the Son) to be sin for us, who (Jesus Christ) knew no sin, that we might be made the righteousness (+R) of God IN HIM." (IN CHRIST).

C. Because +R is Imputed, God calls us Justified.

D. Imputation of +R (on the basis of faith) = Justification.

Killing: Doctrine of
(Category 298)

1. See category on the doctrine of war.

2. Exodus says "Thou shalt not kill, v. 13. רָצַח. This is the Hebrew word for murder. Thus, "Thou shalt not murder."

3. It was wrong for Cain to murder Abel in Gen. 4, it is not wrong to kill as authorized by God in justified war.

4. A GI who fought in WW 1 and WW 2, Korean or presently in the Viet Nam war is not a murderer when he kills the enemy.

5. Under the doctrine of capital punishment, people who are killed--are NOT murdered. Genesis 9:5-6, Numbers 35:30-31, Matt. 26:52, Romans 13:4, " . . . for he beareth not the sword in vain".

6. When a nation is going downhill, socialistic brotherhood--abolishes all forms of capital punishment, and always advocates disarmament. To disarm (attempt) all nations for world peace, is as stupid as advocating abolishing all law enforcement in order to wipe out crime.

King
(Category 299)

1. See category on the unconditional covenants, specifically the Davidic Covenant. The Davidic Covenant provided for the qualified Saviour. He has a specific throne, kingdom, and house. This doctrine has an unique fulfillment at the 2nd Advent.

2. One of the 36 things we receive in our position in Christ is kingship. Rev. 1:6, "And hath made us kings and priests unto God and His Father . . ."

3. We are said in 2 Timothy 2:12 to "reign" with Him. In the future when we have our new resurrection bodies we shall reign with Christ, the King of Kings and Lord of Lords.

4. This is a vast subject--for an exhaustive study--examine the David Covenant, postional truth, the millennium, and other related doctrines.

Kingdom
(Category 300)

1. Primarily the use of the word "Kingdom" is dispensational, referring to the millennium, the thousand year reign of Christ on earth. Rev. 20.

2. This is the Kingdom referred to in the "Lord's Prayer" in Matthew 6:10, "Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven." The millennial kingdom.

3. The Davidic Covenant, 2 Samuel 7, promises the King (Messiah) a kingdom. This will be on earth with the King, the Lord Jesus Christ personally present.

4. The Kingdom of God can refer to believers in God's plan who have been born again, and therefore are in His Kingdom. Many passages in the Gospels.

5. The Kingdom of God includes believers of all ages (Gentile, Jew Church, and Kingdom). However, the kingdom of heaven can specifically refer to the kingdom of God on earth, the millennium, as set forth in Matthew--and for example the Sermon on the Mount.

6. The Kingdom cannot be brought in by prayer, or by making this world a better place in which to live. The Kingdom on earth (Millennium) begins at the 2nd Advent.

7. Since Jesus Christ is the King and we are in Christ, we will reign with Him forever and ever. 2 Tim. 2:12.

8. The Kingdom of God being "within you" (Luke 17:21) is entos, "in the midst." Jesus Christ is presenting Himself as the King, but the unbelieving Pharisees would not buy it. The term "within you" can also refer to the indwelling Christ in the believer during the Church Age, but this in application.

9. The King can never be separated from His Kingdom. He during the Millennium will be the Divine Dictator ruling with love and a rod of iron. (keep order, even to the point of capital punishment.

10. As King, He is Supreme, King of kings and Lord of lords. Thus, "If God be for us, who can be against us?" Romans 8

Kiss: Doctrine of
(Category 301)

Psalm 2:12, "Kiss the Son, lest He be angry, and ye perish from the way, when his wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed are all they that put their trust in Him."

1. This "kiss" involves recognition of Who and What Christ is, the only Saviour.

2. This "kiss" involves expression of relationship; expression of mental attitude--believing faith--love--union with Christ.

3. This "kiss" involves a reward - eternal life - the "kiss" is non-meritorious just as the following are non-meritorious.

   a. Drinking
   b. Eating--
   c. And of course kissing

4. A Kiss

   a. Expresses desire: Positive volition at God-consciousness.
   b. Expresses surrender: Faith at Gospel hearing.
   c. Expresses relationship - 36 things Holy Spirit gives at salvation.
   d. Always involves 2 people - therefore, involves a response - response of God to faith: Production

5. Translation: "Kiss (believe on) the Son, lest He will be angry and ye perish from the way (believer in fellowship) when His wrath is kindled but a little."

Proverbs 24:26, "Every man shall kiss lips that give a right answer."

1. This is describing a man who wants to kiss a girl: Analogy of a believer hungry for doctrine.

2. The girl who responds--: Analogy of a believer with doctrine, supplying doctrine.

3. If the girl is unresponsive--it is picturing a believer minus doctrine supplying human viewpoint and result: Man (believer minus doctrine, but with positive volition) does not want to kiss this person (believer minus doctrine) any more.

4. An individual may kiss many girls without getting a great response. This is analgous to people getting great amounts of human viewpoint answers.

5. To get a passionate response which stimulates is analgous to seeking the truth, finding it, and learning BD. This brings rapport.

6. In this analogy, the one (woman) who returns the kiss is equivalent to the communication of doctrine. She fulfills the desire or need, satisfies the thirst for doctrine by providing divine viewpoint. The man with unfulfilled needs--is the one not being satisfied with doctrine.

Language of Accommodation
(Category 302)

I. Many terms in the Bible are language of accomodation.

II. In order to make the relationship of the Godhead understandable to the human race, God (Elohim) decided to be called: God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Spirit.

A. The first member of the Godhead is called the FATHER:

1. Because He makes the plans. Psalm 102:25
2. By Jesus Christ because the Father is the planner and Jesus Christ (the son) obeyed the plan of the Father in order to provide salvation.
3. Because He provided for the Lord Jesus Christ in His ministry.
4. By believers because the Father is their planner and provider. Salvation and for time (divine operating assets).

B. The second member of the Godhead is called the Son:

1. Because in the hypostatic union He became obedience unto death and executed Phase 1 of the plan. Phil. 2:8.

2. Because he is an heir of God the Father. Heb. 1:2

C. The third member of the Godhead is called the Holy Spirit:

1. Because, while He is not visible to humanity, He reveals God to humanity by:

a. Unbeliever: Convicting of unbelief
b. Believer: Teaching (guidance)

2. Because He produces the unseen power (Holy: Set apart under the plan of God for a specialized operation) in Phase 2.

III. When distinction is made, it is in reference to the activity or operation of a specific member of the Godhead.

What is the Law?
(Category 303)

I. The Commandments (moral phase) - Ex. 20:1-17

II. The Judgments (social phase) - Ex. 21-23
Dealt with all aspects of life such as quarantine, diet, marriage, military training and so on.

III. The Ordinances (spiritual phase) - Ex. 25-41. Dealt with the specialized priesthood, structure of worship, sabbaths, sacred furniture, and its significance and the law of the offerings.

IV. It was addressed to Israel, and was a way of life for the nation, both believers and unbelievers.

V. The book of Hebrews is concerned with the Ordinances. Galatians put emphasis on the Commandments. Believers have a higher morality the Mosaic Law cannot touch, for it is produced by the Holy Spirit. Gal. 5:23.

VI. What the Law can do:

A. It teaches we are sinners: Rom. 3:20, Romans 5:20; Gal. 3:24; 1 Tim. 1:9-10.

B. Puts us in jail: Gal. 3:23, Rom. 3:19

C. Teaches us the divine perfection of the person of Jesus Christ - Romans 7:12. It reflects His perfection in some measure. He kept the Law perfectly; therefore, is qualified to be our Saviour, Mediator, High Priest, and King.

VII. What the Law cannot do:

A. Can't save or give life: Romans 3:28, Gal. 2:16, Rom. 8:3-4.

B. Can't produce spirituality: Gal. 5:23, Rom. 8:4, 5:20

VIII. The Galatian believers wanted to be under the Mosiac Law, but they did not understand the Mosaic Law. Gal. 4:21. The particular phase of legalism involved here is a desire to use the Law as a merit system, in order to get the approbation of God. This is wrong.

Law: Zealous for the: (Category 304)

Acts 21:20, "And when they heard it, they glorified the Lord, and said unto him, Thou seest, brother (Paul), how many thousands of Jews there are which believe; and they are all zealous of the law:"

1. The decadence of the Jerusalem church can be observed from the fact that there are thousands of Jewish believers in the church depending on the Mosaic Law for spirituality. "Subsist" means they are devoted entirely to the Mosaic Law.

2. These believers are legalistic and totally ignorant of phase 2 doctrine.

3. Their desire is for Paul to cater to their legalism.

4. Therefore, the Jerusalem pastors invite Paul to an act of legalism but do not invite him to teach their congregations.

5. What they invite Paul to do is not a law of expedience or a law of love--because it is a compromise of doctrine. When doctrine is compromised you stay with the law of liberty always.

6. These pastors have misunderstood and abused the doctrine of the Mosaic Law. See Acts Reel 27 - 1B

Doctrine of Leaven (N.T.) (Category 305)

1. Leaven of Herod: Expediency. Exploitation of others for one's own benefit. Luke 8:15, Romans 12:2

2. Leaven of the Sadducees: Human viewpoint - rationalism. Mark 16:6, Luke 12:1

3. Leaven of the Pharisees: Sins of religion and ritualism. Mark 8:15, Luke 12:1, Matt. 16:6, 23.

4. Leaven of the Galatians: Sin of legalism in salvation and spirituality. Gal. 5:9

5. Leaven of Corinthians: Sin of licentiousness. 1 Cor. 5:6-7

6. Leaven is always in reference to evil, sin.

Lawlessness (1 John 3:4, Romans 6:19)
(Category 305)

1. Lawlessness means to be outside of the law of the Spirit of life. Romans 8:2-4 (law of spirituality).

   v. 2: "law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus": Law of spirituality.

   v. 3: "the law": Mosaic Law
   "flesh": Old sin nature
   "for sin": For a sin offering
   "condemned sin": old sin nature

   v. 4: "Righteousness of the law": of the Mosiac Law
   "might be fulfilled . . . spirit": Thru the F/HS.

2. The believer out of fellowship (out of the bottom circle) removes himself from the law of spirituality.

3. 1 John 3:4 is dealing with the law of spirituality, not the Mosiac Law.

4. Sin is not defined here as the transgression of the Mosiac Law (1 John 3:4) because sin was in the world before the Mosiac Law. Romans 5:13-14.

5. The carnal believer is operating outside of the law of spirituality (Church Age); therefore the carnal believer is described as lawless. (Spirituality in the OT was the faith-rest technique. Romans 14:23.

6. The believer under control of the old sin nature does lawlessness. This is the same as walking in darkness. 1 John 1:6, 2:11.

7. Therefore the carnal believer, walking in darkness can only imitate the unbeliever (1 Cor. 3:3). At this time it is impossible to imitate God as commanded in Eph. 5:1-2.

8. The believer who sins after salvation gets out of fellowship (out of the bottom circle) thru his own volition, which sin put him outside of Divine modus operandi.

9. The believer who denies the operation of the old sin nature or personal sin after salvation, or denies 1 John 1:9 is braced for his ignorance. 1 John 1:8. "Darkness" emphasizes ignorance, being minus BD.

10. Spirituality (filling of the Holy Spirit) and carnality are mutually exclusive, just as darkness and light. Light is a synonym for the edification complex of the soul.

11. Any sin in the Christian life . results in lawlessness and excludes the Holy Spirit, grieving or quenching Him.

Laws: Four Laws in Operation in Life of Believer
(Category 306)

I. There is a tremendous realm of activities in life that cannot be classified as good or bad according to the Word.

II. Corinth was a good-time city; there were many heathen temples with bars, a bank, a prostitution center, and also the best cafeteria in town. However, meat served in the cafe and market had been offered to idols in the heathen temple.

III. The Four Laws for Discerning Doubtful Things:

A. The Law of Liberty Toward Self: 1 Cor. 8:1-6

1. The liberty to walk in the Spirit, free from the bondage of sin. Also the liberty to curtail your liberty or to enjoy it.

2. In Corinth the debate centered around the meat offering to idols. The Corinthians (believers) had liberty to eat this meat for they knew the idol was nothing.

3. Knowledge can lead to egocentricity.

B. The Law of Love toward Believers: 1 Cor. 8:7-13 Because of my love for my Saviour and fellow believers, there are certain things which I will refrain from doing.

1. We are to be aware that our liberty does not become a stumbling block to a weaker believer. The weaker believer often saw the other believer in the restaurant where the meat was served.

2. Through the use of the law of liberty, the weak brother may get out of temporal fellowship. Actually you sin against Christ when you cause a fellow believer to get out of fellowship.

3. The Law of Love is a higher law than the Law of Liberty.

C. The Law of Expediency toward the Unbeliever: 1 Cor. 10:23-33. Because of my witness for Jesus Christ to the unbeliever there are some things I do not do in order to have a testimony with certain unbelievers.

1. If a Corinthian believer was invited to an unbeliever's home, he was not to make an issue out of meat but to make JC the issue.

2. If the unbeliever made an issue out of the meat, he was to refuse it.

D. The Law of Supreme Sacrifice: 1 Cor. 9:1-18. There are times when certain believers should refrain from doing some very normal and very legitimate things for maximum effectiveness in the Lord's service.

Levitical Offerings
(Category 307)

I. Sweet Savour: Work and Person of the LJC in Phase 1. It is sweet because it is acceptable to God (propitiation).

A. Burnt Offering: Lev. 1 (Blood)

1. Emphasis on the WORK OF Christ.
2. God the Father was propitiated satisfied with the work; deaths: spiritual and physical) of Christ on the cross.
3. Offering was made from their FREE WILL. Lev. 1:3. Faith in Christ originates from Free will!
4. Identification was made with one who was going to die for him. v. 4
5. All offerings were slain.
6. Three offerings (bullock, flock, fowl) were made, covering all classes of people (rich to poor)

B. Meat (food, gift) offering: Lev. 2 (Bread)

1. Emphasis on the Person of Christ
2. Father gave the Son; Jesus Christ gave Himself (Gift).
3. Person made the offering from free will.
4. Jesus Christ's work was acceptable because His person was acceptable (Person satisfied +R of God the Father).
5. Offering had:

a. "fine flour: Perfect humanity of Jesus Christ
b. "oil": Sustaining ministry of the Holy Spirit
c. "frankincense": Production from perfect character of Jesus Christ.
d. "no leaven": Jesus Christ was sinless

C. Peace Offering - Lev. 3

Emphasis on reconciliation. Peace between man and God.

II. Non-sweet Savour: Not sweet because these are connected with that which is not satisfactory to God: Believers carnality - Phase 2.

A. Sin Offering: Lev. 4: Rebound

1. Emphasis on UNKNOWN SINS
2. Even though he sinned through ignorance, he was still guilty.

B. Trespass Offering: Lev. 5-6 Rebound

1. Emphasis on KNOWN SINS
2. Rebound

a. New Testament: 1 John 1:9
b. Old Testament: Isa. 44:2, 5-8

Legalism in Salvation and Spirituality
(Category 308)

I. Legalism is any merit system which operates by works, by which man tries to please God. It is the antithesis of grace. It is the attempt of man to assist God, an attempt to glorify God apart from divine power.

II. Different systems of legalism: (Believe plus something)

A. Mixture system for salvation:

1. Believe and repent to be saved
2. Believe and confess to be saved
3. Believe and fully surrender to be saved
4. Believe and walk an aisle to be saved
5. Believe and shed great tears of repentance at the altar to be saved
6. Believe and join our church to be saved
7. Believe and give up your bad habits to be saved
8. Believe and be circumcized
9. Believe and keep the Mosaic law
10. Believe and be sincere to be saved

B. Works system in regard to spirituality (Phase 2)

1. Tarry and fast, wait upon the Lord
2. Agonizing in prayer--praying through
3. Crucifying self. Self never cancels out self
4. Tabooism
5. Asceticism

C. Extrabiblical revelation: Ecstatic experiences are horrible--often these are called spirituality--this leads to correlating spirituality with how one feels.

D. Ego lust: (Operating out of fellowship)

1. Motivation by ego rather than Holy Spirit
2. "Vainly puffed up": Col. 2:18 - can do a right thing in a wrong way--and thus you bomb out--00.00.
3. Some form of idolatry is associated with this system: 1 Cor. 10:12-21

III. The Galatian believers had been "taken in" by legalism and were trying to live under the Mosiac Law as their way of life. Spirituality by works only puts a believer in a "strait jacket."

IV. Legalism works its way through the whole group. It destroyed the Jerusalem church for example. Acts 21:18-26. Leaven is a symbol of legalistic evil--and it "leavens the whole lump." See the leaven category.

VI. Warning against the repercussion of legalism: Gal. 5:10-12

A. Legalism teaches heresy: v. 10

1. Paul had confidence in the believers in Galatia through the Lord, that they would have the proper mental attitude toward legalism. They were to ignore the legalistic teachers and throw them out.

2. The legalist ("he that keeps on troubling you") will be judged. If believers they will be under discipline and be miserable, if unbelievers they will be judged in the Lake of Fire forever and ever.

3. A legalist always causes trouble in a local church, and his leaven can stir up the whole church. A legalist must be VERY SEVERELY DEALT WITH.

B. Paul did not preach circumcision: v. 11

However the legalist persecuted him. If legalism is the way of salvation (circumcision) then the cross is of no value. Calvary is the epitome of grace and those who try to work for their salvation or spirituality are offended by the cross.

C. Paul had a wish or desire concerning these false teachers who always were pushing circumcision for salvation: v. 12

Gal. 5:12, "I would they were even cut off which trouble you."

Paul is saying in effect--You are always pushing circumcision for salvation or spirituality, why don't you cut the whole member off and really be spiritual. He alluded to the Phallic cult at the heathen temple which practiced emasculation or castration. This is a tough statement, but legalism is so horrible, there must be a straight from the shoulder condemnation of it--and a doctrinal presentation of grace. It is the Word of God. Sarcasm is sanctified in this instance. Also it was in Elijah's case in 1 Kings 18:27.

Systems of Legalism
(Category 309)

1. Taboos: Thinking one is spiritual because he doesn't do certain things. No. One is filled with the Holy Spirit by proper confession of sin, and then the controlling ministry of the HS. Taboos may be kept while in fellowship, but are a result, not the means of the filling of the Holy Spirit.

2. Personality imitation Dress, mannerisms, talk. Not bona fide.

3. Relativity: Your sins are worse than mine; therefore I am more spiritual.

4. Ecstatics: Speaking in tongues, groaning, swooning, getting in a trance--all pseudo-spirituality. (402)

Self-sacrifice. When a believer tries to give up normal activities and necessities of life in order to please or impress the Lord. This is extreme self-denial. This is not the means of the filling of the Holy Spirit. That (the true means) is 1 John 1:9.

6. Ritual: One is spiritual because he goes through various forms of ritual. The Jews used circumcision, today baptism is used or the sacraments.

7. Confusing the means with the results: You are spiritual if you pray, give, witness and so on. But all these activities when done in the power of the F/HS are the RESULT of the Holy Spirit's control. The F/HS must come first in order for these activities to be divine good.

8. Crucifixion of self: Misunderstanding of Romans 6. This is trying to make retro-active positional truth an experience, continually. You can't get rid of self. Self does not cancel out self. You are in Christ, and have an awareness of existence.

See the category on Spirituality in this notebook. This is a vital doctrine, and MUST BE understood--or gimmicks will abound in a thousand ways.

The Doctrine of Legislation
(Category 310)

Daniel 6:10-13, "And when Daniel knew that the writing was signed (legislation) . . . hast thou signed a decree (law) . . . (Daniel) regardeth not thee, O King, nor the decree . . ."

1. All legislation of a nation under DI #4 is pertinent to the protection of the people of that nation. PLEASE NOTE: Laws should be designed to protect, not enslave!

   Legislation which proceeds out of government (Divine Institution no. 4) and actually protects the other three DI's (volition, marriage, family). All socialism (socialistic legislation) is an attack against freedom.

2. Legislation cannot make people equal. People are not born equal, ever.

   a. Legislation cannot remove poverty
   b. Legislation cannot stop war
   c. Legislation cannot bring world peace
   d. Legislation has never solved the evils of the world and was never designed to solve the evils of the world.
   e. Legislation is not a substitute for the gospel, or the Christian way of life
   f. Legislation is designated to protect people in a nation

   We have been so bitten by the mad dog of socialism--that legislation today is trying to make all people equal, or give them equal opportunity. You can't legislate equal opportunity for minority or majority races.

   Salvation and the Christian Way of life--is the only equalizer and that equalizer is bona fide.

3. Legislation is designed by God to protect the rights, the privacy, the property, the volition of individuals within a national entity.

4. Legislation should be designed to allow freedom of choice in matters of religion, social, or business activity.

5. Legislation should never coerce the individual in matters of religion, social, or business activity.

6. The Federal government does not have the right to tell me I cannot believe in Jesus Christ, nor does it have the right to keep me from worshipping in the church of my choice. Also the government does not have the right to penalize me if I am an atheist.

7. The Federal government does not have the right to dictate to me who I hire or fire in my business. The Fed. Government does not have the right to pick my friends and associates. These are matters of personal choice and personal freedom.

8. The law of the MEDES and PERSIANS forbids Daniel to pray (6:7) but God's law commands Daniel to pray (1 Kings 8) therefore Daniel did the right and patriotic thing by prayer. Daniel is actually operating under a higher law--and actually is doing more for the Persian empire by praying.

9. It is God who sustains the Persian Empire (Isa. 45). Hence by violating this ludicrous legislation Daniel is faithful to the Lord and a patriot to the Persian Empire. Patriotism is the heritage of regeneration. Born-again believers in fellowship are the salt of the earth.

Levites: Levitical Contract
(Category 311)

1. Based on Malachi 2:4, "And ye shall know . . . that my covenant (contract--promise) might be with Levi . . ."

2. This contract is made with the Aaronic Priesthood. Reuben as first-born was in line for this but he lost his rulership to Judah, his double portion to Joseph, and his priesthood to Levi, family of Aaron.

3. Levi was faithful during the Golden Calf incident: Ex. 32:25-29. Aaron failed--but the tribe of Levi did not fail. The Calf incident was the first religious thing to hit Israel after the Exodus. Religion would have destroyed Israel. Levities at that time went with doctrine all the way. They would not own land, but be communicators of BD.

4. Phineas was especially faithful during the wilderness journies, Num. 25:10-13. He is the grandson of Aaron, became the high-priest eventually. When the contract was first given--they were born-again, they studied doctrine, and they communicated doctrine.

5. The actual contract had repercussions on the land and as such was related to the Palestinian covenant. If the contract was fulfilled by obedience to Bible doctrine the land would have prosperity, if not--the land would have cursing. Deut. 33:8-11.

6. The content of the contract is given in Numbers 3:5-13, and Numbers 8:14-19.

7. Malachi 2:5-6 gives the function of the Levitical contract. It functioned beautifully when fed Bible doctrine.

8. However Malachi 2:7-9 records the horrible failure of the people to keep this contract. Malachi 2:8, "But ye are departed out of the way, ye have caused many to stumble at the law, ye have corrupted the covenant of Levi, saith the Lord of Hosts."

   The priests in Malachi's day were unbelievers--. As such they polluted the person of Christ and corrupted the work of Christ. Through the preaching of Malachi (420-400 BC) they got with it--and had another golden era thru BD (down to 323 BC).

Levites: Three Problems in Fulfilling the Levitical Covenant (Category 312)

1. Curse from Coniah: Jeremiah 22:24-30 then read along in Jeremiah until 36:31. Solution: The virgin birth--Grace finds a way.

2. Physical death of Jesus Christ becomes an hindrance to fulfill the Levitical covenant because Christ must reign forever, altho he must die. Solution: Resurrection.

3. Ascension of Jesus Christ (to heaven) however he must reign on earth (Millennium). Solution: He must have the 2nd Advent to come back to earth to reign.

Levitical Priesthood: Doctrine of (Category 313)

1. Three characteristics of: Numbers 16:5

   a. Chosen of God
   b. Set apart - or holy
   c. Permitted to "draw near"; a spiritual function

2. Aaron; first High Priest: Ex. 28:1, Numbers 18:7-8.

3. Prieshood was to descend through Aaron's four sons, but only two survived. Num. 18:1, 10:6.

4. However, any sons of Aaron's with any physical defects disqualified him. Lev. 21:17-23

5. Function of the Priesthood:

   a. Teach the Law (Doctrine) Lev. 10:11 They handled the written Word, the prophets handled the verbal Word (which became written).

   b. Offer sacrifices: Lev. 9
   c. Maintain the Tabernacle or Temple: Num. 18:3
   d. Conduct all ritual: Lev. 24:5-8
   e. Inspect unclean persons: Num. 6:22
   f. Judge controversies: Deut. 19:17

6. Priests assisted by Levites: 2 Chr. 35:14; 29:34 on occasions when it is humanly impossible to perform the tasks, i.e. Passover; when offering thousands of sacrifices.

7. The priesthood was reorganized in David's day into 24 orders. See 1 Chronicles 24:1-18.

8. Some priests had also the office of a prophet: Jeremiah, Ezekiel and Zechariah.

9. The entire nation of Israel was originally intended to be priests, but the Golden Calf incident cut it off to just Aaron's family--. Ex. 19:4-6. However the Church Age finds each individual a believer-priest. (Those born again)

Levites: Propositions Regarding the Change in Priesthood (Category 314)

Scripture: Hebrews 7:1-10

1. Perfection (eternal fellowship with God) can't be produced by the Levitical priesthood.

2. Since perfection can't be produced by the Levitical priesthood, it can't be produced by the Mosiac Law which authorizes the Levitical priesthood.

3. Since the Levitical priesthood and the Mosiac Law can't produce perfection, there must be some change which can produce perfection. 7:12.

4. Therefore, the priesthood of Aaron is replaced by the priesthood of Jesus Christ and the Mosiac Law is replaced by the Christian Way of Life. 7:18-19

5. Levitical priesthood is earthly and limited by death. The new priesthood is heavenly and eternal. It is universal to believers in the Church Age.

6. These two priesthoods can't co-exist or mix; therefore, the incompatibility of law and grace.

7. Since the purpose of God is the production of perfection through the priesthood, the old Levitical priesthood must be set aside.

Liberalism/Heathenism
(Category 315)

1. Negative volition supresses the truth and seeks a substitute which leads to the rise of heathenism and liberalism. This substitute may be socialism, communism, or some other system of philosophical materialism, but always follows the same pattern: Man seeking to establish perfect environment by man's activity and ability.

2. Heathenism and liberalism begins without truth; if your premise is without truth, then no matter what the conclusion, it too, will be without truth.

3. Heathenism: Romans 1:18
Liberalism: Romans 1:24, 25

4. Liberalism exploits the ignorance of people by appealing to the basic lust and emotional patterns; i.e. food, clothes, etc. Socialism destroys all basic institutions and human ingenuity.

5. Liberals satisfy their ego by trying to play God. Everyone is equal, they say, but they have not the ability or character or make everyone so.

6. Liberals seek a perfect world apart from God. They do not have the capacity to do this either.

7. Hence, the principle of liberalism is just an extension of heathenism.

8. Heathenism rejects the truth and seeks a false god and false truth.

9. Heathenism rejects Jesus Christ as Saviour.

10. Liberalism is another manifestation of heathenism, without the aboriginal or primitive culture.

11. Heathenism sets up a society without God and seeks to replace or fill the vacuum with religion or other gods. Pantheism (God and universe are one); polytheism (deism--idealism).

12. Liberalism is designed to appeal to the unsaved intellect, embraces his culture, and claims to be able to solve his problems. An endless number of programs and gimmicks--is tried--but the solution is never found. In the many programs come many destructions. And down goes the nation!

Libido
(Category 316)

1. Libido is the sexual urge and it comes in waves. It is not a constant factor, it comes in waves.

2. The FIRST WAVE of libido usually hits someone in their middle teens (about 15 or 16). This is when some people get married, however judgment is at an all time low in a wave of libido.

3. Too often selection of a lifetime partner is made on the basis of pure animal instinct or exterior appearance.

4. Generally speaking a person in their teens is not prepared for marriage.

5. A boy in his teens does not have the maturity to take the initiative in making the marriage work. He is 51% responsible for the marriage.

6. A girl in her teens is also not mature enough to marry.

7. When the first wave of libido occurs it is one of the most difficult and serious times for young people. God has provided for believers, through the control of the Holy Spirit, the means by which one can ride out this wave of libido, for IT DOES SUBSIDE.

8. The second wave of libido usually comes toward the end of the teens (18-19).

9. This is still a very dangerous period for marriage and it is still a period of immaturity.

10. If the man is mature, the woman immature it can sometimes work; but with two immature people, the marriage is doomed. If the two have had daily exposure to Bible Doctrine, have edification complexes well on their way to erection--then there is hope.

11. Generally, if your spiritual life is right, your judgment will become better after the third wave hits--about 19-20 in a woman and 21-22 in a man. Even then this is very young.

12. Perhaps an ideal time for a person to marry is 25 for the man, after the man has had his hitch in service, and a year or two younger for the woman.

13. Then there is the older man (sugar daddy) who has outlived his first wife and then selects some sweet young thing who is not as interested in his charms as in his economic status. This type of marriage usually has little or none divine viewpoint.

Life: Physical
(Category 317)

1. Jesus Christ is the Creator of all things: Col. 1:16, John 1:3, Heb. 1:10. Jesus Christ is the Creator of man. Gen. 2:7

2. There are two ways in which mankind came into the world:

   a. Created: Adam from the dust (chemicals) of the ground.
   b. Physical birth: Principle of the perpetuation of the human race.

3. Jesus Christ not only created man, but He created the principle whereby man perpetuates himself: Copulation between husband and wife.

4. The body of man is a factory, the house in which you live.

5. The body is the instrument of the soul.

6. Physical life is the soul being inside of the body and the body functioning. The life of man is in his soul, not blood. The life of the animal is in its blood, because it does not have a soul.

7. Physical death is the soul leaving the body; the body dying and ceasing to function.

8. Adam's body came first (Genesis 2:7). Then God put into the body the breath of life (the Hebrew says "lives") and he became a "living soul."

   a. Physical life for the body.
   b. Spiritual life (had fellowship with God). Adam had a human spirit.
   c. Soulish life (later he had fellowship with Eve).

9. The human race is born spiritually dead. Eph. 2:1, 5. No fellowship (no relationship) with God.

10. Therefore man (unbeliever) is dichotomous: Body, soul.

11. Regenerate man is trichotomous: Body, soul, human spirit.

12. At physical death the soul continues to live.

    a. Believer: Soul and spirit goes to be with the Lord.

    b. Unbeliever: Soul goes to Hades to await the Great White Throne Judgment.

Light and Darkness
(Category 318)

1. The physical universe is mass designed to illustrate spiritual realities of His plan.

2. Light reveals the character of God. 1 John 1:5, Rev. 21:23.

3. Light (Gospel) reveals divine essence. Gospel is called the the Light of the Glory of Jesus Christ. 2 Cor. 4:4.

4. Light portrays the believer's privilege of possession of luminous body in Satan's cosmos diabolicus. Matt. 5:14, Dan. 12:3, 2 Cor. 4:6, Eph. 5:8, Col. 1:12-13, John 12:36, Phil. 2:15, Acts 13:47.

5. Light is a synonym of the edification complex. The believer with the edification complex reflects the glory of God. Thus a believer "shines".

6. Jesus Christ was described in His incarnation as the "Light of the World." John 3:19, 8:12, 12:46, 9:5, Rev. 21:23.

7. Because of the Word's vital relationship to Divine Guidance, it is described in terms of Light. Psalm 19:8, 119:105, Ex. 13:21-22.

8. Absence of light: Characterizes man apart from regeneration (unbeliever) or apart from spirituality (carnal believer).

   a. Regeneration: John 8:12, 3:19-20, 1 Peter 2:9, Col. 1:13.

   b. Spirituality: Eph. 5:8-14, Job 3:1-9, 1 John 2:9-11

9. Spirituality is walking in the Light. 1 John 1:7.

10. Jesus Christ at the 2nd Advent comes as the Sun of Righteousness. Mal. 4:2, Matt. 4:2, 24:29-31.

11. Judgment in the Word is expressed in the sense of darkness in regard to heaven--or earth. Ex. 10:21, Job 3:4, Matt. 27:45, 24:29, John 12:46, Joel 2:2, Rev. 8:12.

12. The eternal state has no night nor need of sun or moon - God is Light, He illuminates the universe forever. Rev. 21:23-26, 22:5, Rev. 21:9 with 22:5 - no night.

Living in the Word: Tools for the Bible Student
(Category 319)

1. A loose-leaf categorical notebook for the orderly taking of notes in services and Bible classes.

   a. Divided into Sunday School, Morning Worship, Sunday evening. (Currently in the church I pastor, Berean Fundamental Church of Brookings, Oregon; the divisions would be Acts, Basic Training and Romans.) Also date your notes and give each message a title. Notes must be kept in an orderly fashion.

   b. Divided into Week-day Bible classes. In our church this would have to be a separate notebook as so many classes are taught. Here it would be divided into: 2 Thess., Contemporary Problems, Malachi, Teenage Class, and Greek Class.

   c. Still another notebook could be entitled a prayer-promise notebook for the purpose of orderly, disciplined praying.

   d. Here, a 8½ by 11 notebook is used for the orderly filing of mimeographed material handed out by the pastor. In our church over 1000 pages are available in mimeographed form currently (October, 1970). Reason for 8½ by 11, mimeographed material is readily made-up in this size.

2. A good $20.00 study Bible with wide margins (for taking notes in the margins).

   The Scofield Reference Bibles are recommended. If not Scofield, then any KJV Bible will do. Other translations can be used--but some are poor, others are good. In teaching classes nearly every night--I've standardized the Bibles--it is easier to teach if everyone has the same translation.

   a. Be sure to mark up your Bible--perferably in an orderly fashion.
   b. Bibles are to be worn out. A shiny new Bible, that is still shiny and new 30 years from now--is not the idea.

3. Secure a good Concordance. Strongs is recommended above Youngs, but both are good. Crudens is ok, but limited.

4. Sell your shirt to get W. E. Vine's "Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words." It enables the English speaking Bible student to get much benefit from the Greek. Also any of Wuests are excellent.

5. Learn the Hebrew and Greek Alphabet (see categories in these notes) plus any grammar you can pick up. Using the Berachah tapes will give you a grasp of the Word of God as per the originals and keep you on track. Encourage your pastor to teach a Greek class, if he has had Greek in Bible College or Seminary.

6. Secure a good basic library on Archaelogy, and get periodicals which keeps you up with current digs.

7. Get a good, simple book on Church History like Earle E. Cairn's book "Christianity Through the Centuries" published by Zondervan. Also shell out the sheckles for an advanced, exhaustive historical set like the Cambridge Ancient History set. You must be familiar with secular history.

8. ****A must, buy a tape-recorder, 4 track recorder like the Sony Model TC-105A. Then secure tapes from Berachah Church in Houston (address below). The entire Bible is available on tape--and is unbeatable for Biblical accuracy. Thousands of hours of Bible study can be secured.

   The address is: Tape and Publication Ministry
   Berachah Church
   5139 W. Alabama
   Houston, Texas 77027

   Our church library has an extensive library of tapes--the Berachah tapes, and tapes of our own Bible classes.

9. For the pastor-teacher, teacher, missionary, Christian worker, or Sunday School teacher, an overhead projector with an acetate roll will be very effective in your teaching.

10. The most effective tool for Bible study is the CRASH PROGRAM routine. This is when a pastor in a local church has classes every night, enabling his people to get categorical truth quickly and get to maturity quickly. The principle of crash program is found throughout the Bible, and the only way to remove scar tissue of the soul is through this type of intensive Bible study.

11. Publications: Recommended: All Berachah Church publications available from the same address above. I don't have the time and inclination to discuss magazines in the Christian field.

12. Commentaries: Generally, if you are used to expository, categorical teaching, you will be disappoint in commentaries. They are often devotional, instead of doctrinal; at times they don't give an explanation for the problem verse you wish to understand; the average believer doesn't have the discernment to know if the commentator is accurate. And when you compare the views of commentators--you often end up confused about which is accurate. God has provided pastors in local churches to teach the Word--if you are commentary-enslaved--check it out with him.

13. A very effective tool for Bible study is a technique--rather than a tool--it does require some activity. It is accomplished by getting up out of a recliner, walking 10 feet, and either pulling, turning, twisting, or rotating the knob on the family boob-tube to the off position. Thus liberated, turn the nob on your favorite, friendly, family tape-recorder--and get with Bible Doctrine.

Living in the Word
(The Survey Approach)
(Category 320)

There is much emphasis on "all the counsel of God" in the Word. Psalm 119:11 says, "Thy Word have I hid in mine heart that I might not sin against thee." "Word" here refers to the whole panorama of God's Word, the whole counsel of it. It suggests approaching the Word of God in a systematic, survey method.

Many believers know a truth here, and a truth there, but there is no concept of the entire structuring of the Word of God from cover to cover. Acts 20:27 also furthers the thought, "For I have not shunned to declare unto you all the counsel of God."

There are probably hundreds of ways to survey "all the counsel of God." The following are suggested: But remember this is the fruit of verse by verse study from the original.

Learning Chapter Title Content

Attach a catchy title to the entire chapter--capturing the drift of the content therein. For example: Exodus:

1. Slavery in Egypt
2. The Birth of Moses
3. The Burning Bush
4. The Objections of Moses
5. Increased Slavery
6. Affirmation of Abrahamic Covenant

7-12. The Ten Plagues

13. Guidance by pillar of cloud and fire.
14. The Crossing of the Red Sea
15. Bitter waters made sweet (Wrong kind of waters)
16. Provision of Manna
17. No water situation (Rephidim)
18. Organization Man Jethro
19. Arrival at Mt. Sinai

20-31. Giving of Mosaic Law

32. The Golden Calf (Tablets of stone are broken)
33. On to Canaan (Moses sees the back parts of the LJC)
34. 2nd Tablets of Stone

35-39. The Tabernacle is Built

40. The Tabernacle is Set up

Another survey method giving a rich background for effective teaching evangelism is tracing the term promise as developed in the Abrahamic, Palestinian, Davidic, and New Covenant. If you wish secure the manual on the Evangelistic Home Bible Class.

Also one can get a panarama by developing the different ages (Gentiles, Jews, Church, Kingdom).

Being able to think through the Old and New Testament historically is fascinating. Available is the OT walk-through included in the Evangelistic Home Bible Class manual.

Most effective pastors teach the Word of God through a book, operation ICE (Isagogics, Categorical, and exposition-exegesis). Consequently the Categorical Method is the way to go. See the next category.

Living in the Word
(The Categorical Approach)
(Category 321)

This entire notebook is an illutration of the categorical method. In Acts 28:10 it says, "For precept must be upon precept, precept upon precept, line upon line, line upon line; here a little, and there a little:" This is repeated in verse 13.

The Berachah tape ministry--the tremendous teaching of the Word from that pulpit--unexcelled anywhere in the world--is based on the way to minister--categorically.

As the Word of God is taught verse by verse--word by word from the standpoint of the original languages--the Word is categorized. These categories of the Word are in turn transferred to the human spirit by faith. Here the Word is systematically fed to the facets of the soul.

Living in the Word
(Meditation)
(Category 322)

This is the third main method of intake of BD, meditation. This enables you to carry the Word with you--your mind being saturated with the Word of God. Not only is the whole counsel of the Word (a life-time job) but the fruits of those two methods are to be thought on constantly.

> Isaiah 26:3, "Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace (Hebrew "peace, peace" whose mind is stayed on thee: because he trusteth in thee."

Much time is lost by not thinking the divine viewpoint of the Word of God. Constantly saturate your mind with chapter title content, categories, or Scriptural passages. Instead of memorizing think through the Word in different ways. Study, study, study--repeat, repeat, repeat. Get to the point of residual doctrine (epignosis) so that the Word of God is at your finger tips. Do you ever have to review 1 John 1:9, or John 3:16? Probably not. Well, get the entire content of the Word that well in hand. The Word of God is living and powerful. Heb. 4:12.

The anwer to an effective outreach, inner stability, is not programs, activities, human hustle, parties on and on--ad nauseum--it is sowing the Word around the area of maximum penetration and positive volition.

Living in the Word: The Use of Bible Doctrine
(Category 322)

1. Concept: Bible Doctrine that is in the human spirit and cycled up into frame of reference sustains in every situation. This is "living in the Word."

2. Bible Doctrine when properly taken in through GAP (Grace Apparatus of Perception) gives you an appreciation for the details of life (mastery of the details as per the edification complex).

3. The human spirit has shelves for categories for Bible doctrine. Eph. 3:18.

4. In studying a passage of Scripture that you may not understand, you identify what you do know--and then work from the known to the unknown. After some study (more than likely daily attendance) at Bible class) you begin to understand the unknown because you have information stored in the human spirit and also a developing frame of reference.

5. The more doctrine you know and the more you apply this doctrine (epignosis in the human spirit--cycled into frame of reference and exhaled) the greater becomes your orientation to every situation in life--the greater becomes your inner happiness.

6. When many different categories of doctrine are known and sent into the self-consciousness, the result is that you avoid self-pity, and pride--you have no illusions about yourself and have a relaxed mental attitude (no mental attitude sins).

7. When situations (activities) become discouraging, you maintain status quo: Spirituality, by knowledge of Bible doctrine--use of rebound.

8. When you have Bible doctrine in the human spirit--with the filling of the Holy Spirit (no mental attitude sins) your relationship with people is excellent because you have a RMA. (Relaxed mental attitude).

9. Bible doctrine plus the filling of the Holy Spirit gives you the ability to make decisions based on discernment. All good decisions require thinking.

10. You have learned to appreciate things on the basis of Bible Doctrine. You can now enjoy your emotions, not depend upon them.

11. You have learned to appreciate things on the basis of the Word, and your live as unto the Lord is occupied with Christ--your norms and standards are His.

12. Your old sin nature is frustrated and stimulation which comes from the lust pattern is recognized and dealt with.

13. Hence the Christian way of life is on the inside. Prov. 23:7

[illegible] Acceptability in Session
(Category 323)

1. No humanity was in heaven before the humanity of Jesus Christ. John 3:13.

2. Issue: Would the humanity of Christ be acceptable to God the Father? It was. Heb. 1:13, 12:1-2, also Heb. 1:3.

   Hebrews 1:3, "Who (LJC) being the brightness (shining forth) of His glory (Essence Box) and the express (exact) image of His person, and upholding all things by the word of His power, when He had by Himself, purged our sins, SAT DOWN on the RIGHT HAND (place of honor) of the majesty (God the Father) on high."

3. His acceptability indicated:

   a. Completion of Christ's work in Phase 1: Salvation. Heb. 10: 11-12. "But this man . . ." Referring: Christ's humanity

   b. That the Person of God the Son satisfied the RIGHTEOUSNESS of God the Father. +R demanded -R. Romans 3:23.

   c. That the Work of God the Son satisfied the Justice of God the Father. Justice demanded a penalty for sin. Rom. 6:23.

4. The acceptance of the Lord Jesus Christ as a man meant the acceptance of His sacrifice. The acceptance of His sacrifice meant the acceptance of all those who seek entrance to the presence of the Father through faith in Jesus Christ.

5. Through His redemptive work, His ascension and session, the Lord Jesus Christ accomplished bringing many sons into glory. Heb. 2:9-10.

6. Because the God-Man is accepted, every believer is also accepted by the Father. Eph. 1:6, " . . . accepted in the beloved."

7. Because the God-Man is seated, every believer is seated positionally, at the right hand of the Father. Eph. 2:6, "And hath raised us up together and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus."

8. Humanity of Jesus Christ is glorified above all angels. Heb. 1:13

9. Every believer is positionally higher than angels so each believer has a guardian angel. Heb. 1:14.

10. Because of this position, believers will judge angels by bumping the operative angels (fallen) at the 2nd Advent. This is a one on one principle. See the Categories on the Angelic Conflict.

Lord Jesus Christ: Advocacy
(Category 324)

1. Jesus Christ is the believer's defense attorney at all times.

2. He defends the believer against Satan's attacks, whether or not that believer has confessed his sins.

3. Basis for this is the Unlimited Atonement. Jesus Christ bore the sins (pre and post salvation sins) of the whole world. 1 Peter 2:24, 2 Cor. 5:21, Rev. 1:5, Col. 2:14, Heb. 9:27-28.

4. The Father judged all sins when Christ was bearing them. Hebrew of Psalm 22:1-6, 1 Peter 3:18.

5. Since a person's sins were judged once at the cross, they cannot be judged again. Romans 6:10. Law of double jeopardy.

6. Therefore, since you can only be judged once for a sin, Satan's accusation is thrown out of court. Jesus Christ was judged in your place for your sin.

7. Jesus Christ is our defense attorney, seated at the right hand of the Father, and He defends us. 1 John 2:1.

8. The believer's sin then becomes a family matter.

9. If the believer does not confess his sins, he is subject to the Father's chastisement. Heb. 12:6.

10. The basis of His defense is 1 John 1:7. The blood of Jesus Christ keeps on cleansing from all sins.

11. Jesus Christ is representing us in Heaven. We are representing Him here on earth.

12. Jesus Christ has never lost a case and never will. His defense is always the same: the completed work of the cross.

Lord Jesus Christ: Burial
(Category 325)

Introduction: The burial of Christ indicates that it was the humanity of Christ that bore sins, which was the reason He had to become true humanity.

I. His Tomb: Isa. 53:9

A. "He made His grave with the wicked . . ." He died with gangsters on each side of Him.

"and with the rich in His DEATHS":

B. The PENALTY for anyone indicted FOR BLASPHEMY (as Jesus was unjustly) WAS:

1. Crucifixion (Roman), Stoning (Jewish)
2. Obscure tomb

C. Even though He was brought to the cross under the indictment of blasphemy, His tomb HAD TO BE in a prominent place because if His resurrection was going to be properly documented and verified, the tomb must be well known.

II. His Friends:

A. Joseph of Arimathaea buried His (Christ's) body in his own tomb. Matt. 27:57-61.

B. Nicodemus helped Joseph: John 19:39-41

C. Believers grieved (Mark 16:10) and didn't seem to remember that He had told them that He must die, be buried and rise again. Matt. 17:22-23.

D. Peter didn't even remember when he argued with Jesus about this event. Matt. 16:21-22.

III. His Enemies:

A. His enemies had taunted Him. Matt. 12:38

B. He had shown them many signs but they had not believed. He knew (omniscience) that they would not believe, but He gave one more sign. Matt. 12:39-40.

C. His enemies WORRIED (Matt. 27:62-66) lest the tomb not be sealed securely and that the disciples would steal away His body, so they set a seal and a watch upon it.

Lord Jesus Christ: Cross: Six Hours On
(Category 326)

I. The First Three Hours, The First Three Phrases:

A. First Phrase: "Father, forgive them: for they know not what they do." Luke 23:34

1. Indicates He is still in fellowship with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

2. Jesus Christ is the "High Priest forever, after the order of Melchizedek." Psalm 110:4, Heb. 5:6, 10 and:

a. He started His public ministry with prayer. Luke 3:21.

b. He started His time on the cross by praying for His enemies - those who mistreated Him, those who were lost.

3. "they know not what they do": They were ignorant of doctrine, although Jesus Christ had made the issue clear to them often.

B. Second Phrase: "Today shalt thou be with me (soul) in Paradise." Luke 23:43

1. Both of the thieves turned against Him at the first. Matt. 27:44

2. One of the thieves then changed his mind (repented) about the Person of Jesus Christ; he recognized His humanity ("this man") that His humanity was sinless (v. 41) and recognized His Deity (v. 42 called Him "Lord.")

3. He recognized that even though Jesus was on a cross dying, that Jesus had a kingdom. Jesus responded to this faith with His second phrase.

C. Third Phrase: "Woman, behold thy son": John 19:26

1. Jesus Christ called her "woman" not "mother" to emphasize that she was the mother of His humanity, but not the mother of His deity (mother of God).

2. In saying to the disciples "behold thy mother", Jesus was fulfilling the Law which said "honor thy father and mother." He made provision for the mother of His humanity while He was in anguish, fulfilling the Law in every sense.

II. The Last Three Hours, the Last Four Phrases:

A. Fourth Phrase: "Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani, which is, being interpreted, My God, My God, why hast thou forsaken

me?" Mark 15:23, Matt. 27:46, Psalm 22:1.

1. This cry indicated that He was being judged for our sins and that God the Father and God the Holy Spirit had forsaken Him.

2. God the Father had to pour out all of His wrath, as a matter of Justice, upon God the Son, while the humanity of Jesus Christ bore the sins of the world.

   It is impossible for Deity to suffer spiritual death, (separation) from God, so the necessity for the God-man.

B. Fifth Phrase: "I Thirst": John 19:28

This phrase reminds us of His humanity because Deity cannot thirst; which in turn, reminds us that IN HIS HUMANITY:

1. He loved the Scripture--
   He knew the importance of the Word of God.

2. He is our High Priest forever--
   High Priest had to be man.

3. He is our Mediator--
   Mediator had to be man.

4. He is the SON OF DAVID and will reign forever--
   God keeps His word, "Davidic Covenant."

C. Sixth Phrase: "It is Finished": John 19:30

1. Then after this, "He bowed His head and gave up the spirit" indicating that He voluntarily dismissed His spirit. (human spirit). See John tape on "Blood Clots and Serum".

2. This phrase evidenced the fact that salvation was complete. Nothing could be taken away from it; nothing could be added to it. GRACE.

3. The sin problem is no longer the issue.

4. The ISSUE is now the PERSON of the Lord Jesus Christ and HIS WORK in regard to sin.

What sustained our Lord on the cross those three hours when God the Father forsook Christ and the Holy Spirit stopped sustaining Him? Bible Doctrine! That is why in Psalm 138:2 says, " . . . for thou hast exalted (magnified) thy Word above all thy name."

D. Seventh Phrase: "Father into thy hands I commend my spirit": Luke 23:46

1. He voluntarily died on the cross. John 10:17-18

2. He addressed the first person of the Trinity as FATHER, indicating that He was in fellowship and that His work of bearing our sins was finished.

3. The Father was satisfied (propitiation) by the SPIRITUAL DEATH of His Son.

4. Now He was going to complete the sacrifice by DYING PHYSICALLY, shedding His blood. Heb. 9:22.

5. He fulfilled the Passover type, and He fulfilled the Doctrine of Redemption. 1 Peter 1:18-19.

Out of His birth day
Came His Death day
Out of His Death day
Comes our Life day.

Lord Jesus Christ: Humanity Educated
(Category 327)

Isa. 50:4, "The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season to him that is weary: he wakeneth morning by morning, he wakeneth mine ear to hear as the learned.

The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back."

1. Jesus Christ in His humanity had to learn Doctrine. He spoke as a member of the human race, and His human brain had to learn just as our human brain has to learn. His human spirit was taught by the Holy Spirit.

2. Isa. 50:4a: REASON HE LEARNED DOCTRINE

   "the Lord God": The Father
   "hath given": Divine protection
   "me": The Lord Jesus Christ
   "the tongue": The message, JC, humanity, had a message.
   "of the learned": Jesus Christ studied. You have to study to have a message.
   "that": Introduces a purpose clause
   "I should know how to speak a word . . . is weary": Translation, "that I should know how to help the weary ones with words, with doctrine."

3. Isa. 50:4b: MECHANICS OF HOW THE LORD JESUS LEARNED DOCTRINE.

   "he waketh morning by morning": Every day. Hiphil stem - causative. Every day Jesus Christ awoke to study Bible doctrine.

   "mine ear": System of perception
   "to hear": His purpose was to listen to the Word
   "as the learned": With the result that He learned. His purpose in getting up in the morning was to learn.

4. God the Father taught Him Doctrine: 5a

   "The Lord God": God the Father. Author of Operation Grace
   "that opened mine ear": Idiom which means to give instruction

5. In His humanity Jesus Christ knew why He was here, knew what His mission was, knew that He was going to the cross. He understood it all from the doctrine He had learned. v. 5b: "I was not rebellious": Response of Jesus Christ to the plan. "neither turned away back": Had positive volition regarding God's plan.

6. Isaiah 50:6: His positive Volition was tested before the cross. READ THIS VERSE! (You can't read it, unless you look it up.

   As a result of His learning doctrine, "Jesus (humanity) increased in wisdom and stature and in favour with God and man" (prosperity)

Lord Jesus Christ: Humanity Matured
(Category 328)

1. Jesus Christ came into the world as an infant. Luke 2:12, Matt. 1:25.

2. He grew up as a normal child. Isa. 53:2.

   "He": The Lord Jesus Christ
   "shall grow up": As a child, normal humanity
   "as a tender plant": A tender plant needs protection. He needed protection so that He could get to the cross. Didn't appear as a King.
   "and as a root": Jesus Christ
   "out of dry ground": Israel, under the 4th cycle of discipline minus Bible Doctrine.
   "root out of dry ground": Is a technical term for Jesus Christ as the founder of the Jewish race.
   "He hath no form": Didn't come as a glamourous King
   "nor comeliness": He didn't fulfill their image as a King - they had human viewpoint.
   "when we shall see Him": 1st Advent
   "there is no beauty": Glamour
   "that we should desire Him": They had the wrong concept so they didn't desire Him. He didn't fit the King image they had.

3. Jesus Christ was hungry: Matt. 4:2, 21:18

4. Jesus Christ was thirsty: John 4:7, 19:28

5. Jesus Christ got tired: John 4:6

6. Jesus Christ slept: Matt. 8:24, Mark 4:38

7. When Jesus Christ Spoke, He spoke from one of three sources:

   a. Deity: "A body hast thou prepared me" Heb. 10:5

   b. Humanity: "I thirst": John 19:28

   c. Hypostatic Union: "I am the way, the truth and the life . . .'

8. As a youth (about 12 years old) He went to the temple. Luke 2: 42-52.

9. He began His public ministry at about 30 years of age. Luke 3:23.

Lord Jesus Christ: Impeccability
(Category 329)

1. The Deity of Jesus Christ was always impeccable (sinless). Psalm 145:17.

2. Humanity of Christ is also impeccable. 1 John 3:5, 2 Cor. 5:21.

3. Jesus was born spiritually alive--the sin of Adam was not imputed to Him. 1 Cor. 15:22.

4. Jesus was born without a sin nature because of the Virgin Birth.

5. Adam was the first man CREATED without a sin nature.

6. Jesus, humanity, was the first Man born without a sin nature.

7. Enoch had the capacity to sin (volition) but not the nature (old sin nature) to sin.

8. Jesus remained sinless while on earth. 2 Cor. 5:21, Heb. 4:15, 1 Peter 2:22.

9. Jesus Christ was never commanded to be filled with the Holy Spirit. He was always filled with the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit was given without measure to Him. John 3:34.

10. Jesus Christ was unable to sin when filled with the Holy Spirit (which was all the time) because the Holy Spirit is God and God cannot sin. His volition was involved in not sinning.

11. He remained impeccable to the cross, even though the trials where they beat and slugged Him, were awful.

12. As Humanity:

    a. He walked as a Man

    b. He was sustain by the Holy Spirit

    c. He was +R in His humanity

    d. He fulfilled the Mosiac Law

    e. He revealed the Essence Box to the human race (Humanity revealed Deity).

Lord Jesus Christ: Ministry
(Category 330)

I. Trinity is Involved

A. God the Son came to minister:

1. Took the form of a servant. Phil. 2:7
2. Came to serve. Luke 22:27b
3. Came to minister. Matt. 20:28
4. Summary of Jesus' work. John 21:25

B. God the Holy Spirit sustained the humanity of Jesus Christ. The Holy Spirit was given without measure unto Him. John 3:34.

C. God the Father approved of Jesus Christ:

1. At His baptism. Matt. 3:17
2. By miracles, worders, signs. Acts 2:22
3. At His ascension: Hebrews 1:13, "Sit down"

II. Ministry Explained by Jesus in Luke 4:14-21, 28-30

A. News of His coming had traveled quickly. v. 14

B. It was customary in the days of Jesus' earthly ministry for men to read portions of the Word of God aloud in the temples they visited. This was an honor. v. 15-16

C. The reason for His ministry had been prophesied by Isaiah. This was a dramatic occasion - the living Word, (John 1:1) declaring the written Word.

D. He had been anointed (set apart) to do six things:

1. "to preach the gospel to the poor": To those who need salvation - to all humanity.

2. "to heal the broken hearted": The gospels are full of the wonderful miracles of healing which our Lord performed, but greater still is the peace and comfort which the Lord gives to believers in times of suffering. Psalm 34:18a, "the Lord is nigh unto them that are of a broken heart."

3. "to preach deliverance to the captives": (prisoners): He ministered on earth so that we might be set free from the powers of darkness (Satan and his fallen angels, Col. 1:13).

4. "recovering sight for the blind": Spiritually blind. He healed the physically blind, BUT HE CAME TO heal the spiritually blind. John 8:12, "I am the light of the world; he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life."

5. "to set at liberty them that are bruised." How? Isa. 53:5, "He was bruised (spiritual death) for our iniquities" so that we might go free and without blame. He paid the penalty. Col. 2:14

6. "to preach the acceptable year of the Lord": Year of acceptance of the Lord. He was saying, "I am the long promised Redeemer."

E. There were two reasons they stared at Him: Luke 4:20

1. He had been reading from Isaiah 61:1-2. He quit right in the middle of verse 2, because the rest of the passage does not speak of His earthly ministry but of His 2nd Advent.

2. He sat down and whoever heard of anyone sitting down while ministering the Word? Even the High Priests, who went into the Holy of Holies, must stand in the presence of God. Heb. 10:11, He dared sit, and nothing happened to Him.

F. Their amazement soon changed to anger, for as the Lord told them how few would believe, they chased Him out of the city, and attempted to throw Him over the edge to kill Him.

G. Jesus worked a miracle. He walked right thru their midst without their seeing Him, and escaped unharmed. Luke 4:30

III. Ministry to His Disciples: Sermon on the Mount, Matt. 5-7

Jesus takes a look at the multitudes and realizes He must train others to reach these people. The Sermon on the Mount is a three year crash program for the 11 disciples concluding on the Day of Pentecost - their instructions so they could reach the multitudes during the closing days of the Jewish Age (before the cross).

IV. Ministry with His Disciples: Luke 7:30 through 8:18

This portion of Scripture includes the parable of the sower.

A. When Jesus Christ sat at dinner with Simon the Pharisee, Luke 7:36-40, there included the following people:

1. The Disciples

a. 11 Saved
b. 1 Unsaved (Judas Iscariot)

2. Mary Magdalene (believer)
3. Simon the Pharisees (believer)
4. Jesus

B. There are four categories of people in the Parable of the Sower.

1. Category #1: (Luke 8) Unsaved: Hardpan soil = Judas

2. Category #2: (Luke 8) Believer: Rocky Soil = the rest of the disciples. No residual doctrine in the soul.

3. Category #3: (Luke 8) Believer: Thorny Ground = Simon the Pharisee. Represents the believer chocked with the details of life. Simon had invited Christ over for dinner, because of the status symbol grid.

4. Category #4: (Luke 8) Believer: Good Soil = Mary Magdalene, characterizes the believer who inhales and exhales Bible doctrine, a soul without scar tissue.

C. Application of the Parable of the Sower: Luke 8:16-18

1. Category #1: Not represented--no light

2. Category #2: Light--but "covers it with a vessel": v 16 This represents believers who can't take trials, they are emotional--not manifested glory (glorifying Christ)

3. Category #3: Light--but "putteth it under a bed": v 16 This represents the believer who does not daily take in Bible doctrine, and so soul breathing apparatus is "choked" suffocated with the details of life with the resultant scar tissue.

4. Category #4: Light--"but sets it on a lampstand": v. 16 This represents the believer who can take trial, is not chocked with the details of life and is inhaling and exhaling residual doctrine. God is glorified, because the believer is REFLECTING THE GLORY OF GOD (HIS LIGHT).

"that they which enter in may see the light": This results in maximum impact--glorifies God.

Consequently the "good soil" believer erects an edification structure on epignosis (residual doctrine, usuable doctrine) as follows

This structure erected on Bible Doctrine is the manifestation of the Christian life. This makes your life attractive--and gives it impact.

MASTERY OF THE DETAILS OF LIFE	
CAPACITY TO LOVE:	Rapport love
INNER HAPPINESS	
RELAXED MENTAL ATTITUDE:	Mental attitude love
GRACE ORIENTATION	
RESIDUAL DOCTRINE	

V. Ministry in Parables: See above and Category on Parables

VI. Ministry in Miracles: See Category on Miracles

Lord Jesus Christ: Miracles that Followed Christ's Death (Category 331)

I. First Miracle: Matt. 27:51a, "Behold, the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom . . ."

A. The veil in the temple was between the Holy of Holies and the Holy Place.

B. The rending of the veil indicates the removal of the barrier between man and God when the death (s) both spiritual and physical, of the Lord Jesus took place.

C. God Himself split the veil; which represents the body (humanity) of Jesus Christ, Heb. 10:19-20, which was bruised for us to provide access to God.

II. Second Miracle: Matt. 27:51b, " . . . and the earth (Palestine) did quake, and the rocks rent;"

This was so great an earth-quake that the rocks were literally split in two.

III. Third Miracle: Matt. 27:52-53

"And the graves were opened; and many (not all) bodies of the saints which slept (Christian death) arose, and came out of the graves after (associated with) His resurrection, and went into the holy city and appeared unto many."

A. This is NOT Old Testament saints being resurrected. Christ Himself, had not ascended into heaven--and He is the first-fruits--1 Cor. 15--in entering into heaven.

B. They are being resusitiated for several reasons:

1. The tremendous power of God exercised in resurrection brought them out of the lower part of the earth. (Believers)

2. This (bringing back someone from the dead) was a crash program of witnessing.

3. This was necessary because all the disciples (except John) were in hiding.

Results of These Miracles: Salvation. Example: Salvation of the centurion and those with him. Matt. 27:54.

Lord Jesus Christ: Necessity for the God-Man
(Category 332)

1. It was necessary for one member of the Godhead to become humanity because as God:

   a. Sovereignty: Not subject to death

   b. Righteousness: +R cannot have contact with sin

   c. Eternal life: Eternal life cannot die

   d. Omnipresence: Cannot be reduced to one point-cross

   e. Omnipotence: Able NOT to die, not able to die

   f. Immutability: Cannot change, none of these characteristics can change.

2. It was necessary for Jesus Christ to become man to be qualified to be Saviour. Only a human being who lives a perfect life would be qualified to pay the penalty of sin which is spiritual death. (+R cannot have contact with sin).(+R)

3. It was necessary for Jesus Christ to become humanity in order to die physically, so that He could have a resurrection body, so that believers could have a resurrection body.

4. It was necessary for humanity (in a resurrection body) to ascend into heaven and be acceptable to God the Father, so that believers in resurrection bodies would also be acceptable to God the Father. John 3:13.

5. It was necessary for God to become man in order to act as mediator between God and Man. A mediator must be equal with both parties.

6. It was necessary for Jesus Christ to become man in order to be our High Priest. Heb. 7-9

7. It was necessary for Jesus to become man in order to fulfill the Davidic Covenant which says that David will have a Son who will reign forever. 2 Sam. 7, Psalm 89, 2 Chron. 21.

Lord Jesus Christ: Qualification to be Saviour
(Category 333)

1. Only the Lord Jesus Christ (in Hypostatic Union) was qualified to die for the sins of the world.

2. Jesus Christ, in His Deity, could not be Saviour:

   Sovereignty: Not subject to death or anything.
   RIGHTEOUSNESS: +R cannot have contact with sin.
   Eternal life: Eternal life cannot die.
   Omnipresence: Cannot be reduced to one point: Cross
   Omnipotence: Not able to die, able not to die
   Immutability: Cannot change, none of these characteristics can change.

3. Therefore He added to His Deity True Humanity, Heb. 2:14-16, Phil. 2:6-8, John 1:14, "became flesh."

4. He became the UNIQUE PERSON OF THE UNIVERSE: The God-man

5. Jesus Christ, in His humanity, was qualified to be our Saviour:

   a. No Imputed sin: 2 Cor. 5:21
   b. No Inherent sin: 2 Cor. 5:21
   c. No Personal sin (all personal sin comes from the OSN)

6. The human race comes into the world under:

   a. Imputed sin: (spiritual death)
   b. Inherent sin: (old sin nature)
   c. Personal sins: (a sinner) In the slave market of sin.

7. Jesus Christ was qualified because through the Virgin Birth, He came into the world as a free man:

   a. The sin of Adam was not imputed to Him.
   b. He did not inherit an old sin nature and
   c. He had not committed any personal sins.

8. He was qualified to, and did:

   a. Die with reference to the old sin nature, condemning it.
   b. Bare the sins of the old sin nature
   c. Rejected the human good which comes from the area of strength in the old sin nature. Titus 3:5.

9. He died spiritually so that we might have spiritual life. 1 John 5:11-12. He died physically so that we might have a resurrection body. Romans 4:25 the "for" means "because of".

Lord Jesus Christ: Superiorities of the Humanity of Christ (Category 334)

1. Superior in His relationship, Heb. 1:5. In His Deity there is a Father-Son relationship which sets the pattern for the Father-Son relationship in His humanity. Luke 1:35.

2. Superior in His 2nd Advent, Heb. 1:6.

   "When": 2nd Advent
   "He": God the Father
   "firstbegotten": Jesus Christ
   "all the angels": Elect angels. After Operation Footstool at the 2nd Advent, only elect angels will be left.

3. Superior in His Ministry, Heb. 1:7-8

   a. v. 7: "ministers a flame of fire": Angels are servants of God and used to administer judgment.

   b. v. 8: "O God": God the Father is called the Son, "God."

      "righteousness": Impeccability of the humanity of Jesus Christ.

      "thy kingdom": In contrast to Satan's kingdom

4. Superior in His Appointment: Heb. 1:9

   Jesus Christ on earth, chose the plan of the Father (righteousness) rather than the plan of Satan (iniquity) which was to act independently of God's plan by bypassing the cross and accepting the crown. Matt. 4:8-9.

   "anointed . . . oil": Sustaining ministry of the Holy Spirit.

5. Superior as Creator: Heb. 1:10, "Lord", emphasis on Deity.

6. Superior in His Character: Heb. 1:11-12

   "they shall perish": After the millennium, the heavens will be destroyed.

   "thou remainest": Psalm 90:2, "everlasting to everlasting"

   Hebrews 13:8, "same yesterday, today, and forever."

7. Superior in His Position: Heb. 1:13

   Jesus Christ in His humanity, is superior to angels.

8. All this is documented by Old Testament Scripture.

Lord Jesus Christ: How Sustained on the Cross?
(Category 335)

I. First Three Hours on the Cross:

A. By the Holy Spirit: John 3:34, " . . . for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto Him."

B. By the Father: Isaiah 50:7, "For the Lord God will help me"

II. Last Three Hours: By doctrine--the Word of God. Isaiah 50:4-8, Isaiah 42:3, Psalm 138:2.

A. Isaiah 50:4-8:

1. v. 4-5: God the Son, in His humanity, learned Doctrine from God the Father.

2. v. 6: Jesus' positive volition was tested before the cross.

3. v. 7: "Lord God": God the Father
"will help me": God the Father helped Jesus Christ to STAY ALIVE during the first three hours, so He was able to bear up under maximum pressure without giving away.

B. Isaiah 42:3

"a bruised reed": A reed being crushed. Reference to Christ bearing our sins.

"shall he not break": Reference to His resurrection, and He did not break under this tremendous burden.

"the smoking flax": Hebrews says: Faintly burning wick

"shall he not quench": While He bore our sins. He was a "faintly burning wick" (he died spiritually) but He did not die physically then.

"bring forth judgment": He shall cause judgment to be presented.

*******"unto truth": Standard of truth, make the issue clear.
IMP. Your sins do not stand between you and God. They were judged at the cross.

ISSUE: What will you do with the person of Christ???

C. Isaiah 50:7, Continued:

"I have set my face like a flint": Expresses the positive volition of the humanity of JC as He faces the cross.

As Deity He couldn't die. As humanity He had to use His volition. The whole plan of God could have been ruined if the volition of the humanity had been negative. John 10:18

1. "flint": Arrowhead. Isa. 49:2, "polished shaft". A shaft that will go true to the target.

2. "I know": KEY PHRASE. He KNEW from the Doctrine that He had what it took to go through the six hours of the cross.

3. "I shall not be ashamed;" I will carry through and accomplish the mission of bearing the sins of the whole world. His friends couldn't help Him. God the Father and God the Holy Spirit sustained Him. Psalm 138:2, " . . . for thou hast magnified thy word above all thy name."

4. Isaiah 50:8 continued:

   "He is near": God the Father is near to JUDGE
   "that justified me": Vindicated Him

   a. He JUDGED HIM
   b. He was SATISFIED with what the Son was doing on the cross.

**********NOTE c. IMPORTANT: The person of Jesus Christ satisfied His righteousness. The work of Jesus Christ satisfied His JUSTICE.

D. Psalm 138:2, "I will worship toward thy holy temple, and praise thy name for thy lovingkindness and for thy truth: for thou hast magnified thy word above all thy name."

1. This magnification is due to the following:

   a. On the Cross

      (1) God the Father forsook the Son (while He was bearing our sins) Psalm 22:1.

      (2) God the Holy Spirit could not sustain Him at that time. Psalm 22:1

   b. Consequently the Word (Bible doctrine) had to sustain Him.

2. This magnifies the Word of God because it sustained Him three hours.

3. The believer today has the sustaining ministry of the Holy Spirit, the indwelling of Jesus Christ, and the Word also with the Father backing up the plan. UTILIZE YOUR DIVINE OPERATING ASSETS.

Lord Jesus Christ: Six Trials of Christ
(Category 336)

I. Prophecy of the Trials: Isa. 53:7-8

II. The First Trial: John 18:12-24 BEFORE ANNAS

A. Annas was the political boss of Jerusalem and #1 gangster in the area. He ran the temple bazaar (money changers etc.)

B. Annas had been a High Priest active, but now was absorbed in other activities.

C. A High Priest was a judge, but since he was not performing the function of a High Priest, he was not to judge.

D. Therefore this is not a legal trial.

E. Annas was related to the acting High-Priest, Caiaphas was his son-in-law. He tells him to "get rid of him."

F. He came to Annas first, because if Annas (the political boss) doesn't clear it, it doesn't go. He cleared it by agreeing to the whole procedure.

G. Religious individuals; the Sanhedrin (Chief priests, scribes and Pharisees) put the Lord Jesus Christ on trial.

H. Result: Annas sent the Lord Jesus Christ bound to Caiaphas.

III. Second Trial: Matt. 26:57-68

A. Caiaphas: The High Priest, had prophesied the death of Jesus Christ, check John 11:50-52. He was an evil, practical man who saw the need to find a "patsy" for the anti-Roman activities in Israel. In his policy of expediency, he contended that it was better for one man to die than the ESTABLISHMENT losing all their ill-gotten power and wealth.

B. Illegal points of this trial:

1. It was held at night, contrary to Jewish Law, but the next day was the Passover and they wanted to get their dirty work out of the way so they could observe the Passover with clean hands.

2. No bona fide indictment.

3. No defense attorney.

4. They sought false witnesses against Jesus. v. 59

5. It was held during the Holy Days when court is never to meet, according to Jewish Law.

6. The court was prejudiced.

7. There was violence in the courtroom.

C. Jesus' Attitude: Perfect mental attitude of joy and peace. He made just one statement of fact, v. 64. "Thou hast said": Yes (emphatically)

IV. The Third Trial: Luke 22:66-71, Before elders, chief priests and scribes.

A. Held after 6:00 a.m. because they suddenly realized that the night trial was illegal, and so they came together to make it legal.

B. But this was a holy day, and therefore this trial was illegal.

C. Because this was a feast period (Passover and Unleavened Bread) they couldn't sentence anyone so they turned Him over to Pilate.

D. v. 69, "Hereafter shall . . . . God". Supreme sign of Messiahship. Here was their Messiah, but they rejected Him.

V. The Fourth Trial: John 18:28-38, before PILATE. (Covered in all four Gospels).

A. Jews took Jesus to the Roman governor (Pilate) is an attempt to circumnavigate Jewish Law relative to the Holy Days.

B. Jewish Accusations: Luke 23:2

1. "Perverting the nation": This is a coverup accusation.
2. "forbidding to give tribute to Caesar": This is a deliberate lie. Matt. 22:17-21
3. "saying He Himself is Christ a King": They implied that He was really trying to lead in a revolt against Rome; that He was a rival to Caesar and a dangerous revolutionary. No so. Jesus Christ was no militant, hippy, yippie, gypsie type.

C. They didn't mention blasphemy (speaking in an irreverant manner against God) because: (This was their original charge.)

1. Romans had only one type of worship: Caesar worship.
2. If they had said blasphemy, Pilate would have accused them of not worshipping Caesar.
3. Then Pilate could have had them all in court.

D. They admit they do not desire the fair trial of Jesus, but desire His death. v. 31

E. Pilate was the only person who gave Jesus Christ an honest and objective hearing and cross examination.

F. Kingdom of Christ on earth awaits the 2nd Advent, meantime He has a kingdom of regenerate people - BODY OF CHRIST - which is IN this world, but not OF it. v. 36

G. Jesus Christ declared Himself innocent.

H. Apparently Jesus "witnessed a good confession" (1 Tim. 6:13) before Pilate (v. 37) "the truth"; that He was the God-Man, sinless, and was going to die for the sins of the world.

I. Pilate had negative volition; he didn't wait for an answer.

J. Pilate found Him innocent.

K. Pilate had the DISCERNMENT to observe the innocence of Jesus, but not the CHARACTER to free Him.

L. Pilate, learning that He was a Galilean, sent him to Herod.

VI. The Fifth Trial: Luke 23:8-12, BEFORE HEROD ANTIPAS

A. Herod, hoping for entertainment, wanted Jesus to perform a miracle.

B. Jesus refused and kept silent. v. 9

C. They accused Him, set Him at nought, mocked Him.

D. They sent Him back to Pilate.

VII. The Sixth Trial: John 18:39-19:16

A. Pilate called Him "King of the Jews" v. 39. Jesus must have convinced Him of His birth, status, etc.

B. Realizing Jesus was innocent, Pilate made an ingenious attempt to gain the release of Jesus on the basis of a custom of the Passover.

C. They insisted he release Barabbas instead, head of Murder Inc. who was No. #1 on the wanted list.

D. They scourged (skinned alive with a whip) Him and put a crown of thorns on His head. They ridiculed Him. Jo. 19:1

E. Pilate would not put himself in a position of being accused of opposing Ceasar. John 19:12.

VIII. Sins Evident at the Trials:

A. Caiaphas, who sinned from CONVICTION, thought to do God a favor by destroying Jesus Christ.

B. Pilate sinned AGAINST CONVICTION. He was convinced that Jesus was innocent.

C. Roman soldiers and thoughtless rabble, who sinned WITHOUT CONVICTION. They were the tools of those who ruled or influenced them.

IX. Statements of Jesus at the Trials:

A. 1st: "Everything I have said I said openly, so ask the people who heard me." John 18:20-21

B. 2nd: He said, "Emphatically Yes, I am the Christ, the Son of God." Matt. 26:64.

C. 3rd: He gave the supreme sign of Messiahship. Luke 22:69

D. 4th: He witnessed to Pilate (1 Tim. 6:13) and declared himself innocent. John 18:36-37

E. 5th: He said nothing. Luke 23:9

F. 6th: Jesus told Pilate (John 19:11) that this was God's sovereign Plan, showing Jesus' positive volition regarding the plan of God.

X. Prophecy of His Death:

A. David tells of His death in Psalm 22.

B. Isaiah tells of His death in Isaiah 53

C. Jesus tells of His own death in Matt. 20:17-19

Lord Jesus Christ: Uniqueness
(Category 337)

1. His uniqueness is set forth in Isaiah 9:6.

   "child is born": Humanity
   "son is given": Deity, Adult son

2. He is two natures inseparably united, yet no mixture, no loss of separate identities. UNIQUE.

3. DIVINE NATURE: Undiminished Deity. Perfect in every way and Eternal God. He retained all the characteristics of God when He became humanity. Romans 1:14, "declared" means marked out.

4. HUMAN NATURE: True humanity, genuine, real. Yet he was without sin, NO imputed, inherent (old sin nature) or personal sin.

5. Both God and man in one person forever.

   No less God because of His humanity
   No less Man because of His deity

6. Different from God; in that He is man.
   Different from man, in that He is God.

7. The uniqueness of the PERSON OF CHRIST leads to the uniqueness of the WORK OF CHRIST.

8. His crucifixion was unique among crucifixions because the purpose was different: bearing the sins of the world, not just physical death.

9. His physical death was unique. He died voluntarily. Luke 23:46

10. His resurrection was unique. He was the first person to come back with a body of incorruption. 1 Cor. 15:23, "first fruits".

    Resurrection: Never dies again
    Resuscitation: Dies again (Like Lazarus)

11. Jesus Christ, the unique person, can cleanse. God the Father can forgive but not cleanse. God the Holy Spirit can produce Divine Good in the believer, but cannot cleanse.

12. The uniqueness of His person led to the:

    a. Uniqueness of His Word: (Spiritual Death)

    b. Uniqueness of His physical death: (Voluntary)

    c. Uniqueness of His resurrection.

    d. Uniqueness of His present position at the right hand of the Father.

Lord Jesus Christ: Virgin Birth
(Category 338)

1. The virgin birth was planned in eternity past. Psalm 2:7

2. The virgin birth was prophesied. Isa. 7:14

3. God made preparation for the virgin birth.

4. Attacks were made on the humanity of Jesus Christ by Satan.

5. Heb. 10:1-22 is Christ's birth (humanity) from the standpoint of Deity.

6. Luke 1 is Christ's birth from the standpoint of humanity.

7. Jesus Christ (humanity) came from God (virgin birth) and went back to God in resurrection and ascension.

8. Jesus Was born of the virgin Mary. Luke 2:11. Mary was the mother of the humanity of Jesus Christ, not the mother of His deity, Mary was NOT THE mother of God. (only mother os His humanity).

9. The provision of God the Holy Spirit in the virgin birth is given in Luke 1:35.

10. Romans 1:3, " . . . made . . . according to the flesh" means made according to the norm or standard of the flesh. He was bona fide humanity. He was born trichotomous: Body, soul and spirit. The human race is born spiritually dead--dichotomous, no human spirit. (Eph. 2:1, 5, no ability to have fellowship with God.)

11. It was necessary for Jesus Christ to have an human spirit to understand what the will of God is, in His humanity.

12. He did not have a human father, so He did not have an old sin nature.

13. The virgin birth fulfills the Davidic Covenant, 2 Sam. 7, Psalm 89; 2 Chron. 21. Mary is in the line of David. God promises unconditionally to David that He will have a son who will reign forever and ever, anticipation of the fulfillment at the 2nd Advent.

14. There are two genealogies of Jesus Christ (humanity)

    a. Legal line: Joseph

    b. Birth line: Mary (royal line) Both came from David

15. Without the virgin birth there is no salvation.

Lord Jesus Christ: Virgin Birth Preparation
(Category 339)

1. God's great plan of redemption (from His Sovereignty) was set into operation when Adam sinned.

2. Throughout the OT the Jews looked forward to the coming of a Saviour, as revealed thru the sacrifices, feasts, holy days, etc.

3. Extensive preparation was made so there would be no doubt as to who He was.

4. First promise of salvation, with emphasis on the virgin birth, is given in Genesis 3:15.

5. God prepares a nation - Israel. Gen. 12:1-3

6. God prepares a kingdom. The new nation became very large. God chose a king (David) for this nation.

7. 2 Samuel 7:16, God told David his kingdom would last forever, that His Son would reign forever.

8. God prepares a city. David was born in Bethlehem. Micah 5:2 tells where the Saviour would be born.

9. God prepares a mother. Isaiah 7:14 with Luke 1:35. Mother of the humanity - NOT THE MOTHER OF GOD.

10. God prepares a body. Heb. 10:5

    a. Luke 1:35: Mary is told
    b. Luke 1:37: Mary is reminded
    c. Luke 1:38: Mary's response

11. God also prepares a man to take care of His son while he was growing up, Joseph. Matt. 1:18-25.

12. God prepared a name: Isa. 7:14, "Immanuel": God with us. God-Man.

13. God prepared a birthplace: Mary lived in Nazareth. They journeyed to Bethlehem. Luke 2.

14. God prepared a stable for His Lamb. Rev. 13:8, Luke 2:7

15. So:

    "When the fulness of time was come, God sent forth His Son, made of a woman, made under the law." Gal. 4:4.

Doctrine of Love
(Category 340)

1. Love is maximum after the point of propitiation to every believer.

2. The believer is in union with Jesus Christ--and therefore because of propitiation God can love the believer with maximum divine love. Eph. 1:6; 1 John 3:2. God can love every believer with maximum love regardless of spiritual status because of the following doctrines:

   a. Positional truth
   b. Application of Propitiation
   c. Concept of God's love (Grace depends upon the character of the one initiating love.)

3. Love is exhaled in three areas when one is functioning under GAP.

   a. Toward God: Exhale of left bank of the soul
   b. Toward member of the opposite sex: Exhale--right bank
   c. Friendship: Exhale, right bank

4. In addition to the above, there is a relationship love expressed by the Greek word στοργος. This word occurs in the Greek NT in its negative sense astorgos in Rom. 1:31, 2 Tim. 3:3. This is the relationship love between parents and children.

5. There is also a Greek word ἀρκέω which expresses an appreciation of the details of life. It means in Heb. 13:5 "to be content."

6. "Agape" love is produced by the filling of the Holy Spirit in the mentality of the soul only. When this love is produced there is absence of mental attitude sins. It also respects the volition of individuals and also respects privacy and property.

7. "Philos" love is the filling of the Holy Spirit plus doctrine (epignosis). This is total soul love. There is an exhale from every aperture of the soul. For instance emotion has rapport, the conscience fulfills divine norms and standards.

8. Agape love is commanded toward God and all believers. Gal. 5:22-23, Rom. 5:5, 1 John 4:7-10. Source of this love: the filling of the Holy Spirit, the functioning of the edification complex.

9. The source of philos love is the application of BD.

10. Difference in "agapao" and "phileo":

    a. "agapao" is specialized (always mental) F/HS

    b. "phileo" is general and total, i.e. total soul love that comes through a knowledge of doctrine to certain members of the human race and the Godhead. John 20:15-17.

Love, Types of Love
(Category 341)

I. Types of Love:

A. Category #1: Eros (from which we get erotic): Sexual love

B. Category #2: Phileo: Rapport, compatibility

C. Category #3: Agapao: Mental attitude love

II. The Unbeliever can love in all three categories. The source is from the old sin nature. There is no such thing as agapao love being a higher and divine type love, and phileo being a lower and human love.

III. When the believer is filled with the Holy Spirit, the love produced IN ANY of the 3 categories is DIVINE LOVE.

IV. When the believer is not filled with the Holy Spirit, the love produced IN ANY of the three categories is human love. (The believer imitates the unbeliever and human good is not acceptable to God, Romans 8:8).

V. Categories of Divine Love (Agapao = (A) and Phileo (P)

A. Love of God the Father for the Son: (A & P) Jo. 15:9

B. Love of God for the human race: (A) John 3:16

C. Love of God for the believer: (A) 1 John 4:19, can be (P) if believer has doctrine.

D. Love of believer for God (Positional love) Rom. 8:28 (A)

E. Love of believer (F/HS for God). 1 John 4:19 (A), Can be (P) if the believer has Bible doctrine.

F. Love of believer (F/HS) + doctrine in the human spirit exhaled toward another believer is (P).

VI. Mental attitude love (agapao produced by the believer filled with the Holy Spirit is minus mental attitude sins: Hatred, envy, jealousy, implacability (unappeasable anger) bitterness, sour grapes, etc.

VII. Divine love is from the source of God. First thing agapao love through the F/HS does is to go back to God because the believer is the responder. There it is given a stability and power. Then when it goes back to the human race, it has impact. Reason: This love is from God. You take the attitude of God toward the other believer, which is "beloved". GOD LOVES ALL BELIEVERS. When you are filled with the HS, thus producing divine love (agapao) you have impact for Christ.

"Lovers of Pleasures rather than Lovers of God"
(Category 342)

2 Timothy 3:4, "Traitors, heady, highminded, lovers of pleasure more than lovers of God . . ."

1. Capacity to love God is based on knowledge of doctrine.
2. Therefore, knowledge of doctrine keeps down scar tissue on the soul and erects the edification complex inside the soul. (epignosis knowledge)
3. However, when the believer is negative to Doctrine, he has no capacity to love. Persistent negative volition to doctrine results in scar tissue.
4. Therefore he has a frantic search for happiness.
5. In pursuit of happiness, more scar tissue is produced, more frustration, and more unhappiness.
6. Therefore, the believer becomes a slave to the details of life and is a lover of pleasure more than a lover of God.

Love For Other Believers (Agape)
(Category 343)
(Manifestation of the Holy Spirit)

1. The believer F/HS (under control of the Holy Spirit) produces the fruit of the Spirit (Gal. 5:22-23).

2. Love (agape) is part of this fruit of the Holy Spirit. Since it is produced by the Holy Spirit, it is Divine love.

3. Agape love (Produced by the Holy Spirit) is a mental attitude free from hatred, hostility, envy, implacability, bitterness, self-pity, etc.

4. It is God's will that believers stay in fellowship. Eph. 5:18, "keep on being filled". THE MEANS

5. It is God's will for believers to love each other (Agape - mental attitude) 1 John 4:11, RESULT

6. This love is from the source of God (1 John 4:10-11) which is shed abroad in our hearts (minds) by the Holy Spirit. Romans 5:5.

7. Divine love cannot be produced by the unbeliever or by the believer out of fellowship (O/F).

8. We are commanded to love (agape - MA) one another (of the same kind) all believers. It doesn't say you have to understand them, like the way they look or dress, or what they think, or where they go, or what they say. THIS IS THEIR BUSINESS. Divine love produces a relaxed mental attitude (RMA). There may be compatibility in the soul (compatibility of old sin natures) but this is not divine love.

9. The right relationship in the human race is based upon a right relationship with God.

10. The hindrance to divine love (agape) is the existence of false doctrine and/or ignorance of true doctrine, i.e. pseudo spirituality, legalism, tongues, emotionalism.

11. Since love is a mental attitude, false doctrine in the frontal lobe distorts, ignores and actually rejects the principle of divine love and the means of producing it. 1 John 1:9.

12. The dynamics of love is evident in the love of one believer for another which glorifies God--not man, because this love is made perfect through the filling of the Holy Spirit.

13. <u>When you are filled with the Holy Spirit and have agape</u> (mental attitude) <u>love</u> (divine love) <u>your impact for Christ changes, but not necessarily your personality</u>.

Note the above increment is IMPORTANT!

Love (Phileo) in Three Categories: #1, #2, #3
(Category 344)

1. Two floors of the edification complex are made up of love. (Agape and phileo)

2. The fourth floor of the edification complex is rapport love. This rapport love is exhaled in three categories:

   a. Category #1: Rapport toward God (exhale out the left bank)
   b. Category #2: Rapport toward opposite sex (exhale out the right bank)
   c. Category #3 Rapport toward people (friends)

3. Agape love is actually prior to rapport love. Why? Because rapport love is based on agapao love--rapport love cannot exist when there is mental attitude sins.

4. Both agape and phileo are divine love if the believer is controlled by the Holy Spirit.

5. The key to fueling rapport love is GAP. And GAP feeds on the Word of God.

   The Bible is the:

   a. Word of God. Heb. 4:12
   b. Voice of the Holy Spirit. Heb. 3:7
   c. Mind of Christ. 1 Cor. 2:16

   and is the basis of rapport with God.

6. Phileo is two people thinking doctrine.
   You build your life around doctrine
   You both love doctrine
   You talk about doctrine
   You even do your kidding around doctrine, doctrine is YOUR LIFE!

7. This rapport built around doctrine rather than compatibility of old sin natures.

8. Behind this rapport love is thinking. You still have a RMA!

9. As one grows his capacity toward God, family and friends grow.

10. See Categories on the Edification Complex--and GAP.

Love of God the Father is Manifested
(Category 345)

I. God's Love to His Son: God loves His Son. John 3:35, 5:20

II. God's Love to Mankind: Phase 1 (Salvation).

A. In His Plan: Eph. 3:11; 2:8-9

B. In sending His Son: 1 John 4:9a

C. By Giving His Son: John 3:16, 1 John 4:10

D. By sparing not His Son: Rom. 8:32

E. When mankind was dead in sin: Eph. 2:4-5

F. While they were yet sinners (Romans 5:8-11). Christ died for them, showing that: Jesus Christ loved His enemies as well as His friends. John 15:13, "Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life . . ."

G. Father's reaction to the Son's love for mankind:

1. Matt. 17:5, well pleased with His son
2. Mark 9:7--Luke 9:35 tell us to "hear Him"
3. 2 Peter 1:17, Father gave Him honor and glory.

III. God's Love to Mankind: Phase 2 (Believer)

A. By providing a Defense Attorney when Satan accuses the believer.

B. In Divine Discipline when out of fellowship.

C. By giving more grace. Out of the bottom circle you have 1 John 1:9 (more grace) so that you can get back into fellowship when you can utilize all the assets of time which are provided by God.

D. By enabling the believer to produce Divine Love. The bottom circle is the place of mental attitude love, produced by the filling of the Holy Spirit. You CAN love other believers when filled with the Holy Spirit because:

1. They are in the top circle just as you are.
2. They have, IN CHRIST, just what you have.
3. God's love for them never changes either.
4. So you stand upon this doctrine and have a relaxed mental attitude, minding your own business before the Lord.

IV. Alternative of God's Love: WRATH (Hate) John 3:36

A. God is just to forgive: Love

B. God is just to condemn: Hate (Wrath)

Love of God for the Human Race (Believer and Unbeliever)
(Category 346)

1. God is perfect. God is love. Therefore His love is perfect: Divine love.

2. The cross was the greatest manifestation of His love that the world has ever seen.

3. At the cross you connect with His love (agape) which is extended to you in phase 1 (salvation).

4. God's divine love toward the unbeliever is agape love (mental attitude) John 3:16

5. God's Divine love toward the believer is in the area of mental attitude (agape) and in the area of rapport (phileo).

6. Every believer is loved by God with exactly the same amount of love that He has for His Son, the Lord Jesus Christ.

7. "Beloved" when used for believers, refers to all kinds of believers: Mature, immature, spiritual, carnal.

8. Regardless of your status as a believer, God loves you with an infinite amount of love.

9. Love + Eternal life + Immutability means that God never changes His attitude toward you.

10. You can change your attitude toward God but He never changes His attitude toward you. God loves you knowing everything you think, do and are.

11. It is your response to His love (agape) at salvation (Phase 1) that begins the possibility of love, (Phase 2). The filling of the Holy Spirit produces the fruit of the Holy Spirit: Divine love (agape). This is spirituality, this is the start.

12. Doctrine in the human spirit is what produces the assurance of the love of God. This assurance grows as the frame of reference and edification complex becomes established.

Love of Man for God
(Category 347)

I. Love of Man for God:

A. Presalvation: Attraction love: Response to the cross. Attracted to the Saviour (John 3:16) resulting in:

B. Point of Salvation: Positional love: Romans 8:28. When you make a one time decision - MA love.

C. Post-salvation: Knowing love

1. Start: The filling of the Holy Spirit produces the fruit of the Holy Spirit. Agape love.

2. Continuance: The edification complex has two floors devoted to love: Both agape and phileo love.

II. Two Problems in loving God: Phase 2 (The Christian Walk)

A. Am I filled with the Holy Spirit (in fellowship)

B. Am I functioning under GAP?

III. No member of the human race can love God until he comes to the cross.

IV. The unbeliever does not have the equipment to love God. He must have the Holy Spirit and a human spirit.

V. God is the initator--the believer is the responder--consequently the believer fulfilling point IV is reflecting the love of the Father.

VI. If your GAP is functioning--you will be relaxed around God, wife, and people.

VII. The great enemy to proper love response to God is false doctrine: emotionalism, legalism, religion.

VIII. Both legalism and emotionalism disorient the believer to the grace of God, and distorts love to God.

Lord's Supper
(Category 348)

1. While the Passover Feast of the OT looked forward, the Eucharist of the NT looks back to the cross. Both were commanded in their respective ages. Command for the Eucharist: Matt. 26:26-28.

2. Whereas Water Baptism illustrates our relationship with Christ, Communion illustrates our fellowship with Christ. Communion means fellowship. One should never partake of Communion as a believer out of fellowship: 1 Cor. 10:16-22, 1 Cor. 11:27-32.

3. To partake of Communion out of fellowship puts the believer under severe discipline, and often under the sin unto death. 1 Cor. 11:30, 32.

4. Thus the believer is to examine himself (Closed communion is not Biblical) and then eat (after rebounding). 1 Cor. 11:28

5. The bread element emphasizes the Person of Christ, and the fruit of the vine element emphasizes the Work of Christ. (Body = Person, Blood = Work) 1 Cor. 11:24-26

6. Unity in a local church is based on Bible doctrine taken in through GAP (Grace Apparatus for Perception) not love. 1 Cor. 11:33-34.

7. From the standpoint of the believer eating the bread (Bread of Life) is a picture of faith in the Person of Jesus Christ, and drinking of the wine or juice is a picture of faith in the Work of Christ.

8. In Malachi 1:7 (polluted bread) and 1:8 (ye offer the blind for sacrifice) is an actual attack on the person and work of Christ. They in type, polluted the person of Christ (made Him a sinner) and therefore corrupted the work of Christ (made His work that of a sinner, sick, lame, blind). Therefore one is NEVER to tamper with the person and work of Christ.

9. How often should communion be served. This is an hot issue in many locales. " . . . this do ye as oft as ye drink it . . ." is present linear Aksionsart which would make quarterly too often, and probably once a month about right. The early church had communion once a week, but then they also meet daily. The Passover gave way to Communion. How often did they have the Passover in the Old Testament?

10. Communion is based on the "Fragrance of Memories." " . . . ye do show the Lord's death till He come (Rapture). 1 Cor. 11:26 This doctrine (Fragrance of Memories) kept the Shulamite Woman true to her Shepherd lover in Song of Solomon. The believer is never to forget the memory of the Cross.

11. Conclusion: Any believer has the right to partake of Communion, however only those in fellowship realize its true significance. If they are out of fellowship, they must at least understand the proper Biblical use of 1 John 1:9. 1 Cor. 11:31-32

Hebrew Words for "Make"
(Category 349)

I. Three Hebrew words translated make: (or create)

A. Barah: To create something out of nothing

B. Ahaah: To create something out of existing material

C. Yatzsar: To fashion, to mold

II. Work of the Trinity:

A. Work of the Lord Jesus Christ: Original Creation, Eph. 3:9

1. Universe: Genesis 1:1, "created": Barah--the universe was originally created out of nothing.

2. Man:

a. Inner, invisible part of man: Gen. 1:27, "created" Barah: something created out of nothing.

b. Structure of the body (Organic part) created out of existing materials (chemicals). Gen. 2:7, "formed" (yatzsar) shaped, molded out of existing materials.

B. Work of the Holy Spirit: Reconstruction of the Earth: Ahsah: Made out of existing materials.

1. Genesis 1:2b, "the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters."

2. Psalm 104:30, "Thou (God the Father) sendest forth thy spirit (Holy Spirit), they (men) are created: and (because) thou (Holy Spirit) renewest the face of the earth."

III. Summary:

A. Man: Isaiah 43:7

1. "I have created him for my glory": Barah
2. "I have formed him": Yatzsar
3. "I have made him" Organic: Ahsah

B. Universe: Isaiah 45:18

1. "the Lord that created the heavens": Barah
2. "God himself that formed the earth": Yatzsar
3. "and made it": Ahsah

Man
(Category 350)

I. Natural Man Has: (Dichotomous)

A. Body: Tabernacle, house

B. Soul: Directed towards man. The soul has the ability to understand, perceive, and categorize human phenomena and human phenomena ONLY! 1 Cor. 2:14, "natural man": Soulish man.

The soul has essence: (character)

1. Self-consciousness: Awareness of the soul (aware of your existence.)
2. Mentality: Has a perceptive love and a conscience lobe (norms or standards). This includes the thinking part of the mind and the norm and standards of that mind.
3. Volition: The decider of the soul--chooser.
4. Emotion: Appreciator of the soul
5. Old Sin Nature: The distorter, frustator of the soul. In Romans 5:12, "sin": refers to the old sin nature. The human race receives his OSN by an act of physical birth.

C. No human spirit: Eph. 2:1-5, spiritually dead. No relationship with God, no fellowship.

II. Regenerate Man Has (Trichotomous) 1 Thess. 5:23

A. Body: Tabernacle, house

B. Soul: Directed toward God and man in its eyes (of the soul)

1. Self-consciousness: Awareness of Who and What He is
2. Mind: Thinking divine viewpoint, the Word of God in the perceptive lobe, and having divine norms and standards in the norm and standard lobe.
3. Volition: Knowing God's will (above) and deciding to follow through on the basis of it.
4. Emotions: Appreciating the Word, Jesus Christ, etc.
5. Old Sin Nature: Frustrated--doesn't control the believer in fellowship.

C. Reactivated human spirit: Romans 8:16, Col. 2:13, Eph. 2: 1-5.

This is directed toward God, God-consciousness, and grace pipes flow from the human spirit to the soul. Actually the human spirit superimposes itself on the soul and through the Word stored in the human spirit--and controlling ministry of the Holy Spirit controls the total man.

D. Is Indwelt by the Lord Jesus Christ (for fellowship): Rev. 3:20, John 14:20 and by the Holy Spirit (for power) Jo. 14:17 The Holy Spirit teaches the human spirit. Jo. 14:26, 16:12

Man in the "Image of God": Genesis 1:26-27
(Category 351)

1. The soul of man is the real person.

2. Man (the real you--the soul) is made in the "image of God." Genesis 1:26

3. This "image" is an image in principle - shadow image. An exact image would be an imprint on a coin or a photograph.

4. The soul of man is in the shadow image (pattern) of God.

5. The pattern is immaterial. The soul is immaterial. The soul can only be defined by its characteristics, just as the Essence of God can only be defined by its characteristics.

6. Soul of man is the shadow image of Divine Essence, not the exact image.

7. Soul has Essence: Self-consciousness, mentality, volition, emotion, conscience, old sin nature.

8. God has Essence: Sovereignty, righteousness, love, eternal life, omniscience, omnipresence, omnipotence, immutability, veracity.

9. "After our likeness" means a model or pattern. The Trinity is the model or pattern. Each member of the Trinity has exactly the same essence but they are different personalities.

10. Every member of the human race has a soul (essence) but is a different personality.

11. Genesis 1:26 is the STATEMENT OF THE PLAN, dealing with PRINCIPLE therefore ahsah - making something out of something - a pattern.

12. Genesis 1:27 is the CARRYING OUT OF THE PLAN dealing with the MECHANICS, therefore barah--making something out of nothing.

13. God gave original man (Adam) a human spirit. Genesis 2:7, "breath of life" is breath of lives": spirit and soul.

14. God gave the soul and spirit of man a tabernacle (a body) and made them male and female (sex).

15. Exposition of Genesis 1:26-27; 2:7

    a. v. 26: Planning

    "God": Elohim - Godhead, indicates concept of Essence.
    "let us": Trinity, plural
    "make": Ahsah - make something out of something. Qal imperfect indicates that man is the basis for the perpetuation of the species.
    "image": tselem in the Hebrew means SHADOW IMAGE. THE SOUL OF MAN IS THE SHADOW IMAGE OF GOD. The pattern is immaterial,

the soul is immaterial. It can only be defined by its characteristics, just as God can only be defined by His essence.

b. v. 27: Execution of the Plan:

"so God": Elohim
"created": Barah - mechanics. To create something out of nothing. The soul of man is real, but it is immaterial and it is created out of nothing.
"in his own image": Tselem - Principle image
"in the image of God": Essence, soul essence
"created": Barah
"he him": Adam
"male and female": He gave His image a body.
"created":
"He them": Both had a body. Even though Eve was taken from the side of Adam, she still had a soul.

Thus v. 26 is the statement of the plan and v. 26 is the carrying out of the plan.

c. 2:7:

"The Lord God": Jesus Christ is the actual Creator
"formed": Yatzsar. Potter molding a pot. The body of man with all its functions. Qal imperfect, the body has the ability to perpetuate itself.

"of the dust of the ground": Chemicals of the soil
"breathed into his nostrils":

"the breath of life": The breath of lives. Breath is "soul life". N'shemah. God breathed in soul and spirit life into Adam.

"and man became a living soul": nephesh - living soul. Soul life was given to the format soul.

Conclusion: An unborn baby does not have the "breath of life." This is received at the moment the baby gasps for air at the point of birth. A living soul is given to the baby at that time. In application abortion under certain circumstances may be legitimately practiced, because under those conditions life would not be murdered. The real life (soul life) does not come until birth.

Man, Types
(Category 352)

1. There are three types of man:

   a. Immoral
   b. Moral (Self-righteousness)
   c. Religious (Self-righteous)

2. All categories of the human race are guilty before God. Romans 3:23. "All have sinned (When Adam sinned, imputed sin) and come short of the glory (essence box) of God." The unbeliever cannot construct an edification complex--thus reflecting the glory of God.

3. All are behind the barrier (Essentially: spiritual death)

4. All are condemned under the concept of absolute good and evil. John 5:28-29.

   a. "done good": done THE GOOD: Accepting Christ
   b. "done evil": done THE EVIL: Rejecting Christ

5. The IMMORAL MAN is a sinner overtly. His sins were obvious.

6. The IMMORAL MAN is described in Romans 1:21-32

7. The MORAL (self-righteous) MAN is described in Romans 2:1-16

8. The RELIGIOUS (SELF-RIGHTEOUS) MAN is described in Romans 2:17-29.

9. God is +R. Psalm 145:17. Man is -R. Isa. 64:6. +R is an absolute. God demands +R.

10. Provision for acceptability in God's sight (+R) was made by Jesus Christ at the cross. God's +R and Justice was satisfied.

11. Therefore +R is imputed to man at salvation. 2 Cor. 5:21.

Man: Religious Man
(Category 353)

1. The religious man is described in Romans 2:17-29.

2. The religious man has the self-righteousness of the moral man and in addition he observes certain rituals of religion.

3. Religious man regards himself as superior to all others because he has done more in order to sustain a relationship with God. This is an illusion.

4. The purpose of the Mosiac Law is to show man he is a sinner. Keeping the Mosiac Law does not save.

5. Religious man says he is saved by keeping the law and yet he cannot keep it.

6. They were condemned by their own teaching. They, the religious, broke the Mosiac Law. Romans 2:21-23.

7. Religious man is guilty of teaching others a way of salvation which he, himself, cannot execute.

8. Religion is inconsistent. Romans 2:18-23.

9. Religious man observes rituals, but has no reality.

10. PRINCIPLE: RITUAL WITHOUT REALITY IS MEANINGLESS.

11. Reality can be counted for the ritual, but the ritual cannot be counted for the reality.

    Example: Ritual: Water baptism
    Reality: Baptism of the Holy Spirit, union with Christ

12. Jesus condemned religion, called the Scribes and Pharisees "whitewashed tombstones." Matt. 23:27.

13. Every self-righteous person has an area of hypocrisy. He puts a facade over something, whitewashing it.

Manna
(Category 354)

1. Manna could sustain life, but it could not give Eternal Life. John 6:49.

2. Manna came down every day, but it didn't. Exodus 16:4, 5, 22, 27

3. Those who gathered a lot had not more than those who gathered a little. Ex. 16:16-18

4. Manna spoiled, but it didn't spoil. Ex. 16:19-20.

5. Manna spoiled overnite, but was perserved without spoiling. Exodus 16:19, 20, 33.

6. Manna melted, but it didn't melt. Ex. 16:21

7. Manna tasted good to some - Exodus 16:21 - but bad to others. Number 21:5.

8. While manna was free to those who received it (grace) it was expensive to those who rejected it (judgment). Numbers 21:5-6

9. Regardless of how the Exodus generation failed the Lord, He was faithful in providing manna once a day, except on the Sabbath.

Marriage: Biblical Principles
(Category 355)

1. Marriage is a Divine Institution and is:

   a. A basis for order in the human race.
   b. The boundary for sex.
   c. A stable environment for the children.

2. The mental attitude of love (agape) is the foundation for marriage and should be the basic concept for marriage. Sex is one of the many expressions of this love. Mental attitude love in marriage finds many areas of expression: conversation, companionship, kindness, sex. This is compatible with the concept of spirituality: Filling of the Holy Spirit produces a mental attitude of love, which finds many areas of expression in the Christian Way of Life.

3. Our love happiness must precede our sex-happiness. There must be the touching of souls, before there is an enjoyable touching of bodies.

4. The husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the Church. Eph. 5:23.

5. Leadership entails responsibility. 51% of the responsibility in every home lies with the husband.

6. The husband is always commanded to love His wife--agape love. Eph. 5:25.

7. The wife is never commanded to love her husband. The wife is to be "taught" to love her husband (philandrous, Titus 2:4). This is rapport love, response love, which precedes from her husbands agape love.

8. The wife is to be a help-meet (helper of the same species) to her husband. Gen. 2:18-22.

9. The woman fulfills the man; man is completed by having the woman. 1 Cor. 11:7-12.

10. The husband's love (both mental and physical) should be predominately agressive and protective. Man initiates. Wife's love should be responsive and receptive.

11. The real adjustment in marriage is in the area of mental attitude. We are what we think. Prov. 23:7.

12. Since marriage is founded on the mental attitude of love, the older you become, the more wonderful marriage should be.

13. Man must be head of the home. The Word of God must be the criterion for operation of the home and family.

Marriage: Divorce--Deut. 24:1-4
(Category 356)

I. The word "divorce" means "freedom to remarry."

II. BIBLICAL DIVORCE gives the right of remarriage.

III. Divorcewas permitted under the Mosiac Law. One exception, point 5, verses 3-4.

IV. In the Old Testament, the man always divorced the woman. However, the principle applies both ways.

V. Biblical Background: Deut. 24:1-4

A. v. 1: "some uncleanness": Adultery and desertion. Under the Mosiac Law, divorce was abused, distorted because there was many reasons for uncleanness. Mal. 2:11-17, Lev. 5, 7, 10, 11, 13, Num. 19, Deut. 23.

A man who wanted to get rid of his wife would get her to touch some dead animal or the clothes of someone who had died, or go to a funeral. He would then immediately send for a judge and declare his wife unclean.

B. v. 2: BIBLICAL DIVORCE MEANS THE RIGHT TO REMARRY. " . . . she may go and be another man's wife."

C. v. 3-4: EXCEPTION: She may not remarry #1 if there is a marriage in between, even if #2 dies or divorces her legitimately. (v. 2 concept)

1. v. 3: "latter husband": Husband #2
2. v. 4: "former husband": Husband #1
"after that she is defiled": Defiled in the mind of husband #1; husband #1 is short-circuited sexually (psychic) because she has been with another man. She is not defiled so far as her second marriage--but in regard to her first husband she is defiled.
"land to sin": Maximum number of incompatible marriages. The sin will take many forms: Homosexuality, lesbianism, beastiality.

VI. Divorce is permitted in the New Testament under certain conditions. (Two believers or two unbelievers in marriage).

A. Adultery: Matthew 5:32, 19:9
B. Desertion: 1 Cor. 7:15 (Person can desert mentally). This is usually followed by overt desertion).
C. Victim of divorce gimmick. Deut. 24:2
D. Victim of a spouses' continued implacability, like hatred. Deut. 24:3.

VII. If the marriage bond is broken in a mixed marriage, God only allows it to be done by the unbelieving partner. 1 Cor. 7:15. Mixed marriage = believer marrying an unbeliever. The most horrible combination possible!

Marriage Failure
(Category 357)

I. Marriage is a Divine Institution.

II. Many people think that they should not be blamed for their weakness or their failures in the matter of marriage. However, you choose this marriage partner of your own volition, and as such marriage is your own responsibility.

III. One of THREE things can result when a marriage fails:

A. First: Sticking it out. This usually occurs because of children (couple simply lives in a rather grim fashion) but it is also done for other reasons.

B. Second: Separation (no right of remarriage). There is a difference Biblically between the concept of divorce and that of separation. Our state law of legal separation often confuses the issue, Biblically. Biblical separation is any justified separation, but separation DOES NOT give the right of remarriage, only reconciliation to the marriage partner. Reasons for separation:

1. Husband beats the wife

2. Her life is in danger

3. Her children are in danger

C. Third: Divorce (right of remarriage)

This word means "freedom to remarry". Whenever the Bible gives the right of divorce, it gives the freedom to remarry, with one exception - Deut. 24:4.

IV. In certain cases a woman has to leave DI #2 to get back under DI #1 because some men are so constructed that they remove any volition from the wife and the result is that she becomes a slave. Being the head of the house does not give a man the right to enslave his wife. He is not the head of the human race.

V. If the marriage bond is broken in a mixed marriage, God only allows it to be done by the unbelieving mate. 1 Cor. 7:15.

Marriage: First Marriage in Human Race (Category 358)

1. God said it was not good that man should be alone. Gen. 2:18. Exception: See point 10.

2. God made this statement when man was in a state of innocence, before he had sinned against the Lord. Even in perfect environment it is better for man not to be alone. (Really not complete with a mate).

3. There was no help-meet found for Adam among the animal kingdom, so God found him a help meet of his own kind: homosapiens. Genesis 2:20.

4. Man was formed from the dust (chemicals) of the earth but woman was made from man (Adam's rib).

5. God separated something from Adam - his rib. Man is now no longer complete in himself. There is always something missing and that missing something can only be supplied and provided by a woman.

6. The man is never complete without the woman. The purpose of the woman is to complement (complete) the man and to help him.

7. The woman fulfills the man, and the man is completed by having the woman.

8. There was sex in marriage long before there were children. Gen. 2:24.

9. Principle of establishing a home, apart from inlaws, was given before inlaws ever existed. Gen. 2:24. OMNISCIENCE of God saw one of the greatest problems in marriage - interference of inlaws. Of course young couples bring on this problem many times by depending upon parents for such things as money, babysitting, etc.

10. EXCEPTION TO POINT #1. Matt. 19:12

    #1: Congenital eunuch: He is one who lacks the ordinary waves of libido at normal times in life.

    #2: Those who become eunuchs through emasculation.

    #3: Those operating under the law of supreme sacrifice. Example: Paul

    Otherwise--marriage is for the human race.

Marriage: Interrelationship, Responsibility
(Category 359)

Part I:

1. 51% of the responsibility in marriage lies with the husband.

2. The man has the responsibility of initiating and expressing a mental attitude love and the woman responds to it.

3. The woman can never be expected to respond properly in marriage until the man understands the injunction in Ephesians 5:25.

4. A woman can only fulfill Eph. 5:22 when the husband fulfills v. 25.

5. The woman is at her feminine best, with all the glory and majesty of her inner beauty, only when she is in a position to respond.

6. If she does not have something to which to respond, she is going to react in one of two ways (unless she is filled with the Holy Spirit and functioning under GAP:)

   a. Become bitter and frustrated and nag her husband

   b. Practice some form of escapism, such as bucking for an office in a woman's club; drinking, gambling etc.

7. Homosapiens is given the instinct to love, but the old sin nature distorts the instinct and perverts it.

8. Love is a tremendous source of strength in the adversities and difficulties of life. It is practical as well as idealistic.

9. When two people know the real meaning of love, they do not pick each other to pieces in front of others; they do not sulk and seek to hurt each other and become competitive.

10. The interrelationship between husband and wife must be one of cooperation rather than one of competition.

11. In a normal marriage no wife really wants to dominate her husband. She perfers to be married to a husband whom she can respect, who is mature and assumes the necessary responsibilities of family life, and who is considerate of her opinions whenever facing a decision.

12. The man is the head of the home. This does not mean that the wife has no rights. She has her rightful place in the home, and it should be a place of honor, not a place of degradation.

13. Christ is the Saviour of the body (the Church) and the husband is the saviour of the woman's body, both physically and mentally. A woman's health and attitudes depend upon how she responds to her husband. The man is the guardian of the woman's soul.

14. The woman who has something to which to respond makes a career out of loving such a man. Such a man who is loved thus by a woman is thrice blessed. Prov. 18:22.

15. Where there is a marital failure, there is usally a mental attitude lacking in the husband.

16. When believers have problems in their marriage, the husband (who holds 51% of the stock) had better hold a stock holders meeting and find out what to do about the situation.

Part II:

1. The husband and the wife must each take responsibility for their own sins. Deut. 24:16

2. One of the most important factors in marriage is use of 1 John 1:9. The more time logged in spirituality, the better off the marriage will be.

3. The filling of the Holy Spirit and knowledge of doctrine are essential for a good marriage. GAP must function daily.

4. One of the expressions of the filling of the Holy Spirit is the expression of love and companionship in the daily walk.

5. The stability which is derived from the application of doctrine in the filling of the Holy Spirit in the marriage relationship, is the basis for a tremendous witness for the Lord Jesus Christ.

6. Wherever domestic tranquility exists, the unbeliever is quick to notice and it is often the springboard for the declaration of the gospel.

7. Conversely the declaration of the gospel is neutralized by failure in this realm.

8. Marital strife hinders prayer, which is one of the greatest responsibilities in the life of a believer. 1 Peter 3:7.

Marriage: Mixed (Unbeliever & Believer) 1 Cor. 7
(Category 360)

1. A mixed marriage can result from:

   a. Believer marrying an unbeliever. This is contrary to doctrine. 2 Cor. 6:14.
   b. One partner accepting Christ after marriage.

2. A marriage of one believer and one unbeliever creates problems that are not found in a marriage where both are believers.

3. Salvation does not remove the natural repercussions of previous marriages.

4. A mixed marriage is not justification for dissolving the marriage. Biblical principles provide a solution. 1 Cor. 7:13.

5. If the marriage bond is broken in a mixed marriage, God only allows it to be done by the unbeliever. 1 Cor. 7:15.

6. By utilization of divine operating assets, the believing mate can often win the unbelieving mate to the Lord. 1 Cor. 7:16.

7. PRINCIPLE: Marital problems are solved by knowledge and application of doctrine. 1 Peter 3:2. GAP must be utilized daily in the marriage. The faith-rest technique must be used.

8. Reasons for remaining in status quo:

   a. Possibility of winning the unsaved partner to Jesus Christ.
   b. Providing a secure environment for the children.
   c. Principle of stability in a society.
   d. Principle of accepting the responsibility for one's decision, "for better for worse".
   e. Recognition of the principle that two wrongs do not make a right.

9. In a marriage between a believer and an unbeliever, God deals with the family as a whole, in addition to dealing with each individual.

10. The believer is dealt with in grace, the unbeliever in judgment with emphasis on bringing him to the Lord.

11. The unbeliever comes under the grace which is extended to the believer because he is in the same household, as do the children:

    a. Guardian angel
    b. Fringes of blessing when the believer is in fellowship
    c. At the rapture a child who has not reached the age of accountability and/or one who is not capable of making a decision will go with the believing parent.

Marriage: Responsibility of the Man "render due benevolence" 1 Cor. 7:3" (Category 361)

1. The husband is the head of the home. This connotes leadership in all areas of family life.

2. The foundation for the family and for the home is the husband's love, for without his mental attitude love, he can expect no response from the wife. Eph. 5:25, 28.

3. The woman was made for the man - to please him; the woman is never complete without the man. The woman only becomes complex when she has nothing to which to respond. 1 Cor. 11:7-9.

4. When a man invests nothing in his marriage, he will receive nothing in return.

5. Husband's responsibility to the family does not end with being the bread winner, which is just a small part of the responsibility in compatibility in marriage.

6. The husband should initiate mental attitude love expressing itself in conversation, behaviour pattern as well as well as sex.

7. The husband should have time for his wife and family. The whole life of a woman is centered in her husband, while the husband has many interests.

8. Wife wants to feel wanted and protected. Her security is in the love of her husband, not in the money he earns or his social prestige.

9. Hence every woman needs and wants attention, she wants to feel as though she belongs. She should be protected rather than maligned.

10. A woman is like a plant that requires sunshine and water for survival.

11. The man who lives by his ego (wrapped up in his own importance) has no capacity for love. The control of the Holy Spirit eliminates this ego lust in the believer.

12. Some men want their wife to assume the role of a mother, to give care and attention and protection to them as a mother would. So instead of the man giving, he demands this protection. This man has not grown up and thinks only of what he can get, not what he can give. An example: Some men get into problems--at work--may then, when home, expect their wife to answer the phone--saying they are not at home--or expect their wife to smooth-talk some critic--out of his hostility for the husband. Mox-nix.

13. A woman wants to look with respect toward her husband. She does not want to look at him as just another child to rear and handle.

14. She needs to have a sense of security which comes from knowing that he makes decisions which are good, that he has good judgment; this develops respect. True love demands respect as one of its ingredients.

15. Marriage does not give the man the right of being a bully or a brute, one who demands their rights as the head of the house with never a thank you, NOR does it give the wife the right to spend a lifetime trying to straighten out her husband, and to mold him into the image of her own idealism.

16. God has made the female mind and female body to respond and when she responds mentally or physically to the man, she is the glory of the man. 1 Cor. 11:7. She was created for the man. 1 Cor. 11:9.

17. The man is the guardian and custodian of the woman's soul; he must not destroy her responder. To possess a woman's body without possessing her mind (soul) is a fallacy. There must be mental attitude love first.

18. The establishing of rapport is the responsibility of the man and it starts with the mind.

19. Three areas the man needs to understand about the woman:

    a. Her spiritual make-up
    b. Her mental make-up
    c. Her body (physical make-up)

20. Part of a husband's obligation and his responsibility as a believer, is to please his wife and to make his marriage a success.

21. A husband must so love his wife, as Christ loved the church. THE BASIS IS GRACE. Giving is of the utmost importance in:

    a. Sex, living, conversation
    b. Protection, fellowship, understanding
    c. And every other facet of life

22. A woman must have freedom to respond to her husband's love, for without freedom she will not have desire.

23. A woman's desire toward her husband must be correlated with her volition. A man who eliminates a woman's volition destroys the whole mental attitude picture.

Marriage: The Right of Remarriage (Category 362)

1. See Marriage category on divorce.

2. When the marital union of two believers or two unbelievers is broken, there are five principles which apply concerning the right of marriage.

   a. First principle: All things before salvation are blotted out at the moment of salvation. Isa. 43:25. If an unbeliever has been married and divorced 14 times before salvation, if at the moment of salvation, he is single--he can marry again. Any number of marriages and divorces is blotted out at the moment of salvation (Psalm 103:14) and he has the freedom and right of remarriage. A believer 's life starts at the moment of salvation. (No Christian has a right to penalize other Christians for something which occurred before salvation, or any other time. Romans 8:33.

   b. Second principle: Divorce because of adultery (other party committing it) gives the right of remarriage. Matt. 5:32, 19:9.

   c. Third principle: Divorce because of desertion. 1 Cor. 7:15.

   d. Fourth principle: Being the victim of a divorce gimmick and/ or a victim of your spouses' continued implacability, i. e. hatred.

   e. Fifth principle: Death. Romans 7:1-4 with 1 Cor. 7:39. Death destroys the marriage bond, but it does not destroy the love in marriage. Love is a mental attitude.

3. Whenever there is a bona fide basis for divorce, the principle of Deut. 24:1-4 applies: THE RIGHT OF REMARRIAGE.

4. When someone divorces for other than a Biblical cause, the remarriage is tantamount to adultery. Matt. 5:31-32.

5. The first nine commandments as stated in Exodus deal with primarily overt activity, but the Lord Jesus Christ makes it plain (in the Sermon on the Mount) that sin goes beyond the overt act. Sin exists in the mental attitude as well. Matt. 5:21, 27, 28.

6. If you marry against God's will, that is, as an unbeliever or a wrongly divorced person, the doctrine of status quo supercedes the sin part of that problem. DO NOT BREAK IT UP. REBOUND, do not look back but learn doctrine and stay filled with the Holy Spirit and use the principle of winning that person to the Lord.

7. If a couple hears right man and right woman and decides they have married the wrong person, they are NOT to break up their marriage but remain in status quo and hit left bank activity hard!

Marriage: Right Man--Right Woman Categorized.....
(Category 363)

I. The Pattern and Precedent of the Right Man and Right Woman was established at the Creation of Man: Genesis 2:21-25

A. Adam and One Eve--not two Eves or five. A "godly seed" comes only from the RM and RW--if otherwise--only the grace of God. Malachi 2:15 in the Hebrew.

B. In the one man, one woman concept, the woman was "brought" to the man. Gen. 2:22. When a Christian woman or man conducts the "big search" instead of trusting the Lord in guidance in marrying the right one, difficulty can result.

C. A Christian is to get his or her life partner on the basis of grace, not human hustle and panic.

D. Sex was introduced in marriage long before any children were born. Sex within marriage is not for having children only. Note the word "cleave" (soul and body contact in marriage.) Genesis 2:24.

E. According to Genesis 2:24, mama and papa on either side interfering with the marriages of their children--is wrong and disastrous.

II. Just as there is one Saviour and one body (the body of Christ made up of all believers) called the bride (the Church) and the bridegroom (Christ) so there is one man and one woman in God's design. Eph. 5:31-33.

A. The husband if properly matched will "love" his wife.

B. The wife if properly matched will "reverance" (respect) her husband. Eph. 5:33.

III. The Right Man and Right Woman have bodies designed for each other--and no other body will match. There is one lock and one key to that lock. God has designed the right combination to work beautifully. Jeremiah 31:22 in the Hebrew.

A. Operation skeleton key is out--. Disaster

B. Any port in a storm is out--. Disaster

C. All "cats" are grey at night is out--. Disaster

1. Sexual relations before marriage can destroy any happiness in this area before marriage.

2. Sexual relations before marriage can destroy the soul and make it impossible to find the right man or right woman.

D. Translation of Jer. 31:22b, "the female (right woman in marriage) shall fit the hero (right man in marriage).

This is such a marvelous relationship that it is unbelievable. This is matching of physical bodies.

IV. No one (past the age of puberty) can seek soul or sex love apart from the right man and the right woman: Ezek. 16--note especially verse 28, "and could not be satisfied."

Ezekiel 16, in no uncertain terms, spells out promiscuity, and its horrible results. This chapter indicates that auto-erotism; masturbation does not satisify, and does not add to sexual stability.

V. The woman is a responder, but designed to respond to just one man. This is why immoral women (whether ignorant or clever) never understand why they are not happy.

A. "Desire" in Genesis 3:16 speaking of the woman's craving for a man, but it has to be the RIGHT MAN!

B. "And he shall rule": He (singular) one man. A woman must respect a man, must realize she is surrendering her soul and body to that one man, surrendering her freedom to him.

VI. When a woman seeks to respond to the wrong man--the woman destroys her soul (and vica-versa). Proverbs 6:32

Proverbs 6:32, "But whoso committeth adultery (single or married) with a woman (wrong woman) he that doeth it destroyeth his own soul."

A. "Destroy" is a term for putting SCAR TISSUE on the soul eyes (self-consciousness, mentality, volition, emotion and conscience). Scar tissue twists, distorts, perverts, wrecks the soul and any chance for happiness within the marriage relationship.

B. "Destroy the soul" is spelled out in Romans 1:18 ff. where it talks about homosexuality, lesbianism. Eph. 4:19 talks about being without feeling--this is scar tissue.

C. Premarital sexual relations not only give the girl and the fellow a horrible sense of guilt complex--but also the feeling, "I've blown it", "I'm unclean, I'll never be pure again." For the Christian fellow or girl, there is a recovery process, but it is summed up in one phrase, "crash program." A constant, daily intake of Bible Doctrine.

D. According to 1 Cor. 6:16 premarital sex also has an effect on the physical body. Note 1 Cor. 6:16-18.

VII. Monogamy (One man, one woman--in contrast to polygamy, one man many women) is ordained of God to demonstrate that God has a right man and a right woman for each other. 1 Cor. 7:2-4.

A. 1 Cor. 7:2, "Nevertheless, to avoid fornication (same as adultery), let every man have HIS OWN wife, and let every woman have HER OWN husband." This IS ONE FOR ONE.

B. 1 Cor. 7:4, HOMOSEXUALITY, lesbianism, masturbation, wrong man, wrong woman is not the anwer. NOTHING WILL EVER REPLACE right man and right woman.

VIII. God demands that believers marry believers (those who are born-again, have personal faith in Jesus Christ). 2 Cor. 6:14 and surrounding verses.

A. Thus believers are NEVER to marry unbelievers--no matter how nice the unbeliever may be. It is prohibited. What about people who go ahead and marry anyway against His will? Miserable--unhappy--every problem imaginable--suffering!!

B. Since marriage is a divine institution two believers may marry. Unbelievers (those who have not personally received Christ as Saviour -- John 3:16, 3:36) are not to live like animals, they too are to keep sex within the bounds of marriage.

IX. Even in the empty life of an unbeliever (not all unbelievers have empty lives, but they do in this case) or in the case of an unbeliever with scar tissue--when the right man marries the right woman he derives great happiness from her--even tho his life is empty. Ecclesiastes 9:9

Eccl. 9:9 says, "Live joyfully with the wife whom thou lovest all the days of the life of thy vanity (empty, useless life) . . . for that is thy portion in this life, and in thy labor which thou takest under the son." (The one good thing you did in life was to marry the right woman)

Why is this point so important? This is the emphasis. If the unbeliever with the right unbelieving woman can be happy, just think what you can enjoy as a believer when both have the edification complex. (Grace-orientation, relaxed mental attitude, inner happiness, capacity to love, and mastery of the details of life).

X. The right woman is the glory of the man. 1 Cor. 11:7. She reflects his stability, his strength, his protectorship, his edification complex. She responds to him, and enjoys him immensely, he is her life and thus reflects the glory of God as well.

XI. Thus recognization of the right man and the right woman becomes vitally important. 1 Cor. 7:9. There are four ways to determine this for believers.

A. The Edification Complex of the Soul (As developed from the word "edify" in Ephesians 4.

This is for mature believers who are single. This inner structure that God builds within through daily doctrinal intake over several years has a built-in radar screen that has the right "blips" when the right one comes along.

This is the surest method for the believer. No mistakes are ever made when believers have this stability and inner beauty. Under this concept "the big search" is not conducted, one is perfectly grace-oriented and relaxed about the whole concept of marriage.

B. Faith-basis (for babe or adolesent believers in spiritual growth).

1. Take it by faith that there is a right man or right woman for you: 1 Cor. 7:17.

2. Pray for the right one (even tho you do not know who it is) and becomme, through claiming the promises of God, and daily function of GAP, the type of person you wish to marry.

3. DON'T conduct the big search: YOU'LL BLOW IT!

a. The big search prohibited for Christian women in Genesis 2:22, "The Lord brought Eve to the man" pure grace.

This does not rule out dating, but remember in dating you are probably having companionship with someone's else right man or woman, so protect their soul and body. DO NOT violate either!

b. The big search prohibited for Christian men in 1 Cor. 7:27, "Seek not a wife." This means, don't hustle it--get in panic palace if the proper skirt doesn't come along. Cool it, and have a love affair in the meantime with BD, Prov. 4:6-8.

4. Make the whole operation a grace deal. And the Lord will lead to a girl or fellow which is so marvelously wonderful, your thought-pattern will blip out--"I don't earnor deserve her (or vica versa).

C. Soul basis: (Touching of souls)
(Primarily for unbelievers--but believers can use some of these things as guidelines)

1. Soul compatibility:

a. Compatibility between self-consciousness, awareness of each other. Prov. 31:28.

b. Compatibility between mentalities, think about each other. Prov. 31:11.

c. Compatibility between volitions: Prov. 31:16 Blending of wills--desire to do the same things.

d. Compatibility between emotions: Prov. 31:28 Appreciation for each other, enjoy the same things, feel the same way.

e. Compatibility between consciences: Prov. 31:25 Raised with the same norms or standards, same background in culture, creed, race and so on.

f. And sometimes--compatibility in old sin natures--same areas of human good--or human bad. The same areas of asceticism or lasciviousness--same areas of likes and dislikes (pattern of the old sin nature).

2. Opposite Compatibility: In some instances, exact opposites may marry and have compatibility--the unifier, of course, if Bible doctrine.

D. Physical basis: (Again guidelines for both believers and unbelievers are here.) Obviously there are things here that cannot be dealt with, but one can go far enough to give direction.

1. There will be a physical attraction for the right one.

2. There also will be a desire for sexual intercourse but:

a. Body contact beyond simple kissing, handholding, non-passionate embraces is satisfied by SOUL CONTACT. Compatibility in a good conversation on BD, or in some area of interest, in silence, in doing active things that both enjoy, but staying away from production of scar tissue (mental attitude sins or fornicating).

b. In the believer this is controlled by the Word of God, the indwelling Holy Spirit and His filling, and the edification complex if there.

c. The physical side is also controlled by a respect for the opposite number. Passages like Ezekiel 23 indicate that premarital sex destroys respect, and often turns to hatred.

d. The physical aspect is also controlled by the fact that the fellow is the custodian of the girl's soul and body; and if he is too bum-headed, stupid, to know this, the girl needs to be prepared to protect her body and soul as well.

3. Further safeguards against premarital sex: (Why all the safeguards? Because premarital, or extramarital sex blows it--but horribly.) Check out Prov. 6:32.

a. For the woman

(1) The father is the guardian of the virginity of his daughters. 1 Cor. 7:36-38

(2) The woman guards her purity (even if the fellow can't control herself). Ezekiel 16:25. "Don't open your feet to a man". This is plain language--but it communicates. The girl in this passage--was doing the opposite.

(3) The Word of God gives the woman stability: Isa. 33:6, " . . . wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times."

(4) On a date the fellow is the custodian of his partner's soul and body--1 Peter 2:25. Analogy

b. For the man:

(1) Needs to have a love affair with Bible Doctrine. Proverbs 4:8-9

(2) Needs to have accurate information concerning himself and the opposite sex and himself. Proverbs 5:20, 6:24-32, 7:1-27, 1 Cor. 6:16-18 (On woman-hood, Proverbs 31, and other passages)

(3) Needs to have the right companionship:

a. Stay away from operation fast-crowd: Proverbs 1:10-19. Violence, robbery.

b. Stay away from operation wrong-crowd: 1 Peter 4:3-4. Drunken orgies, involving sex.

(4) Needs to respect the privacy of the opposite number on a date.

In other words, stop bugging her to make out with you.

4. The proper physical relationship in courtship between the right man and right woman will take self-discipline, but when marriage comes, the wait will have been 1,000,000,000 times worth it.

5. THE GOAL: ARRIVAL AT THE DAY OF MARRIAGE:

a. Without emotional scars: (Scar tissue)
b. Without guilt complex
c. Without regrets, or mental image of past conquests, or comparison, or lack of respect.
d. Without frigidity or nymphmania.

6. However, even in marrying the right person--you will have trials in marriage, terrific trials:

   a. You will love him; you will hate him
   b. You will want him, you will despise him
   c. You will want him to be happy, you will want to hurt him.
   d. You will want to make him suffer, to squirm, you will want to make him gloriously happy--BUT YOU WILL RESPECT HIM.

7. You may want to walk--out--but since you are married to your right man--nothing will ever work out.

8. "Many waters cannot quench love, neither can the floods drown it . . ." Song of Solomon 8:6-7 No matter what your right man, your right woman does, it can't put out the fire of that RM-RW love. 8:6. Even unfaithfulness cannot quench it!

XII. When the believer marries the right woman--he has received grace from the Lord. Proverbs 18:22.

Translation: "Whosoever findeth a good wife (RW) receives grace from the Lord."

XIII. The right woman (or man) is always from the Lord: Prov. 19:13-14.

A. 19:13, " . . . and the contentions of a wife are a continual dropping" (Chinese torture). Wrong woman.

B. 19:14, " . . . and a prudent wife is from the Lord."

A woman with an edification complex is the most valuable property in the world--if she is yours. Prov. 31:10-31.

XIV. The Recovery Process from premarital or extramarital sex:

A. For the unbeliever: Salvation by faith in Jesus Christ removes all scar tissue. Then after salvation get the Word daily.

B. For the believer:

(Symptoms: A terrific sense of guilt, having blown it; severe mental strain more severe sometimes than others, especially during trials. A sense of hopelessness.) Even may consider suicide, either attempt it or accomplish it.

BUT THERE IS A RECOVERY PROCESS

1. It starts with the Word of God, a local church that is true to the Word of God, and a pastor-teacher that categorically opens up the Word.

2. Confess the sin or sins Biblically--1 John 1:9. Sin has not made you lose your salvation, it has made you get out of fellowship. In naming the sin--you are put back into fellowship, fellowship is restored.

3. Tell the Lord you want your deficiency of soul filled up with His wisdom. James 1:5--use it.

4. Go on a crash program--let your social life go--that's what got you in trouble anyway--and the more of the Word you get in--the more you can handle your social life. A crash program involves many things, but these are basics.

   a. The cross and the two circles

   b. The doctrine of GAP (including filling of the HS)

   c. The doctrine of Scar Tissue

   d. The doctrine of Edification complex

   e. The doctrine of the Angelic Conflict

   f. The doctrine of right man, right woman and so on.

   g. Also basic is the doctrine of the five techniques.

5. Thus the exhale (faith-application) of the Word from the human spirit and frame of reference removes scar tissue.

6. Although getting into fellowship (1 John 1:9) does not remove scar tissue, it keeps more scar tissue from forming.

XV. MEMO: NEVER GET MARRIED until you have mastered the details of life--as per the second floor of your edification complex. Song of Solomon Chapter 3.

See Category on Song of Solomon under the "S" section. (on principles found in the Song of Solomon).

Marriage: Selection of a Life-Time Mate
(Category 364)

1. Falling in love is not always rational. People often marry when judgment is null and void. It is important therefore to absorb principles of application of Bible Doctrine before you become emotionally involved.

2. Don't marry an unbeliever. 2 Cor. 6:14-18

3. Don't marry in immaturity, while you are too young.

4. Don't marry on a wave of libido. See category: Libido

5. Do not marry simply to fulfill sexual desires. Sex is not love, it is only one of the many manifestations of love. Love is a mental attitude, agape love. Out of this also comes rapport love, phileo love. When you magnify sex out of its proper perspective you ignore the field of:

   a. Spiritual compatibility and/or doctrine.
   b. Economic compatibility (you should be in agreement as to how money should be handled.)
   c. Recreational compatibility.
   d. Mental compatibility.

6. Don't marry because of social pressure:

   a. "I'll never have another chance concept".
   b. Pregnancy
   c. To solve problems

7. Do not marry a divorced person except under bona fide conditions.

8. Do not marry to acquire a status symbol, or to improve economic situation in life.

9. Do not marry with the attitude that if things do not work out that that you can get out of it easily. Marriage is a Divine Institution.

10. Do not marry a person because they are sympathetic to you in a stress period (any port in a storm).

11. A nuerotic, a gambling addict, a jealous person, an alcholic, or an egotist would not make a good mate.

12. Woman should not get married until they understand the principle that in marriage they lose their freedom. A woman must be careful to surrender her volition to a man who will cherish it, not abuse it. She must realize that she is surrendering both her soul and her body to one man, both as long as they both shall life.

13. A man must be willing to assume leadership and should be careful to find a woman with the proper mental attitude.

Marriage: Sexual Relationship #1
(Category 365)

Part 1:

1. Marriage is a Divine Institution which existed before man's sinfulness. Gen. 2:21-25.

2. Sexual relationship was an expression of marriage in innocence. Genesis 2:24. "wife . . . one flesh".

3. Primary purpose of sin is an expression of love.

4. Sex existed before sin. Whatever sins may be involved in sex, sex is not sinful. (Within the confines of marriage).

5. Secondary purpose of sex is the propagation of the race, this came into the picture after the fall of man. Gen. 4:1.

6. After the fall, the woman could no longer have sex just for pleasure, but it had another purpose, bearing children, which (bearing children) had pain connected with it.

7. Man's old sin nature (which came with the fall) introduced things that sometimes distort and destroy sex: Lust. Sex lust takes sex out of its proper place and makes it love itself. On the other hand asceticism says sex is only for propagation.

Part 2:

1. Sex is an act of personal volition, mentally desirious.

2. Sex is an act of mutual response - needs mental preparation. Man initiates, woman responds.

3. Sex is an act which is only meaningful when there is true love (Doctrine of Adam's Rib--the right man for the right woman). Mental attitude love must precede sex love or it becomes mechanical and animal.

4. Sexual relationship in marriage is for recreation. Purpose: Expression of love between partners.

5. Sex relationship is also for procreation - perpetuation of the human race.

6. Love happiness must precede sex happiness.

7. Sex merges a man and woman and makes them one. There is no such thing as superiority in sexual relationship. Man loses his sovereignty in sexual relationship and at the same time the woman gains from and receives from the man and in doing so, she gives.

Marriage: Sexual Relationship #2
(Category 366)

1. Marriage is the boundary for sex as declared in the Word of God (the absolute criterion). 1 Cor. 7:1-5. Without boundaries many people would be hurt and a nation destroy itself.

2. Marrying simply for sexual experience is a dangerous ground upon which to base a lasting and an happy marriage.

3. The husband is commanded to love his wife. Eph. 5:25.

4. Love is a mental attitude - what you think.

5. Sex is only one of the many expressions of that mental attitude.

6. The woman must respond to the man mentally before she will ever respond to him sexually, or in any other way. Otherwise you have nothing more than animal activity. If a woman is not responding to her husband mentally she will say, "I have a headache, or I'm tired, or some other excuse."

7. Love happiness (moment by moment rapport) must precede sexual happiness.

8. Any husband who fulfills Eph. 5:25 will receive the proper response from his wife.

9. The husband's love should be predominantly agressive and protective. The wife's love should be responsive and receptive. From the standpoint of human anatomy, the Bible is verified: Man gives, the woman receives.

10. Principle: Man initiates love, both mental & sexual. Woman responds to it.

11. The body of one partner rightfully belongs to the other. 1 Cor. 7:4; therefore any selfish motivation of action is ruled out.

12. The beauty of the sexual concept is that there is response and counter response. The man becomes complete because the woman completes him. (God separated something (rib) from the man and now this is returned to him in the form of a mate). The woman compliments the man, thus emphasizing her complete feminity.

13. Man does not get love by demanding love. He can only get love by giving love first. (Mental attitude love).

14. No man has the right to demand relationship with his wife. Husband must give from the ultimate source of his mental attitude. He can only get by giving of himself.

15. The woman is a responder. The husband cannot subject his wife to abuse and mistreatment and expect her to respond to his advances when he is ready to make love.

16. Since God has so ordained the man and woman for each other, the sexual relationship should not be denied to each other except under certain conditions of true worship and spiritual activity. 1 Cor. 7:5.

17. Sex minus love equals a lifetime of misery. Sex plus love equals happiness.

18. Real love is a mental attitude, therefore it is POSITIVE and not POSSESSIVE.

19. Since marriage is founded on the mental attitude of love, the older you become, the more wonderful the marriage should be.

20. However, those who look at life, and therefore marriage from the human viewpoint, will consider the body only as an instrument in the expression of sex; and because of this improper emphasis on the body as a sex symbol, the marriage of such a person can only get worse as the body deteriorates with age and loses some of its symmetry and human attractiveness.

21. Sex is NOT an island to itself. True love eliminates ego in relationship. Marriage partners should not compete with one another.

22. When mental attitude love prevails and precedes the sex relationship, then sex becomes a beautiful expression and tapestry of blending of two factors of life into one.

23. Sexual compatibility without mental compatibility can destroy a marriage. Mental attitude compatibility and sexuality compatibility with spirituality can make an exceedingly happy marriage.

24. Marriage cannot survive on the basis of sex, it takes something greater than that because sex decreases and mental attitude and spirituality compatibility increases.

Marriage: Doctrine of Status Quo
(Category 367)

1. Principle: If you are a believer and are single, remain in that status, use GAP, learn doctrine of right man, right woman until the situation of singledom should change.

2. It is much better to be single that married to the wrong woman. (Doctrine of right man-right woman, Adam's rib).

3. If you cannot live with yourself, you cannot take your problem and live with someone else and changing from single to married status is the most insane thing you can do because you make your problem worse.

4. As a believer it is better, first of all, to understand pertinent doctrine on the subject of sex and marriage before any change is made in status. 1 Cor. 7:8-10.

5. You, in studying RM-RW may come to the conclusion that you are married to the wrong person. This is not an excuse to break up the marriage. Keep with GAP, and learn strong on exhale in left bank activity.

6. You can turn an unhappy marriage into a happy one by:

   a. Accepting Jesus Christ as your Saviour. Your domestic problems are secondary to your relationship with the Lord.

   b. Get with the filling of the Holy Spirit, the doctrine of GAP, get an edification complex as fast as possible. Being grace oriented, plus the other floors of the ECS does wonders in marriage.

   c. In the meantime consider carefully the law of contentment found in Phil. 4:11-13, Heb. 13:5-6. Remain in status quo.

7. If, as a believer, you go against God's will (marry an unbeliever or a wrongly divorced person) remain in status quo (marriage), you are not to break it up. Then rebound over your sin and never look back, God has forgotten it, so should you.

8. You will have problems, natural repercussions of a mixed marriage, but your responsibility is to stay filled with the Holy Spirit and learn doctrine and use the principle of winning the unbelieving mate to the Lord.

Marriage: Doctrine of the Heart: Canticles
(Category 368)

Song of Solomon 8:6, "Set me as a seal upon thine heart . . ."

1. The word heart here refers to the right lobe (the norm and standard lobe). The meaning of the above Scripture--soul love precedes sex love. The man must be in her soul, before she surrenders to him, her body.

2. Once in her soul the right man never leaves! There is no way to get him out. Although every right woman has at times wanted to get rid of her right man.

3. Once a woman has her right man in the soul she will never be satisfied with another man. She may be unfaithful, but she will never be satisfied in that relationship.

4. But when she tries her frustration is described in Ezekiel 16. (Also Ezekiel 23).

5. In the heart (or right lobe) the right man fulfills the right woman soulishly, and he does it in at least four ways.

   a. He fulfills her norms and standards.

   b. He gives reality to her romantic dreams and imaginations. (If a young lady grows up with these romantic dreams and imaginations--then there is something wrong with her.) Several passages in Song of Solomon that indicates this.

   c. He provides fragrance of memory: Song of Solomon 1:13, 4:6.

   d. He provides soul-stimulation. All good sex comes from the soul. Soul stimulation therefore causes sex stimulation. Song of Solomon 8:5, "as a seal upon thine arm."

6. The man in fulfilling the woman in sex, becomes her strength--the seal (or the signet ring fulfills this principle).

7. Why all the above? "For love is strong as death". S.O.S. 8:6 Love here is a word for category 2 love--love toward your right woman. (Soul and sex love).

8. "Strong" in the above verse indicates the the right man's love is a fortification of the right woman's soul and body. Category two love is a two way street, one fortifies the other. Each protects the other, each satisfies the other, each fulfills the other.

9. " . . . as death": Love of right man right woman continues after death. There is still the fragrance of memories.

Marriage: Doctrine of Category 2 Love: To Wife
(Category 369)

1. Definitions:

   a. Category 1 love toward God: Deut. 6:5, Romans 8:35, 1 John 4:19

   b. Category 2 love toward member of the opposite sex--specifically RM-RW, one and only one. Song of Solomon 8:6-7 (Heb.)

   c. Category 3 love toward friends: John 15:13, 2 Samuel 1:26 in the case of Jonathon for David.

2. The strength or fortification of category 2 love in mentioned in our passage. Song of Solomon 8:6-7. It is said to be as strong as death and cannot be extinguished by the pressures of life.

3. However, death destroys pseudo-love as well as mental attitude sins. Eccl. 9:5-6.

4. The exclusiveness of category 2 love: It is extended to one person only, even one person of the opposite sex. All others are excluded. Therefore happiness in sex love is found in one person only. Proverbs 5:18-19 (your RM or RW). This excludes the following as a basis for sex happiness:

   a. Auto-erotism (masturbation)

   b. Homosexuality or lesbianism

   c. Promiscuity or adultery

   d. Beastiality

5. Category two love produces an exclusive and perfect happiness which is self-sustain-and PARTNER-sustaining. There is a sex happiness which cannot be known apart from category 2 love. Prov. 15:17 It does not depend upon anyone or anything else. This is the whole doctrinal basis for the honeymoon.

6. Therefore category 2 love is protective under two situations:

   a. In the absence of the loved one: Song of Solomon 1:13, 4:6. (Fragrance of memories)

   b. Also protective in the presence of the loved one: Song of Solomon 2:4.

7. Category 2 love illustrates relationship with the Lord:

   a. The right man is the Lord, the right woman in the OT is Israel: Jeremiah chapters 2 & 3, Jeremiah 2:2, 33, Ezek. 16

   b. In the NT the right woman is the Church: Eph. 5:23-33

8. Mental attitude sins attack all phases of true love. 1 John 5:18 Specifically jealousy is the greatest enemy of category 2 love: Song of Solomon 8:6.

9. Category 2 love is the provision of God's grace. No one ever earned or deserved the RM or the RW. Principle is found in Proverbs 18:22 (Heb.) "Whosoever finds the right woman, receives grace from the Lord."

10. Divine Institution No. 2 (marriage) was designed for category 2 love: Ephesians 5:25, 28, 33 and Col. 3:19.

11. God did a very great thing when He created RM & RW, He has also set aside time for them, Ecclesiastes 3:8 however certain functions in life can shorten, eliminate, destroy, mar this time.

    a. Not marrying the right man or right woman.

    b. Getting involved in premarital sex.

    c. Drug addiction including POT!

    d. Mental attitude sins; the worst jealousy--but there are others

12. Women must be taught by the right women to love the right man under category 2 love. Titus 2:4. This is one of the best reasons for some women to live to a ripe old age.

    Even when you find your right man, it doesn't mean you can respond, someone has to teach you. There is much more spadework to do on this point--but it is put down here because it exists.

Marriage: The Enemy of Category 2 Love: Jealousy
(Category 370)

Song of Solomon 8:6, " . . . jealousy is cruel as the grave."

1. So great was the sin of jealousy that a whole Levitical offering was used for it: Numbers 5:11-31. It is the only offering designed for one sin only--it is the jealousy offering. There are two types of jealousy in Numbers 5:

   a. Jealous, and you have a right to be--it is really going on:

   b. Jealous, and it is all in your imagination:

2. Jealousy is the basis for destruction of category 2 love. Song of Solomon 8:6.

3. The same jealousy which destroys category 2 love also destroys the function of the soul. Job 5:2, Prov. 14:30. That is why some people are psychotic, and why some people are neurotic. You can be mentally ill by perpetuating jealousy.

4. Jealousy, therefore, is the strongest of the mental attitude sins. Prov. 27:3-4 (Where it is compared with anger, and is stronger than anger (remember anger can do many horrible things).

5. ***Love precedes jealousy. Before you can be good and jealous in category 2, you have to have category 2 love. Eccl. 9:6 You are not jealous of those for whom you care nothing.

   a. You can be jealous of people you despise.

   b. And the one you love.

6. Jealousy motivates revenge: Prov. 6:34 Therefore jealousy takes real or apparent wrongs out of the Lord's hands and intrudes on the divine perogative of judgment. Romans 12:19, Deut. 32:35.

   The Bible says, "Vengeance is mine, I will repay", jealousy says, "forget it Lord, I'll take care of it."

7. Jealousy actually splits nations, like Israel. Ephraim was jealous of Judah . Isaiah 11:13

8. Jealousy was the motivator of the religious leaders who crucified Christ: Matt. 27:18, Mark 15:10, interesting?

9. Jealousy over authority the Joseph motivated his brothers to sell him into slavery. Acts 7:9 This is true today, anyone in authority always has X number of people who are jealous.

10. Negative volition manifests itself in jealousy. Romans 1:28-29

11. Jealousy rejects the teaching of Bible Doctrine. Acts 13:45, 17:5

12. False doctrine produces jealousy. 1 Tim. 6:4 Note: Jealousy and envy are synonmous with each other.

Marriage: Submission of the Wife (Subjection) (Category 371)

1. Subjection means recognition of authority.

2. Analogy: The Church is subject to Christ, so the wife is to be subject to her husband.

3. Principle stated: 1 Peter 3:1, "subjection" = upotasso

   a. Present tense: Lifetime attitude
   b. Middle voice: Woman benefits by loss of freedom in certain areas of her life.

4. Woman is called the weaker vessel (1 Peter 3:7) because she has an insatiable desire for her husband. Gen. 3:16

5. She is a responder and for this reason she CAN submit mentally and sexually to her husband.

6. This submission is mental rather than sexual. Sex is an expression of this submisssion, but first of all there must be the mental attitude.

7. Without a mental attitude love on the part of the wife, this submission cannot exist. However, she may go through the motions outwardly but this is not true submission, but slavery.

8. When there is no mental attitude love, her surrender becomes slavery.

9. If the woman is in love with her husband, she is happy to surrender her freedom to the one she loves.

10. When this surrender is properly carried out, her relationship with her right man is of such a nature that it brings out all the beauty and charm which can be found in a woman. True femininity surpasses all other types of beauty.

11. Part of a woman's inner beauty is her love for her husband.

12. This submission includes all of the responses of the woman to the man's love in every area of life. PRINCIPLE: Woman is a responder.

Marriage: Utilization of Time
(Category 372)

1. Greatest decision in life: Receiving Jesus Christ as Saviour.
   Another great decision: Whether or not to marry
   Another great decision: Marrying the right woman or man

2. Marriage is a good and wonderful thing, as long as you have the right person, the one the Lord has for you.

3. However, the Lord has certain responsibilities for some men and women whereby if they enter into marriage (even though it may be good in principle) it can be wrong for them because it cuts into their time of service in the plan of God. Example: Paul, 1 Cor. 9:5.

4. There is a tremendous need for concentrated service for the Lord. The real issue is utilization of time and quite obviously the single believer has more time to serve the Lord.

5. Principle in 1 Cor. 7:38 is that it is better for the utilization of time, when one is serving the Lord to be single rather than married.

6. In married status, time is consumed in:

   a. Making the marriage successful. MATE MUST NOT BE NEGLECTED!

   b. Training children. CHILDREN MUST NOT BE NEGLECTED!

   c. Providing physical needs of the family. BUSINESS MUST NOT BE NEGLECTED.

   d. Doing certain things in the Lord's service. LORD MUST NOT BE NEGLECTED.

7. The Bible commands responsibility in these areas.

8. All believers are in full time Christian service.

9. Both SINGLE AND MARRIED STATUS ARE RIGHT. Each case must be discerned on its own personal merits. Each person must decide for himself which is better for him. There are some people who will not use time properly unless they are married.

10. Celibacy is NOT holier than marriage. Under certain conditions it can be a satanic doctrine. 1 Timothy 4:3. Spirituality is the filling of the Holy Spirit in either single or married state.

11. There are times when we have to choose between using our time for a legitimate activity (weeping, rejoicing, business) or using our time for the Lord's service. 1 Cor. 7:30.

Marriage: Woman as a Responder: To Unbelieving Husband or to Husband minus Bible Doctrine or not Applying Bible Doctrine
(Category 373)

I. In the Marriage Relationship:

A. Biologically the woman is a responder, the man is the agressor.

B. The wife needs to understand the response area and respond to him at the proper time.

C. When he is irritable she should not respond (even though basically she is a responder) but she should treat him in grace (a mental attitude of love even though he doesn't earn or deserve it).

D. The wife, with a mental attitude of grace, realizes her husband is not fulfilling 51% of the responsibility of the marriage, and she carries on, carefully to stay in fellowship with the Lord.

E. This attitude of grace goes far in winning the unbelieving husband to the Lord. 1 Peter 3:1, 1 Cor. 7:16.

II. In her Role as a Mother:

A. First of all, the mother is a believer and her first responsibility is her relationship to the Lord - to stay in fellowship and to learn doctrine.

B. She is responsible to teach her children: Deut. 6:6-9.

1. Lips (the Gospel)
2. Life (the Christian way of life)

C. The Family is sanctified because she is a believer. 1 Cor. 7:14.

1. Family comes under the grace extended to her:

a. Blessing when she is in fellowship
b. Protection of her guardian angel.

2. At the rapture a child who has not reached the age of accountability and/or one who is not capable of making a decision, will go with the believing parent.

D. In extreme cases if the husband refuses to let her teach the children the Word, the authority of the Word supercedes the authority of the husband. At the same time she should treat him in mental attitude grace, a result of the filling of the Holy Spirit.

E. Her submission in other areas and her M.A. of grace in marriage, resulting from the F-HS will go far in winning an unbelieving husband.

Marriage: Woman's Capacity to Respond
(Category 374)

I. Although the woman is a responder, the capacity for the woman to respond is hindered by certain things. Ephesians 5:22, "wives unto your husbands": Omission of the verb gives emphasis. The principle here is of "submit" in v. 21.

II. Some women are never capable of reponding a man's love:

A. First type is the woman who lives by a system of tantrums - the woman who becomes hysterical or ill when things do not go her way. Tantrum Tilly is incapable of any response; has no capacity for love; is the neurotic type who merely wants someone to fan her ego; is motivated by the ego lust of her old sin nature.

B. Second type: The woman who is jealous and envious. These destroy inner beauty, true femininity. A woman who is a habitual gossip is generally a miserable, frustrated, jealous, disorientated person.

C. Third type: The frustrated domineering woman. They run their poor milquetoast husbands into the ground and-or try to run the church.

D. Fourth type: The woman who wants to retread or remold her husband to conform to her own idealistic pattern or image which she has established regarding husbands.

III. Other types of women having varying degrees of response:

A. Woman who married to get away from home.

B. Woman who marries for money and security.

C. Woman who marries because she assumes this is her last chance to get married.

D. Woman who gets married because all her friends are getting married.

E. Woman who marries because she is in love with love, not with the person, just the idea of love.

F. Woman who spends her lifetime trying to demonstrate her intellectual superiority because she happens to have married a man who is a little slower in thought, or maybe not as bright and therefore she assumes her superiority over the human race because she is married to such an individual. This woman has no capacity for love in marriage.

IV. The answer for the woman believer is the filling of the Holy Spirit and the daily function under GAP.

Mediator: Necessity For
(Category 375)

1. Adam and Eve (innocent) were in perfect environment in the garden IN FELLOWSHIP with God. Gen. 1:28-2:25. Jesus Christ was walking and talking with Adam and Eve.

Adam & Eve — fellowship with — God

2. Sin (negative volition) separated them from God. Gen. 3:7-8, 10. They lost fellowship with God, and died spiritually. They did not need to hide because (Isa. 59:2). "Your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid His face from you."

Adam & Eve | SIN | God

3. FIRST ACT OF LEGALISM: Sewed fig leaves together. Gen. 3:7. Man tried to help himself.

4. FIRST ACT OF GRACE: Gen. 3:8. God came to them.

5. Adam was created in the "image of God," Gen. 1:26; Gen. 5:1. His children were in his own likeness, after his image. Gen. 5:3.

6. The human race is "in Adam" (1 Cor. 15:22) IMPUTED SIN, spiritually dead and with an old sin nature (inherent sin) from which comes all personal sin.

7. This puts the Human Race behind the barrier. Romans 3:23. Note the above diagram.

8. Man could come to God if someone would stand in the middle--a Mediator (man in the middle).

9. Man is completely helpless to help himself. John 1:12. "But as many as received Him, to them GAVE HE power to become the sons of God . . ."

10. Decision in the past to send a mediator. 1 Peter 1:20.

11. Genesis 3:15 is the FIRST PROMISE OF SALVATION.

Mediator, Qualification and Provision
(Category 376)

1. It was necessary to have a mediator.

2. " . . . how should man be just (justified) with (before) God?" Job 9:2. Job recognized that there is a gap between man and God. Note Job 9:32, 33: "For He is not a man, as I am, that I should answer Him, and we should come together in judgment. Neither is there any daysman (go-between) betwixt us, that might lay his hand upon us both."

3. A MEDIATOR must be able to lay his hand on the heads of both. PRINCIPLE: You cannot lay your hand on the head of God (Anthropomorphism) unless you are God. You cannot lay your hand on the head of man unless you are man.

4. To SATISIFY GOD a mediator must be equal with God and be without sin.

5. TO HELP MAN a mediator must be man because he must take man's place and die in the place of the sinner.

6. The mediator was provided thru the incarnation.

   a. Gal. 4:4-5, " . . . when the fulness of time was come, God sent forth His son."

   b. 1 Tim. 2:5, "For there is one God, and one mediator between God and man, the MAN Christ Jesus."

7. Therefore He was qualified to:

   a. Propitiate (satisfy God): 1 John 2:2

   b. Reconcile man to God: Col. 1:21

8. Where once stood the barrier now stands the MEDIATOR, the only way and access to God. John 14:6. Jesus Christ is the only mediator.

9. Two areas required a mediator:

   a. Phase 1: Salvation: Reconciliation. Eph. 2:14-18. He removed the barrier between man and God.

   b. Phase 2: Time: (Christian way of life). He is the believers defense attorney when Satan accuses the believer. 1 John 2:1.

Mediator's Work
(Category 377)

1. Statement of mediatorship: Heb. 9:15, "For this cause (because) He is (keeps on being) the mediator (man in the middle) of the new testament (the new covenant)"

2. Definition of a covenant:

   A disposition made by one party (God the Son, the testator must die, v. 16) in favor of another (a member of the human race) on specified terms which must be acceded to: (Believe on the LJC and thou shalt be saved) Acts 16:31.

3. The first COVENANT was the Mosiac Law (mediated by angels - Acts 7:53) which was temporary. It was renewed year by year. God could pick up the option on the day of Atonement.

4. A PERMAMENT COVENANT must have:

   a. A testator who must die
   b. A mediator who must live

5. Basis of the New Covenant is:

   a. A Testator who dies and yet lives, and

   b. A Mediator who is equal with God and equal with man, the God-man.

6. The NEW COVENANT is permanent, eternal and sets aside the old covenant. Romans 10:4, Jesus Christ fulfilled the Mosiac Law.

7. Jesus Christ did not become Mediator until after His death, resurrection, ascension and was seated at the right hand of the Father: Alive in His humanity, eternal in His Deity. Heb. 9:15, "by means of death": A death having taken place.

8. Old Testament believers were saved by believing in Jesus Christ, Jesus Christ had not died yet, but in the mind of God it had already occurred; 1 Peter 1:20.

   Heb. 9:15, "under the first testament": Old Testament

9. The Mosiac Law could not provide salvation because it had no provision for efficacious sacrifice. Animals could not act as mediators - no resurrection.

10. The Mosiac Law was sanctified, ordained, authorized and started on the basis of animal sacrifices. v. 19-22.

11. Animal sacrifies, under the law, were shadows not the reality.

12. The NEW COVENANT is only valid because it is ratified by the blood of the REALITY rather than by the blood of shadows. v. 16 Blood speaks of the spiritual death of Jesus Christ.

13. Jesus Christ set up His will and testament in eternity past before man was created - before Adam existed. The will (testament) is not valid until death. However the will is made retroactive upon all who believed in the Old Testament. Hebrews 9:15.

14. Jesus Christ died to validate the New Covenant. Heb. 9:17. All the shadows of the Old Covenant (which told that Jesus Christ would die) also told them (OT believers) that they would be included when He did die.

15. Where once stood the barrier of sin now stands the Mediator - the only way and access to God. John 14:6, "I am the way, the truth and the life; no man cometh unto the Father but by me."

    1 Peter 2:24, "healed" man and God brought together.

16. Work of the mediator in Phase 2:

    a. Intercessor: Heb. 7:25, "seeing He ever liveth to make intercession for them"

    b. Advocate with the Father. 1 John 2:1

Mental Attitude, Introduction
(Category 378)

1. Mental attitude (relaxed) is one of the floors of the edification complex. It is produced by agape love.

2. The Christian life is a supernatural life (Romans 8:2) and cannot be lived apart from the F/HS and daily function of GAP. Romans 7:6b; Gal. 5:25, Eph. 5:18, Ephesians 3-5.

3. All changes must come from within, the HS originating the divine good, and the bad originating from the old sin nature.

4. The true character of the believer is determined by his mental attitude. Proverbs 23:7.

5. So far as God is concerned we start a change of mental attitude (repentance) towards the person of the Lord Jesus Christ, Acts 3:19, which results in regeneration (new birth). John 1:12.

6. At that moment, credited to our account, are Divine Operating Assets (DOA) to enable us to live (Eph. 5:8b) in a manner which is acceptable to the Lord, and to think (Eph. 4:23, Col. 3:2) those things (Divine viewpoint) which will bring honor to the name of the Lord Jesus Christ.

7. The choice to make use of these DOA is up to the believer. The choice of our walk depends upon our volition. The power of our walk depends upon the Holy Spirit and knowledge of doctrine being run through GAP.

8. The mind of Christ (divine viewpoint) is laid bare in the Bible and through study, knowledge and application of doctrine the believer is "transformed by the renewing of his mind" (Rom. 12:2) to prove and act in accordance with the Word of God.

9. Mental attitude in the Christian life is of utmost important and becomes the key to actions of believers.

10. Every thought in life is either one of divine viewpoint, or human viewpoint. Isa. 55:8-9.

11. The unbeliever usually thinks human viewpoint (1 Cor. 2:14) but occasionally lines up with divine viewpoint principles, such as nationalism; however his mind is blinded and he is not thinking divine viewpoint per se. 2 Cor. 4:4. The believer has a conflict of mental attitude. DVP vs. HVP.

12. Our mental attitude may not always be reflected in things we do or say, so that we can often fool others, but we can never fool God. Heb. 4:13, Prov. 21:2.

13. Victory in the CWL comes through applying the DVP. Defeat is through HVP.

14. The country's stability depends upon the mental attitude of its citizens.

Mental Attitude: Conscience Lobe & Perceptive Lobe (Category 379)

1. The conscience is located in the right lobe or the norm and standard lobe of the mind. Titus 1:15, " . . . the mind and the conscience." (in contrast to the left lobe--perceptive lobe)

2. The conscience convicts of evil or wrong doing. John 8:9.

3. The conscience establishes norms for both human and divine relationships. Acts 24:16.

4. The conscience functions on human thinking. Romans 2:15 (the unbeliever's conscience). But the believer's conscience functions on divine thinking. Romans 9:1 (as related to GAP).

5. The conscience is the basis for patriotism in the believer or unbeliever. Thus all patriotism comes from the right lobe. And it is the communists goal to destroy the right lobe--and thus promote animalism in a nation. Romans 13:5

6. False norms or standards in the conscience produce legalism. 1 Cor. 8:7.

7. The law of liberty and superceding laws are all related to the conscience. 1 Cor. 10:24-29. The more the believer functions under GAP the stronger his conscience becomes in utilizing these laws.

8. There is a happiness based on compliance with the conscience. (There are believers and unbelievers who are happy because what they do agrees with their conscience. Sometimes self-righteous people are happy through this. 2 Cor. 1:12

   Somebody has three norms in his life--and he lives up to them. So he says, why I'm as good as anybody in that church. This isn't the highest happiness, but people who live up to their own norms and standards have a degree of happiness.

   But when grace norms and standards (God's) are taught, and as they conflict with their norms and standards--then this type goes wild. Super-critical legalists.

9. Doctrine must be communicated on the basis of conscience. 2 Cor. 4:2. This is for pastors--otherwise communication results in intellectual dishonesty.

10. GAP builds up DVP norms in the conscience. 1 Timothy 1:5, 19, 3:9

11. The conscience can be destroyed with false doctrine and scar tissue. 1 Timothy 4:1-2

12. Conscience establishes norms for serving God. 2 Tim. 1:3, Heb.9:1

13. Conscience is the basis of enduring mal-treatment and misunderstanding without defending yourself. 1 Peter 2:19, 3:16

Mental Attitude: Thinking Divine Viewpoint
(Category 380)

This is NOT a warmed over version of the power of positive thinking. This is a Biblical technique for believers only. It has to do with fellowship based on meditation. It is "Looking unto Jesus, the author and finisher of our faith . . ." (Hebrews 12:2)

I. Occupation with Christ is for Believers Only

A. A believer is what he thinks

This opens the whole realm of mental attitudes. Proverbs 23:7, "For as he thinketh in his heart (mind) so is he."

B. A believer's physical beauty, success depends upon what he thinks.

1. Often you equate a tough person with a profane vocabulary.

2. Or someone with a strong physical stature.

BUT TOUGHNESS IS A MENTAL ATTITUDE. You are not beaten until you give up mentally. Illustrated by the G.I's in the Korean War, some of them had "give-up-itis". They had no desire to live--and if left alone for 24-48 hours they were dead.

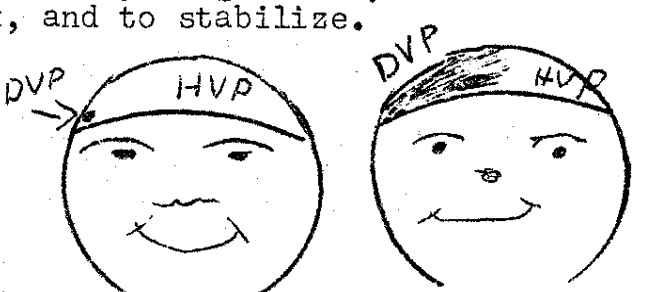
II. There are Two ways of Thinking: Divine Viewpoint & Human Viewpoint.

A. The Scripture: Isaiah 55:7-9

"For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the Lord." vs. 8

The believer today needs mental attitude divine-viewpoint. And the believer can't get it without Bible study. Bible study today is being pooh-hooed. And the Christian public has stopped studying. It is interesting that when Christians habitually attend Bible class, and the regular services where the Word is faithfully taught--they learn to concentrate, to think, and to stabilize.

B. The Illustration:



When an individual accepts Christ as Saviour how much divine viewpoint does he have ? Just gnosis mixed with mustard seed faith. That is mustard seed divine viewpoint (1st Illustration). But the mature believer has displaced human viewpoint with Bible doctrine (divine viewpoint) through GAP. Thus the mind is renewed, Romans 12:2.

C. The Principle: You need divine viewpoint to please God. [illegible] pleases God--no matter how cultured or intelligent the thinking might be.

1. The unsaved person has human viewpoint, he says, "I live for what I get." "The harder I work, the more I get."

2. The believer knows that he is saved by grace, and he keeps walking after slavation on a non-meritorous system called faith.

III. The Only Source of Divine Viewpoint is the Bible.

1 Cor. 2:16 tells us that the Bible is the mind of Christ. Therefore I must know the Word to know His mind, and apply it to realize His will. Religion (Christianity is NOT a religion) does not agree with the above statement.

IV. The Bible is a Critic of the Thoughts and Intents of the Inner Life.

Hebrews 4:12. "The Word of God is alive and powerful . . ." Our thinking must jibe with His thinking, we can't have peace without it.

V. Four Representative Areas of Mental Attitute.

A. Worldiness: Romans 12:2

Worldiness is not what you do--it is what you think. And the only answer to mental attitude worldiness is replacing human viewpoint (worldiness) with divine viewpoint. This is done through GAP. One can have a beautiful outward life (the Pharisees did) and yet be completely shot through human viewpoint. Colossians 3:2, "Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth".

B. Peace: Isaiah 26:3, Philippians 4:6-8

1. Peace is an inner mental attitude

2. Peace is NOT laying down arms and inviting some other foreign power to walk all over you.

3. This RMA enables one to really enjoy the Christian walk, regardless of outward people or circumstances.

4. What do you do under pressure? When you get upset? Use divine viewpoint mental attitude--think it, apply it. Illustrated by an athlete, relaxed, calm, enjoying the battle!

C. Giving: This is always backed by a basic mental attitude.

If you are not in fellowship as a believer (mental attitude not right) don't give until you use 1 John 1:9. Don't ever give because someone pressures you. The right mental attitude will express the fruit of joy. IN GIVING IT IS THE ATTITUDE THAT COUNTS!

D. Stability: This is a mental attitude--resulting from frame of reference in GAP.

1. Robert E. Lee: The prime illustration is General Robert E. Lee at the Battle of Gettysburg. Disaster report after disaster report came to his headquarters. But he remained calm, had stability under pressure. He kept on thinking.

2. Adults: Adults who are cry-babies, or have mental attitude fear are always unstable. Stability is the ability to think clearly under pressure, without interference from emotions.

3. David and Goliath: David in his mental attitude thought divine viewpoint. He knew that the "battle is the Lords." 1 Samuel 17:27. He had that relaxed mental attitude that comes from knowing Bible doctrine in the framework of GAP. Read the account.

Mental Attitude: Thought Life
(Category 381)
Exposition: 2 Cor. 10

All believers, more or less, have trouble with their thought life. A believer may be able to control overt activities and look fairly good outwardly--but be completely shot through with a perverted thought life.

A believer can be bothered greatly by the horrible things he thinks. Yet outwardly, he may appear to be a very wholesome character. 2 Cor. 10 answers many of the problems of a Christian's thought life.

10:1: Paul indicates that he is in fellowship, he has the mental attitude of meekness. This is the attitude of grace. Beginning with the word "who" Paul quotes his critics--the ones who maligned him. They were calling him "two-faced" or in plain language--a hypocrite.

10:2: Paul is saying, "I'm the same when away as present--and I can get tough in either element if I have too." Paul was criticized for being dogmatic. However, dogmatism based upon "thus saith the Lord" is legitimate and not carnality.

10:3: "For though we walk in the flesh (we're still on earth, we have a physical body) we do not war after (the sphere) of the flesh." (human body). The believer does not operate in the spiritual realm with the equipment furnished in physical birth.

10:4: "For the weapons of our warfare (spiritual) are not carnal (human viewpoint) but mighty through God (divine viewpoint) to

the pulling down of strongholds" (Fort Human Reason)

10:5: "Casting down imaginations (operation dreamworld) and every high thing that exalteth itself (mental attitude sins) against the knowledge of God (Divine viewpoint) and bringing into captivity EVERY THOUGHT to the obedience of Christ."

Illustration of dreamworld: Many believers attempt to use dreamworld to solve their problems, but dreamworld never solves any problems. Worry is one the fairy helpers in dreamworld, but it never solves any problems, NEVER!

For example, here is a believer who had had a rough day at the office Instead of utilizing DOA and GAP--placing his problems in the hands of the Lord, he sticks it out--even tho he has been out of fellowship, with a bad mental attitude (mental attitude sins) he makes it through the day.

SO he comes home, kicks off his shoes, and tries to relax and read the paper. But in reality, he is not reading the paper, his mind is reliving the day at work; the irritable boss, the nervous secretaries the griping customers, the raw deal he has working there.

Now remember, this bird is a believer. But yet, he tries to solve his problem by dreamworld. He mentally tells off the boss (and he in his mental picture sees the boss begging his forgiveness on his knees). He crucifies the secretary help until they are pleading with him for mercy. He tells off (all this is one mentally behind the paper he is reading) the griping customers.

AND he dreams himself into a plush office with $20,000 a year salary and all the trimming. But then, suddenly, his wife calls him to supper. Boom--he leaves dream world and comes to reality--AND IN THE MEANTIME HE HAS SOLVED ABSOLUTELY NOTHING!

Here is what the believer did: Problem? How solved? Attempt by human viewpoint to solve it. Problem. Still unsolved. Why? Because the believer himself is a problem. A problem cannot deal with a problem.

Here is what should have been done. The problem had to be approached from divine viewpoint. First he should have gotten into fellowship by 1 John 1:9, and then maintained his fellowship with promises, and application of doctrine from his frame of reference. He should already be conversant with the six stages of the Grace Apparatus for Perception. He should be daily erecting an edification complex of the soul.

This gives MENTAL STABILITY. The Lord controls the thought life by displacing HVP with DVP. How is that done? By daily intake of the Word through GAP (Ephesians 3-4-5). Moving from the job, withdrawing, any form of sublimination only causes more self-induced misery. A believer mastered by the details of life is never happy. No wonder believers are nervous wrecks--and candidates for mental disorders.

10:6: Then armed with Bible truth the believer is to challenge the human viewpoint of life--and this can only be done when "your obedience is fulfilled." This is when you are in fellowship and stabilizing by daily intake of Bible doctrine. The more complete your edification complex, the more complete the challenge to the charge.

10:7: "looking on things after the outward appearance" is of course human viewpoint. This is what Paul's critics are going.

NOW EVEN THOUGH PEOPLE CRITICIZE US, we can't stop and criticize back and fall apart. There are many believers who can't take criticism. They can't take the thought of being gossiped about. They withdraw, or fight back, or become bitter.

10:8: Paul mentions his critics again.

10:9: His critics said he wrote "lion-like letters of terror."

10:10: His critics say also that he is a poor public speaker, and has a very weak body. Rome in that day had two criteria in judging a public speaker. He had to be a fantastic orator and have a beautiful body. Paul had neither, and depended not upon that, but Bible doctrine.

10:11: Paul indicates that he was NOT depending upon a beautiful appearance, but he does indicate this--he was the same absent or present. Enemies of the gospel always try to belittle the believer filled with the Holy Spirit. Paul had an effective ministry--because he pleased God and not men.

10:12: This describes a mutual admiration society; patting on the back, obeying the proper ground rules, and making the right "clucking" noises to be "in" with the right crowd. This is a description of a bunch of carnal Christians out of fellowship and not taking in doctrine daily.

10:13: Paul says, "We boast in the Lord", and by the way he says, "our message can help EVEN you, if you'll heed it." " . . . but according to the measure of the rule," is another way of stating divine viewpoint. Five results of thinking DVP is found in these vs:

1. 10:13--Mentally, divine viewpoint is the standard.
2. 10:14--Divine viewpoint results in outreach of the Gospel.
3. 10:15--DV results in growth and development in the believer.
4. 10:16--DV results in increased missionary activity.
5. 10:17--DV results in glorifying Him in our thinking.

Mental Attitude: Four Characteristics of One Mind
1 Peter 3:8
(Category 382)

I. In everyone of these characteristics you have one basic ingredient: THINKING.

II. One Mind is thinking DIVINE VIEWPOINT.

III. The Four Characteristics from 1 Peter 3:8, "Finally, be ye all of one mind, having compassion one of another, love as brethren, be pitiful, be courteous."

A. Characteristic #1: "having compassion": Sympathizes Greek sumpathes = "suffering with". From which we get our English word sympathy.

Believer #1 thinks doctrine from his frame of reference in a pressure point.
Believer #2 is under pressure but short-circuits.
Believer #1 communicates doctrine to believer #2 by which he is helped to orient to suffering.

This connects with "one mind" because you are thinking for them because at this point they are unable to think.

B. Characteristic #2: "love as brethren" philadelphos. The Greek word phileo = rapport love, aldelphos is brother.

This rapport love is one of the floors of the edification complex. See the Category on Mental Attitudes--Category 2 love. This rapport is based on epignosis--and in its application there is compatibility between two believers, or more.

C. Characteristic #3: "pitiful" eusplagthnos
Greek eu = good; splagthnos = guts (emotions)

1. Success: Mind (thinking doctrine) over emotion
2. Failure: Emotion over mind (not thinking doctrine)

D. Characteristic #4: "courteous": Mental attitude of grace. Grace thinking leads to grace action.

A believer who has good manners, which comes from thinking. Humility of mind (free from pride) GRACIOUS. ORIENTATION TO GRACE. We are to treat people in GRACE.

IV. In all four characteristics the believer who has "one mind" thinks doctrine.

A. This one mind is the stability factor.

B. The believer is thinking doctrine, but not necessarily the same doctrine as another believer is thinking at the same time.

Mental Attitude: Commands to Victory of the Mental Attitude (Category 383)

1. A believer has either one of two attitudes: DVP or HVP.

2. The unbeliever usually thinks human viewpoint (1 Cor. 2:14) but he occasionally lines up with divine viewpoint principles, such as nationalism; however his mind is blinded and he is not thinking divine viewpoint per se. 2 Cor. 4:4. The believer has a conflict of mental attitude. Divine viewpoint vs. human viewpoint.

3. A new mental attitude is commanded to the believer, enjoined upon the believer. Col. 3:1,2; 2 Cor. 10:4-5; 1 Cor. 2:16.

4. The swaying between two viewpoints in the Christian life must be fought from within thru:

   a. Knowledge of doctrine: (Thru GAP) 2 Tim. 2:15
   b. Application of doctrine: Exhale Colossians 4:5
   c. Rebound when necessary: 1 John 1:9

5. We are commanded to let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus. Phil. 2:5. We are to have divine viewpoint (The Word) in our minds.

6. In order to know the mind of Christ (1 Cor. 2:16) we need to be mind (Bible) readers.

7. All believers are in full time Christian service (2 Cor. 5:20) and God expects all believers to reflect His viewpoint (DV) on earth.

8. Looking at life from DVP (God's viewpoint) will give the believer victory, peace, power and stability. Thus he needs to get GAP.

9. All changes in the Christian life come through the cycling of Bible doctrine (gnosis to epignosis) in our internal apparatus and thus renewing the mind (displacing human viewpoint.

10. Weapons at our command in this warfare are given in Eph. 6:10 and following.

11. More commands:

    1 Peter 1:13, Gird up the loins of your MIND.
    1 Peter 4:1, Be armed with the same MIND as the LJC.
    Heb. 12:3; Lest ye be weary and faint in your MINDS.
    Eph. 4:32, Mental attitude forgiveness
    Phil. 2:3-4, Mental attitude consideration of others.

12. All these commands require the F/HS with daily function of GAP (six stages) and the nine aspects of the apparatus--Canon of Scripture, local church and so on.

13. Bible Doctrine thus used develops the mind fantastically.

Mental Attitude: Forgiveness (Grace)
(Category 384)

1. God treats the believer in grace: Phase 1, 2, 3.

2. Grace means that we do not earn or deserve this treatment.

3. God treats you in grace because of HIS CHARACTER, because of who and what He is.

4. The most important MENTAL ATTITUDE of one believer toward another is that of GRACE. Matt. 18:23-28.

5. GRACE THINKING (Doctrine) leads to grace action.

6. When someone wrongs you, you should forgive as Christ forgave. Col. 3:13, Luke 23:34.

   a. Put it in the Lord's hands. Psalm 55:22, 1 Peter 5:7
   b. No retaliation. Romans 12:9
   c. Forgive as Christ forgave. Col. 3:13
   d. Forget it. Phil. 3:13

7. When another believer hates you, etc., you keep on thinking doctrine, i. e. top circle, bottom circle, GAP. They have the same position in Christ that you have. They are subject to the same divine discipline that you are and God can do His own discipling. He does NOT NEED YOUR HELP. If you interfere you are subject to compound triple divine discipline. Matt. 7:1-3.

8. You treat people in grace because of who and what you are (You are what you think, Prov. 23:7) and you are thinking GRACE.

9. You don't treat them on the basis of their actions but you treat them on the basis of what YOU think, not on the basis of what THEY think.

10. You are in control of the situation when you think GRACE (DVP), but you are out of control when you get down on the mental attitude sin level - their level.

Mental Attitude: Results
(Category 385)

1. The correct mental attitude in the Christian life is having divine viewpoint, which will give the believer VICTORY, PEACE, POWER AND STABILITY. Phil. 2:5, 2 Tim. 1:7. It will also erect an edification structure in the soul.

2. All changes come from the inside. The Holy Spirit is the powerhouse in the Christian life and the POWER is released through the filling of the Holy Spirit (control).

3. A believer can experience perfect inner PEACE even in the midst of difficulties and suffering. Phil. 4:7. PEACE IS what you think. Isaiah 26:3.

4. Divine viewpoint (knowledge of doctrine, function of GAP, F-HS) brings STABILITY. People get discouraged because they are thinking human viewpoint. Flipping back and forth between human viewpoint and divine viewpoint makes a teeter-totter Christian.

5. Unstable Christians need cleansing and renewing of their minds. They need scar tissue removed by a crash program in the area taking BD in through GAP. James 1:8, 1 John 1:9, James 4:8, Eph. 4:23.

6. Stability of mind and character is a mental attitude. Isa. 26: 3-4, Phil. 4:7, 2 Thess. 2:9.

7. Victory in the Christian life is obtained thru the filling of the Holy Spirit, not while under the control of the old sin nature. Romans 8:8.

8. The most important mental attitude of one believer toward another is that of Grace.

9. Love is a mental attitude. Deut. 6:5, 11:13

10. Worldiness is a mental attitude. Romans 12:2, Col. 3:2.

11. Mental attitude divine viewpoint, when developed, produces confidence based on the absolutes. 2 Cor. 5:1, 6, 8 compare.

12. New mental attitude in the Christian life. 2 Tim. 1:7. "For God hath not given us the spirit of fear (MA hysteria); but of power and of love, and of a SOUND MIND. This new MA requires BD for development.

Mental Attitude, Victory over Thoughts
(Category 385)

1. You are what you think. Prov. 23:7

2. The minds of all believers are capable of look at life from the Divine Viewpoint. 2 Tim. 1:7.

3. God has designed the Christian way of life so that you can think and think properly.

4. An important function of the Christian way of life is thinking divine viewpoint.

5. Pressure situations requires exhale of doctrine from the frame of reference.

6. Thinking requires vocabulary.

7. Human vocabulary is not capable of operating under spiritual pressure. Divine vocabulary is capable.

8. The controlling of what you think is based on study under the daily function of GAP, getting a large vocabulary.

9. The vocabulary of sin of adultery, for example, is very limited. The vocabulary of true love based on right man, right womean is very developed and large.

10. Another example: Teenagers with doctrine, when under pressure while under a wave of libido, are able to think doctrine because they have vocabulary (doctrine) stored in the human spirit and cycled into their frame of reference. He realizes that there is a right person for me, and I want no scars of promiscuity to ruin it for me.

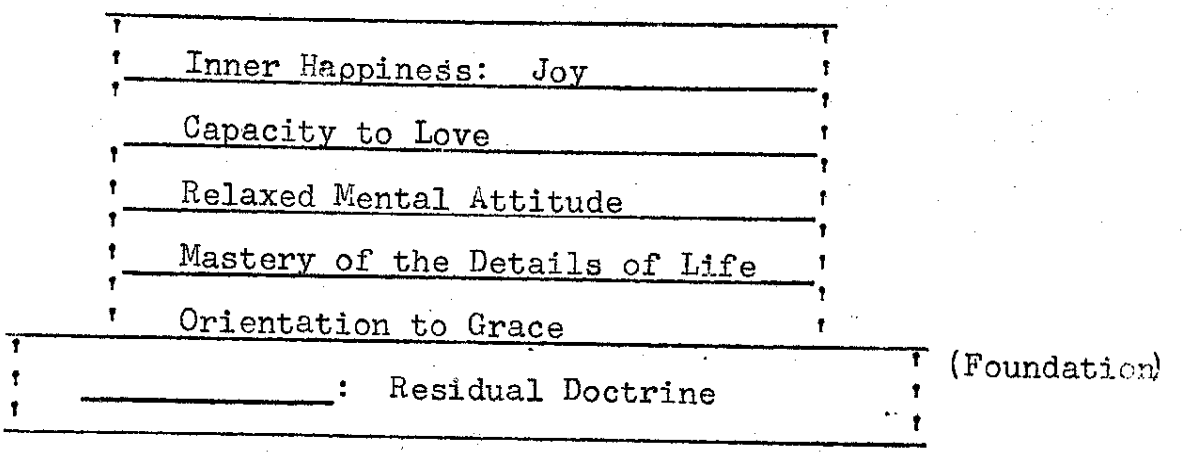
11. The concept of soul breathing (inhale-exhale), taking in BD and applying it--enables the thought system to stabilize.

12. When this is done daily, it erects an edification structure in your soul. This structure is built upon residual doctrine. Knowledge goes into the human spirit, is digested, and becomes residual knowledge, usuable, full knowledge.

Knowledge = γνωσις then becomes full knowledge ἐπιγνωσις

Upon full knowledge is this structure erected:

SEE: INFORMATION ON THE EDIFICATION COMPLEX OF THE SOUL.



Military Responsibility: Doctrine of the Morality of Warfare
(Category 386)

Based on Booklet: War: Moral or Immoral, by R. B. Thieme Jr. as well as tapes.

Two types of war are mentioned at some length in the Bible. Justified war is the type of war which defends true liberty, the rights and privileges of a nation's citizens, which protects its property, its women, and its children. War is justified when a foreign power boasts it will bury or enslave us (as Russian has boasted). There is also non-justified war--the agressive move to dominate the world, or to reduce the various nations to slavery and horror. This is pictured today by the Communistic powers--Russia and China. They bring nothing but slavery, havoc, and rape in their military machine. The United States is justified in defending its country by maintaining a strong militia, also a system of law enforcement. The following points spell out the doctrine of the morality of war.

1. War will always exist in history in spite of man's efforts for peace. Matt. 24:6-7, Mark 13:7, Luke 21:9. The exception is yet future, the millennial reign of Christ. Isa. 2:4, Micah 4:3. THEREFORE war is a bona fide fact of history. Eccl. 3:8 says, " . . . there is a time for war and a time for peace."

2. But war is for adults: Nu. 1:3, 26:2

   The adults--had to be 20 or over. No one should go to war until he is 20. He may train before that time--but front line duty is better left to the well-trained and prepared.

   Exception: Deut. 24:5

   a. A newly married man does not make a good soldier--why? He cannot concentrate in battle, he is afraid of being killed.

   b. A newly married man does not make a good business man--why? No sense of responsibility in business.

   c. His sole responsibility: (one year) He is to "cheer up" his wife. It means to make his wife constantly happy for one year . . . to set the pace for the right man-right woman the rest of their lives.

   However war can be the basis for discovering the right woman. Deut. 21:10-14

   This describes a woman captive who may be the right woman--she is very beautiful--and wife material. There must be a months cooling off period. Her beautiful hair is shaved off, her "tiger claws" are pared to the quick, she takes off her lovely garments and puts on sack-cloth, and cries for a month for her relatives lost in battle. She looks her worst. If both survive the cooling off period, they marry. If not the deal is off.

3. The objective of justified war is the annilihation of the enemy--and thus his decisive defeat--THIS BRINGS PEACE. Joshua 11:23, 14:15, Psalm 46:8-11.

a. Annilihation has to do with the enemy personally--killing him.
b. Decisive defeat has to do with strategy, tactics, and logistics. Joshua 11:23, 14:15, Psalm 46:8-11.
c. In Joshua they had peace in the land because they slaughtered the enemy (Canaanites, as ordered by God) thus decisively defeating him.
d. Psalm 46:8-11 passage

v. 9: "He maketh wars to cease . . ." How? Three ways--

(1) "He (God) breaketh the bow"
(2) "and cutteth the spear in sunder"
(3) "he burneth the chariot in the fire"

These are idioms which speaks of the annihilation of the enemy--the enemy being ripe for judgment by God. Thus peace.

v. 10: This refers historically to the Lord stepping into the Assyrian camp after the morning report and 185,000 first line soldiers finding themselves corpses. 2 Kings 19:35, 2 Chron. 32:21-22.

v. 11: Literally says, "The LORD of armies is with us, the God of Jacob is our war department."

4. JUSTIFIED WARFARE is from God. 1 Chron. 5:19-22

In this passage the Jews are fighting the Arabs: HOW UNUSUAL!

Note 1 Chron. 5:22, "For there fell down many slain, because the war was of God." There is no such thing as a Conscientious Objector in Biblical Thinking."

5. There comes a time when it is sinful not to go to war. Numbers 32:5ff. A Christian should soon learn that he has a military obligation. This preparation begins with a mental attitude.

a. 32:5: Gad and Reuben were cowboys and had found this ranch-land on the East side of Jordan. But the land WEST of Jordan had not been conquered.

b. 32:6: Moses says, "Hey, that's not fair--for ten tribes to fight and you sit over there and ranch."

c. 32:7: You'll discourage the others from going to war. It is amazing today how the Gypsy, hippy, yippie thinking has influenced those who should know better.

d. 32:8: You are acting just like those cowards at Kadesh Barnea. Nu. 13-14. You may have the chance to take a second trip in the wilderness. Note verse 15.

e. 32:14: It is time to go to war, it is sinful not to go to war. Reuben and Gad are dragging their feet.

f. 32:17-19: But they change their mind and go to war.

g. 32:20-22: It is Biblical to fight . . . and you will not be guilty if you go.

h. 32:23: But what if you do not go to war? "But if ye will not do so, behold ye have sinned against the Lord: and be sure your sin will find you out." This is specifically for cowards or the stupid who will not go to war.

i. 32:31-32: They got the point. The battle is on the west side of Jordan, not on the east--but by going to battle they are fighting for their country--DO YOU GET THE POINT!?

You don't wait until the enemy hits the beach--you go out and hit them. Like we should be doing in VIET NAM. The US was justified in WW 2 by fighting in different geographical areas.

6. However, going to war demands training: You can't pick up a weapon; put on an uniform--you have to be trained. Numbers 31:3-5, Judges 3:2, Luke 14:31.

a. 31:3: " . . . arm some of yourselves unto the war": This means to prepare and use arms for warfare.

b. 31:3: " . . . let them go" (Let them which are trained go)

c. 31:5: " . . . 12,000 armed for war": They started out with a small, well trained and prepared army. This by the way is the way to start out a powerful Army.

d. Judges 3:2: This context states that when Israel came out of Egypt they knew nothing about war. But God commanded that Israel have a military organization in each generation for stability. Not only were they to adhere to the Word of God--but part of that was armaments.

"Only that the generations (note plural) of the children of Israel might know (know what?) to teach them war (in every generation) at the least such as before knew nothing thereof (when they came out of Egypt). Judges 3:2

e. Luke 14:31: If you are going to train men for war you need a department of defense. There must be professional war planning. 10,000 well-trained men can face 20,000 every time. (Look up the verse).

7. But warfare demands a mental attitude of MORAL COURAGE, and BATTLE COURAGE. Deut. 20:1-20

a. Moral courage: Deut. 20:1-12

(1) 20:1: Introduction: The Jewish strength was always in infantry footmen, others had a lot of horses--. Regardless of what the enemy has "be not afraid of them."

(2) 20:2-4: The priests teach Bible Doctrine. These are the chaplains.

The great key to military victory is spiritual victory. They encourage them with Bible Doctrine. READ IT!

(3) 20:5-9: These are General officers

a. v. 5: Dedication of a house: This fellow got called up just when he was about to move into his house. He has mental attitude sins--and as such will have no moral or battle courage. He will be unstable in battle.

b. v. 6: Started a new business: Double-minded man--can't concentrate, is thinking about his business.

c. v. 7: A new wife--he's got that beautiful doll on his mind. Therefore he is unstable. Soldiers must be fearless--if get killed--so what!

d. v. 8: Getting rid of the cowards: After every man had been trained--then they determine what they are to do. JUST BEFORE THEY GO INTO BATTLE THEY MUST MAKE A DECISION IN REGARD TO THEIR MENTAL ATTITUDE.

Cowards--have a wrong influence.

b. Battle Courage: 20:13-20

(1) Under some circumstances only the males are annilihated. 20:13-15.

(2) Under other circumstances every living thing is to be destroyed. v. 16-18. That means women, children, animals--everything. WHY? Verse 18--READ IT!

8. The Believer in War: Bible Doctrine is his life: Psalm 27:3-4 Note the context--the emphasis on Bible doctrine.

   a. 27:3: "Though a host (a large army) should encamp against me, my heart shall not fear: through war should rise against me, in this will I be confident."

   b. 27:4: " . . . that I may dwell in the house of the Lord . . . to enquire in his temple." The temple refers to the portrayal of Jesus Christ through Bible doctrine.

9. It is important that military leaders have divine viewpoint minus the mental attitude sins: Proverbs 24:1-10.

THE DOCTRINE OF LEADERSHIP (under point 9 on Doctrine of War)

1. There must be self discipline leading to group discipline. Prov. 24:1-2 ".....neither desire to be with them."

   a. Self-discipline means teachability

   b. Self-discipline means concentration

      (1) Some of you are catting around when you should be studying. For some of you your social life means more to you than any other thing--YOU ARE HERD BOUND. Consequently your social life may and can destroy you.

      (2) You can end up a pot-head
      You can end up a hippy
      You can end up sexually scarred
      A figet type--can't concentrate--

2. A leader must have an R.M.A. (a relaxed mental attitude). This is the outgrowth of self-discipline. Prov. 24:3, "Through wisdom . . ." This is Bible doctrine--epignosis--the stability of the Word when believed.

3. A leader must have character and a sense of responsibility: Prov. 24:3, " . . . is an house builded": This is the edification complex--the inner building that God builds in the life through GAP (Grace Apparatus for Perception).

4. A leader must have a professional understanding and knowledge of the Word and his job. Prov. 24:3-4, " . . . by understanding".

5. You must be loyal to those under you (or under your command) and recognize the authority of those who are senior to you. Prov. 24:5, "A wise man . . ." This is a fellow who recognizes the chain of command.

   a. Your boss has the right to chew you out--to take up the slop, the slime, they are there to shape you up, to keep you on your toes

b. Your job will never be an utopia. There is a certain amount of suffering on any job--and personality clashes--and misunderstandings. MANY NEVER SUCCEED, because they can't keep a job.

6. A leader must have common sense and good judgment. Some are born with it--some acquire it through Bible Doctrine. But common sense is a must ingredient. Prov. 24:5-6. Note verse 6, "For by wise counsel . . ."

a. Any idiot can snap a rear axle on an automobile.
b. But one must be able to "think" to have common sense.

7. A good leader must be objective: This is being fair in spite of personal prejudice. Prov. 24:7, "Wisdom is too high for a fool . . ." To have objectivity one must have "wisdom": Wisdom is a working knowledge of Bible Doctrine.

a. Personality clashes are not important.
b. Emotional decisions are always subjective.
c. Find out the facts--and make your decision on that basis.
d. But grudge holding--dislike--etc. always fuzzes up the decision.

8. A good leader must understand human nature--you must recognize the rights they possess, and recognize their privacy. Proverbs 24:8-9. In these verses it tells about human nature--in a derogative way--a leader must recognize the basic makeup of the human heart. Thus as a leader you will have no illusions about human depravity.

a. You should understand how to calm down some hot-headed character.

b. You should understand why a woman cries.

c. You should recognize why at times you are irritable, moody, demanding, just generally stinky!

9. A good leader must have executive ability--then he must learn much of it: One of the greatest virtues--IS TO STICK WITH IT IN THE FACE OF PRESSURE, UNTIL something freezes over. Prov. 24:10, "If thou faint in the day of adversity, thy strength is small."

He must also be able to:

a. Organize:

Categorize: Divide into subjects
Synthesize: Putting the subjects together
Systematize: And arranging them into a system

b. Delegate authority and trust the person to carry out the situation.

10. A good leader must have health: Prov. 24:13, "My son, eat thou honey . . ." (Honey in the ancient world was a health-food, and was good for endurance and nervous stability).

a. At the point of their greatness--men of God had good health. They very seldom were depressed. (Like Robert E. Lee).

b. Never give up: (endurance) Napoleon worked 18 hours a day--often slept only three hours a night. However at the Battle of Waterloo he was bushed and sent or put in a General who was not up to it--and it turned out to be Napoleon's Waterloo.

c. Nervous stability: The ability to relax, to remain calm etc.

11. Personal Presence: Luke 2:40, 52

a. Dress
b. Carriage (how you carry yourself)
c. Poise
d. Courtesy (manners)
e. A flair: Interesting characteristics that sets one apart, usually a flair that men will love and women will hate.

Back to Point 10 on the Doctrine of the Morality of War

10. God prepares believers for TRAINING: 2 Sam. 22:35, Psalm 18:34, Psalm 144:1

a. Psalm 18:34, "He teacheth my hands to war, so that a bow of steel is broken by mine arms."

b. Psalm 144:1, "Blessed be the Lord my strength, which teacheth my hands to war, and my fingers to fight."

Note here how God enters into these verses. "a bow of steel . . ." is speaking of decisive defeat and annihilation of the enemy. These two verses are dedicated to conscientious objectors--who enjoy the freedom of a land where men have died to keep it free.

11. Believers are protected in war by God. Job 5:20

It says, "In famine (economic depression) he shall redeem thee from death: and in war from the power of the sword."

Of course if it is God's will for a believer to die in battle, it is a privilege. But if the person is to live through the darkest battle he will!

Job 38:21-23: Gist: If I (God) can organize a snowflake, a snowstorm, a hail, a hail-storm--then I can protect you against the day of battle and war.

12. There are always those who plot warfare: Psalm 55:20-23, 68:30, 120:6-7, 140:1-2. There are always nations who are plotting the destruction of a nation to get its spoils--regardless of the peace program that is going on at the same time.

Study closely the Psalm 55 passage. This is the description of a traitor. A very sorry type of character. The woods are full of this type today.

13. Peace Propaganda is used as a weapon of warfare: Micah 3:5-7

a. 3:5: "false prophets": These would be like the liberal, unsaved clergyman today.

"people err": Makes them wander--no leadership, no BD.

"bite with their teeth and cry": Means to be childish, or unrealistic, lack of common sense. COMMON SENSE TODAY tells us that there are MONSTERS (October 1970) that are wanting to destroy us.

"peace": They are crying peace--and the communists cry peace. And they prepare unjust warfare at the same time.

b. 3:6: "Therefore night shall be unto you": When a nation listens to a bunch of liberal theologians, they are blinded as per the gospel, 2 Cor. 4:3-4, they are blinded as to the danger of war--liberalism means non-preparedness.

Blinded by peace propaganda. The blind leading the blind.

c. 3:7: "all cover their lips, for there is no answer of God."

These blind leaders will reach the end of themselves. They have NO ANSWER, NOTHING AT ALL! One of the greatest come-ons and invitations to the communists is the peace platitudes coming from many of the pulpits of America. These pulpits advocate disarmament, world peace movements, and other programs for peace. This peace movement is apart from the Word of God. And all the time the commies are planning to destroy us.

14. War is used as a national discipline: Judges 5:8, 2 Chr. 16:9, Isaiah 16:3-26. Jer. 4:19-31.

a. Judges 5:8: In one verse we have three things:

1. The Jews went apostate: "chose new gods"
2. For discipline they found themselves in a war "war in the gates".
3. They were caught unprepared: Disarmament, " . . . was there a shield or spear seen . . ."

b. 2 Chron. 16:9: The Lord is on continuous patrol. The

" . . . Herein thou hast done foolishly: therefore from henceforth thou shalt have wars."

They didn't get the Word and apply it--therefore war is brought on for disciplinary purposes.

c. Isaiah 3:16-26 (Look up and study, don't be so lazy).

1. This is what apostacy does to women.

2. This is what apostacy does to men--national discipline.

d. Jeremiah 4:19: These are the tamest passages--Jeremiah 6 & following in the Hebrew is much worse, as is Ezekiel 16, & 23.

1. v. 19: "my bowels, my bowels": The very worst type of pain.

"my heart": Describes mental anguish--my mind screams.

"I can not hold my stability": The enemy is coming.

2. v. 20: Description of defeat

3. v. 22: "For my people is foolish (are fools), they have not known me, they are sottish children (senseless children) . . . because they have no BD . . . they are smart to do evil, but to produce divine good, they have no basis for doing it."

4. v. 23: Describes the angelic whingding--with this human mess (comarative).

5. v. 29: Cowards

6. v. 30: Picture of a woman helpless--when an invading army comes in. "And you spoiled ones--what will you do (no protection) tho you cloth yourself with crimson, tho you enlarge your eyes thru eyeshadow, crimson, diamonds, makeup--IN VAIN . . . they may rape you--but they will kill you."

7. 4:31: This is the scream of a woman being raped--that's what happens to the woman when you have a nation of yippies, hippies, drug addicts, liberal ministers, draft card burners, yellow-bellied cowards--and what happens, women suffer!

You now have four of the tamest passages on point 14--war is used for national discipline.

15. War is used as personal discipline: Job 10:1, 17
The past point was on a national scale, this is on a personal scale.

This passage describes a believer with soul-fainting--MAS are disciplined in war. Job 10:1

Job 10:17, " . . . changes (in history) which bring war". These changes in history come through mental attitude sins, through apostacy.

16. The last point deals with the Misnomer of War: Matt. 26:52

"Then said Jesus unto him (Peter) put up again thy sword into his place: for all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword."

This verse is often used by pacific clergymen to turn Christian young men into cowards.

a. This is a reference to crime, to murder. It is a capital punishment verse.

b. Peter was not a soldier--therefore he had no business with a sword.

c. In other words, if you murder someone (as Peter was trying to do) then capital punishment demands your life. THIS IS NOT A MILITARY VERSE.

These are 16 points on why no person in the USA has the right to be a CO on moral grounds, or religious grounds. The Supreme Court pronounced a new policy--that if a person for moral reasons was against war, he could be excluded from military service.

This is contrary to the Word of God
to the Constitution of the US
and is catering to cowards--
and is another traitorous step in the destruction of our country.

A Post-Script:

Sometimes you hear some knucklehead who is stupid about the Word of God say, "The God of the OT was a God of war, but the God of the New is the God of peace." We must love one another and be peaceful.

Or someone may say, "A lot of those verses on the doctrine of war were taken out of the OT, I'm living in the New Testament." Here are some verses.

1. 2 Tim. 3:16, "All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness . . ."

This refers to the OT as well as the new. The war passages in the Old Testament are just as Scriptural as John 3:16.

2. Matthew 4:4 " . . . man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God."

This verse includes the whole counsel of God's Word--and that includes the Old Testament.

3. 1 Corinthians 10:6, "Now these things were our examples . . ."

4. 1 Corinthians 10:11, "Now all these things happened unto them for examples: and they are written for our admonition upon whom the ends of the world are come."

These passages relate OT passages to the New Testament. And the passages in the OT on war are just as true, just as binding, as any NT passage.

Relax and study on!

Military Quotes: R. B. Thieme Jr. (Category 387)

Military Responsibility: "Our responsibility as believers in the Lord Jesus Christ includes military activity; this business "is the war moral immoral?" is not our problem. Our problem is to defend and to protect and to fight for our country abroad as well as at home, and the only immorality involved in the war as far as we are concerned is our failure to end the war by the use of nuclear weapons, the proper use of SAC. We don't need to talk to those birds; what we need is to bomb them out of existence and then, after that, other countries will, at the right time, be willing to talk. And every day that we fail to use nuclear weapons, we are sacrificing some of our finest men - those who went to war and didn't burn their draft cards. Those who say they will not fight because it's an immoral war are simply cowards at heart, with no sense of responsibility and no appreciation for their country."

Military authority: "When in the military, you recognize the authority of those in your organization. You recognize the authority of everyone that is ranked over you. These authorities are set up by God, under the Divine Institutions. These are set up in order to perpetuate the human race, in order to make it possible for Christ to be preached; for the Gospel to be proclaimed . . therefore there must be on your part as a believer, a recognition of authority whenever and wherever it is encountered.

Millennium Characteristics
(Category 388)

I. No Religion: Rev. 20:1-3

II. Great Spirituality (Eschatics) for believers in physical bodies at the 2nd Advent.

III. Israel is Restored as a Nation of Believers: (Baptism of Fire removes unbelievers). Isa. 35:3-10; 11:10-16; 65:17-25, Zech. 8:20-23.

IV. Ushering in of True Internationalism:

Results:

A. Universal Peace: Isaiah 2:2-4

v. 2: "last days": Millennium
"mountain": Government
"top of the mountain": Jerusalem, Headquarters of the world.

v. 4: "he": Jesus Christ
"shall judge": in the millennium
"will rebuke": at 2nd Advent - Baptism of fire
"and": in the millennium. Hosea 2:18, Micah 4:3.

B. Universal Prosperity: Business will go as normal, except there will be a perfect balance of supply and demand. Psalm 72:1-7, 16.

v. 1: "king's son": The Lord Jesus Christ
v. 2: "he": The Lord Jesus Christ
"judgment": justice
v. 6: Agricultural economy
v. 7, 16: Universal prosperity

C. Universal Knowledge of God: Isa. 11:1-10

v. 1: "rod": 2nd Advent of Jesus Christ
"stem of Jesse": Israel today
v. 2: 1st Advent
v. 3: Will judge on the basis of omniscience
v. 4: "rod of His mouth": 2nd Advent and millennial rule
v. 8: "asp": cobra
"cockatrice": spitting cobra
v. 9: Maximum knowledge of doctrine. Apparently learning reaches maximum - an absolute. Salvation is the same faith in Christ.

All worship will be centered in Jerusalem in the Millennial temple. Ezekiel 40-48. Churches only in the church age. Apparently people will route through Jerusalem from the ends of the world. Zech. 14:16-19 explains how Gentiles will visit Jerusalem. Jews will show them around and will explain meaning of sacrifices. It will be a means of evangelism as well - even as it was in the past.

D. Perfect World Government under Jesus Christ: Zech. 14:9, all functions of government will be headed up in Jesus Christ.

V. Radical Change in Nature:

A. Creation will be loosened from the bondage of sin. Story of redemption of nature in Romans 8:19-22.

B. Animals will lose their ferocity. Isa. 11:6-9; 65:25.

C. Plant life will abound - weather will be perfect. Isa. 35:1, 2, 7.

VI. Justice Available to All: Isa. 11:3-5; Psalm 72:12-14

Murder will be rare because of the restraint in the millennium. (It will be the unbeliever who is murdered). The Lord Jesus Christ will be present. He is Omniscient, Visible. Believers in resurrection bodies and angels will be observing.

VII. Life is Extended and Capital Punishment is only used to Enforce the Law: Isa. 65:20

VIII. Unbelievers are Removed from the Earth at the beginning of the Millennium so we start with believers only - in physical bodies, who will procreate and repopulate the earth. Ezekiel 20, Matt. 25, Baptism of Fire.

There will be a population explosion because of perfect environment and no death.

The earth can handle a large population on the earth during the millennium.

However, during the Church Age, the earth cannot handle a vast population of people. Consequently history has proved there are three ways that population explosions are cut down:

A. Famine (wide-spread starvation).

B. Pestilence (disease--wide-spread plagues)

C. War (millions die through this manner)

Millennium: Judgments at the End of the Millennium (Category 389)

I. Judgment of Satan: Rev. 20:10

A. "devil": means accuser--Satan is a lawyer who pleaded "not guilty" for hi self and fallen angels at the first fall of Satan.

B. God sentenced Satan and Fallen Angels. Matt. 25:41

C. Sentence is carried out at the end of the millennium. They are cast into the Lake of Fire. Rev. 20:10.

D. He is the third occupant of the Lake of Fire. Rev. 13

1st: 1st Beast (Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire)
2nd: 2nd Beast (Dictator of the Holy Land during TRIB.)

II. Judgment of fallen angels apparently is at this time also. The sentence is the same. Matt. 25:41.

III. Judgment of believers: Great White Throne, Rev. 20:11-15

IV. Judgment of the Universe (Destruction): Rev. 20:11, 2 Peter 3

A. Rev. 20:11, "from whose face the earth and heaven fled away".

B. Destruction is prophesied in 2 Peter 3:10-12.

C. Apparently everything goes into a gaseous form and will be used to enlarge the Lake of Fire to accommodate all the fallen angels and unbelievers. Rev. 21:1

V. There are believers in physical bodies on earth during these judgments and they will come thru unscathed. Faithfulness of God. This is the faithfulness of God.

VI. They will receive resurrection bodies before eternity is ushered in.

MILLENNIUM Contrast: Compared with Eternity & the New Jerusalem
(Category 390)

Part 1: Millennium	Eternity
1. Sun will shine.	1. No sun - supernatural light. Rev. 21:11, 23, 22:5
2. Food and survival dependent on laws of precipitation & evaporation.	2. No precipitation or evaporation Rev. 21:3, "no more sea" and no sun.
3. Believers & Unbelievers. Zech. 14:11, 12:6	3. Only believers. Rev. 21:24, 27, 22:14.
4. Numerous trees for food and healing. Ezek. 47:7-12	4. Only one source of food and healing. Tree of life. Rev. 22:2. "Healing of nations" is perfect operation of DI #4, nationalism.

Part 2: Millennial Jerusalem	Eternal Jerusalem Rev. 21:9 - 22:5
1. No Walls. Zech. 2:4-5 (Wall of fire).	1. Walls: Rev. 21:12
2. Has Temple. Ezek. 40-48	2. No temple: Rev. 21:22
3. Blood Sacrifices. Ezek. 40-48, then check out Ezek. 47:1 and following. This is comparable to the Eucharist, looking back instead of forward, as Israel did before the cross. (Shadow Christology).	3. No sacrifices
4. Living water comes out of the temple. Ezek. 47:1	4. Water of life out of the throne. Rev. 22:1

Millennium: Kingdom Issues
(Category 391)

I. Character of God:

A. God keeps His word.

B. He is coming back BEFORE the millennium to reign to keep His Word. +R and Immutability.

C. Promised David he would have a son who would reign forever. Jesus Christ is that Son and He will reign forever.

II. Unconditional Covenants (other side of the coin).

A. All will be fulfilled at the 2nd Advent of Christ.

B. All have eternal life clauses.

III. Dispersion of Israel: (5th cycle)

A. Dispersion today does not abrogate the covenants.

B. Egyptian bondage didn't - the Exodus took place

C. Babylon captivity didn't abrogate the covenants.

D. 70 AD disbursion didn't knock out the covenants. Israel is disbursed today--but not lost. God knows where they are. There are no lost tribes. (Post and amill says that Israel will never be Israel again, but the church--wrong interpretation.)

IV. Does the Nation Israel have a Future?

Yes, but only the regenerate of Israel. Romans 9:6, "For they (racial) are not all (regenerate) Israel, which are of (racial) Israel."

V. Advent Issue:

Jesus Christ (Son of David) will actually come back to earth.

VI. Millennial Issue:

A. The Kingdom is declared to be Eternal

B. At the 2nd Advent Jesus Christ returns to earth and establishes His Kingdom. He takes out the first 1,000 years to demonstrate to man that perfect environment does not solve man's problems.

THE KINGDOM will go on forever.

Millennium: Panorama of the Kingdom
(Category 392)

I. Promised:

Christ reigning forever is promised in the Davidic Covenant. 2 Samuel 7:8-17; Psalm 89:20-37.

II. Prophesied:

Isaiah 2:1-5, 11, 12, 35
Chapters 11, 35, 62, 65, 66

III. Presented:

Matthew, Mark, Luke. The King is on the earth and is presented as the King and He presents Himself as the King.

IV. Postponed:

The Epistles of the New Testament (Church Age) is the postponement of the reign of Christ on the earth.

V. Proclaimed:

A. By the Angelic Herald: Rev. 10

B. By Human Heralds (Moses & Elijah) Rev. 11:1-4

VI. Plagiarized:

Satan, in his man, the Jewish dictator of the land of Palestine tries to get a jump on the true Kingdom of Christ. He (the 2nd Antichrist) of Rev. 13:11-18 palms himself off as the false Messiah. Don't confuse the Anti-christ of the revived Roman Empire and this man (the false prophet).

VII. Perfected:

Christ reigns - Rev. 11:15-19

Millennium: Revolt at the End of Millennium (Category 393)

1. Cause of the greatest revolt in history is: (Rev. 20:8-9)
   a. Satan, who is very persuasive, is loosed from the bottomless pit.
   b. Perfect environment without regeneration is not the answer.
   c. There are still unsaved people at the end of the millennium.

2. Satan has a certain elaspe of time to persuade unbelievers to follow him, in opposition to the perfect environment created by Christ.

3. In the garden of Eden there was a rejection of perfect environment. At the end of the millennium we have a revolt against PE.

4. PRINCIPLE: Perfect environment is not the solution to man's problems.

5. There is a fantastic number of unbelievers at the end of the millennium who follow Satan into revolt against perfect environment. Rev. 20:8, " . . . number of whom is as the sands of sea".

6. "God and Magog": This is the title for this mass of revolting people.
   a. Ezek. 38-39 speaks of Gog OF Magog (Hebrew Word)
      Rev. 20 speaks of Gog AND Magog (Greek Word)
   b. Ezek: Reference to a geographical location, premill.
      Rev.: Reference to personnel, after the millennium.
   c. The king of the North is said to be God of Magog (Ezek) and he is said to be in a certain place - geographical.
   d. Gog OF Magog was killed by the sword - one person.
      Gog AND Magog (mass of people) killed by fire.

7. NO WEAPONS during the millennium. However it seems that weapons are used at this time because of the word "battle". Verse 8, "gather them unto Battle": Indicates that upon Stan's loosing weapons are quickly constructed--he is loosed after the 1000 years are over. Rev. 20:7. There are no weapons in the 1000 yrs.

8. This revolt will be concentrated in Jerusalem. v. 9, "beloved city" indicating Jerusalem. This indicates that at that time there will be a strong anti-semitism.

9. This revolt is Satan's final effort. If God cannot keep His word to Israel, then Satan can still win, if God fails to keep on promise.

10. Fire causes the physical death of these unbelievers that Satan has gathered together. That finishes physical death. This is the last enemy to be put under the feet of Jesus Christ. 1 Cor. 15:24-28. Already Satan has been judged, demons bumped, inoperative demons given the victorious proclamation. Now physical death has had it. (522)

Millennium: Satan's Second Advent
(Millennium)
(Category 394)

1. Satan is released (goes on parole) after 1,000 years of perfect environment is accomplished, after everyone has had a chance to be saved and some have turned it down.

2. Comparison:

   a. 1st coming of Satan: In the garden. Genesis 3. Found man in perfect environment, spoiled it.

   b. 2nd coming of Satan: The end of the millennium. Rev. 20:7. Found man in perfect environment, and spoiled it.

3. While Satan always promises perfect environment as the solution to man's problems, he always manages to destroy it with his system based on the lies. Satan always promises more than he can perform.

4. The devil promotes the idea that man, by his own efforts, can introduce a golden age. Methods used:

   a. By improving his environment

   b. By eliminating the weak and unfit

   c. By promotion of education, reformation, and better social understanding.

5. Both the termination of the 1,000 years and the release of Satan are under the control of God.

6. The purpose of God in letting Satan loose is to demonstrate (at the end of time, as was demonstrated at the beginning of time) that the answer to man's problems is regeneration. Satan cannot accomplish this.

7. There is no such thing as collective solution to man's problems apart from the personal solution to man's problems - regeneration.

Mind
(Category 395)

For an up to date study on this check out the categories on the soul, on the relationship of the perceptive lobe to the norm and standard lobe in the mentality, check out the doctrine of GAP, and the edification complex of the soul. Study verses like Titus 1:15.

Miracles and Scientific Laws
(Category 396)

1. God is eternal; creation is temporal.

2. Therefore; space, matter, time, energy, immaterial, material, are all subordinate to God.

3. God providentially controls every part of His creation at every place at every time.

4. God is not bound by any "higher law" than Himself. Most offensive to higher thought--is this factor.

5. Science can only generalize about how He works in some of His creation, in some place, some of the time.

6. Therefore, any "scientific law" talks about what God did at certain places, certain times, NOT; how He must act at all times.

7. Therefore, any scientific law does not bind God and is not a law for God, but only a normal expression of man for usual conditions.

8. Therefore if God reveals that He acted in some way at some place, at some time, contrary to how He usually acts, this supercedes any scientific law.

9. Therefore; although science can be trusted in most cases, and should be, whenever we have outside authoritative revelation from God, such as Gen. 1, we are bound to trust the Word over normal beliefs.

10. Therefore, we must know the Word and subordinate every area of knowledge to it. This is what is mean by: "By means of faith we are perceiving with the mind the ages to have been completely created and finished by means of the vocal command of God so that the things being seen and discerned haven't come into existence out of the things which are visible." Heb. 11:13

Characteristics of a Missionary
(Category 397)

1. Every missionary must be a believer and should also understand how he was saved. (Exclusion of human good - Galatians 3:26).

2. He must be indoctrinated or must know doctrine by study. Doctrine is the basis for true motivation in missions. He must understand that all believers are in full time Christian service and that God has led him on way. He must have enough doctrine (at least a developing edification complex) to apply it from his frame of reference (See GAP) in unusual circumstances.

3. He must be oriented to the plan of God. Phase 1: Salvation, Phase 2: Oriented to GAP, going on to maturity.

4. He must be guided - this comes from the Word. God's will for all unbelievers to believer, 2 Peter 3:9. A principle of divine guidance: God guides to a geographical area where there is positive volition.

5. They must be separated to study, and from the details of life. There is also separation from emotional believers (2 Cor. 6:11-12, Romans 16:17-18) and cult-apostacy movements. A missionary who claims to be evangelistic (evangelical) and is in the tongues movement is in horrible apostacy and blasphemy.

6. He must be acclimated to his field. He must be adjusted to all circumstances; i.e., weather, customs, language, etc. Must train his converts to go out and witness to their own people on the indigenous witnessing principle.

7. The Holy Spirit is responsible for appointing spiritual gifts. The Holy Spirit is responsible for the placement of personnel in the mission field. No matter how sensational, personable, how much human ability man may have, if a person is not appointed by the Holy Spirit for the mission field, and he goes into this field, he is in the wrong slot. Missionaries are chosen by the Holy Spirit, not the church.

8. Missionaries must be taken from the leadership gifts (evangelism, pastor-teacher) and they must qualify on the basis of maximum amount of doctrine known.

9. There must be a stable local church for effective missionary work. Must have the prayer support as well as the financial support of the local church to function properly in the mission field.

"Minister" As Used in New Testament
(Category 398)

I. The word "minister" is used 3 ways in Scripture:

A. Those in authority in a national entity. (Believer or unbeliever). Example: A judge: Romans 13:4. Ministering a divine institution.

B. Every believer is a minister. 2 Cor. 3:6; 4:1; 6:4

C. Pastor of a local church (specialized operation): Eph. 3:7, 6:21, Col. 1:23, 4:7.

II. The context will determine which one is intended:

III. Within "C" several words are used (for a pastor of a local church):

A. Elder: Presbuteros: A term that denotes rank, the pastor may be young--but he is the ranking officer in that church--final authority in the local church (based on the Word). Hebrews 13:7, 17, Titus 1:5.

B. Bishop: Episkopos. An overseer. This refers to the function of a pastor. Speaking of a shepherd looking after his flock.

C. Pastors: Poimeen: Shepherds: Eph. 4:11

See Ephesian 4 tapes.

Morality: Doctrine of Morality
(Category 399)

1. Morality is absolutely essential for the orderly function of the human race, under the Divine Institutions:

   a. DI #1: Volition (Habits remove volition--improper habits)
   b. DI #2: Marriage (See categories on marriage)
   c. DI #3: Family (See categories on family--responsibility of parents.)
   d. DI #4: Nationalism (Government) Nation is believer's responsibility--see category.

2. Therefore morality is for the ENTIRE HUMAN RACE for it makes the divine institutions function smoothly. For example unbelievers are to be legally married to unbelievers--they are not to live as animals. It must be understood that morality DOES NOT SAVE!

3. Thus Christianity is NOT A MORALITY, but a living, dynamic relationship with God the Father, In Christ the Son.

4. Morality, even in believers, has no dynamics in itself. It cannot save, or manufacture spirituality. Dynamics is found in the filling of the Holy Spirit and the edification complex.

5. Morality must be distinguished from human good.

   a. Morality is bona fide, stems from respect for authority, for keeping the laws of the land and of the family unit, respects property, the rights of others, and the privacy of others.

   b. Human good is religion; asceticism, trying to pull on up by his own bootstraps, going through ritual to gain brownie-points with God. It is phony, hypocritical, critical, socialistic, snoopy--all these covered with a coat of being nice, sweet, patronizing and so on. Human good proceeding out of the strong area of the old sin nature--is never acceptable to God.

6. In the unbeliever morality and human good can overlap.

7. But in the believer the Holy Spirit (in control) produces divine good. In this case morality is divine good because of the production of the Holy Spirit. What makes the difference (in the believer) between morality and human good is the source. (Old sin nature, or the filling of the Holy Spirit.

8. The human good that comes from the old sin nature is inconsistent and often becomes a facade for the hidden sins which are the worst sins, and sins of the tongues.

9. Parents should teach children what morality is and the principles regarding the divine institutions.

Mosiac Law: Doctrine of
(Category 400)

I. There are 3 sections or Codes: #1, #2, #3.

A. Codex 1: Moral code (Commandments of Exodus 20, Deut. 5) shows that I am a sinner and need a Saviour). Refers to the ten basic commandments and ramifications of them.

B. Codex 2: Spiritual code (Ordinances). These pictured a complete Christology (Feast Days; Levitical Offerings, Modus Operandi of the Priesthood, organization and material of the Tabernacle. They present the Saviour.) Ex. 24-31

C. Codex 3: Social code (Judgments) of dietary laws, marriage, tithing, etc. It presents a way of life for the Jews, norms for stability in any national entity. Ex. 21-33.

II. The Mosiac Law was given to Israel only: Ex. 19:3, Lev. 26:46; Rom. 3:19, 9:4.

III. The Mosiac Law was not given to Gentiles: Deut. 4:8, Rom. 2:12-14.

IV. The Christian is not under the Mosiac Law: Acts 15:5, 24; Gal. 2:19, Rom. 6:14.

V. Christians operate under a higher law - Law of Spirituality - Romans 8:2-4, 10:4, Gal. 5:18-23.

VI. The present purpose of the Mosiac Law is to convict of sin by the Word; Holy Spirit only convicts of one sin--the sin of unbelief. Romans 3:20, 1 Tim. 1:9-10, Gal. 3:23-24.

VII. Limitations of the Mosiac Law:

A. The Law cannot save: (No justification): Gal. 2:16, 3:10.

B. The Law cannot give life: Gal. 3:21

C. The Law cannot provide the Holy Spirit: Gal. 3:2

Mosiac Law: Harmony Between the Mosiac Law and Justification by Faith
(Category 401)

I. There is a fourfold harmony between the Mosiac Law as it operated in the previous dispensation and justification by faith:

A. BOTH exclude Boasting:

1. You can't look at the Mosiac Law and boast.

2. You can't look at the cross and boast.

B. BOTH affirm the universal suffering of man:

1. The Mosiac Law affirms, by Codex #1, the perfect standard.

2. The Cross affirms the sinfulness of man: Jesus Christ bore our sins.

C. BOTH Reveal Character:

1. The Mosiac Law reveals the true character of man: a sinner.

2. Justification by faith reveals the true character of God (gracious).

D. BOTH have the same source: God

It is impossible for God not to be co-ordinated at any point, so both the law and justification by faith (having the same source) fulfill their proper yet different functions.

II. Conclusion:

A. The Mosiac Law proves that man is a sinner.

B. Justification by faith provides the solution.

Moses: Five Objections
(Category 402)

Introduction: Moses' life is divided into three 40 year periods./

1st 40 years: 39 years of unbelief--one year of salvation.
2nd 40 years: In Midian (Arabia) for 40 years with the woolies--obscurity).
3rd 40 years: We are between the 2nd and 3rd 40 year period.

The Burning Bush: "You've graduated--Moses--it is time to go to work. You have been prepared." Principle: Moses knew what he was to do for 40 years--but he had to prepare--with the woolies in obscurity.

Moses fights five rounds with God at the burning bush:

I. Round #1: First objection--WHO AM I? Ex. 3:11-12

"Yes, who are you Moses???"

A. Moses is not grace-oriented: He has illusions about himself. What are His illusions?

1. He has the illustion of false humility: "I really can't do it Lord."

2. He has an illusion about his own capabilities--HE THINKS YOU PERFORM GOD'S WILL ON THE BASIS OF HUMAN ABILITY!

3. He has an illusion about the WISDOM OF GOD--God has made a mistake. MOSES IS QUESTIONING THE WISDOM OF GOD.

B. Moses is not essence-oriented:

1. He does not understand who and what God is! God is ALL KNOWING!

2. MOSES does not have an edification complex at this moment that is functioning. He has got the info--the gnosis--but He has to have--some categorization--exercise of faith--to cement this edification complex in.

3. GOD PROMISES HIS PERSONAL PRESENCE WITH HIM. Ex. 3:12

II. Round #2: Second objection--I DON'T HAVE A MESSAGE: Ex. 3:13-22. "And I can't go to those Jews without a message".

"Why I can't tell someone how to be saved! YOU CAN TOO, Get with it." "Why I can't give someone the cross and two circles: YOU CAN TOO, GET WITH IT." 40 years of training--and MOSES doesn't even have a message. 40 years of daily Bible class--and he don't know nuthin!

God answers him two-fold:

A. Doctrine: 3:14-16

1. The Essence of God: v. 14, "I AM THAT I AM" doubled means PERFECT EXISTENCE. YOU START WITH THE ESSENCE OF GOD. His character if first. Some of you couldn't give the essence box if your life depended upon it. (and you've heard it 100 times)

   IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE JEWS UNDERSTAND THAT deliverance depends upon who and what God is not who and what they are.

   The Jews are helpless in slavery, and God will deliver them in grace. God says, "I AM POWERFUL AND I CAN DO SOMETHING ABOUT IT."

2. The Covenants of God: Abraham Covenant: v. 15-16

   "I am the God of . . ." I protect and watch out over my own.

   a. He promised land: The land of Canaan
   b. He promised seed: Descendents to enjoy that land
   c. He promised blessing: For obedience

3, The Promises of God: 3:17

   "And I have said, I will bring you up"

   "Now look Moses, you have a MESSAGE, all the way from the person of God to the promise of God." A promise is no stronger than the person who makes it, the person makes the promise secure or worthless. But here there is a perfect promise backed up with a perfect person (God)

4. Time orientation of God: 3:18ff (Dispensations)

   a. "In the world ye shall have tribulation, be of good cheer, I have overcome the world." John 16:33.

   b. "There hath no temptation taken you . . . 1 Cor. 10:13.

III. Round #3: Third objection: THEY WON'T LEAN ON ME . . . I HAVE NO VISIBLE AUTHORITY: Exodus 4:1-9

Christianity is a life of faith--DO YOU HAVE ANY VISIBLE AUTHORITY TODAY in the realm of Christianity?? DO YOU?? Yes, the Bible! THIS IS VISIBLE!

A. Moses said: They will not believe me (Amen, in Heb. means lean on me). Moses felt he would be a failure, he thot he had no credentials--and after 80 years of living he had understood the fickleness of people.

B. God said: 4:2, "What is that in thine hand": BIBLE CLASS, WHAT DO YOU HAVE IN YOUR HAND? WHAT?

1. The rod becomes a snake (cobra)--Moses runs. The snake represents Egypt. Moses is running from Egypt in his mental attitude.

2. But--MOSES FOLLOWS INSTRUCTIONS: Principle: You must know, what the Bible says--and be able to put it into practice. YOU MUST BE ABLE TO FOLLOW INSTRUCTIONS.

3. The 2nd Credential: Leprosy

a. Moses, I am going to protect you--leprosy--he knew when his hand had had it--it was hopeless--he knew he was dying.

b. I'LL TAKE YOU THRU EVERY HOPELESS SITUATION IN LIFE!

4. The 3rd sign: Water into blood. God uses pollution for judgment.

IV. Round #4: Fourth objection: Exodus 4:10-12 (By the way Moses is skating on thinner and thinner ice). I AM NOT ELOQUENT!

A. Moses Big Lie: Romans 4:10

A wonderful study in the Old Testament is the study of Moses's speeches. They are among the most eloquent in the Bible. He had tremendous public speaking ability.

1. Turn to Acts 7:22, " . . . mighty in words": A very accomplished public speaker.

2. Two phrases: 4:10

a. Slow of speech: "I'm a slow thinker"

b. Slow of tongues: "Therefore I talk slowly"

THIS IS A LIE.

B. God's Reply: 4:11-12

1. "Who made man's mouth . . . I will be your mouth"

2. Moses is actually chastized--because Aaron becomes the spokesman. 4:14-18.

V. Round #5: Fifth objection: 5:13 LORD SEND SOMEONE ELSE

This is where Moses gets KO'ed. And the Lord gets angry. AND MOSES GETS DISCIPLINED. This dialognue has to come to an end, and GOD RAISES HIS VOICE.

A. Discipline No. 1: Moses is disciplined by letting Aaron be the public speaker, and Aaron can't speak for soul apples.

B. Discipline No. 2: Part of the discipline was eternal in nature.

1. Moses was from the tribe of Levi: Out of which came the priesthood.

2. Of all the families in Levi--out of which came the priesthood? The high-priesthood. Aaron, not Moses. Aaron's family will be the priesthood--and even in the millennium they will be a priestly family.

Moses had a wife, but he never had any surviving progeny that led in the spiritual life of Israel. He had two sons, but his wife walked out on him, never goes to Egypt with him, one attempt at reconciliation fails, Jethro tries to reconcile them. She takes the two sons of Moses and walks out of his life--and Moses never sees his two sons again.

Later on he married an Ethopian, if they had any children, they didn't survive.

But Aaron's family survived because he was willing to do God's will. There was no dialognue on Aaron's part.

SO MOSES, WHO WAS ONE OF THE GREATEST BELIEVER OF ALL TIMES, HAD NO PROGENY.

3. Actually, then, a curse is pronounced here, a discipline.

Aaron will do the talking, you do the thinking. TOO BAD.

You don't want to do something for the Lord. ALRIGHT, THATS OK, YOU'LL BE BYPASSED.

So, if you drag your feet--you pay a price.

Moses: "As Moses Lifted Up the Serpent in the Wilderness", Nu. 21:8-9 (Category 403)

1. This involved the second wilderness generation. As discipline for Israel, the Lord sent fiery serpents among the people. They were bitten and many died.

2. The people came to Moses, confessing their sin and requested that Moses pray for them which he did.

3. Moses was instructed to make a fiery (fiery means forged--how it was made) serpent and set it upon a pole.

4. Promise given:

   "Everyone that is bitten when he looketh (faith) upon it, shall live (salvation)". Numbers 21:8

   Venom of the shake represented sin.

5. This promise was fulfilled.

6. The serpent on the pole was symbolic of salvation; Christ on the cross.

7. Christ was made sin for us--He bore our sin.

8. Sin originated through negative volition with the serpent (Satan).

9. Moses made a serpent of brass, brass representing judgment.

10. The pole represented the cross. 1 Peter 2:24, "tree" = wood.

11. Sin (venom of serpent) was judged (brass) on the cross (pole).

12. Christ was judged in our place (2 deaths).

    John 3:14, "As Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up."

Murder: Doctrine of
(Category 404)

1. The devil was a murderer from the beginning. John 8:44. This means that the devil after the fall was guilty of Mental Attitude Sins--murder always involves two other mental attitude sins, jealousy and anger.

2. The devil motivated Cain (an unbeliever) to murder his brother Abel (a believer). 1 John 3:12. Act done with a sacrifical knife.

3. Hatred, a mental attitude sin, was the motivation for the first murder in the human race. Genesis 4:5.

4. Murder is prohibited in the Word of God. Ex. 20:13. "Thou shalt not murder." Deut. 5:17, Matt. 5:21.

5. Capital punishment is the penalty for murder according to Numbers 35:30-31. And this is true from the time of Genesis 9:6. Also check Romans 13:4.

6. Murder is on of the 7 worst sins, and the only one in the overt category. Prov. 6:16-19.

7. Both anger and hatred are considered to be mental murder. Matt. 5:21-22, 1 John 3:12.

8. A person can be a believer and commit murder. 1 Peter 4:15.

9. However, every murderer does not have eternal life abiding in him. 1 John 3:15.

10. 1st degree murder (premediated) involves mental attitude sins. Romans 1:29, Gal. 5:21. Envy (or jealousy) precedes murder.

11. Murder is a part of crime. The approach of any nation to the 5th cycle of discipline also has a rise in crime of this type. Jer. 4:31.

Mystery: Doctrine of
(Category 405)

I. Three passages which deal with the principle of the Greek word: Mystery. These define the word:

A. Eph. 3:1-6; 7-11

B. Col. 1:25-27

C. Romans 16:25-26

II. Etymology: A Greek word; in 5th century BC a group of fraternities existed which had a sacred doctrine. Those on the outside did not know the doctrine. However, once inside and initiated into the organizations, the mysteries became known. Thus, the word, mystery.

III. Eight mysteries are referred to in the New Testament: (These are Doctrines known by those on the inside; i.e. believers)

A. Of Body: Eph. 3:1-11

B. Of Bride: Eph. 5:28-32

C. Of Church: Rev. 1:20

D. Of Indwelling Christ: Col. 1:26-27

E. Of Spirituality/Godliness: 1 Tim. 3:16

F. Of Translation (Rapture) of the Church: 1 Cor. 15:51-57

G. Of Blindness of Israel: Rom. 11:25

H. Of Kingdom of Heaven: Matt. 13
(Jesus is talking to Jews in the Age of Israel)

IV. Every time one finds the word "mystery" in the N. T., it pertains to some fact of the Church Age. Basically the doctrine of the mystery is the doctrine of the dispensation of the Church.

V. The reason the doctrine is called "mystery" is because these truths were not revealed in the OT. Nowhere in the OT is there Church Age truth. The OT was a time of detailed info with regard to many things: Death of Jesus Christ, burial, resurrection, ascension, session.

VI. At the right hand of the Father - Rom. 16:25-26, Eph. 3:1-6, Col. 1:25-26. Then, when chronologically, you would start the Church Age, you skip right over that area into the Tribulation--to 2nd Advent, and the millennial reign. Therefore, any information pertinent to the Church Age, was not revealed.

Nation: Believer's Responsibility to His Country: Acts 5:29
(Category 406)

1. See the Category on Military: Doctrine of War.
2. Mental Attitude DOCTRINE is the first prerequisite for doing the will of God in any situation.
3. This is patriotic because Divine blessing is involved.
4. This principle has direct application to the believer behind the iron curtain (War for Independence etc.).
5. The governmental body does not have the authority to dictate doctrine or modus operandi to the church. Our Supreme Court, etc., does not have the right to dictate DOCTRINE to me. Divine Institution #4 is for the purpose to give us freedom to reject or accept. (DI #1)
6. There must be separation between church and state.
7. Individuals must have freedom of choice in matters pertaining to religion. Religious organizations must have the right to form their own doctrine.
8. The early church had Bible doctrine, had the right to believe in the Lord Jesus Christ, and the right to adhere to their own doctrine.
9. The Sanhedrin was acting as a governing body of Judah, and as a governing body and political organization it had no right to dictate to the conscience of the early church. As a religious organization, under Satan, it was motivated to stamp out the church.
10. Government opposition to Christianity continues to exist today; believer must stand on Bible Doctrine and resist this opposition.
11. Obedience to God means obedience to His Word. When the Government violates DI #4, the believer must go against this government.
12. Thus when God's will and man's will are in opposition to each other, God's will takes precedence.

Nation: Believer's Responsibility to His Country: Rom. 13:1-7
(Category 407)

1. Divine Institution #4 is nationalism, personally, it is the country in which you live.

2. Believers have the responsibility of obedience to the laws of the land, criminal and civil code.

3. Example of civil code: Driver's license, dog license, building permits and so on. Not keeping pigs in your back yard in the city. This infringes upon the rights of other individuals.

4. The exception is where the common law of the land is superceded by activities of a dictatorship whereby the common law is no longer in effect but the will or the desire of ONE INDIVIDUAL or ONE ORGANIZATION within that national entity rules - this is justified basis for revolt.

   Example: The Revolutionary War (Actually the War for Independence, 1776), at which time, the common law of England was superceded by that which was contrary to all law (that the original colonies had). Civil war was justified basis for revolt on the basis of state's rights. That was revolution that was Biblical. Most is not. (For example the mobs, the revolts, the fires being set in S. California, the bombing of buildings--all of this is being done by traitors. (October 1970).

5. Believers have the responsibility of participation in civic affairs. We are not to withdraw from civic affairs because we are believers, but our EMPHASIS is witnessing for Christ and giving out doctrine. The ONLY SOLUTION TO man's problems is:

   a. Regeneration
   b. Knowledge of BD and the F-HS translated by faith into epignosis--full usuable knowledge.

6. Believers have the responsibility of paying taxes. Rom. 13:6-7

7. Believers have the responsibility of participation in the defense of their country. Romans 13:1-7, Joshua 6:21, 8:24.

Nation: Nationalism
(Category 408)

1. Nationalism is a number of national entities, with each government functioning over a segment of the Human Race.

2. Nationalism is the means of protecting and perpetuating the human race; in order that no segment of the human race will gain so much power so as to destroy the rest of the human race and inevitably destroy themselves.

3. Nationalism is a Divine Institution (#4). God divided the human race (1) geographically, (2) racially and (3) linguistically.

4. Internationalism puts other nations under slavery - violating Divine Institution #1 - Volition.

5. Any form of Internationalism (more than one nation under one head) gives Satanic control.

6. Satan is frustrated by a large number of national entities, with definite boundaries.

7. PRINCIPLE: The national entity (DI #4) is an human barrier against the supremacy of evil in the world controlled by Satan (Prince and Power of the air).

8. World peace depends upon national entities being in the balance of power.

9. When nationalism is in operation, world-wide evangelism is possible.

10. When you have internationalism in control, you have heathenism (negative volition at the point of God consciousness). Gen. 11:1-9.

11. The existence of nations in the millennium (Rev. 20:3) is a memorial to the Grace of God in preserving the human race so that they would have a choice.

12. Nationalism does not sanction personal revenge. Vengeance is mine saith the Lord. Romans 12:19.

    There are two means of handling opposition to us:

    a. Commit it to the Lord (our spiritual operation)

    b. Commit it to the law of our land (our nationalist operation)

13. A major passage condemning internationalism, and backing nationalism is found in Genesis 10, 11:1-9.

Nation: Plotting the Destruction of a Nation
(Category 409)

See the Category under Military on the Doctrine of War. The 12th and 13th point will be restated and amplified.

12. There are always those who are plotting war. It is a part of the doctrine of the old sin nature. James 4:1, Psalm 55:20-23, Psalm 68:30, Psalm 120:6-7, Psalm 140:1-2.

13. Peace propaganda is used as one of the greatest weapons of warfare. Micah 3:5-7

The easiest way to whip someone is to talk peace and not fight, then unexpectedly you hit them, and hit them hard--catching them off balance.

a. The source of this peace propaganda: It comes from false preachers. Micah 3:5 (National Council of Churches types)

"bite with their teeth": The talk sweetly PEACE! They say "peace!" Lets disarm and show the world the way to world brotherhood (suckersville)

"they (the enemy) even prepare war against him". This is exactly the way the communistics work. They have sold the UN on peace propaganda--and you can read it in their literature, you can hear it from their pulpits; they talk qbout disarmament, world peace, our "dear friends" the Communists, and they talk about Communistic understanding.

Micah 3:5 is being fulfilled RIGHT NOW!

Quotation from a speech given in 1931 in the Lenin School of Political Warfare (this is a special college to train people to kill Americans). This speech was made by Demetri Manuleski:

"War to the hilt between Communism and Capitalism is inevitable. Today, of course, we are not strong enough to attack (1931). Our time will come in 20-30 years. To win, we shall need the element of surprise. The middle class must be put to sleep. So we should begin by launching the most spectular peace movement on record. There will be electrifying overatures and unheard of concessions. Capitalist countries, stupid and decadent, will rejoice to cooperate in their own destruction. They will leap at another chance to be our friends, and as soon as their guard is down, we will smash them with our clenched fists."

Peace overatures. They offer you the dove, and back here they are winding up--letting you have it.

Let's go on. In 1932 in the same academic halls, Joe Stalin came into prominence by organizing a conspiracy, a plan, to destroy the USA without firing a shot. This was a very simple six-point plan. But point six is pertinent to our study: We'll review up to paragraph 6:

Point 1: "By philosophy, mysticism, the development of liberalism, plus the furtherance of atheism discredit Bible doctrine and Christianity."

Point 2: "The destruction of marriage, and the advancement of theoretical racial practices such as the marriage of black and white."

Comment: Stalin didn't start it, but later the Commies decided there were two ways in which to destroy the whole principle of marriage: (1) Free love, and (2) Communal living. The whole hippy movement in this country--is a part of that conspiracy. Sensitivity training gets it going--and this where men learn to touch men (just another phase of homosexuality) and women-women, or a combination of both sexes.

Point 3: "In the realm of the ascetics, cultivate the ugly, the futuristic, the aberrant in art, literature, drama and music." Pick a decadent culture that is easily enslaved (Africa in the last century) and take the music of that culture and introduce it. Further their beat, and their contortions. Joe Stalin said that is the way to destroy a nation. You attack its culture.

You see our cultural heritage is basically Anglo-Saxon, it goes back to the Schiermoot, it goes back to personal freedom, it goes back to Bible Doctrine, and that is wiped out--first in music. Then in modern art, all the way to pornographic literature.

Point 4: "Create unrest, suspicion and revolt among working classes. Promote class and racial warfare. If a national entity is made up of races, get them to fight each other."

Point 5: "Standardize the cheap and the shoddy, advocate state monopoly of ownership (federal). Exchange all foreign currency at slight discount for United States gold, and gradually withdraw all gold from circulation." (Fulfilled today)

Point 6: (Goes right back to Micah 3) "Set up the idea of thinking internationally so as to undermine all patriotism, undermine all preparation of defense, and ridicule all patriotic efforts."

When Joe Stalin introduced this plan it was a sensational thing. Immediately members of the Communist Party, VIP's, began to respond. For example Lenin who was the Premier at that time responded by saying:

"When a country is selected for attack, we must first of all set-up before the youth of that land a mental barrage which will forever prohibit the possibility of that youth being molded into an armed force to oppose us."

Ricoff said in Pravda:

"It is our duty to inculcate in the minds of all nations the theory of international friendship, pacifism, and disarmament. At the same time however, never for one moment relaxing our own military efforts or the upbuilding of our own military establishment."

And then the bloody butcher Bucharin said:

"Friendship with liberal minded ministers should be sought."

What about these liberal minded ministers? One denomination in the United States, one of our largest, came out with a Social Action Federation which said:

1. Be more critical of American policy than Russian.
2. Call upon the United States to destroy all of its nuclear weapons.
3. Unanimously oppose universal military training.
4. Circulate the claim that there is religious freedom in Russia.
5. To quote Jerome Davis, "Plead for a better understanding of Russia."

Now that is Micah 3:5 fulfilled right before you.

The Russians currently have at least five war plans to destroy us. The Chinese are building up their war plan and are plotting to destroy us. The Chinese communistics are going to attack us from the Pacific side and the Russians from the Atlantic and Gulf side. And both of these Communistic spheres are racing to see who will get the plum first.

Micah 3:6: Read: Once the people of a nation receive any type of peace propaganda, they have lost their vision. They are confused. They will be destroyed. No discernment ("divine" discernment).

Micah 3:7: " . . . <u>there is no answer of God</u>." One of the worst things that can happen is to be a sucker to the peace movements, either from within or without.

God set up a law for the perpetuation of a nation in two words: MILITARY ESTABLISHMENT.

No nation in history has ever survived the destruction or the demoralization of its military establishment.

Nature
(Category 410)

I. The Present status of Nature: "For the creation was made subject to vanity." Romans 8:20

A. Nature was originally good--and not subject to uselessness. Genesis 1-2. Sin (Genesis 3) destroyed that which was good.

B. Any good that comes from nature today comes through man's work: Gen. 3:17-19.

C. This situation (that nature can be advantageous) does not exist because of the desires of nature, but God brought it to pass (3:19 of Genesis) so that the subjection of nature would be compatible with the fallen state of man. It is advantageous for man to be occupied with WORK! Rom. 8:20

D. Thus Adam was to have dominion over nature, but by the fall nature was cursed.

E. At the 2nd Advent the last Adam will bring peace to nature.

F. The hope of nature (creation) is the 2nd Advent, then the earth will be compatible with man on earth (all regenerate at the beginning of the millennium). Romans 8:21.

II. So--Future Change in the Status of Nature:

A. At the Rapture, there will be no change.

B. At the 2nd Advent, changes take place: Isaiah 11:6-9, 35:1, 2, 7; 65:26.

C. However earth will be in all its glory in eternity.

"And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea." Rev. 21:1

1. This is the ultimate glory of the Palestinian covenant.

2. In that covenant land was promised to the seed of Abraham (Israel) forever: Genesis 17:8

Occupation with Christ: Doctrine of (Category 411)

Hebrews 12:2, "Looking unto Jesus, the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him . . ."

Hebrews 12:3, "For consider Him (Jesus Christ) that endured such contradiction of sinners against himself, lest ye be wearied and faint in your minds."

1. Definition of being occupied with Christ: The believer, filled with the Holy Spirit, functioning daily under GAP, and thus erecting the edification complex of the soul. This is a grace operation all the way.

2. What destroys being occupied with Christ in the believer? Mental attitude sins. MAS are the result of being out of fellowship and operating under the law of the old sin nature. Thoughts are not brought into captivity as per 2 Cor. 10:5.

3. Three ways to tell you are not occupied with Christ: Prov. 6:16-19.

   a. Mental attitude sins

   b. Sins of the tongue

   c. Overt sin

   These can involve self-pity, eyes on self, eyes on people, materialism lust, etc.

4. Four techniques that contribute to Occupation with Christ:

   a. Rebound: 1 John 1:9

   b. Filling of the Holy Spirit: Eph. 5:18

   c. Faith-rest life: Hebrews 4:1-2

   d. Living in the Word: (Daily function under GAP)

4. Concluding definition: A predisposition of the mind that sees all of life from the divine viewpoint. (Application)

Old Sin Nature: Introduction To:
(Category 412)

1. Definition: The old sin nature is that tendacy to sin present in the soul of every human being born into the world. Psalm 51:5, "in sin" means with a sin nature.

2. The old sin nature is the dictator of the soul.

3. All personal sin comes from the old sin nature. Sin is acting independently of God.

4. Negative volition created the old sin nature. Adam and Eve could not sin until they exercised negative volition. Upon the exercise of their negative volition to the single prohibition of God in the Garden, the first man and woman died spiritually and became sinners.

5. Since all reproduction is "after its kind" all who are descended from Adam have inherited his nature, which is sinful. Gen. 5:3, Romans 5:12.

6. No volition is involved in acquiring an old sin nature. Man has volition with a positive and negative pole; this works on the old sin nature, which has areas of strength and weakness and a tendency toward asceticism or lasciviousness.

7. Sin and evil is produced from its area of weakness and is predominant when there is a tendency toward lasciviousness.

8. Human good can be produced from its area of strength and from its tendency toward asceticism a good front can be assumed.

9. Yet nothing from the old sin nature is acceptable to God. Jesus Christ bore the sins of the old sin nature and rejected the human good of the old sin nature (on the cross).

10. The believer continues to possess an old sin nature. Rom. 6

11. The old sin nature is not resident in the believer's resurrection body. Phil. 3:21.

12. The believer under the control of the old sin nature is called carnal (Romans 7:14) and while under control of the old sin nature has no bona fide production. Romans 7:15, Gal. 5:17.

13. The solution to the sin nature is first:

    a. First: Salvation: The Lord Jesus Christ bore the sins of the old sin nature on the cross (1 Peter 2:24) and rejected the human good from the old sin nature. Eph. 2:8-9

    b. Second: The second solution is the filling of the Holy Spirit. (Galatians 5:16) appropriated through 1 John 1:9; then the application of the daily function of GAP. This continues to give the proper fueling and mental attitude necessary for the whole operation.

Old Sin Nature (Law of Carnality)
(Category 413)

I. The Believer continues to possess an old sin nature after salvation. Romans 6 compared with 1 John 1:8.

II. The old sin nature is desperately wicked: Jer. 17:9, Mark 7:21-23.

III. The old sin nature has an essence (characteristics). Rom. 6:6

A. An Area of Strength: Produces human good. Isaiah 64:6, Romans 8:8.

B. An Area of Weakness: Produces personal sins. Heb. 12:1

C. Trends:

1. Asceticism: Trend toward religion, lawkeeper for salvation.
2. Lasciviousness: Trend toward being lawless, irreligious

D. Lust pattern: Toward legitimate or illegitimate pursuits. This is the motivator of the OSN. Sinful desires, approbation lust, power lust, materialism lust, sexual lust etc. Romans 7:7. Also has a "good" desire pattern involving what a person likes to do. Collector, hunter, automobile enthusiast, etc.

IV. The OSN is perpetuated in the human race thru physical birth. 1 Tim. 2:13, 14 compared with Psalm 51:5. Eph. 2:1 indicates we are born spiritually dead with an old sin nature.

V. The believer under the control of the OSN is designated a carnal Christian. 1 Cor. 3:1-3, Romans 7:14.

VI. The OSN frustrates bona fide production in the Christian life. Rom. 7:15, Matt. 12:34-35.

VII. The OSN is not found in the resurrection body of the believer. Ultimate sanctification. Romans 8:29, 1 Thess. 5:23, 1 John 3:1-2, Phil. 3:21.

VIII. Identification of the OSN in the Bible (Aliases)

A. Flesh: John 3:6, Gal. 5:16, generally, Romans 7:18

B. Old man: Ephesians 4:22, Col. 3:9. Called old man because it is as old as Adam's negative volition.

C. Carnal: Romans 7:14, 1 Cor. 3:1-3

D. Sin in the Singular (generally) Romans 5:12, 7:14, 1 John 1:8, 10. Romans 6:12, Psalm 51:5.

E. Heart: Jer. 17:9, Matt. 15:19, 12:34, Psalm 58:2-5, Mark 7:21-23.

Old Sin Nature: Ananias and Sapphira: Bible Background Acts 5
(Category 414)

1. Ananias and Sapphira were two believers in the New Testament who let their sin nature control them.

2. THEIR sin nature had a TREND TOWARD ASCETICISM and they acted from their area of strength.

3. This was a sin inside of the church committed by believers.

4. It was sin motivated by approbation lust (desire to be noticed, appreciated). They desired to duplicate the feat of Barnabas who had sold a piece of property and had given the WHOLE PRICE to the Lord's work in Jerusalem.

5. Ananias and Sapphira were competing with Barnabas. Such competition was unnecessary. They were playing "spiritual king of the mountain."

6. Behind their lust for flattery and praise was envy and jealousy, which is the basis of the sin.

7. Ananias and Sapphira sold a piece of property also, and gave PART of the proceeds to the Lord's work, but they intimated that they gave the ENTIRE price.

8. There was nothing wrong with keeping back part of the price of such a sale. (There is no regulation as to how much a believer should give. 1 Cor. 16:2). THE SIN WAS IN TELLING THE LIE; the mental attitude sins behind it--envy, jealousy, and the desire behind it - approbation lust.

9. They lied because they wanted the church to think that they had duplicated the giving of Barnabas (in lying to the church they had lied to the Holy Spirit); hence:

10. Behind everything is approbation lust (one of the greatest enemies of believers). It causes believer to serve in the energy of the flesh and to produce human instead of Divine Good.

11. They failed to serve as unto the Lord. Col. 3:17

12. Their production of the OSN (Area of strength) is wood, hay, and stubble.

13. The Lord judged Ananias and Sapphira severely by the "sin unto death."

14. The significance of this severe discipline by God was the protection of the early church from this type of activity: human works motivated by approbation lust.

Old Sin Nature: Anatomy (Structure)
(Category 415)

I. The OSN has an essence (different facets or characteristics). Romans 6:6, "Knowing this that our old man (old sin nature) is crucified with Him, that the BODY of sin (nature) might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin (nature)."

II. God says that everything which comes from the OSN is no good, according to His standard (Rom. 7:18) and certainly not pleasing to Him. Rom. 8:7-8.

III. The Essence of the Old Sin Nature:

A. An Area of Strength: This produces human good. This is predominant when the TREND is toward asceticism. Isa. 64:6, Romans 8:8.

B. An Area of Weakness: This produces sins. This is predominant when the TREND is toward lasciviousness. Heb. 12:1, "the sin which doth so easily beset us."

C. A Trend Area: This reaches out in two areas:

1. Asceticism: Extreme self-denial. Acting religious, putting on a good front, often clean-cut types.

2. Lasciviousness: Overt sinning, irreligious, life centers around sin and evil. Doesn't care who knows how he or she lives.

D. Lust Pattern: Rom. 7:7, 13:14, 6:12-13; James 4:5.

1. Approbation lust: Doing something for the applause or praise received.

2. Power lust: Desire to top man in everything.

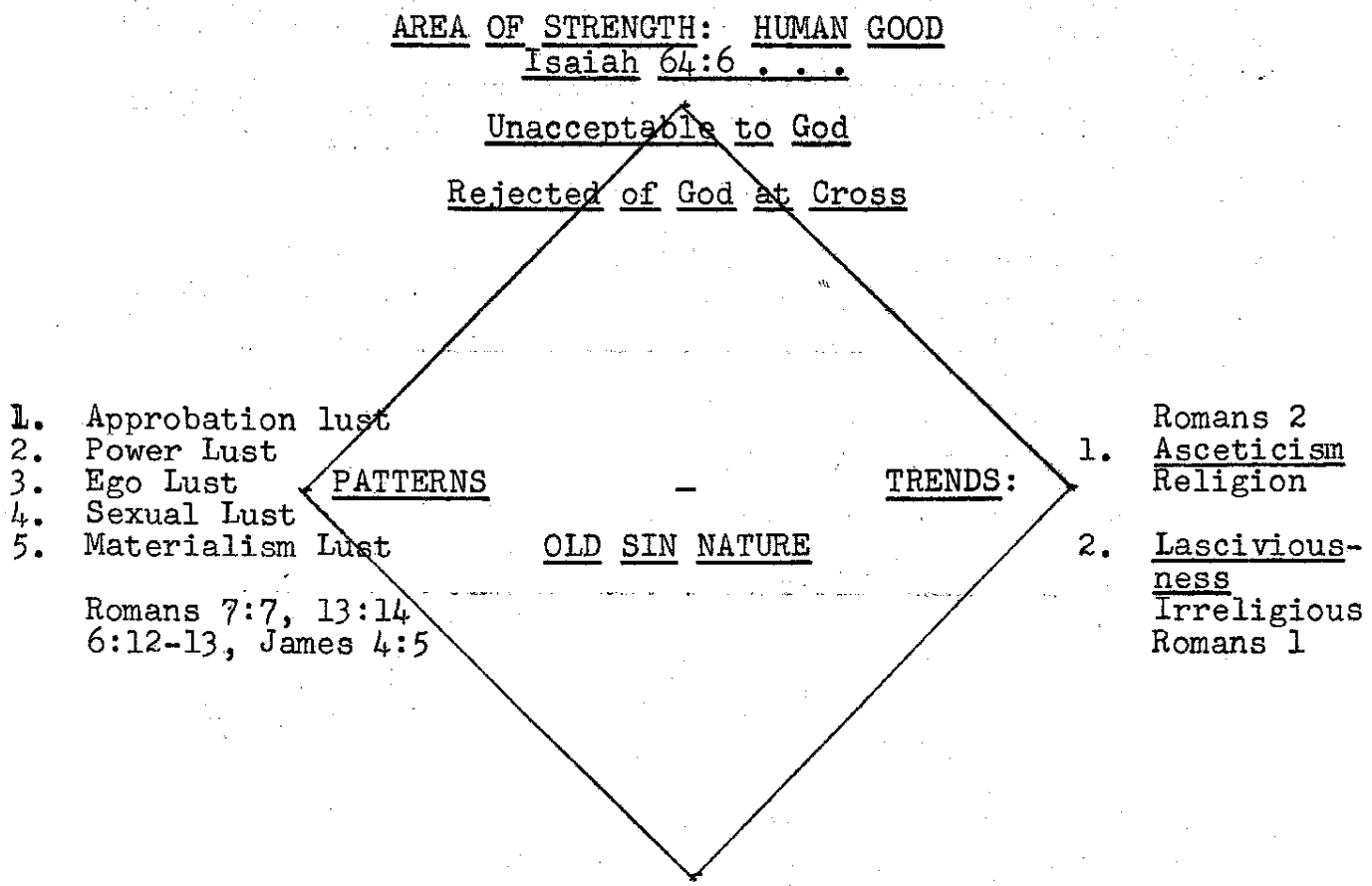
3. Materialism Lust: Desire to keep ahead of the "Jones" or strive for security in the financil realm. Whether one has much or little is not the issue.

4. Ego Lust: Pride. The more the ego is developed, the more people pat us on the head, the more dependent we become on flattery, upon recognition, upon approbation.

5. Sexual Lust: Bodily desire stemming from a mental attitude.

Our productivity, as believers, is dependent entirely upon facing ourselves as we really are and orienting to GRACE. We are nothing because of our OSN. The believer who is dependent upon the feeding of ego lust for productivity is not producing at all.

Old Sin Nature: Diagram
(Category 549)



The Old Sin Nature is totally depraved. Anything coming out of this Distorter is evil, and unacceptable to God. That includes human good as well as sin. The OSN controls the believer out of fellowship--and either produces human good or sin--usually dependent upon the trend pattern of the individual's OSN.

Old Sin Nature: Disposition of the Production of the Old Sin Nature (Category 417)

I. The Unbeliever:

A. The sins of the unbeliever were borne by Jesus Christ on the cross. 1 Peter 2:24.

B. Jesus Christ rejected the human good from the old sin nature. Eph. 2:8-9.

C. The believer will be at the Great White Throne because of rejection of Christ (unpardonable sin) where the unbeliever will stand on his own human good, and this human good does not measure up. Rev. 20:11-15.

D. His sins are never mentioned because they have already been judged in Christ. Rev. 20:12.

E. He is cast into the Lake of Fire (with his human good) because of his rejection of Christ, and burns forever.

II. The Believer:

A. The sins of the believer were borne by Jesus Christ on the cross. 1 Peter 2:24, 2 Cor. 5:21.

B. Therefore, when the believer sins in Phase 2 and Satan accuses the believer in heaven (Rev. 12:10b), Jesus Christ our Defense Attorney, pleads our case and the case is thrown out of court.

C. When the believer sins, he should confess that sin, thereby getting back into fellowship with God and under the control of the Holy Spirit.

D. Jesus Christ rejected the human good from the OSN. Phase 1 (salvation). Eph. 2:8-9, Phase 2 (CWL) Rom. 8:8.

E. Human good is contrary to the principle of GRACE.

F. In grace, God does the doing (Holy Spirit producing through the filling of the Holy Spirit) thereby erecting an edification complex (changing knowledge to full knowledge) and God is glorified. Man does the receiving.

G. In legalism, man does the doing: Human good and man gets the glory.

H. Before human good is judged, human good was rejected.

I. Human good of the OSN will be judged at the Judgment Seat of Christ. It is wood, hay, and stubble, and stubble, and is separated from him and burned. 1 Cor. 3:10-15.

Old Sin Nature: Identification in Scripture
(Category 418)

There are six terms used in Scripture to describe the old sin nature.

1. Sin: (in the singular in contrast to "sins" refers to the sin nature. (Scofield, page 1198, footnote #1.)

   a. Psalm 51:5, "in sin": With a sin nature
   b. Romans 5:12 " . . . as by one man (Adam) sin (OSN) entered.
   c. Romans 7:14 " . . . I am carnal, sold under sin (OSN).
   d. 1 John 1:8 "If we say that we have no sin (OSN).
   e. Romans 6:1 "Let not sin": OSN "reign" (control).

2. Flesh: (Emphasis on where it is located)

   a. Romans 8:8 "they . . . in the flesh": In the power of the OSN.
   b. Romans 7:18 "in the flesh (OSN) dwells no good thing"
   c. Gal. 5:16-21 Works of the "flesh" (OSN).
   d. Eph. 2:3 Unbeliever fulfills lusts of the flesh (OSN)
   e. Romans 13:14, Gal. 3:3 "flesh": (OSN).

3. Old Man: (Called old man because it is as old as Adam's OSN)

   a. Romans 6:6 " . . . old (OSN) is crucified with him (Christ)"
   b. Ephesians 4:22 "put off the old man (OSN)
   c. Col. 3:5-9 "Put off the old man with his deeds."

4. Heart: (Used two ways in Scripture)

   a. Refers to the soul or some facet of the soul, such as the mind.
   b. OSN, a facet of the soul (five times). Located in the frontal lobe.

      (1) Jer. 17:9, "The heart (OSN) is desperately wicked"
      (2) Matt. 12:34 "out of the heart": OSN
      (3) Matt. 15:19, Mark 7:21-23 "heart" OSN
      (4) Psalm 58:2-5 " . . . in heart (OSN) ye work wickedness . . . they go astray as soon as they be born.

5. Carnal:

   a. Romans 7:14 "I am carnal (Controlled by the OSN) sold under sin (OSN)."
   b. Romans 8:6-8 "For to be carnally minded (Controlled by OSN) is (temporal) death but to be spiritually minded (controlled by the Holy Spirit) is (temporal) life and peace." Rom. 8:7, "carnal mind" is the mind under the control of the OSN.
   c. 1 Cor. 3:1-3, "walk as men": Walk as an unbeliever. Believer out of fellowship cannot be distinguished from an unbeliever.

6. Spirit: James 4:5 "the spirit (OSN) that dwelleth in us lusteth to envy. (with Genesis 6:5).

Old Sin Nature: (Means of Passing On)
(Category 419)

The old sin nature is passed down through the man.

I. Satan Attacked the Woman instead of the Man because Satan had to make the woman sin in order to trick the whole human race.

If the man had sinned and then told the woman "eat" and she did, she could have said "I just obeyed my husband" and she would not have been guilty.

A. The woman sinned first: Was deceived--1 Tim. 2:14
Acquired an old sin nature.

B. The man sinned second: Deliberate--1 Tim. 2:14
Acquired an old sin nature.

C. Both were guilty before God.

II. The Human Race is counted guilty because Adam sinned.

Everyone sinned when Adam sinned. (Retroactive.) When Adam was condemned, Adam's progeny was condemned.

1 Cor. 15:22, "For as in Adam all die (spiritually) (IMPUTED sin) even so IN Christ shall all be made alive."

So by ONE MAN slavation came.

III. The Judgment of the Woman: (Two-fold)

A. "In sorrow thou shalt bring forth children". Possibly couldn't conceive before that.

B. "thy desire (strong craving) shall be to thy husband, and he shall rule (cause to repond) over thee."

C. Woman became the childbearer: 1 Timothy 2:14-15

1. Means delivered by means of the bearing of ONE PARTICULAR CHILD through the VIRGIN BIRTH.

2. Woman will be the means of bringing the humanity of Christ into the world. He is the Saviour and through this ONE the whole world will have its sins atoned. This atonement is only real when they accept Jesus Christ as Saviour.

3. Thus the woman and the man are delivered from spiritual death because of the Childbearing, for only through childbearing could the Son of God come into the world as Saviour, as the God-man.

IV. The Judgment of the Man: Gen. 3:17-19

A. He must earn his living by the sweat of his face.

B. Because the man wilfully sinned, he became the means of passing on the sin nature.

Romans 5:12, "Wherefore, as by man (first man: Adam) sin (first old sin nature) entered into the world and death (first spiritual death) by sin (first sin of the human race, negative volition); and so death (spiritual death) passed upon all men (human race), for that all have sinned." (When Adam sinned, imputed sin).

C. How?

Psalm 51:5, "Behold, I was shapen in iniquity and in sin (with a sin nature) did my mother concieve me."

Copulation in marriage is not sinful. Sin nature is passed down because of man's (male's) participation. Adam deliberately sinned and so man (male) passes down the old sin nature.

V. Three types of Sin:

A. Imputed sin: Spiritual death

B. Inherent sin: Old sin nature

C. Personal sin: Manifestation and result of having an old sin nature.

VI. In the Conception of the Humanity of Jesus Christ:

A. The woman participated

B. The man (male) did not participate. Matt. 1:20b

C. Therefore Jesus Christ was born without a sin nature.

2 Cor. 5:21, "For He (God the Father) hath made Him (God the Son) to be sin for us, who (Jesus Christ) knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness (+R) of God in Him. (IN CHRIST)!

VII. Therefore, CONCLUSION:

The man (male) is responsible for passing on the old sin nature.

Old Sin Nature: Power Over (Remedy)
(Category 420)

Phase I:

A. The human race looks at the outside, but God looks on the inside, and sees the same old sin nature and finds nothing good in it,

B. We can educate and train the sin nature so that it does not murder or steal, etc. We can cover it up with a lovely, or false front, but that does not make it good or acceptable to God. Romans 8:8, Jer. 13:23. All production from the old sin nature is evil in the sense that it is not acceptable to God.

C. The only answer is regeneration - new birth. (New nature) and the indwelling of the Holy Spirit.

Phase 2:

A. The Lord Jesus Christ died not only for our sins, but to unchain us from the power of the old sin nature.

B. The Lord Jesus Christ died for the sins of the "old man" nature and then upon an individual being regenerated the human spirit is given--that in the storing, inhaling and exhaling of the Word of God, a new edification complex (new man) could be erected, and diffused through the facets of the soul.

The filling of the Spirit in connection with a knowledge of Bible doctrine turned into epignosis erects this structure. Knowledge is converted into full knowledge.

C. The Lord Jesus Christ rejected the human good that comes from the old sin nature.

1. Phase 1: Eph. 2:8-9; Romans 4:4, Isa. 64:6
2. Phase 2: Romans 8:8, Rom. 3:10-12, Isa. 64:6

D. Thus we don't have to serve the sin nature any longer. We can claim God's promise that we are dead to the old sin nature and alive unto God. Romans 6:11. This is the mental attitude when in fellowship. One moves from being out of fellowship to being in fellowship by 1 John 1:9. (non-meritorious faith)

E. Our volition allows our old sin nature to rule us: (Negative volition--out of fellowship)

1. When we are out of fellowship we operate on -V, and since the OSN controls then, we sin.

2. This results in sins of ignorance and deliberate sinning.

F. We can also use our volition to put the old sin nature out of control and let the Holy rule by use of 1 John 1:9.

Old Sin Nature: Reactions
(Category 421)

1. Every individual has volition, with a positive and negative pole, which acts upon his old sin nature.

2. If you are NOT a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ, this old sin nature always rules your life, producing sins and human good.

3. As a believer you can choose whether or not the old sin nature controls your life.

4. The believer under the control of the old sin nature generally goes in one of two ways:

   a. Lasciviousness - evil actions
   b. Asceticism - putting on a good front

5. Several illustrations of trends are:

   a. Ananias
   b. Saul

6. When you are under control of your old sin nature you MAY produce just plain human good. You may be nice and fine, and do something nice and fine.

7. God condemns all production of the old sin nature, good or bad. Jer. 17:9.

8. You cannot change the OSN. Jer. 13:23.

9. But the believer can handle the old sin nature by use of rebound (1 John 1:9) and the application of retroactive positional truth.

10. Some production of the old sin nature is found in Matt. 15:8-9, 12:34, Mark 7:21-23.

Old Sin Nature: Saul
(Category 422)

1. Saul was a believer in the Old Testament who let his sin nature control him.

2. His sin nature had a trend toward lasciviousness (evil). He acted from his area of weakness.

3. Saul could have been Israel's greatest king; he was chosen by God Himself. The Holy Spirit came to indwell him (1 Samuel 11:6) to give him power to be all that God wanted him to be.

4. At first Saul used the power of the Holy Spirit and led the army of Israel to a great victory when all the rest of the people were afraid. 1 Samuel 11.

5. God gave Saul a command (1 Samuel 10:6-8) to wait seven days for Samuel, but Samuel did not show up and Saul got nervous. (1 Sam. 13:8). He needed to go and fight the enemy, but knew that there should be a sacrifice to the Lord first, by a prophet. But Saul was not a prophet.

6. Saul's old sin nature said, "Don't obey the Lord," the Holy Spirit said, "obey the Lord."

7. Saul went on negative volition and disobeyed the Lord. 1 Sam. 13:9, 13. Bible background, 1 Sam. 13:8-13.

8. The Lord gave Saul another command (1 Sam. 15:2-3). Again Saul disobeyed. 1 Sam. 15:8-9.

9. As Saul lived more and more under the control of his old sin nature, scar tissue began to take its toll, destroying the norm and standard lobe (conscience). He became an animal, tho a believer.

10. When he found out that David (instead of his own son) was to be the next king, he became terribly jealous (area of weakness in the OSN).

11. From his jealousy came hatred: (Mental attitude sins cluster) From hatred came the desire and attempts to kill David. Only God's protection spared David's life. (Overruling will of God).

12. His production from the OSN (Area of Weakness) is also unacceptable to God, as was the production of Ananias and Sapphira, which was from their area of strength. Sins are produced from the area of weakness.

13. Saul died under the sin unto death. 1 Chron. 10:13.

Old Sin Nature: Struggle With
(Category 423)

1. Because of regeneration we are new creatures IN CHRIST, 2 Cor. 5:17.

2. So we are expected to "walk in newness of life". We are in the top circle so we should also walk in the bottom circle (in fellowship.) Romans 6:4b.

3. In the believer sometimes the conscience struggles to do right, but since the OSN rules, it isn't much of a struggle.

4. There is an inner conflict in the believer (not found in the unbeliever) between the OSN and God the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit will not rule jointly with the OSN.

5. Romans 7:14-15 is written from the viewpoint of the carnal-believer who doesn't understand how to be filled with the Spirit. (See Romans exegesis).

   a. v. 15: "For that which I do (that which works out of me) I allow not (I do not understand); for what I would (I keep on desiring to honour the Lord) that do I not (that I do not practice--spirituality) but what I hate that do I (I keep on doing)."

   b. v. 16: "If (1st class condition) then I do (keep on doing) that which I would not, I consent (agree) unto the law . . ."

      A believer agrees with the law (Mosiac Law) when he recognizes that what he is doing is sin (as defined in the law). The law points out the exceedingly sinfulness of sin.

6. When the OSN is in control there is a zig-zag pattern within the OSN, between the area of weakness and the area of strength.

7. You are not always going to move in the same direction. The longer you stay out of fellowship the more you will zigzag. If you get bored with self-righteousness, you will go toward lasciviousness and you will live it up. Then you will get a guilt feeling and go back to asceticism, and put on a good front.

   ASCETICISM (Good front)

   LASCIVIOUSNESS (Who cares)

8. When the Holy Spirit controls, the believer, the Holy Spirit produces the character of the incarnate Christ in the believer.

Operation Footstool Introduction
(Category 424)

I. Definition of Operation Footstool: Heb. 1:13, 10:13

A. Operation footstool is an idiom in the ancient languages, representing the fact that your enemies are conquered.

B. This footstool operation refers to Jesus Christ in His humanity having victory over Satan on the cross, and Church age believers (in Christ) bumping one demon each (one on one) at the 2nd Advent.

II. Operation footstool is prophesied in Psalm 110:1. The following steps are necessary in dealing with Satan and the demons.

A. Virgin Birth
B. Cross: Death, Burial
C. Resurrection (of humanity of Christ)
D. Ascension
E. Seat at the right hand of God the Father
F. Formation of the Body of Christ (Positional Truth)
G. Rapture
H. Cleansing the bride (Church) of human good, preparing to return with Christ.
I. 2nd Advent
J. Satan bound, demons bumped

III. Angelic Conflict Resume:

A. God created angels with volition.
B. Satan acted independently of God. 5 "I wills".
C. God sentenced Satan. Matt. 25:41
D. Satan impugned the character of God: "How can a loving God cast His creatures into the Lake of Fire?" Human viewpoint does not consider the entire ESSENCE BOX, but only love.

E. God's answer: God created man with volition. Every time a member of the human race (created a little lower than the angels) choses for God, the character of God is vindicated, and Satan loses the argument. This resolves the Angelic Conflict.

IV. Conclusion: See Exegesis of Operation Footstool:

A. When the number of believers (Church Age - Body of Christ) equals the number of fallen angels (operating under Satan on earth) the rapture of the Church will take place. The body will be complete.

B. Seven years later, when Jesus Christ returns (2nd Advent) there will be one part of the Body of Christ to bump each fallen angel (one believer dumping one fallen angel).

C. In this way each fallen angel will have proof of having a counterpart in lower creation (the human race.)

Operation Footstool: Christ Qualified to Remove Demons
(Category 425)

1. Man is lower than angels. Heb. 2:7

2. God the Son became humanity - made a little lower than the angels. Heb. 2:9, "But we see Jesus (Humanity) who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death . . ."

3. The God-man is made higher than the angels at the point of ascension. 1 Peter 3:22, "Who (Jesus Christ) is gone into heaven and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject to Him."

4. God the Father told God the Son to sit down at his right hand. For the first time in eternity the Humanity of Jesus Christ was higher than angels. (His Deity always was). Hebrews 1:13, "But to which of the angels said He at any time, sit on my right hand until I make thine enemies thy footstool."

5. As BELIEVERS, we are "heirs of salvation" (IN CHRIST) and we are positionally higher than angels. Heb. 1:14. If you as a believer do not understand the doctrine of positional truth you will never understand operation footstool or the Angelic Conflict.

6. Only the Church (the body of Christ) is IN CHRIST, AND therefore higher than angels positionally and would have the right to bump angels.

7. RESULT: Each believer has a guardian angel. Heb. 1:14, "Are they not all ministering spirits (angels) sent forth to minister for them who are the heirs of salvation."

8. The guardian angels are probably the angels that fight with Michael and bump fallen angels at Mid-Tribulation. These would be the same in number as the church.

9. Old Testament saints may be equal in number to the bound fallen angels. They are not IN CHRIST and therefore not higher positionally than angels. The bound angels do not need bumped.

Study very carefully the next category. It gives the mechanics of bumping the demons. Check it out with an open Bible. The Angelic Conflict and Operation Footstool pull together all the various doctrines of the Church age and enables you to see why God set up the Church age the way He did. God's plan is perfect!

Operation Footstool: An Amplification of Church Age Believers Bumping Demons at the Second Advent
(Category 426)

An understanding of this operation CANNOT be understood without an understanding of positional truth (our standing in Christ).

I. The Victory of Positional Truth: 1 Cor. 15:20 ff.

A. In Adam "all die": An individual dies spiritually as he is born physically.

B. In Christ "all made alive": When born-again, individual is made spiritually alive.

1. This builds up the body of Christ--Christ's humanity is seated (1:13 in Hebrews) never said that to an angel.

2. We are in Christ, placed there one by one, BUT THERE IS A CERTAIN TIME WHEN THAT BODY IS COMPLETED.

C. There are two resurrections: John 5:29 (Just as there is two categories of homosapiens (believer and unbeliever).

There are four phases to the resurrection of life:

1. The Resurrection of Christ (In His ascension, He was the first MAN to be in the presence of God in heaven). 1 Cor. 15:23

2. The Resurrection of the Church: 1 Cor. 15:23, "Afterward they that are Christ's at His coming . . ."

3. Then (eita) means next: the Resurrection of Old Testament and Tribulation Saints at the 2nd Advent. 1 Cor. 15:24-27, Isa. 26:16-21, Daniel 12:1-3, Rev. 11:18.

4. Then the Resurrection of the Millennial Saints: Rev. 11:18.

There is one phase to the resurrection of damnation: The Great White Throne Judgment, Rev. 20:11-15.

II. The Victory of Removed Demons: Zech. 13:2, Hosea 2:14-23

A. Note the Tribulational battles: Zech. 12 (Context)

B. Note conversion emphasis during the Tribulation and at the 2nd Advent. Zech. 13:1

C. Removal of demons:

1. "Cut off the names of the idols": (Idols = demon possession). Idiom for removal of demons.

2. "cause prophets": (Unbelievers -- false teachers -- destroyed in the battle of Armagaddon (at the 2nd Adv.)

3. "unclean spirits will pass out of the land": This is the REMOVAL OF DEMONS at the 2nd Advent.

4. Hosea 2:14-23 - note v. 17--"demons removed"

NOTE: Modus operandi not given in the OT (positional truth) because the Church was not revealed in the OT. The Church was a mystery. Ephesians 3:1-10.

III. Method of Removing Demons: Col. 2:14-15

A. The Cross: Gen. 3:15, 1 John 3:8 etc. The Fact: Satan was judged on the cross.

B. The Executing of the Sentence: The Battle (analogous to the cross.)

1. "Spoiled": The Battle--the cross.

a. Principalities: Demonic powers
b. Powers: Demonic powers

This is used at times for governmental leaders--as in Titus 3:1, but here it is referring to demons.

c. Proof: Eph. 6:12--that in the Colossians context, it does not refer to governmental leaders--it refers to governmental leaders--referring to demonic powers. Look up 1 Peter 3:22 also.

2. "show openly": Public display of victory: In analogy, this is the 2nd Advent. Matt. 24:27-31

Parallel in history: The Roman Triumvirate: The victors march--all the prisoners were marched through the streets of Rome. (in chains).

3. "triumphing over them in it":

a. The victors in Rome had a one on one.
b. One Roman soldier killed one prisoner.
c. Until all were bumped off.

C. Conclusion:

1. Our position in Christ gives us a position above fallen angels. Now aboven unfallen angels also (Heb. 1:14, reason we have a guardian angel).

2. Our position in Christ puts us into position to judge angels (fallen). 1 Cor. 6:3, "know ye not that we shall judge angels?" It is a one on one, Christ-Satan, believers-demons.

3. Therefore, every time homosapien believes---angels of God rejoice. Luke 15:10, "Likewise I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth."

4. This hastens the day of Operation Footstool -- 2nd Advent. Every time a person believes in Christ--it is sure that one demon will be bumped off.

5. Therefore Satan tries to delay Operation Footstool (at 2nd Advent.)

   a. By keeping the unbeliever from believing.
   b. By keeping the believer from true spirituality.

BUT GOD'S PROGRAM GOES RIGHT ON!

Operation Footstool: Enemies in Operation Footstool
(Category 427)

1. There are three categories referred to as enemies in Scripture:

   a. Death: 1 Cor. 15:26
   b. Human Race: Romans 5:10
   c. Fallen angels: Heb. 1:13

2. Who are the enemies in Operation Footstool?

   Hebrews 1:13 in the Greek quotes Psalm 110:1 in the Hebrew:

   "Thine enemies": Heb. Qal Active Participle (Declarative)
   Greek: Present: Keep on being

3. Death: Not the enemy because "thine enemies" refers to a being. (Syntax)

4. The Human Race does not keep on being the enemy involved in Operation Footstool because:

   a. When a member of the human race believers in Jesus Christ, he is no longer an enemy of God but a child of God.

   b. The unbeliever is no longer behind the barrier. Eph. 2:15, 16 "enmity" has been removed. There is no longer a barrier.

   c. The only separation between God and man is now the person of the Lord Jesus Christ. Salvation is dependent upon man's volition. The work has been done.

   d. Human race is redeemed, not conquered.

5. Therefore (Conclusion) only the fallen angels keep on being the enemies.

Operation Footstool: Known Factors, Conclusions
(Category 428)

1. Jesus was made lower than angels that he might die for every man. Heb. 2:9.

2. After His ascension and His acceptability in session He was and is higher than angels. Heb. 1:13; 1 Peter 3:22.

3. The length of His session is until His enemies made His footstool, an idiom in the ancient languages, representing the fact that your enemies are conquered. Heb. 10:13.

4. This was said to Jesus at the beginning of the Church Age, indicating that the Church would be involved in the process of making His enemies His footstool. Heb. 10:12, Acts 1:8.

5. Believers in the Church Age are IN CHRIST and are therefore POSITIONALLY HIGHER than angels. Heb. 1:14.

6. At the 2nd Advent they will actually be higher than angels, in their resurrection body, minus the old sin nature and minus human good.

7. The body of Christ (Church age believers) is being completed on earth by the conversion of individuals and when completed it is raptured. 1 Thess. 4:16-17.

8. Satan and fallen angels are the enemies of Christ.

9. Col. 2:14-15 shows that Jesus Christ triumphed over them in PRINCIPLE at the cross and will, IN FACT, at the 2nd Advent. Col. 2:10 with Zech. 13:2.

10. Jesus is to sit until His enemies are made His footstool so when He leaves His seat at the right hand of the Father, this indicates that His enemies have been made His footstool.

11. At the RAPTURE of the Church, Jesus Christ leaves heaven--to get His Church--is no longer seated. 1 Thess. 4:16.

12. At the RAPTURE the body of Christ is complete.

13. Conclusion is that the body of Christ has something to do with making His enemies His footstool. At the point of the rapture a number of believers in the body of Christ = number of fallen angels (enemies).

14. Why aren't demons bumped at the rapture?

    a. Body of Christ needs to be acutally higher than angels, not just positionally: So the Judgment Seat of Christ (during the seven years of Tribulation) is a preparation time for the Body of Christ to become the Bride of Christ.

    b. God promised Israel 7 more years. There are the 70 weeks of Daniel (last week in particular--seven years).

These are the years of the Tribulation, which is completion of the Jewish Age. These have to be completed before the millennium can be ushered in.

c. The demons are operational during these 7 years.

d. They are not bumped IN FACT until the beginning of the millennium, when Satan is imprisoned and all demons are removed to make way for the perfect environment of the millennium. Rev. 20:2.

15. Reason for the bumping is so that each fallen angel will have proof of having a counterpart in lower creation. This solves the angelic conflict.

16. The Angelic Conflict:

a. God created angels with volition.
b. Satan acted independently of God. 5 "I wills" Isa. 14
c. God sentenced Satan. Matt. 25:41
d. Satan impugned the character of God: "How can a loving God cast His creatures (angels) into the Lake of Fire?". Human viewpoint does not consider the entire Essence Box, but only love.

17. GOD'S ANSWER: GOD created man with volition. Satan thought everyone would decide against God. By getting man to sin, Satan thought he would prove God's unfairness. Surely God would not send man to the Lake of Fire--not this creature He had made to have fellowship with Himself! God loves His creatures too much!! Satan reasoned, if man doesn't have to be punished, why should he (Satan)?

Every time a member of the human race (created a little lower than the angels) chooses for God, the character of God is vindicated, and Satan looses the argument. This resolves the Angelic Conflict.

18. Michael's angels (Rev. 12:9) are possibly guardian angels of the Church Age believers = in number to fallen angels.

Now if you are gnashing at the teeth saying, "I just can't get this--sounds good, but I just don't believe it." My word to you is "Relax, Doc"!!! It takes time to understand Bible Doctrine. And perhaps you don't understand how gnosis (knowledge in the mind) is converted to epignosis (full knowledge--unstandable--knowledge) in the human spirit.

Don't throw out the baby with the bath. Many believers say, "I don't understand it--therefore I reject it." Put this on the back-burner and let it simmer a while. Don't get on negative signals--and get under discipline.

Happy studying!

Operation Footstool Mechanics
(Category 429)

Part I:

1. Israel is under the 5th Cycle of Discipline. They no longer represent Jesus Christ on the earth. This explains the Church Age.

2. Israel is replaced on earth by the Church - the body of Christ.

3. Christ is absent from the earth, but He is represented on earth by the body of Christ -- the Church.

4. The body of Christ is being completed on the earth by the conversion of individuals.

   Mechanics: Positional Truth
   Union with Christ
   Baptism of the Holy Spirit
   Eph. 1:20-25

5. Positionally the believer is higher than angels because of his union with Christ.

6. God the Father said to God the Son, "sit thou at my right hand until . . ." at the beginning of the Church Age (Acts 1:11). This would indicate that the Church would be involved in the process of making His enemies His footstool.

7. Deduction: The number of believers (both dead and living) in union with Christ at the rapture--equals the number of fallen angels. Each believer in the Church Age bumps a demon. Zech. 13:2 with 1 Thess. 3:13; Col. 2:14-15, Rev. 19:6-8, 1 Cor. 15: 24-25.

8. When the body is complete, the body (church) is taken out, en toto.

9. The bride (Church) returns with Christ at the 2nd Advent. 1 Thess. 3:13.

10. There is no reason for bringing the bride back except to bump the demons, because the bride (Church) is a heavenly people).

11. This resolves the Angelic Conflict: Every angelic rejector (demon) has an opposite number in the body of Christ, which proves that God is fair and vindicates the character of Christ.

12. Preparation of the bride includes: Resurrection body, no old sin nature, human good is judged so the bride is cleansed. 1 Cor. 3:11-16.

13. At the 2nd Advent follows Operation Footstool. The demons are the enemies and are made the Footstool of the Lord Jesus Christ. Psalm 110:1. Satan is imprisoned, demons are removed from the earth. Col. 2:15 Greek, compares with Col. 2:10, Zech. 13:2.

14. Removal of demons changes the environment of the earth, making perfect environment on the earth. Rev. 19:6-8

    a. Number of born-again believers in union with Christ (position) = number of demons.

    b. Demons removed from the earth after the bride appears.

    c. With removal of demons we have removed religion, legalism, apostacy.

II. Conclusion

1. When the number of believers (Church Age, body of Christ equals the number of fallen angels operating under Satan on the earth) the rapture of the Church takes place. The body will be complete.

2. Seven years later, when Jesus Christ returns (2nd Advent) there will be one part of the Body of Christ to bump each fallen angel.

3. In this way each fallen angel will have the proof of having a counterpart in lower creation.

4. The fact that Jesus Christ is still sitting shows that the enemies (fallen angels) are not YET His footstool.

Omni-Attributes
(Category 430)

The Omni-attributes refer to God's omnipotence, omnipresence, and omniscience. See the Category on the Essence Box. God is all-powerful, all seeing, and all knowing.

I. Omnipotence: This term as found in Rev. 19:6 refers to God's unlimited power.

A. The Greek word παντοκράτωρ is used ten times in the Greek NT. It is usually translated Almighty.

B. Check out Rev. 19:6, with 2 Cor. 6:18, Rev. 1:8, 4:8, 11:17, 15:3, 16:7, 14, 19:15, 21:22.

II. Omnipresence: This word does not appear in our English Bibles, but is definitely a characteristic of God. God is all seeing.

A. Check out 1 Kings 8:27, 2 Chron. 2:6, Psalm 139:12, Isa. 66:1, Acts 17:28.

B. God is everywhere, He also localizes Himself. (See information on the Trinity and their (Godhead) respective ministries. See Matt. 6:9, Eph. 2:22, Col. 3:1, Heb. 12:2.

III. Omniscience: Again this word does not appear in our English Bibles. God is all knowing.

A. Revelation concerning God's knowledge: Psalm 33:13-15, 139:2, 147:4, Isaiah 44:28, 46:9-10, Malachi 3:16, Matt. 6:8, 10:29-30, Acts 2:23, 15:8, Heb. 4:3.

B. Related to this attribute is the Doctrine of Divine Decrees. See Category on this tremendous doctrine.

Parables
(Category 431)

1. A parable is a short narrative from which a spiritual lesson is deduced.

2. The Story: (Parable)

   a. Gives the outward literal sense which any believer or unbeliever can understand:

   b. Teaches a doctrine, which only a believer who knows doctrine can understand.

   c. The interpretation of parables requires deduction compatible with known doctrine.

3. The characters and incidents are figurative and typical.

4. Proper names and specific geographical locations are never used in parables.

   For example: The Rich Man and Lazarus account IS NOT A PARABLE.

5. Greek word "parable": Compound noun.

   a. Para: Beside

   b. Bole: To throw

   It means to throw a simple incident beside a doctrine to illustrate the doctrine.

   Example: Parable - sower sows seeds

   Doctrine: The believer giving out the gospel (seeds).

6. Match parable with the doctrine Jesus is using in the context. This is VERY important in the interpretation of parables.

7. So a parable throws an experience along side of a doctrine to make the doctrine clear.

Parables: Ministry in Parables
(Category 432)

A Parable is a comparison that teaches. (Never uses a proper name in the Bible.)

I. Pseudo-Spirituality: Matthew 9:16

A. Introduction:

1. "a piece of new cloth": Patch which is unshrunk
2. "old garment": Cloak which has been washed many times (completely shrunk).
3. "taketh from the garment": Torn from the garment

B. Take:

1. One little patch of legalism
2. One little patch of spirituality by works

C. Superimpose them on the Christian life--and:

D. Result: You destroy the effectiveness of the Christian life.

1. Grace: It is who and what God is--(God does all the work,
2. Not who and what man is:

Jesus told all the disciples of John that they needed waking up, even though they were saved.

II. New Wine in Old Bottles: Matt. 9:17

A. "New wine": The Christian way of life - Phase 2
Spirituality by Grace
The conversion of gnosis (knowledge) to epignosis (full knowledge) which has impact.

B. "old bottles": Wine skins - Judaism, legalism, intellectual knowledge of BD.

C. YOU CANNOT TAKE the commands to the believer: Example

1. Love all believers
2. Keep His commandments
3. Yield, be humble (Impossible to execute apart from the filling of the Holy Spirit

D. And put them in a system called LEGALISM: (Legalism-spirituality by works).

1. If you do, the whole thing breaks out - the Christian way of life spills out.

2. You have a wine skin with a big crack in it. No IMPACT IN THE CHRISTIAN LIFE.

Passover Introduction
(Category 433)

1. In God's mind the death of Jesus Christ was an accomplished fact, long before it became a reality. 1 Peter 1:19-20, Eph. 3:11.

2. Therefore, the Father recognized as sufficient the symbolic offering of the sacrifical lamb throughout the Old Testament.

3. Thus the shed blood of the animal became an atonement or COVERING for the guilty sinner, God "passing over" the sins of the people (Ex. 12:13) until the coming of the Lamb of God which would TAKE AWAY THE sins of the world. John 1:29.

4. In OT times they gave testimony by ceremony. The ceremonies gave testimony to the death of Christ and the work of Christ on the cross.

5. God Himself provided His own Lamb, Acts 2:23a, Rev. 13:8, who GAVE HIMSELF WILLINGLY, John 10:18 to become the Passover Sacrifice. "For even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us." 1 Cor. 5:7b.

6. His substitutionary death on the cross provided the means to reconcile the world (unlimited atonement) to God that, through appropriation of His saving grace (Eph. 2:8-9), eternal life might be bestowed upon all who believe.

7. At the last passover Jesus showed His disciples that:

   a. There would be no more Passover Feasts after this one - no more killing of lambs.

   b. The Passover Feast was just a shadow (picture) of Christ Himself who would bring a greater deliverance to the people: Salvation.

   c. That the shadow was soon to become the reality. Col. 2:17, Heb. 10:1.

   d. That they would soon look back to the cross instead of forward to it.

8. The Passover became the communion table, the purpose of which is:

   a. Harmony: 1 Cor. 11:20-22

   b. Remembrance of the Lord Jesus Christ: v. 23-26

   c. Restoration: (Rebound) v. 27-32

   d. Fellowship: v. 33-34

Passover: First Passover
(Category 434)

Bible Background: Exodus 11:1-10, 12:1-14, 12:26-27. The Children of Israel had been slaves in Egypt for 400 years. The time of their deliverance had come. In spite of the plagues Pharaoh had refused to let them go.

I. Exodus 11:1-10: Read these passages, study with a Bible open.

A. v. 2: "ears of the people": Not to Pharaoh

B. v. 4: "I": This is the Lord Jesus Christ, Ex. 12:12

C. v. 7: "difference between the Egyptians and Israel":

There is a difference between the unbeliever and the believer. Romans 8:1, God protects His own.

II. Exodus 12:1-14:

A. v. 2: PRINCIPLE: As of the 14th of April (Passover) the Jews will begin a new life that will go from bondage to freedom in one night. All time will be reckoned in terms of regeneration rather than in terms of natural birth: From the point of liberation from bondage.

B. v. 3: "all": Everyone had to get this information.
"every man": Each person has to accept Jesus Christ himself.
"lamb for an house": Each must eat of that lamb.

Eating is a picture of faith, believing in Christ.

C. v. 5: "without blemish": Impeccability of the Lord Jesus Christ.

D. v. 6: "until the fourteenth day"

1. The 10th day (v. 3) speaks of the virgin birth (incarnation).

2. The 11th, 12th, 13th days speak of public ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ who was without blemish (sin.) The Jews watched the Passover lamb for 3 days to make sure it was entirely perfect.

3. 14th day: The lamb was slain, speaks of the day Jesus died.

"in the evenings": Between the evenings.

ANTICIPATION: Passover was unique among the feasts. It was a memorial that looks forward.

E. v. 7: The blood must be drained, and painted on the 2 side posts and upper door making form of a cross. The blood only on the door, wherein they were eating. Blood was shed at the point of the cross. Representation.

F. v. 8: How to eat the lamb: "that night": The Passover night.

1. "roast with fire": The work of the LJC. Christ being judged for us. 2 Cor. 5:12, 1 Peter 2:24, Rom. 5:8, Isa. 53:5-6.

2. "unleavened bread": The Person of the Lord Jesus Christ. Humanity of Christ: sinless.

3. "bitter herbs": Reminder of the principle of GRACE. You do not earn or deserve it - grace. Principle of salvation.

Eating: Picture of faith: non-meritorious

G. v. 9: How Not to Eat the Lamb:

"Eat not of it raw": No fire - failure to recognize that the Lord Jesus Christ was judged for our sins.

"nor sodden at all with water": Not watered down. Ceremonialism, ritualism is no substitute for the blood of Jesus Christ.

"but roast with fire": Christ bearing our sins

"his head": mental (made a decision)

"with his legs": Service (now in a position to serve).

"with the purtenance": Power (inside of him is the power to serve.)

H. v. 10: If you don't eat (believe) the alternative is fire (judgment). John 3:18.

I. v. 11: A Four-fold standard operating procedure for eating:

1. "Your loins girded": In clothes you can walk or move. Once you eat, be ready to move. How? Know God's Word in the mind, convert it to residual knowledge by faith, thus functioning daily under GAP, stay ing fellowship. 2 Peter 1, 1 John 1:9, Phil. 3:13, Heb. 12:13-15.

2. "Your shoes on your feet": Production. Result of being in fellowship is production.

3. "Your staff in your hand": Word of God

1. Promises on which to lean.
2. Faith-rest technique.

4. "Ye shall eat it in haste": Maximum absorption of the Word of God in minimum time. Quick transfer of gnosis to epignosis.

J. v. 12: Alternative is "judgment" (fire) which comes from God. John 3:36.

K. v. 13: Passover connotes Eternal Security as well as salvation. Everyone in Christ is secure forever. Everyone in the house is secure.

Being IN the house: Believe on the LJC as Saviour, which is a picture of: Christ in the believer, and the believer in Christ.

John 14:20b "ye in me, and I in you". Lamb is in the believer, believer is in the Lamb.

L. v. 14: "memorial": Means of anticipating and remembering.

Jews in the OT looked forward to the cross. We look back to the cross. They had the lamb and the unleavened bread. They only had the blood on the on the door-posts etc. on the 1st Passover in 1441 BC.

From then on the Jews didn't live in houses. There were no posts in the tents, so they used the cup (fruit of the vine, NOT WINE - no leaven).

III. Exodus 12:26-27: Command to the Israelites

So the verbal and pictured Word -- the plan of salvation was passed down from parent to child in each believing family as follows:

A. Man was born a sinner.
B. Sin has come between man and God, so man cannot come into the presence of God until something is done about his sinful state.
C. God's promise was that some day, at the right time, God would send His perfect Son into the world to take away sin.
D. Until then the sin must be covered in God's sight.
E. A lamb, perfect and innocent, must be offered, its blood shed, and sprinkled as an atonement for sin.
F. When the Son of God (Lamb of God) came, He would not merely cover, but would remove sin and its penalty.

IV. Application:

A. Today salvation is the same: Believe on the LJC.
B. In OT times: In God's sight this was already an accomplished fact. 1 Peter 1:19-20.
C. JC gave His life FREELY. John 10:18a. Jews brought their sacrifices thru Free Will. Lev. 1:3.
D. We accept Christ thru our Free Will.
E. The Feast of the Passover should have been a continual reminder of the One who was to come and would die in their place.
F. Instead it became merely a form or a ceremony which they went through, with little realization of the person it represented.

Passover: Last Passover
(Category 435)

1. In OT times they gave testimony by ceremony.

2. The ceremony of slaying the lamb was a testimony to the death of Christ.

3. The ceremony of the Day of Atonement (sprinkling of the blood) was a ceremony that spoke of the WORK OF CHRIST (spritual death) on the cross.

4. At the LAST PASSOVER JESUS CHRIST wanted to show His disciples:

   a. That there would be no more Passover Feasts after this one; no more killing of lambs.

   b. That the Passover Feast was just a shadow (picture) of Christ Himself who would bring a greater deliverance to the people: Salvation.

   c. That the shadow was soon to become the reality. Col. 2:17, Heb. 10:1.

   d. That they would soon look back to the cross instead of forward to it.

5. Matthew 26:18-28: Last Passover.

   a. A love feast was eaten before communion.

   b. Judas leaves between v. 25 and v. 26. John 13:30-32. Judas was present at the Love Feast, but he departed before communion.

   c. All the time Jesus was giving out the communion elements to His eleven disciples. Judas was betraying Him.

   d. v. 28: "new testament": New Covenant, salvation by grace.

6. The Passover was then changed into the Lord's table, our communion table, looking back to the cross.

7. God has a perfect plan and a perfect timetable.

8. God's Lamb was to die at the very time when the Jewish Passover took place, which, for all these years, looked forward to the death of the Lamb. John 18:28, 39.

9. Even while the Roman officials were pronouncing judgment on the LJC, the preparation for the Passover began. John 19:14.

10. Little did they realize that prophecy was being fulfilled by rejecting the One who came to save them. John 1:11.

11. So the Lamb, without spot and blemish, Jesus Christ, our Passover, was sacrificed for us. 1 Cor. 5:7b.

Paul: "For I am an Israelite": Rom. 11:1
(Category 436)

I. The Racial Jew: Phil. 3:5-9

A. Romans 11:1, "of the seed of Abraham"

B. "of the tribe of Benjamin": Saul was a very prominent name, for anyone from the tribe of Benjamin.

II. The Religious Jew: Acts 26:1-16

A. Paul was one of the oustanding men in Judaism in his time. Philippians 3, Acts 9.

B. Before Saul became a believer he was one of the outstanding personalities of his day. His human abilities were tremendous. However, human IQ and ability is zilch, nothing, as far as Christianity is concerned.

C. He was a Pharisee, a brilliant young man, already a ruler.

D. He has a perfect balance of Jewish and Greek background academically, had a tremendous vocabulary, and a tremendous concept of the ancient world.

E. He was the worst sinner that ever lived because he was the most religious and self-righteous man who ever lived. 1 Tim. 1:12-15. He was the most legalistic person in the world.

III. Regenerate Jew: Acts 9:1-16

A. God did not use Paul's success.
God did not save Paul on the basis of his own merit.
God did save Paul on the basis of God's own character; grace through faith in Jesus Christ.

B. Paul changed his name from Saul to Paul. Paul means "little", nothingness. Word "little" is an emphasis on the grace of God.

C. Because He recognized himself for what he was - little - he also realized that before salvation he was the chief of sinners - the worst - actually. 1 Tim. 1:12-13.

D. He became the chief of apostles (the 12th apostle) a spiritual gift. Only grace could accomplish such a thing.

E. As a believer, grace made a great deal of difference and Paul became a great believer. The secret to his greatness was orientation to grace.

F. Paul (oriented to grace) realized that the only thing which counts is the power of God and the Divine Operating Assets (DOAs) provided by God.

G. Paul explored the divine operational assets and their utilization more than anyone on record and became one of the outstanding writers of the Word of God from the human standpoint.

H. Probably more than any scholar of the ancient world Paul the Apostle had the best background for writing Doctrine and reducing theology to concrete categorical information.

I. In the presentation of Bible Doctrine (BD) he has no peer, both in language concept and conciseness in the original languages of Scripture. However:

J. His accomplishments, spiritually, WERE not dependent upon his human IQ, his human ability, his human accomplishments. They were dependent upon the grace of God, and had acquired a spiritual IQ. See the category on the Perspicacity of grace.

IV. Paul as a Pattern:

A. Paul is established as the perfect pattern for the Jew in the 5th Cycle of Discipline because: DOUBLE CURSE

1. Spiritually dead (unbeliever)
2. Moral, self-righteousness, religious, worst sinner - 1 Tim. 1:12-13.
3. Under the 5th cycle of discipline.

B. Paul's cursing was turned to blessing:

1. Spiritually alive (believer)
2. No longer a Jew but is now "church" therefore out from under the 5th Cycle of Discipline.

V. Ministry of Paul:

A. 1st Ministry: Primarily the three missionary journeys. Jerusalem to Dalmatia (Illyricum).

B. 2nd Ministry: 1st and 2nd Roman imprisonments. Ministry in Rome.

C. 3rd Ministry: 4th Missionary Journey. Operation Spain, area west of Rome.

Peace: Biblical Concept
(Category 437)

Introduction:

1. Peace is a technical word for man's response to Grace. Peace is not a feeling, it is a mental attitude based on relationship.

2. Bible uses peace in two ways: Peace WITH God (Salvation)
   Peace OF God (Christian Way of Life)

3. There is no mental peace for the wicked (Isa. 48:22) so where you find peace in the Bible it refers to:

   a. Phase 1: Reconciliation: Eph. 2:14
   b. Phase 2: Mental attitude found in the believer: 2 Tim. 1:7

Phase 1: Salvation: Peace WITH GOD

1. Peace can never come to you apart from Grace.

2. The cross is the source of Grace and consequently the source of peace.

3. At salvation He is our Eternal Peace. Romans 5:1. Grace removed the barrier, making peace between man and God. When the unbeliever responds by faith to grace, the result is peace.

   Ephesians 2:14-18

   a. v. 14: "peace": Reconciliation (removal of the barrier)
   b. v. 15: "abolished": Once and for all
      "emnity": The barrier
      "in His flesh": Humanity
      "law of commandments": Mosiac Law: Codex #1
      "ordinances": Mosiac Law: Codex #2
      "make in Himself . . . man": Union with Christ
   c. v. 16: "both": Both Jew and Gentile
      "slain the enmity": Removed the barrier
   d. v. 17: "you which were afar off": Gentiles
      "them that were nigh": Jews
   e. v. 18: "Baptism of the Holy Spirit - Union with Christ

Phase 2: The Christian Way of Life: Peace OF God

1. In time we can have experiential peace. When the believer responds by faith to Grace (The DOA provided by God) the result is peace (Inner Happiness). Isa. 26:3-4.

2. But peace can never come to you apart from Grace.
   Grace in Phase 1: BELIEVE: (Non-meritorious)
   Phase 2: CONFESS: (Non-meritorious)

3. Peace (as well as Grace) is multiplied to the believer in time. Blessing comes from knowledge and appropriation.

Pentecost, Day of: 32 AD
(Category 438)

1. The Day of Pentecost was the fulfillment of two prophecies:

   a. Prophecy of Tongues: Isa. 28:11. Jews would be evangelized in Gentile languages as a sign (1 Cor. 14:21-22) that the 5th Cycle of Discipline would soon begin.

   b. Prophecy of the Baptism of the Holy Spirit: Acts 1:5

      Baptism of the Holy Spirit signals the beginning of the Church Age. John 14:20, 1 Cor. 12:13.

2. The Day of Pentecost, approximately 32 AD, is the day the Church began. DO NOT confuse 32 AD with 70 AD. In 70 AD the Jews went under the 5th Cycle of Discipline (Leviticus 26).

3. The Church begain in only ONE LOCAL SPOT - Jerusalem.

4. Consequently on the Day of Pentecost and after, there were Jewish Age believers, in other locations, that had not had the Baptism of the Holy Spirit, which entered them into Union with Christ making them Church Age believers.

5. Slack is taken up in:

   a. Acts 2:1-4: Jewish believers:
   b. Acts 10:44-48, 11:15-16. Gentile believers in Caesarea
   c. Acts 19:1-6, Other believers of the Age of Israel in various locations and at different times receive the Baptism of the Holy Spirit, entering them into Union with Christ, making them Church Age believers.

6. The Church started local and then became Universal. In thirty years the church covered the world.

7. The book of Acts is simply a history of the Precanon Church.

8. The Holy Spirit could not come (Baptism of the Holy Spirit) in the age of Israel because:

   a. Christ had not yet come in the flesh.

   b. Christ had not yet died, risen, ascended, nor was He seated at the right hand of the Father. John 7:37-39.

   c. Had to have death, burial, resurrection & ascension before Positional Truth.

Perception: Five Ways to Know God Exists
(Category 439)

I. Religious Approach:

God exists because men universally believe in His existence, the religious instinct. Psalm 42:1-2.

Hearing other people speak of God, you become aware of His existence. Acts 17:27.

CONCLUSION: Therefore it is worth investigating.

II. Moral or Anthropological:

Man possesses a conscience with the urge to choose between right and wrong, preferring right, indicating that behind it is an absolute norm of right and wrong.

CONCLUSION: A material ungoverned universe would know nothing of moral values and distinctions, therefore since moral values and distinctions exist:

first in government
second in individuals with a conscience

obviously there must be some Supreme Being (an instigator) behind these concepts.

#1 and #2 are more meaningful in primitive cultures.

III. Philosophical (Ontological)

The mind possesses a concept of PERFECT, ABSOLUTE, something beyond the relative pattern.

CONCLUSION: Therefore there must be a pre-existent, infinitely existent. (Decart, thru rationalism) used this philosophy.

IV. Teleological:

The structure of the UNIVERSE demands an absolute being as designer (Master Designer): Atom, galaxies.

CONCLUSION: Who is the designer? Romans 1:20

V. Cosmological:

The intuitive (percieved by the mind immediately) law of cause and effect demands the existence of God: THE UNIVERSE IS NOT ITS OWN CAUSE.

CONCLUSION: Here is an effect, what caused it?

#3, #4, #5 are more meaningful in highly developed societies.

VI. All of these have THINKING in common. As you think you become aware of the existence of God. At that point your volition goes into operation. After an elaspe of time, information will be provided by God whereby you can make a decision. John 7:17.

VII. The best you can do with the systems of rationalism and empiricism is to say that is Someone there, but I don't understand it. Faith is the only bona fide system of perception for understanding spiritual phonomena.

Perception, Systems of
(Category 440)

Perception is an act of receiving impressions by the senses. There are three systems of perception.

1. Rationalism: This makes reason the sole guide in the interpretation of Scripture. Any supernatural happening is explained away by reason.

2. Empiricism: Everything must be checked out through the sensory pattern. You must smell, see, hear, taste, feel, in order to come to any conclusion. This perception thru the senses is correlated with the mind.

3. Faith: Complete confidence in someone or something. A great percentage of information that you have has come through faith. Like 1 + 1 = 2. When you began to learn, you accepted certain things to be true.

   a. You cannot apply rationalism or empiricism to accepting spiritual phenomena. The system must be faith.

   b. Spiritual phenomena is an infinite (unlimited) SUBJECT. FAITH is an infinite premise (condition) of PERCEPTION.

   c. You accept the Word by faith. You see the fact (gnosis) and then convert it to full knowledge (epignosis) by faith--see the category on the perspicacity of Grace.

   d. Jesus said (Matt. 18:13) "except ye become as little children . . ." As a child you accepted a lot of things to be true: Method of perception: faith

   e. Faith is volition expressed in a non-meritorious way.

   f. Any course in Spiritual Phenomena must start with something greater than man: God.

4. There are three types of individuals at God-Consciousness.

   a. Person who believes there is a God. (Not born-again)
      (1) I believe in God and know nothing about Him.
      (2) I believe in God and know something about Him.
   b. Agnostic: (Logical) "I don't know whether He exists or not"
   c. Atheistic: Illogical. "I do not believe He exists."

Perspicacity by Grace
The Function and Endurance of Grace
(Category 440)

This is a very important category as it is designed to give the epignosis (full knowledge) of grace. One needs the proper INSIGHT INTO GRACE to understand God's great plan on our behalf. The following tells the grace apparatus for perception in our lives.

I. The whole plan of God's grace was designed in eternity past, before man ever came on the scene. Man would be given the necessary "grace apparatus" to function in our lives.

II. Human IQ and human works systems such as rationalism and empiricism are excluded from God's plan of grace. The modus operandi is faith as the Biblical system of perception.

Human IQ is often considered a factor in the learning of Bible Doctrine (the believer). This would imply that the low IQ believer is low in perceptive ability. Human IQ is NOT a factor in learning the Word of God. Every believer has the same perceptive equipment, there is no partiality. 1 Corinthians 1:18-2:16.

III. The Grace Provision (Apparatus) for the Perception of Doctrine

A. Formation and Preservation of the Canon of Scripture. Rev. 21:18-19

B. Authorization of the local church for the communication of doctrine. The entire books of 1 & 2 Timothy, Titus.

This is to be done in public assembly. Picking key people attempting "to disciple them" is not a bona fide operation in the local church context. The Word of God is to be dispensed to all believers--and under such conditions the so-call "cull believers" often grow the fastest. This is a part of the doctrine of privacy as applied to believer-priests in the Church Age.

C. The spiritual gift of pastor-teacher is given to communicate Bible Doctrine. Obviously no pastor earns or deserves this gift--it is given by grace--as is the canon, as is the local church. Ephesians 4:11-16.

D. The Indwelling of the Holy Spirit as the Teacher of Bible Doctrine. John 14:16-17, John 16:13, 1 Cor. 6:19-20. Given by grace, we didn't earn or deserve the I/HS.

E. The Rebound Technique as the means of the Filling of the Holy Spirit. 1 John 1:9, Heb. 2:1, Eph. 5:14-18. Again, this is grace given.

F. The Breathing Apparatus of the Soul: Inhale of gnosis and exhale of epignosis. Psalm 42:1, "panteth", Psalm 119:131, "and panted", Ephesians 4:23, "And be renewed in the breathing of your mind." (spirit here = breathing)

G. The Mind (vous) where doctrine is first comprehended as gnosis. Ephesians 4:23, Romans 12:2. It is a staging area for Bible Doctrine. We don't earn or deserve this provision either.

H. The human spirit where doctrine becomes full knowledge through application of faith to gnosis, doctrine becomes usuable as it is categorized there. Romans 8:16, 1 Cor. 2:1-16, Eph. 3:16-18.

This doctrine becomes residual doctrine (epignosis) and residual doctrine not only becomes the foundation of the edification complex, but the building material for the five floors as well. It is strictly a grace operation, all the way.

I. The Priesthood of the believer whereby you have reception of doctrine--and have privacy in the receiving and reception of Bible Doctrine. 1 Peter 2:5, 2:9, Rev. 1:5-6.

IV. The Contrast between Human and Divine IQ:

A. Your human IQ is determined by dividing your mental age by your chronological age.

B. Whereas your spiritual IQ is determined by the amount of epignosis you have stored in your human spirit. 2 Peter 1:1-11

V. The Six Stages in the Grace Apparatus for Perception: (Basic to the daily function of GAP is the Filling of the Holy Spirit)

A. Stage One: The communicator of Bible doctrine, in the case of a local church, the pastor-teacher. For example in Ephesians and Colossians Paul was the communicator.

B. Stage Two: The comprehension of gnosis (head knowledge) in the perceptive lobe of the mind. Eph. 3:18. The factual stage. Hearing the Word of God as per James 1:22-23.

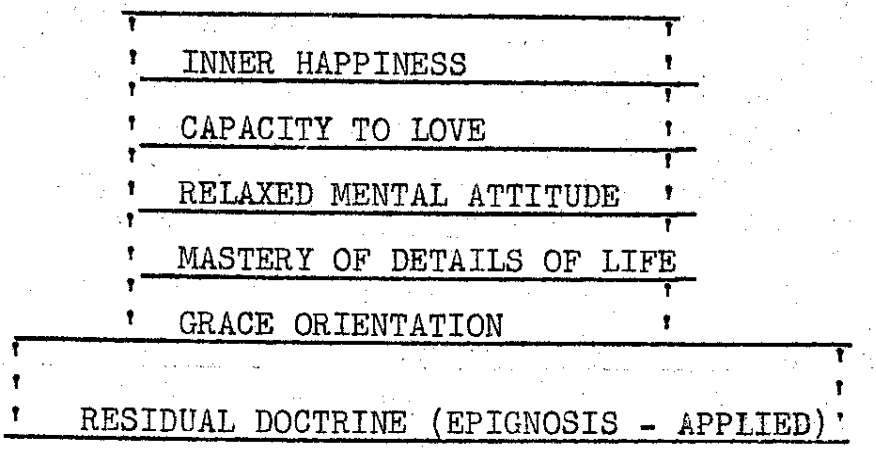
C. Stage Three: The storage stage whereby the human spirit is filled as gnosis is converted to epignosis by faith. Romans 8:16, Eph. 3:18.

D. Stage Four: This is the frame of reference stage--epignosis cycled into the norm and standard lobe. This great stabilizer allows the Word of God to be exhaled (applied) in pressure situations. Ephesians 3:19

E. Stage Five: Exhale of Bible doctrine from the human spirit and the frame of reference. Application of BD to daily living, inwardly and overtly. Eph. 4:23 and following. Eph. 6:10 (Putting on the Armour) and following.

F. Stage Six: Residual doctrine (epignosis) in the human spirit and frame of reference becomes the building material for the edification complex.

VI. The Edification Complex of the Soul:



The Song of Solomon (see category) indicates that the Penthouse of the Edification Complex is Inner Happiness. Mastery of the Details of Life is the 2nd floor. Listen to latest tapes on Song of Solomon and Ephesians.

VII. There are Five Results of the Grace Provision:

A. The cycling of epignosis back into the mind as a frame of reference. This is how you build doctrine on doctrine.

B. The exhale or application of doctrine (you do not lose doctrine when you apply.) Doctrine in the perceptive lobe cannct be applied. On doctrine can be used that is stored in the human spirit, and also cycled up to the frame of reference.

C. The building of an edification complex (maturity) in the soul, thus reflecting the glory of God.

D. The ability to see God with the eyes of the soul. Scar tissue on the "eyes" of the soul "blind" the believer. 2 Peter 1:9 says, "But he (a believer with scar tissue) that lacketh these things is blind, and cannot see afar off, and hath forgotten that he was purged from his old sins!"

E. The removal of scar tissue from the soul by exhale. Only epignosis (full knowledge) removes scar tissue.

Physical Life
(Category 441)

1. Jesus Christ is the Creator of all things: Col. 1:16, John 1:3, Heb. 1:10. Jesus Christ is the Creator of homosapien. Gen. 2:7.

2. Two ways in which mankind came into the world:

   a. Created: Adam from the dust (chemicals) of the ground. Gen. 2:17. Eve was created from the rib of Adam.

   b. Physical birth: Principle of perpetuation of the human race.

3. Jesus Christ not only created man, but He created the principle whereby man perpetuates himself. Copulation between man and woman (husband and wife).

4. The body of man is a factory - the house in which you live.

5. The body is the instrument of the soul.

6. Physical death is the soul leaving the body; the body dying and ceasing to function.

7. Physical life is the soul being inside of the body and the body functioning.

8. Adam's body came first, Gen. 2:7. Then God put into the body the breath of lives (the Hebrew says "lives") and he "became a living soul."

   a. Physical life for the body
   b. Spiritual life (had fellowship with God-human spirit).
   c. Soulish life

9. Human race is born spiritually dead. Eph. 2:1, 5. (No fellowship, no relationship, with God).

10. Therefore the unbeliever is dichotomous: He has body and soul.

11. At physical death the soul continues to live:

    a. Believer: Soul and spirit goes to be with the Lord.

    b. Unbeliever: Soul goes to Hades to wait the Great White Throne Judgment.

Plan of God: Doctrine of Divine Decrees
(Category 442)

1. Definition: The decrees are defined as the sum total of the Father's plan designed in eternity past. Billions of years ago God had a plan for you, had you personally in mind. He is Perfect, and His plan is perfect.

2. The plan centers around the person of Jesus Christ. 1 John 3:23, Eph. 1:4-6. Jesus Christ is the Revealer of the Father, and of the Father's grace.

3. Entrance into the plan is based on the principle of grace. No one enters the Father's plan apart from grace. Grace is where the sovereignty of God and the free will of man meet at the cross. Eph. 2:8-9. This is the doctrine of the marriage of grace and faith. Under the grace principle the work is accomplished by God while man enjoys and gains the benefits apart from his own merit, apart from his own ability.

4. God's plan was so designed in eternity past so as to include all events and actions. This is the omniscience of God. He knows them related to their causes and conditions.

   He knew billions of years ago that you would be reading this, and under what conditions. He knew that you would no doubt be reading this of your own free will--positive toward doctrine. Or He knew you would read this because of pressure. Enemies read this notebook--to find fault. He knows all things. Rom. 8:28

   Now lets repeat the point: God's plan was so designed in eternity past so as to include all events and actions related to their causes and conditions, as a part of an indivisible system, every link being a part of the integrity of the whole.

5. Without interfering with human volition in any way, God has designed a plan so perfect that it includes cause and effect, directive, provision, preservation, and function for all believers.

6. Under His plan, God has decreed to do some things directly, some through agencies like Israel and the Church, and some through individuals.

7. Therefore, there are primary, secondary, and terchiary functions within the plan of God. But all of these constitute one great, all comprehensive plan, eternal, unchangeable, and without loss of integrity. (Regardless of how bad history becomes, or how corrupted man acts.

8. The plan of God is consistent with human freedom. God does not limit or coerce human freedom, however distinction should be made between what God causes (like the cross) and what God permits (like sin).

   The distinction: God created man with a free-will. Therefore he permits that free will to function. That is how Adam sinned. God never caused sin, never sponsored sin, it never was compatible with His character.

9. This demonstrates that man has free will. God never condones or causes sin in the human race, this is incompatible with His character; with His essence. In fact in perfect environment & innocence, God warned man about sin and its consequences. Gen. 2:17

10. Distinction should be made between Divine Decrees which are related to the plan of God in both design and action, and Divine Laws which relate and regulate human conduct and function in the universe.

Divine Laws ---- can be rejected, like gravity. But then . . !

11. This is a point of logic: God's decrees do not arise from His foreknowledge. The foreknowledge of God makes nothing certain, it merely perceives in eternity past the things that are certain.

12. The different between foreknowledge and predestination: Predestination or the decrees make things certain, therefore predestination establishes certainty, while foreknowledge does not. Nothing can be known until it can be decreed. Acts 2:23, Rom. 8:29, 1 Peter 1:2.

13. Therefore the elect are foreknown, and the foreknown are elect. God knew ahead of time which way every free will would decide at any given point in history. This does not imply divine coercion! God's plan however anticipates every decision of history. All the billions of decisions of history were all known to God before anyone lived. John 3:36, 1 John 3:23

14. Since God cannot contradict his Essence, He plans the best for the believer. God is perfect, therefore His plan and His provision are perfect.

15. The cross was decreed in eternity past. Billions of years before man was created, the cross was decreed, salvation was planned. But the human volition of Christ decided for the cross in Gethsemane, the night before. Matt. 26:39, 42.

God has provided free salvation through the cross, but your free will must appropriate it. Like John 3:36.

16. No Decree in itself opposes human freedom, but once a choice is made from your free will, then the function of the Decree does limit your human freedom, but at the same time giving your volition freedom to serve God, something you did not have at the point of birth. We were not born with the capability of serving God, this only comes after we are born-again.

For example: God has always been happy, +H. Now He wants you as a believer to function under +H. But to do that, He has decreed that you must function under GAP. You have a choice, however, to be miserable.

Taken from Jude young people's series, 1970.

Plan of God: Phase 1,2,3
(Category 443)

1. God's plan is divided into 3 parts: Phase 1-2-3. We use vocabulary to get across Biblical concepts.

2. Phase 1 is salvation:

   a. Jesus Christ went to the cross and became our substitute. Every sin we have ever committed actually went to court at the cross. Our sins were poured out upon Christ and they were judged. Because all sins were judged, the barrier between man and God was removed. Now, all that stands between man and God is the person of the Lord Jesus Christ and our attitude toward Him.

   b. Positive Volition is expressed through a non-meritorious system of perception known as FAITH. That is why the Scriptures say "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved . . ." Acts 16:31.

   c. By a simple act of faith (a principle compatible with grace) we can enter into salvation.

   d. Grace = God doing the work - Divine Good, man doing the receiving.

   e. Legalism = man doing the work, human good. God supposedly receiving.

   f. The work for salvation was accomplished at the cross and by personal faith in Jesus Christ, we have eternal life.

3. Phase 2: (the believer in time) begins one second after the act of faith (salvation).

   a. For phase 2 God has provided unlimited Divine Operating Assets (DOA) whereby we may represent Him.

   b. Study DOA in category form.

4. Phase 3: Eternity. 2 Cor. 5:8, "Absent from the body, face to face with the Lord."

The plan of God is perfect, given by a God who is perfect. If man, who is imperfect, can add to the plan, then the plan would be imperfect.

Plan of God: As Sovereign of the Universe
(Category 444)

I. Sovereign Right of God:

A. To make plans: Psalm 24:1

"The earth is the Lord's and the fulness thereof; the world and they that dwell therein."

God planned phases, 1-2-3.

B. To make decisions: God chose

1. To give man free will (volition)
2. To treat man in Grace. Eph. 2:8-9

C. To make policies: Grace (non-meritorious)

1. Grace in Phase 1: Believer, Acts 16:31
2. Grace in Phase 2: Confess, 1 John 1:9

D. To set up principles (Modus operandi)

1. Example: Divine Institutions
2. Example: Techniques of the Christian Life

II. God's Plan for the Human Race: Grace

A. Phase 1: Salvation: Acts 16:31, believe on the LJC.

1. God's Will: 2 Peter 3:9, " . . . not willing that any should perish but that all should come to repentance." (Change of mind regarding the person of the LJC)

   BUT He CANNOT (Immutability) and WILL NOT (Sovereign decision) coerce man's free will. "whosoever will."

2. Man's Will: Human good versus divine good.

B. Phase 2: Time: Be filled with the Holy Spirit, Eph. 5:18; How? 1 John 1:9. Ambassadors, Acts 1:8, 2 Cor. 3:3.

1. God's Will: Stay in fellowship, be filled with the Holy Spirit, use divine operating assets. Your life is now lived by the techniques of the Christian Way of Life.

2. Man's Will: Human good versus human good

C. Phase 3: Eternity: Spent with Him. John 14:3

Position: In Adam, In Christ
(Category 445)

I. Barrier: Position in Adam

A. Spiritual Death came by Adam. 1 Cor. 15:21-22
"die": spiritual death: Eph. 2:5-6

B. Imputed Sin: The human race was counted guilty when Adam sinned because off the human race is born of Adam's seed. When Adam was condemned, Adam's progeny was condemned. 1 Cor. 15:21-22.

Romans 5:12b, "and so death (spiritual) passed upon all men (members of human race) for all have sinned (when Adam sinned.)"

C. Inherent sin: Rom. 5:12a. When Adam sinned he acquired an old sin nature and brought into existence the old sin nature.

II. Work of Christ: Position in Christ

A. Definition: When formerly we had a relationship in Adam, we now have a relationship IN CHRIST, and everything He is and has, we are and share positionally. 1 John 5:11-12.

B. 1 Cor. 15:22, "For as in Adam all die (spiritually) even so IN CHRIST (Positional Truth) shall all be made alive."

C. In our Position in Christ (Top Circle) we share:

1. JC is ETERNAL LIFE, we have His life: 1 John 5:11-12
2. JC is +R, we have His +R. 2 Cor. 5:21
3. JC is THE SON, we share His sonship. Gal. 3:26
4. JC is ELECTED FOREVER, we share His election. Eph. 1:4
5. JC is PREDESTINATED, we share His destiny. Eph. 1:5
6. JC is HEIR of God, we are joint-heirs with Him. Romans 8:16-17
7. JC is SANCTIFIED (set apart unto God), we are sanctified. 1 Cor. 1:2
8. JC is our HIGH PRIEST, every believer is a priest. 1 Peter 2:5-9.
9. JC has a KINGSHIP, we share His Kingship. 2 Peter 1:11.

Positional Truth
(Category 446)

1. Means of Positional Truth is faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. Acts 16:31. Mechanics of Positional Truth is the work of the Holy Spirit (see point 2).

2. Positional Truth Package consists of: (Definition)

   a. Regeneration: New birth, receive human spirit. Titus 3:5, John 3:5-6, Eph. 2:1, 5.
   b. Indwelling Holy Spirit: Basis of Spirituality. 1 Cor. 6:19
   c. Sealing of Holy Spirit: Eternal Security. Eph. 1:13, 4:30
   d. Baptism of the Holy Spirit: Union with Christ (U/C) 1 Cor. 12:13.
   e. Spiritual Gift: Position on team: 1 Cor. 12:11

3. Positional truth declared to belong to carnal as well as the spiritual believer. 1 Cor. 1:2, 30: Positional sanctification.

4. Positional truth protects the believer from eternal judgment. Romans 8:1, "no condemnation": No judgment.

5. Positional truth results in the believer sharing what Christ is and has: Eternal life: 1 John 5:11-12, Rightecusness: 2 Cor. 5:21, Sonship: Gal. 3:26, Heirship: Rom. 8:16-17, Election: Eph. 1:4, Destiny: Eph. 1:5, 11, Kingship: 2 Peter 1:11, Priest: 1 Peter 2:5, 9, Sanctification: 1 Cor. 1:2.

6. Positional truth defines election and predestination.

   a. Election: Jesus Christ is elected, everyone in union with Christ (free will) shares His election. Isa. 45:1, 1 Peter 2:6.

   b. Predestination: Jesus Christ has a destiny. In Christ (Union with Christ) the believer has a destiny.

7. Positional Truth produces a new creature in Christ. 2 Cor. 5:17

   a. "In Christ": In the top circle. In union with Christ.
   b. "new creature": New birth, receives an human spirit, ability to fellowship with God.
   c. "old things are passed away": Spiritual death
   d. "all things are become new": Spiritual life

8. Positional truth guarantees eternal security. Rom. 8:38-39; 1 John 5:11-12.

9. Positional Truth exists in three categories: Retroactive PT, the cross; Current PT (top circle), Experiencial PT (bottom circ.)

10. Characteristics of Positional Truth:

   a. Not an experience
   b. Not progressive, perfect at salvation
   c. No related to human merit--work of HS
   d. Eternal in nature: Rom. 8:38-39
   e. Known only in Word
   f. Obtained entoto at moment of salvation.

Retroactive Positional Truth
(Category 447)

1. God the Holy Spirit took us at the moment of salvation and entered us into Union with Christ (U/C) - CURRENT POSITIONAL TRUTH - our position in Christ currently.

2. We are also identified with Christ in His death - Retroactive Positional Truth. When Christ hung upon the cross He was minus the OSN. We are identified with Christ retroactively (going back to the cross) so that - POSITIONALLY - we are dead to the OSN, even though EXPERIENTIALLY, we still have an OSN.

3. When Jesus Christ hung on the cross He;

   a. Was sinless, did not have an OSN.

   b. Bore the sins of the whole world. 1 John 2:2. (All sin comes from the OSN).

   c. Condemned the sin nature. Romans 8:3

   d. Rejection of human good which comes from the OSN.

      Phase 1 - Eph. 2:8-9, Rom. 4:4, Titus 3:5
      Phase 2 - Romans 8:8

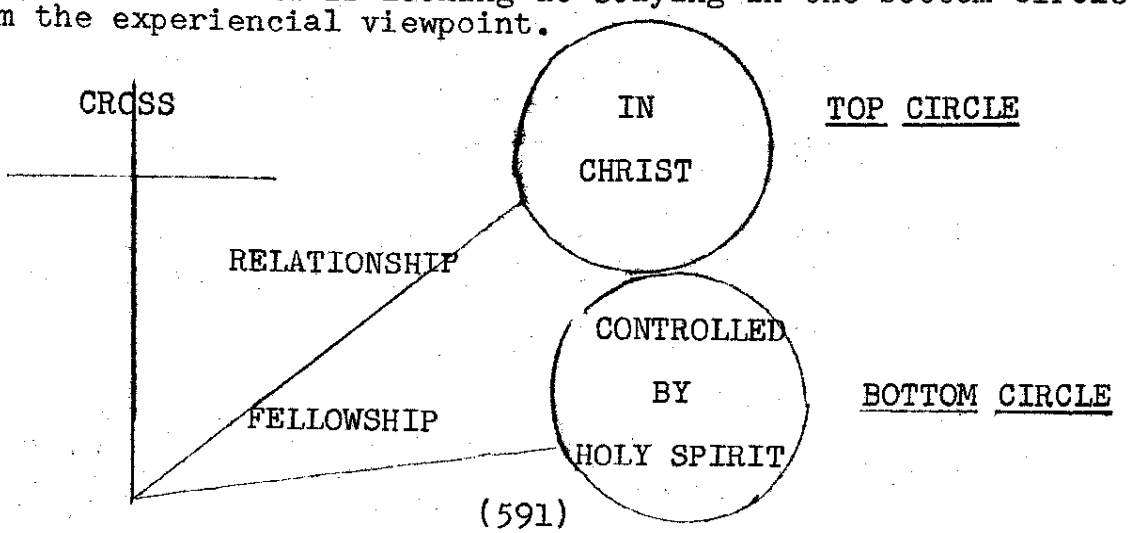
4. This makes the issue good vs. good in Phase 1, 2, 3.

5. Appropriation of what He did on the cross depends upon the volition of man in Phase 1 and Phase 2.

6. Phase 2: We are commanded to "reckon ourselves dead to the OSN" Romans 6:11, indicating that we do not always appropriate what we have in retroactive positional truth.

7. We should live on the basis of our POSITION, not on the basis of our EXPERIENCE. We have a position IN CHRIST (CPT AND RAPT) so stay in the bottom circle. Apply RAPT and CPT to experience.

8. RAPT is looking at staying in the bottom circle from the Doctrinal viewpoint. Rebound is looking at staying in the bottom circle from the experiencial viewpoint.



Prayer, Doctrine of
(Category 448)

I. Principle of Prayer:

A. Prayer should be directed to God the Father. Eph. 5:20, Matt. 6:9, 1 Peter 1:17.

B. In the name of God the Son. John 14:13, 15:16

C. By the Power of the Holy Spirit. Eph. 6:18
(A believer is NEVER to pray to the Holy Spirit)

II. Steps to Prayer:

A. Confession: Psalm 66:18

B. Thanksgiving: Eph. 5:20

C. Intercession: Eph. 6:18

D. Petition for our own needs. Heb. 4:16

III. Reasons why Prayers are not answered: (Facets of Carnality)

A. Lack of Faith: Matt. 21:22, Mark 11:24

B. Selfishness: James 4:2-3

C. Carnality: Psalm 66:18

D. Lack of Compassion: Prov. 21:13

E. Lack of harmony in the home: 1 Peter 3:7

F. Pride or self-righteousness: Job 35:12-13

G. Lack of filling of the Spirit: Eph. 6:18

H. Lack of Obedience: 1 John 3:22, "keep His commandments", stay filled with the Holy Spirit. Eph. 5:18.

I. Noncompliability with Divine will: 1 John 5:14

IV. Prayer Petitions and Prayer Answers:

A. Petition Answered: Flesh to eat. Num. 11:4-6, 13
Desire not answered: Happiness

B. Petition Not Answered: Spare Sodom & Gomorrah
Desire Answered: Lot's safety. Gen. 18:32-33

C. Petition Answered: Raise Lazarus from the dead.
Desire Answered: Bystanders to believe. John 11:41-45

D. Petition Not Answered: (Nine reasons above why prayer is
Desire Not Answered: not answered).

Prayer: False Concepts
(Category 449)

1. Traditional lingo doesn't make a prayer acceptable. Mark 7:13 Illustrated by the Thee, Thou, etc. Shakespearean English. There is no such thing as a holy or spiritual language.

2. Holy hiccups: Bible expressions used excessively. "Amen, brother", "Lord willing", "Hallelujah, Praise the Lord". This is no Holy Ghost language.

3. Traditional thinking (human viewpoint) such as thinking it is more effective to kneel than to sit or to stand. Also that prayer is more effective if done in a church, or in some "sacred" geographical location.

4. Traditional schedule: That prayer meeting has to be mid-week. That you pray "around the clock". Some poor cluck gets out of bed at 2:00 a.m. to go down to some apostate church to pray so that they can brag about praying around the clock.

5. Misconceptions: That the Lord's Prayer is to be repeated each Sunday. Praying to the Holy Spirit. Thinking that public prayer is more meritorious than private prayer, etc.

Prayer: Negative Viewpoint
(Category 450)

1. Prayer is a spiritual gift and I don't have this gift. Not true. All believers are priests, therefore all can pray.

2. Prayer is personal and should not be done with other believers. Not a true statement.

3. Prayer is optional - self-satisfaction for the believer, so the believer really need not to pray. Not true. Prayer is not optional, it is commanded by God. In a sense 1 John 1:9 is prayer.

4. I don't have time to pray. Principle: You don't have time not to pray. If you don't have time, the details of life are enslaving you.

5. I don't know how to/or what to say. Principle: Don't be so self-centered. Learn doctrine.

6. I cannot stand to hear a certain person pray. Don't get your eyes on people - if the prayer is not doctrinal (of this person) pray your own prayer while he is praying. Follow along mentally with a verbal doctrinal prayer however.

7. I never see the results of my prayers. So what? It is God who answers them in according to the Word of God.

8. My mind wanders when others pray. Prayer takes doctrine. It takes the disciplines which Doctrine gives. Take in doctrine, and receive a strong mental attitude.

Prayer: Rebound Prayer
(Category 451)

1. Address the Father
2. Turn on the searchlight of the Word of God.
3. Confession of the sin (name the sin).
4. Thanksgiving for forgiveness.
5. Pray in Jesus name.
6. Forget the sin as God has forgotten it.

(All in connection with 1 John 1:9)

Prayer: Seven Principles Of
(Category 452)

1. Prayer must be offered by the believer-priest. John 15:7. Only the believers have the right of prayer.

2. Prayer must comply with the Faith-Rest Technique. Matt. 21:22, "believing", Mark 11:24, James 1:5-6.

3. Prayer must be offered according to God's will to be effective. 1 John 5:14. To know the will of God you must know the Word of God. Effective prayer warriors know doctrine.

4. Prayer must be offered in status of the filling of the Holy Spirit. Eph. 6:18.

5. Prayer must be offered with thanksgiving. Eph. 6:20.

6. Prayer offered in carnality cannot be heard, unless the content is confession of sin. 1 John 1:9, Psalm 66:18, James 4:2-3. Any prayer heard and answered outside of this principle is strictly GRACE.

7. Prayer must be offered on a grace basis. Heb. 4:16. There never will be a time when any believer earns or deserves the right to be heard. Prayer is approaching the throne of GRACE.

8. Prayer should be:

   a. Directed to God the Father: Eph. 5:20, Matt. 6:9, 1 Pet. 1:17

   b. In the name of God the Son: John 14:13, John 15:16

   c. By the power of the Holy Spirit: Eph. 6:18

Conclusion: God does not hear a prayer addressed to the Holy Spirit, or to Jesus Christ--although prominent Bible teachers claim to do it--it is never bona fide. Some people pray, "O Holy Spirit descend on us". That type of prayer will never be heard. Others pray, "O blessed Jesus", or "gracious Master." These prayers will not be heard, because even the Holy Spirit directs His prayers to the Father, and so does Jesus Christ. Romans 8:26-27, John 17 etc.

Pre-Canon: Revelation
(Category 453)

I. Part 1:

A. Dreams: Given to persons other than prophets.

1. Joseph (Believer)

2. Nebuchadnezzar (Unbeliever when he had the dreams)

3. Pharaoh (Unbeliever always)

B. Visions: Given to prophets

1. Daniel: Daniel 10:7-8

2. John the Baptist: Rev. 3

C. Trances: Primarily to prophets (apostles)

D. Direct Spoken Conversation:

Example: To Moses in the giving of the law

E. Christophany: Appearance of the LJC to Abraham, etc.

II. Pre-Canon, post-ascension: Direct revelation of Scripture was given to apostles. Gift of knowledge. Part 2

III. Part 3

BEFORE THE CROSS	AFTER THE CROSS
Revelation is given by shadows	Revelation changes to reality: Canon of Scripture
Shadows anticipate	When reality comes the shadows no longer have a bona fide place.
In the type or shadow system you do something over and over - lots of ritual involved.	Once you are looking back at this (cross) and it is in writing (Doctrine - Bible) then it becomes a matter of perception instead of ritual.

Pre-Canon: Temporary Spiritual Gifts (Category 454)

Although the average believertakes the completed Canon of Scripture for granted, the Word of God makes a big thing of a COMPLETED Canon of Scripture.

Among other things the completed Canon of Scripture explains why today there is no gift of healing, nor gift of prophecy, nor gift of apostleship, no gift of tongues and so on.

For more information see the categories on Spiritual Gifts.

1. The gift of tongues ceased in August of 70 AD when Jerusalem was destroyed by the Roman Legions, the temple was destroyed as well. 1 Cor. 13:8. ("Whether there be tongues, they shall cease.")

   a. To understand why 70 AD, one must understand the Five Cycles of Discipline in Leviticus 26. Tongues (Isaiah 28:10-13 compared with 1 Cor. 14:21-22) were a sign of judgment to Israel (5th Cycle coming) and also facilitated a crash program of proclaiming the Gospel in the early church.

   b. When Israel was scattered in 70 AD, there was no more need of the warning of the 5th Cycle--for it had already happened. Therefore no need for tongues.

2. 1 Cor. 13:8 indicates that at a point in time, tongues would cease, come to a complete halt.

3. The pre-canon period of Scripture was completed in 95-96 AD. The Apostle John wrote Revelation, lived several years thereafter, but when he died the gift of Apostleship ceased. No one had the gift of Apostle after John.

4. 1 Cor. 13:10 compared with James 1:25 indicates that some spiritual gifts ceased when the Canon of Scripture was completed. See all 1 Cor. 13:8.

5. Consequently, it is concluded that the gift of tongues has not been operative since 70 AD, and the other temporary sign gifts have not been operative since 96 AD.

6. The experience today called the gift of tongues is either demon possession when it involves unbelievers, or demon influence, or emotionalism. In believers it is not demon possession, but demon influence or emotionalism.

7. The extraordinary ability of a missionary or linguist to master a foreign language and evangelize and edify is not the gift of tongues. A person may be "gifted" in ability, but that is not the same as the spiritual gift of tongues used between 32 & 70 AD.

For believers not to be Biblically straight on the tongues issue--is disastrous. It is the chief form of apostacy today in so called evangelical Christianity. The tongues movement within and without the holiness movement is horrible, and the very worst sort of empiricism.

Predestination
(Category 455)

1. Etymology: Pro orizo: Greek word for predestination.

   Pro = before (the world began)
   orizo = to mark or to design (where we get horizon)

2. Definition: To design beforehand. God (Perfect) knew and then He designed.

3. God designed a plan before man ever existed. Jesus Christ is the focal point of that plan. He had a destiny. It was predesigned for Jesus Christ to be judged for the sins of the whole world and to purchase a kingdom.

4. This predestination took place at the Eternal Life conference. See Category on Plan of God: Doctrine of Divine Decrees.

5. Predestination means that we are in the Plan of God, a predesigned plan.

6. We enter the plan - positive volition at Gospel hearing.

7. Our predestination is based on our Union with Christ who is the predestined one, the elected one. 1 Peter 2:5, Isa. 42:1.

8. Predestination applies to the believer only. The believer chooses Christ's destiny (free will) and is therefore predestined. His life has a plan. It was predesigned that Romans 8:28 would be operative in the life of every believer in time.

9. The unbeliever is NOT predestined to hell. The unbeliever chooses his own destiny (free will). Christ died for everyone. If anyone goes to hell, he goes there because he rejects Christ as Saviour, because he has a free will and he operates independently of God's provision.

10. The believer is predestined to be conformed to the image of God's Son - Romans 8:29:

    a. Phase 1: Though union with Christ, sharing nine things. Positional Truth.

    b. Phase 2: Through the filling of the Holy Spirit the believer produces the character of Christ. Also includes GAP, edification complex.

    c. Phase 3: It was predesigned that everything that would happen in eternity would be perfect. Rev. 21:4

11. Predestination results in becoming adult sons and heirs of God. Eph. 1:4. See Heirship and Adoption.

Predestination Correlated with Divine Guidance
(Category 456)

1. The Greek word προορίζω is translated predestinate. It means to mark or design before hand.

2. God is OMNISCIENT and in HIS foreknowledge He knew who was going to bdcome a believer.

3. God's predesigned plan for all believers is that all believers be "conformed to the image of His Son." Romans 8:29.

4. Election is our part in the plan when we choose for Christ.

5. Every believer's life has been predesigned on the basis of God's knowledge of every free will decision that man makes.

6. God has a DIRECTIVE WILL for the believer's life. God DIRECTS believer to operate in certain categories of will.

   a. Operational Will: Be filled with the Holy Spirit
   b. Viewpoint Will: Think Divine Viewpoint
   c. Geographical Will: To be in X spot at X time

7. God has a PERMISSIVE WILL for the believer's life: God PERMITS believers to:

   a. Operate in the power of the OSN
   b. To think human viewpoint
   c. To be in X spot at X time instead of Y spot at Y time.

8. God has an OVERRULING WILL FOR the believer's life:

   a. God overrules in the area of demon activity as far as the believer is concerned; also no one (demon or human) can take the life of a believer unless or until God permits it. Check out Job 1-2.

   b. God takes every decision (good and bad) in the believer's life and makes it work together for good. Romans 8:28.

9. Because God is OMNISCIENT and OMNIPOTENT He can take every decision that He knows (foreknowledge) that we will make and predesign a plan for our lives, making it all work together for our good.

10. ONLY the believer shares the predestiny of Christ, and therefore has a predesigned life. This does not mean that the believer does not have free will, God has predesigned that Romans 8:28 will work.

11. The unbeliever is NOT predestined to hell. He goes there because of his choice. John 3:18.

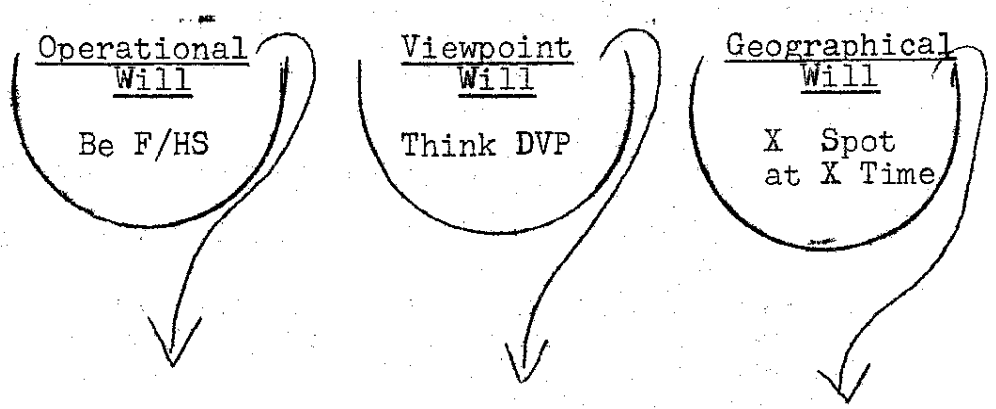
Predestination Chart: Next Page

Predestination Chart
(Category 457)

H
PRO ORIZO = Predestinate
(Design Beforehand)

Election (Your Place in the Plan)

Directive Will:



Permissive Will: CONTROL: OSN THINKING HVP Y SPOT AT Y TIME

Overruling Will:

1. Area of demons and death
2. Making Romans 8:28 work in all circumstances in the believer's life.

Pride
(Category 458)

Ego is not pride. There is a different between self-consciousness and pride.

1. Pride must not be confused with self-consciousness. Self-consciousness is simply awareness of one's existence, personality, or one's being. Self-consciousness is not a sin.

2. Satan's original sin was the mental attitude sin of PRIDE. Isaiah 14:12-17

3. Pride is an inordinate self-esteem or conceit. It is an arrogance coming from the old sin nature.

4. Pride is lofty self-respect, a feeling of elation or exaltation because of what one is or what one has.

   Principle: When self-consciousness is linked up with lust pattern of the old sin nature, then self-consciousness becomes a sin. Pride equals self-consciousness plus one or more factors in the lust pattern.

5. Pride overtly expressed includes haughty and oberbearing behaviour which is always disorientation to grace. Pride is in direct controversy and antithetical to the concept of grace.

6. Pride is an undue sense of one's own superiority and always a sin. Pride glorifies human good.

7. However pride is not poise, or speaking with authority, or standing erect. One who is properly self-conscious has a balanced sense of personal existence, personal dignity, worth, and self-respect.

8. Pride is the head of the list in Prov. 6:16-19.

9. Be able to distinguish from "boasting" which comes from the confidence generated from the daily function of GAP and the building of the edification complex. The key passage on this is 2 Cor. 12:1-10. That "boasting" is bona fide. Also there is a "boasting" which comes from the old sin nature.

   2 Cor. 12:5 has both in one verse:

   "Of such an one will I glory (On behalf of myself I will boast) yet on behalf of myself, I will not boast."

   Paul is saying:

   a. I will boast from my confidence in doctrine.
   b. I will not boast from pride (a mental attitude sin).

Privacy: Doctrine of (Category 459)

I. Definition of the Doctrine: As a believer-priest you have the right to represent yourself before the Lord and live your own life as unto the Lord.

II. The word "privacy" does not occur in the English Bible, but many words spell out the doctrine.

III. Freedom as protected by Divine Institution no. 4 (Nationalism) is actually the right to:

A. Reject Jesus Christ or accept Him without coercion.

B. Worship or not worship in the church of your choice.

C. Pursue a particular business.

D. Marry a particular person (believers with believers). Freedom to marry the right woman, or right man.

E. Pursue the spending of TIME as desired, just as long as it does not infringe on someone's else rights.

F. Pursue the right of free enterprise and private ownership based on your own ability.

The above points are based on a variety of verses involving various doctrines such as the doctrine of right man and right woman, of utilization of time, of the believer in business and so on. See the respective categories in this notebook.

IV. Enemies of Privacy and Freedom: "A busybody"

A. 2 Thess. 3:11, "For we hear that there are some which walk among you disorderly, working not at all, but are busybodies"

A busybody is an "invader of privacy", a "meddler in other person's affairs." This person is a judger, a maligner, and is always sticking his nose in other people's business. This particular meddling is due in part to a lot of time on the hands. (Male invasion of privacy). Men should work.

B. 1 Tim. 5:13, "And withal they learn to be idle, wandering about from house to house, and not only idle, but tattlers also and busybodies, speaking things they ought not."

This is a prime verse on women invading the privacy of the homes they visit, tattling, passing along the gossip. In both the verse above and this one the context indicates that they get out of fellowship, get a vacuum in the soul, and get out of line by invading the privacy of others. This is troublemaking in its worst form.

C. 1 Peter 4:15, "But let none of you suffer as a murderer, or as a thief, or as an evildoer, or as a busybody in other men's matters."

Note the company which surrounds the busybody. Note the "murderer", the "thief" and the "evil doer".

V. Invasion of Privacy is akin to cannibalism: Gal. 5:15

"But if ye bite and devour one another, take heed that ye be not consumed one of another."

A. This is mental murder, gossiping, maligning, sins of the tongue--you name it.

B. Why is privacy so important? Without it freedom is curtailed, and people enslave themselves very easily.

VI. However it is not an invasion of privacy to be concerned about others, pray for others, and help others.

Galatians 6:2, "Bear ye one another's burdens and so fulfill the law of Christ."

Note however, in the same context, a verse of caution, "For every man shall bear his own burden." Gal. 6:5. Everyone should become spiritually self-sustaining as soon as possible after becoming a Christian.

VII. The ultimate guardian of privacy in the mature believer, is the edification complex of the soul. Study Ephesians 3:13-21, also Eph. 4:7-32 coupled with Ephesians 5:1-33.

A. The believer who functions under GAP (Grace Apparatus for Perception) has the God-given ability to value privacy, personally--and towards others.

B. A believer who functions under GAP, is not pushy, is not violating privacy.

VIII. Paul: An Example of Desiring Privacy: ACTS 21:14

The word ἡσυχάζω indicates "to live peaceably in a relaxed manner; to allow someone use of their own volition and privacy."

"And when he would not be persuaded, we ceased, saying, the will of the Lord be done." Acts 21:14 The word "ceased" is the one we are interested in.

A. Every believer is a priest and must live his own life as unto the Lord.

B. To pursue the matter beyond this point would be an infringement on Paul's privacy.

C. Paul is wrong and they know it; but these people put the matter into the Lord's hands and let Him deal with Paul. They do not get in the way of the Lord.

D. Therefore, they must stay out of the Lord's way by allowing Paul privacy and freedom of choice.

E. So the companions of Paul ceased. They stayed with him even though they knew he was wrong. He, however, was not apostate.

F. The Lord will deal with Paul through discipline.

G. The grace of God will eventually triumph by turning cursing into blessing.

H. Application: Putting others in the Lord's hands and not interfering with their privacy or volition is a major step twoard becoming a mature believer.

Prophesies of Genesis (Three Great)
(Category 460)

1. Genesis 3:15: Prophecy of salvation. The "seed of the woman" is Jesus Christ.

2. Gen. 9:24: Whereas the first prophecy dealt with salvation, the second deals with the course of nations. Satan tries to frustrate God's plan in Genesis 6 by Angelic infiltration. Then he later tries internationalism. Genesis 11. But here in Gen. 9:24-27 information is given concerning the course of Noah's sons. Nations must exist if there is to be evangelism, and protection of the line of Christ.

3. Genesis 49:10: This deals with the Messiah, coming through the tribe of Judah. Also prophesy includes this whole chapter, the 12 tribes. The rest of the OT develops chapter 49.

Prodigal Son: Luke 15:11-24
(Category 461)

v. 11: "a certain man": The father, representing HEAVENLY FATHER.

"had two sons": Two believers, son now and in v. 32. Once a son, always a son - regardless of behaviour pattern. Jesus Christ is a Son. The believer in union with Christ shares His sonship. Both brothers are in the Top Circle. Both brothers are in the Bottom Circle at this point.

v. 12: "portion of goods . . . me": Assets for TIME, i.e. F/HS, faith-rest technique, etc.

"divided unto his living": to BOTH of them. Picture of God providing for us in Phase 2.

v. 13: "took his journey into a far country": Picked up his assets, and took off.

Top circles: Both brothers have relationship.
Bottom circle: Younger brother is out of fellowship. The elder brother is in.

v. 14: "mighty famine": Discipline

God Disciplines His own children.
God Judges unbelievers in time & eternity.

"he began to be in want": Suffering now.

v. 18: Evaluated the situation. Decided he was going home and get back in fellowship with his father.

v. 19: Once a son, always a son. He is oriented at this point. Because he is out of the bottom circle he cannot take in doctrine, he even forgot what he knew. " . . . make me as one of thy hired servants": Human works.

v. 20: "his father saw him": God sees us

"had compassion . . . kissed him": Father's attitude of grace toward us when we rebound.

v. 21: Confession of the younger brother. He is back in fellowship. Cursing turned to blessing: Heb. 12:11. "Afterward" (after rebound) it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness."

v. 22: "But": The father interrupted the confession. The son was going to repeat v. 19.
"best robe": Experiential righteousness (in the bottom circle)
"a ring": Father's signature on the checkbook. A signet ring--he can draw on his father's account for whatever he needs. "shoes on his feet": This represents service.

v. 23: "the fatted calf": Fellowship. "Be merry": Be relaxed.

v. 24: "for this my son was dead": Temporal death, believer out of fellowship.
"was lost": Operation death (dead to service)

v. 25: "was in the field": Out serving

v. 28: "he was angry": Elder brother is angry = out of fellowship

APPLICATION: VERY IMPORTANT: ONE BELIEVER SHOULD NEVER BE ANGRY because God treats another believer in grace.

v. 29: "neither transgressed I . . ." Faulty memory--when in status quo carnality.

v. 30: "devoured thy living with harlots":

The elder brother is maligning here. The elder brother doesn't know if he has lived with prostitutes. He assumes this, because his money went quite quickly. When a person is out of fellowship, it brings out his bad qualities. In this case the elder brother has the tendacy to mind the other people's business. The Bible doesn't say that the younger brother lost his money that way. Furthermore it is none of the elder brother's business because the sins of the younger brother have been forgiven.

PRINCIPLE: Do not EVER penalize anyone for his sins. Mind your own business. Romans 14:4. Live your own life before the Lord. You may get between God and the whip He is using on the sinning believer. Matt. 7:2.

v. 31: "all that I have is thine": We can appropriate all that God has for us when we are in fellowship.

As the passage closes, the elder brother is still out of fellowship.

v. 32: "was dead": Temporal death (out of fellowship).
"is alive again": Temporal life - back in the bottom circle
"was lost": Lost to service
"is found": Filling of the Holy Spirit (only means of service)

Application to Believers out of Fellowship:

1. Rebound: 1 John 1:9
2. Forget it: Phil. 3:13
3. Isolate it: Heb. 12:15
4. Move on: (Mix gnosis with faith--and transfer it to the human spirit (epignosis).

Prophecy: Dual Fulfillment of Prophecy (Category 462)

1. Dual fulfillment of prophecy was used by:
   a. Daniel
   b. Zechariah
   c. Isaiah
2. They gave prophecy with a near fulfillment and a far fulfillment.
3. The near fulfillment occured generally between 516 BC and 70 AD, between the two periods of the 5th Cycle of Discipline.
4. Far fulfillment usually is the Day of the Lord, consisting of the Tribulation, 2nd Advent, and the Millennium.
5. Purpose of dual fulfillment is to declare two parallel events that are future from the time given.
6. Example: Daniel 8:20 ff. (Statue)

   Near fulfillment: Antiochus Epiphanes
   Far fulfillment: Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire
7. Today:
   a. Since the near fulfillment is history, we have an historical analogy to eschatological events in the Day of the Lord:
   b. Tribulation, 2nd Advent, Millennium.

Punishment: Degrees of (Category 463)

1. Degrees of punishment tends to deny a literal Lake of Fire, there is no indication that the Lake of Fire has different levels of heat. This would mean that God recognizes works of the flesh--and awards an unbeliever a better place in the Lake of Fire on the basis of human good. Scripture NEVER backs this up.
2. Degrees of punishment is contrary to the Doctrine of Unlimited Atonement; man is not judged on the basis of sin, but upon the issue of what he does with the person and work of Christ. He rejects Christ, and therefore chooses his own pattern of human good. The Great White Throne deals with human good, which is no good as far as preparation for heaven.
3. Degrees of punishment is based on the false principle of Hegel: Thesis--Antithesis--synthesis.
4. Degrees of punishment destroys the issue in salvation, it diverts from rejedtion of Christ to sins. One rejection is 100% condemnation. (Dying in Christ-rejectio

Propitiation
(Category 464)

I. Barrier: Character of God +R

A. God is absolute righteousness (+R). Psalm 145:17, "The Lord is righteous in all His ways, and holy in all His works."

B. God is offended by man's -R. Romans 3:23, John 3:36.

II. The Work of Christ: Propitiation (Satisfaction)

A. Definition: The act of appeasing wrath and conciliating an offending person.

B. God's RIGHTEOUSNESS is satisfied because of the PERSON of Jesus Christ (His death on the cross).

1 John 2:2, "And He is the propitiation (satisfaction) for our sins; and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world."

C. IN SALVATION: Romans 3:25

1. God is PROPITATED (satisfied) by the person and work of Jesus Christ.

2. Man is RECONCILED. (Responds by faith).

D. All sin (believers & unbelievers) was borne on the cross.

1. Thus sin is no longer the issue.

2. The issue is the Lord Jesus Christ who bore our sin.

The doctrine of propitiation allows God's holiness to be satisfied--and since it is, man can come through the person and work of Christ--and share this satisfactory relationship with the Father.

Promises
(Category 465)

Daily Fuel for the Faith-Rest Life--Promises to be used instead of

Upon Arising WOOOORRRY Thru the Day

1. Romans 8:28: "And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to His purpose."

2. 1 Peter 5:7: "Casting all your care upon Him; for He careth for you."

3. 1 Thess. 5:18: "In everything give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you."

4. 1 Samuel 17:47: "And all this assembly shall know that the Lord saveth not with sword and spear: for the battle is the Lord's, and He will give you into our hands!"

5. 1 Cor. 1:9: "God is faithful, by whom ye were called unto the fellowship of His Son Jesus Christ our Lord."

6. 2 Tim. 1:7: "For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind."

7. Matthew 21:22: "And all things, whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer believing, ye shall receive."

8. Philippians 4:19: "But my God shall supply all your need according to His riches in glory by Christ Jesus."

9. Exodus 14:13-14: "And Moses said unto the people, Fear ye not, stand still, and see the salvation of the Lord, which He will show to you today: for the Egyptians whom ye have seen today, ye shall see them again no more forever. The Lord shall fight for you and ye shall hold your peace."

10. Psalm 4:8: "I will both lay me down in peace, and sleep: for thou Lord, only makest me dwell in safety."

11. Psalm 56:3: "What time I am afraid, I will trust in thee."

12. Isaiah 40:31: "But they that wait upon the Lord shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles, they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint."

13. Isaiah 26:3: "Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on thee; because he trusteth in thee."

14. Isaiah 41:10: "Fear thou not: for I am with thee; be not dismayed, for I am thy God; I will strengthen thee; yea I will help thee, yea, I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness."

15. Romans 8:31: "What shall we then say to these things? If God be for us, who can be against us?"

16. Romans 8:32: "He that spared not His own Son, but delivered Him up for us all, how shall He not with Him also freely give us all things."

Promises Continued:

Use When Praying for the Unsaved

17. 2 Peter 3:9: "The Lord is not slack concerning His promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance." (Believe in Jesus Christ as Saviour).

Use to get back in Fellowship

18. Hebrews 12:1-2: "Wherefore, seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight and the sin which doth so easily beset us and let us run with patience the race that is set before us, (2) Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God."

19. 1 John 1:9: "If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness."

What we have in the Word: His Mind

20. 1 Corinthians 2:16: "For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct Him? But we have the mind of Christ."

Describing Present Tense Eternal Life

21. John 10:28: "And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man snatch them out of my hand."

22. John 10:29: "My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand."

23. John 10:30: "I and my Father are one".

The Endurance of Divine Good

24. Philippians 1:6: "Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you shall perform it until the day of Jesus Christ."

What to Do when Things Bother You

25. Philippians 3:13-14: "Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before, (14) I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus."

26. Philippians 4:6-7: "Be careful for nothing; but in everything by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. (7) And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus."

Qualification of the Lord Jesus Christ to Be the Saviour . .
(Category 466)

1. Only the Lord Jesus Christ was qualified to die for the sins of the world.

2. Jesus Christ, in His Deity, could not be Saviour. Why?

   a. Sovereignty: Not subject to death
   b. Righteousness: +R cannot have contact with sin.
   c. Eternal Life: Eternal life cannot die
   d. Omnipresence: Cannot be reduced to one point: Cross.
   e. Omnipotence: Able NOT to die - not ABLE to die.
   f. Immutability: Cannot change.

3. He had to become TRUE HUMANITY: Heb. 2:14-16

4. Adam was created innocent. Then he sinned through negative volition and he died spiritually, acquiring an OSN, which from then on was the source of his personal sin. Romans 5:12.

5. Since then all members of the Human Race have been born spiritually dead.

6. Jesus Christ, in His Humanity, was qualified to become the Saviour:

   a. He became true humanity. John 1:14, "word became flesh".

   b. No imputed sin: 2 Cor. 5:21
      No inherent sin: 2 Cor. 5:21
      No personal sin (All personal sin comes from the OSN).

   c. He beame the UNIQUE PERSON OF THE UNIVERSE: The God-Man.

7. He was qualified because through the Virgin Birth:

   a. The sin of Adam was not imputed to Him,
   b. He did not inherit an OSN, and
   c. He had not committed any personal sins.

8. He was qualified to--and did:

   a. Die with reference to the old sin nature, condemning it.

   b. Bear the sins of the old sin nature.

   c. Reject the human good which comes from the area of strength of the old sin nature.

Qualified Administrator: The Lord Jesus Christ
Davidic Covenant
(Category 467)

I. The Bible Presents Several Men as Genius Caliber:

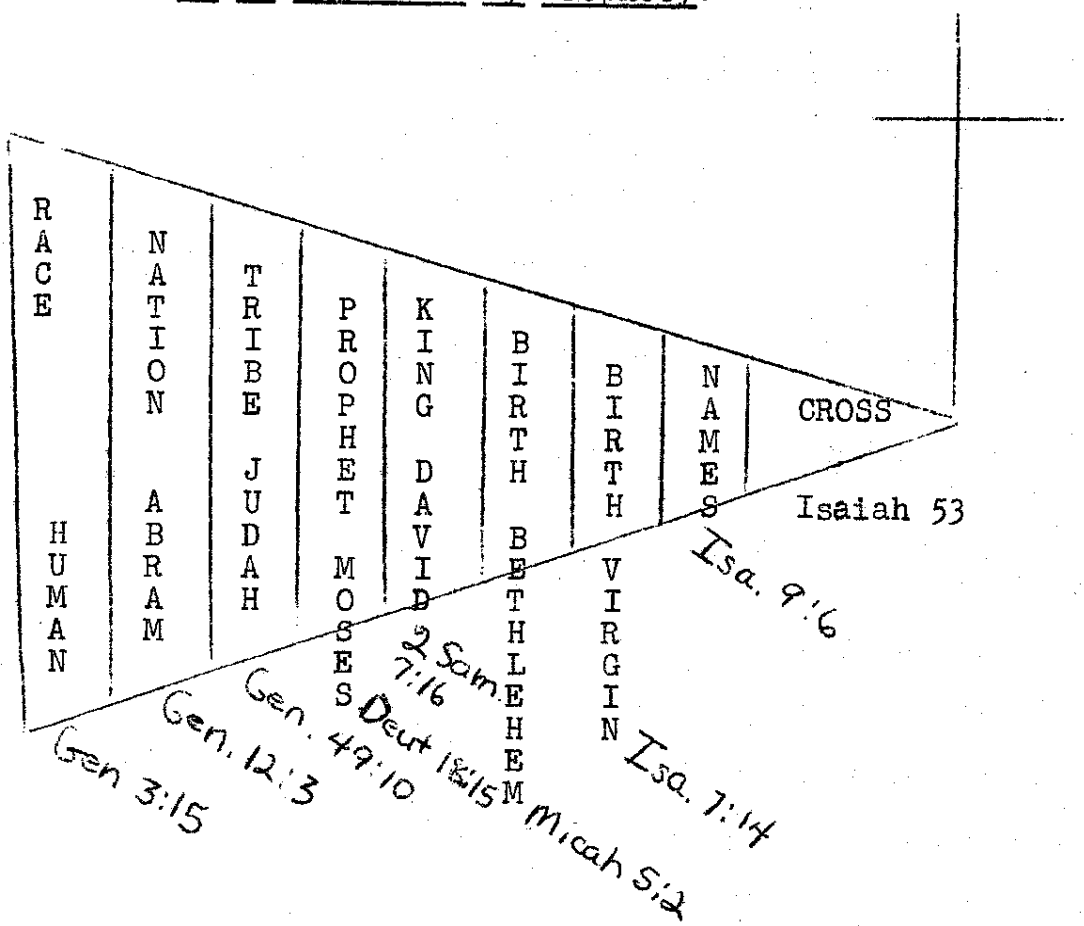
A. Joseph: Genesis 37 and following

B. Moses: Exodus 2 and following through Deuteronomy

C. Daniel: Daniel 6:1-3 and other portions of Scripture

II. The Bible, however, PRESENTS Jesus Christ as THE ADMINISTRATOR:

A. He is Qualified by Prophecy:



B. He is Qualified by Lineage: Matt. 1, Luke 3

C. He is Qualified by the Davidic Covenant: 2 Samuel 7, Luke 1 (House, Kingdom, Throne)

D. He is Qualified by the Ascension: He was told to "sit down". Hebrews 1.

E. He is Qualified by being the God-Man: John 1:1-14

F. He is Qualified by the Perfect Genius with Perfect Spiritual IQ. 1 Cor. 1 & 2.

Rainbow: Significance of the Rainbow in Relationship to the LJC
(Categorical 468)

1. Significance of the Rainbow is found in Genesis 9:12-16.

2. No one ever saw a rainbow before the Flood because of ante-diluvian weather conditions. No rain, therefore no rainbow. A rainbow says, in effect, that God keeps His Word.

3. The first rainbow was a sign (promise) from God (before the Word of God existed) that God never again would destroy the earth by water and that the creatures would be perpetuated.

4. The color of the spectrum of the rainbow is caused by refraction of light - the rays of the sun on drops of rain or mist, whereby parts of the spectrum become visible to the human eye. The bow always forms when the rain lessens or stops.

5. Since the rainbow is formed by the refraction of light from the sun's rays, it becomes a token, a principle of God's promise.

   Every time God makes a promise it is backed by His perfect character.

6. In Rev. 4:3 the color that is dominant in the rainbow is green - TRANSLUCENT GREEN. This speaks of eternal life. ("this life is in His Son"): 1 John 5:11-12, therefore His promises are permanent. "The Word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever." 1 Peter 1:23.

7. Just as the rainbow is a joint production of storm and sunshine, so Eternal Life to the believer is a joint production of storm and sunshine.

   a. Storm: The old sin nature. However, the sins of the world were poured out on the Lord Jesus Christ. He was judged in our place.

   b. Sunshine: Salvation: This was provided for us through judgment. The Lord Jesus Christ was judged in our place.

8. The rainbow, therefore in every aspect, is a token of the Grace of God.

When was the last time you saw a rainbow in the sky and noted its SIGNIFICANCE??

Rapture
(Category 469..)

1. The Rapture was PROPHESIED AND PROMISED by the Lord Jesus Christ on the eve of His crucifixion. John 14:1-3.

2. Definition: Rapture is the return of the Lord Jesus Christ for believers at the end of the Church Age (body of Jesus Christ). He will be visible only to believers as He does not touch the earth. They meet Him in the air. 1 Thess. 4:17, Acts 1:11.

3. The dead IN CHRIST (Church age believers) are raised first and then those which are alive are caught up. 1 Thess. 4:16-17.

4. All believers (spiritual and carnal) go up in the Rapture. Those in Christ go (in top circle) and as well as those out of fellowship (bottom circle).

5. Believers go to heaven where their works are evaluated at the Judgment Seat of Christ. 2 Cor. 5:10.

6. An example of the Rapture (translation) performed by God: Enoch was transferred from earth to Paradise. Genesis 5:24.

7. The Rapture involves "Church" only - the body of Christ. Christ is the head of the body, the church. 1 Cor. 12:12-13; Col. 1:18.

8. Christ appears as the head of the Church.

9. The "Church" is a mystery, not revealed in the Old Testament. Ephesians 3:1-5.

10. The "Church" endures testing which ends with the rapture. The Body of Christ is the target for the Angelic Conflict.

11. The Rapture is the Christian's hope and is a source of comfort. 1 Thess. 1:10, 4:18, Titus 2:13.

12. The believer has a RESERVATION in heaven. 1 Peter 1:4; Eph. 2:6.

13. The Rapture is the completion of the redemption of the body. The believer receives a resurrection body, ultimate sanctification. Phil. 3:20-21, 1 John 3:2.

14. At the Rapture there is no dealing with sin on the earth.

15. At the Rapture there are no recorded changes in nature.

16. Israel's unconditional covenants are still unfulfilled.

17. The time element for the Rapture is unknown. The deduction is that it will occur when the number of believers are equal to the number of operational demons. Eph. 2:21, "the building groweth."

Rapture: Comparison Between the Rapture and the 2nd Advent (Category 470)

See Page 124.

Rapture: Enoch: Example of the Rapture (Category 471)

1. Enoch was the first man ever to be transferred from one place to another and changed from one form to another. Genesis 5:24, "And Enoch walked with God: and he was not: for God took him."

2. Enoch did not die like the others before him.

   a. "Adam died; Seth died": Gen. 5:5, 5:8

   b. "Enos died; Cainan died": Gen. 5:11, 14

3. "Enoch was translated that he should not see death, and he was not found because God had translated him." Heb. 11:5.

4. Enoch was taken to Paradise because "no man hath ascended up to heaven, even the Son of man, which is in heaven." Remember, this was written before the cross--resurrection--and ascension of Christ. And Enoch lived a long time previous to the giving of John 3:13.

5. It was God who made this miraculous translation possible, and--

6. It is God who will bring it about again in time to come: RAPTURE OF THE CHURCH.

7. Resurrection: Lives forever. Example; the Lord Jesus Christ.

   Resuscitation: Die again. Example: Lazarus

Rapture: Events At (Category 472)

I. The Principle of Resurrection: 1 Cor. 15:20-23

A. v. 20: "firstfruits": A picture of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ. The resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ is a guarantee of our bodily resurrection. Phil. 3:21, 1 John 3:1-2.

B. v. 21: "by man": Through Adam.

"came death": Spiritual death, the end result being physical death.

"by man": The humanity of Christ.

"resurrection of the dead": The sequence: Spiritual resurrection (salvation) and physical resurrection). Phil. 3:21.

C. v. 23: "in his own order": The batallion review (four phases).

II. The Facts of the Resurrection: 1 Cor. 15:51-53

A. v. 51: "mystery": That which was hidden from the OT saints. The "Church" was never revealed in the OT. The Rapture is pertinent to the Church Age only.

"we shall not all sleep": Not all going to die

"we shall all be changed": Resurrection body. All living believers will be changed at the Rapture.

B. v. 52: "In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye": This is the time element. (Faster than winking).

"dead shall be raised incorruptible": The dead were called corruptible. The Resurrection body makes them incorruptible.

"we shall be changed": Alive believers

C. v. 53: "this corruptible": Dead believers

"must put on incorruption": The Resurrection body. 1 John 3:1-2, Phil. 3:21.

"this mortal": Living believer

"must out on immortality": Will not die, but will be changed into a resurrection body.

Rapture: Instructions While Waiting
(Category 473)

I. Use Faith-Rest: 2 Thess. 2:1-2

"Now we beseech you, brethren, by (concerning) the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto Him (Rapture),

That ye be not soon shaken in MIND (know doctrine) or be troubled (emotionally), neither by spirit (of a demon) nor by word (of a false teacher) nor by letter AS from us (forged letter), as that day of Christ (Day of the Lord - 2nd Advent) is at hand."

II. Have Patience: James 5:7 (Faith-rest technique perpetuated)

"Be patient therefore unto the coming of the Lord . . ."

III. Have Confidence: Phil. 1:6

"Being confident of this very thing, that He which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ." (Rapture).

IV. Stay in Fellowship (in the bottom circle) 1 John 2:28:

"And now, little children, abide (stay in the bottom circle) in Him; that when He shall appear, we may have confidence and not be ashamed (result) before Him at His coming."

V. Get where you can learn doctrine: James 5:8

" . . . be ye also patient; stablish your hearts (minds) for the coming of the Lord draweth nigh."

This refers to using the mind as a staging center for transferring gnosis to epignosis. This is done by faith. As the believer does this an edification structure is erected. Paul in Colossians 1:9-10 was desirious that the "Colosse pocket" there have a breakthrough; "filled with the knowledge, (epignosis) of God."

Isaiah 33:6, "And wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times . . ."

2 Timothy 2:15: "Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the Word of Truth."

"workman": Witness, making the issue clear. The ISSUE IS:

"Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved." Acts 16:31.

Rebound: Basis of (1 John 1:9)
(Category 474)

Definition of Rebound: The means by which a person out of fellowship (carnal) gets back into fellowship (spiritual) nonmeritoriously. For believers only, the key word is "confess" as used in 1 John 1:9.

I. Jesus Christ was judged for our sins on the cross:

A. New Testament: 1 Peter 2:24, 2 Cor. 5:21
B. Old Testament: Isaiah 53:3-5

II. Under the law of double jeopardy, these sins cannot be judged again. Jesus Christ does not have to bear our sins twice.

III. Rebound is an extension of propitiation (satisfaction).

IV. The blood of Jesus Christ (which speaks of Christ bearing our sins) is the foundation for forgiveness; 1 John 1:7, Heb. 9:22.

V. The work of the blood of Christ is twofold:

A. Cleansing at the Point of Salvation:

OT:	NT:
Isa. 44:22	Eph. 1:7
Psalm 103:12	Rev. 1:5, Heb. 9:22
Gal. 3:6-8	Romans 5:9

B. Cleansing in Time:

OT:	NT:
Psalm 32:5	1 John 1:7 linked with
Psalm 51:1-5	1 John 1:9
Isaiah 43:25-28	

VI. The reason rebound works is that the blood of Christ keeps on cleansing (1 John 1:7) from all sin.

A. All sins were paid for at the cross.
B. Forgiveness was provided at the cross.
C. Rebound results in cleansing (Experiencial +R) 1 John 1:9.

VII. Decision to Rebound: Let us enter into judgment.

A. OT: "Let us plead together": Isa. 43:26
B. NT: "Let a man examine himself": 1 Cor. 11:28
"If we would judge ourselves": 1 Cor. 11:31

VIII. Therefore confession of sin is recognition of:

A. OT: God knew (Omniscience) what would be accomplished at the cross. 1 Peter 1:18-20. God "winked at sin" means He held up judgment of sin until the cross. Acts 17:30.
B. NT: What was accomplished at the cross. 1 Peter 2:24.

IX. This means:

A. OT: God forward to the cross.
B. NT: Go back to the cross where sin was judged.

Rebound: Helping Another Believer Rebound Or Washing Feet Spiritually.
(Category 475)

1. Do not run down a believer out of fellowship, or malign them. This does not help them.

2. Do not get carnal (out of fellowship) when helping others: Remember, you have failed too. Consider the source as per Galatians 6:1:

   "Brethren; if a man be overtaken in a fault, ye which are spiritual, restore such an one in the spirit of meekness; considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted.

3. Do not try to be the Lord's whip: Romans 12:19

   "Dearly beloved, avenge not yourselves; but rather give place unto wrath (step aside, let the Lord work) for it is written, Vengeance is mine; I will repay saith the Lord."

   Give wrath a wide berth, two angry people cannot communicate.

4. Have an attitude of grace: Matthew 18:23 and following. Always deal with a person in grace. Understand and operate on the principle of grace. This does not compromise your convictions. Forgive as the Lord Jesus Christ forgave - completely and immediately. Romans 7:14.

5. There must be an attitude of fellowship: James 5:19-20:

   "If (3rd class condition) any of you believers do wander from the truth (maybe you will, maybe you won't--but if you do) and one (believer) restores or brings him (believer out of fellowship) back, let him (restorer) know; that he which restores or brings back the sinning one from the error of his way shall deliver the soul from temporal death or the sin unto unto death, and shall cover a multitude of sins."

6. The washing of the disciples feet in John 13:2-20 speaks of restoration to fellowship, rather than getting saved. The context teaches that one is saved once and for all, but needs many restorations to fellowship. The analogy is that the bath (washing the whole body) speaks of salvation, the washing of feet was done many times--referring to getting back into fellowship. 1 John 1:9.

Rebound in the Old Testament
Isaiah 43:25-28
(Category 476)

I. The Principle of Rebound: Isa. 43:25

"thy transgressions": Confessed sins

"for mine own sake": The sake of Christ

"will not remember thy sins": Unknown sins. When we confess the known sins, He blots out the unknown sins. Same as 1 John 1:9. Thus in 1 John 1:9, "sins" = known sins, and "unrighteousness" = unknown sins.

II. The Mechanics of Rebound: v. 26

"put me in remembrance": Cause me to remember to use rebound. It is the only hope for me as a believer, and for the nation. The health of the nation depends upon the spiritual life of its born-again individuals.

"let us plead together": Let us enter into judgment. All sins were judged at the cross.

"declare thou": CONFESS (name it to the Father), you do the confessing. You NEVER CONFESS YOUR sins to Jesus!

"that": Result clause: As a result of confessing.

"you may be justified": Cleansed, be made experiencially righteous.

III. The Alternative to Rebound: v. 27-28

A. v. 27: "Thy first father": King Hezekiah

"hath sinned": Reference to the five sins of Hezekiah whereby the Assyrians invaded the land. Starting at the top there had been sin.

"thy teachers have transgressed": Teachers did not teach doctrine. Only Isaiah did.

B. v. 28: "profaned": Destroyed. Referring to the 5th Cycle of discipline as it would come.

"given Jacob": Unbelieving Israel

"to the cruse": 5th cycle of discipline.

"Israel to reproaches": Believers. Believers suffer with unbelievers in national discipline. The 5th Cycle refers to the Babylonian captivity. The alternative to Bible Doctrine and rebound is divine discipline.

IV. Other Rebound Scriptures in the OT: Psalm 32:5; 51:1-5; 38.

Rebound in the New Testament
(Category 477)

1. Rebound must be understood in the light of:

   a. Positional truth: Believers are always in the top circle.

   b. Eternal Security: Believers cannot lose their salvation

   c. Existence of the Carnal Christian: Believers do sin. 1 Cor. 3.

   d. Doctrines related to the old sin nature.

2. The Mechanics of Rebound:

   a. Confession to God: 1 John 1:9

   b. Forget it: God forgets it. Phil. 3:13-14

   c. Isolate it: Heb. 12:15

3. Alternative to Rebound:

   a. Discipline: Heb. 12:1-5

   b. Sin unto Death: 1 John 5:16 (almost always someone who refuses to rebound).

4. Case History of Rebound: Luke 15:11-32 (The Prodigal Son)

5. Assistance to Rebound: Gal. 6:1

   Forgive as Christ forgave. Matt. 18:23-28

6. Purpose of Rebound:

   So the believer can have production through the filling of the Holy Spirit. Rebound is not a license to sin, but a license to serve. Proverbs 1:23.

7. The Basis of Rebound:

   Sins were paid for at the cross. 1 John 1:7

8. Rebound described prophetically. Proverbs 1:23

9. Rebound Psalms: Psalm 32, 38, 51

Reconciliation
(Category 478)

I. Definition of Reconciliation: Reconciliation is PEACE WITH GOD, because of the removal of the Barrier between God & man.

Peace is a technical word for man's response to Grace. Peace can never come to you apart from Grace. When an unbeliever responds by faith to Grace, the result is PEACE, Phase 1. Eph. 2:14-18.

II. Now the only barrier is the Lord Jesus Christ who is the AGENT of RECONCILIATION. Romans 5:10. Jesus Christ removed the barrier.

III. The Mechanics of Reconciliation: Eph. 2:14-18

v. 14: "Peace": Reconciliation - removal of the barrier
"both": Jew and Gentile

v. 15: "abolished": Once and for all
"in His flesh": Humanity of Jesus Christ
"law of commandments": Codex #1, Mosiac Law
"ordinances": Codex #2
"make in himself . . . man": Union with Christ

v. 16: "both": Jew and Gentile
"slain the enmity": Removed the barrier

v. 17: "you which were afar off": Gentiles
"them that are nigh": Jews

v. 18: Baptism of the Holy Spirit. (Union with Christ)

IV. The Cross is the POINT OF RECONCILIATION. Col. 1:20

"Having made peace": Reconciliation. Col. 1:20

"through the blood of His cross": The blood is the INSTRUMENT OF RECONCILIATION. The blood speaks of the spiritual death of Jesus Christ (bearing our sins).

"to reconcile": To remove the barrier
"all things": two categories
"things in earth": Those who live after the cross.
"things in heaven": Those who lived before the cross.
In God's sight the cross was an accomplished fact in eternity past. 1 Peter 1:18-20.

V. The Result of Reconciliation: Ultimate sanctification
Col. 1:21-22: v. 22: "body of His flesh": Humanity
"through death": Spiritual and physical
"unblameable": No condemnation
"unreprovable": Without flaw or defects
"holy": Because of who and what Christ is.

VI. The believer is the MINISTER OF RECONCILIATION. 2 Cor. 5:18-19.

Redemption
(Category 479)

1. Redemption was recognized in the Old Testament. Job 19:25-26

2. The doctrine of redemption is used to orient believers in time of stress. Job 19:25, "I KNOW that my Redeemer liveth".

3. Redeemed means to be purchased from slavery.

4. The principle of redemption is the concept of bondage to the slavery of sin, and freedom from its domination. John 8:31-36, "servant": bond slave.

5. Jesus Christ purchased our freedom from the Slave MARKET OF SIN. Psalm 34:22, 1 Peter 1:18-19, Gal. 3:13.

6. The blood of Jesus Christ, who is impeccable, is the payment for redemption. Eph. 1:7, 1 Peter 1:18-19.

7. Redemption results in adoption. Gal. 4:4-6

8. Redemption is the basis of our eternal inheritance. Heb. 9:15.

9. Redemption is the basis of justification. Romans 3:24.

10. Redemption includes the total forgiveness of sins: Phase 1 and Phase 2. Eph. 1:7, Col. 1:14.

11. Redemption emphasizes the character of the Son, the Lord Jesus Christ. Propitiation emphasizes the character of the Father.

12. At the point of redemption we can have peace of mind, stability, a relaxed mental attitude (RMA) by knowing the doctrine of redemption. 1 Peter 1:18-19. God has paid for and provided for everything.

Regeneration
(Category 480)

I. Barrier: Physical Birth

A. Physical life is imparted through human parents.

B. Every member of the Human Race is born spiritually dead (no fellowship with God) Eph. 2:5-6, Col. 2:13 (dead in trespasses and sin).

II. The Work of Christ: Regeneration (New Birth)

A. Definition: The supernatural work of God whereby Eternal Life is imparted by faith to the individual.

1. From the Father: James 1:18
2. Provided by the Lord Jesus Christ: John 1:11, 12; Gal. 3:26.
3. By the agency of the Holy Spirit. Titus 3:5.

B. Through REGENERATION (New Birth) the individual is made spiritually alive. Eph. 2:5-6, Col. 2:13. "hath quickened us together with Christ."

C. New Nature (Human spirit) in which an edification complex can be built. 2 Cor. 5:17, Col. 2:7.

1. IS CREATED: Which is capable of fellowship with God.

"in Christ": In Union with Christ.
"he is a new creature": NEW BIRTH
"old things are passed away": -R of man
"all things are become new": +R of God

2 Cor. 5:21, +R imputed to man at salvation.

In salvation our volition is involved only in our decision to accept the Lord Jesus Christ. The 5 things that happen at the moment of salvation are accomplished by God the Holy Spirit, not by us, therefore they are not an experience.

2. AND IS CAPABLE of a desire to do is will: Eph. 2:10

"unto": For the purpose of
"good works": All the doing of God on earth is done by by believers filled with the Holy Spirit.

"ordained": Prepared. The divine operating assets provided by God.

Relationship: God the Father to the Human Race (Category 481)

1. There are two categories in the Human Race: Believer and Unbeliever.

2. God the Father is:

   a. The FATHER OF ALL BELIEVERS: Gal. 3:26, " . . . for ye are all the children of God (believers) by faith in Christ Jesus." Also 1 John 5:11-12, believers share Christ's Sonship.

   b. Also the God of ALL BELIEVERS.

      John 20:17b, "I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God and your God."

3. God the FATHER IS:

   a. Not the FATHER of unbelievers:

      John 8:43-44, "If God were your Father, ye would love me . . . ye are of your father the devil . . ."

   b. The GOD of the ENTIRE HUMAN RACE (on the basis of creation)

      Jer. 32:27, "I am the Lord, the God of all flesh": (Whether acknowledged or not).

      All souls belong to God. Ezek. 18:4a; Dan. 5:23b.

4. No human being has the power to make himself a child of God. This transforming power belongs to God alone and is conditioned upon the simple act of faith.

   John 1:12-13, "But as many as received Him, to them GAVE HE power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on His name.

   Galatians 3:26: "For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus."

5. Birth into God's Family makes Him our Father.

   Titus 3:5, "Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to His mercy He saved us, by the washing of REGENERATION (new birth) and renewing of the Holy Spirit." John 3:5-6, 1 John 3:1-2, 1 Peter 1:23.

6. He who was GOD IS NOW FATHER also. Romans 8:15b, " . . . ye have received the Spirit of adoption whereby we cry, Abba, Father." (Abba is Aramaic for Father).

   The unbeliever addresses the Father as "God" while the believer can call the Sovereign of the Universe "Father." This is a privilege of believers only.

7. The believer has ASSURANCE that he is a child of God.

Romans 8:16, "The Spirit itself (Himself-HS) beareth witness with our spirit (human spirit) that we are the children of God."

8. Nothing can ever remove the child of God from his new position: IN CHRIST.

Romans 8:38-39, "For I am persuaded that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come; Neither height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord."

9. Because He is our Father we have:

a. Love of the Father: John 16:27

b. Provision of the Father:

(1) Verses:

Matthew 7:11, " . . . give good things to them that ask".

Colossians 1:12, "Giving thanks unto the Father which hath made us meet (qualified) to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light." Union with Christ.

1 John 1:5, "God is light."

(2) In Union with Christ we share (Too Circle)

Eternal life: 1 John 5:11-12

+R: 2 Cor. 5:21

Sonship: Gal. 3:26, Rom. 8:17

Heirship: Rom. 8:16-17

Election: 1 Peter 1:2

Destiny: Eph. 1:5, 11

Sanctification: 1 Cor. 1:2

Priesthood: 1 Peter 2:5, 9

Kingship: 2 Peter 1:11

Relationship: God the Father to the Lord Jesus Christ (Category 482)

1. See the Category on the Language of Accommodation:

2. Understand the Trinity (see Categories on Trinity).

3. There is an ACKNOWLEDGED relationship between the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ: Psalm 2:7, "Thou art my Son . . ." Heb. 1:5.

4. It is a TWO-FOLD RELATIONSHIP: "God" and "Father" 1 Peter 1:3, "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ."

5. In Christ's DEITY:

   a. There is a Father-Son relationship--

   b. Making Christ Jesus the Son from all eternity

      Matt. 16:16, "Thou are THE Christ (Deity), the Son of the living God."

      Romans 15:6: " . . . glorify God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ."

      Isaiah 9:6a " . . . unto us a son is given . . ." Deity.

6. In Christ's HUMANITY THERE is a Father-Son relationship.

   Luke 1:35b, " . . . that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God."

7. In Christ's HUMANITY thehere is also a God-man relationship.

   a. Isaiah 9:6a: "For unto us a child is born": HUMANITY

   b. Hebrews 10:7: "I come . . . to do thy will, O God." HUMANITY

8. Jesus: Refers to Humanity: Jesus Christ: Emphasis on Humanity.

   Christ: Refers to Deity: Christ Jesus: Emphasis on Deity

   The Lord Jesus Christ: God-Man-Saviour

9. RESPONSE of the Lord Jesus Christ to the 1st Person of the Trinity

   a. Declares His Father (John 1:18) because He (Son) has been with Him (Father) forever. (John 1:11)

   b. Offered Himself: Heb. 9:14

   c. Became obedient even unto death: Phil. 2:8

Relationship: Jesus Christ to Angels
(Category 483)

I. The Pre-Incarnation of Jesus Christ:

In the OT the Lord Jesus Christ appeared as the Angel of Jehovah. See the Category on Christophany:

II. The Pre-Ascension: Period of Incarnation: God the Son took on Himself humanity.

A. "made a little lower than the angels": Heb. 2:9 (Took the form of lower creation (humanity). However, He is always to be worshipped.

B. He became the God-Man: Phil. 2:5-8. Hypostatic Union: See Category 178.

III. The Post-Ascension of Jesus Christ: Resurrected Christ. The God-Man is higher than angels.

A. 1 Peter 3:22, "Who (Jesus Christ) is gone into heaven and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject to Him."

B. Hebrews 1:13, "But to which of the angels said He at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?"

IV. Because as BELIEVERS, we are heirs of salvation (IN CHRIST) we are positionally higher than angels. Heb. 1:14

A. Phase one: The above (salvation makes it so).

B. Phase two: Result: Each believer has a guardian angel. Heb. 1:14, "Are they not all ministering spirits (angels) sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation."

C. Phase three: In resurrection bodies, believers will be in actuality superior to angels.

V. In the Old Testament:

A. Angels are called "sons of God": Job 1:6

B. Believers are called "servants of God." Daniel 3:26

VI. In the New Testament:

A. Because of Positional Truth, believers are called "sons": Gal. 3:26.

B. Angels are called "servants". Heb. 1:14

Relationship: Man to Angels
(Category 484)

1. Man was created lower than angels. Heb. 2:7

2. Jesus Christ was made lower than angels so that He might provide salvation for man. Heb. 2:9.

3. Man was created so that he might resolve the Angelic Conflict - by accepting the provision of salvation through the non-meritorious act of faith, proving that God was fair in sentencing Satan to the Lake of Fire because Satan went negative against God's provision for him, and for all angels.

4. Regenerate man, because of his POSITION IN CHRIST, is now POSITIONALLY higher than angels.

5. Believers in the Church Age have this position IN Christ for a reason: Jesus Christ became the heir when He was seated. It is necessary for the "joint-heirs with Christ" to be superior to angels, and still live on this earth.

6. Believers in the Church Age die at different times, but all get their resurrection bodies at the same time: Rapture.

7. At resurrection the believer is both POSITIONALLY higher and PHYSICALLY higher than angels, because he has a body exactly like that of the LJC, (Phil. 3:21) and He, in resurrection body, is higher than angels. Heb. 1:13.

8. Because it is the church (body of Christ) who bumps the demons at the 2nd Advent, in the Church Age Satanic activity (demon activity) toward the church (body of Christ) is much more concentrated than at any other period in history.

9. It must gall Satan that so many believers (in or out of fellowship) are positionally superior to him.

Religion VS. Christianity
(Category 485)

1. Religion is the worst thing in the world. Note Christ in action in Matthew 23.

2. Christianity is the best thing in the world. Jude 24.

3. Religion is man seeking to gain the approval of God by human works, either:

   a. Phase 1: For salvation, or
   b. Phase 2: For spirituality

4. Christianity is God doing something for man through His Grace, and God getting the glory, both at:

   a. Phase 1: Salvation
   b. Phase 2: Spirituality

5. "Do-goodism" is the basis for religion: Romans 2, Matthew 23. Religion is the basis for Christianity: Titus 3:5

6. Religion is the greatest opposition to the truth (the antithesis). It is ritual without reality. (Any passage dealing with the ritual of the Pharisees).

7. Religion is the Satanic counterfeit of true relationship with God. Isaiah 14, 2 Thess. 2, Rev. 13.

8. Nothing Satan has ever devised has been so successful as religion in blinding men's minds to the truth.

9. Any system of religion which is man-centered (man seeking to solve man's problems by man's efforts) is Satanic in nature and basically becomes a worship of Satan, as Satan is the author of "do-goodism".

10. The old sin nature also has an area of human good which cranks out this "do-goodism", this sincere human good. This human good ultimately worships Satan, as does all religion.

11. Religion appeals to the lust pattern of the old sin nature (Approbation, ego lust) or the emotions. (Desire to get into the glamour of the ritual).

12. Religion is often the great killer, the great persecutor; destroyer of human freedom as well as human bodies.

13. Christianity recognizes the freedom of the individual and this freedom cannot exist unless there is a separation of church and state.

14. Religion is money-minded (pledges, duns, etc.) Also religion is used to develop businesses of some people within a religious organization and to freeze out others.

15. Religion purports to be a mass solution. Christianity IS a personal solution.

Religion of the GALATIANS: Gal. 4:8-11
(Category 486)

I. Pre-salvation experience: 4:8

A. Satan is the father of religion. John 8:44, 2 Cor. 11:13-15. Demons are the agents of religion, 1 Cor. 10:16-21. Unbelievers are blinded by religion. 2 Cor. 4:3-4.

B. The Galatians before salvation had practiced polytheism, and libations, and had worked to propitiate demons.

II. Present experience: 4:9-11

A. Now after they had known God, they had turned to the weak and beggarly elements.

B. The weak elements refer to legalism, which the Judaizer taught; and it had no power to save or to glorify Jesus Christ. The beggarly elements refer to the Mosiac Law which had no power to impart riches; no operating capital.

III. Now, they were back to a works system, oberving:

A. Days: Observed Sabbaths (Saturday)

B. Months: Four different religious festivals and fasts:

1. 4th month: Commemorate the fall and capture of Jerusalem. Jer. 39:2.

2. 7th month: Commemorate the murder of Gedaliah, governor of the remnant. Jer. 41:1.

3. 5th month: Commemorate the destruction of the Temple and Jerusalem. Jer. 52:12-13.

4. 10th month: Commemorate Nebuchadnezzar's seige of Jerusalem. Jer. 39:1

C. Times: Jewish feasts which were God's timetable for Israel, but were not necessary now. They were all pictures, shadows, of the person and work of Jesus Christ:

1. Passover: The death of Jesus Christ
2. Unleavened bread: Fellowship of Jesus Christ
3. First fruits: Resurrection of Jesus Christ
4. Pentecost: Beginning of the Church
5. Trumpets: 2nd Advent and regathering of Jews.
6. Atonement: Salvation of Israel.
7. Tabernacles: Millennial, reign of Jesus Christ.

D. Years:

1. Sabbathical year: Every 7th year no work was done--the land lay fallow.

2. Jubilee: Every 50th year, all debts were cancelled, and all property reverted to its original owner. Only to be observed in the land of Palestine.

IV. Paul was afraid for them, lest his labor had been bestowed in vain. They had switched from grace to legalism.

Remembrance: Doctrine of (Memorial)
(Category 487)

I. Believers are commanded to remember the death of the Lord Jesus Christ. 1 Cor. 11:24-25. " . . . this do in remembrance of me."

II. Remembrance connotes THINKING, thinking of the death of Jesus Christ in this case.

III. Bona fide remembrance demands DOCTRINE.

IV. Knowledge of such doctrine in the human spirit and frame of reference results in occupation with Christ, the maturing of the individual resulting in an edification complex of the soul.

V. The more Bible doctrine one assimilates, the more the "fragrance of memories" comes into focus as far as our Lord's person and work is concerned.

VI. Throughout eternity the Lord Jesus Christ will carry His scars from the cross--we will never forget what the Saviour did in dying for our sins.

VII. Also in the doctrine of Right Man and Right Woman (like Song of Solomon) the doctrine of remembrance keeps the Shulamite woman faithful to her shepherd lover.

VIII. Thus the doctrine of remembrance or fragrance of memories--is a very powerful doctrine, very effective, and very necessary in the life of the mature believer.

Repentance
(Category 488)

Much confusion has resulted by an improper interpretation of this word. Repentance is not a separate step in salvation, there are no steps in salvation. When a person believes he repents. When he repents he believes. Repentance is NOT sorrow for sin. It is a change of mental attitude toward Jesus Christ. The following original words are translated repentance in the Word of God.

I. Hebrew: Nachan. This word is used in connection with God. It is an anthropopathism which is a human characteristic ascribed to God to express divine attitude.

The meaning: A complete change of mental attitude. God is always the subject (in the OT).

USES	SUBJECT	OBJECT
Genesis 6:6	God	Creation
Exodus 32:14	"	Israel
Judges 2:18	"	Groanings
1 Samuel 15:35	"	Saul
Psalm 90:13	"	Servants
Jer. 15:6	"	Jews
Amos 7:3, 6	"	Discipline

II. Greek:

A. Metanoew: This always means complete change of mental attitude. Connotation is always mental, never emotional. It is used under two categories.

1. The Unbeliever: In the following verses the subject is always the unbeliever. Christ is always the object. The unbeliever is the one doing the repenting--he changes his mental attitude towards either the person or work of Christ, or both. Matt. 12:41, Mark 1:15, Luke 13:3, 15:10, 16:30. Repent and believe are always synonymous in salvation; Acts 17:30, 20:20, 26:20, Hebrews 12:17, 2 Peter 3:9. This change of mental attitude is wrought by the Holy Spirit (common grace) John 16:8-11.

2. Believers: The subject is the believer either stated or implied. The object varies:

USES	SUBJECT	OBJECT
Heb. 6:2	Believer	Dead works
Rev. 2:5, 16, 22	"	Carnality
2 Cor. 12:21	"	Carnality

B. Metamelomai: This is translated repent in Matt. 21:29, 32; 27:3; 2 Cor. 7:8; Heb. 7:21. It should be translated regret. It has an emotional connotation. It is to feel sorry in one's emotional pattern. Judas was sorry that he had betrayed the Lord, he did not repent however.

The Resurrection Body of Jesus Christ
(Category 489)

THINGS WE KNOW ABOUT THE RESURRECTION BODY OF JESUS CHRIST.

1. His body retained the nail prints. He had some kind of epidermis similar to ours since it showed scars. We won't have scars, but Jesus will.

   a. Historical: John 20:25-27
   b. Prophetical: Zech. 12:10; Psalm 22:16

2. His body retained the scar of the wound in His side. John 20:25-27.

3. It was recognizable as a HUMAN BODY. Luke 24, John 20:26-29. He made 17 post-resurrection appearances.

4. His body could be touched. Luke 24:39-40. It had substance. Matt. 28:9, John 20:17.

5. He breathed, but He did not necessarily need to breathe. John 20-22.

6. He carried on conversations so it must have had (His body) some system of vocal cords and the use of air. Luke 24; John 20:26.

7. His voice was recognizable immediately. John 20:16

8. His body had flesh and bones. Luke 24:39-40

9. On one occasion He ate, but He didn't HAVE TO EAT. He could eat or go without food. Luke 24:30, 43.

10. Apparently its structure is different because Jesus walked thru closed doors. John 20:19, 26. Luke 24:36.

11. The resurrection body was able to appear and disappear. Luke 24:17.

12. The resurrection body could move vertically or horizontally; Matt. 28:10, Acts 1:9-10.

13. OUR RESURRECTION BODY WILL BE EXACTLY LIKE HIM. Phil. 3:21, 1 John 3:2.

Resurrection Morning Order of Events
(Category 490)

1. Earthquake: An angel rolled away the stone. Matt. 28:1-2. Jesus Christ had already left. The stone was not rolled away to let Jesus Christ out, but to let the human race in.

2. Three women came to the tomb: Mark 16:1

   a. Mary Magdalene
   b. Mary, mother of James
   c. Salome

3. Mary Magdalene, after seeing the stone rolled away, left the tomb to find the disciples. John 20:1-2.

4. Mary and Salome saw the angel, who told them that "Jesus is risen". Mark 16:5-6.

5. Mary Magdalene finds Peter and John and they return to the tomb.

6. Peter wondered about what he saw. Luke 24:12

7. John believed Jesus had risen. John 20:8

8. Mary Magdalene comes again to the tomb, but mistakes Jesus for the gardener, meets the risen Christ. John 20:11-18.

For Continuation of this Chronological study see the next Category

Resurrection: Post-resurrection Appearances (Category 491)

I. The Pre-Ascension Appearances of Jesus Christ:

A. Mary Magdalene: John 20:15-17, Mark 16:9-11

B. 5 Other Women: Matt. 28:9-10

C. Peter: 1 Cor. 15:5 (Sunday afternoon)

D. 2 believers on the road to Emmaus. (Cleophas & Mary). Luke 24:13-33, Mark 16:12.

E. Ten disciples (minus Thomas) John 20:19-25

F. Eleven disciples (with Thomas) John 20:26-29, Mark 16:14

G. Seven of the Disciples by the Sea of Galilee. John 21:1-2

H. 500 believers. 1 Cor. 15:6

I. Jesus' half-brother James, who was an unbeliever until the resurrection. 1 Cor. 15:7, John 7:3, Acts 1:14.

J. Eleven disciples on a mountain near Galilee. Matt. 28:16-20.

K. The Ascension passage: Acts 1:3-11

(11 in all)

II. The Post-ascension Appearances of Jesus Christ:

A. Stephen: Acts 7:55-56

B. Paul on the Road to Damascus: Acts 9:1-8; 1 Cor. 15:8.

C. Paul in Arabia: Gal. 1:12-17

D. Paul in the Timple: Acts 22:17

E. Paul: Acts 18:9, 23:11

F. John on the Isle of Patmos: Rev. 1:12-20.

(six in all)

Jesus Christ probably ascended in June of 32 AD.

Resurrection: Reasons OT Saints are Resurrected at the 2nd Advent (Category 492)

I. David was still in the tomb on the Day of Pentecost. Acts 2:24-29. Peter's sermon on the Day of Pentecost.

A. Subject: Resurrection of Jesus Christ.

B. On the Day of Pentecost, 50 days after Jesus Christ's resurrection, David was still in the tomb. The OT saints were not out of the grave on the Day of Pentecost so they could not have been resurrected at Jesus Christ's resurrection.

II. The Two Witnesses: Rev. 11:3-13

If Moses and Elijah (Matt. 16:28-17:3) had resurrection bodies during the Tribulation, they could not have been killed. Resurrection bodies cannot die.

III. The Scriptures Showing the Time of Resurrection of OT Saints.

A. Daniel 12:13:

"stand in thy lot": Resurrected with your own group: Israel.
"end of the days": Refers to the end of the Jewish Age.

B. Isaiah 26:19-21:

v. 19: Resurrection of OT saints (Jewish Age believers)
v. 20: "indignation": Tribulation
v. 21: "behold the Lord cometh": 2nd Advent

C. Conclusion: There is no resurrection of Jewish Age believers until the age of Israel is completed, at the end of the Tribulation - 2nd Advent.

IV. The Witnesses at Jesus Christ's Resurrection: Matt. 27:50-54

A. Veil. B. Resuscitated people. C. Centurian/with him.

v. 52: "many bodies": NOT ALL
v. 53: Associated with His resurrection. Doesn't say they had resurrection bodies. This corruption did not receive incorruption as in Romans 15:53. They came out to announce the fact that Jesus Christ would rise. Necessary because all the disciples were hiding except John.

V. Transfer of OT Saints from Paradise to the 3rd heaven in Eph. 4:8, "led captivity captive." The transfer involved the immaterial part of the OT saints. Use Chart, Hades to establish Paradise in Hades, then in 3rd Heaven and the transfer.

VI. The Unconditional Covenants to Israel: Fulfilled at the 2nd Advent. Part of the fulfillment of these is resurrection of all involved, so resurrection of Jewish age believers is not necessary until the 2nd Advent.

Resurrections - Battalion Review
(Category 493)

PRINCIPLE: All believers receive their resurrection bodies at the end of THEIR AGE!

I. First Resurrection: Believers only: 1 Cor. 15:23

A. "A" Company: The Lord Jesus Christ (First Fruits)

1. AT DEATH: April 32 AD

The Body went into the grave: John 19:40-42
The Soul went into Paradise: Luke 23:43, Acts 2:27
The Spirit went into the presence of the Father: Luke 23:46.

2. AT RESURRECTION:

Body: Resurrection body
Soul: Came out of Paradise, went into body
Spirit: Came down from the presence of the Father, went into the body and rose from the grave.

3. TIME OF RESURRECTION: April 32 AD

Forty days later He ascended--and was seated at the right hand of the Father. Heb. 1:3.

B. "B" Company: Church Age Believers, 1 Thess. 4:16-17

1. At Death:

Body goes into the grave.
Soul and spirit go into the presence of the Father. 2 Cor. 5:8

2. At Resurrection:

The soul and the spirit enter the resurrection body. Phil. 3:21, 1 John 3:1-2, 1 Cor. 15:51-57.

3. Time of the Resurrection: At rapture - end of the Church Age.

C. "C" Company: Age of Israel believers

1. Part 1: OT Believers

a. At Death

Body: Went into the grave
Soul and spirit: Went to Paradise (Part of Sheol, hades)

b. Associated with the Resurrection of Jesus Christ:

Soul and spirit: Eph. 4:8, Jesus Christ transferred the soul and spirit of OT believers to New Paradise in the 3rd heaven.

c. At Their Resurrection:

The soul and the spirit enter the resurrection body.

d. Time: The end of the Tribulation at the 2nd Advent.

2. Part 2: Tribulation Believers

a. At Death:

The body will go into the grave.
The soul and the spirit will go into the presence of the Lord. 2 Cor. 5:8.

b. At Resurrection:

The soul and spirit will go into the presence of the Lord. 2 Cor. 5:8

c. Time: The end of the Tribulation at the 2nd Advent (End of the age of Israel).

D. "D" Company: Millennial Believers: Rev. 11:18b

If they die, their resurrection will be at the end of the millennium. Tribulation believers (alive at the 2nd Advent) that go into the millennium, in physical bodies, receive their resurrection body at this time.

II. The Second Resurrection: (Unbelievers only) Rev. 20:11-15, (no spirit, spiritually dead).

A. At Death:

Body: Goes into the grave
Soul: Hades (Torments) until end of the Millennium for the GWT Judgment. Luke 16:19-31.

B. At Resurrection:

Body: Some kind of a body (no Biblical information)
Soul: Joins the body to appear at the Great White Throne Judgment. Rev. 20:11-12.

"Second death": The Lake of Fire

Resurrections: Two
(Category 494)

I. Scripture distinguishes between the 2 resurrections:

A. Acts 24:15 "just": The justified thru faith in Jesus Christ. "unjust": Those who rejected Jesus Christ.

B. John 5:24-29: "done good": Done the GOOD: BELIEVE IN JC.
"done evil": Done the EVIL: REJECTING JC.

C. Daniel 12:2

D. Rev. 20:4-6, 13

v. 4 and last sentence in v. 5 go together.
v. 5a is a parenthesis and refers to the 2nd resurrection.

II. There is no condemnation (judgment) in eternity for those who are in CHRIST JESUS. Romans 8:1 (Church Age). This principle applies to all those who believe in Jesus Christ in any age.

III. The Judgment Seat of Christ (for believers only) is not for the person of the believer, but for the production of the believer.

IV. The first resurrection is for believers only and is in four parts.

1 Cor. 15:22-23, "every man in his own order."

V. The Time lapse between the two resurrections is given in Rev. 20:4-5

"They lived": Began to live in a resurrection body.
"This is the first resurrection": This goes with v. 4 ("But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished"). Parenthesis which speaks of the 2nd resurrection. Unbelievers.

VI. The Second Resurrection occurs at the end of the Millennium. (Rev. 20:5) and is for unbelievers only.

"dead": Spiritually dead--Rev. 20:11-15.

VII. They will appear before the Great White Throne Judgment.

VIII. No Resurrection before Jesus Christ's because His resurrection is a guarantee of our (believer's) resurrection.

Rev. 4-5: Reasons 4 Beasts & 24 Elders ARE ANGELS
(Category 495)

1. Rev. 4 & 5 is a picture of things as they will be at the very beginning of the Tribulation. Rev. 4:1, "after this": Church Age.

2. The Greek words Zoe' and Theria have both been translated beast.

3. These 4 beasts are angels. Zoe is used here.

4. Greek word "presbuteros" has been translated "elders". It denotes rank, not age. Leadership. It is used primarily for angelic creation. It is also used for the pastor of a church, rank among human beings. Acts 20:17-28. The Church at this time is the bride of Christ (in heaven) -- (no pastors). Rev. 4 and 5, "elders" are angels.

5. Angels already have their status. These have crowns.

6. Church is already mentioned in this passage - "sea of glass". The Church is now the bride of Christ. The only segment of the human race who have their resurrection bodies.

7. These cannot be OT saints (i.e. tribes of Israel, etc.) because there is no resurrection for Age of Israel believers until the end of the Tribulation. They are in status quo soul and spirit. Where would they wear their crowns?

8. Original Greek in Rev. 5:9-10 is "them" and "they" not "us" and "we".

9. The translators, thinking the beasts and elders were people, changed this to indicate salvation for them. They ARE angels, so it should be as in the original "them" and "they." This refers to angels speaking, "them" and "they" refers to homo sapiens.

10. In Rev. 5:8 these angels have vials full of the prayers of the saints in the Tribulation. Angels (not people are in charge of these prayers.) Rev. 8:3.

11. Angels have different rank and it is this that is in evidence here.

12. Harps are also associated with angels.

Revelation: Precanon
(Category 496)

I. Part 1:

A. Dreams: Given to persons other than prophets.

Examples: Joseph (Believer)
Nebuchadnezzar (Unbeliever when he had the dream)
Pharaoh: (Unbeliever always)

B. Visions: Given to prophets

Examples: Daniel: Daniel 10:7-8
John the Apostle: Revelation

C. Trances: Primarily to prophets, apostles.

Example: Balaam: Numbers 24:4, 16
Peter: Acts 10:10
Paul: Acts 22:17

D. Direct Spoken Conversation:

Example: Moses in the giving of the law.

E. Christophany: Appearance of the Lord Jesus Christ to Abraham.

II. Prophets Received Direct Revelation.
Priests interpreted and taught written revelation.

III. In the Precanon, post-ascension period the direct revelation of Scripture (spiritual gift of knowledge) was given to apostles.

IV. Before the Cross and After the Cross:

A. Before the Cross	B. After the Cross
Revelation is given by shadows.	Revelation changes to reality: The Canon of Scripture
Shadows Anticipate	When the reality comes, the shadows no longer have a bona fide place.
In the shadows system you do something over and over - lots of ritual involved.	Once you are looking back at this, and it is in writing (Doctrine in the Bible) then it becomes a matter of perception instead of ritual.

Absolute Righteousness and Relative Righteousness
(Category 497)

I. God's Righteousness (+R)

A. God's Concept of Righteousness is a concept of Absoluteness because of His perfection. 2 Sam. 22:31, Psalm 18:30.

B. God is righteous. Psalm 145:17, Psalm 50:6a, Rom. 10:3.
God is Holy, Good: 1 Sam. 2:2, Psalm 22:3, 47:8
God is free from sin. 1 John 1:5, 2 Cor. 5:21.

II. Man's Righteousness: (-R)

A. Man's concept of righteousness (goodness) is one of relativity.

1. My sins are more refined than yours and therefore I am more righteousness than you are.

2. People set up standards by which they judge the degree of righteousness.

B. Three types of individuals: (All -R)

1. Moral man. Romans 2:1-16

2. Immoral man. Romans 1:18-32

3. Religious man. Romans 2:17-29

C. God's viewpoint of man's righteousness: Man is minus absolute righteousness. Romans 3:10-12, " . . . there is none righteous, no, not one."

D. God's viewpoint of man's viewpoint of his (man's) own righteousness. Isaiah 64:6. Man's righteousness (good works) doesn't measure up because "we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousness are as filthy rags . . ."

III. Relationship of God and Man because of +R and -R:

A. God cannot have fellowship with that which is wrong or sinful. Isa. 59:2; Psalm 11:7, 1 John 1:5-10.

B. God's standard (+R) is the criterion. God demands the same righteousness in His creatures that He has. Romans 3:23.

IV. The Meeting Place of +R and -R.

A. The +R of God is available to all who believe by faith in Jesus Christ.

1. Romans 3:22, "Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe."

2. Romans 4:5: " . . . him that believeth . . . his faith is counted for righteousness."

B. It is not achieved by self-effort, but is received from God. Titus 3:5, "Not by works of righteousness which we have done . . ."

C. +R is imputed to the believer at the cross:

God (+R) Man (-R)

CROSS
Meeting Place

Man comes -R and is made +R

NT: 2 Cor. 5:21: "For He (God the Father) hath made Him (Jesus Christ) to be sin for us, who (Jesus Christ) knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in Him." IN CHRIST.

Man is now +R POSITIONALLY (Top Circle) because of imputed righteousness.

OT: Isa. 61:10, " . . . for He hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, He hath covered me with the robe of righteousness . . ."

Psalm 24:5, " . . . receive . . . righteousness."

D. See Category on Justification & Imputation:

E. The Perfect Humanity of Jesus Christ satisfied the righteousness of God (Fulfilled the Mosiac Law (Rom. 10:4) (God's perfect standard) nailing it (the fulfilled Mosiac Law) to His cross. Col. 2:14.

The Lord Jesus Christ was willing to give this perfect life. John 10:18 and paid the penalty for man's -R (spiritual death). Romans 6:23, "For the wages of sin is death": (Spiritual).

Roman Empire
(Category 498)

Scripture: Daniel 7:7, "After this I saw in the night visions, and behold a fourth beast, dreadful and terrible, and strong exceedingly; and it had great iron teeth: it devoured and brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with the feet of it; and it was diverse from all the beasts that were before it: and it had ten horns."

Introduction: The Roman Empire is the turning point of ancient and modern history. All of the rivers of ancient civilizations flow into the lake of the Roman Empire, and all the rivers of modern civilization flow out of the lake of the Roman Empire. This description (Daniel 7:7) is a different detailing than the other animals.

Rome began as a little village on the bank of the Tiber, then became a city-state, then a nation, then a great world empire.

Rome did give the world a respect for law--and administration. The Greeks were known for their culture, the Persians for their science, and the Romans for their laws--code.

I. The Characteristics of the Roman Empire: 7:7

A. "Dreadful": The Romans began to conquer in 264 BC. They conquered in a dreadful manner. Over 1,000,000 died in the Punic Wars.

1. From 264 to 146 they conquered Carthage, Egypt, Macedonia, Syria. They called themselves SPQR, "The Senate and People of Rome."

2. In this period many of the rich were killed, leaving only the middle class and poor class.

B. "Terrible": In 146 BC, the Knights (middle class) took over, and there was some stabilization.

1. However a mob of 1,000,000 people, poor, dangerous, ragged, came out of the Punic wars. AND THE TAIL BEGAN TO WAG THE DOG.

2. The Knights (Romans) were capitalistic at first, but switched to a dualism,(socialistic-capitalistic) system.

3. It is the middle class always--that keeps a nation stabilized, operating under free enterprise, and capitalism.

4. Then later the mob took over from the Knights.

a. Who had to sustain the mob? The middle class thru socialism.

b. As long as the middle class were able to pay the bills, and feed the mob, the civilization survived.

c. But the middle class reached a point where they were unable to do so. For example:

The currency was destroyed by going off the Gold Standard. How? When Alexander the Great defeated the Persians 200,000,000,000 (200 billion) dollars of hoarded gold was poured into the world's economy. But the Romans traded this gold for peacock feathers and other luxuries from the Orient (China) and also India.

Then they issued paper money, which had no gold standard.

Finally the mobs and socialism destroyed Rome.

d. And it would have been destroyed sooner, except Bible Doctrine became the great stabilizing factor during the Antonine Caesars (96 AD - 192 AD). The mobs should never be catered too, or the lower classes, civil rights can destroy any country.

II. The Endurance of the Roman Empire (how was the destruction of the Roman Empire averted?)

A. Julius Caesar: The genius of organization, of military campaigns, he was supreme dictator of Rome from July 28, 46 BC to March 15, 44 BC. But he was influencial for about give years before his assassination.

B. Spiritual Emphasis: Christ came in the fulness of time (Gal. 4:4). Religion was bankrupt.

C. Bible Doctrine: In Antonine Caesar era. This was the greatest period of world peace the world has ever known apart from the future millennium.

1. "strong exceedingly": 7:7. The strength given by law and order, good communication, the genius of Julius Caesar, the birth of the Lord, and dissemination of Bible Doctrine.

2. "great iron teeth, it devoured and brake in pieces": This refers to the Civil wars in the Roman Empire, the grinding up of the people in the civil wars. One major civil war took place from 49-46 BC.

There was moral decay, political decay, two parties fought it out in civil wars, as a result, widespread slavery.

a. In the Sparatacus Revolt: 10,000 slaves were crucified at one time on the roads leading into the Roman Empire.

b. Reform was tried--but the reformers were assassinated. Principle: The greatest of reformers or legislaturers cannot save a nation.

THERE IS NO HOPE FOR A NATION APART FROM EVANGELISM OR BIBLE DOCTRINE.

III. The Course of the Roman Empire: (From 49 BC to 476 AD)
". . . stamped the residue with the feet of it": Dan. 7:7

A. The Julian Caesars: 49 BC - 68 AD. Begins with Octavious and ends with Nero. Starts with excellent leadership, gets to the dregs in the end result.

1. Tiberious was reigning when Jesus Christ was born.

2. Nero--last of thee--used to strap a lion skin on him, complete with claws, and personally claw to death Christians. He loved to tie Christians to the stakes, to pour tar over them, and light them for human torches.

B. The Flavian Caesars: (The ones who conquered Jerusalem) 68 AD to 96 AD.

1. Vespatian: Started the seige of Jerusalem.

2. Titus continued it, concluded it. 1,900,000 Jews died in a 90 day period.

3. Domitian was a real monster. He was responsible for putting John on the Island of Patmos. The day Domitian died the Canon of Scripture was completed. The book of Revelation dates 96 AD.

C. The Antonine Caesars: 96 AD to 192 AD. (The big push of Bible Doctrine)

1. Trajan (Spanish)
2. Hadrian (Spanish)
3. Antoninus Pius
4. Marcus Aurelius
5. Commodus (degenerate)

With the completion of Canon, Scripture copies were circulated all over the Roman Empire.

During this period each church had a complete canon of Scripture. Thousands of Bibles were painstakingly detailed out by hand. During this time the famous Sixth Legion was composed of born-again men only, amassed the greatest military record of all history. During this time they supervised 100 years of continuous peace. You could be safe in any Roman city, even bandits and thieves were being saved.

Historians give many accounts of how the Word was honored in those days! The greatest treasure of any home--their personal copy of the Word of God! An area the size of the USA had no war for 100 years.

Some characteristics of the Antonine period:

a. The period was capitalistic
b. Christianity changed the stature of women from sleeping in stables to enjoying relative freedom.
c. Charity abounded to the poor--government did not feed them, it was handled through personal charity. The only exception was the demon-possessed mob in Rome, running around a million.

d. For the first time they were humane to animals; cats and dogs were not eaten for dinner, but became pets.
e. Gibbon, a famous historian writing of his era said "If a man were offered his choice of the age in which he perferred to live, he would pick the period of the Antonine emperors over any other period of history."
f. The historian Monson said, "If an angel or the Lord were to strike a balance, the best time to live would have been in the period of the Antonine Caesars."

D. The Barrack Emperors: 193-264 AD

1. After a great wave of Bible Doctrine, there came a group of people who did not like Bible Doctrine.

2. And so the holiness crowd moved in--the experience people.

3. The emphasis was on emotion--dedications, rededication, tongues types, accepting Jesus Christ as Lord people.

4. Controversy: Doctrine versus emotion--terrible decline.

E. Various Emporers: 264 AD to the fall in 476 AD.

1. Diocletian: 285-305 AD

2. Constantine: 312-337 AD Some hope, but he did a very bad thing, he united church and state, and this ruined Christianity. They totally rejected Bible Doctrine.

3. The Empire lost their gold reserves during this time to China and India--and up to 476 AD. Apostacy was rampant.

4. German barbarians came along and began to run over the Roman Empire. Behind them came the Mongols. Finally in 476 AD the Roman Empire was put down by one of the German groups. Romulus was the last Emperor.

5. But Constantine had sown the seed for the Holy Roman Empire and from 476 AD on the church and state united taking over the Roman code completely mixing it with Scriptural codex (law).

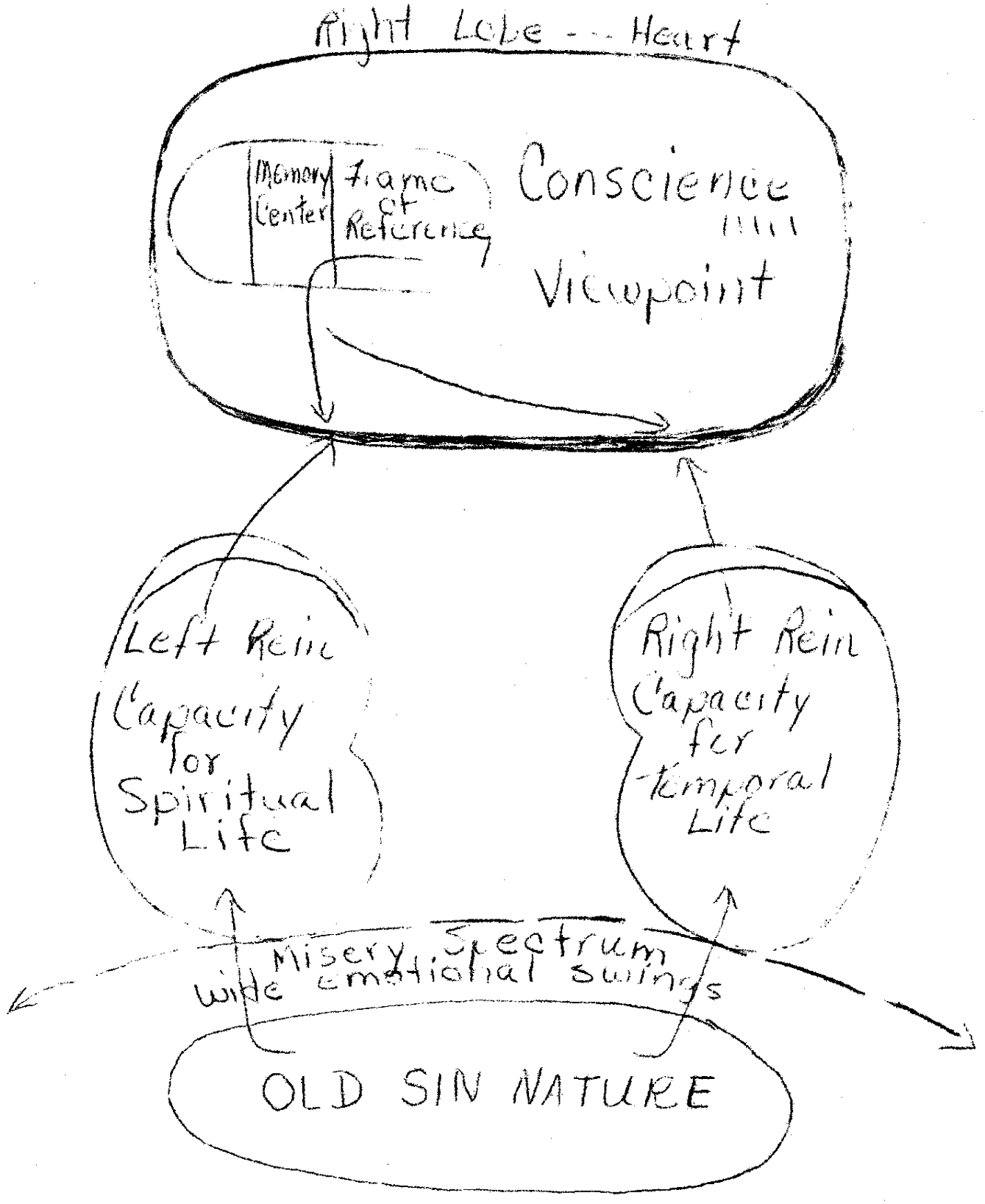
F. The Roman Empire will be revived in the Tribulation period under a ten nation setup. " . . . and it had ten horns."

G. The Diverseness of the Roman Empire: "And it was diverse from all the beasts that were before it . . ."

This statement refers to the different phases this Empire went through: SPQR (The Senate and People of Rome), the Roman Empire, the Holy Roman Empire, and the Revived Roman Empire.

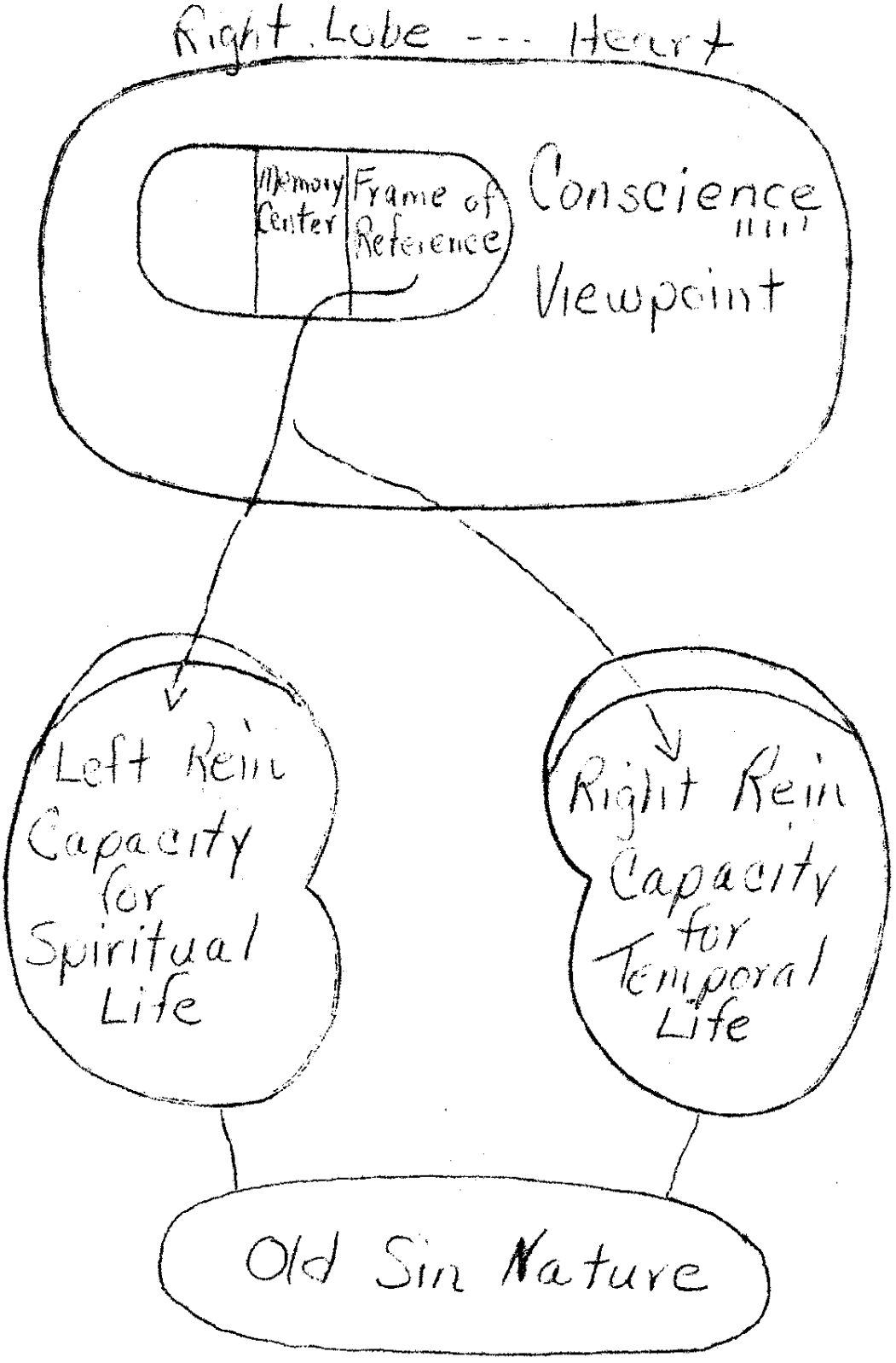
Revolt-Emotional Revolt: Diagram
(Category 499)

The Soul in Revolt



Revolt-Emotional Revolt: Diagram
(Category 500)

The Soul in Fellowship



Revolt-Emotional Revolt: Doctrine of Emotions (Category 501)

I. The Vocabulary problem: Anatomy in the languages of the ancient world always doubled for functions of the soul, because they did not have a psychological vocabulary--a vocabulary for the soul.

There are three words used for emotions in the Bible:

A. Belly: (Stomach) Prov. 13:25, 18:8, 26:22, Rom. 16:17-18, Phil. 3:19.

B. Bowels: Gen. 43:30, 1 Kings 3:26, Jer. 4:19, 31:20, Lam. 1:20, 2:11, Phil. 1:8, Philemon 12, 20.

C. Reins: Psalm 7:9, 26:2, 139:13, Prov. 23:16, Jer. 12:2, 17:10, 20:12.

Also something needs to be said about the right lobe. The term heart in the Bible does not refer to the pump, but the dominant or right lobe. The heart HAS NO EMOTIONAL CONNOTATION!

1. The left lobe: (staging area). This is the recessive lobe.

   a. Bible knowledge comes into this lobe as head knowledge, it can be dropped immediately.

   b. Or this gnosis can be cycled thru faith.

   c. Or taking non-Biblical facts, academic facts may stay here long enough to take a test.

   d. Or information may be remembered long enough to tell someone else (like a joke).

2. The right lobe: (dominant lobe)

   a. This is frame of reference with memory center (see diagram)

   b. Conscience with norms and standards

   c. Viewpoint, preferably divine viewpoint

II. The Definition and Function of the Emotions: (12 subpoints)

A. The Emotions are designed to respond to and appreciate the right lobe.

B. The right lobe is analogous to the right man, which the emotion is comparable to the right woman.

C. As there are two kidneys, two adrenal glands, and two fat pads, so there are two emotions of the soul. (Feminine plural of kiljah in Jer. 17:10.)

D. So, two emotions would seem to indicate breaking the analogy--like two women--however there are no harems in the soul structure.

E. One woman has two parts body and soul. (The emotion is one woman with two parts) The woman's soul responds to her right man in love, the woman's body responds to her right man in sex.

F. In a similar manner both reins or emotions respond to the heart, or right lobe.

1. The left rein is capacity for spiritual life and responds to spiritual phenomena.

2. The right rein is capacity for temporal life and and responds to temporal phenomena.

Everyone has two lives, a spiritual life and a temporal life. They are very closely related, and inter-related, but for analysis they must be separated.

G. Positive response from the heart (right lobe) produces the spectrum of happiness.

You runa gamet of responses that makes you aware of happiness. Happiness in the frontal lobe elicits happiness in the emotions. The response in the emotions may be enthusiastic +H or tranquility +H.

Principle: The happiness responses are in the emotion of the soul.

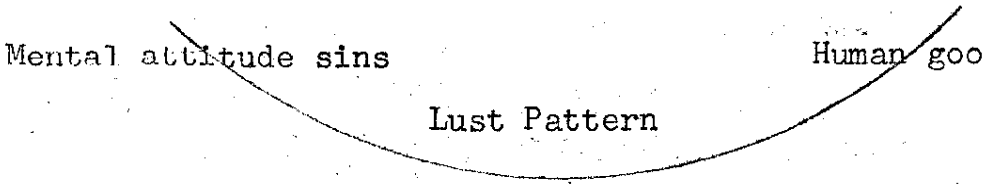
1. Happiness is in the right lobe, but emotions give you an appreciation of happiness.

2. Emotions make you aware of the happiness you have in your dominant lobe.

H. Negative response from the heart produces the spectrum of misery. (Back up of mental attitude sins from the old sin nature causes emotional revolt, this produces psychosis of the soul, and this has wide emotional swings.

The bladder backs upon into the kidneys, eventually the kidneys are destroyed--just so the mental attitude sins back up into the emotions and hence on to the right lobe.

The tongues movement is simply bladder trouble in the brain. THE DOMINANT LOBE MUST dominate the soul, not the emotions. Note the emotional swing diagram:



I. Since the emotions were never designated to dominate the soul, wide emotional swings demonstrate the inability of the emotions to dominate.

J. The emotion is the woman, the right lobe is the man--the dominator of the soul. THIS IS WHY THE RIGHT LOBE CONTAINS:

1. Frame of reference: (the emotion does not have this)
2. Conscience: (the emotion does not have this)
3. Viewpoint: (the emotion does not have this)

K. So for this reason the heart contains the frame of reference, the conscience, and the viewpoint, and thus the heart is the dominant lobe.

So by definition the emotions are the appreciator of the soul, and by function the emotions respond to the right lobe.

III. Emotions are tested by God: Psalm 7:9, 26:2, Jer. 11:20, 17:10, Rev. 20:12, Rev. 2:23. Eight subpoints.

A. In every one of these verses we have a anthropomorphism. (attributing human form or attributes to deity).

God does not test your emotions and heart at some specific time, but His omniscience knew millions of years ago the status of your soul at any given time.

God doesn't have to run a test on you--to know what is going on!

B. You cannot strap anything on God. He read your tape billions of years ago--you will never be able to hide anything from God--never will. YOU CAN'T FOOL GOD!

C. The condition of your soul is known at all times, now in time and before time in eternity past.

D. Therefore, testing here, means that God analyzes your capacity for life--in order to challenge you for more capacity for life.

E. Since capacity for life is based on the amount of Bible Doctrine in the right lobe of your soul--testing the reins has to do with the response of the emotions to this info.

F. Frame of reference elicits bona fide response in both reins.

G. Conscience becomes compatible with God's norms and standards. Like nationalism, patriotism, military.

H. Viewpoint--this is appreciated when, for instance, you turn on the TV and hear Kate Smith sing "God Bless America" or hear the divine viewpoint on the place of the Military!

IV. Emotions can be Destroyed: Job 16:13, Psalm 73:21, Lam. 3:13

A. Just as the kidneys can be destroyed by the refluxing of the bladder, so the emotions can be destroyed by the OSN bombarding them with mental attitude sins. The emotions were never designed to respond to mental attitude sins.

B. This motivates the emotions to revolt against the dominant lobe. So you have revolution in the soul.

C. The result: Instability, wide emotional swings, revolution, chaos. And this chaos results in temporary or permanent psychosis.

D. Emotional revolt explains apostacy (why can he go apostate) sublimination, lack of capacity for life, for love etc.

There is a fine line between emotions in a happiness spectrum and between emotions in a misery spectrum--ISSUE: WHICH WAY DOES THE ARROWS GO? See diagrams.

V. Emotions react to tragedy: Jer. 4:19 (Look at the verse)

A. Jeremiah is in revolt, and the heart is in pain. The bladder refluxed jealousy, jealousy revolted against the heart, and who is in pain--the object--Jeremiah!

B. "My heart is screaming . . . I cannot hold my peace." This speaks of emotions controlling the heart, and a lack of happiness--instead misery.

C. "O my soul": His reaction to the 5th cycle of discipline. See Lamentations 1:20, as well as Lamentations 2:11.

VI. Emotion is the appreciator of love. Genesis 43:30, 1 Kings 3:26, Phil. 1:8, 1 John 3:17.

A. Genesis 43:30: Joseph

1. Joseph had always loved his brother in his heart.
2. He had always had Benjamin in his frame of reference.
3. His viewpoint included category 3 love for his brother.
4. But it was not until Benjamin came on the scene that he came into memory center--and then he was reminded how much he loved his younger brother.

Remember that the emotions have no doctrinal content. The emotions are simply responders. The moon is a reflector of light--the sun has the light in analogy.

5. This is temporal capacity--so the left rein responded.
6. This caused Joseph to weep.

B. 1 Kings 3:24-26: Solomon and the two mothers.

1. 3:24: Two women claimed the child, obviously only one woman can be the mother.

2. 3:25: Cut the child in two.

3. 3:26: "her emotions yearned upon her son"

   a. She has a son--she loves him. (soul love)
   b. Her son comes into memory center (emotion does not possess doctrine)
   c. Her emotions respond to the love in her heart.

Going on with point 6: Emotional response makes one very much aware of the existence of love in his soul.

This is why we have Communion. What keeps your appreciation of the Lord under control? Bible doctrine and in this case ritual!

But all things are done decently and in order. They don't break down and act like a bunch of holy rollers on one of their special victory marches.

Ritual allows communication (bona fide ritual--only two) and also allows controlled emoting!

VII. Emotion stimulates happiness: Prov. 23:16, Phil. 7, 20.

VIII. Emotions as related to the dispensations.

A. Spirituality and emotions in the Church Age

1. Christ is absent from the earth during the Church Age, therefore the filling of the Holy Spirit produces the character and glory of Christ without emotion being an integral part of spirituality. Gal. 5:22-23, Gal. 4:19, Romans 5:5.

2. Emotion is never designed to produce character, but to respond to character (Spirituality produces character).

3. Just as GRACE glues the essence of God together, so EMOTION AS A RESPONDER is distilled grace.

4. Emotion as an agressor is distilled legalism.

5. Emotion is never designed to produce character, but to respond to character, therefore emotion and ecstatics cannot have spiritual content in the Church Age.

6. Emotion can respond to the filling of the Holy Spirit, or emotion can react to the filling of the Holy Spirit in carnality, but emotion cannot be the filling of the Holy Spirit.

7. The filling of the Holy Spirit causes the function of GAP, produces the character of Christ, provides power for the function of the priesthood--BUT EMOTION IS NOT INCLUDED IN THIS POWER!

EMOTION HAS NO POWER OR DYNAMICS IN THE CHURCH AGE. NONE. A definition of tongues: Emotional Masturbation!

B. Spirituality and emotions in the Millennium:

1. Christ is present on earth during perfect environment.

2. The Angelic Conflict is suspended (Satan and the demons are tossed out of the earth).

3. As during the Church Age, all believers are indwelt by the Spirit, and commanded to be filled with the Spirit.

4. Because of millennial conditions, emotion is a bona fide function of the filling of the Spirit.

5. Why? Because the filling of the Holy Spirit in the millennium is designed to appreciate Christ, rather than to produce the character of Christ. (Emotion is an appreciator, not a character builder). Joel 2:28-29, Isaiah 29:19, 32:15, 44:3, Ezek. 39:29, Zech. 12:10.

IX. The emotion of the negative believer hinders the learning of doctrine under GAP. 2 Cor. 6:11-12.

6:12, "You are not limited by us, but you are limited by your own emotional pattern."

A. The emotional revolt backed by the old sin nature causes emotion to become the agressor rather than the responder.

B. This causes emotion to become the criterion rather than the doctrinal content of the right lobe.

C. Therefore the emotional revolution against the establishment of the soul causes the malfunction or total failure of GAP.

D. The failure of GAP makes the Christian life and God's plan impossible to fulfill.

X. Therefore the command to separate from the emotional revolt is given. Romans 16:17-18.

They serve their emotions, and there is absolutely nothing in emotions. They "deceive the hearts of the simple (stupid)". This is the recruitment of the tongues crowd.

A. Believers who live by their emotions are believers whose emotional revolt has produced chaos of the soul.

B. The emotion is no longer a responder, but an agressor.

C. Believers with such chaos of the soul are troublemakers, therefore other believers are commanded to separate from them.

D. This means separation from those involved in the tongues movement.

E. The tongues movement is an emotional revolt against the divine establishment of the soul.

XI. The doctrine of the emotional revolt. (Found in Rev. 2:23)

A. In effect the emotional revolt is the emotion fornicating with the old sin nature, just as Jeremiah's right woman fornicated with her paramours. The emotions were never designed to fornicate with the old sin nature.

B. Instead of responding to doctrine in the right lobe, the emotion responds to mental attitude sins, approbation and power lust, and human good.

C. Remember that the emotions have no doctrinal content, it can only respond to doctrine in the heart (right lobe).

D. Once emotion revolts against the heart and becomes the agressor, it loses all capacity for life, and comes under the influence of the old sin nature. (Possibly this is grieving the Holy Spirit.)

E. Hence the old sin nature is a paramour which turns emotion from a responder into an agressor--and this causes chaos of the soul.

Revolt-Emotional Revolt: Doctrine of the Reins
(Category 502)

Jeremiah 17:9-10: "The heart (right lobe) is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it? I the Lord search the heart, I try the reins (kiljah, feminine plural, emotions) even to give every man according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his doings."

1. The etymology of kiljah (reins-emotions): Kiljah refers to the fat pads which protect the adrenals and kidneys--hence the emotions are so designated as reins in the Old Testament. (There is a very close relationship between the function of the fat pads and their content and the emotions of the soul).

2. The reins are comparable to the right woman (or the responder). We take this from the feminine gender of kiljah, while the heart (right lobe) is comparable to the right man--or the agressor.

   Therefore the emotions are the appreciator of the soul and linked to the heart in the following verses: Jer. 11:20, 17:10, 20:12, Psalm 7:9, 26:2. This is the analogy of kiljah.

3. Since the reins refer to the adrenal glands where the emotional hormone occurs (fright, flight, fight) they are also linked with fear. Job 16:13, 19:27.

   a. Job 16:13, under this pressure--there is a secretion of adrenalin and it is expressed, " . . . he cleaveth my reins asunder."

   b. Job 19:27: The emotional pattern being destroyed in death.

      The bladder backs up through the ureter (a muscular duct conveying the urine from the kidney to the bladder) and the kidneys and the adrenals back up into the right lobe--and in this emotional revolt--fear winds up in the heart. All mental attitude sins do this. This destroys capacity for spiritual life, and capacity for temporal life.

4. Therefore, capacity to enjoy life is linked to the reins, potentially the believer really has capacity to appreciate in the reins but can experiencially wind up in bad shape.

   There are two reins

   a. Left fat-pad: (kidney and adrenal closely connected) This refers to capacity for spiritual life.

   b. Right fat-pad: (kidney and adrenal closely connected) This refers to capacity for temporal life.

Therefore the reins or emotions respond to Bible Doctrine. Psalm 16:7 (with surrounding context)

Exposition of Psalm 16:7 (and context)

16:5: " . . . of my cup": Capacity for life. Same as Psalm 23, " . . . my cup runneth over."

" . . . you maintain my lot": You are in charge of the plan.

16:6: "The lines are fallen unto me in pleasant places". This refers to surveyor lines. GOD HAS ASSIGNED TO YOU CERTAIN THINGS IN LIFE, AND THE CAPACITY TO ENJOY THEM.

"Yes, I have a marvelous heritage."

16:7: "I will bless the Lord, who has given me doctrine categorically . . ." (THE RESPONSE)

"my reins also instruct me in the night seasons": Doctrine was communicated in the day time--through GAP, then at night, it comes into memory center and the arrow goes the right direction, evokes a response from the emotions to what has been learned.

He is saying, first get doctrine--then the emotions will respond.

5. The doctrinal content of the right lobe determines both appreciation and capacity for God's grace, in the emotions of the soul. Psalm 26:2-3.

"Examine me": He is saying, GRACE ME!"

" . . . prove me": Lord, I am ready for that extra shot of grace, I have the capacity for life.

"try my reins": Emotionally stable--ready to take in more on the basis of GAP. The capacity for life gives confidence, boldness.

6. Therefore when the believer functions daily under GAP, resulting in maximum doctrine in the right lobe (frame of reference, conscience, and viewpoint) he possesses emotional response and maximum capacity for responding to God's love. Psalm 139:13.

God programed you in eternity past--the actual functioning began at birth.

"For thou hast possessed my reins": A principle: When you have maximum doctrine in the soul, God possesses your emotional responses, and by possessing your emotional responses--he gives you in grace the most fantastic capacity for life. Spiritual grace.

"thou has covered me in my mother's womb": Even in the mother's womb the parts of the soul which were necessary so that someday he could have a functioning right lobe filled with God--God provided the necessary parts of the human body to function under grace! Physical grace.

7. But mental attitude sins from the old sin nature hinder capacity for love and life. Proverbs 23:15, 16.

Principle: You cannot teach anyone until you establish your authority. Authority comes first.

Proverbs 23:15: "My son if your heart is wise.": This is doctrine in the frame of reference, doctrine forming the basis of your conscience, norms and standards, and doctrine forming the basis of your viewpoint of life--DVP.

" . . . my heart shall rejoice, even my very own"

When a parent sees his son responding to doctrine, he rejoices in his right lobe.

Proverbs 23:16, "Yea, my reins shall rejoice . . ." Emotions respond also. GREAT APPRECIATION! Your wise son can give you a great deal of happiness!

********Happiness in the right lobe finds a response in the emotions of the soul.

The right man makes his right woman happy--if the right man is uptight, his right woman's emotions get fouled up.

EMOTIONAL REVOLT causes a sick soul.

8. Therefore the back-up of mental attitude sins causes the reins to dominate the heart creating a monster or a beast in the soul. Psalm 73:21-22.

"Thus my right frontal lobe was grieved (falling apart under pressure) I was pricked in my reins (wide emotional swings) I was foolish and stupid, I was an animal before you." THIS IS DESCRIBING A BELIEVER.

The emotions become the dictator. The right woman becomes the dictator, the agressor.

a. This comes out as legalism.
b. As human good
c. People getting into the tongues movement
d. Draft dodgers
e. Liberals
f. Traitors

This is why some of the most useful people to Satan are born-again believers in apostacy, liberal theology, social action, hippies.

9. Consequently, divine discipline is Biblically related to the emotions of the soul. Lamentations 3:13, Rev. 2:23.

Revolution: Doctrine of
(Category 503)

1. Neither the Word of God nor history justify revolution. Illustration of this is the Dathan and Abiram incident in Numbers 16:1ff.

2. When human power and privilege are monopolized by a few, people become oppressed. For when their freedom is limited, their opportunity is limited. They may even be in slavery.

3. Men and resources cannot be exploited apart from freedom without reaction. And this reaction is often violent--even to the point of revolution.

4. If the reaction is revolution it does not achieve anything worthwhile. Never! Anything achieved with revolution could have been achieved without revolution.

   a. French Revolution: Achieved reform thru a violent revolution.

   b. Reform Bill of 1812 in England: In England they accomplished reform through Parlimentary Procedure.

   THE END DOES NOT JUSTIFY THE MEANS. ONLY A COMMUNIST BELIEVES THAT!

5. The French Revolution of 1795 is a classical illustration: See detail on the tape. 70 Tapers Conference, 4th of July. Tape #1, side 1B.

   Also for further study get the book on the French Revolution by Edmund Burke.

6. A Revolution breaks sharply with the past and courts madness, this madness leads to national trauma. In analogy--as the sanity of an individual lies in the continuity of his memories, so the sanity of a group lies in the perpetuation of divine institution No. 4.

7. Revolution leads to mobs without thought or sanity, therefore mobs are neurotic in their reaction and are violent. Revolution is a violent overthrow of power within an establishment within divine institution No. 4.

You may say, "What about the Revolutionary War?" It was not a revolution, it was the "War for Independence". They were being taxed with representation in England (Parliment). This was Tyranny! It was no revolution. Every attempt was to settle the problem by peaceful means. Finally they had to fight for their freedom, there has never been a revolution in the United States--THANK GOD!

Romans 7: Two Marriages
(Category 504)

The human race is born spiritually dead (no fellowship with God) married to the old sin nature.

I. First Marriage:

A. Date: Physical birth
B. Husband: The old sin nature
C. Wife: Unbeliever
D. Counselor: Mosaic Law
E. Children: Works of the flesh (OSN)--Gal. 5.

The Mosaic Law is the only good thing in the first marriage.

II. Second Marriage:

When a member of the human race chooses for Christ, there is a second marriage.

A. Date: New birth
B. Husband: The Lord Jesus Christ (positional truth)
C. Wife: Believer (formeraly unbeliever)
D. Counselor: Holy Spirit
E. Children: The Fruit of the Spirit--Gal. 5

III. General Principle: The general principle set forth in Romans 7:2-3 is that when one partner in a marriage dies, the other is free to marry again without becoming an adulterer or adulteress.

IV. When a person accepts Christ, as a believer he dies to the OSN (Positional death, rapture) although the OSN is alive to the believer. (The believer still possesses an OSN, but the Lord Jesus Christ made provision for the believer to handle his OSN.)

V. Application of the Principle for the Believer in Time:

if the wife (believer) goes back and lives with (comes under control) of the 1st husband (OSN), she is an adulteress (carnal).

VI. Contrast between the Fruitage of the Unbeliever & Believer:

A. Unbeliever: Children of the 1st marriage are personal sins and human good.

B. Believer: Children of the 2nd marriage are the fruit of the Holy Spirit.

C. Believer: The wife, by living in adultery with the 1st husband (the OSN) produces the same kind of children as the unbeliever. (Sins and human good).

Romans 8:28, "All things work . . ." (Category 505)

1. Suffering is combined or mixed with the Plan of God, resulting in divine good.

2. This good is absolute and a blessing. Only God came make it a blessing.

3. God has only a short time in which to demonstrate His love to you through suffering. No suffering in eternity. Rev. 21:4.

4. God's plan is perfect, therefore it is greater than any suffering or any combination of adversities or any problems that we will ever face.

5. No problem catches God by surprise: OMNISCIENT

6. God has a solution for every problem, every difficulty. No matter how you fail, how you sin, or how you succeed, God has a plan designed for phase 2 (the Christian way of life) whereby all will work together for your good.

7. The link between God's solutions and our problems and failures is knowledge of Bible Doctrine, (gnosis) and application of Bible Doctrine to experience (epignosis--full knowledge) in the the human spirit.

8. Therefore when tragedy, suffering, strife, difficulty comes, God's plan calls for maximum blessing.

9. The blessing is always there, the solution is always there. (Example): 1,000,000,000,000 in the bank. Whether or not you experience that blessing depends upon your KNOWING God's plan, and getting with God's plan.

10. Suffering combines with Bible Doctrine for the believer in time, resulting in maximum blessing. Genesis 50:20.

11. The unbeliever is outside the Plan of God. Romans 8:28b. He operates on human systems (human good, human ingenuity).

12. The plan of God contains the will of God for the believer.

    a. He directs us to operate within the categories of His will.

    b. He permits us to operate outside these categories.

    c. He overrules in the sense He makes all things work together for good in our lives.

God does not coerce volition, but He uses circumstances.

Romans 8:28 Tapestry (Joseph's life) Gen. 37
"We know that all things"
(Category 506)

1. Jacob's favoritism: Bad, but works for good. Gen. 37:3
2. Hatred of his brothers: Bad, but works for good. Gen. 37:4
3. Plot to kill Joseph: Bad, but works for good. Gen. 37:18
4. Reuben's intervention: Good, and works for good. Gen. 37:22
5. Coming of the caravan: Good, and works for good. Gen. 37:25
6. Judah suggesting selling Joseph: Bad, but works for good. 37:26-27
7. Ishmaelites and Midianites in the caravan. Bad, but works for good. Gen. 37:28.
8. Joseph arrives in Egypt as a slave: Bad, but works for good. Gen. 39:1.
9. Joseph is sold into the house of Potiphar. Gen. 37:36.

   Bad that it is slavery, good that it is Potiphar. Gen. 37:36.
10. Potiphar's wife lied, which caused Joseph's imprisonment: Bad, but works for good. Gen. 39:17-18.
11. Joseph is in charge in prison: Gen. 39:22. Good, works for good.
12. Joseph trusted in man: Bad, works for good. Gen. 40:14
13. Magicians and wise men were not able to interpret Pharaoh's dream. Gen. 41:8. Bad for Pharaoh, but good for Joseph, works for good.
14. Good and bad are all woven into a tapestry. God's grace turns CURSING INTO BLESSING. God, in His Omniscience, works all things (bad and good) together for the good of those who belong to Him.

Sabbath
(Category 507)

Basic Scripture: Exodus 20:8-10. Basic Principle: This commandment given to Israel teaches that freedom demands rest. Rest is necessary for freedom! The sabbath was a thinking day without work. The grace of God was to be commemorated.

1. The sabbath was designed by God to teach grace principles. Genesis 2:2-3. This is the sabbath of innocence.

   On the 7th day of the restoration of the earth God rested. The earth was not created in six days, but restored in six days. God rested because there was nothing else to do, to give, to accomplish.

   God rested the 7th day as a memorial to the grace principle--there is nothing more to provide--God had provided everything for the happiness of man. Later salvation would be provided.

2. There are two kinds of sabbaths (two categories):

   a. Temporal sabbath: This is the faith-rest sabbath of the believer. Heb. 3:11. It is the moment by moment rest of the believer. Hebrews 4:1-7. It also was the basis of spirituality in the Old Testament. Heb. 11.

   b. Eternal sabbath: Eternal life--or phase 3--Matthew 11:28.

3. The Sabbath of Israel:

   a. The sabbath of Israel was a memorial to the grace of God. Isaiah 58:11-14.

   b. Therefore it was instituted as the 4th commandment. Exodus 20:8-11, Deut. 5:12-15, Lev. 23:3. The Jews were commanded to think and not work. "Remember" means to THINK!

   c. The sabbath demanded that the right lobe control the soul. As such they were to do no work on the 7th day as a commemoration of God's grace.

      (1) You can do nothing for salvation
      (2) You can do nothing for growth

   d. The fact of periodic rest is necessary for the orderly function of the human body. Recharging. Also a change of pace helps.

   e. The health of the body also contributes to the freedom of the individual.

4. The Sabbatical year of Israel was the generation test for grace. Ex. 23:10-11, Lev. 25:304, 26:33-36.

Under the agriculture economy of Israel each 7th year they were to stop all work, and live off the previous six years production.

a. This gave the land a rest.
b. This allowed the inhabitants to rest (some leisure time)
c. This was a test of their faith-rest: Could they trust God to provide in the 7th year?
d. The Jewish rejection of the sabbatical year was the basis for determining the length of the 5th cycle of discipline. Lev. 26:33-36, 2 Chron. 36:20-21, Jer. 25:11-12, Daniel 9:2, 24-27. Israel had gone 490 years missing the 70 sabbatical years. So he sent them out in 586 BC to let the land pick up her sabbaths.

5. Also the Sabbatical Year of Jubilee occurred every 50 years. (After 49 years, 7 sabbaths, then the 50th year).

a. All the real estate in the land went back to its original owners.

b. All businesses went back to its original owners.

Everything was on a lease basis.

c. All slaves were to be freed--and every 50 years they started over.

6. Profaning the Sabbath was associated with idolatry and the apostacy of the Jews. Ezekiel 23:37-39.

7. Sabbath violation occurred after the restoration: Neh. 13:15-21

8. The sabbath is set aside in the Church Age. Col. 2:16-17, and the entire book of Galatians. So now the sabbath is not the 7th day of the week (Saturday), but the first day of the week (Sunday). 1 Cor. 16:2, Acts 20:7 and so on.

Salvation: First Declaration of Gen. 3:15
(Category 508)

I. By cursing the serpent BEFORE the promise of salvation, there is a separation between the serpent's seed (homosapiens) and the woman's seed. (The Lord Jesus Christ). Gen. 3:15

"I will put enmity": The wall or barrier

"between thee": Satan

"and the woman": Man is not mentioned here because he deliberately sinned.

"and between thy seed": Unregenerate Homo sapiens.

"and her seed": Jesus Christ

Satan is involved with the human race.
The woman is the means via the Lord Jesus Christ enters the human race.

II. Why the seed of the woman and not man's seed? John 8:44 "Ye (unregenerate Homo sapien) are of your father the devil."

This emphasizes the difference between the man's sin and the woman's sin.

III. Out of the curse of the serpent will come the 1st declaration of the Gospel (salvation). Genesis 3:15.

A. Curse: " . . . upon thy belly thou shalt go"

B. Result: Can only strike the heel, cannot crush the head. Man can strike the head of the serpent.

Genesis 3:15b:

"it": The Lord Jesus Christ at the 2nd Advent

"shall bruise . thy head": Crushing of the head. This is the judgment on the cross against Satan, his being bound for 1000 years, and then the Lake of Fire.

"and thou": Satan

"shall bruise": Crush

"his heel": Jesus Christ at the 1st Advent, the cross.

Satan passed on his venom (sin) to man. Christ bore our sins on the cross. 2 Cor. 5:21. 1 Peter 2:24, "healed": Sewn together.

IV. Emphasis in 1st declaration of salvation is on the virgin birth, not on the blood. The blood follows the virgin birth.

Salvation in the Old Testament
(Category 509)

1. There never was a time and there will never be a time when God is not saving mankind. Romans 10:13, 2 Peter 3:9.

2. The Gospel was clearly declared in the Old Testament. Romans 1:1-4, 1 Cor. 15:3-4, Acts 3:18.

3. Regardless of age or dispensation man is always saved in the same manner: Positive volition expressed in a nonmeritorious way--faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. Acts 4:12, Gal. 3:6-8.

4. While revelation from God is progressive (reaching its peak in the New Testament) it is nevertheless, sufficient for salvation of souls at all periods of time. Gen. 15:6.

5. The object of faith in salvation is the Lord Jesus Christ. Gal. 3:26. However the revelation concerning Christ varies with the dispensations.

6. Generally in the Old Testament, Jesus Christ is revealed by shadows. Heb. 10:1.

7. Once the reality is come, we have the New Testament, which is historical Christology.

8. According to Isa. 55:6, salvation in the person of Jesus Christ, is always available. Acts 4:12.

9. Gospel revelation in the OT through simple declaration begins in Genesis 3:15 and reaches its peak in Isaiah 53.

10. Shadow Christology is abundant in the OT. Examples: Tabernacle, feasts, the modus operandi of the Levitical priests.

11. Christophanies also revealed Christ in the OT. See the category.

12. Inanimate revelation is another means of revealing Jesus Christ. It includes three categories:

    a. Nature: Burning bush, rock, Shekinah glory.
    b. Typology: Furniture in the Tabernacle. Numbers 17:7
    c. Illustration: Noah's ark

13. Many conversions are recorded in the Old Testament.

    a. Noah: Gen. 6:8-9, "just": +R, Heb. 11:7
    b. Abraham: Genesis 15:6 compared with Romans 4. The +R is imputed to the believer by faith.

14. Heb. 11 shows spiritual life (faith-rest technique of OT believers.

15. Many Gentiles were saved in the Old Testament. Romans 9:24, 25; 9:30-33, Exodus 9, Jonah revival; Nebuchadnezzar.

16. Old Testament imputation of +R. Psalm 24:5, Isa. 61:10.

Sanctification
(Category 510)

1. Sanctification describes the modus operandi whereby God the Father makes the believer like His Son, the Lord Jesus Christ. This is GRACE.

2. "Sanctification" (hagio) which is the root word for holy, holiness, sanctification, consecrate, sanctify. MEANING: TO BE SET APART UNTO GOD.

3. The believer is called a saint (a set apart one). 1 Cor. 1:2

4. Sanctification is GRACE IN FUNCTION.

5. There are THREE CATEGORIES OF SANCTIFICATION: Romans 8:29

   a. Positional (Union with Christ). 1 Cor. 1:2, 30; 6:11; 1 Peter 1:2. Phase one--salvation. Heb. 10:10, 14; 13:12, 2 Thess. 2:13.

   b. Experiential: (Spirituality) 1 Thess. 4:3, Romans 6. This is phase 2, the Christian walk. Sometimes called progressive.

      1. Experiential emphasizes spirituality
      2. Progressive emphasizes growth: John 17:17, 2 Peter 3:18

      Both experiential and progressive are mentioned in Eph. 5:26, 1 Thess. 5:23a.

   c. Ultimate or prospective (Rapture): 1 John 3:1-2, 1 Cor. 15:51-57, Phil. 3:21.

6. Agents of Sanctification: (Always work of God, not man)

   a. God the Son: Heb. 10:10-14 Provision

   b. God the Holy Spirit: 1 Peter 1:2 Mechanics

   c. God's Word: John 17:17, Eph. 5:26

7. The Mechanics of Progressive Sanctification

   The use of rebound, 1 John 1:9, results in the cleansing and filling of the Holy Spirit. Eph. 5:18.
   Also compare John 17:17 with 2 Timothy 2:15, with 3:16-17

Satan's Counterfeits
(Category 511)

1. Satan has a regular system of evangelists, preachers, and apostles. 2 Cor. 11:13-15.

2. These evangelists preach a gospel. Gal. 1:6-9, 2 Cor. 11:3-4. (A system of salvation that Satan has concocted).

3. Satan has a system of doctrine. 1 Timothy 4:1-3

4. Satan has a communion table. 1 Cor. 10:21. The Devil's communion table is idolatry:

   a. Worship image representing man or animal.
   b. Worship things (no image) - money, etc.

5. Satan has a counterfeit righteousness: A system of morality and a system of religion. It is criticized and condemned in Matthew 23:27-28.

6. Satan has a smoke screen to obscure the truth. 2 Cor. 4:3-4

7. Satan's Demon Organization:

   Satan has a demon organization, an unseen organization more powerful than any human power, mentioned in Ephesians 6:12.

   There are four Greek words:

   a. Principalities: ἀρχάς. These are the General officers. These are super demons with super power, and super responsibility.

   b. Powers: ἐξουσίας. Authorities. Commissioned officers. Equivalent of our 1 & 2 Lieutenant, Captain, Major, and Colonels. Satan has X number of core commanders, divisional commanders, brigade commanders, combat-team commanders, battalion commanders, company commanders, and platoon commanders.

   c. Rulers of the darkness of this world: (Against world rulers of darkness) κοσμοκράτορ. This is the spy system of Satan. Check Daniel 10:13 ff. This is a special team of demons to discredit and attack rulers. They attack any nation operating under the divine institutions. They attack any VIP believer like Paul. They attack anyone in the vicinity of a VIP believer like Timothy.

   d. Spiritual wickedness in high places: (Translation, "spirits of evil in the heavenlies."

      These are rank and file demons who perform numerous functions. Some indwell people to perform sickness (unbelievers). Some control vocal cords. Some of these manufacture pressure situations against believers. They also intice people to do human good, and often to sin.

Satan's Five "I Wills, Isa. 14:12-15
(Category 512)

I. Satan's Five "I Wills":

A. "I will ascend into heaven": 3rd heaven (throne room)

I'LL TAKE OVER GOD'S PLACE

B. "I will exalt my throne above the stars of God"

I'LL RULE ANGELS: Job 38:7, Jude 13, Rev. 12:3-4

C. "I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation in the sides of the north". Earth as a place. Psalm 48:2

I'LL RULE MANKIND

D. "I will ascend above the heights of the clouds":

I'LL BE SUPREME. He wills to displace God as the Sovereign of the Universe.

E. "I will be like the most High":

I'LL BE GOD. Power lust

II. Satan's Three Falls (3 Stages of Satan's Fall)

At the point of NEGATIVE VOLITION: During the five "I wills". INIQUITY. Isaiah 14, Ezekiel 28:15.

At the middle of the Tribulation he is denied access to heaven. POWER LUST. Rev. 12:9, Ezek. 28:16.

At the end of the Millennium he is CAST INTO THE LAKE OF FIRE. This is his final fall. Matt. 25:41, Rev. 20:10, Ezek. 28:18.

III. Angelic Conflict Resume:

A. God created angels with volition.

B. Satan acted independently of God. 5, "I wills".

C. One-third of the angels chose to follow Satan, making two categories of angels: Elect, fallen.

D. God sentenced Satan. Matt. 25:41

E. Satan impugned the character of God, "How can a loving God cast His creatures into the Lake of Fire?" Human viewpoint.

F. God's answer: God created man with volition.

G. Every time a member of the human race (created a little lower than the angels) chooses for God, the character of God is vindicated, and Satan loses the argument.

Satan's Strategy
(Category 513)

I. Heaven: Satan accuses believers to hinder the work of the Lord on earth. Satan has access to heaven. Job 1:6-11, 2 Cor. 2:11; Zech. 3:1. The believer's defense attorney: Lord Jesus Christ, 1 John 3:1.

II. Earth: Satan invites believers to ignore the Word and accept false doctrine. 1 Tim. 4:1, 1 Cor. 10:19-20, 2 Cor. 11:3, 2 Cor. 11:13-15, 1 Chron. 21:1.

III. Satan seeks to frustrate God's will:

A. Operational will: James 4:7-8, Gal. 5:7

B. Geographical will: 1 Thess. 2:18

IV. Satan seeks to get the eyes of the believer off the Lord Jesus Christ, obscures the focus of the believer.

A. Yourself: 1 Cor. 1:10-11, Gen. 3:1, Elijah in 1 Kings 19:10, Peter in Matt. 26:31-35.

B. Things: Heb. 13:5-6

C. People: Jer. 17:5 (jealousy of people)
(admiration of people)

Answer: Heb. 12:2
Col. 3:1-2

V. Encourages believers to worry. 1 Peter 5:7-9

VI. Satan gets believers occupied with the temporal solution to man's problems and therefore to neglect divine solutions.

VII. Satan instills fear of death in believers: Job 5:21, Psalm 23:4.

VIII. Satan blinds the minds of the unbeliever: 2 Cor. 4:3-4, 2 Thess. 2:9-10.

IX. Satan deceives nations: Rev. 12:9, 20:3, 8.

Second Advent: Zech. 14:1-9
(Category 514)

1. Some believers have fled into the mountains and some are fighting in Jerusalem. When it looks hopeless, the most, the Lord Jesus Christ returns.

2. The Lord Jesus Christ comes in judgment - "slaying with the word of His mouth": These are the armies of unbelievers who are destroyed. This is separating unbelievers from believers.

3. Every eye shall see Him. Rev. 1:7. No one needs to cry out, "Where is He?" No one will be deceived with a "He is here or there."

4. The Lord Jesus Christ shall stand on the Mt. of Olives and the mountain will split in two from East to West, so the believers who stay and fight may walk to safety. Zech. 14:3-5. This is similar to the deliverance at the Red Sea.

5. Even now there is a crack in the Mt. of Olives. This has been confirmed by a geologist - crack in the earth's crust.

6. God's faithfulness (Omnipotence and Immutability) holds the mountain together in one piece.

7. This earthquake will form a new canal "valley of the mountains", making Jerusalem a seaport. Azal is the point at which the split will reach the Mediterranean. Zech 14:5, Ezek. 47:1-11.

8. This will cause the Dead Sea to overflow to the Southward into the great DESERT VALLEY (wadi el Araba) which is a natural waterway (a rift valley). Zech. 14:8, Isa. 43:19.

   The Dead Sea is 1286 feet below sea level and the waters from the Mediterranean will cause it to overflow, causing "the desert . . . to blossom as the rose" (crocus). Isa. 35:1-2

9. Jesus Christ will take over immediately as King. No dependence on human volition as in the 1st Advent.

10. Time Element: Matt. 24:29-31.

Second Advent, Events At
(Category 515)

1. The fall of Ecumenical Religion in the Tribulation in one day. Rev. 18:8, 16:19.
2. Destiny of the Beast and False Prophet. Rev. 19:20
3. Resurrection of "C" Company. Rev. 20:4-6
4. Satan is bound for 1,000 years. Rev. 20:1-3
5. Demons are removed from the earth.
6. The Baptism of Fire for the Gentiles.
7. Regathering of Israel.
8. The Baptism of Fire for the Jews.
9. The Marriage Supper of the Lamb. Rev. 19:1-9
10. Fulfillment of the Unconditional Covenants to Israel. Isa. chapters 17-25, 35:1-10.
11. Apparently there is a period of 75 days after the 2nd Advent, until the Millennium begins. Daniel 12:11-12.

See the various categories that touch on these points for further information and Scripture. Especially the categories on the Tribulation.

2nd Advent: Marriage Supper of the Lamb
Rev. 19:1-9
(Category 516)

1. See the Category, "2nd Advent": Marriage in the Ancient World.

2. The MARRIAGE takes place IN HEAVEN during the 7 years of Tribulation on earth.

3. MARRIAGE SUPPER TAKES place on EARTH at the 2nd Advent.

4. The BRIDEGROOM is the Lord Jesus Christ.

5. The bride is the CHURCH (Believers of the Church Age). Eph. 5:25-27.

6. Just as a bride prepares herself at home, so the church (Bride of Christ) is prepared at home (in heaven). Preparation involves: Resurrection body
Removal of the old sin nature
Judgment of human good.

7. Friends of the Groom:

Old Testament Saints: Resurrected at the 2nd Advent
Tribulational Saints: Resurrected at the 2nd Advent

IN the house - in resurrection bodies.

John 3:29, John the Baptist, "friend of the bridegroom"

Part are already at the feast and part come back with Him.

8. FRIENDS of the Bride (Wedding guests)

Believers ALIVE at the 2nd Advent (living Tribulational believers) who go, in physical bodies, into the millennium and populate the earth.

Bible background. Matt. 25:1-13. They are called virgins because they have free will (mental virgins). All 10 heard the gospel during the tribulation. Five is the number of grace.

9. When the groom arrives on the earth with the bride, there is the wedding supper--millennial reign of Jesus Christ.

2nd Advent: Ten Virgins - Matt. 25:1-13
(Category 517)

1. v. 1: "ten virgins": People of the tribulation. All heard the Gospel. "bridegroom": The Lord Jesus Christ.

2. v. 2: "five of them were wise": Believers of the tribulation. "five of them were foolish": Unbelievers of the tribulation.

3. v. 3: "foolish took their lamps": Their volition. "took no oil": Negative reaction to convicting ministry of the Holy Spirit. No regeneration.

4. v. 4: "wise took oil": Positive volition - prepared. Regeneration. Titus 3:5.

5. v. 5: "While the bridegroom tarried": There was preparation going on in heaven.

6. v. 6: "bridegroom cometh": 2nd Advent

7. v. 9: "buy for yourself": Believe for yourself

8. v. 10: "door was shut": Believers who are in physical bodies at the 2nd Advent go into the millennium and repopulate the earth. Unbelievers are cast off.

Marriage in the Ancient World
(Category 518)

1. The potential bride and groom may or may not have met. Negotiations were carried on by the parents. This did not hinder the doctrine of right man, right woman. The parents of the bride furnished a dowry. They may or may not have had a courtship.

2. The wedding consisted of the groom obtaining a carriage (chariot) and going to the home of the bride. The father gives the bride to the groom. They walk through the door. They are married.

3. They now go to the groom's house for the wedding supper (feast) which may go on for 30 days - some time during this feast the bride and groom leave.

4. The groom's friends are already in the house (except the ones who accompany the groom). The ones in the house already have a head start.

5. The bride's friends have to wait outside until the bride and groom go into the house.

6. The bride's friends are now permitted to enter.

Second Advent: Transitional Day
(Why every eye shall see Him)
(Category 518)

1. The Day of the 2nd Advent will be a day of complete darkness - like the day when Jesus Christ was on the cross.

2. The sun is blotted out on one side and thus the reflective light on the moon is blotted out so that all sides of the earth will be totally enveloped in darkness.

3. Jesus Christ is the light of the world and will lighten the world at that time.

4. Darkness fulfills the principle of "every eye shall see Him." Light is coming in darkness (darkness in which there was no light at all.)

5. This darkness occurred the:

   1st time: To hide Jesus Christ bearing our sins.

   2nd time: It will be to reveal Christ at the 2nd Advent.

6. Scriptures:

   Mark 13:24-27

   Matt. 24:29-31

   Luke 21:25-28

   Isaiah 13:9, 10 (Fire and darkness)

   Ezekiel 32:7-8 (Near and far fulfillment)

   Joel 2:10-11, 3:15

   Amos 5:18

Separation of Church and State
(Category 519)

1. Religion as a principle always tries to dominate the political situation.

2. Religion must never gain ascendancy in any nation that values its freedom.

3. Christianity recognizes the freedom of the individual.

4. This freedom cannot exist unless there is a separation of church and state.

5. When religion and state become one, there is no freedom for the people in that national entity.

6. Religion takes over the state when there is no separation of church and state.

7. Bible Christianity cannot reach the nation when these distinctions are blurred.

8. No nation has ever been ruled by religion without being enslaved. Example: India. This applies to Christianity too.

9. The local church, or any organization within the local church (Christian Institution) which communicates doctrine, allows the individual to use his volition in regard to it. (Its bona fide ritual is communion, and water baptism.

10. The local church functions as an entity separate from the government (state), but it can have a great deal of influence on government through witnessing, evangelism, and the presentation of doctrine in a clear way.

11. The influence of believers with doctrine, overflows into the life of a nation. " . . . salt of the earth": Matt. 5:13

12. The most patriotic thing a believer can do for his nation is to be a believer with Bible doctrine, eventually having an edification complex of the soul.

Stability in the State
(Category 520)

I. The Stability through Law and Order: Romans 13:1-7 DI's

A. God has ordained certain laws for each nation: They come out of the Divine Institutions. Romans 13:1

B. God is not the author of confusion: Romans 13:2, 1 Cor. 14:40, "Let all things be done decently and in order."

C. Rulers have the authority to uphold the laws of the land. Romans 13:3.

Under the four divine institutions: Freedom, Marriage, Family, Nationalism.

D. For enforcing the laws of the land, there are various degrees of punishment including capital punishment. Romans 13:4

E. For financing the nation, God has ordained the principle of taxation (see category on taxation), that is taxation with representation. Romans 13:6-7.

F. When a national entity violates the divine institutions, (such as the USSR, Red China) the citizens of that country are under obligation to the Word of God and not the slavery laws of that country--which usually means miraculous deliverance, or death.

G. It is not "as the people (confusion) so the priest or pastor (confusion) but as the PASTOR (giving out BD) TO THE PEOPLE (RECEIVING BIBLE DOCTRINE).

II. The Stability through the Salt and Light Principles: Matthew 5:13-16. (Erection of the edification complex)

Principle: The number of born-again believers does not guarantee the deliverance of a nation (a majority of them may be carnal) but the number of mature believers (those with an ECS).

A. The Salt Principle: Matt. 5:13

1. Unseen perservative:

a. Pastor-teacher studying and teaching daily, the believers functioning under GAP, maturing daily.

b. Congregation taking in doctrine through the principles of GAP and privacy. (priesthood)

2. Flavor principle: Lost its savor (out of fellowship).

a. Robbing the Word of its power--sterile teaching of the Word.

b. Insipid, flavor not there, tasteless!

c. "It is good for nothing": It has ability for nothing

A believer out of fellowship--not filled with the Spirit.
Not filled with the Spirit--no divine ability
No divine ability, filled with human ability.

d. "cast out": Believer out of fellowship

e. "trodden under foot": Discipline continues--

B. The Light Principle: Matt. 5:14-16, John 8:12

1. "You (all) are the light of the world": Plural

a. This is a phrase designating the edification complex in the soul. This is an inner structure (building) in mature believers.

b. A believer who is not in EMOTIONAL REVOLT!

2. "a city": A group of believers with edification complexes, now a local church of believers with ECS's.

a. "cannot be hid": This type of church has impact, testimony.

b. The reflecting of the glory of God--in the devil's world.

3. "a lamp": A lamp under a big clay pot. (Out of fellowship--no epignosis--no edification complex).

DON'T CONTRIBUTE DARKNESS TO A WORLD OF DARNESS.

4. "put it on a lampstand and give light to the whole world"

5. v. 16, "Let your light so shine": Command to get an edification complex. Daily study, daily function under GAP.

6. "good works": Production of divine good: Filling of the Holy Spirit, the exhale of Bible doctrine, and the erection of the edification complex.

7. "glorify--reflect the glory of God": Very important!

Separation from Believers
(Category 52:)

1. We are to separate from carnal believers who are obviously perpetually out of fellowship. 1 Cor. 5:10-11.

2. We are to separate from a believer who rejects Bible doctrine. 2 Cor. 3:14-15, 2 Thess. 3:6.

   This is necessary because they sweetly pull you away from Bible doctrine.

3. We are to separate from believers who are in emotional revolt as a habit of life, and from believers who operate under some false system of spirituality. Romans 16:17-18.
   This would include:

   a. Separation from the tongues crowd--
   b. Separation from the faith-healing crowd--among others

4. We are to separate from the fast crowd: 1 Peter 4:4, Prov. 1:10-19. Also 1 Corinthians 5:11 and context. This prohibition is for both classifications, believer and unbeliever.

5. Concerning the unbeliever, we are to separate from unbelievers in those relationships where doctrine is compromised. 2 Cor. 6:14, Heb. 13:13.

   a. Marriage: A believer is prohibited from marrying an unbeliever. 2 Cor. 6:14

   b. Certain business relationships: This does not mean that you do not associate with unbelievers, or do business with unbelievers--this would be a partnership.

   c. Can involve organizations such as frats or sororities.

6. We are to separate from worldly human viewpoint thinking: This is a mental separation. Romans 12:2.

   Worldiness is what you think. It always has a mental viewpoint.

   a. Worldiness is becoming a sucker for social action--
   b. Worldiness is becoming hung up in liberalism--
   c. Worldiness is thinking that the war on poverty has merit--
   d. Worldiness is disrespect for the law and so on.

Sin
(Category 522)

I. Definition: Acting independently of God and God's provision. Coming short of the glory (+R) of God. Romans 3:23b.

II. Three Types of Sin: (3 parts of a whole)

A. Imputed Sin: 1 Cor. 15:22, Rom. 5:12, 3:23a. The human race was counted guilty when Adam sinned: "For as in Adam all die . . ." First: Spiritual death, then: Second death.

B. Inherent Sin: Romans 5:12a

"Wherefore, as by one man (Adam) sin (1st OSN) entered into the world . . ." When Adam sinned he acquired an OSN, and brought into existence the OSN. Human race inherits the OSN through physical birth by means of an human father (Psalm 51:5) and retains the OSN after salvation. A sinner saved through grace!

C. Personal sins: Personal sin is a MANIFESTATION AND RESULT of having an OSN. (Use 1 John 1:9).

III. Sequence: (Like 3 dominoes in a row - on edge)

A. Imputed Sin: (Results in spiritual death) DOMINO #1
When Adam sinned, the human race sinned; hence when Adam was counted guilty (being seen of God as -R) the human race is born of Adam's seed.

B. Inherent Sin: (makes man a sinner) DOMINO #2

When Adam sinned he acquired an OSN and brought into existence the OSN. Romans 5:12a.

C. The human race acquires an OSN because of physical birth by means of a human father. Is a sinner.

D. Human race is born spiritually dead because of IMPUTED SIN (-R).

Spiritual death: No fellowship with God.
-R cannot have fellowship with +R

E. Personal Sin: DOMINO #3

Human race (from Adam on) sins personally because of an OSN, both before and after spiritual birth.

F. When Domino #1 falls, #2 and #3 follow.

IV. The Work on the Cross Regarding Sin:

A. Imputed Sin: In Adam we are counted guilty. 1 Cor. 15:22a. Seen by God as -R: Romans 3:23 and as spiritually dead.

In Christ we are counted not guilty. 1 Cor. 15:22b. Seen by God as +R, 2 Cor. 5:21 and as spiritually alive. (Believer is quickened - Ephesians 2:1, 5, 6)

B. Inherent Sin: Jesus Christ died with reference to everyone's old sin nature.

1. Made provision to handle sins from the old sin nature: 1 John 1:7.

2. Rejected human good which comes from the old sin nature:

a. At salvation: Eph. 2:8-9, Rom. 4:4, Romans 6:10.

b. In time: Romans 8:8, Isaiah 64:6.

C. Personal Sin:

Christ bore everyone's personal sins. 1 John 2:2. (1 John 1:9 for the believer).

D. Penalty of Sin: Spiritual Death. Romans 6:23

Jesus was judged (spiritual death, Matt. 27:46) for the sins of the whole world (1 John 2:2), substituting His spiritual death for our spiritual death, making it possible for the human race to become spiritually alive.

E. Issue of Sin:

1. Unbeliever: Rejection of Jesus Christ as Saviour. John 3:18, 36. This is the basis of their condemnation.

2. Believer: Most sins are mentioned in Scripture for the edification of the believer, he is to use 1 John 1:9 in regard to them.

3. In the New Testament:

a. "sins": Refers to personal sins as an action.

b. "sin": SINGULAR refers to the old sin nature except occasionally when it refers to sin as a principle (Romans 5:13) or to one specific sin. (Adam's first sin - example).

A good example of "sin" referring to the old sin nature is 1 John 1:8.

Sin: Categories of Col. 3:5-10
(Category 523)

I. Verse 5:

"mortify": Render impotent. Use rebound, 1 John 1:9, Romans 8:13. Mortify through the Holy Spirit.

"members, which are upon the earth": OSN, sin area

ONE OVERT, FOUR MENTAL ATTITUDE SINS:

A. "fornication": OVERT sin, both technical (referring to the Phallic Cult) and general.

B. "uncleanness": MENTAL ADULTERY. Lewdness, impurity of mind.

C. "inordinate affection": Depraved passion.

D. "evil concupiscence": Evil desire - lust, MENTAL SIN.

E. "covetousness, which is idolatry": MENTAL ATTITUDE SIN. Putting anything before the Lord.

II. Verse 6: Divine discipline for believers.

III. Verse 7: The Carnal believer imitates the unbeliever

IV. Verse 8: "put off": Take off dirty clothes. Rebound and render impotent the old sin nature. Apply retro-active positional truth.

A. "Anger": Orge: Emotion caused by jealousy. MENTAL ATTITUDE SIN. May be sudden burst activity, or an inward burn which results in violence.

B. "wrath": A turbulence of emotions expressed outwardly. MENTAL ATTITUDE SIN, LIKE TANTRUMS.

C. "malice": MENTAL ATTITUDE SIN, lust to hurt someone.

This may come from jealousy or frustration. It generally expresses itself through the SINS OF THE TONGUE.

D. "blasphemy": Malign or slander, usually God, either His character or His work. TONGUE SIN. It runs the gamet from legalism to the expression of false doctrine.

E. "filthy communication out of your mouth": TONGUE SIN: OBSENE LANGUAGE WHICH INDICATES A FOUL MIND.

V. Inner Conflict between the old sin nature and the Holy Spirit. Romans 8:13, "die": Temporal death, "live": Temporal life (F/HS)

Sin: Categories of Gal. 5:19-21
(Category 524)

I. Sexual Sins: Gal. 5:19

A. Adultery: Overt act

B. Fornication: Sex in the name of religion

C. Uncleanness: Mental adultery

D. Lasciviousness: Sexual lust

II. Directional Sin (toward sin) Gal. 5:20
The old sin nature can control the believer directionally.

A. Toward God: Idolatry

B. Toward Self: Witchcraft (pharmacies in the Greek). Any type of addiction (drugs, etc).

C. Toward Others:

1. Hatred: Mental
2. Variance: Discord
3. Emulation: Jealousy, seeking to outdo others. Playing spiritual king of the mountain.
4. Wraths: Emotional sins: Tantrums
5. Strife: Taking sides without knowledge

D. Towards the Word of God: 5:20

1. Seditions: Revolt against Doctrine
2. Heresies: Opinion contrary to the Word of God. (Principle or application)

III. Personal Sin: (Galatians 5:21)

A. Inner: Envy, jealousy, etc. (MENTAL)

B. Outer: Murder, drunkenness, revelling, orgy. (OVERT)

IV. Alternative to the Control of the Old Sin Nature: Gal. 5:22-23. The Fruit of the Spirit.

In GREEK CULTURE, the body was beautiful. Sex was a religious ceremony. So when they became born-again, this was a real problem to them; boundaries of marriage etc.

Sin, Comparison
(Category 525)

ADAM (Innocent)	HUMAN RACE (UNBELIEVER) (Condemned)	BELIEVER (No condemnation, Romans 8:1)
Created spiritually alive. Sinned, -V. (First sin of the human race).	IMPUTED SIN: Born spiritually dead, 1 Cor. 2:16--a sinner. INHERENT SIN: Has an OSN	NO IMPUTED SIN NOW, Spiritually alive INHERENT SIN, still a sinner, but saved thru grace.
Adam died spiritually -R FIRST SPIRITUAL DEATH of the Human Race. Basis for IMPUTED SIN	IMPUTED SIN (-R) Sp. death. 1 Cor. 15:22a "As in Adam": Imputed sin "all die": Spiritual death, Rom. 5:12b "and so death" Spiritual death (-R) "passed upon all men for that all have sinned" (When Adam sinned). IMPUTED SIN.	IMPUTED +R, which takes care of Imputed Sin. 1 Cor. 15:22b "so in CHRIST": Position. "shall all be made alive": spiritually. +R is imputed, which is the basis for spiritual life. (Ability is human spirit)
Acquired (brought into existence) the FIRST OSN, which is the BASIS for INHERENT SIN.	INHERENT SIN: has an OSN, which makes him a sinner. The OSN is condemned. Rom. 8:3	INHERENT SIN: Has an OSN. Still a sinner, but saved. THE OSN is under condemnation. Romans 8:3. Remedy: Apply retroactive positional truth.
PERSONAL SIN came from the OSN	PERSONAL SIN comes from the OSN	PERSONAL SIN comes from the OSN

Romans 5:12, "Wherefore, as by one man (first man - Adam) sin (first OSN) entered into the world, and death (first spiritual death) by sin (first sin of human race - negative volition); and so death (spiritual death) passed upon all men, for that all have sinned". (Imputed sin)

Sin: Did God Create Sin?
(Category 526)

1. NO, God is not the author of sin. God is not the author of temptation. James 1:13. It would be incompatible with DIVINE ESSENCE. All sins come from the OSN. James 1:14-15.

2. Sin originated with Satan through negative volition.

3. God created Adam in innocence.

4. Adam was a free moral agent (as Satan was). Adam had free will. The only way Adam could sin in innocence was negative volition, acting independently of God.

   IN INNOCENCE: Adam had the capacity to sin, but not the nature to sin (an old sin nature).

5. God did not create Adam with an old sin nature. Adam acquired an OSN through negative volition.

6. SOVEREIGNTY OF GOD AND FREE WILL OF MAN ARE co-existant on this earth. The ideal situation is when volition of man crosses the sovereignty of God - compatible at the cross.

7. Sovereignty of God gave man free will. Why? To resolve the angelic conflict. Free will gave man the right to choose for himself even in opposition to the will of God.

8. Adam's choice was made against God's will. God is "not willing that any should perish." 2 Peter 3:9

9. If Adam hadn't sinned, would he have lived forever? No. He didn't have eternal life. Man receives eternal life by accepting Jesus Christ.

10. ARGUMENT: God made all things and since sin is a thing, God made sin.

    ANSWER: Sin is NOT a thing.
    Sin is acting independently of God (either mental or overt.)

11. God did not create sin. Sin is a result of negative volition.

Sin: Seven Areas of "Not Thinking Grace" (Category 527)

1. Spirit of Pride: Exalted feeling based on success or position, or because of good training, appearance or natural gift and abilities. An inner feeling of self-importance.

2. Love or lust for human approbation or praise: A secret fondness to be noticed and recognized by Christian people. A love of supremacy - drawing attention by conversion, exhibitionism, or by playing spiritual king of the mountain.

3. Social Interaction: Anger or impatience. Touchy and sensitive nature. Resentment and retaliation when disapproved and contradicted. Jealousy, sour grapes, envy, etc.

4. Self-will: Concept of the stubborn or unteachable nature. A disposition to be argumentative, harsh, bitter. A "nit-picker", one who is critical. One who minds the business of others more than his own. One who has a long probosicis.

5. Tendency to Magnify the faults and failings of others while emphasizing your own virtues.

   It is having an unpleasant feeling when others succeed and prosper.

6. Negative Disposition:

   Peevish, fretful disposition, that loves to be coaxed and honored. A dishonest, deceitful disposition. A disposition that tends towards discouragement and despondency under pressure, or an attempt to solve one's problems by hysteria and tantrums.

7. Apathy: Indifference to doctrine and the Scriptures in general.

   Study the categories on grace, on confession, and on mental attitudes.

The above are all manifestations of the emotional revolt--see the categories on the soul in revolt. It is carnal revolt piled high.

Sin, Slave Market of Sin
(Category 528)

I. Because of Procreation we come into the world spiritually dead. Romans 5:12.

II. Three Categories in the Human Race:

A. Immoral: Romans 1:18-32

B. Moral: Romans 2:1-16, Isa. 64:6

C. Religious: Romans 2:17-29, 4:4

III. All categories have sinned, and come short of God's standard: +R Romans 3:23

IV. All are born in the slave market of sin.

A. John 8:34-35, " . . . whosoever committeth sin is the servant (bond slave) of sin."

B. Galatians 3:31, Law cannot get one out of the slave market of sin.

V. ONLY A FREE MAN CAN FREE A SLAVE:

Only Jesus Christ was born free from sin (without an old sin nature) and did not commit personal sin. 2 Cor. 5:21. Why? Virgin Birth. The OSN is passed down by the father. Psalm 51:5. Jesus Christ had no human father. Matt. 1:20. THEREFORE He had no OSN and was a free man, not born in the SLAVE MARKET OF SIN!

VI. The Lord Jesus Christ bought us (paid the price) from the slave market of sin.

A. 1 Peter 1:18-19, "Redeemed with the precious blood of Christ."

B. 1 Cor. 6:20, " . . . ye are bought with a price . . ."

VII. This Freedom (from the Slave Market of Sin) and from debt is dependent upon the exercise of an individual's positive volition.

THE GATE HAS BEEN REMOVED!

VIII. THERE IS ONLY ONE WAY OUT OF THE SLAVE MARKET:

A. John 14:6, " . . . I am the way, the truth, and the life; no man cometh unto the Father, but by me . . ."

B. John 8:36, "If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed."

IX. THE ISSUE: WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO WITH CHRIST?

Sin: Unpardonable Sin
(Category 529)

I. Definition:

A. The unpardonable sin is an unpardonable act, it is in UNBELIEF rejecting Jesus Christ as personal Saviour.

B. The unpardonable sin is listed as a sin against the Holy Spirit, therefore we need to understand:

C. Unpardonable sin is not:

1. Adultery, suicide, using profanity, the wilful sin.
2. Constant repetition of any sin (sin unto death).
3. Not calling your brother a fool, falling away, etc.

The above are the most common concepts of the unpardonable sin. All are wrong.

D. "All sins shall be forgiven": Mark 3:28 is a source of comfort. Correlate this with the doctrine of the unlimited atonement.

E. Unpardonable sin was NOT poured out on Christ and therefore was not judged. All sins are pardonable except rejection of Jesus Christ. 1 Peter 2:24, 2 Cor. 5:21.

II. Character of the Unpardonable Sin:

A. It is a sin (act) committed by an unbeliever.

B. It is impossible for the believer to commit the unpardonable sin. Isa. 1:18, 44:22, 1 John 1:7, Psalm 103:12.

C. It is not a single sin or act. It is not progressive. It is not repetitious except in its expression. If you reject the gospel, when you hear it again you may continue to reject.

D. It is unpardonable. There is nothing in the Plan of God which provides forgiveness for it. Acts 4:12

E. It is condemned. When this act of unbelief is operational it is always condemned. John 3:18.

F. The alternative to this unpardonable act is to believe and be saved, but if rejection persists to the point of physical death, then there is no hope and no help.

Sin Unto Death
(Category 530)

I. Sin unto death declared as a PRINCIPLE:

A. 1 John 5:16: "there is a sin unto death"
B. Psalm 118:17-18, Ezek. 18:21-32

II. Characterists of the sin NOT UNTO DEATH:

A. It is a sin which is confessed. 1 John 1:9, 1 Cor. 11:31, Psalm 32:5, Psalm 38.

B. It can also be characterized by a sin which is discontinued. Heb. 12:1, Ezek. 18:21-32.

C. It is a sin which responds to discipline. Heb. 12:6 compared to Hebrews 12:11-15.

III. Characteristics of the SIN UNTO DEATH: 1 John 5:16b

A. An unconfessed sin, therefore persistent; never sees rebound (1 John 1:9).

B. It is a sin which persists unchecked.

C. It is a sin which ignores grace, warning and discipline. Leviticus 26.

D. It is a sin which has a maximum adverse effect on other believers. Acts 5 (Annias and Sapphira)

IV. Case Histories of the Sin unto Death: 1 John 5:16b

A. Corinthian Incest: 1 Cor. 5:1-5

B. Lying to the Holy Spirit: Acts 5:1-10. Trying to get credit for something you didn't do.

C. Persistent carnality at the Lord's table. 1 Cor. 11:30-31

D. Disobedience to the Word of God: King Saul. 1 Chron. 10:13-14. 1 Sam. 13:9-14. Saul had no business offering sacrifices. He was a king, not a priest. The priest didn't show up when Saul thought he should. Saul was told to annihilate Agag. He didn't. Saul consulted a medium - Witch of Endor.

E. Self-righteousness and dependence upon man perpetuated. Isa. 38. Hezekiah.

F. A believer turned apostate. Numbers 31:8, Balaam. 1 Tim. 1:19, 20; Hymenaeus and Alexander.

V. Some of these sins are gross and overt, some are mental attitudes

VI. CONCLUSION: THE SIN UNTO DEATH is not a specific sin, but a CONTINUAL CARNALITY.

Sins that God Hates: Prov. 6:16-19
(Category 531)

In this passage are SEVEN THINGS THAT GOD HATES: The phrase "an abomination" = the worst. There are 4 sins of the tongue, 2 mental attitude sins and 1 overt sin.

1. "a proud look": Comes through the eye-gate.

   MENTAL SIN: Pride. Pride + lust = jealousy. Thinking pride, wicked imagination.

2. "a lying tongue": Lying - habitual liar.

   SIN OF THE TONGUE

3. "hands that shed innocent blood": Murder

   OVERT SIN: Murder (killing during war is not murder). Exodus 13, "Thou shalt not kill": This is the Hebrew word for murder, not kill.

4. "heart (right lobe) that deviseth wicked imaginations":

   This is the right lobe controlled by emotional revolt and is a MENTAL ATTITUDE SIN. This is a right lobe filled with jealousy. Jealousy breeds suspicion. And suspicion thinks the worst. The worst in the mind is the imagination.

5. "feet that be swift in running to mischief":

   SIN OF THE TONGUE & OVERT SIN. This is a person going around making trouble. Most trouble is caused by the use of the tongue. Involves gossip, resulting in overt sin--making trouble for others.

6. "a false witness that speaketh lies":

   SIN OF THE TONGUE: Perjury. Downgrading someone. Playing spiritual king of the mountain.

7. "he that soweth discord among the brethren":

   SIN OF THE TONGUE: Maligning

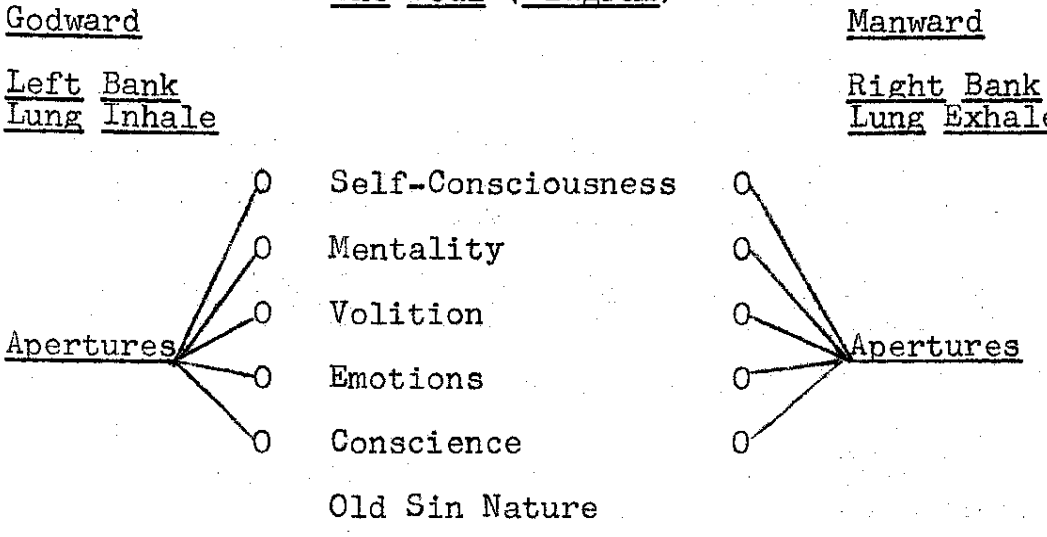
Scar Tissue of the Soul
(Category 532)

I. Development of the Doctrine of Scar Tissue:

A. The soul has "lungs" for breathing (Ephesians 4:23). "And be renewed in the spirit (breathing) of your mind." Also, often the Greek noun "kardia" (heart) is used for the lungs of the soul. The Word of God is INHALED & EXHALED.

B. The soul has two lungs, hereinafter designated "left bank" and "right bank." Each lung possesses five apertures: Inhale of Bible doctrine on the left bank; exhale on the right bank.

The Soul (Diagram)



C. The right bank is designed for relationship with mankind, while the left bank is designed for relationship with God.

D. Scar tissue is built up on the left bank of the soul by means of negative volition toward Bible doctrine. This in turn operns the vacuum "mataiotes" (Greek word translated "vanity" in Ephesians 4:17) into which "cosmos" (worldly) evil and wisdom flows.

E. Scar tissue is built on the right bank of the soul in several ways:

1. Adultery (Prov. 6:32, Eph. 4:19) (Single or married)

2. Mental Attitude sins (1 John 2:9, 11). Mental attitude sins include bitterness, pride; jealousy, hate, revenge tactics in the thought pattern, spite, guilt complex etc.

3. Also drunkenness and drugs cause scar tissue on the soul.

F. How Scar Tissue is Removed:

1. The unbeliever loses scar tissue at the point of salvation (Isa. 43:25, 44:22). All scar tissue is removed!

2. The believers recovery from scar tissue:

a. Rebound: This provides the filling of the Spirit. Rebound does not remove scar tissue--but sets up the believer (F/HS) so that it can be removed.

b. Crash program: Learning doctrine: Heb. 6

c. Exhale of residual doctrine (epignosis) from the human spirit--this results in an edification complex of the soul. Epignosis forms the foundation--and upon this is erected grace orientation, mastery of the details of life, a relaxed mental attitude, the capacity to love, and +H, inner happiness!

G. Scar Tissue can completely cover the soul:

1. For an unbeliever like Judas Iscariot, result suicide. Matthew 27:3-10

2. For a believer like Ananias or Sapphira it means the sin unto death. (1 John 5:16) Suicide can take place in believers as well--still saved however.

H. The Antithesis of scar tissue in the Christian life is the existence of the edification complex of the soul.

II. Six Greek Words for "Scar Tissue":

A. Mataiotes: The emptiness or vacuum in the soul sucking in darkness, legalism, cosmic wisdom. (The English word vanity as used in Ephesians 4:17.

B. Dianoia: The thoughts of the soul. Translated by the English words; "understanding, or mind".

1. Darkness: Satanic thoughts Eph. 4:18, Col. 1:21

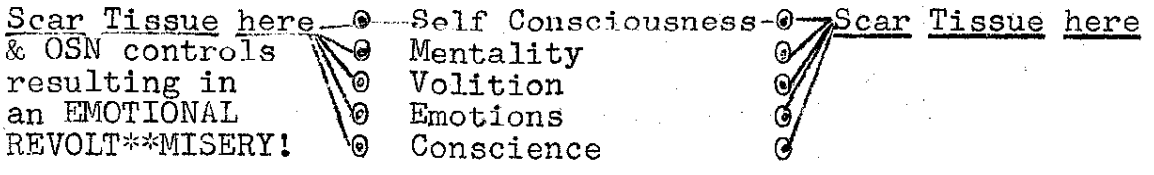
2. Doctrine: Divine Perception. 2 Peter 3:1

C. Skotizo: Have become blacked out; blackout of the soul. Romans 1:21, 11:10. Translated by the English word, "darkened."

D. Apallotrioo: Alienated from the life of God. Eph. 2:12, Eph. 4:18, Col. 1:21. Translated by the English word "alienated" or "aliens".

E. Agnoia: Ignorance, Ephesians 4:18

F. Porosis: Scar tissue in the soul. Translated "blindness" in Ephesians 4:18, likewise in Romans 11:25.



Soul
(Category 533)

I. Part I:

A. You have to know yourself in principle before you are aware of what you are doing in practice.

B. Distinction must be made between the soul and the spirit, even though they operate in conjunction with each other. Heb. 4:12 separates the soul and the spirit.

1. 1 Thess. 5:23: The believer is trichotomous
2. 1 Cor. 2:14: The unbeliever is dichotomous

C. The Soul has the ability to perceive, understand and categorize HUMAN PHENOMENA.

1. Perceive: Obtain knowledge by the senses.
2. Understand: Obtain knowledge by the mind.
3. Categorize: Means of putting knowledge into a system.

D. Human spirit is provided to store Bible Doctrine (epignosis) and categorize it so that it may be cycled into the frame of reference for pulling in--and understanding more doctrine.

E. In category Homo sapiens, the real person (the real you) is the soul. Genesis 2:7.

F. The soul is directed toward man and is self-conscious.

G. The human body is the temporary house for the soul. 2 Cor. 5:1-4.

H. The soul is located in the frontal lobe.

I. The Soul has Essence:

1. Self-consciousness: Awareness of the soul (you existence)

2. Mentality: Two lobes: The thinking part of the soul

a. Left lobe: The recessive lobe, the perceptive lobe, Bible doctrine is merely comprehended as head knowledge

b. Right lobe: This includes three categories:

(1) Frame of reference with a memory center
(2) Conscience with norms and standards
(3) Viewpoint, preferably divine viewpoint

3. Volition: The decider of the soul

4. Emotion: The appreciator of the soul, reins.

a. Left rein: Capacity to appreciate spiritual life

b. Right rein: Capacity to appreciate temporal life.

5. Conscience: The norms or standards of the soul (in the right lobe)

6. The old sin nature: The distorter (twister) of the soul.

J. The Essence of Adam's soul originally had 5 characteristics.

K. Man today (and Adam after he sinned) has six characteristics of the soul.

L. All characteristics of the soul are not evident at the same time.

M. The soul is the seat of human misery.

1. The body has pain-nerve centers. This is mechanical pain.

2. But all misery (mental, emotional, etc.) is in the soul. Psalm 6:3, 106:15, 119:28. The emotional revolt in the soul causes wide emotional swings--a SPECTRUM OF MISERY!

N. The soul is the basis of love: 1 Samuel 18:1 (Both mental attitude and rapport).

II. Part 2: SOUL: Regenerate or unregenerate:

A. The OSN is part of the soul.

1. That is why it says, "the soul that sinneth . . ."

2. That is why it is the soul that has to be saved. Ezek. 18:4, Lev. 5:1

B. It was Adam's soul that sinned from its volition and brought into existence spiritual death and the OSN, which is in the soul.

C. The soul is saved (salvation) not the body, or the soul is lost (2nd death). Psalm 19:7, 34:22, Heb. 10:39, Mark 8:36-37, 1 Peter 1:9.

D. The soul departs from the body in physical death.

E. Origin of the soul: See categories on soul summary, soul mechanics, body--and so on.

F. Human spirit sends doctrine to the different facts of the soul--study the doctrine of GAP (Grace Apparatus of Perception).

Soul: Bible Background
(Category 534)

1. Isaiah 57:15-16: "souls": soul lives (n'shemah). " . . . which I have made." Ahsah. Soul life hits soul format, resulting in physical life. A Qal perfect: Completed action with finished results in present time.

   CONTRAST: Gen. 1:26, Qal imperfect. Operation is perpetuated. The soul, plural, is not referring to creation of Adam, but to the people in Isaiah's day and today.

2. Isaiah 42:5: "God the Lord": The Lord Jesus Christ. The physical birth: "He that giveth breath": Soul life (n'shemah)

   "unto the people upon it": To those ON THE EARTH, not to the embryo. Fetus does not have soul life.

   Second birth: "and spirit": Human spirit through regeneration. "to them that walk therein": Older by the time of the 2nd birth. They are walking.

3. Job 33:4

   "Spirit of God": Holy Spirit. "hath made me": Ahsah
   "the breath": Soul life (n'shemah)
   "of the Almighty": which belongs to the Almighty
   "hath given me life": Physical life.

   GOD GIVES THE SPARK OF LIFE.

4. Ezekiel 18:4: This passage indicates that God gives the soul life, to both father and son. The father passes on soul format, but not soul life.

5. Ecclesiastes 12:7: "spirit": Life (soul life)

6. Zechariah 12:1b: "spirit": Life (soul life)

7. Jeremiah 1:5:

   "Before I": In eternity past
   "out of": Out from. Billions of years ago God had a plan for Jeremiah's life, just as he has a plan for our life - before anyone was ever conceived.

8. Luke 1:15, 41, 44:

   v. 15 "even": Adverb eti: Still, yet, further
   "from": ek: Out from (This is NOT EVER "in". He was filled with the Holy Spirit out from the womb. Apo would have been used if it had meant in the womb and then out of the womb. Apo means something inside and then out.

   v. 41 "leaped": Skirtao: Reflex motility. Body movement without thought. The rapid pulse of the mother affects the fetus.

v. 44 ELIZABETH EXPLAINS what happened. "leaped": skirtao--reflex motility. "for joy": agalliasis - emotion. In the sphere of the mothers emotions this took place. The mother's job (emotion) in greeting her cousin caused a rapid heart beat which started the reflex motility.

9. Job 3:11: "From": Out from. He had to have life before he could die. "give up the ghost": Expire, die. "belly": Word of womb.

10. Job 10:8: (with v. 1, 2). "out of the womb?" Out of the womb. Greek: Why did you cause me to spring up? God is not an obstetrician, but God gives the soul life at delivery. OUT FROM THE WOMB.

11. Leviticus 17:11: "life": Soul of the flesh. Nephesh - soul format. ". . . is in the blood": The ANIMAL'S BLOOD. When he bleeds sufficiently, he bleeds to death and the soul leaves the body (animal body). v. 11 and v. 14 both refer to animal blood. The human soul is in the BODY, not in the blood. 2 Cor. 5:8. If it were in the blood, blood transfusions would not work.

12. Genesis 25:22:

"struggled": Hithpael. They struggled together for space. Motility adjustment for position. This was not a conscious struggle, but a struggle for space. Hosea 12:3, Jacob had more strength in the embryo.

Generally, the reason a woman rebells at the proper Bible interpretation on the soul (in regard to an unborn babe) is because of ignorance and emotional revolt.

When the child breathes its first breath, there enters into that child the breath of God, and the child becomes a living soul.

Soul: Self-Consciousness
(Category 535)

1. Soul has essence - characteristics.

2. Self-consciousness is one of the characteristics.

3. DEFINITION OF SELF-CONSCIOUSNESS: You are aware of your existence.

4. Scriptures:

   a. 1 Kings 17:21; " . . . let this child's soul come into him again."

   b. Acts 20:10: "Trouble not yourselves; for his life (soul life) is in him."

   c. Genesis 2:7: " . . . man became a living soul".

   d. Genesis 35:18: " . . . and it came to pass, as her soul in departing (for she died) that she called his name."

5. There is no death of the soul.

   Luke 16:23: Rich man and Lazarus. Rich man was alive in torments. The real you (the soul) will always live--whether believer or unbeliever!

6. The soul still has perceptive ability (awareness) in its immediate vicinity, whether in or out of the body. 2 Cor. 12:2-4.

7. When there is no doctrine sent by the human spirit to our self-consciousness, we have occupation with self.

8. When the human spirit sends doctrine to our self-consciousness, we have occupation with Christ.

Soul, Mechanics
(Category 536)

I. Two words are used for the soul in the Hebrew language:

A. Nephesh: Soul format or soul essence.
B. N'shemah: Used only for soul life.

II. The soul has 3 stages of existence: (Biblical)

A. Format soul (nephesh) in the womb has two inherited factors:

1. Mentality: Inherited from mentality genes of both parents.

2. OSN is inherited from the father only.

B. Soul life (n'shemah) The spark of life--at birth.

C. Soul essence: (nephesh) Human essence box exists at physical birth.

III. Format soul (mentality and the old sin nature) develop with the fetus.

IV. At the POINT OF PHYSICAL BIRTH the soul life (which comes from God) makes contact with the format soul.

Isaiah 42:5, "breath": Soul life: 1st birth.
"spirit": Human spirit. New birth

When SOUL LIFE HITS MENTALITY, you have physical life.
When SOUL LIFE HITS OSN, you have spiritual death. This is simultaneous action.

V. At physical birth the balance of soul essence is given. Self-consciousness, volition, emotion, conscience. These are supplied as expressions of the format of the soul.

VI. Development of soul essence is based upon mentality. The decisions you make, emotional development, norms or standards in your conscience, the poise or lack of it in your self-consciousness are all related to mentality.

VII. God does not make the format soul, this is inherited: Otherwise all mentality would be equal; God does not make the OSN part of the format soul.

VIII. Isaiah 57:16b: "your souls": Soul lives of people. God makes a living soul out of a format soul which has no life. Only God can impart the spark of life. (The term spark of life is not used in the sense of eternal salvation.)

IX. The body is the area of human life but does not receive life until the soul life is added at physical birth, therefore the embryo of the child in the womb does not experience joy, misery, love, or anything else pertaining to life until after birth.

Soul Summary
(Category 537)

1. The human body is formed by procreation, therefore the human body is a product of inheritance.

2. The format of the soul is formed with the body and is composed of two factors:

   a. Mentality: Inherited from the mentality genes of the parents.
   b. OSN: Inherited from the father.

3. The FORMAL SOUL (nephesh) exists in the embryo but the SOUL LIFE (n'shemah) does not exist until physical birth. Isa. 42:5.

4. The body operates in embryo through reflex motility. This accounts for body movement, which is not life. There is no life until the soul life (n'shemah) is given at the point of physical birth.

5. At physical birth, the life of the soul (n'shemah) and the balance of the soul's essence (self-consciousness, volition, emotion, conscience) is supplied. These are supplied as an expression of the format of the soul.

6. When the life of the soul contacts the mentality of the FORMAT SOUL at birth, there is physical life.

7. When the life of the soul contacts the OSN in the FORMAT SOUL at birth, there is spiritual death.

8. Therefore man is born physically alive and spiritually dead simultaneously, Romans 5:12.

9. Therefore man needs a new birth. Man is born dichotomous. 1 Cor. 2:14 where "natural" is psuchikos meaning soulish.

10. When man is born again he is trichotomous. He receives a human spirit. 1 Thess. 5:23. He is spiritually alive. Eph. 2:1, 5.

11. For this reason both creationism and traducionalism--these two orthodox views have a point, but the truth lies in between these two theories.

Sinai: Relationship between the Ten Commandments & Jeremiah's Day
(Category 538)

1. The Exodus generation was liberated from slavery by the grace of God in 1441 BC.

2. That generation failed to reach the land of promise because of scar tissue and the emotional revolt of the soul.

3. While the bodies of the Jews were liberated from slavery, their souls remained in the slavery of Egypt. Numbers 11:5, 20:5

4. This soul slavery was caused by negative volition toward doctrine. (Even though they had the best doctrinal teacher of all times, Moses, they still were negative.)

5. Therefore when reaching Mt. Sinai the Jews were not ready for the Mosaic Law as illustrated by operation Golden Calf. Ex. 32

   Which did God provide first? The Mosaic Law or the Promised Land? He provided first the Law. There is no sense going into the land unless you first know how to use your freedom.

6. Negative volition toward doctrine produced scar tissue on the left bank of the soul, opening the vacuum of the soul, so that these born-again Jews of the Exodus were exposed to Satanic doctrine.

7. Add to this the emotional revolt of the soul and this is the status of the Exodus generation. Their souls were in slavery, their bodys were free. Horrible!

8. God in grace could free their bodies, why? Because the body does not have volition. But God could not free the soul, because before He can do that the volition in that soul must be positive! Positive volition frees the soul!

9. The Mosaic law was designed to free the souls of the Jews, compatible with the status of their freed bodies (freed from slavery).

10. The Jews refused the freedom of the Mosaic Law in Jeremiah 11:5-7. God offered them the blueprint of soul freedom and they turned it down flat!

    The Mosaic Law is not promoting morality in its primary purpose, IT IS THE BASIC PRINCIPLE OF HUMAN FREEDOM. The Mosiac Law is not designed to define sin, either, they are designed to promote and preserve human freedom.

11. For forty years the Jews remained in soul-slavery after their liberation from Egypt. That is one reason why that generation never got into the land. The other reason is related to the faith-rest technique.

12. During that time Moses one of the three greatest communicators that ever lived taught them the covenant (Mosaic Law).

The three greatest communicators of Bible doctrine were Moses, Jeremiah and Paul.

13. The forty years of the Exodus generation is parallel to the forty years of Jeremiah's ministry to the Jews.

a. The Jews: 1441 BC to 1401 BC Moses (Start)
b. The Jews: 626 BC to 586 BC Jeremiah (Finish)

Both the start and the finish are characterized by great preachers Paul is the starter in the Church Age.

14. In Jeremiah's day the Jews were free of body but enslaved of soul. Jeremiah 11:1-10

15. The manifestation of soul slavery (overt manifestation) was the same in both generations. IDOLATRY. In Exodus it was the Golden Calf. In Jeremiah's day it was Phallic Cult--Baal.

16. For forty days grace did not cease as Jeremiah like Moses taught doctrine. Actually supergrace--they certainly did not earn or deserve His grace! These are the two most undeserving generations in all history. In both occasions they are JEWS!

17. Very important: But the Jews of Jeremiah's day rejected doctrine and the nation returned to slavery from which the Lord had taken them. (Comparison of 1st and last generation in this context)

18. Remember that the Jews of the OT did not have the Holy Spirit when they were saved. But the Jews of the OT did have the Mosaic Law as a basis for their freedom. The Mosiac Law is not the basis of freedom for the Church Age, the Holy Spirit is that.

19. They were set free by faith in Christ and lived in freedom through the Mosiac Law.

20. By way of contrast believer-priests of the Church Age are like-wise set free by faith in Christ, however the indwelling Holy Spirit is the basis for living in freedom.

a. Galatians 5:1, "Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ has made us free, and be not entangled again with the yoke of bondage." How does the Mosaic Law become a yoke of bondage? Through legalism. It was given by grace. It was meant for freedom, not bondage!

b. Galatians 3:1-6, " . . . Did you receive the Spirit by the works of the law (of course not) or by the hearing of faith?"

c. Romans 8:2-4: The Magna Charter of the believer in his dispensation. We are given in the Church Age the Holy Spirit to fulfill the Mosaic Law.

Soul Kinks Leading to Psychosis
(Category 539)

Psalm 103:3, "The Lord Jesus Christ blotted out all our sins (phase 1) and heals all our soul kinks (phase 2)."

Soul kinks: (The Soul in the Emotional Revolt)

1. Self-consciousness - Self pity
2. Mentality - Jealousy
3. Volition - Rationalization
4. Emotion - Feeling is necessary (they think) for spirituality
5. Conscience - Guilt complex
6. OSN - Approbation lust and trend toward asceticism.

The above is the picture of a soul moving into a psychotic condition. The healing of these soul kinks comes from the peoper use of Bible doctrine. The field of psychiatry offers: Sublimination (have an affair; use alcohol); try to talk a person down off an emotional revolt, use drugs, or even try to explain you to you! (The doctrine of you-you!)

A sign of maturity is freedom from soul kinks. The psychotic cannot respond to Scripture. All the Scripture you give them will not help them. At the point of psychosis a pastor or another run of the mill believer cannot help them. He should be isolated from society, and treated medically. A psychotic has destroyed his response in the emotions, his right lobe is neutralized. He still has the Holy Spirit if a believer, but he has quenched and grieved Him for so long that the kinks have developed and firmed up in his soul. Thus the whole combination puts them into this condition.

The self-consciousness of the soul begins with self-pity, but ends with self-destruction. Carrying a soul kink of self-pity past the point of no return results in suicide. Jesus Christ heals soul kinks by thinking Bible Doctrine while in fellowship, so the arrows are reversed, controlling the emotions, and stopping the activities of the old sin nature.

Check out the categories on emotional revolt, a proper understanding of that doctrine is the answer.

Spiritual Gifts: Origin
(Category 540)

1. Modus operandi of the Jewish Age was special empowering for special jobs, that is, to perform miracles. Matt. 10:1.

2. When Jesus Christ ascended into heaven after His resurrection He emptied Paradise - transferred the soul and spirit of OT saints to the 3rd heaven. Eph. 4:8. "led captivity": soul and spirit (no resurrection body). "captive": Soul and spirit to heaven, still no resurrection body.

3. He also "give gifts unto men", Eph. 4:8, spiritual gifts.

4. Each believer in the Church Age receives a spiritual gift at the moment of salvation. 1 Cor. 12:11.

5. You do not seek a spiritual gift.
You do not earn or work for spiritual gifts.
You do not get one on the basis of any human ability.
Whatever gift you have is the sovereign decision of Holy Spirit.

6. All members of the Godhead are involved in Spiritual Gifts.

7. Since God the Father is the planner, we assume He decided we need x number for pastors, teachers, helps, etc. 1 Cor. 12:28. "And God": God the Father.

8. Jesus Christ provided the basis for spiritual gifts. Eph. 4:8-11.

9. The Holy Spirit appoints the gift to the person. 1 Cor. 12:11.

10. Spiritual gifts are the Father's ORGANIZED WITNESS (not personal witness) to the plan of salvation. Heb. 2:4. Behind any mass evangelistic campaign are all kinds of spiritual gifts - a team proposition. All members of the same team, but they play different positions.

11. Eph. 4:12, gives the PURPOSE of spiritual gifts.

    a. Equipping: "for the perfecting of the saints"

    b. Production: "for the work of the ministry": Every believer represents Jesus Christ.

    c. Supply: "for the edifying (building up) of the body of Christ"

You build up the body of Christ by adding new believers and by helping other believers to grow.

Spiritual Gifts
(Category 541)

1. Scripture: 1 Cor. 12, Romans 12, Ephesians 4:11. All spiritual gifts are not listed in Scripture, but merely representative of categorical concepts. Some require preparation, therefore they are mentioned (teaching type). The purpose of some of the spiritual gifts are mentioned in Ephesians 4:8-13.

2. Every believer receives at least one spiritual gift at the moment of salvation. 1 Cor. 2:11.

3. Each spritual gift is necessary for function in the body of Christ. The body of Christ is a team of believers working together. Your spiritual gift is your position on the team.

4. It is not necessary for you to recognize your spiritual gift for you to function under it. Function is dependent upon the filling of the Holy Spirit, and the erection of an edification complex, rather than a knowledge of your spiritual gift.

5. For DIVINE PRODUCTION FROM your spiritual gift, you need the filling of the Holy Spirit AND THE TRANSFER of gnosis (knowledge) in the mind into epignosis (full knowledge) in the human spirit.

6. Spiritual gifts are the Father's ORGANIZED WITNESS (not personal witness) to the plan of salvation. Heb. 2:4. In evangelism many more gifts are operating than the gift of evangelism. It is a team effort (divine good effort) by the body of Christ.

7. The attitude toward spiritual gifts is given in Romans 12:3. One is NOT to feel inferior or superior. IT IS A GIFT!

8. Perspective of the spiritual gifts is given in 1 Cor. 12. Possession of a spiritual gift does not indicate merit or spirituality. "Gift" connotes grace. (Paul was the worst sinner, 1 Tim. 1:12, who ever lived. He had several gifts).

9. There are two categories of spiritual gifts:

   a. Permanent: Which exist throughout the Church Age.
   b. Temporary: Those used between the Day of Pentecost and the completed Canon of Scripture. Approx. 32-95 AD. Most were spectacular.

10. Temporary gifts were necessary to get the church started without a completed Bible. 1 Cor. 13:8-10. They functioned in place of a completed Canon.

11. Temporary gifts were used by God by focus attention on the message of the gospel. Heb. 2:4.

Spiritual Gifts: Identification
(Category 542)

I. Spiritual Gifts are SOVEREIGNLY bestowed by God.

A. The Holy Spirit is the instrument at the moment of salvation who appoints the spiritual gift. 1 Cor. 12:11.

B. No spiritual gifts are given until after ascension--the Lord Jesus Christ provided the spiritual gifts. Eph. 4:8-11.

C. You do not SEEK a spiritual gift. Be satisfied with the one you have.

II. Spiritual Gifts in order of merit (all spectacular) 1 Cor. 12:28-30:

A. Apostles: TEMPORARY gift, necessary when the Canon was incomplete in order to carry the church through those difficult beginning days. The gift of absolute spiritual dictatorship was set aside with the completed Canon, the Canon now being the absolute authority. No one now has authority over more than one church.

B. Prophets: Prophet - gift of both:

1. Foretelling: Prophecy - TEMPORARY
2. Forthtelling: Preaching - PERMANENT

C. Teachers: Permanent

D. Miracles: Temporary (person's faith not involved)

E. Healings: Temporary (person's faith not involved)

1. Physiological
2. Mental
3. Demon induced illness

F. Helps: Permanent - Gift of administration

G. Governments: Permanent - Gift of administration

H. Diversities of Tongues: Temporary - gift of speaking a foreign language not previously known (not ecstatics). LAST IN ORDER OF MERIT!

Note this is dealing only with the 1 Cor. 12:28-30 passage.

III. The use of spiritual gifts does not mean spirituality; HOWEVER the filling of the Holy Spirit allows you to use the spiritual gift to the maximum. 1 Cor. 12:31 introduces chapter 13: "but covet" (as a church) "the best gifts". Prophecy vs. tongues, subject of chapter 14. "more excellent way": This is love produced through the F/HS.

Spiritual Gifts in the Corinthian Church
(Category 543)

1. It is obvious from 1 Cor. 1:7 that the Corinthian Church abounded in spiritual gifts, had spectular gifts and many of them.

2. It is also obvious from the rest of the Epistle that this was one of the most carnal churches that ever assembled in the name of the Lord. The Corinthians were noted for their envy, jealousy, childishness, spiritual bullying, litigation, divorce, drunkenness and other carnality activity.

3. CONCLUSION: The possession of a spiritual gift does not mean spirituality.

4. PRINCIPLE: If the Corinthians, with all their carnality could have more people with spectacular spiritual gifts, then there is definitely no correlation between possessing a certain type of spiritual gift and spirituality.

5. It is important to distinguish between spiritual gifts and spirituality; a spiritual gift, for its proper function, depends upon spirituality, but they are not the same.

6. False teaching based on legalism and emotionalism had infiltrated the church at Corinth, consequently we have Ch. 12-13-14 to refute the legalism and emotionalism there. Also it was written to deal with some of the false impressions which came out of speaking in tongues. (What was happening in Corinth is happening today).

7. One of the abuses in the Corinthian Church was that there were many people speaking in tongues and they felt they were the spiritual giants in the assembly. They said the rest were peons and possibly not even saved. They were looking down their spiritual noses at the rest and saying that until they spoke in tongues they were not spiritual, or possibly not even saved.

8. Brother foot has an inferiority complex.
Brother hand has a superiority complex.
Both are ignorant of doctrine. They are both on the same team, but play different positions. One is not better than the other.

9. The spiritual gift you possess is not the important factor, but the filling of the Holy Spirit, the power on which the spiritual gift operates. (Ch. 13)

10. 1 Cor. 14 gift of tongues was regulated. In the church worship service certain spiritual gifts are to function and others are to be minimized or avoided.

Spiritual Gifts: Healings, Miracles, Faith as Temporary Sp. Gifts (Category 544)

1. The purpose of healing and miracles was to call attention to the message given by the person. It was their credit card, establishing the authority of the Word taught by the individual. The purpose was not just to alleviate human suffering.

2. HEALINGS: The ability to heal at will. Recipients faith was not required either. Acts 19:11-12.

   Paul's gift of healing was withdrawn once his authority was established among the churches. Example: Timothy's illness. Paul's own illness. Healing was withdrawn from Paul by 57 AD. 2 Cor. 12:9-10. The ISSUE is not healing but "my grace is sufficient for thee."
   Paul was unable to heal Epaphroditus, who was dying. 2 Tim. 4:20. He had to leave Miletum sick.

3. God still heals today but the GIFT is not in operation. It is the Sovereign decision of God.

4. MIRACLES: The ability to perform a miracle at will.

   Miracles and healing do occasionally occur in the Church Age (Sovereign decision) but this is not the objective in the Church Age because, for the first time we have something greater than any miracle: The completed Canon of Scripture. Psalm 138:2, Heb. 4:12.

5. One line from the Word of God is worth all the miracles that have ever been performed. The Word in your life must be more important to you than anything else.

6. FAITH: Faith to remove mountains. 1 Cor. 13:2. This it the gift of faith--faith used to perform miracles. Don't confuse faith as it existed (temporary gift) and faith as used now in a perceptive way.

   It was companion to the gifts of healings, miracles. It is Peter healing the lame man. Acts 3:6-8.

7. The GIFT OF FAITH is not the Faith-Rest Technique. The faith-rest technique is in operation: Claiming the promises that are written in the Word and thus making them real in your life.

8. Apostles had these three gifts for at least as long as it was necessary to establish their authority.

Spiritual Gifts: List
(Category 545)

I. There are two categories of Spiritual Gifts:

A. Permanent: Those which still operate today in the post-canon period of the Church Age.

B. Temporary: Those which operated only in the pre-canon period of the Church Age.

II. Permanent Gifts Include:

A. Pastor-teaching: Gift with the most authority today.
B. Evangelist
C. Exhortation (Teaching type)
D. Teacher
E. Government - administration in the church
F. Helps
G. Ministering - Service in little things.
H. Word of Knowledge: Ability to categorize doctrine
I. Word of Wisdom: The ability to apply doctrine to circumstances in life and to give this to others, counseling.

III. Temporary Gifts Are:

A. Apostle
B. Prophecy
C. Knowledge
D. Discerning spirits
E. Healings
F. Miracles
G. Faith (Companion gift to healings, miracles)
H. Tongues
I. Interpretation of Tongues

IV. Spiritual gifts are listed in the order of merit: 1 Cor. 12:28-30.

A. Apostles: TEMPORARY - necessary to carry the early church through those difficult days, before the Canon was completed.

B. Prophets: TEMPORARY - called gift of prophecy

C. Teachers: PERMANENT -

D. Miracles: TEMPORARY: Recipient's faith not required.

E. Healings: TEMPORARY: Recipient's faith not required.

F. Helps: PERMANENT: Assistance to others

G. Governments: PERMANENT: Gift of administration

H. Diversities of Tongues: TEMPORARY gift of speaking in a foreign language which was not known to the one speaking. LAST IN THE ORDER OF MERIT.

Spiritual Gifts: Principle of Temporary Gifts
(Category 546)

1. A temporary gift was one which terminated in the first century (from 70-100 AD - period of termination) and has never been used since.

2. Gifts and signs which accompanied the apostles at the beginning of the Church Age (miracles, healings, apostleship, tongues, etc.) were spiritual gifts (temporary) all sovereignly bestowed by the Holy Spirit. 1 Cor. 12:11.

3. Distribution of these temporary gifts not only involved the sovereignty of the Holy Spirit but the grace of God the Father. No believer ever earns or deserves any spiritual gift.

4. Due to the completion of the Canon, the temporary gifts are no longer used. (Most were spectacular)

5. The fact that the Holy Spirit has withdrawn temporary gifts in our day (Post-canon period) is His way of focusing our attention on the Word of God. (Everything we need is in the Word itself. The Holy Spirit reminds us that we have something more powerful, more important: The Word of God itself).

6. The Holy Spirit is sovereign in His bestowal of spiritual gifts. There are those who imply that you do something in order to get these gifts: tarry, agonize, etc. This is a false assumption. THEY ARE GIFTS, GET IT GIFTS! HEY YOU! GET IT?

7. In the apostolic age there was an emphasis on supernatural phenomena because the absolute criterion was not completed. Therefore an apostle (or others) to establish himself and to perform any kind of divine service in a new town, performed some kind of miracle. This is why most temporary gifts were spectacular.

8. We live in the age in which the Holy Spirit produces the character of Christ within us and Divine Good on the outside; therefore no temporary gifts (such as miracles) are necessary.

9. The miracle of today is the filling of the Holy Spirit producing in Mr. Average Believer the very character of Christ. Gal. 4:19 with Gal. 5:22-23.

10. Often the peril of Christians today is being conspicuous, drawing attention to themselves rather than to Jesus Christ.

11. Any attempt today to imitate these temporary gifts is fakery, either emotional or ecstatic involvement, or demon possession or influence.

Spiritual Gifts: Prophecy, Knowledge, Discerning Spirits as Temporary Spiritual Gifts
(Category 547)

I. Prophecy:

A. This is foretelling events not in the Canon at that time.

B. This was a temporary gift. 1 Cor. 13:8. This gift enabled believers to understand the rapture, tribulation, 2nd Advent, millennium, and eternity BEFORE the Canon of Scripture was completed.

1. John had the gift: Revelation
2. Paul had the gift: Thessalonians

C. The gift of prophecy related the Plan of God to time.

II. Upon completion of the Canon foretelling was not necessary because all prophecy is in the Canon. Revelation was written in 96 AD.

III. Forthtelling is necessary at all times and is in operation today. This is simply proclaiming the whole counsel (Canon) of Scripture. Has nothing to do with the temporary gift of prophecy.

IV. The gift of knowledge:

This was the gift of knowing what went into the Canon of Scripture while the Scripture was being written, before the Canon was complete. (Not the same as the "word of knowledge" in 1 Cor. 12:8.)

V. Positional truth: The filling of the Holy Spirit, etc., were taught before all the Epistles were written.

A. 1 Cor. was written in 59 AD.

B. Ephesians was written in 64 AD.

VI. The Gift of Discerning Spirits was the gift of detecting heresy in the early church - gift of distinguishing true from false doctrine and to recognize false teachers.

VII. The temporary gifts were terminated during the period between 70-96 AD.

Spiritual Gifts: Temporary (Nine)

I. Temporary Gifts were necessary to get the church started without a completed Canon of Scripture. Temporary spiritual gifts functioned in place of the completed Canon.

II. Most were spectacular in order to draw attention to the message given by the person with the gift. All were removed between 70-100 AD.

III. The Nine Temporary Spiritual Gifts:

A. Apostleship: Absolute authority over several churches. Apostleship died with the apostle John, the last one. (sometime between 96-100 AD.

B. Prophecy: This related the Plan of God to time.

1. Foretelling events not in the Canon at that time, such as the rapture, tribulation, 2nd Advent, millennium, eternity. Temporary gift - 1 Cor. 13:8.

2. Forthtelling is necessary at all times and is in operation today.

C. Discerning Spirits: The ability to detect heresy in the pre-canon period. We have discernment today (not the gift) based upon our growth spiritually.

D. Knowledge: The gift of knowing doctrine not in the Canon at that time. Not necessary since Canon is complete.

E. Miracles: Ability to perform a miracle at will. Recipients faith is not required.

F. Healings: Ability to heal at will. Recipient's faith is not required.

G. Tongues: Ability to give out the gospel in a foreign language without knowing that language.

1. Content of the tongues: The Gospel

2. Use of the gift: Warning of the 5th cycle of discipline.

IV. INTERPRETATION OF TONGUES:

Translation of tongues. It was to be used in association with the Gift of Tongues.

Spiritual Gifts: Temporary Gifts Discontinued (Category 549)

I. Temporary Gifts were discontinued between 70-100 AD.

II. The Corinthians were taking a spiritual gift; tongues, and magnifying it all out of proportion and calling it spiritually.

III. 1 Cor. 13 tells us there is nothing in the Christian life apart from the filling of the Holy Spirit producing divine love in the life of the believer.

IV. 1 Cor. 13 Paul takes three temporary gifts and sets up the principle of the discontinuance of temporary gifts. He puts tongues in the middle to maintain the principle in spite of prejudice. Exegesis:

A. 13:8

"charity": The filling of the Holy Spirit producing divine love in the believer.

"never faileth": The filling of the Holy Spirit cannot be hissed off stage. The thing that really counts is the Spirit-controlled life, not the gift of tongues.

"But": Speaks of a contrast: The filling of the Spirit remains the same thru the Church Age, but Temporary gifts are removed.

"whether": Where: When these occur
"prophecies": TEMPORARY GIFT OF PROPHECY

"they shall fail": Become inoperative
"tongues": TEMPORARY GIFT OF TONGUES

"they shall cease": When Paul was writing this, it had not occurred.

"knowledge": TEMPORARY GIFT OF KNOWLEDGE
"vanish away": Will be abolished

B. 13:9

"we know in part": Able to teach only that in the Canon of Scripture available then. Gift of prophecy.

"we prophecy in part": Able to teach only that in the Canon of Scripture available then. Gift of prophecy

C. 13:10: "But": Constast between partial and full knowledge available in writing. Constrast between pre-canon and post-canon period.

"when that which is perfect": Neuter gender - The Bible. Cf. with James 1:25, "perfect law of liberty". Arndt and Gingrich says: "The full measure of knowledge."

"is come": The part moving to the whole. COMPLETED

"that which is in part": THE PART. TEMPORARY SPIRITUAL GIFTS.

"shall be done away": Removed

V. Temporary Spiritual Gift of tongues is mentioned ONLY in 1 Cor. and Acts.

Tongues: General
(Category 550)

I. Prophecies Concerning the Gift of Tongues and the Baptism of the Holy Spirit:

A. Two Prophecies

1. OT Prophecy of Tongues: Isa. 28:11. Jews will be evangelized in Gentile languages.

2. NT Prophecy of the Baptism of the Holy Spirit: Acts 1:5 This event signals the beginning of the Church Age. 1 Cor. 12:13.

B. Responsibility of Israel before God:

1. Custodianship of Divine Revelation: Romans 3:1-2

2. Evangelization.

C. Failure of Israel in Evangelization: Therefore they received discipline:

1. Lost custodianship of the Word to a "new people", the Church: Day of Pentecost, 32 AD.

2. Were evangelized in Gentile Languages which was a sign (1 Cor. 14:21-22) of the 5th Cycle of Discipline which was to begin in 70 AD.

D. Fulfillment of Prophecies:

1. Jews were evangelized in Gentile languages on the Day of Pentecost and after. Acts 2:7-11.

2. The Church Age began on the Day of Pentecost. All Jewish Age believers received the baptism of the Holy Spirit entering them into Union with Christ.

a. Acts 2:1-4: Jewish believers in Jerusalem on the Day of Pentecost.

b. Acts 10:44-48: Gentile believers in Caesarea. Acts 11:15

c. Acts 19:1-6: OTHER BELIEVERS OF THE AGE OF ISRAEL in various locations and at different times received

the Baptism of the Holy Spirit, entering them into Union with Christ, making them Church Age Believers.

II. Why Tongues was First Gift to be Used on the Day of Pentecost:

A. Tongues WAS the first gift to be used on the Day of Pentecost.

B. Primary use of tongues on the Day of Pentecost was evangelism.

C. The great barrier to evangelism was that the city was filled with many people who spoke many languages; therefore a language barrier existed.

D. Barrier was overcome by the gift of tongues: The gift of speaking the gospel in a foreign language, not previously known.

E. Pentecost began the Church Age and a new modus operandi began immediately: Spiritual gifts came into operation.

F. Because tongues was the first gift used, it does not imply that it was the most important. 1 Cor. 12:28 says it is least of all spiritual gifts.

III. Historical Use of the Gift of Tongues:

A. The Gift of Tongues was used only in the first part of the Church Age.

1. Pre-canon period: Temporary spiritual gifts and permanent spiritual gifts.

2. Post-canon period: Permanent spiritual gifts.

B. Unusual activities in the Book of Acts must be regarded in light of the fact that the Canon was not completed and not circulated; Acts is simply a history of the pre-canon period.

C. Therefore during that period there was a crash program called temporary gifts: A stop-gap measure to take up the slack, which later on would be taken up by the completed Canon.

D. The Gift of Tongues discontinued upon completion of the Canon.

IV. Misconceptions and Abuses with Regard to the Gift of Tongues:

A. Tongues are not necessary for salvation. 1 Cor. 12:3

B. Tongues are never a sign of spirituality. 1 Cor. 12:11

C. Tongues must not be confused with the Baptism of the Holy Spirit. 1 Cor. 12:13

D. Speaking in tongues should not cause other believers to have a spiritual inferior complex. 1 Cor. 12:15-16.

E. Tongues is the least of all spiritual gifts. 1 Cor. 12:28

F. Tongues, like all spiritual gifts, can only be completely effective under the conditions of the filling of the Holy Spirit.

G. Volition is indicated in the use of the gift. 1 Cor. 14:28

H. Tongues is a temporary gift. 1 Cor. 13:8-10

I. People involved in tongues today (emotional revolt) limit their growth. 2 Cor. 6:11-12 in the Greek.

J. Tongues is either:

1. Emotional revolt or ecstatic involvement, 2 Cor. 6:11-12

2. Demon Possession: Isaiah 29:1 ff.

K. We are to separate from the tongues people. Romans 16:17-18

V. Tongues as a Satanic Operation:

The most horrible manifestation of the apostacy of our times is the modern tongues movement. It has affected the old, the young, but in every case the stupid believer. Not one divine good work has come through this movement.

Why the reason for this "doctrine of Satan?" One answer. Bible doctrine has not been taught categorically from our pulpits. Instead there has been the substitution of programs, endless evangelistic messages which fall upon the ears of a total Sunday even Christian population or morning (evangelizing the already evangelized), Sunday School contests to bring in the bodies--and many other schemes.

This gimmick system triggers a vacuum in the mind of the Christ. Instead of drawing in doctrine, he sucks in false systems of doctrine (such as tongues) relies on methods, may even get on an anti-church kick. See categories and tapes on Emotional Revolt, especially the ones on why the unbeliever and believer get into the cults. The individual on emotional revolt always rejects the authority of a pastor in a local church, and is a troublemaker.

A wide-spread condition of this sort in Christendom does much more damage to the cause of Christ than liberalism. Liberalism is by and large promoted by the unbelieving religious type. But this cancer, described above, is carried on by believers--believers who are apostate--who worship in high places. THEY ARE NEVER GRACE-ORIENTED, they are constantly restless, they are reactors instead of responders. They claim to be authorities unto themselves, always witchhunters--always smelling out what they claim to be false doctrine, but are only deluded themselves.

These are perilous times.

Spiritual Gifts: Tongues Continues as a Satanic Operation
(Category 551)

2 Thess. 2:7-8

I. 2:7: "iniquity": Satanic type of evil - counterfeit. Evil from the Old Sin Nature is called carnality or sin.

"doth already work": Some of this is in its mystery form today, and it is currently in operation, but the Holy Spirit is restraining it.

"he": Holy Spirit

"who letteth": Restrains

"will let": Will restain

"until He be taken out of the way": This refers not to the Holy Spirit, per se, but to the Holy Spirit working in the believer through the filling of the Holy Spirit, which acts as a restraint upon this iniquity. There are ministeries of the Holy Spirit which continue in the Tribulation, that is, the empowering of the two witnesses and the 144,000.

II. 2:8: "wicked one": The dictator of the Revived Roman Empire, who will be indwelt by Satan. "whom . . . coming": Fulfilled in Rev. 19:15, 20.

III. 2:9: "even him": The dictator of the Revived Roman Empire.

"after the working of Satan": Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire, is a product of Satanic evil.

"with": A preposition of association.
"all power":

"signs and lying wonders": Tongues and healings. The counterfeit gift of healing is accomplished by the indwelling and removal of demons in an unbeliever.

IV. 2:10: The purpose of these Satanic counterfeits (tongues and healings) will be to keep people from accepting Christ as Saviour.

V. 2:11: "for this cause": Negative volition (v. 10) at the point of God consciousness.

"strong delusion that they should believe a lie": Ventriloquist demons controlling men, animals.

VI. "pleasure in unrighteousness": Religion in the Tribulation.

Spiritual Gifts: Tongues Danger as an Emotional Ecstatic Experience (Category 552)

I. Limits Growth: 2 Cor. 6:11-12

A. v. 11: "Our mouth is open unto you": We are teaching you doctrine.

"our heart (mind) is enlarged": Paul's right lobe was full of doctrine in frame of reference, conscience, and viewpoint. HE taught Bible Doctrine but they would not listen. Why?

B. v. 12: "Ye are not straitened": Limited
"in us": by us
"but ye are straitened": Limited
"in your bowels": Emotional pattern. They were in emotional revolt. The Corinthians had let tongues become their criterion rather than doctrine. They strove for the experience of speaking in tongues. THE KNUCKLEHEADS!

II. Command to Avoid Them: Romans 16:17-18

A. v. 17: "brethren": believers
"mark": observe
"doctrine": truth

B. v. 18: "own belly": Emotion pattern, on emotional revolt
"hearts": (the right lobe)
"of the simple": Stupid

III. Two Unfortunate Results from the paractice of tongues today:

A. It obscures the Gospel, therefore keeping the unbeliever from finding Jesus Christ today.

B. It leads believers into false doctrine and prevents spiritual growth and production. Knowledge of doctrine is at a minimum with people involved in tongues today.

IV. A Warning and Command:

A. A warning is given in 1 Tim. 4:1, 2, 16 regarding the doctrine of devils.

B. The command to grow in grace orientation and knowledge (gnosis), 2 Peter 3:18. Gnosis transferred from the mind by faith to the human spirit will build an edification complex, and keep the believer off emotional revolt.

Spiritual Gift: Tongues Description
(Category 553)

1. The gift of tongues was speaking in a foreign language, understood by someone. The one who understands is the recipient of the gift of tongues.

2. When speaking in tongues there was a great flow of words in the mind of the speaker, vocabulary comes out of his mouth, but he doesn't know what he is saying.

3. The gift of tongues apparently was always the eloquent use of the idiom of another language. This eloquence produced fantastic stimulation, from which the speaker had a soulish response: Emotion and often ecstatics.

   a. Ecstatics came from the use of tongues, 1 Cor. 14:17.
   b. Ecstatics did not build up to tongues.

4. This ecstatics was what confused the Corinthians. Others then desired the emotion and the ecstatics. These are not spiritual but soulish.

5. The gift of tongues operated in three ways:

   a. Preaching content: Gospel
   b. Prayer: 1 Cor. 14:14
   c. Singing: 1 Cor. 14:15

6. Purpose of tongues was to communicate the gospel. The Holy Spirit guided the person in the use of tongues, as it was for evangelism (the individual, on his own, would not know when to use the gift.) Person's volition put the gift in operation.

7. Prayer in tongues apparently was bona fide only under conditions of someone receiving Christ, and the prayer was offered in tongues the evangelism being in tongues. PRINCIPLE OF COMMUNICATION.

8. It is necessary to have co-ordination between the mind and any phase of worship for it to be a bona fide part of worship. The purpose of worship is edification.

9. Effective prayer and singing (during worship services or otherwise) depends upon co-ordination between the mind and the human spirit, otherwise the mind derives no benefit.

10. The emotion and esctatics which came from the use of the gift of tongues in leading a person to Christ, was confused with spirituality and therefore was not beneficial.

Spiritual Gifts: Tongues, Mechanics as a Satanic Operation (Category 554)

I. The STRONG DELUSION of 2 Thess. 2:11 (7-11) is described in Isaiah 8:19-20.

A. v. 19: "when they": False prophets
"familiar spirits": Hebrew (ob) pronounced (ahv) means a ventriloquish demon, a fallen angel who controls the vocal cords, causing the person to speak in a different voice (Word also used for snake).

"wizard": A man, demon-possessed. A woman, demon possessed is a "witch."

"peep": High falsetto sound.
"mutter": Deep hollow tone.

B. v. 20: They are not to go to any of these demon possessed individuals but to the Bible, which is the basis of divine guidance.

II. In Acts 16:16-18: "A certain damsel possessed with a spirit of divination": The Greek word puthona = python. The worship of snakes is directly connected with demonism. Satan used the serpent in the garden to reach the woman.

III. Isaiah 29:4 is the reference to demon possession.

IV. Ventriloquist demons are mentioned in Rev. 16:13-14

"unclean spirits": Demons
"like frogs": They make croaking noises and "frogs" are often of politicians.

"they are spirits of devils": Ventriloquist demons control what is said by the rulers of earth during the Tribulation.

V. In Mark 5:1-20. A ventriloquiat demon talked with Jesus Christ. Legion was the name of the demon because there were so many of them. Permission was given to enter the pigs because they were bottlegged swine by the Jews.

VI. The Bible has many cases on record where demons came in and took control of the vocal cords of both animals and people, and they actually spoke in a foreign language. This is what Satan will use in the Tribulation to deceive many, and to bring about that situation which is described in 2 Thess. 2:11 as "strong delusion."

Spiritual Gifts: Tongues: Misconceptions & Abuses
(Category 555)

I. Precanon Period:

A. Tongues was not necessary for salvation. 1 Cor. 12:3

B. Tongues was NEVER a sign of spirituality. 1 Cor. 12:11

C. Speaking in tongues should not have caused other believers to have a spiritual inferiority or superiority complex. 1 Cor. 12:15-16, Rom. 12:3-4.

D. Tongues was the least of all spiritual gifts. 1 Cor. 12:28.

E. Tongues, like all spiritual gifts, could only be completely effective under conditions of the filling of the Holy Spirit.

F. The Holy Spirit guided the person in the use of the gift of tongues. (Divine Guidance). The person's volition put this gift in operation.

G. Tongues was a temporary gift. 1 Cor. 13:8-10

II. Post-canon Period:

A. Tongues must not be confused with the Baptism of the Holy Spirit, just because they occurred first on the same day. 1 Cor. 12:13.

B. Tongues today is either:

1. Emotional or ecstatic involvement. 2 Cor. 6:11-12
2. Demon possession. 1 Tim. 4:1, 2, 16

C. People involved in the tongues movement today (emotional area) limit their growth. 2 Cor. 6:11-12

D. We are to separate from the tongues people. Romans 16:17-18.

E. We are to understand that tongues after 70 AD is a Satanic operation.

F. The spiritual gift of tongues was a gift from God - GRACE. (From 32 to 70 AD). The agonizing, tarrying, etc., shows ignorance of doctrine on the part of the believer involved. They try to earn or work for a gift, a gift that is no longer being given.

Spiritual Gifts: Tongues, Perspective of the Gift (Category 556)

1. The prophecy of tongues: Isaiah 28:1-11. The use of the gift of tongues (evangelism to the Jews) was a SIGN to the Jews that the 5th Cycle of Discipline was coming. In the Gospel was the necessary content to turn cursing into blessing. 1 Cor. 14:21-22.

2. The proper use of tongues as a sign of the 5th Cycle of Discipline is found in:

   a. Acts 2:3-11, "Jewish Pentecost"
   b. Acts 10:44-46 "Gentile Pentecost"
   c. Acts 19:2-7 "Transitional Pentecost"

3. Prophecy: Isa. 28:9-11
   Explanation: 1 Cor. 14:21-22
   Fulfillment: Acts 2:1-11; 10:44-46; 19:2-7

4. Tongues was discontinued after the fall of Jerusalem in 70 AD, when the 5th Cycle of Discipline began. (Sin no longer needed). It was in operation for 38 years. 1 Cor. 13:8, 10.

5. The gift of tongues was a miraculous operation in use before the completed canon of Scripture. Our miracle is the completed canon.

6. But pseudo tongues continues as a Satanic Operation. 2 Thess. 2:7-12.

7. The mechanics of pseudo tongues is found in Isaiah 8:19, Isaiah 29:4, and illustrated by Rev. 16:13-14.

8. Some tongues activity today is demon possession. Some is emotional activity.

9. Pseudo tongues is established as a false criterion for spirituality. 2 Cor. 6:11-12.

10. The gift of tongues is speaking in a foreign language without the person knowing the content of what he says.

11. The gift of interpretation went hand in hand with the gift of tongues.

12. Perpetuation of tongues as an emotional outlet indicates failure to learn doctrine. Such a person doesn't know even the very basis doctrines such as rebound.

Spiritual Gifts: Tongues as a Temporary Gift: Its Use on the Day of Pentecost (Category 557)

1. The gift of tongues was the ability to speak in a foreign language not understood by the person speaking it.

2. "Tongue" means a language that someone understands. The word "unknown" is not in the original manuscripts.

3. The content of tongues was always the gospel. 1 Cor. 14:21-22.

4. In the use of tongues, God the Holy Spirit did the leading. The believer with the gift could go positive with the leading of the Holy Spirit, or the believer could use the gift without the leading of the Holy Spirit. This always resulted in the abuse of tongues.

5. The gift of tongues was the first gift to be used on the day of Pentecost. And this gift was used only in the very first part of the Church Age.

   a. Precanon period: Temporary and permanent spiritual gifts.
   b. Postcanon period: Permanent spiritual gifts.

6. The use of tongues on the day of Pentecost was evangelism. The operation of tongues was a warning of the 5th cycle of discipline.

7. Jerusalem was filled with many people who spoke many languages on the Day of Pentecost. Religious unbelievers had come for the Holy Days. A language barrier existed.

8. The barrier was overcome by the gift of tongues.

9. Pentecost began the Church Age and a new modus operandi began immediately: Spiritual gifts came into operation.

10. Because tongues was the first gift to be used, does not imply that it was the most important. 1 Cor. 12:28 says it is the least of all spiritual gifts.

11. Unusual activities in the Book of Acts must be regarded in light of the fact that the Canon was not completed and not circulated. Acts is history of the Pre-canon period. Tongues is mentioned only in Acts and 1 Corinthians.

12. Therefore during that period there was a crash program called temporary gifts: A stopgap measure to take up the slack, which later on would be taken up by the completed Canon of Scripture.

13. The gift of tongues was discontinued in 70 AD with the fall of Jerusalem, when the Jews went into the 5th Cycle of Discipline. The use of the gift of tongues was a warning of the 5th Cycle of Discipline. 1 Cor. 14:22.

14. The interpretation of tongues went hand in hand with the gift of tongues and was a temporary gift.

Spiritual Gifts: Two Prophecies (Tongues and Baptism of the HS)
(Category 558)

I. It is necessary to understand two prophecies in the study of the gift of tongues:

A. OT prophecy of tongues: Isa. 28:11
B. NT prophecy of the baptism of the Holy Spirit: Acts 1:5

II. Both prophecies were fulfilled on the Day of Pentecost for the first time and hence they are confused.

III. The New Testament prophecy of the baptism of the Holy Spirit Acts 1:5.

A. "not many days hence": Reference to the Day of Pentecost.

B. John's baptism identified with the Jewish Age.

C. The baptism of the Holy Spirit is a SIGN of the beginning of the Church Age. Acts 11:15-16 says it DID happen on the Day of Pentecost. Acts 1:5, John 14:16-20 says it WILL happen on the Day of Pentecost. Note John 14:16-20 below:

1. v. 16: "abide with you": The indwelling of the HS
2. v. 17: "world": Unbeliever
"shall be in you": The indwelling of the HS
3. v. 20: "at that day": Day of Pentecost
"ye in me, and I in you": Indwelling--Jesus Christ. Union with Christ.

IV. The OT Prophecy of Tongues: Isaiah 28:11-12

A. v. 11: "stammering lips": Gentile languages
"another tongue": Strange language
"this people": Jewish people

B. v. 12: "weary to rest": Gospel, subject of tongues. The Jews were going to be evangelized, not with the Hebrew language (smooth flowing) but with Gentile languages (stammering speech).

V. 1 Cor. 14:21-22 is New Testament confirmation of Isa. 28:11. The USE OF TONGUES was to be a SIGN to Jewish unbelievers that they were going to be under a double curse: Spiritual death and the 5th cycle of discipline, not just spiritual death. The saved Jews are CHURCH and do not need a sign.

VI. The nation Israel had two responsibilities before God: The custodianship of divine revelation (Word): Rom. 3:1-2. Evangelism: The Jews failed in both.

VII. The Jew's Discipline was:

A. 5th Cycle of Discipline
B. God chose a new people (CHURCH) to do what His chosen people (Israel) were supposed to do: Custodian of the Word and evangelize.

VIII. Tongues as a True Sign: The warning that the Church would take over and that the 5th cycle of discipline would come. If they responded to the content of tongues (Gospel) they became CHURCH.

IX. Tongues as a False Sign: Operation of psuedo tongues.

Healing, Miracles During the Lord's Ministry (Category 559)

I. Jesus Christ performed acts of healing, miracles, to demonstrate who and what He was - His credit card.

II. The miracles were to establish Jesus Christ's identity as "the God who doeth wonders" (Psalm 77:14). They gained a hearing for this vitally important message. John 10:36-38.

III. His power over the sea; over death, sickness, demons--was shown to prove who Jesus was, and to give Him an audience for His message.

IV. He did not heal just to alleviate suffering; but to call attention to His message because otherwise Jesus would have healed everyone in the world, if the purpose was to lesson suffering.

V. The important thing was not how you feel in time--but where you will spend eternity.

VI. His greatest miracle was giving the human race salvation, if they chose to accept it.

VII. Jesus gave the disciples authority to: Matt. 10:8

A. "heal the sick":

B. "cleanse the lepers": Different from healing the sick because it involved the leper reporting into the temple and going through the purification ceremony which alerted the priesthood to the fact that Messiah is here.

C. "raise the dead": Resuscitation.

D. "cast out demons": This was necessary because demons were active trying to neutralize the message.

VIII. The power to heal and perform miracles was given to the disciples (apostles to Israel) to indicate that they represented Messiah. It gave their message the stamp of divine authority.

IX. This was special empowering for special jobs - Jewish Age modus operandi.

X. The modus operandi of miracles and healings in the Precanon of the Church Age was spiritual gifts.

XI. The disciples at this time were apostles to Israel. On the Day of Pentecost they received the gift of apostleship and became apostles to the church. (725)

Spirituality Introduction
(Category 560)

1. What makes a person spiritual?

   a. Is it an experience which some Christians achieve to a greater degree than others?
   b. Is it a stimulating feeling within, which produces an ecstatic reaction?
   c. Should we try to imitate the experience of another great believer in order to become spiritual?
   d. What does the Bible teach regarding spirituality?

2. Spirituality is open to all believers, just as salvation is open to all humanity.

3. Spirituality is not an elusive and mysterious experience that some can have which will set them apart from other believers.

4. Spirituality in the Church Age is a relationship with God the Holy Spirit.

5. Christianity is a relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ.

6. I am a Christian because of my relationship with Jesus Christ.

7. I am spiritual because the Holy Spirit controls my life.

8. Spirituality is not the Baptism of the Holy Spirit, nor is it the indwelling of the Holy Spirit (basis of spirituality).

9. Spirituality is the result of the filling of the Holy Spirit. Phase 2.

10. Divine love is a manifestation of the filling of the Holy Spirit (spirituality). Divine love is from the source of God (Trinity).

11. Spirituality gets its title from the 3rd person of the Trinity.

12. An understanding of growth is necessary to the understanding of spirituality.

13. Distinction is made in the Bible between spirituality and growth (maturity).

14. Maturity is a result of growth and is often mistaken for spirituality.

15. You can be: A baby can be spiritual or carnal. An adolescent can be spiritual or carnal. A mature believer can be spiritual or carnal.

16. The issue of spirituality is that at any point I am either controlled by the Holy Spirit or by the old sin nature.

17. The issue is growth (maturity) is progression or retrogression, depending upon knowledge and full knowlege of Bible Doctrine.

Spirituality is an Absolute: Introduction
(Category 561)

1. God is not the author of sin, God does not therefore solicit to sin.

2. It is incompatible with the Divine Essence to originate, condone, or to sponsor sin.

3. What the OSN promotes always leads to sin (carnality).

4. Hence, what God has provided, the indwelling Holy Spirit (who is God) cannot sin, promotes SPIRITUALITY.

5. The indwelling Holy Spirit is the basis for SPIRITUALITY.

6. Every creature must live according to his nature.

7. The unbeliever has only the old sin nature.

8. The believer has both the indwelling Holy Spirit and the old sin nature, hence we have the inner struggle. Rom. 5:16-17.

9. To be born of God means living in Union with Christ, indwelt by Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit.

10. Through the filling of the Holy Spirit, the Holy Spirit produces the character of Christ in the believer, and in this status it is impossible to sin.

11. The unbeliever has the nature to sin and lives habitually under the control of the OSN.

12. The believer has the INDWELLING HOLY SPIRIT (God) and in principle, should produce the character of Christ.

13. In practice believers can walk in the light (in fellowship) or in the darkness (out of fellowship.

14. The believer has the indwelling Holy Spirit (God) who cannot sin and a nature which can sin (old sin nature). Human volition is the control switch.

15. In principle the believer is born of God and cannot sin.

    In practice he flips the control switch, comes under the control of the old sin nature and produces sin and dead works.

16. 1 John 3 emphasizes the principle, while Galatians 5 emphasizes the practice.

Spirituality is an Absolute (1 John 3:9)
(Category 562)

1. The believer has a positional relationship with God (top circle) and an eternal relationship to God.

2. The believer also has an experiential relationship with God in time (bottom circle, called fellowship).

3. In the top circle the believer is in Christ and of course indwelt by the Holy Spirit, and he cannot get out of the top circle.

4. In the bottom circle the believer is controlled by the Holy Spirit (spirituality) but can get out of the bottom circle. Then he is controlled by the old sin nature and out of fellowship.

5. Rebound (1 John 1:9) provides perfect cleansing (1 John 3:3) giving the believer experiential righteousness, making spirituality an absolute. Rom. 8:2.

6. Rebound takes control from the old sin nature and gives control to the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit cannot control if there is sin, as the Holy Spirit is God. God is +R and cannot fellowship with -R (carnality). Spirituality cannot fellowship with carnality.

7. In 1 John LIGHT is analogous to God (and in the believer erecting an edification structure which reflects the glory of God. Light is analogous to sin.)

8. As light and darkness are mutually exclusive, so are spirituality and carnality.

9. The believer in fellowship is called spiritual. The believer out of fellowship is called carnal. 1 Cor. 3:1-3.

10. The believer IN FELLOWSHIP is "walking in the light", reflecting his position in Christ--erecting an edification structure by the constant transfer of gnosis to epignosis by faith.

11. The believer OUT OF FELLOWSHIP is walking in darkness, reflecting the control of the old sin nature, and looking just like an unbeliever who has no other control. 1 Cor. 3:3.

12. The believer has the indwelling HS and when filled with the HS cannot sin. But when out of fellowship, the believer can do nothing but sin, until 1 John 1:9 breaks the chain of sins.

13. The spiritual believer is the subject of 1 John 3:9. The "seed" refers to the Holy Spirit--and God cannot sin. When the HS controls the life, the believer cannot sin. It takes an act of volition to get out from under the control of the Holy Spirit, which gives control to the OSN and then one sins.

Spirituality: Believer's Walk
(Category 563)

Areas of the Believer's Walk: The filling of the Holy Spirit necessary for all.

1. We are told to walk in doctrine. 3 John verse 3. The believer cannot learn doctrine if out of fellowship. This means to take in doctrine, transfer it by faith to the human spirit--epignosis, applicable doctrine.

2. We are to walk in faith. Heb. 4:1-3. The filling of the Spirit is necessary. Romans 14:23.

3. Walk in the Spirit. Gal. 5:16. Command to be filled with HS.

4. Walk in the Light. 1 John 1:7. Emphasis on reflecting the glory of God by being filling of the Spirit.

5. Walk in newness of life. Romans 6:4. The filling of the Holy Spirit produces a different life, an inner love. You love the brethren, you love the Lord. You are oriented to the grace of God. You filfill the principle of worship, prayer, witnessing, etc.

6. Walk worthy of the vocation wherewith ye are called. Eph. 4:1 Every believer is in full time service. This is being filled with the Holy Spirit and fulfilling your ambassadorship.

7. Walk worthy of the Lord. Col. 1:10. The filling of the Holy Spirit glorifies the Lord Jesus Christ.

8. Walk honestly as in the day. Romans 13:13-14. This means to stay in fellowship and develop an edification structure--your life will have impact for Christ.

9. Walk in good works, Eph. 2:10. You produce divine good works when filled with the Holy Spirit and functioning under GAP.

10. Walk in love. Eph. 5:2 The filling of the Holy Spirit and the erection of an edification structure has its by-product: Love--the fruit of the Spirit). Romans 5:5, " . . . love of God is shed abroad in our hearts (minds) by the Holy Spirit . . ."

11. Walk in wisdom. Col. 4:5, the application of doctrine. The Holy Spirit teaches our human spirit when the believer is in fellowship. It is a matter of divine guidance.

12. To fulfill all these "walk admonitions" is to be controlled by the Holy Spirit, transferring knowledge as it comes into the mind from the printed page to the human spirit by faith--it then becomes full knowledge (epignosis) and is recycled back in the mind as a frame of reference for learning more doctrine.

Spirituality: Command to Awake, Ephesians 5:14-18
(Category 564)

I. Verse 14:

"awake": Wake up and find out how to operate all the wonderful grace equipment available.

"thou that sleepest": Those ignorant of doctrine

"arise from the dead": Temporal death. Indifference and aparthy result when the old sin nature controls the life.

"and Christ shall give thee light": The light Christ gives is produced by the Holy Spirit erecting an edification complex (structure) in the soul. This light is a reflected light--and (structure) in the soul. This light is a reflected light--and brings glory to His name. The HS animates the Christian life.

II. Verse 15: "fools": A carnal Christ, under the control of the old sin nature.

"wise": A spiritual Christian, under the control of the Holy Spirit.

III. "redeeming the time": Purchasing the time. They keep on buying up the time by being filled with the Holy Spirit. Verse 16.

IV. Verse 17:

"but understanding what the will of the Lord is":

The will of the Lord in context is verse 18. A believer is to understand what the will of the Lord is, that is, the filling of the Holy Spirit. It is a command to spirituality.

V. Verse 18:

"Be not drunk with wine": NEGATIVE

"but be filled with the Spirit": POSITIVE

Present tense: Keep on being filled with the Holy Spirit.
Imperative: Command

The analogy is: Liquor controls a person--results--negative.
Holy Spirit (filling) controls the believer--results--poitive.

The motivating force on the inside that changes you should be the filling of the Holy Spirit.

Spirituality: Commands Regarding (Category 565)

There are 2 negative commands and 1 positive command regarding spirituality.

I. The First Command: Ephesians 4:3, "Grieve not the Holy Spirit"

A. Grieving the Holy Spirit is caused by any sin in the life of the believer which involves a moral or ethical issue.

B. Grieving the Holy Spirit is producing sins from your area of weakness in the old sin nature, such as immorality, sins of the tongue, mental attitude sins.

C. These GET the believer out of fellowship.

II. The Second Command: 1 Thess. 5:19 "Quench not the Holy Spirit

A. Quenching the Holy Spirit is disobedience to God's Word that doesn't involve a moral or ethical issue.

B. It is producing human good from the area of strength in the old sin nature.

C. Human good soothes your conscience and thus you fail to rebound (use 1 John 1:9) and quench the Holy Spirit (keep Him from controlling your life).

D. Disobedience to God's Word: That is, Ephesians 5:18. This keeps you out of fellowship, keeps you from using 1 John 1:9.

The first 2 commands show that we can do something NOT TO BE SPIRITUAL! The third command shows that we can do nothing to be SPIRITUAL!

III. The Third Command: Eph. 5:18, "Be filled with the spirit"

A. The present tense indicates "keep on being filled," indicating that we are not always filled.

B. The Holy Spirit is God, and God cannot control when there is sin in the life.

C. So to be controlled by God the Holy Spirit, we must get into fellowship by use of 1 John 1:9 - confession.

D. Confess means to identify, or name our sin, which is non-meritorious - DO NOTHING!

Spirituality: False Criteria For:
(Category 5&6)

I. Spirituality by Tabooism: A false idea that if a believer does not play cards, mixed bathe, smoke, go to movies, or dance--he is spiritual. "I am spiritual if I observe certain taboos." One is not spiritual by outward externals, but by being in fellowship. Some of the above taboos are not labeled as sin in the Bible, but in principle form the believer in fellowship may be led to not indulge in them. Fine, but they are not a means to spirituality.

II. Spirituality by Relativity: This means that by comparing myself with others--I find that I am a better or more spiritual person than they. Perhaps my sins are more refined than another believers. This is wrong, first to compare people with people--and then second to make spirituality have degrees. There are DEGREES OF GROWTH, BUT NO DEGREES OF SPIRITUALITY! You are either in fellowship (spiritual) or out of fellowship (carnal). Spirituality is an absolute, as is carnality.

III. Spirituality by Crucifying Self: This is self trying to cancel out self. This is impossible. Perhaps a believer is frustrated, discouraged, defeated, so he decides to nail the flesh to the cross. He may do it through trying harder, going through a system of sorrow for sin (penance) vowing to live as Jesus lived--all to no avail! One is spiritual because the Spirit of God controls the believer, if one is not controlled by the HS, then he is out of fellowship and he gets back in by acknowledging the sin or sins that the Holy Spirit points out. Rom. 12:1, 1 John 1:9.

IV. Spirituality by Prayer: This is subtle. Prayer is wonderful, it is ordained of God for the believer. But one does not become spiritual by praying, "O Lord help me to be spiritual, Lord do it!" We do not pray for the filling of the Holy Spirit. The filling of the Spirit comes with Biblical confession of sin. Once the sin or sins are confessed the automatic result is SPIRITUALITY.

V. Spirituality by Asceticism: This is extreme self-denial, the not eating of certain foods to be spiritual, even monasticism, fasting to be spiritual, even doing things to the point of self-torture to be spiritual. This is again just human works, NO GOOD! Spirituality is thus abused.

VI. Spirituality by Discipline: I make myself do certain things to be spiritual. I try harder. I get under a schedule, I try to pray an hour a day and study the Word another hour. But it doesn't work for spirituality. Discipline is certainly part of the believer's walk with the Lord, BUT IT IS NOT THE MEANS OF SPIRITUALITY!

VII. Spirituality by Ecstatics: This is spirituality by emotionalism. One of the facets of the soul is EMOTIONS. It is the appreciator of the soul. But it is never a criteria for spirituality, NEVER!

A. The criterion for spirituality is never emotion, even as the criterion for salvation is never how I feel.

B. You may have emotion at salvation, or when spiritual, BUT emotion is not the means, nor the test, nor the measure for either spirituality or salvation.

C. No two people are physically alike. This is also true in the Christian life. No two people have the same emotional reaction.

D. A believer should not try to pour another believer into a mold.

E. Some groups feel that tongues is the criterion for spirituality, never. Tongues is emotionalism (emotional revolt) at best (which is horrible) and demon possession at the worst (in unbelievers).

VIII. Spirituality by Facial Expression or Body Language: This is superficial hypocricy.

A. A long, sad, face is not a manifestation of spirituality; neither is a smiling face.

B. Spirituality cannot be judged on the basis of facial expression.

C. Spirituality is on the inside--and if in fellowship there may be an outward animation. (But the outward animation is not the important factor.)

IX. Spirituality by the Second Blessing. Never! This is the so-called area of maturity by panacea. One day I'm carnal and a Christian failure, the next day I wake up--and have a great experience and from then on am a power for God. NEVER!

A. The filling of the Spirit is needed whenever a person gets out of fellowship. And His grace is not limited to two times.

B. And believers can have numerous blessings, but not of the Pentecostal variety, 20th century.

X. Spirituality by Yieldedness. This is the most popular error today in the field of spirituality. Romans 6:13, and Romans 12:1-2 form the basis for this approach, they say. However yieldedness does not produce spirituality. Yieldedness is explained as something the believer must DO. DO! Human works. THERE IS NOTHING YOU CAN DO TO BE YIELDED. It is a non-meritorious operation. True yielding is actually 1 John 1:9. When you confess sin Biblically you are in fellowship--yielded. When you are out of fellowship, you are unyielded! ONLY A FAITH OPERATION PUTS YOU BACK IN FELLOWSHIP! Anything more than confess is human works--and it only muddies the waters.

Spirituality: Five Coins: 1 John 2 (two sides)
(Category 567)

I. First Coin: (Top Circle)

A. Principle: Repentance (change of mind toward Jesus Christ)

B. Practice: Believe (Awareness of repentance comes with believing.)

II. Second Coin: (Bottom Circle)

A. Principle: "Yield": Rom. 6:13 (Present tense, state of being)

B. Practice: "Yield": Rom. 12:1 and 1 John 1:9 (Aorist)

One is to be continually yielded (in fellowship), one is to yield if not yielded (carnal) by confessing sin Biblically. 1 John 1:9. So there are two sides to yield, just as there are two sides to a coin--. The Aorist tense is not a one shot dedication, but indicates that every time one gets out of fellowship, he is to get back in by rebound.

III. Third Coin:

A. Positive Side: 1 John 1 "That your joy may be full." The filling of the Holy Spirit.

B. Negative Side: 1 John 2 "That ye sin not": Application of retroactive positional truth.

IV. Fourth Coin:

A. 1 John 1: How to get back into fellowship: Rebound

B. 1 John 2: How to stay under the control of the Holy Spirit. Past, Present, Future help.

V. Fifth Coin:

A. Human side: Romans 6 emphasizes

1. Know pertinent doctrine. v. 3, 6, 9: RAPT
2. Apply doctrine. v. 11 (convert gnosis to epignosis)
3. Yield (aorist tense) which is 1 John 1:9.

B. Divine side: 1 John 2 emphasizes:

1. We have an advocate, v. 1
2. We have propitiation (satisfaction), v. 2
3. From this we have commandments, v. 3. Obedience is based on knowing: "We do know that we know" and transferring this know so knowledge by faith. This is dogmatic understanding - confidence.

Spirituality: God is Light (No Darkness)
(Category 568)

1. God is light, no darkness at all. 1 John 1:5.

2. No darkness means no sin or sinfulness in God. God is perfect. Psalm 18:30.

3. Positionally: Every believer is in UNION with Christ, 1 Cor. 12:13 - in union with "the light".

4. Experientially: The believer walks "in the light" only when he is filled with the Holy Spirit. When he sins, he is walking in darkness:

   He is carnal
   He is out of fellowship
   He is under the control of the old sin nature
   He is out of the bottom circle

5. The believer then cannot have fellowship with God when his old sin nature controls his life.

6. Even though positionally the believer has fellowship with God forever, temporal fellowship depends upon rebound (use of 1 John 1:9).

7. Just as absolute darkness and light are mutually exclusive, so spirituality and carnality are mutually exclusive.

8. Illustrated by two sides of the same coin: (Vocabulary)

   A. John: Walking in the light: The HS controls the life.
      Waling in darkness: The old sin nature controls.

   B. Paul: Walking in the Spirit: The Holy Spirit controls.
      Walking in the flesh: The old sin nature controls.

9. Negative volition gets you out from under the control of the Holy Spirit where you sin. Rebound gets you back under the control of the Holy Spirit.

10. Because of our position "in union with the light" we are told to "walk in the light."

11. When a believer is out of fellowship he is called a weak believer. Romans 14:1.

12. "Walking in darkness" is emphasizing an ignorance of the Word.

Spirituality: Law of
(Category 569)

1. Every believer in the Church Age is indwelt by the Holy Spirit at the moment of salvation. 1 Cor. 3:16, 6:19, Romans 8:10, Col. 1:27.

2. Every believer is commanded to be FILLED (controlled) with the Holy Spirit. Eph. 5:18, "Keep on being filled". A believer has volition. Romans 13:14, 1 John 2:27. Gal. 5:16, "Against such (filling of the Holy Spirit) there is no law." Gal. 5:23.

3. The believer filled with the Holy Spirit is IN FELLOWSHIP - spiritual. Romans 8:2. The believer not filled with the Holy Spirit is OUT OF FELLOWSHIP--carnal. 1 Cor. 3:1-3. 1 John 1:6.

4. Spirituality and carnality are mutually exclusive and therefore absolutes.

5. The believer filled with the Holy Spirit is not subject to a Mosiac Law. Gal. 5:18, 23; Romans 10:4, Romans 8:2. Under a higher law: The law of spirituality.

6. The believer filled with the Holy Spirit accomplishes two general objectives.

   a. He glorifies Christ: John 7:39, 16:14, Gal. 4:19, 1 Cor. 6:19, 20, Phil. 1:20.

   b. Fulfills the Law: Rom. 8:2-4, 10:4

7. The believer filled with the Holy Spirit magnifies Christ in his inner life. Eph. 3:16, 17: Greek: 2 Cor. 3:3.

8. The believer filled with the Holy Spirit has the character of Christ (incarnate) produced in him.

9. The believer filled with the Holy Spirit produces bona fide works, in contrast to the carnal believer who produces human good. 1 Cor. 3:11-16.

   a. Divine good: Gold, silver, precious stones produced by the spiritual believer.

   b. Human good: Wood, hay, stubble, produced by the carnal believer.

10. Imitation is the great issue in spirituality.

   a. The believer in fellowship imitates God. Eph. 5:1, the Greek says "keep on becoming (Eph. 5:18) an imitator of God, beloved children". Eph. 1:6

   b. Believer out of fellowship imitates the unbeliever. 1 John 1:6, 2 Cor. 3:3.

Song of Solomon
102 Principles of Christian Courtship
(Category 570)

I. Introduction:

This book is a part of the Word of God. This is Bible doctrine. It is to be read and understood. This book talks about love, the RIGHT KIND. There is no place for being a prude, or snickering or thinking this is blah. If you are under 13, you can sneer, but any teenager and up--should understand sex and love from the Bible viewpoint. AND YOU NEED THIS INFO NOW!!

Some young people have already blown it, they have messed up their life but good. There is only one way out--if you are an unbeliever, you should accept Jesus Christ as your personal Saviour, John 1:12. If you are a believer, you need to crash program the Word of God. This gets the scar tissue off.

But far better is to remain pure until you marry your right man or right woman. This can only be done (in the believer's life) by applying the proper principles in the Word of God to experience. Now for the introduction of the Song of Solomon.

A. Poetry: One of five Biblical books written in poetry in the original language.

1. Job: Believer with his face in the dust.
2. Psalms: Believer on his knees.
3. Proverbs: Believer on his feet, walking with the Lord.
4. Ecclesiastes: Believer on his back, our of fellowship.
5. Song of Solomon: Believer using his mind and conscience.

B. Interpretation: It must be interpretated in accordance with the time in which it was written. SOLOMON IS THE VILLAN, being disciplined. He had 1000 women (haremsville) but didn't get the right one. This is the story of how Solomon was jilted. He was spanked by God for not letting him have the most beautiful woman of that day. The Song of Solomon will be applied to you today, living in the 1970's.

C. Characters in the Drama:

1. Solomon: He is the King and the Villan. He represents temptation from the world, the flesh, and the devil. It is the temptation to forget right man, right woman, and simply go in for a good time. (Emotional revolt)

2. Shulamite woman: This is the right woman in the story. She is the heroine. As a very beautiful woman she is tested but she remains true to her right man, the shepherd lover. She remains occupied with her shepherd lover and is delivered from temptation.

3. Shepherd lover: He is the right man--absent for most of the drama. These are all HISTORICAL PEOPLE, THEY REALLY LIVED.

4. Daughters of Jerusalem: Virgins of the harem--they sew, cook, took care of domestic duties around Solomon's palace.

5. Queens: Solomon's wives, upper class (700)

6. Concubines: Inferior wives (300)

7. Jealous Queen: Who was quite a dancer in the end of the book.

D. This book is an authority on:

1. Botany

2. Geography

3. Geology (And many other assorted subjects)

4. Spices

5. Women

E. The Song of Solomon is the account of SOLOMON failing to win the most beautiful woman in the land, and the account of principles of courtship which are not available elsewhere.

F. The Song of Solomon is a Drama with Five Acts:

1. Acts 1: 1:1-3:5

The Shulamite Woman is working in the vineyards because her brothers do not approve of her romance with her shepherd lover. They are trying to break up right man, right woman. She is sent up north. On a visit to the northern part of the country--Solomon spots her working in a vineyard.

So he decides to get her in his harem. He sends the virgins (Daughters of Jerusalem) to investigate the young lady. They make a favorable report--and she comes into the harem. She actually (once in the harem) finds herself in a difficult situation. She though she would be a DJ and wait tables and so on. But Solomon has other ideas. He wants to make her a queen.

She had accepted a place with the harem to actually get away from the vineyard, her brothers, and get back eventually to her shepherd lover. So she is trapped. The book opens with the Shulamite woman telling the DJ's that she is engaged to her shepherd lover, and would never consider Solomon's proposal.

2. Act 2: 3:6-11

Solomon returns from his visit to the north with his party, including the harem and the Shulamite Woman.

This scene describes Solomon's procession moving through the streets of Jerusalem, and portrayed as very glamorous. She has already rejected him in the north--but she will be wooed again in the Jerusalem palace.

Comments of the bystanders--will be heard as well.

3. Act 3: 4:1-7:9

This scene takes place in the royal palace in Jerusalem, and here Solomon woos the Shulamite Woman--wanting her to marry him. She refuses and continues to be occupied with her Shepherd Lover. Solomon puts a great deal of pressure on her.

4. Act 4: 7:10-8:4

Describes the rescue of the Shulamite Woman from the clutches of Solomon. The Shepherd Lover comes to the place of death to rescue her (palace of Solomon). We have a description of this arrival. It also records some of the conversation of the two after the rescue.

5. Act 5: 8:5-14

The return of the Shulamite Woman with her Shepherd Lover. This scene will describe the comments of the neighbors, mother's comments (which are not much), the brothers who have changed their minds, and the chatter of the public acceptance of the Shepherd. Of course they get married and live happily ever after.

It is impossible in this mimeographed syllabus to tell in each verse who is speaking. For example 1:1 is the title of the book. Then in 1:2, The Shulamite Woman says, "Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth", and then in the same verse, last part, the Daughters of Jerusalem chime in "for thy love is better than wine".

Instead we will study this in PRINCIPLE FASHION, developing many principles on proper Biblical courtship.

II. Exposition of Song of Solomon
Principles of Biblical Courtship

Principle 1: Every man is designed differently, but God has designed a right woman for you. However, your right man must see two things in you: 1:5

a. He must see the beauty of your soul (free from mental attitude sins and emotional revolt). He must see your character.

b. He must see the beauty of your body. Before marriage this is BIBLICALLY LIMITED. The Bible prohibits sex and nakedness before marriage! Prov. 6:32. But he will eventually see the symmetry of your body as no other man will. And he (right man) will be happy with it.

Right now accept yourself as you are. If you as a girl are down on your looks, or regard yourself as overweight, this is often protection given you by God so you will get the right husband. So many of the slim, baby-doll types get their lives so messed up--its not funny at all. Just take in Bible doctrine and stabilize. For fellows, you may have defects, or you may not be the big man on campus type--forget it--take in Bible Doctrine and stabilize. This is not advocating overeating.

Principle 2: Your right woman will be concerned about her personal appearance. This is very feminine. The right woman will be feminine. 1:6

The hippy movement has destroyed the mind and conscience lobes of both sexes--and it has resulted in making effeminate men and masculine women. This point of doctrine is taken from "but mine own vineyard have I not kept." Working in the vineyard, she had not been able to keep up her personal appearance.

Principle 3: The relationship between right man and right woman is a soul relationship. Her soul responds to the right man. Love is located in the soul--and in the soul is the capacity for love. 1:7, " . . . whom my soul loveth." (The soul below:)

a. Self-consciousness: Aware of her lover

b. Mind-left lobe: Knows certain facts about him.

c. Heart-right lobe: Her frame of reference with memory center recalls him--and there is a fragrance of memories. Her conscience has the proper norms and standards towards her right man. And she has a viewpoint: He is her right man, SOLOMON IS NOT! She has a tremendous love for the SL.

d. Volition: She wanted to please her right man and made decisions to do so.

e. Emotion: The emotions are the responder of the tremendous love she has in her right lobe (heart). And she appreciates him a great deal.

Principle 4: If a right man has a sense of responsibility in his work, he will have a sense of responsibility to his right woman. He will be a conscientious business man, able to hold down a job and stay put. 1:7

a. An unstable man will job hop.
b. An unstable man will often NOT have the initiative to go out and find work.
c. He (unstable) will have lots of idle times on his hands and drive you nuts.

The Point of doctrine is found in 1:7. " . . . where thou feedest". " . . . as one that turneth aside by the flocks of thy companions." He has such a sense of responsibility that he can't come at this time to see if he can get her released. The flock is in the south country, she is in the north country.

Principle 5: The woman must never be pushy, and conduct the big search. Some of you aren't dating as much as you would like and you're worried about it. Put it in the Lord's hands--and while you are waiting around--get Bible Doctrine. 1:8

The point of doctrine as taken from 1:8 indicates in essence, "Say, if he is all that great, why don't you get a small flock--and sort of camp beside him there--you know!". This is FEMININE ADVICE, human viewpoint. They are saying, "Why don't you get a couple of goats and get close in there and act helpless--wonder if you would help me!" (Rolling your eyes and batting your lashes).

It is true that many of you go through a boy or girl crazy stage. But you don't have to heap up a lot of experience to find right man or right woman. All you actually get is a pile of scar tissue.

Two passages indicate the faith-rest technique (waiting on the Lord) in finding right man, right woman WITHOUT THE BIG SEARCH!

a. Woman not to conduct the big search: Genesis 2:22, " . . . and He (God) brought her unto the man." The Lord gives the guidance.

b. Man not to conduct the big search: 1 Cor. 7:27, "Are you unmarried? Seek not (command to not look for) a wife.

Principle 6: If you get doctrine (teaching of God's Word) God will protect you for the right man and right woman. (The Shulamite Woman was protected from Solomon). Entire book.

The doctrine of right man, right woman does not rule out dating. But remember when you date in your teen years, you are probably not dating your right man, or right woman. SO, it is up to you to protect the body and soul of that girl. And to protect yourself! If you get involved in premarital sex, you've blown it. There is a recovery process from the guilt complex, and frustration, but that is only a crash program, a daily diet of the Word of God.

Principle 7: A test for right man, right woman is this: If you are serious about some gal, or some fellow and entertain throughts about dating some other person, you either do not have the right person in mind, or are too young to settle down. (Too young may be 20, or it may be 25). Having discovered right man, or right woman, she or he will be so fantastic that every other person will be repulsive (in regard to date material). Taken from 1:9-10. Solomon is using his pitch.

Principle 8: When RM indicates you are magnificent--you will love him for it, if wrong man, it will make you sick. THIS IS ONE OF the highest compliments you could ever receive from the right man. Taken from Song of Solomon 1:9-10 (Solomon's comments).

Principle 9: Solomon, out of fellowship, wooing the wrong woman for him, emphasized the beauty of the Shulamite Woman's body, to the exclusion of her soul. Soul beauty and protection of the body are sufficient satisfiers in premarital courtship. 1:9-10

Principle 10: The Shulamite Woman was protected from Solomon by her FRAGRANCE OF MEMORIES. While Solomon (in emotional revolt) is giving his pitch, she is remembering her Shepherd Lover. This is indicated by 1:12-14, "spikenard, myrrh."

Principle 11: All things granted, your right man or woman will have a disposition compatible with yours. Taken from 1:16, "pleasant." When the SW thinks of her lover, she regards him as "pleasant."

Principle 12: Sexual relationship before marriage is prohibited. This is taken from the phrase 1:16, " . . . our bed is green." This is an idiom for a marriage not being consummated before the proper time. (After the ceremony in privacy). Other verses backing up this principle: Proverbs 6:32, 1 Cor. 7:1, Heb. 13:4 and many others.

Chapter 2

Principle 13: The Shulamite Woman has no illusions about herself, she is grace oriented. She is not going to waste her beauty on the wrong man Solomon. She thus has an edification structure. Taken from 2:1, "I am the rose (crocus)." The crocus is a common flower like a dandelion. She is saying to Solomon (wrong man) don't pay any attention to me.

Solomon breaks in (2:2) and disagrees with her, and compares her to lilies. A lily has great symmetry, and is very beautiful.

Principle 14: Watch out for the guys with the pitch, and the pinch, they have a pit in their head for brains. They may give a 1970 version of "prove your love", or "doll, we were meant for each other". You girls, some of you get on dates, and talk about your hope chest, what kind of furniture you like, how many kids you want--usually too many, and what kind of dog you prefer.

2:3: The SW gets nauseated at this point and says, "My beloved (shepherd lover) is the most beautiful and stimulating man among humanity."

The apple tree was the most highly prized tree at that time.

Principle 15: The right man enjoys the company of the right woman (vica-versa) to the exclusion of all other suitors. This is soul compatibility, not body compatibility. People who fight during courtship, abuse and pound on each other, that doubt up to the last minute whether they should marry--really have very little chance for a happy marriage. 2:3

And if you need booze to take the boredom out of a date, you are a first-class jackass. That goes for dope as well. The boozer and dope head destroys any chance for real happiness forever. The grace of God reclaims a few--but when reclaimed they are only a small perchantage of what they could have been!

She says, "I sat down under his shadow with great delight, and his fruit was sweet to my taste." 2:3

2:4: She describes a date in a banqueting house with a large number of people present.

Principle 16: The right man protects the right woman from others. 2:4, " . . . and his banner over me was love." Ephesians 5:23 tells us that Christ protects the Church, and in turn the husband is the saviour (protector) of the body of his wife.

Principle 17: The persistant wrong man: Use verbal language to put him in his place. 2:5

"Stay me with flagons": This was reviving a fainting person with brandy.

"comfort me with apples": They were cut open for smelling salts in the ancient world. They would take an apple fresh off the tree--stick it under someone's nose--and it revived them.

She says, "I'm sick of this character, I need the smelling salts with this bird (Solomon)."

"I am sick of love" is literally, I am sick for my love--she is mentally occupied with her right man, she misses him.

Principle 18: Some of you have a lascivious trend, and so you go for the body--others of you have an ascetic trend--so you go for the soul part--THERE MUST BE A BALANCE BETWEEN BOTH! 2:6

2:6, "His left hand is under my head and his right hand doth embrace me." Whereas verses 3-4 describe his character, this verse describes his physical attractiveness.

Remember they are engaged and of course there will be physical attraction including embracing. However, arousal of the male, means it has gone too far. And knucklehead--premarital sex (sex before marriage) blows the inner eyes of the soul, just as dope blows the mind.

a. Some major on "inner beauty" to the exclusion of physical beauty.

b. Others major on physical beauty to the exclusion of "inner beauty."

There must be a soul attraction--and your right man will turn on the right woman, but don't violate each other's bodies till marriage. God's absolute is dictatorial here--and the price you pay for premarital sex is HIGH!

You can't marry someone just because of the physical attraction, nor can you marry someone just for the soul attraction. BOTH MUST BE INVOLVED!******

Principle 19: Love must come from volition. (Rape, for example, is the forcing of a woman's volition, it is done against her will.) However, with animalism abroad, many are forcing this part of life.

A WOMAN MUST LOVE HER RIGHT MAN FROM HER FREE WILL. SHE MUST HAVE PRIVACY, AND SHE MUST HAVE THE FREEDOM TO LOVE HIM!

a. You cannot coerce love
b. You cannot buy love (prostitution is NEVER the answer)
c. You cannot force love (simply rape)
d. You cannot demand love
e. Auto-erotism (masturbation) is never the answer!

Therefore you must NEVER do anything to stifle the volition of the right woman.

"that ye stir not up, nor awake my love, till he please."
THE RESPONSE OF VOLITION! 2:7

Principle 20: Your right man will be masculine, not effeminate and mousy. The very fact that you are his right woman sparks him, makes him agressive. 2:8-9.

a. He is very athletic, very much alive. Not a deadhead, rocking his chair through life.

b. He is very strong: "Like a roe or a young hart": v. 9

c. He is very coordinated: Not an awkward bumpkin. He is mature, full of energy!

d. 2:9b, " . . . behold he standeth behind our wall, he looketh forth at the windows, shewing himself through the lattice."

She recalls a scene when he came to visit her--she watched him coming--and her radar went blip-blip-blip, and her heart went thump, thump, thump!

Principle 21: He asked her for the date. The right man is the agressor, the woman is the responder. This is not a Sadie Hawkins deal. 2:10

This rules out the girls bugging fellows by always calling them on the phone and chit-chatting, wasting all kinds of time.

a. From 2:10-13 she quotes him in her thoughts, her mental occupation with her right man is legitimate and proper.

b. In verse 8 he comes "leaping and skipping".

c. In verse 9 he comes to her house (even though the brothers of the Shulamite woman did not care for him.)

d. And it just happens to be spring time.

Principle 22: Right man and right woman desire to be together, to share thoughts, conversation, scenery. The great enemy of true love is infatuation, being in love with love. 2:10-13.

Principle 23: Right man and right woman when absent from one another greatly miss each other. 2:14

She wants to see him--his face, hear his voice, sense his handsome appearance. She thinks back to that last date--and how the brothers stopped it.

Principle 24: When the courtship of right man, right woman is taking place, various people (relatives, friends) may be opposed to it, or the wrong man or wrong woman may try hard to break it up! 2:15

However parents have jurisdiction of their sons and daughters--and their good sense must be followed, if they lower the boom on you. It could be right person, but you are too young to control the physical part of the relationship, or in too many cases it is the wrong person--and if the parents don't bust it up--all you have is heart-ache and a multiplied misery spectrum.

2:15, "Take us the foxes, the little foxes, that spoil the vines: for our vines have tender grapes."

This verse describes the brother's talk--they caught her (not in sin) on a date with her right man--and took her north to the vineyards. She was either to trap, or destroy the foxes--so they could'nt destroy the new crop of grapes.

Principle 25: Separation in courtship is often a good test of right man and right woman. If it is right woman, right man--absence makes the heart grow fonder. If the wrong woman, right man--absense makes the heart to wonder. 2:16-17.

So she is separated from her Shepherd Lover.

Principle 26: The description of right man, right woman: She loves him totally. This is found in 2:16 from the idiom, "He feedeth among the lilies."

Principle 27: She is dependent upon him to work out the rescue plans, and is confident he will come through. Right man, right woman have perfect trust, and perfect confidence in each other although separated by many miles. 2:17

When she says, "turn" she is saying, "rescue me." "You were agressive and asked me for a date (one was in a public banqueting place) and you asked me for another date (when we were alone) and I fell in love with you--be agressive now--and rescue me!"

Remember, the Lord Jesus Christ was agressive in going to the cross--He initiated the love--HE IS the only Saviour. Do you know the Lord as your spiritual right God-Man? If not receive Him as your own personal Saviour. John 3:16, John 1:12.

Principle 28: Once a woman mets her right man, she is protected by his love whether he is present or not. (She will not fall for anyone who comes along with a fast line). This is based on the doctrine of the fragrance of memories. 2:17

Principle 29: The first step in finding the right man or right woman is a matter of faith. You know that God has provided this right person for you and you don't have to worry about meeting him, or missing meeting him. Faith-rest the situation and take in doctrine daily. (Grace Apparatus for Perception). General principle taken from many passages.

The second step is the daily function of GAP. You can't miss that way, NO WAY! The more you function under GAP, the more you are protected from the many destructive elements of life. (Like someone dropping in acid into your coke, or putting vodka in unawares, or having to experiment on pot, or desiring what it feels like to get drunk, or not being able to control boy-crazy tendacies.) Doctrine is the only way to go!

Chapter 3

3:1ff. The Shulamite woman recalls an incident while she is trying to go to sleep, or is asleep. She is thinking or dreaming about him.

Principle 30: The Shulamite woman is not conducting the big search for her right man. Why? She already knows who he is. She is seeking fellowship with him. She misses him. He is her life. THIS IS SOUL COMPATIBILITY. 3:1.

She is a responder, but sometimes in Category 2 love--she initiates love.

Principle 31: When right man, right woman comes along it is more than being "turned on" as we say today, it is more a wave of libido (sexual desire), there is soul rapport--of the type only possible with the right one. 3:1

What is a wave of libido?

a. It is a biological urge to mate. (Something like an animal in heat). It results in a girl being boy crazy, and boy desires girl.

b. There is really no such thing as true love among teenagers. You may be physically developed, and on a wave of libido--but that is not true love.

c. Going steady is a manifestation of libido, and going steady in the teenage years is a prelude to slavery, and often communal living. It results in scar tissue and emotional revolt. During the teenage years get Bible Doctrine.

d. There is a right time to marry the right person, and a wrong time to marry the right person. A marriage can be messed up by wrong timing.

Principle 32: Marriage is more than legalized sex. 3:2

Sex is an expression of love. Physical attraction is not love. The soul is the expression of Category 2 love, " . . . whom my soul loveth."

In this incident she gets up, and goes hunting for her shepherd lover in the streets. This is a dream now, but it was based on a previous true incident.

Then she came upon a policeman:

Principle 33: A city is safe if honest policemen with authority patrol the streets (even the authority to kill if necessaryto maintain order) This is part of the protection of DI #4. 3:3

Now, you may be rebellious towards law and order, your parents. It makes it difficult to respect law if:

a. Adults break the law--like taking a deer illegally.

b. Or adults get liquor to minors, or drugs. Or easier yet, the teenager simply gets liquor out of his "old man's" cache of booze.

c. Or a judge or officer is crooked, and it is well known.

But the law is there for our protection.

Principle 34: The principle of the instincts of love. You instinctively know what will please your spouse--you are sensitive to them. 3:4

3:4, "I held him, and would not let him go . . ." (she ran into his arms)

It is true that in courtship there will be physical contact. But it must never, never get out of hand. There is the case where a girl really appreciated the fellow she was going with--as he never showed any affection. She thought this was great self-control. However, he turned out to be a homosexual.

This is a true story. There was a chap in Southern California who was very fine, very moral, and he asked a girl for a date because they had one thing in common, braces on their teeth. They decided to try a goodnite kiss after they had dated 10 times, and her braces got caught in his. They had to get out of the car and walk to the door (kinda goofy like) and ring the doorbell to get her father (a real bear) to get them unhooked. It took dear old dad 30 minutes to unhook them without ruining the whole bit. Well, I don't know what the reaction of that father was, but I imagine those two will never forget that first kiss.

But: There is the type that plans fornication on a date--and there is the non-planned type of fornication. Both ruin lives.

3:4: "my mother's house": The father is dead. This is the way the engagement period was started.

"she brought him": This isn't conducting the big search. They are simply going the normal route in being engaged. The brothers didn't like the shepherd lover--and at this point, or a bit later, the brothers try to break up this romance.

Principle 35: Even though the Shulamite woman and the shepherd lover were misunderstood (by the brothers) their relationship was beautiful, passionate, but honorable. It was above board. She took him to her mother, and he would have taken her to his parents if the brothers had not interfered. 3:4.

You gals, and fellows------always introduce a new date to your parents.

Principle 36: Parents have a right to express their opinions concerning your date, and you should watch very closely their evaluation of your date, to your opposite number if engaged. Do they approve, or disapprove? If they disapprove--don't get all hot, talk it out. 3:4.

A tremendous amount of bitterness and emotional revolt takes place between parents and children in the dating game. Stay in fellowship, and BE OBJECTIVE!

She turns to the Daughters of Jerusalem in 3:5, " . . . by the roes (male deer) and the hinds (female deer) of the field."

This is a Greek idiom for right man-right woman love.

"that ye stir not up, nor awake love, till he please." The "he" is actually "she." " . . . till she please." This is speaking of volition, her volition is to be awakened only by free will, not by coersion.

Principle 37: As a girl you must learn to protect yourself, to say NO. When you love, you must be able to do it without guilt-complex, without sneaking it, with full expression of your love without hiding in a corner to do it. YOU ONLY SAY YET TO THE RIGHT MAN! And that within the confines of marriage. 3:5

A father ought to always provide his daughter taxi money--.
A father ought to require call in--at some time during the date--and I hope you kids are smart enough to go out with a guy and not drink and smoke. This is idiocy.

Be sure to watch the slumber party deal--where you go to come girl's house (the parents trust) and end up with an all night dating spree--PARENTS ARE JUST STUPID TO GO OUT OF TOWN AND LEAVE THEIR TEENAGERS ALONE IN THE HOUSE!

DON'T accept a date with any guy without introducing him to your parents.

DON'T let some guy pick you up at a ball game, pick you up at the corner drug store, pick you up at some girl's house where allegedly you are spending the night.

Act 2

3:6-11: Solomon returns from his visit to the north with his party, including the harem and the Shulamite woman. This scene describes Solomon's procession moving through the streets of Jerusalem, and portrayed as very glamorous. She has already rejected him in the north--but she will be wooed again in the Jerusalem palace.

Comments of the bystanders will be heard as well.

Principle 38: Glamour is not the basis for choosing your right man or woman. One should never marry for money. 3:6

3:6: " . . . like pillars of smoke": Solomon in his souped up Rolls Royce chariot.

" . . . perfumed with myrrh and frankincense": Perfumes of the ancient world including shaving lotions.

3:7: 1st Bystander Speaks (Young person impressed with wealth)

"Behold his bed . . ." This is his estate chair--carried by 60 hand-picked men. This chair is elevated in the air--carried by his mighty warriors.

Principle 39: Never get married unless you have mastered the details of life. (If you are still impressed with the glamour of the rich, the flamour of the world and its frills--YOU HAVE NOT MASTERED THE DETAILS OF LIFE. 3:7

The Shulamite woman is just not impressed with the fine appearance of Solomon, his pitch, his wealth, what he has to offer. She knows doctrine, and specifically the doctrine of right man, right woman.

The girl who is impressed with the details of life--has had it. You are impressed because your boyfriend drives a Mach I, or a Vette, or a Van. Any fellow who tries to impress a gal with details--and snow her with glamour is a stupid, predatory male. If you need the details of life to conquer (male) you are no good.

Principle 40: Never try to attrack a woman by the things you have. NEVER. Never flash a bankroll. And so on. Because--if you succeed, she is not worth having. You will have destroyed the soul principle in love. 3:7.

For example, a boy was asked, "Why do you wear sideburns? Why do you wear your hair long?" He replied, "Because the girls like it, my girl said I looked cute with long sideburns." There are many reasons why some of the modern male generation wears long hair, is it right or wrong? It is up to the individual whether he wants to think human viewpoint, or divine viewpoint. Divine viewpoint is found in the Bible in 1 Cor. 11:14.

A fellow who does what the girls like makes me shudder. He surrenders his masculinity. He becomes a male with feminine traits. He loses his individuality.

3:8: 2nd Bystander speaks: (Young man impressed with the military). This bystander feels Solomon is quite a man, look at his soldiers, look at their decor. Fantastic.

3:9: 3rd Bystander speaks: Describing Solomon's wheels. He felt Solomon had a fantastic "automobile."

3:10: 4th Bystander: Description of Solomon's chariot.

"pillars": The frame (silver)

"bottom of gold": Look at those floormats!

"covering of it of purple": This is the upholstery.

"paved with love": Gals who got into this rig--just melted in his arms. And all concerned were unhappy!

3:11: 5th Bystander: This bird says, "Hey girls, look at this guy; he is fantastic! Look at his glamour since the day that Bathesheba, his mother, placed the crown on his head!"

Act 3

4:1-7:9: This scene takes place in the royal palace in Jerusalem and here Solomon woos the beautiful Shulamite Woman--wanting her to marry him. She refuses and continues to be occupied with her shepherd lover. Solomon puts a great deal of pressure on her.

Principle 41: The Bible must be interpreted in accordance with the time in which it was written. Read a few verses. This is NOT pornography. This chapter should not be X rated. 4:1 ff.

Principle 42: If you are interested in someone (thinking it to be the right woman, or vica versa) and she is not beautiful to you . . . mark it down, she is not your right woman. 4:1, " . . . behold thou art fair."

She may be ugly, as far as beauty standards go--but NOT TO YOU! She might have been kicked by a horse and bent a bit of or shape, but she is beautiful to you.

Again, 4:1, "Behold you are beautiful, my love; behold you are fair." This is nothing wrong with a Christian marrying Miss America providing she is a believer (and your right one).

NOW THE WOMAN IS DESCRIBED along eight lines. This is beauty illustrated with ancient illustrations. Note Solomon's pitch.

a. " . . . thou has dove's eyes within thy locks": 4:1 (eyes framed by the hair, locks.) As far as most ancients were concerned there were two aspects of physical beauth:

Beauty of face
Beauty of body

Face: Excellent bone structure
Eyes: Very large, very wide apart, fine nose bridge, very clear--eye shadow is to enlarge or accent their eyes--make pseudo dove-eyes. These are probably very blue eyes, and the white part of the eye is very white.

b. " . . . thy hair is as a flock of goats, that appear from mount Gilead." These were raven black goats. Her hair is raven black. 4:1

c. "Thy teeth are like a flock of sheep that are even shorn": 4:2. One of the problems of the ancient world was dental problems. Some beautiful doll might have her front teeth missing. Or many of them half-rotted, or stumps--or when she smiles, she is toothless. Well . . .

If a girl was born with good teeth, this was a mark of great beauty.

(1) " . . . that are even shorn": They are even--well arranged teeth.

(2) " . . . which come up from the washing": She has very clean, white teeth. Apparently she brushes them three times a day--with ANCIENT CREST. How did they brush their teeth 3,000 years ago. Eating an apple made a good toothbrush, or chewing on a certain type of twig.

(3) " . . . whereof everyone bear twins":

She has a perfect bite, her uppers and lowers match perfectly--which tells us her bone-structure is good.

(4) " . . . and none of them is barren among them": She hasn't lost any of her teeth. Your right woman probably won't be toothless. If nothing else, she will have dentures.

d. "Thy lips are like a thread of scarlet": 4:3. She has good color in her lips. She doesn't look like a fugitive from a blood bank. Pale as wind-driven chalk. Ghastly.

e. "thy speech is comely" (beautiful) 4:3

Have you ever observed this beautiful doll--and then you hear her open her mouth?? This gal had:

(1) Excellent diction
(2) Beautiful tone
(3) Distinct accent
(4) Comprehensive vocabulary

(Her Hebrew was perfect, her voice had a musical quality to it, she was a thinker)

Principle 43: Your right opposite number won't be a clod (unless you are). If you are getting Bible Doctrine, and waiting upon His timing, your RM-RW will be intelligent, able to converse, able to express thoughts on a variety of subjects. (This whole section)

f. "thy temples are like a piece of pomegranante within thy locks": 4:3 This is describing bone-structure, coloring, symmetry. A pomegranate has beauty, symmetry.

g. "Thy neck is like the tower of David builded for an armoury"

I'm not so sure this communicates today, it makes her sound more like a football player, or a giraffe, than a beautiful woman.

This is speaking of symmetry:

(1) The neck is not too long or too short;

a. Ladies with long necks often wear high collars--
b. Ladies with short necks often wear lower cut stuff--

(2) If the neck is too long and scrawny--

a. Put ruffles around your collar--
b. If too fat neck--you must do something to think it out.

(3) As goes the neck so goes the body.

"Whereon there hang a thousand bucklers, all shields of mighty men." 4:4

(4) A neck is also emphasized with jewelry, her neck can set up a diamond necklace very beautifully.

h. "thy two breasts are like . . ." 4:5

Now the mention of breasts here may seem a little vulgar to some of your parents. THE BIBLE MENTIONS BREASTS! WHY? Well, there is a reason for it.

(1) A woman was not considered to be of marriage age until this part of her anatomy was developed. Often in the ancient world, they did not know their age.

(2) Also in the ancient world the female breast was JUST NOT CONSIDERED to be an object of prnography. This part was often left exposed without arousing the evil thoughts of the male. HOWEVER, THIS DOES NOT MAKE TOPLESS RIGHT in America today. Definitely not!

(3) This is also part of the beauty of a woman, " . . . young does that are twins that feed among the lilies." This picture is not for warped, filthy, or evil minds.

Principle 44: A woman who is truly beautiful, is always truly feminine. Her response to the right man is then indeed complete. 4:1-5. Note also the inner beauty mentioned in 1 Tim. 2, and 1 Peter 3.

Principle 45: The Shulamite woman is of marriageable age, and therefore is able to make her own decision concerning her right man. She is over 20. 4:1-5

Solomon does have a right to woo her--but it is a two way street. Often the fellow thinks he has the right one, but the opposite number does not think so. She or he is in her rights to reject a suitor who thinks he is God's answer.

Principle 46: An evil mind destroys capacity for personal love (right man, right woman) and also places restrictions in the framework of a national entity. 4:5

Solomon is moving down the body, and by the end of 4:5, she feels it is time to stop it and does! You girls on dates will have to stop some "animal" who you are dating--cold in his tracks. Don't go with an animal who has nothing but premarital sex on his mind.

4:6: Now notice, she has paid no attention to Solomon, she is not interested in his wooing, she is occupied with her shepherd lover.

" . . . until the day break": Solomon can talk till the sun comes up--and I'll not be convinced."

Principle 47: The right man or right woman is WORTH WAITING FOR. 4:6

"mountain of myrrh": She has a large number of memories stored up. Her fragrance of memories keeps her true.

Principle 48: If you have met the RIGHT opposite number, and you are separated during courtship, you NEVER have to worry about being true to one another.

Solomon is the howling wolf. BUT SHE DOESN'T RESPOND!

But concerning your right woman:

a. You don't have to chain her to a tree in your absence.
b. You won't have to stand guard over her, and be jealous when she talks to some other male.
c. The fragrance of memories will protect her when the wolves gather.

**********So, if you go into the service, and some gal dear-John's you, that the Lord for it, she wasn't your right woman anyway--and you're fortunate you are out of it.

"hill of frankinsense": Most valuable perfume of the ancient world. He is very valuable to her. (And vica versa, check out Proverbs 31:10ff.

4:7: "Mumbles begins again": Solomon. From 4:7-15 Solomon really gives his pitch. Look at the smugness of Solomon. As far as he is concerned it is only a matter of time before Solomon wins fair lady.

Principle 49: Watch out for the character that takes too much credit to himself. 4:7-15. It is one thing to have confidence in love (right man-right woman). But Solomon thinks he is God's gift to all women, he is irresistible, to all women. This is the SIGN OF WRONG MAN!

Some cluck, all he has to do is smile (he thinks) and every gal just falls down and worships him. So lets look at Solomon's big pitch--where he feels he can't lose. He is a very wealthy, fat-headed baboon type.

Notice the term "my spouse" is used four times. He is already mentally regarding himself as married to her. Even in his speech pattern, he is far ahead of his overt activity.

Principle 50: Beware of the men who "mentally marry" you before they have courted you. This is body worship, or infatuation. 4:7-15.

Some bird says, "I feel like I've known you all my life." (He has dated her twice.) As you know thought life is a prelude to courtship, but in many cases it gets quite ridiculous. "Will you marry me" is ridiculous on the first date except in very rare instances with older doctrinally oriented people.

a. Solomon figures that after he finishes this speech, she will fall all over him--saying yes.

b. Mental male egocentricity!

4:8: Solomon has a very beautiful castle on the top of one of these mountains--and this is where they will spend their honeymoon. And when he calls her, "my spouse" he is already certain that she will accept. After all, Solomon is used to getting his way.

4:9: "my sister": Not his sister, a term of endearment.

"ravished my heart": This refers to the norm and standard lobe of Solomon. This means that this girl measures up to his norms and standards more than any other girl he has met, BUT . . .

Principle 51: Solomon who fornicated around, had 1000 wives, was disciplined--the resultant scar tissue--never let him have the right woman!

Principle 52: Never rush into marriage!

" . . . one chain of thy neck": Apparently has a very beautiful necklace around her neck.

v. 10: " . . . how much better is thy love than wine!" This is a poor comparison. Compare with 8:6, " . . . for love is stronger than death." The Shepherd lover says this. His love for his right one is true love and is "stronger than death."

a. Notice--how Solomon compares . . . wine.
b. Notice--how Shepherd lover compares . . . death.

Solomon had a tremendous wine cellar--"something more stimulating than wine."

Principle 53: Beware of words without any character to back them up. When someone says, "I love you", what does that mean?

As wine stimulated "hot lips" here--Solomon--so she stimulates him. However love is more than a biological urge. There must be soul compatibility.

Principle 54: Just because some fellow or girl has the power to turn you on, doesn't mean it is the right one. Physical beauty is not the criterion of marriage. Libido (sexual urge) is not love. 4:10

4:11: "milk under your tongue": This is stimulated response of a genuine kiss between right man and right woman.

"smell of Lebanon": Cedars, etc. In the ancient world, everybody had BO (body order, more or less). They didn't bathe too often. So smell was important.

Principle 55: The value of arriving at the marriage altar as a virgin is priceless. Virginity at the altar is a symbol of having found the right man. It signifies character, stability. I don't mean being technically a virgin either. THIS OF COURSE applies to the man as well. There is not a double-standard. 4:12

Now today--you hear conversation like this. "The worst possible thing is for you to arrive at the marriage altar as a virgin. You need experience." You'll hear this from girl friends, you'll hear it from some guy. The fact that you need sexual experience before marriage is absolutely false. You just as well go out and eat arsenic. Check out Proverbs 6:32.

Principle 56: God has designed you for one right man, you don't need experience to prepare you for life with that right man. Right man is programmed for right woman by God. If a man or woman has X number of affairs--she is going to lose the programming of her whole system of response.

God has designed the erotic index in marriage to be 100%. But the average marriage never experiences above 25%--because of mental or physical adultery before marriage.

a. Adultery: Term used of single and married people. It can be premarital sex, or extramarital sex. Adultery is describing anyone past puberty capable of sexual experience. Proverbs 6:32 for example.

b. Fornication: Refers often to religious sex orgies which took place in the ancient religious scheme. It also is used as a synonym to adultery. It can refer to married or unmarried people. See Jude 7.

There is much ridicule of purity and virginity. Often even to join the modern frat or its counterpart--the aspect of sexual relations with some tramp enters in. The pressure is fantastic. You don't need a crutch for your social life.

Principle 57: There is nothing wrong with purity. Purity is strength of soul! 4:12

4:13: He can't wait to make love to her, because obviously she has a large number of erogenus zones.

4:14: Solomon lists other spices, he had a fantastic collection of all the species of spice in the ancient world.

4:15: He becomes very passionate. He said that just like a drink from a cold well to a thirsty man is this woman--who has the potential of satisfying him throughout their life together.

This is a peak of passion. I've held it down a bit in the explanation.

4:16: The Shulamite woman talks, "Awake, O north wind: and come, thou south: blow upon my garden . . ."

She is saying, "Blow up a storm, winds, and blow this smell out of here."

"that the spices thereof may flow out": Actually she is saying, "Let all this hot air blow out of here."

She is occupied with her Shepherd lover.

"Let my beloved (SL) come into his garden (they belong to each other) and eat his pleasant fruits."

She is willing to marry her right man, she is positive towards him. She anticipates her Shepherd lover making love to her (in marriage).

Thus as an analogy, occupation with Christ becomes a great blessing when you are under pressure. Also O/C becomes a great deterrent; against evil when tempted.

Principle 58: Occupation with Christ is the deterrent in time of temptation. 4:16

As we get into Chapter 5 we still in the Royal Palace in Jerusalem. Here Solomon, the villain continues to put a great deal of pressure on the Shulamite woman, he wants to marry her.

Chapter 5

5:1: Solomon is talking. He never skips a beat, he is determined to have her--he is just not going to take no for an answer.

Principle 59: Beware of the determined suitor who does not take your feelings into consideration, who will go to any length to date you--even go to church with you, or stop drinking, stop pot, or whatever you don't like about his habits, or character. 5:1

5:1: Solomon has heard her say, "I wish my right man would come and rescue me." And he replies "I am come into my garden".

Look here, Solomon is saying, "I'm here, I'm the fellow you should be interested in."

Principle 60: Beware of the fat-headed, handsome type (God's gift to woman type) who has a false confidence because of mental attitude sins. (Pride). "My sister, my spouse." 5:1

This type thinks every woman is madly in love with him--secretly of course. SO DON'T TAKE ANY CREDIT TO YOURSELF. Have the R. M. A.

Principle 61: Mental attitude sins destroys any capacity for true love. In his pride he appeals to his experiences with women. He is saying, "I'm a real lover." 5:1

He is rehashing the girls he has conquered:

a. "Myrrh": He had a very pleasant memory--with one girl.

b. "Spice": Relationship with a very exciting type of girl.

c. "Honeycomb": Relationship with the sweet baby-doll type--dumb-blonde with nothing but a body.

d. "drunk his wine with his milk": A triple-threat type of girl that is triple trouble for any man. (And it can be vica versa in all of this. Triple-threat type is a girl with:

(1) Beauty
(2) Brains
(3) No norms or standards (morals of an alley cat)

Principle 62: Premarital sex does not help marriage, it horribly hinders it. 5:1

5:1, " . . . O friends; drink, yet drink abundantly, O beloved."

Principle 63: A girl may be very strict morally, but if she lets down a bit and starts drinking, she becomes a target for the rat-pack set, the bird-dogs. (The six-pack just happened to be in the back seat.

Alcohol is a depressant, and destroys your norms and standards.

Somewhere along the line nearly everybody takes a drink. Now who introduced you to the bottle--some fellow, or fellows? More sweet, stupid, nice things have been turned into monsters, just because she shared a can or two of beer with this nice "guy" in the back seat of some dar. You had the rosy-glow that night, but the next morning you woke up with a guilt complex a mile long.

The SHULAMITE woman didn't touch the king's wine. Solomon is trying to turn her on. IT ISN'T WORKING!

She recalls an experience: 5:2, the Fragrance of Memories.

Principle 64: The Shepherd lover will not take advantage of the right woman whom he loves. 5:2-5

In this incident--he comes to a side door--and calls to her--it is night--and damp. "May I come in, he says?"

5:3: "I have put off my clothes, I'm not attired so I can see you."

5:4: But her lover lifted the latch--but then thought better of it.

5:5: By this time she is going to let him in--but he is gone.

Principle 65: Even when right man and right woman are courting, it will be a terrific temptation, to make out and go the limit! If you are out of fellowship and on emotional revolt it may seem the most logical thing in the world to have sex. You may sense no kick-back of conscience at the time. Emotional revolt throws all caution to the wind. (Or you may reason, I'm out with the one I'm going to marry anyway.)

He wakes up, becomes honorable--he wants her--but he also truly loves her, he wants to protect her. So he gets out of there.

Principle 66: Some dates (when you are dating right man or right woman--or even otherwise) will have to be cut short because of the principle of temptation.

It is better, far better, to cut the date short and perserve your purity, than feel obligated to some boob--and go all the way.

5:6: Her beloved is gone.

Principle 67: There is a point in mental and physical contact where your conscience will not hold you back. Solution: Never let yourself circumstancially get into a situation where both are weak.

Half of the morality today is a lack of opportunity.

The parents who are gone--and you are alone in the house--with your boyfriend. How much self-control do you have then?

BUT NOW, the Shulamite woman gets dressed, goes out, and starts looking for him. This is really a foolish thing to do. She gets on an emotional revolt. She is temporily insane. (Study the whole doctrine of emotional revolt).

5:7: The watchman (police) found her (nice ladies didn't walk around at that time of night) so they they arrested her on a charge of prostitution. We know this from " . . . took away my veil from me." Of course she was innocent of the charge. But she was put in jail, and her brothers had to bail her out. This is one big reason why they were down on her courtship with the Shepherd lover.

The phrase found in 5:6, " . . . my soul failed (fainted) means she didn't use good sense." This is a term for emotional revolt. She is a great gal, but is unstable there. He shouldn't have called on her at such an odd hour. He was honorable, but he could have been more honorable by not coming at all (at that hour). Men, don't put yourself into a dangerous situation! Use common sense!

Principle 68: Both right man and right woman must use sense--and stay away from emotional revolt--soul fainting can ruin you. 5:6

(Both must not get out of fellowship at the same time.) As long as one stays in fellowship he is a safeguard to the other. Both get out, and you blow it.

But as said before, the brothers probably had to bail her out--and this is one of the reasons why they sent her up north.

Principle 69: Be considerate of your parents when dating. Do not expect perfection out of them. No wonder the brothers are down on this marriage--they find her in jail--in the middle of the night. 5:7

5:8: " . . . that I am sick of (with) love". She is ready to be married.

5:9: The Daughters of Jerusalem. They say, what is one man more than another man, they are all alike. But woman, do you know what you are turning down in Solomon?

Principle 70: Your right man, right woman will be unsurpassed, not excelled. Why? Because he is the right man.

Now notice CAREFULLY: When someone asks her about her right man--SHE KNOWS THIS IS HER RIGHT MAN!

Principle 71: When you meet your right man, you will know he is your right man. No doubts. Vica-versa. You will be confident.

Description of her RM
5:10-16----

Principle 72: There is no justification in the Scripture for interracial marriages. God marked out the races--Deut. 32:7-9.

5:10: He is white--as is she--and tanned.
"chiefest among ten thousand": He is my right man.

5:11: "his locks are bushy": He is not bald, he is not long haired either. He has black, thick hair.

5:12: His eyes are clear and well spaced.

5:13: He has a handsome face. We are not used to men being described in our culture in this particular way. But this meets her specifications. She recalls his kisses, and they are a fragrance in her mind.

5:14: His hands are manly, are strong, are the right shape. His belly--torso--is tapered, strong.

5:15: Strong legs: Lebanon is a very beautiful part of the Middle East. She trembles when she sees Him.

5:16: "He is altogether lovely". This is her description. Now for a principle of witnessing.

Principle 73: Just as the Shulamite woman is able to recall in detail her love, even so when we begin to take in Bible Doctrine we get into a natural type of witnessing--the type for which we were designed.

This is the description of a right man by a right woman. A lady would describe differently than a fellow.

Chapter 6

Principle 74: The SW as she glowingly describes her right man is actually reflecting his glory; as in 1 Cor. 11:7. 6:1

And again the right man or right woman is worth waiting for. People get in a hurry. There is NO rush!

Dio hasta facindo et na ha fa-neto which may be translated, "God is still making her, and He has not finished yet."

Principle 75: When you identify your right man, you learn things about him; he is faithful in his job, he has character, he has a sense of responbility and so on. 6:2

" . . . gone down into his garden": This refers to his daily activities, and also a place of pleasure. This is actually saying that this man is oriented to his job (shepherd) and enjoys it. He has character, will never shirk on his job, will do a job well.

She identifies him as "her beloved."

" . . . bed of spices": The concept of a pleasant smell. His life is a pleasant life, and he has a good disposition.

Principle 76: In right man, right woman your dispositions will be compatible. 6:2

Principle 77: By the time you meet your right number, he ought to be adjusted to life, and take responsibility for his decisions. 6:2

You don't want to marry a little child, a mama's boy, no one wants to raise a 25 year old child.

And don't marry too young. A teenage boy is half boy, half man--he is a calf, and isn't responsible.

GOING STEADY is insane, idiocy. It generally leads to sexual looseness and communal living.

"to feed in the gardens": Still 6:2. He is exciting to be around, he is where its happening.

"feeding in the lilies": The lilies are the details of life.

Principle 78: This right man enjoyed the details of life without being enslaved by them. 6:2. This is a rare type.

6:3: "I my beloved's and my beloved mine": Indicates that she is in his soul and he is in her soul. CONFIDENCE. (No verbs, every word is emphasized.)

"he feedeth among the lilies": They have the capacity to enjoy each other.

Principle 79: Right man and right woman must have the capacity to ENJOY EACH OTHER, rather than ENDURE EACH OTHER! 6:3

Principle 80: Ladies, you must have CONFIDENCE towards one member of the human race, male type. 6:3 What confidence? That he is your right man. If you have doubt--he is NOT your right man.

Principle 81: The principle of how to identify your right man or right woman. This is the doctrine of identifying your mate for life.

a. The love of RM-RW involves one person in your soul who you can never forget or never erase. 1:7. This love is unique and special for them no matter what they do.

b. You must know something about the opposite sex. 1:2 (As wine, to be enjoyed in the ancient world took some moxie). And your right one will be a member of the opposite sex, if you haven't sorted that out yet, you are in trouble.

c. Category 2 love (love for right man or woman) is protective. When you become reactive to the right man, he is no longer protective. (And when you become reactive, you are in a dangerous position). Note 2:4, also 1:13, and 4:6.

A man in your soul ladies, is the greatest protection a woman ever had. He doesn't run you down, make fun of you, razz you, embarrass you.

d. Category 2 love must come from human volition. (Anything that coerces her free will, destroys her ability to identify and respond.) 2:7, 3:5.

She does not respond as a slave, but as a free agent. Many men try to stupidly destroy the freedom of the woman. Bible doctrine promotes freedom.

e. Love is tone-oriented: There is one man in your soul, and you can tell that something is wrong by his voice, or right. 2:8

(1) A man can say, "I love you" but his tone says, "Whats for breakfast."

(2) A woman can ask a man, "Something wrong?". And he says, "Naw." SHE KNOWS BETTER! HOW, BY HIS TONE!

f. A woman's love responds to the right man.

(1) When he is present: 2:6, 8:3

(2) When absent: 3:1

g. Love in category 2 causes illness when unfulfilled. 2:5, 5:8.

"I am sick with love."

(1) A woman goes to pieces mentally and physically sometimes when her right man is not with it--maybe he is drinking, maybe he is unfaithful, maybe he has a job that keeps him away all the time.

(2) Hang-ups in the soul (mentality) overflow into the body. Psychosomatic illnesses.

h. Category 2 love is recognized by the two persons involved. Other people may not recognize it--but they do. 6:3, 7:10.

i. There is a strength and weakness in category 2 love. 8:6-7

(1) The strength is the love itself--
(2) The weakness is mental attitude sins--specifically--jealousy.

6:4: Solomon the villan keeps on with his pitch. This seems endless.

a. Solomon has great poise--he keeps right on moving.
b. Solomon is used to getting what he wants.
c. Solomon never really stops until she is rescued, and of course that stops him because he cannot talk into thin air.

"beautiful as Tirzah": This was the royal residence of Solomon and very beautiful; great symmetry, one of the most beautiful homes of all time. Most castles are a cold pile of junk. One king started with 10 rooms, the next king had 50 rooms added, the next a wing and so on. The exception is the great chateaus of the French.

He is saying, "You and the castle go together." When you have to make this kind of pitch, obviously, this is not right woman.

Principle 82: Be able to distinguish between flattery, and a true compliment. How do you tell the difference? By application of character (yours) and doctrine to the situation. 6:4

"comely as Jerusalem": Beautiful white city on hills.

"terrible as an army with banners": Is this the equivalent of, "You battle axe, you?" This is the military standard, the colours.

Beautiful banners--for communication and identification. A beautiful banner planted on a hill to gather the troops in battle, so they would keep track of each other.

Solomon is saying, "You are as majestic as an Army with standards banners, I would like to communicate with you. I would like to ID with you." In other words he wants to marry her.

6:5: "Turn away your eyes from me for they have overcome me."

This is a lot of malarky--she hasn't even been looking at him. Solomon by the way had a sense of humor.

Principle 83: Beware of a villan with a sense of humor. The life of the party type, the guy that is fun to be around can be dangerous. This is the type of fellow who can tease you into a drink--and make a big joke out of the whole thing. 6:5

The SW is glaring at him. And he turns it into a joke. And many a gal has falled for some clam-head who is witty and good for a lot of laughs. REMEMBER THIS: THEY RUN OUT OF LAUGHS AFTER A WHILE!

Solomon repeats himself and gives the old physical pitch again.

6:6: "thy teeth": She has good physical hygiene--disciplined enough to brush her teeth daily.

Principle 84: Good personal hygiene and habits are necessary in the doctrine of RM-RW. It just does not speak well of you if you are sloppy in dress, have dandruff in your eyebrows, pick your nose in public, have "sleepy matter in your eyes", and don't bathe often enough. Often this is indicative of deep emotional problems. 6:6

"every one beareth twins": The teeth are well matched--her bite is good.

"not one barren among them": She is not toothless.

6:7: Temples: The beauty of her coloring, the symmetry of her face as it relates to her beautiful hair-do.

Beginning with 6:8, Solomon begins to brag--he has had a good record of woo so far--and he is determined to keep up his reputation as a great lover of women.

Some men are weak, some men are strong. Solomon is the strong type.

Principle 85: Some men are weak, and appeal to the mother instinct in a woman; do not marry a man because you feel sorry for him! Don't mess with such a man.

a. One type: Weak man: He is the weak sister that appeals to the mother instinct--she often thinks its love. The sickest type of marriage involves a weak sister male and a woman with a mother instinct towards him.

   YOU ARE NOT IN LOVE JUST BECAUSE YOU FEEL SORRY FOR SOME IDIOT!

b. Other type: The agressive male. Most men today are weak. A few are not, they are agressive. There are two categories of agressive males:

   (1) Right man
   (2) The rest of the agressive wolves.

Principle 86: The Doctrine of True and False agressiveness.

a. Male agressiveness is a manifestation of category 2 love (love between a man and a woman) where the right woman is involved.

b. However, all male agressiveness is not love (some of it is predatory). This would be the Clark Gable type.

c. When male agressiveness is category 2 love the woman responds as did the Shulamite woman to the Shepherd lover.

(1) She said yes to him when he was absent.
(2) She said yes to him when he came to rescue her (end of chapter 6)

d. When male agressiveness is not category two love the woman must say no. (And under two principles)

(1) She must learn to say no BEFORE she has found her right man. (And this is difficult). This is definitely the teenage girl.

(2) She will learn to say no AFTER she has her right man, but this is easy--her RM affords her protection, she is in his soul.

An agressive man is often a romantic notion, not a RM-RW relationship. TEENAGERS MUST DEVELOP A LOT OF MOXIE IN A HURRY!

e. Solomon's agressiveness was false, the shepherd lovers was true.

(1) In 6:3 the RW is identifying her RM, "I, my beloveds, and my beloved mine."

(2) In 6:4 here comes agressive male, all the way through 6:9. She is tested, but stays true!

f. The woman is designed to respond in category 2 to one man only, therefore any response to the wrong man or men can set her back temporarily, even permanently. (Scar tissue, destruction of the right lobe, lack of capacity for love etc.)

g. Knowledge of this doctrine plus occupation with Christ plus the faith-rest technique protects the right lady until God provides the right man.

Some have and some haven't found their Right Man. In the meantime Jesus Christ is the protector of the woman.

Principle 87: ****UNTIL THE RIGHT MAN COMES ALONG, JESUS CHRIST IS YOUR PROTECTION! He protects you through His Word which is His mind. The Lord loves you--Category 1 love is a protection for Category 2 love!

h. Our passage from Solomon's Song indicates three kinds of agressiveness.

(1) False agressiveness from Solomon: 6:4-9
(2) True agressiveness: 6:11-12 (from Shepherd Lover)
(3) Agressiveness of a woman (false). The jealous queen on an emotional revolt. 7:1-9. At this point, chapter 7, Solomon will go weak, and the jealous queen will go strong. Mental attitude sins makes the queen agressive.

Principle 88: Beware of the man who brags about his conquests. 6:8 This involves dates who may use this to prove they are great lovers, or fellows who discuss this gal or that gal that they have made. This type of n.g.

Principle 89: Beware of the principle of comparative wooing. 6:9 Solomon is saying, "You are the one, the choice of your mother, the choice of all the women in the harem--you are better than all the girls I have dated, married."

6:10: The Daughters of Jerusalem speak. They have observed the Shulamite woman, who has observed her Shepherd lover coming from afar to rescue her. It is just like someone has turned on the lights.

"looketh forth as the morning": Rays of light coming from a rising son. She is the glory of the Shepherd lover--she truly responds to him. The Sun is the Shepherd lover.

"fair as the moon": The moon reflects, (SW) she reflects the glory of the true agressive man.

"terrible as an army with banners": Majestic communication. Right man, right woman has a true communication.

6:11: "I went down into the garden of nuts to see the fruits of the nuts to see the fruits of the valley, and to see whether the vine flourished, and the pomegranates budded."

Someone in humor quoted the first part of this verse as he drove into the LA area which has so many cults.

**********Apparently SW is in a large picture window in the castle. Solomon is wooing her, she is looking out of the window however. Down in the landscape is an orchard--and far to the right the chariot of her RM is coming. She excuses herself, "I want to get a breath of fresh air." She went down to the orchard.

**********She comes down the outside stairway--and she meets him in the orchard--he picks her up--and they take off. The man Solomon watches some of it--the DJ's are running after her--trying to get her to return. In the meantime Solomon is left flat, and the jealous queen comes in.

But we are still with the SW, " . . . to see the fruits of the valley etc." This is what she used to get away from Solomon.

6:12: Note Hebrew translation, "Before I knew it in my soul, I was beside my prince in a chariot."

"Ammi-nadib": Means to be beside my prince.

Principle 90: Category 2 love begins with awareness in the soul. 6:12. (You must understand the soul). The body is an extension of the soul, the body is under the control of the soul.

THIS IS THE DELIVERANCE, THE RESCUE! There is an analogy here between Christ delivering us from sin on the cross, and the rapture--delivering us from this body of corruption.

He (SL) came to the point of death to rescue her, TO TAKE ANYONE OUT OF SOLOMON'S HAREM WAS punishable by death!

6:13: The DJ's run after the Shulamite, and shout for her to return, and then they gradually fade out.

Then the jealous queen begins to speak. "What will ye see in the Shulamite?" This is simply, "What do you see in her, Solomon?" Solomon gives an honest answer, "As it were the company of two armies."

Solomon is mentioning the majestic panaroma of a great battle scene. She was a challenge to everything he wanted.

NOW, BIG QUESTION? Why didn't Solomon pursue and have the shepherd lover killed?

Chapter 7

Remember the queen is jealous and agressiveness. Her agressiveness is based upon two things:

1. Mental attitude sins
2. Frustration

PRAYER: "O God, deliver me from frustrated woman." (Your prayer, not Solomon's).

Immediately she starts a dance--a dance designed to gain the attention of a man. So Solomon now describes the dance of the jealous queen.

7:1: "How beautiful are thy feet with shoes": Shoes can obviously make a woman's feet beautiful or horrible. The shoe designers today are against women, and hate them. Look at ladies shoes!!

a. Now when Solomon was beginning with the SW, where did he begin? Face, yes, hair. He started at the opposite end.

b. Where is the soul in a woman--in her feet, or in her head?

"O Princes daughter": In other words she was a queen. She is very aristocratic.

"the joints of thy thighs are like jewels":

a. The joints of the thighs were considered by the ancients, and some moderns to be the sexiest part of a woman.

b. In the female anatomy, as probably all women know, there is a hollow spot on each thigh where it joins the trunk. I hope that is academic enuf!

THIS IS THE WORD OF GOD! I DIDN'T WRITE IT. I'M GOING TO EXPLAIN IT THO!

c. This word isn't joint, it is "hollow."

Just as the hair is the setting for the face, the hollows of the thighs were the setting for the female sexual organ.

There is no need to be shocked. Every woman (unless she has a wooden leg) has part of this as her anatomy.

Before Solomon based his wooing on the soul--at least at the start, but here Solomon is being Solomon and the queen is being the queen, and is flesh all the way!

Why? Because when this scene is over, Solomon and this woman are going to have sex! But sex is all it is going to be. THERE IS NO SOUL RELATIONSHIP! It is just two agressive animals (two legged) clashing in bed!

"jewels": Jewels are used to set off something--to emphasize some beauty spot on the body. Jewelry is not to be used as a status symbol.

"the work of the hands of a cunning workman": Talking about a man who is clever designing and making jewelry.

7:2: "Thy navel": Now he works up to the naval. Now what does this mean, " . . . is like a round goblet, which wanteth not liquor."

Does this mean that he wants to drink liquor out of her naval? It appears so. No! It means looking at the mid-section of the female anatomy (she only has her shoes on) and he is stimulated (as liquor stimulates). As his eyes move upward his stimulation increases.

"thy belly": The stomach "is like an heap of wheat set about with lilies."

He is talking about the symmetry of the lower trunk--the abdomen. In the ancient world they often planted and cultivated flowers around the wheat fields. This was for beauty, and also to attract the pests to the flowers.

It is saying that she is holding his attention--his eyes are not straying. She could probably wear a bikini and look great.

7:3: "Thy two breasts are like two young roes that are twins." This is describing symmetry.

7:4: "Thy neck is as a tower of ivory": Symmetry again. Her neck is not too long, and not too short. She is well proportioned. All the time she is dancing to accent this. This dance is a prelude to sex.

"thine eyes like the fishpools in Heshbon": Very clear, deep, blue pools. She has very clear and very pure eyes.

"by the gate of Bath-rabbim":

"thy nose is like the tower of Lebanon": This is a delicately shaped nose. Symmetry.

See how mixed up Solomon is--he can pitch woo with one gal (or try) and then turn to another one--and give the same line.

7:5: "Thy head upon thee is like Carmel": Just as mountains arise out of the distance to give beauty to the horizon, even so does her hair give beauty to her face.

"hair . . . like purple: Doesn't mean it was dyed purple. Her hair was so black, and so attractive the sheen of the sun made it appear as purple. Purple along with scarlet was considered to be the most beautiful and most aristocratic color of the ancient world.

"the king is held in the galleries": He is enjoying this immensely, he is sitting there clapping. The galleries is speaking of her tresses.

7:6: "How fair and how pleasant art thou, O love for delights!" The delights of sex. He missed the boat. Solomon had an ECS, or very close to it in his early life, but the thing that wrecked him was scar tissue from the wrong women. In the older days, and younger he was great, but in middle age he fell apart.

Principle 91: Solomon is not a one woman man, therefore he violates divine doctrine (right man, right woman) and has no true happiness. 7:1-7

Principle 92: False agressiveness meets false agressiveness and they have delight--but sexual delight only--and that is animal. 7:6 is the case of any port in a storm, and each has found his port.

7:7: "This thy stature is like a palm tree": This is symmetry--.
"and thy breasts as clusters": Clusters of coconuts on a palm tree.

7:8: Final approach: "I will go up to the palm tree": This girl
"I will take hold of the boughs thereof": Contact, handling her. He embraces her.
"smell of thy nose like apples": Reference to stimulation--apples were used as smelling salts.

7:9: "And the roof of thy mouth like the best wine for my beloved."
How far is too far before you are married?

a. French kissing is too far (described above).
b. Fondling of breats etc. is too far
c. When the male is stimulated--too far.

"that goeth down sweetly": Means "when the wine goeth down smoothly, gliding over the lips and teeth."

They are embracing. They are in the sexual act.

Act 4
7:10-8:4-.

This is the conversation of the Shulamite and the Shepherd after the rescue as they are traveling in their chariot. Chapter 8 should begin with 7:10.

7:10: Notice the contrast between the previous conversation--and now.

"I am my beloved's, and his desire is toward me." This is RM-RW relationship, "desire." The proper soul desire of RM & RW. The soul is primary.

7:11: This is the Shepherd speaking. He is discussing long term activity--let's get married and settle down. They have a glorious future as RM-RW.

Principle 93: If you wish to insure a happy future--be sure to marry RM or RW. It is worth waiting for. 7:11

7:12, " . . . and there will I give thee my loves (plural).

Principle 94: The plural "loves" refers to soul love & sex love, IN MARRIAGE.

7:13: A glorious future is planned.

a. New: There are things that must wait until marriage.

b. Old: There will be the fragrance of memories.

She has saved herself for her right man and they are going to have a fantastic life together.

Principle 95: The right man will be a good planner and provider. 7:13

Chapter 8

Chapter 8 opens with the Shulamite Woman talking, she hasn't seen her fellow for a long time, they are in the chariot, heading toward Shummim.

She talks about inexperience--which is interesting--suddenly she turns shy. Here is the one she loves desperately; when absent fragrance of memories, when present totally occupied with him. NOW SHE IS SHY! AND WHEN SHY, SHE WILL TALK thusly:

8:1: I wish you had been my brother--because then during all this time I could have loved you without anyone censoring it.

8:1: "I would kiss thee": This is the same word used for kiss in Proverbs 7:13, it is not the usual word for kiss--it is the kiss of a very clever and well-trained prostitute. I would kiss you so that you would be utterly intrigued with me.

"yea, I should not be despised." It is actually, "They should not despise you."

One of the problems--the brothers despised the Shepherd. And they had sent her up to be a fox scarecrow--in the northern vineyards-this is where Solomon discovered her.

8:2: "I would lead you into my mothers house": An idiom for a formal engagement.

"who would instruct me": is "you would instruct me." Piel Imperfect.

This means to give personal, and detailed instructions to her--in the art of love. She feels she will not be a good lover physically. She is responding to him--be agressive when we are married, I'm a good learner!

Principle 95: No one needs experience in physical love before marriage to succeed in marriage. 8:2

"you will teach me": This will be an interesting classroom, it will last the rest of their married lives.

"drink of spiced wine": She would make her self physically available to him at all times.

"juice of my pomegranate": Pomegranate was an erotic female symbol of the ancient world.

8:3: "His left hand under my head . . ." He is right-handed. This has been her constant though in regard to her shepherd lover. She, at this point, is doing most of the talking.

Principle 96: Try to develop a good conversational pattern, and good listening ability. We have forgotten how to speak, and how to listen. 8:1-3.

Principle 97: Girl-talk can do a lot of damage, as can boy-talk. They work each other up, they think: boy, boy, boy--boy craxy. The boys think girl, girl, girl as they ride a wave of libido. It becomes a form of self-hypnosis. 8:4.

Actually the DJ's had tried to talk up Solomon, to the SW. Girl-talk. They tried to stir up some enthusiasm. Because of doctrine, she refused to respond to Solomon, only to her SL.

Act 5

This act begins with bystanders--with nothing to do--watching the traffic--and the chariot seems to be the first of the morning. The mother will speak, the brothers will have their say. It makes for an interesting conclusion.

Act 5: 8:5-14

8:5: This act begins with the bystanders commenting.

"Who is this that comes up from the wilderness, leaning upon her beloved?" "Who is this coming up in that chariot necking?"

8:5b: Mama speaks, "I raised thee up under the apple tree." I taught you to be a proper young lady--what is this that you are doing. The mother is defending herself. Every mother sooner or later says, "I taught her better than that--she has had better training than that."

"there your mother brought thee forth: there she brought you forth that bore you." She had good training.

8:6-7: The dialogue in the chariot.

"Set me": Qal Imperative, "Impress me a seal": Shepherd speaks. "seal": A signet ring. Genesis 38:18--a ring worn between the breasts, along wit the bundle of myrrh. It signified waiting for the right man--a symbol of the faith-rest life.

In other words, ID me as your right man!

When a woman gave her RM the signet ring, it meant she belonged to him body and soul. It is a recognition of category 2 love.

"thine heart": The right lobe here; frame of reference with memory center, the conscience with its norms and standards, the viewpoint able to think divine viewpoint.

Four ways in which this man fulfills this woman:

a. He fulfills her norms and standards: Song of Solomon 2:3

b. He gives reality to her romantic dreams and imaginations: 8:1-3

c. When he is absent he provides fragrance of memories. 1:13, 4:6.

d. He provides soul stimulation (the basis for sexual stimulation.) 1:16-17

"as a seal upon thy fingers": This indicates marriage.

"for love is strong as death": The concept of love which relates the soul to the body. "Strong means fortified."

a. This RM-RW love cannot be broken by anything--even DEATH!

b. This love is protective

c. Mental attitude sins attack all facets of mental attitude love. "Jealousy."

d. Prov. 18:22, "Whosoever find the right woman receives grace from the Lord."

e. God has set aside time in each life for Category 2 love: Eccl. 3:8. (Certain functions in time can destroy this--not waiting for RM). Or mental attitude sins can destroy this, or alcohol, or drugs, or adultery.

Principle 98: The right man, right woman love cannot be broken by anything--even DEATH. 8:6

8:6b: The SW speaks, "jealousy is cruel as the grave.": Jealousy is a word which comes from high-blood pressure.

Principle 99: The greatest enemy of category 2 love is mental attitude sin of which a representative is jealousy! Numbers 5, a whole offering is dedicated to jealousy.

"cruel": Harsh, creul, non-responsive.

"grave": The grave robs someone of a loved one--and mental attitude sins rob of Category 2 love.

Principle 100: Mental attitude sins rob, cancel out, right man-right woman love. Hence the doctrine of jealousy with 12 points.

Doctrine of Jealousy:

1. So great was the sin of jealousy that a special offering was designated for it under the Levitical code. Numbers 5:11ff.

2. Jealousy is the basis for the destruction of Category 2 love. Song of Solomon 8:6.

3. Mental attitude sins like jealousy can destroy any individual through psychosis and mental abberations. Job 5:2, Prov. 14:30. Job had a problem with bitterness, and self-righteousness. But soon or later a MAS causes psychosis.

4. Jealousy is the strongest mental attitude sin: Prov. 27:3-4

5. Love precedes jealousy. Eccl. 9:6. People who have never fallen in love haven't any problem with jealousy. Just fall in love and see what happens. (Any kind of strong affection.)

   a. Also women can be jealous of women.
   b. And men of men.
   c. Or occupational jealousy
   d. Political jealousy
   e. Ministerial jealousy

6. Jealousy motivates to revenge: Prov. 6:34. And when you judge, and retaliate, you are really in for BIG TROUBLE! Deut. 32:35, Rom. 12:19.

7. Jealousy split the nation of Israel--the motivation of the ten tribes splitting from the two south tribes was JEALOUSY! Ephraim's jealousy is mentioned in Isaiah 11:13. The tribe of Ephraim was jealous of the tribe of Judah.

8. Jealousy was a motivater of the religious leaders who crucified Christ. Matt. 27:18, Mark 15:10.

9. Jealousy of the brothers of Joseph motivated them to sell them into slavery. Acts 7:9. They didn't know it, but they were buying an insurance policy for the future.

10. When a believer is negative toward Bible Doctrine--sooner or later he is going to find a jealousy level. Romans 1:28-29 (Just as an unbeliever does).

11. Jealousy therefore rejects the teaching and authority of Bible doctrine. Acts 13:45, 17:5.

12. False doctrine produces its own jealousy. 1 Tim. 6:4.

Note: Jealousy and envy are synonmous in the original languages of Scripture.

"the coals thereof are coal of fire, which hath a most vehement flame." 8:6. This could be translated, "her flames, flames of fire, the intense flame is from the Lord."

The above is the passion, power, intensity of Category 2 love, it CANNOT BE DUPLICATED ANYWHERE, AND IT IS FROM THE LORD!

8:7: The Shepherd keeps right on going!

Principle 101: NOTHING can put out Category 2 love. 8:7

"Many waters are not able to extinguish the love, neither can the floods drown it":

There is no way to destroy what God has planned. You can distort it, you can run from it, you can knock out the happiness, but the love of Right Man, Right Woman is still there.

Principle 102: Category 2 love (love between RM-RW) cannot be bought! 8:7b.

8:8: The chariot has arrived. The two brothers speak.

1st Brother: Our girl is not of marriageable age.
2nd Brother: He begins to suspect that marriage is closer than they thought. They have to face it; now!

8:9: So the 1st brother replies: "If she be a wall": (means a virgin) we'll give her a great dowry.

"and if she be a door": Operation promiscuity, "we will enclose her with boards of cedar." (We'll put her in a coffin).

The Bride Speaks:

8:10: She states that she is a virgin, and that she is ready for marriage. She indicates that this fellow is designed for her. "Then was I in his eyes as one that found favor" (grace.)

8:11: She explains how she got into the hands of Solomon. Solomon had a vineyard next door, and he had hired it out to others, he had rented it. He was checking out this business deal--and saw her in the next field (vineyard) chasing foxes.

8:12: She is expressing her own freedom of choice, volition. Her right man, her vineyard is her choice (and God's). Solomon has a 1,000 wives in his harem (she is accurate, check 1 Kings 11:1-9) and 200 daughters of Jerusalem.

8:13: Now she turns to her Shepherd lover in front of her brothers, and indicates that he has been in her memories--now he is present--and she wants "the companions"(the brothers) to hear HIS declaration.

And in order to make sure that the brothers know that this is her right man--she says:

8:14: "Quickly answer them my beloved--and we will build up greater memories in the future."

Study: How To
(Category 571)

I. There must be Relationship with Christ: Eccl. 12:1

II. There must be Fellowship with Christ: Eccl. 12:13

III. The Weariness of Study Principle: Eccl. 12:12, 2 Timothy 2:15.

What makes the difference? Why do some utilize study habits, and grasp material, and others do not? Here are principles to be used in GAP, and some to be used in school.

A. A Good Mental Attitude:

If your mental attitude is lousy, full of mental attitude sins, you are shot down before you start. You don't like English; the teacher stinks, etc. You may be jealous of someone, bitter, knocking out guilt complexes like crazy. Use rebound, take in doctrine, and stay loose.

1. Concentration: Prov. 1:4, the word "discretion" means concentration.

   a. Parents and other people in authority are responsible for teaching you how to concentrate. Prov. 1:8-10.

   b. Bible class (and church servies) where you take in doctrine further concentration fantastically!

   c. Concentration is the ability to focus on one factor, crowding out all other stimuli.

   d. This involves thought control. 2 Cor. 10:5. "Bringing into captivity every thought . . ."

2. Challenge: Most are never challenged in the academic class room, or from the Word of God.

B. Self-discipline: Proverbs 1:10 thru 24:2.

1. Principle of post-poned pleasure: The only young once syndrone. Like "I want sex now."

   a. You guys and gals who don't date--you think you have problems--

   b. Who really has problems??

      The early daters-
      Those who go steady--often a prelude to communal living.
      Those in the "fun" crowd, who get scar-tissued up.

2. Principle of utilized time: Check out the Category on this.

a. The principle of PLANNED TIME: James 4:13-17

b. The principle of REDEEMED TIME: Ephesians 5:16-18

c. The principle of APPLIED TIME: 1 Cor. 7:29-31

C. The Use of Planned Goals: What goals do you have in life? Phil. 3:13-14.

1. TO MASTER BD AND GET AN ECS (staying off emotional revolt) Phil. 3:13-14

2. TO MARRY THE RM OR RW: S.O.S.

3. TO CHOOSE THE RIGHT VOCATION: Regardless--will be in full-time Christian service.

4. TO UPHOLD MY COUNTRY: Patriotism (all thru the Word)

D. To Contribute to a Happy Home Life: Ephesians 6:1-4 (Unhappy young people can't concentrate)

1. Your happiness is dependent upon BD. The Holy Spirit produces joy. But YOU CAN MANUFACTURE YOUR OWN MISERY.

2. Your occupation hazard in the home is mental attitude sins toward your parents, sisters or bothers.

a. Lazy
b. Moody
c. Irritable
d. Surly
e. Know it all
f. No communication
g. Unthankful
h. Satisfied only when you get your own way.
g. Expecting perfection from your parents--when you are a basket case yourself.

3. Really, let's face it--some of you are argumentative--untrustworthy--you've got your parents fooled--you've lied to them. Operation strap-on. So what do you expect?

4. Any maturity you have in the teenage years comes only from BD. Your body looks mature, but your soul hasn't been sorted out yet by the Word.

E. Some Principles of Study:

1. The principle of daily study, daily review. Operation cram is for the undisciplined.

2. The principle of repetition. (Operation overlearn)

3. The principle of the extra mile

4. Categorize the class: Learn the basics, built on them. Understand what is said each day what is taught. Don't let days of misunderstanding or confusion pile up.

10/26/2012 10:31 FAX 001300051

5. Learn to listen: Some teachers are dull, boring, some ramble, some don't like the subject, the teacher.

6. Read the teacher:

   a. What means a lot to him?
   b. What are his ground rules? (His authority)
   c. Project the factor of "intellectual curiousity."

7. Project the correct image:

   a. Hit school hard the first weeks of a new semester.
   b. Keep your trap shut.
   c. Sit in the front seats of the class.
   d. Dress neatly, trim off the slop in your posture, but be yourself, relaxed.
   e. Don't be phony, overeager, glib, ask stupid questions, be smart-aleck, sound off--in other words get away from operation jack-ass.

8. Learn to express yourself in writing & typing: Everybody ought to take typing!

   a. Tone up sloppy penmanship.
   b. Build up your vocabulary--
   c. Write, write, and write some more.

9. Learn to think on your feet: Get involved in "butterfly" (in your stomach) projects. Drama, Debate, Argumentation, Foreign languages.

10. Take hard courses: Don't take the easy stuff, to just get by. Take Advanced Math, Foreign languages, Chemistry, Physics, Bookkeeping etc.

11. Learn how to take criticism, maligning. No one likes to be criticized, but you can live with it in fellowship.

   1. Remember, aren't you critical some of the time.
   2. The price of leadership, success is often being hated, criticized, or being the object of operation green-eyes.

12. Have a well developed sense of humor:

   a. Don't take yourself more seriously that you do God!
   b. Relax, don't be so uptight--commit your problems to the Lord.
   c. If you get a low grade--there is always another day.
   d. Be sure your sense of humor includes the geographical area in which you live.

12. Develop your ability to read: Readers are leaders. Speed read.

13. Structure leisure time into your day: But don't waste time.

Suffering
(Category 572)

I. Six Circumstances Under Which the Human Race Suffers:

A. Health

B. People

C. Privation

D. Weather

E. Mental

F. Justice

II. Categories of Suffering in Time:

A. The Person of Jesus Christ: Suffering on the cross.

B. The Unbeliever: To awaken to his need of the Lord Jesus.

C. The Believer: (19 reasons why he suffers).

III. Nineteen Reasons why Believers Suffer: (See 69-70 Basics for a thorough study).

A. Suffering caused by the details of life: Ecclesiastes

(With scar tissue on the soul, everything you touch turns to misery)

B. Suffering from guilt reaction to sin and the suppression of the sin in the self-conscious: 1 Tim. 1:5-6; 19-20; 3:9

C. Suffering from scar tissue of the soul: Eph. 4:17-19

D. Suffering from failure to isolate sin: Heb. 12:15. The doctrine of chain-sinning. (Lighting a new sin off a confessed sin).

E. Suffering from the rejection of authority: Judges 19-21, Matt. 7:29-8:13, Jer. 7, Prov. 30.

F. Suffering from the rapid and accelerated construction of the edification complex of the soul. James 1:1-6

G. Suffering from interrelationship with those who suffer. 1 Cor. 12:26, Romans 14:7, 1 Chron. 21.

H. Suffering from the rejection of the right man, or right woman. Ezekiel 16, 23.

I. Suffering from Divine Discipline: Heb. 12:6

J. Suffering from the rejection of the Word; therefore rejection of the Lord as the right man. Jer. 13.

K. Suffering directly related to the Angelic Conflict: 1 Peter 1:12, 3:17, Eph. 3:9-13.

L. Suffering to demonstrate the power and provision of grace. 2 Cor. 12:1-10.

M. Suffering to learn the value of doctrine. Psalm 119, especially note verse 67, 68, 71.

N. Suffering from national disaster: Isa. 59:15-21

O. Suffering from temporary loss of norms (right lobe). Jer. 2:24-25.

P. Suffering from war: Deut. 21, 24, Matt. 24:6-7

Q. Suffering from emotional short-circuit in time of tragedy or disaster. John 20:9-18

R. Suffering in the process of dying: Job 5:20 ff. Job 5:20ff.

S. Suffering because of a specific spiritual gift: (As Paul suffered, many passages.)

Suicide
(Category 573)

1. Jesus Christ died for the sin of suicide. 1 John 2:2, Isa. 53. He bore all sins, paying the penalty for everyone. This does not mean that everyone is autbmatically saved.

2. Saul, a believer, died of suicide: 1 Samuel 31:1-6

   a. Saul was a believer: Study 1 Samuel 10, 11.

   b. Saul went to heaven after he died. 1 Samuel 28:19, " . . . you and your sons will be with me . . ." (in heaven).

3. A believer cannot lose his salvation, or be separated from the love of God for any reason: Romans 8:35-39. When v. 38 says that "death" can't separate the believer from the Lord--it includes suicide. Check out the doctrine of eternal security.

4. A believer may be out of fellowship when he dies--but not out of relationship. Apply doctrine of the cross and two circles. Acts 5 (Ananias and Sapphira) and 1 John 5:16.

5. A believer or an unbeliever commits suicide when scar tissue has completely closed up the eyes of the soul. Study the life of Judas Iscariot (unbeliever) in Matt. 27:3-10. Also apply the doctrine of Scar Tissue (see category).

6. Thus a misunderstanding of some major doctrines (stemming from positional truth) causes many believers to be off in their understanding of suicide. Yes, suicide is horrible--but it doesn't cause loss of salvation. (779)

Survival Kit For the Believer's Life
(Category 573)

Introduction: (Romans numberals will have the ingredients.)

1. In the days to come you are going to need a survival kit - Bible Doctrine in the mind, and full knowledge (epignosis) in the human spirit. You will need to function under GAP, and stay off Emotional Revolt.

2. Whether you survive or not depends on the Doctrine you learn from the Word of God.

3. Bible Doctrine determines what is going to happen to you in any given set of circumstances in the days to come.

4. You can carry Bible Doctrine around with you, or if not, mox nix.

5. Your rate of learning differs, but the important thing - be consistent. Isa. 33:6, "Wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times."

I. Salvation: John 1:12

It is impossible to survive apart from a personal relationship with Jesus Christ.

II. The Doctrine of Eternal Security: Romans 8:35-39

A. Salvation is the work of God.

B. God is perfect, His work is perfect.

C. You cannot do anything to lose it.

D. No one can ever take it from you. John 10:28-30

III. The Use of the Techniques in the Christian Life.
(The techniques are designed to keep you in line until you can take in Bible doctrine as a maturing believer.) See 67 John tape #2, third lesson. However, you will always use them.

A. Rebound: The consistent use of 1 John 1:9 resulting:

B. The Filling of the Holy Spirit: This is when the Holy Spirit controls your life and produces Divine Good in your life. Eph. 5:14-18.

C. The Faith Rest Technique: Heb. 3:7-4:16. Knowing, believing and claiming the promises.

D. Living in the Word: You have to function under GAP. 2 Timothy 2:15, Psalm 119:9-11.

E. Occupation with Christ: Hebrews 12:1-2. Thinking divine viewpoint, a mental attitude that is fixed on Christ.

IV. Start using the Promises (from the standpoint of Epignosis). Begin with at least 10.

A. Romans 8:28: "And WE KNOW that all things work together for good."

B. Matthew 21:22: "And all things, whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, believing ye shall recieve."

C. 1 Peter 5:7: "Casting all your care upon him; for He careth for you."

D. Psalm 55:22: "Cast thy burden upon the Lord, and He shall sustain thee . . ."

E. Isaiah 41:10: "Fear thou not; for I am with thee; be not dismayed; for I am thy God; I will strengthen thee; yea, I will help thee, yea, I will uphold thee with the right hand of thy righteousness."

F. Psalm 37:4-5: "Delight thyself also in the Lord . . ." (Occupation with Christ).

G. 1 Samuel 17:47: " . . . for the battle is the Lords."

H. Luke 1:37: "For with God nothing shall be impossible."

I. Isaiah 26:3-4: "Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace whose MIND is stayed on thee . . ."

J. Psalm 56:3: "What time I am afraid, I will trust in thee".

K. 1 John 1:9: . The believer's aspirin. Look it up and use it.

V. Erect an Edification Complex:

A. There must be a communicator of the Word with people in public assembly for private intake of BD.

B. The Word must be comprehended. (Left lobe as head knowledge)

C. Then faith must be applied to the Word, and doctrine stored in the human spirit as epignosis.

D. Then the Word is being cycled into the right lobe filling frame of reference with memory center, the conscience with Biblical norms and standards, and giving that believer a viewpoint which reflects the mind of Christ.

E. The Word of God is applied--used; in daily living.

F. And finally the edification complex (ESC) is erected with grace orientation, mastery of the details of life, living in the Word, capacity to love and +H, inner happiness.

G. This perserves our nation--under the salt and light principle.

VI. Understand Doctrines and Categories:

A. The Essence of God: A foundational doctrine.

B. Dispensations: Time doctrines (understanding God's time clock)

C. Christology: Who Christ is, what He did for you on the cross, now and in the future.

D. Holy Spirit: Understanding His part in salvation and spirituality.

E. Divine Guidance: How to know the will of God at any point, under any circumstance.

F. Volitional Principles: Very important!

G. Suffering: Vast subject, and needed for the believer's orientation.

H. Death: The concept of dying grace, and related doctrines.

And the many categories which spell out these doctrine and others.

VII. Orientation to Grace:

A. We do not earn or deserve anything from God.

B. Everything depends upon who and what He is.

C. God has a purpose for your life as a believer.

D. If you fulfill the reason for being here, you are going to have a wonderful life and you will live through anything.

E. If you do not fulfill that purpose, you will live miserably.

F. You need to understand the wedding of grace and faith at the cross. See the appropriate category.

1. Only grace (God's plan) and faith (man's nonmeritorious system of perception) can conceive. Result--the new birth.

2. If a substitution is made for faith (works) then a Biblical spiritual conception doesn't take place.

3. Bringing works to grace, makes grace step aside, grace will not tolerate a harem of works.

a. Believe and (for the unbeliever) WRONG
b. Confess and (for the believer) WRONG

G. Understand the doctrine of the Grace Apparatus for perception. (GAP)

Sustaining of the Universe As Over Against Science
(Category 574)

1. The continuation of the universe depends upon the Omnipotence and Immutability of Jesus Christ.

2. The so-called scientific laws do not exist: Law of gravity, etc.

3. These laws cannot be enforced by science. These "laws" are based on a statistical assumption that the universe, which operates according to a fixed norm, will continue to do so. SCIENCE CANNOT GUARANTEE THIS.

4. The universe, with its laws of matter and energy will not always exist. 2 Peter 3:1-12, Rev. 20:11.

5. Known "scientific laws" depend entirely upon the OMNIPOTENCE and IMMUTABILITY OF GOD THE SON. Every text on the pattern of the universe is a treatise of the faithfulness of Jesus Christ, who holds everything together. Col. 1:16, 18, " . . . by Him all things consist."

6. Jesus Christ not only holds the universe together, but He does so mechanically by the Word that He utters.

   Heb. 1:3, "Who being the brightness of His glory, and the express image of his person and upholding all things by the Word of His power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high."

7. His reason for holding the universe together is to bring many sons into glory.

   Hebrews 2:10, "For it became Him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings."

8. Jesus Christ is holding the universe together to allow grace to run its full course. The laws of the universe simply define HIS FAITHFULNESS in time.

Stability of a Nation: The Doctrine of Human Freedom
(Category 575)

From Jeremiah series, Jeremiah 11:10-14, taught March 26, 1971

1. The 10 Commandments are the Magna Charta of human freedom. Exodus 20:2, Deut. 5:6.

   a. Also the Year of Jubilee (in Codex 3 of ML) is designed to maintain and continue the freedom of a nation. Lev. 25:10.

   b. As the Mosiac Law provided freedom in the age of Israel, so today the Holy Spirit provides freedom for the believer in the Church Age. 2 Cor. 3:17, Romans 8:2-4

      Today in America we have a double freedom:

      (1) We have the freedom of the structure of our nation.
      (2) We have also the freedom of the indwelling presence of the Holy Spirit, and the grace way of being F/HS.

2. Slavery was a national issue in Jeremiah's day. Jer. 34:8-17 He constantly warned them against Soul slavery!

   a. Soul slavery leads to physical slavery--

   b. OR DEATH!

3. Eternal liberty belongs to the children of God. Romans 8:21.

   a. Our eternal freedom is related to the doctrine of redemption. Isa. 61:1, Luke 4:18-20

   b. He bought us out of the slave-market of sin.

4. Experiencial sanctification provides daily freedom to serve God. Romans 6:16-20

5. Positional sanctification provides freedom from the old sin nature. Romans 6:7. A believer to be effective must be freed from the slavery of the old sin nature.

6. Bible doctrine under GAP provides freedom from soul slavery. John 8:30-36, James 1:25, 2:12. Thats the thing that can save our country.

7. Therefore liberty is the modus vivendi of Christianity. Gal. 5:13 and 1 Peter 2:16. That means that every born-again believer even with a thimble-full of doctrine ought to understand freedom, privacy, free enterprise, and patriotism. (Even the stupid ones).

8. Legalism seeks to enslave the believer and destroy that liberty. Galatians 2:4.

9. This is why false teachers are in slavery (legalism) but they are always promising freedom to their victims. 2 Peter 2:19.

10. Freedom provides that stability of soul necessary for both occupation with Christ and worship. 2 Chron. 29:31

11. Since salvation which is phase 1 and the inculcation of doctrine in phase 2 provide freedom of soul, human slavery (body slavery) does not hinder a believer from serving God. 1 Cor. 7:20-23. That is why Paul says there, "Look, if you are a slave when you accept Jesus Christ as Saviour, do not try to break out of slavery. Even though you are a slave, you are free to serve God. And if you are free when you accepted Christ, just remember you are a slave unto the Lord, to serve Him." Gal. 3:28

12. Citizenship in a nation provides freedom. Acts 22:28

Shadows: Doctrine of
(Category 576)

BEFORE THE CROSS	AFTER THE CROSS
Revelation given by shadows.	Revelation changes to reality; the Canon of Scripture.
Shadows anticipate	When reality comes, the shadows no longer have a bona fide place.
In shadows system you do something over and over. A lot of ritual is involved.	Once you are looking back at this and it is in writing (categorically and doctrinally) then it becomes a matter of perception instead of ritual.

Col. 2:17:

a. "Shadow": skia = an image or a shadow cast by an object and representing its form without being its form. Heb. 10:1

b. "Body": soma = substance, reality. The reality of the shadows is Christ. Christ is the reality which fulfills the shadows.

Superiorities of Christ
(Category 577)

1. Christ is SUPERIOR IN HIS RELATIONSHIP: Heb. 1:5

   In His deity there is a Father-Son relationship, which sets the pattern for the relationship (Father-Son) in His HUMANITY. Luke 1:35.

2. Christ is SUPERIOR IN HIS SECOND ADVENT. Heb. 1:6

   "when": 2nd Advent
   "he": God the Father
   "firstbegotton": Jesus Christ
   "all the angels": After Operation Footstoold, only elect angels will be operative. All fallen angels will be chained.

3. Christ is SUPERIOR IN HIS MINISTRY. Hebrews 1:7-8

   a. v. 7: "ministers a flame of fire": Angels are servants of God and used to administer judgment.

   b. v. 8: "O God": God the Father called the Son "God."
      "righteousness": Impeccability of the humanity of Jesus Christ.
      "thy kingdom": In contrast to Satan's kingdom

4. Christ is SUPERIOR IN HIS APPOINTMENT. Heb. 1:9

   Jesus Christ, on earth, chose the plan of the Father "righteousness rather than the plan of Satan "iniquity": which was to act independently of God's plan by bypassing the cross and accepting the crown.

   "anointed . . . oil": The sustaining ministry of the Holy Spirit.

5. Christ is SUPERIOR AS CREATOR. Heb. 1:10

   "Lord": Emphasis on Deity

6. Christ is SUPERIOR IN HIS CHARACTER. Heb. 1:11-12

   "they shall perish": After the millennium the heavens will be destroyed.

   "thou remainest": Psalm 90:2, "everlasting to everlasting"

   "same yesterday, today and forever": Heb. 13:8

7. Christ is SUPERIOR IN HIS POSITION. Heb. 1:13

   Jesus Christ in His humanity is superior to angels.

Taxation
(Category 578)

1. Taxation is a bona fide operation in a national entity. Romans 13:1-7, Matt. 22:15-22.

   a. Because keeping law and order costs money: Romans 13:4

   b. Because certain privileges enjoyed in a nation cost money: Romans 13:5, " . . . subject" (Like highways, park system)

   c. Because government leaders need supported: Romans 13:6 (It is a full time job).

   d. Because bona fide welfare costs money: (See category on the doctrine of welfare.

   (The above are representative, this is not an exhaustive list.)

2. Taxation was enjoined by the Lord Jesus Christ: Matt. 22:15-22

   a. "Render therefore unto Caesar the things which are Ceasar's and unto God the things that are God's."

   b. From the standpoint of the one being supported by taxes--it is a grace method. (Why??) THEY DIDN'T EARN OR DESERVE IT!

3. The Old Testament tithing system was a method of taxation. Numbers 18:21-24, Deut. 14:22-24, and Deut. 14:28-29.

4. Taxation can be abused.

   a. By graft: (Split of the Kingdom--1 Kings 12:1-15). This causes excessive taxation--excessive because luxurious living is promoted.

   b. By NON-bona fide welfare programs: Supporting those who can work: 2 Thess. 3:6, 10, 11, 12; Prov. 24:30ff.

   c. By guaranteed annual income programs: 2 Thess. 3:6ff. condemns.

   d. By socialized medicine programs: (Cradle to the grave care)

      Violates free enterprise--takes private practice and makes it a Federal program with the resultant Red Tape.
      Violates volition: You must participate or be damned.
      Violates the discipline of God: Life is designed with trial, heartache, difficulty--IT makes you.
      Violates Divine Institution No. 4.

   e. By federal urban renewal programs: Get the minority races out of the ghetto--but the new housing development becomes a candidate for urban renewal in two years.

   f. By federally bailing out bankrupt companies like Penn Central. Let is go smash.

Whenever the Federal government takes over, and you get some payment, that payment has strings attached that takes some of your freedom away--and as the paper work grows more and more--they need more staff to process the slavery. Before too long the GOOSE THAT LAID THE GOLDEN EGG IS DEAD.

4. Abused taxation can ultimately bankrupt a nation. Lev. 26:26

5. Abused taxation will cause slavery. Lev. 26:25. Slaves don't pay taxes, however!

Note: The term "taxation" does not occur in the English Bible. The words for taxation are translated "tithe", or "tribute", or occasionally "yoke."

BLANK SPACE PROVIDED TO FIGURE YOUR TAXES

Temptation for the Believer
(Category 579)

I. The Three Sources of Tempatation:

A. World: Thought temptation. Romans 12:2

B. Flesh: The old sin nature. Romans 8

C. Devil: Religion (false doctrine)

II. One Source of Sin: The Old Sin Nature

III. Two areas of control in the believer's life:

A. Control of the Holy Spirit

B. Control of the Old Sin Nature

IV. Volition is the SWITCH

V. There is nothing wrong in being tempted but . . .

VI. Everyone has different areas of temptation.

VII. Sequence of Action:

A. You are tempted
B. You decide - volition: (Negative volition - against God)
C. If (1st class condition) this action (deed, etc.) is a sin (and it is) your decision puts you under the control of the old sin nature, even if you were ignorant of the fact that this deed, etc., was a sin.
D. Now you are under the control of the old sin nature, and you have commited an act of sin, and are dominated by the old sin nature.

VIII. To Reverse the Action:

A. You realize you are out of fellowship.
B. You know the doctrine of rebound so switch is flipped to positive.
C. You confess your sin and are cleansed
D. Now you are under the control of the Holy Spirit.
E. The Holy Spirit is God and God cannot sin.

IX. You cannot sin while under the control of the Holy Spirit. You go negative at the point of temptation and came under the control of the OSN, at which point you sin.

X. Front door to OSN control: Volition with knowledge

Back door to OSN control: Volition without knowledge, ignorace of what sin is. BOTH involves wilful sin! Why? You can't sin without the exercise of your volition (negative).

Terms: Abbreviations
(Category 580)

All or some of these abbreviations are used in this Categorical Book.

AAP	Action of the Aorist Participle
AG	Appreciation of God
AMV	Action of the main verb
AP	Aorist Participle
AS	Area of Strength (of the OSN)
AW	Area of Weakness (of the OSN)
BA	Born Again
BB	Bible Background
BC	Bottom Circle
BD	Bible Doctrine
Bel.	Believer
B/HS	Baptism of the Holy Spirit
CA	Church Age
CC	Class Condtion when used with 1, 2, 3
CC	Conjunction of Contrast
CD	Cycles of Discipline
C/HS	Control of the Holy Spirit
CL	Capacity to Love
CPT	Current Positional Truth
CU	Church Universal
CWL	Christian Way of Life
CL	Christian Life
DBRA	Death, Burial, Resurrection, Ascension
DD	Divine Discipline
D/FL	Doctrine in the Frontal Lobe
DG	Divine Good
D GUID	Divine Guidance
D/hs	Doctrine in the Human Spirit
DISP	Dispensations
DIs	Divine Institutions
DL	Details of life
DN	Divine Norm or Standards
DOAs	Divine Operating Assets
DP	Day of Pentecost
D/P	Dictator of Palestine
D/RRE	Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire
DV	Divine Viewpoint
DW	Divine Will
E Box	Essence Box
ECS	Edification Complex of the Soul
EL	Eternal Life
EPT	Experiential Positional Truth (BC)
ER	Emotional Revolt
ES	Eternal Security
EX:	Example
F/HS	Filling of the Holy Spirit

FL	Frontal Lobe
F/R	Faith-Rest
F/R	Frame of Reference (depends on context) which F/R means.
FD	False Doctrine
FW	Free Will
GC	God Consciousness
GH	Gospel Hearing
G/O	Grace Orientation
GW	Geographical Will
GWT	Great White Throne
+H	Inner Happiness
hg	Human Good
hn	Human Norm or Standard
hs	Human Spirit
HS	Holy Spirit
hr	Human Race
HU	Hypostatic Union
hv	Human Viewpoint (Sometimes HVP)
IB	Inner Beauty
I/F	In Fellowship
IH	Inner Happiness
IP	Inner Peace
IQ	Intelligence Quotient
J	Justice
JA	Jewish Age
JC	Jesus Christ
JSC	Judgment Seat of Christ
K/D	Knowledge of Doctrine
KJV	King James Version
LJC	Lord Jesus Christ
L/W	Living in the Word
LL	Left Lobe
MA	Mental Attitude
MC	Memory Center
M/DL	Mastery of the Details of Life
ML	Mosiac Law
NIO	Not in Original Manuscripts
NN	Nutshell Notes
N/SL	Norm and Standard Lobe
NT	New Testament
NV	Negative Volition
O/C	Occupation with Christ
O/F	Out of Fellowship
O/G	Orientation to Grace
OP FS	Operation Footstool
OSN	Old Sin Nature

ICE Isagogics, Categories, Exegesis.

O/S	Occupation with Self
OT	Old Testament
OW	Operational Will
PB	Physical Birth
P/DG	Production of Divine Good
PE	Perfect Environment
PH	Phase 1, 2, or 3
PLAS	Present Linear Akionsart
PL	Perceptive lobe (Left lobe)
PS	Perceptive System
PT	Positional Truth (Top Circle)
PV	Positive Volition
RAPT	Retroactive Positional Truth
+R	Absolute Righteousness (God)
-R	Relative Righteousness (Man)
RE	Roman Empire
RHF	Right Hand of the Father
RMA	Relaxed Mental Attitude
RM	Right Man
RW	Right Woman
RRE	Revived Roman Empire
RL	Right Lobe
S/C	Self-consciousness
ScTS	Scar Tissue of the Soul
SD	Spiritual Death
SG	Spiritual Gift
S IQ	Spiritual Intelligent Quotient
SMS	Slave Market of Sin
SOM	Sermon on the Mount
SOS	Song of Solomon
SOV	Sovereign
SR	Self-righteous
TC	Top Circle
TCDG	Triple Compound Divine Good
TD	Temporal Death
TSG	Temporary Spiritual Gift
UA	Unlimited Atonement
U/C	Union with Christ
UNBEL	Unbeliever
US	Unpardonable Sin
VB	Virgin Birth
VD	Ventriloquist Demon
Vol	Volition
+V	Positive Volition
VW	Viewpoint Will
WB	Weak Believer
WG	Will of God
WM	Wrong Man
WW	Wrong Woman

Terms: A Dictionary of Terms
(Category 581)

The purpose of this compilation is to define Biblical terms used in teaching categorically. An attempt has been made to avoid being complicated and technical in definitions.

1. Anthropology: The doctrine of man.
2. Angelology: The doctrine of angels.
3. Anti-Semitism: Hostility in thought or action against the Jews.
4. Believer: A Person who has received Christ as Personal Saviour.
5. Bibliology: Doctrine of the Bible.
6. Canon: The 66 books of the Bible recognized as genuine and inspired.
7. Carnality: The state of a believer controlled by the OSN.
8. Christophany: An appearance of Christ in bodily form before His incarnation.
9. Deity: The character or nature of God; Jesus Christ is undimished deity.
10. Demonology: The doctrine of demons (fallen angels).
11. Dialectic materialism: The basic doctrine of communism.
12. Dispensations: A period of time in which God specifies a way of life for believers and reveals to unbelievers through revelation and activity which He authorizes, that man is incapable of having fellowship with God.
13. Divine Essence: Characteristics or attributes of the Godhead. What God is like.
14. Doctrine: The teaching of God's Word categorically.
15. Ecclesiology: The doctrine of the Church (organized local church and also universal church as the Body of Christ.)
16. Edification Complex: The inner structure that is built in the soul as one takes in the Word through GAP.
17. Essence Box: God's attributes; Sovereign, +R, Justice, Eternal Life, Love, All knowing, powerful & present, Immutable, and Truth.
18. Expiation: The removal of the penalty of sin.
19. GAP: Grace Apparatus for Perception: The God-ordained method of taking in God's Word non-meritiously. Includes six stages; communicator, perception, storage (epignosis) frame of reference, application, ESC.

20. Emotional Revolt: When in analogy the bladder (OSN) backs up into the kidneys (the emotions) and the emotions control the dominant or right lobe. This results in wide emotional swings and misery heaped on misery.

21. Grace: What God has done and will do for man because Christ died for them. Grace is undeserved and unmerited.

22. Gnosticism: False teaching which tries to reconcile Bible doctrine, philosophy, heathenism, and Judaism. It claims all matter is evil.

23. Hamartiology: Doctrine of sin.

24. Heathenism: An area where God-consciousness or Gospel hearing has been rejected.

25. Homo sapien: Latin word for "mankind".

26. Heremeneutics: The science of Bible interpretation.

27. Humanity: The Character and Nature of man. Jesus Christ is perfect and true humanity (with no sin nature)

28. Human Spirit: The storage area in a believer that stores categories of Bible doctrine.

29. Hypostatic Union: Union of undiminished deity and true humanity in the person of Jesus Christ forever.

30. ICE: An acrostic in the first stage of GAP. The pastor-teacher must teach isagogically, categorically, and exegetically.

31. Immutable: Unchangeable

32. Impeccability: Christ was sinless on earth because He had no sin nature or imputed sin; and he had never committed any acts of personal sin.

33. Imputation: The act of God whereby He credits perfect righteousness to the believer in Christ.

34. Incarnation: God becoming flesh and taking the form of man.

35. Inspiration: God so supernaturally directed the writers of Scripture that without waiving their human intelligence, literary style, or personal feelings, or any other human factor, His complete and coherent message to man was recorded with perfect accuracy, the very words of the original Scripture bearing the authority of divine authorship.

36. Justification: The judicial act of God whereby He declared righteous the one who has believed in Christ.

37. Kenosis: Christ surrendered the independent use of His divine attributes during His incarnation without emptying Himself of His deity, and relied on the Holy Spirit while on earth.

38. Legalism: Any attempt to win God's favor by human merit or works.

39. Mystery: Information hidden in the past but now revealed to those on the inside. (believers)

40. Mediator: One who is equal with both parties of a mediation and therefore acts as a go-between.

41. Millennium: A period of 1,000 literal years when Christ will reign in person on this present earth.

42. Modus Operandi: Latin word meaning "method of operation."

43. Necromancy: An attempt to contact the dead for information.

44. Omnipotence: God's unlimited power.

45. Omnipresence: God's presence in the universe.

46. Omniscience: God is all knowing, infinite, and eternal in knowledge.

47. Pneumatology: Doctrine of the person and work of the Holy Spirit.

48. Positional Truth: Doctrine that every believer is in union with Jesus Christ or is "in Christ."

49. Progress of revelation: God's revelation of Himself to man has been gradual through time and is now completed in the Bible.

50. Propitiation: The doctrine of satisfaction or the Godward side of the cross, which satisfies the righteousness and justice of God.

51. Rapture: The rendezvous or meeting of the Church (dead and living believers) with Christ in the air.

52. Reconciliation: Removal of the sin barrier between God and man who is sinful by the work of Christ on the cross; the manward side of the cross.

53. Redemption: To be purchased out of the slave market of sin and set free.

54. Regeneration: The act of a believer receiving a new nature; to be "born-again."

55. Repentance: A complete change of mental attitude concerning JC.

56. Right Lobe: The dominant lobe of the soul including a frame of reference with memory center, a conscience with norms and standards and a viewpoint.

57. Sanctification: A state of being set apart unto God. "Saint, sanctify, and holy" are from the same Greek root.

58. Second Advent: Personal return of Jesus Christ to this earth in power and glory.

59. Soteriology: Entire saving work of God-doctrine of the plan of salvation.

60. Soul: The immaterial part of man containing self-consciousness, sub-consciousness, mentality (left and right lobe), volition, conscience and emotion. Also included is a frame of reference with memory center and a viewpoint. The old sin nature completes the picture. (This is the believer).

61. Spirituality: The state of a believer who is being controlled by the Holy Spirit.

62. Theology: The doctrine of God.

63. Theophany: A manifestation or appearance of God in bodily form before the incarnation.

64. Tribulation: A period of 7 literal years on this earth, following the Rapture and ending with the 2nd Advent.

65. Trinity: Doctrine that God is one in essence, three in personality, co-equal and co-eternal.

66. Unlimited atonement: Christ died for the sins of the entire human race.

67. Vicarious: Substitutionary; Christ died on behalf of all mankind.

68. Worldiness: A mental attitude that excludes the person of Jesus Christ.

Don't dismiss vocabulary as unimportant. Every believer needs to think, and to think he needs vocabulary. Don't be afraid of the bigger words.

Time: One Day at a Time
(Category 582)

1. God has designed Phase 2 to be lived one day at a time. Psalm 90:10.

2. The believer oriented to the grace of God regards every day alike: A gift from God. Rom. 14:5-6.

3. Every day is a gracious gift from the Lord to be redeemed for the Lord. Eph. 5:16-18. "Redeeming the time" is purchasing time, being filled with the Holy Spirit.

4. The only time we possess to glorify God on earth is the number of days in His plan for us, Phase 2. God's plan for you is NOT numbered by years, but by days. James 4:13-15

5. Phase 2 exists for:

   a. To grow to maturity: (getting an ECS).

   b. To be productive maximum: Divine good.

6. God provides the capital (grace) to make each day count for Him under the concept of more grace. James 4:6. Here are the assets, be sure to know what they are, and use them!

7. Every day is a special day in Phase 2. One day is no holier than another day. Sunday is special only in the sense of assembly worship. Gal. 4:10, Romans 14:5-6.

8. Each day the believer is to avoid the mental attitude sins which produce self-induced misery. Psalm 27:1 (Emotional revolt). Mental attitude sins come in clusters, here is a list:

Jealousy	Fear
Envy	Worry
Vindictiveness	Anxiety
Pride	Hatred
Implacability	Hostility
Guilt Complex	Antagonism

9. Each day the believer is to take in doctrine. 2 Cor. 4:6, Heb. 10:25.

10. Only in the days of time can God demonstrate His love to us in suffering. Psalm 102:1-2, Lam. 3:22-23, "It is of the Lord's mercies that we are not consumed, because His compassions fail not. They are new every morning: great is thy faithfulness.

Time: Utilization of
(Category 582)

I. The Principle of Planned Time: James 4:13-17
(Five steps in the selfish planning of time)

A. v. 13: "Today or tomorrow": The selfish believer plans his time in regard to the world he can see only. NO PLANNING IS MADE FOR DAILY BIBLE INTAKE, the inhaling of Bible Doctrine.

B. v. 13: "Such a city": He selects his own location. He goes where the climate is best, the dollar easiest to make. There is NO GEOGRAPHICAL PLANNING to be in a area where the Lord has a pastor-teacher who is teaching Bible Doctrine categorically. He actually ignores the geographical will of God.

C. v. 13: "Continue there a year": NO TIME PLANNING FACTOR, FOR SPIRITUAL ADVANCE.

1. Making money is a legitimate pursuit, but not the pursuit of your life.

2. You may have your mind crammed with your business, how you are going to spend your time in one year or two. BUT WHAT ABOUT THE WORD? SO WHAT?? They say, "It will fit in somewhere."

3. There is no concept of God's will indicated here.

D. v. 13: "buy and sell": He plans his own activities but NO PLANNING FOR CHRISTIAN SERVICE.

E. v. 13: "get gain": He plans his business to get gain for a profit--no problem here--but NO PLANNING FOR SPIRITUAL PRODUCTION IN TIME, the building of an edification structure and so on.

This believer's problem is an ignorance of Bible Doctrine. He may even substitute the phrase "Lord willing" for really knowing and believing the Word.

II. The Principle of Redeemed Time: Ephesians 5:16-18. This is the answer to planned time.

A. The Doctrine of the filling of the Holy Spirit: An understanding of spirituality. See categories on subject.

B. The result of the F/HS is "buying up the time" alloted for us to spend on this earth.

III. The Principle of Utilized Time: 1 Cor. 7:29-31. "Use" in v. 31 means to EMPLOY OR TO UTILIZE.

A. Principle No. 1: TIME IS SHORT: "Time keeps on getting shorter": The older you get the faster goes the time.

B. Principle No. 2: BEWARE THAT LEGITIMATE LIVING DOES NOT HINDER THE REDEMPTION OF TIME. 1 Cor. 7:30.

1. Sorrow
2. Happiness
3. Pursuit of Pleasure

C. Principle No. 3: DO NOT MISUSE TIME BY ABUSING TIME.

"And they that use this world, as not abusing it: for the fashion (use of time) of this world passeth away."

Fashion is used here in the sense of "time", not dress styles etc.

Crucifixion Day Time-table
(Category 583)

I. Jewish Time:

A. Jewish Day (24 hours) goes from sundown to sundown: (Approximately 6 PM to 6 PM.

B. Apparently: 6 PM to 6 AM is called "night".
6 AM to 6 PM is called "day".

1. Acts 23:23 says "third hour of the night": 9 PM
2. Acts 2:15 says "third hour of the day": 9 AM.
3. Then the 6th hour = 12 Noon; 9th hour = 3 PM, because "darkness covered" during this time, indicating that ordinarily it was light during that time.

C. Berkeley says: Because of the method of time telling used then, that the using "of the day":

1. 3rd hour: Could be any time from 6 AM to 9 AM.
2. 6th hour: Could be any time from 9 AM to 12 Noon.
3. 9th hour: Could be any time from 12 N to 3 PM.

II. Sequence: 14 April, 32 AD (Wednesday)

A. 9 AM Gentile Time: Put on the cross. (3rd hour Jewish time). Mark 15:25, "And it was the third"

B. 9 AM to 12 Noon: The HS sustained Him. John 3:34

C. 12 Noon to 3 PM: Christ bore our sins. 1 Peter 2:24. (6th to the 9th hour) Darkness covered face of the earth. Matt. 27:45, Mark 15:33, Luke 23:44, Doctrine sustained Him.

D. 3 PM: Matt. 27:46, 50; Mark 15:23, 37; Luke 23:44, 46. (about the 9th hour). "Jesus cried with a loud voice, "why hast thou forsaken me?". Forsaken for 8 hours, darkness

E. 3 PM to 6 PM: During this time His body was taken down (before sundown) so He would not remain on the cross on a Sabbath Day (1st Day of Feast of Unleavened Bread). Jo 19:31

Timetable: Jewish Feasts
(Category 584)

I. 1st Advent:

A. Passover: Christ's death. 14 April 32 AD. Wednesday.
Deut. 16:1, "month of Abib": April
Lev. 23:5, "fourteenth day"

Ex. 12:3-6; "tenth day": Take the lamb - Virgin Birth
11th, 12th, 13th days - watch it so it is without spot or blemish. Public Ministry of Jesus Christ.
14th day - kill the lamb. Death of Christ

B. Unleavened Bread: Fellowship with God in time.

One week: 15 April - 21 April.
Lev. 23:6, "on the 15th day of the same month . . . seven days . . ."

C. First Fruits: Christ's resurrection. 18 April. Sunday

Lev. 23:9-14, "on the morrow after the Sabbath . . ."
Sunday is the day after the Sabbath (Sat.)

D. Pentecost: (means 50 days) Beginning of the Church Age.

Lev. 23:15-16: 50 days after First Fruits. Sunday 6 June.

A P R I L

SUN.	MON.	TUES.	WED.	THURS.	FRIDAY	SATURDAY
		Passover				
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	Week of unleavened Bread.		

First Fruits

June 6th: Pentecost (always on a Sunday)

II. 2nd Advent:

E. Trumpets: Assembly Feast. Israel regathered. Lev. 23:23-25. 1 October. (One day Feast)

F. Atonement: Salvation of Israel - fulfillment of the four Unconditional Covenants. (Only born-again Jews).

Leviticus 23:26-32. 10 October (10 days Feast) Yom Kipper

G. Tabernacles: Millennial reign of Christ

Leviticus 23:33. 15 October - 7 days.

Timetable: Death, Burial, Resurrection
(Category 585)

Gentile Time		Jewish Time	
1 Cor. 15:3-4, "He rose again the THIRD DAY . . ."		Matthew 12:38-40, ". . . be THREE DAYS and THREE NIGHTS in the heart of the earth."	
	12 Midnight		
32 AD, 13 April TUESDAY	6 AM 12 Noon 6 PM		
	12 Midnight		
	9 AM----------3rd hour		Wednesday
WEDNESDAY 14 April	12 Noon----------6th hour 3 PM----------9th hour		
	6 PM		
		1 Day	Thursday
THURSDAY 15 April	1st Day		
	6PM		
		2 Days	Friday
FRIDAY 16 April	2nd Day		
	6PM		
		3 Days	Saturday
SATURDAY 17 April	3rd Day		
	6PM -------		
~~12 Midnight~~		He could have risen any time between 6 PM & Midnight and fulfill Scripture	
SUNDAY 18 April			Sunday

Christ rose on Sunday (by Sunday)

Matt. 28:1, Luke 24:1, John 20:1, "end of the Sabbath"

Luke 24:1, "upon the first day of the week, every early in the morning, they came . . ."

John 20:1, Mark 16:2, "the first day of the week cometh Mary Magdalene early, when it was yet dark. . ."

Tribulation: Abomination of Desolation
(Category 586)

1. (Understand the Category: Prophecy, Dual Fulfillment.) First: The abomination of desolation was the statue of Zeus Olympus in the days of Antiochus Epiphanes. Daniel 8:13. Approx. 164 BC.

2. Second: The abomination of desolation will be the statue of the Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire (D/RRE) in the Tribulation.

3. Matt. 24:15 uses the placing of the statue as a warning to the Jews to flee Jerusalem, referring to it as "the abomination of desolation spoken of by Daniel the prophet:"

4. Daniel 9:27 gives the reason for the placing of the statue in the temple: Alliance between the two dictators and protection for Palestine.

5. Daniel 11:31, tells of the placing.

   " . . . shall take away the daily sacrifice, and they shall place the abomination that maketh desolate."

6. Daniel 12:11 gives the time it will stand - 3½ years.

   "And from the time that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate set up, there shall be a thousand two hundred and ninety days."

7. The statue is the link between the 2 dictators, both of whom are demon possessed. Rev. 13:2, 11, 12. (The D/RRE and the D/P, the Dictator of Palestine.

8. The Dictator of Palestine will have power to give life unto the image. Rev. 13:15. The demon goes into the statue and the statue talks.

9. There will be death for those who do not worship the image. Rev. 13:15.

Tribulation: Angels in the Tribulation
(Category 587)

I. Angels in the Tribulation:

A. "four beasts": Rev. 4, 6, and 15:7 are living creatures: Angels - cherubim (half cherub and half seraph). Four angels that took Satan's place guarding the throne room of God. There are two Greek words for beasts:

1. Zoe: Angelic Kingdom (used here)
2. Theria: Beast or wild animal. Used for men that act like animals. The 2 dictators in Rev. 13.

B. "twenty-four elders": Angels of rank. Elder denotes rank, not age. Rev. 4:4, 5:8-12, 7:2.

C. "four angels standing on the four corners": An idiom which refers to the North, East, West, South. These are angels who are in charge of the weather.

D. Seven angels administer the seven trumpet judgments. Rev. 8:2.

E. Four special fallen angels are bound under the Euphrates River. Rev. 9:14

F. The Angelic Herald of Rev. 10.

G. The elect angels are with Michael and the fallen angels are with Satan. Rev. 12:7, 9.

H. The seven angels of judgment in Rev. 14.

I. Seven angels administer the seven vial judments. Rev. 16

J. An angel is in charge of the water to preserve the water supply. Rev. 16:5.

K. An angel calls the fowls of the supper of the Great God - a judgment supper. Rev. 19:7. Don't confuse this with the marriage supper of the lamb.

L. It is an angel that binds Satan at the end of the Tribulation, probably Michael. Rev. 20:1-2.

II. Additional Angels in the Book of Revelation:

A. Interpreting angel of Rev. 1:1.

B. Rev. 2 & 3, "angel of the church--the pastor-teacher.

C. 12 angels of the 12 gates of Jerusalem in Eternity. Rev. 21:12.

Tribulation: Anti-Christ
(Category 588)

I. In the Greek, "anti" can be translated two ways:

A. "Instead of": Passing himself off as Messiah.
B. "Against":

II. This category is concerned with "instead of" Christ.

III. In 1 John 2:18

A. "many antichrists": Those against Christ
B. "anti-Christ": Dictator of Palestine

IV. The term "anti-Christ" is used in connection with both beasts by some people.

V. Actually the 2nd Beast (Dictator of Palestine) is the anti-Christ.

VI. He comes to the Jews and will deceive them into thinking he is the Messiah. Daniel 11:37. Rev. 13:11, "like a Lamb."

VII. The Anti-Christ comes from the Tribe of Dan. Gen. 49:16-18

A. v. 16: Dan is one of the worst of all the tribes. Dan is going to rule his people in the Tribulation.

1. It was the first tribe to go into idolatry. Judges 18:30.
2. It was the last tribe to receive an inheritance in the land. Joshua 19:47-49.
3. It is mentioned last on every list that involves merit. 1 Chron. 27:22.
4. No evangelists (144,000) comes from the tribe of Dan in the Tribulation. Rev. 7.
5. It is omitted from the genealogies of 1 Chron. 2-10.
6. He counterfeits the Lord Jesus Christ.

B. v. 17: "serpent": Dictator, anti-Christ, false prophet, beast of Rev. 13. Controlled by Satan.

"horse": Refers to Israel in the Tribulation. Dan will seek to destroy the believing remnant in the Tribulation.

"rider": Jewish remnant in the Tribulation.

C. v. 18: The remnant of Israel offer this cry when Dan starts to oppress them in the Tribulation. Dan depicts apostate Israel under the anti-Christ in the Tribulation.

VIII. The Dictator of Palestine divides the land for gain, counterfeiting the Abrahamic Covenant. Dan. 11:39.

Tribulation: Anti-Semitism in the Tribulation (Category 589)

Bible Background: Rev. 12:1-5, 12:13-17.

1. Anti-Semitism means:

   a. Anti-against
   b. Semitism-Jewish people--descendents of Shem

2. The Tribulation is the greatest period of anti-Semitism the world has ever known. Rev. 12.

3. Anti-Semitism is Satanic in nature.

4. A warning against anti-Semitism is given in Genesis 12:1-3.

5. Anti-Semitism before the Cross:

   a. On the true humanity of the lineage of Jesus Christ.

      The line of Messiah was Jewish and Jews have always been under attack. Mary, in the family of David, tribe of Judah for example.

   b. Attempt to destroy Jesus Christ at birth and up to the cross. Rev. 12:3-4.

   c. On Israel, as a race, by Satan.

6. Anti-Semitism after the cross:

   Satan seeks to destroy all Jews so that the four unconditional covenants cannot be fulfilled at the 2nd Advent.

   Anti-Semitisim comes from some strange sources. There is a breed of conservative that is anti-Jew. He blames all the world's troubles on a Jewish conspiracy. There are conspiracies, alright, but it involves more than the Jews. Anti-Jew thinking can bring discipline on your church. Avoid this thought like the plague.

7. In spite of Satanic attempts, Israel will continue to exist in the world.

   a. Israel existed IN the land. RESTORATION
   b. Israel exists OUT of the land. 5th Cycle of Discipline.

8. In the middle of the Tribulation when Satan is cast out of heaven (2nd Fall - confined to the earth) he increases his persecution (using military strength) of Israel, causing her to flee. Rev. 12:15.

9. God's protection for Israel in the Tribulation will be in the form of disturbances on earth, which prevent their following the fleeing Israel. Probably the 4th and 6th Vials.

10. Satan's anger with Israel is the background for Armageddon. Rev. 12:17.

Tribulation: Armageddon Campaign, Divine Activity
(Category 590)

1. See Category: Armageddon Prologue: Human Activity (Trib.)
   See Category: Armageddon Prologue: Demon Activity (Trib.)

2. There will be four battles in his Campaign, but the culmination of the fighting will be done in the valley of Esdraelon before the hills of Megiddo. The boundaries form a natural valley of approximately 176 by 50 miles. Rev. 14:20. Napoleon said, "All the armies of the world could maneuver in battle here."

3. Three of the battles are:

   a. The Battle of Jehoshaphat
   b. The Battle of Idumaea
   c. The Battle of Esdraelon

4. Apparently the Angels of Judgment are responsible for killing off some of these armies before the Lord Jesus Christ returns. Rev. 14:14-20.

5. The 4th battle is the Seige of Jerusalem, which is terminated by the 2nd Advent of Jesus Christ. Zech. 12 & 14. Rev. 19:11-21.

6. The armies that come with the Lord Jesus Christ do not fight. Rev. 19:14, "white and clean."

7. The Lord Jesus Christ slays with His mouth these nations at Armageddon. He alone will do the fighting. Rev. 19:13, 21.

8. The great alaughter is described in Rev. 14:20, Ezek. 39:12, Zech. 14:3, Isa. 24:2, 6.

9. Many passages of Scripture hint that Christ will destroy by means of "Atomic Fisson or Disintegration." Isaiah 24:19-20, 34:4, 9: Also Ezek. 38:19-22, Matt. 24:21, 29, Rev. 18:8.

10. The supper of the Great God in Rev. 19:17-18 is the feast of the fowls of the air upon the dead bodies from Armageddon.

Tribulation: Armageddon Prologue: Demon Activity

Bible Background: Rev. 16:13-16. (Category 591)

1. Satan is behind the activity in the Tribulation, also see the next consecutive category, human activity.

2. The background for Armageddon is anti-Semitism. Rev. 12:17, Satan's anger with Israel.

3. There are three sources trying to get rid of the Jews:

   a. Satan

   b. The Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire

   c. The Dictator of Palestine

4. These 2 dictators are controlled by Satan and are indwelt by demons. Rev. 13:2, 11, 12.

5. Demons are sent ("out of the mouth") by Satan, D/RRE, the Dictator of Palestine (False Prophet) to gather them to battle.

6. The responsibility of these demons is to persuade the rulers to follow Satanic policies.

7. This gathering of the nations in the land is the basis for the destruction of these armies at Armageddon.

8. These demons enable these dictators to work miracles to impress people. The less people think, the more they are impressed by what they do not understand.

9. Prophecy of Armageddon. Rev. 17:4.

Tribulation: Armageddon Prologue: Human Activity
(Category 592)

I. The Scripture primarily to be studied is Daniel 11:36-45.

II. The KING OF THE NORTH wants to get to Africa because of the "treasures of gold and of silver . . . precious things of Egypt. . ." Daniel 11:43.

III. The KING OF THE NORTH will choose two routes to Africa:

A. The FLEET will take the WATER ROUTE through to Africa:

B. The LAND ROUTE will go across the Western end of Turkey into Syria, into Israel. Dan. 11:40.

IV. The KING OF THE NORTH will organize two attacks:

A. Strategical penetration toward the heart of Africa.

B. Strategical envelopment along the Mediterranean coast of Africa. He will conquer everything from the Black Sea to Northern Africa.

V. The KING OF THE NORTH chooses the time of the 5th Vial (when darkness covers the RRE) for his activities.

VI. In Daniel 11:44 the Revived Roman Empire challenged the North fleet, probably at Haifa - to cut off their supply line.

A. "Tidings out of the North": To the north of the King of the North at this time.

B. "Tidings out of the East": Could be either the Arabs or the Kings of the East that are coming into Palestine. (which could be to his East at that time).

VII. The KINGS OF THE EAST have moved into Palestine (Edom) Rev. 16: 12. The Euphrates River is dried up to prepare the way. Vial #6.

VIII. The KING OF THE SOUTH attacks Israel simultaneously with the King of the North's initial attack. Dan. 11:40

IX. The KING OF THE WEST will move into the valley of Esdraelon (which is called Armageddon) to stop the King of the North who is coming up from Africa. He does this as a part of the Alliance made with the Dictator of Palestine. This is after the 5th Vial judgment is over.

X. This makes THREE TROOP CONCENTRATIONS:

A. The Valley of Jehoshaphat (near Jerusalem) Arabs from the South and King of the North from Africa.

B. Idumaea: The Kings of the East

C. Esdraelon: (Armageddon): King of the West.

Tribulation: Armageddon Prologue, Human Activity
Bible Background: Daniel 11:36-45
(Category 593)

Daniel 11:

1. v. 36:

"the king": Jewish Dictator
"marvelous things": Fantastic things
"exalt . . . magnify . . . god": Anti-Christ.
"God of gods": The Lord Jesus Christ
"indignation": Tribulation (Hebrew says)
"for that . . . done": Will run its course

2. v. 37:

"God of his fathers": Jesus Christ
Dictator is a Jew.
Jesus Christ is the founder of the Jewish race.
Jesus Christ is the root and the branch.
As the root He founded the Jewish race.
As the branch He is the son of David who will deliver them and rule.
"the desire of women": He will not be influenced by women. He is not going to play Anthony to someone's Cleopatra.
"nor regard any god": He doesn't believe in any god, including the statue in the Holy of Holies.
"magnify himself above all": Ego doesn't allow room for any other to share his glory.

3. v. 38:

"in his estate": The treaty that he makes with Rome in the middle of the Tribulation.

"god of forces": Dictator of the Revived Roman
"a god whom his fathers knew not": The image of the Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire.

"pleasant things": Economic considerations

4. v. 39

"most strong holds": With his fortification system.
"strange god": The abomination of desolation - the image

"whom he shall acknowledge and increase with glory": Those who helped him (Dictator of Palestine) shall he reward. He has his henchmen.

"divide the land for gain": Land: Israeli. The Jewish Dictator causes the Roman Dictator to be honored.

5. v. 40:

"time of the end": The end of the Tribulation

"King of the South": Arabs (Pan Arabic Bloc)
"push": Make war
"at him": Dictator of Palestine
"king of the North": The Soviet Bloc

"shall come": Russia will come thru on way to North Africa
"against him": The Dictator of Palestine
"with chariots and with horsemen": Armoured forces today.

"with many ships": Navy

"he": The King of the North
"shall overflow": Conquer
"and pass over": Rapid conquest - successful
"the countries": Western Turkey, Syria, Palestine

6. v. 41:

"he": King of the North
"glorious land": Palestine
"many countries": Came by way of Turkey, Syria
"these shall escape": Those who flee in Mid-Tribulation (believers) are going to be saved.

7. v. 42:

"he": King of the North
"the countries": He came by way of Turkey, Syria
"Egypt": His objective

8. v. 43:

"he": King of the North
"Libyians": At this time of writing this country was west of Egypt, showing a westerly advance along the Mediterranean shore of North Africa.
"at his steps": The table of conquest.

9. v. 44: The King of the North has broken out with his fleet for the first time in the Mediterranean.
"tidings out of the East": Pan Oriental block.
"out of the north": Revived Roman Empire
Rome has had a black-out, the 5th Vial Judgment. As soon as there is any daylight Rome goes into operation, challenges and knocks out the King of the North's fleet in a naval battle.

"trouble him": King of the North "therefore he": King of North
"make away many": The many Jews.

10. v. 45

"he": King of the North
"tabernacles of his palace": Palacial tents - his command posts.
"between the seas": The Mediterranean and Dead Seas.
"glorious holy mountain": Mt. Zion
"he shall come to his end . . . him." Zech. 14:1-4

Tribulation: First Beast - D/RRE
(Category 594)

Biblical Background: Rev. 13:1-10:

I. He is a Gentile: Rev. 13:1, "out of the sea": Gentile nations

II. Politically, he is dictator of the Revived Roman Empire (D/RRE), the King of the West.

III. Religiously, he is head of the World Council of Churches, the ecumenical religion of the Tribulation.

IV. He is under the direct jurisdiction of Satan. v. 2

V. He is demon possessed. Rev. 16:13. He performs miracles, etc. Rev. 9:11, 11:7, 17:6.

VI. He is called a beast because he is demon possessed. In his thought pattern and modus operandi, he is like a wild animal. There are two Greek words for beast:

A. Therion: Beast or wild animal. Used for these dictators because they act like wild animals.

B. Zoon: Used for the angelic kingdom

VII. The demon who indwells, motivates and empowers this dictator is one of the highest of all fallen angels. Rev. 9:11, "Apollyon" = Greek name. "Abaddon" = the Hebrew name. He is the angel in command of fallen angels in the bottomless pit.

VIII. This Dictator has many names:

A. "beast out of the sea": Rev. 13:1

B. "rider of the white horse": Rev. 6:2

C. "beast with 7 heads, 10 horns": Rev. 17:8-13

D. "little horn": Daniel 7:8

E. "king of fierce countenance": Daniel 8:23

F. "prince that shall come": Daniel 9:26

G. "man of sin": 2 Thess. 2:3-10

H. His empire is the "feet of the image": Daniel 2

IX. 2 Thess. 2 couplied with Rev. 13:1-10 gives us a picture of a very brillant person; a man who creates a marvelous public relations image; who is humanly very attractive, even as Satan himself.

X. The world will be astounded at his fantastic rise to power. Rev. 13:3.

Tribulation: Second Beast - Palestine Dictator
Rev. 13:11-18 (False Prophet)
(Category 595)

I. He is a Jew. 13:11, "out of the earth" refers to Palestine. Also Daniel 11:37, "God of his fathers".

II. Politically, he is the ruler of Palestine in the Tribulation.

III. Religiously, he passes himself as the promised Messiah, therefore is the religious leader of Neo-Judaism in the Tribulation. v. 11, "like a lamb" is the analogy. In Daniel 11:36-38, "shall magnify himself above all."

A. He sets himself up as the Saviour. Dan. 11:36
B. He divides the land for gain. Dan. 11:39
C. In this way he makes himself "anti-Christ", instead of Christ--and against Christ.

IV. He is also under the jurisdiction of Satan.

A. Rev. 13:2, "dragon gave him his power": 1st beast
B. Rev. 13:11, "another beast": Another of the same kind.

V. He is demon possessed. Rev. 16:13. Rev. 13:11 says, "he spake as a dragon."

VI. He is called a beast because he has uncontrolled rule over many people.

VII. He performs miracles, etc. Rev. 13:13.

VIII. He has many names:

A. The "beast out of the earth": Out of the land - Palestine. Rev. 13:11.

B. "the false prophet": Rev. 16:13, 19:20, 20:10.

C. "wilful king of Daniel": Daniel 11:36-40

D. "Dan the serpent": Gen. 49:16-18, from the tribe of Dan and is the serpent that strikes the horses' heal.

E. Sometimes called the anti-Christ.

IX. His rise to power is co-terminous with that of the first beast. D/RRE.

X. He controls Palestine and establishes Neo-Judaism.

XI. He seeks an alliance at the middle of the Tribulation and allies himself with D/RRE because he needs help.

XII. The Dictator of Palestine causes the Mark of the Beast to be accepted in Palestine causing the loss of freedom. Rev. 13:16-17.

Tribulation: Daniel's 70th Week
Daniel 9:24-27
(Category 596)

1. God never reckons time with Israel when they are out of their own land, or out of Divine order. (5th Cycle of Discipline).

2. Daniel 9:24-27 speaks of 70 weeks in God's program for Israel.

   a. One week equals seven years. "Weeks" as used in this passage is a Hebrew word for "sevens". 70 weeks are literally 70 7's, or 490 years.

   b. Check out Numbers 14:34, Ezekiel 4:6b.

3. This period of 70 weeks is divided into 3 sections: Dan. 9:25

   a. 7 weeks (7x7=49 years (troublous times). This is the period of time that Artaxerxes (445 BC) issued the decree to restore and rebuild the city of Jerusalem in Nehemiah 2:1-8 until the walls were actually completed.

   b. 62 weeks (three-score and two weeks) x 7 = 434 years. The time from rebuilding the walls until the cross. 30 AD.

   c. 1 week x 7 (v. 27) = 7 years. (Tribulation)

   "a" and "b" make a total of 483 years, but in Daniel 9:24-27 they are promised 490 years. The 483 years cut off at the cross--the last seven years are picked up after the Church Age Rapture. The Tribulation is Daniel's 70th age of Israel. THESE ARE LUNAR YEARS, of 360 days.

Tribulation: Daniel 9:24-27 = Exegesis
(Category 597)

I. Daniel 9:24

"seventy weeks": Seventy sevens or 70 x 7 = 490 years.

"are determined": Are set aside. God is giving them another 490 years this side of the Babylonian captivity. The Babylonian captivity is the discipline Israel received because they did not observe their Sabbattical years. In the 490 year period BEFORE the Babylonian captivity they refused to rest every 7th year, so they received 70 years in captivity for the 70 they did not observe. (5th Cycle of Discipline, Israel out of the land). Leviticus 26.

"upon thy people": Israel
"upon thy holy city": Jerusalem

Six things to be accomplished in the 490 years: (All concluded by the end of the Jewish age, 2nd Advent.)

A. "to finish the transgression": Since the 2nd Advent is the termination of the 5th Cycle of Discipline, it results in the removal of the sins which lead to the 5th Cycle of Discipline. From the 2nd Advent on, the Jews are never under the 5th Cycle. (Leviticus 26:27-39.)

B. "to make an end of sins": The baptism of fire for the Jews.

C. "to make reconciliation for iniquity": Regathering of the Jews at the 2nd Advent.

D. "to bring in everlasting righteousness": The 2nd Advent will bring in all the regenerate. There will be the resurrecting of OT and Tribulational Saints. Daniel 12:1-3. "to seal up the vision and prophecy": Termination of Jewish age at the 2nd Adv.

E. "to anoint the most Holy": This refers to the Holy of Holies. Jesus Christ will dedicate the millennial temple personally. The last half of Ezekiel describes this dedication and the millennial operation of the temple when Christ comes back to reign.

II. Daniel 9:25:

"Know therefore": In view of this
"commandment": The Commandment of Nehemiah 2:1-8
"to restore and to build Jerusalem": Issued in 445 BC by Artaxerxes.

"unto Messiah the Prince": Jesus Christ
"shall be seven weeks, three score and two weeks":

7 weeks x 7 = 49 years
62 weeks x 7 = 434 years
69 weeks x 7 = 483 years

"troublous times": The first 49 years. Read Nehemiah and note the opposition of these times. Nehemiah 2-6.

III. Daniel 9:26

"And after three score and two weeks": 434 years + the 49 years of troublous times, making a total of 483 years . . .

"shall Messiah be cut off": The death of the Lord Jesus Christ. The 483 years of the prophesy goes right up to the death of the Lord Jesus Christ, the cross.

"but not for Himself": He is dying for each of us.

"people of the prince": The Romans
"prince that shall come": A Roman

"shall destroy the city and the sanctuary": The destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD.

"the end therefore shall be with a flood": (of people) Note use of the term "flood" in Rev. 12:15, where Israel is being besieged by Satan with huge armies. In the Old Testament, Assyria is pictured as an overflowing scourge as it comes into Palestine--that is--the flooding of Palestine is a picture of the Assyrian army as it conquers everything before it.

A. So "flood" is used of Israel being conquered by the Assyrians, Isaiah 28:2.

B. "with a flood": Refers to the conquering of Jerusalem in 70 AD.

C. Rev. 12:15 refers to the conquering (attempted) of Jerusalem during the Tribulation.

"unto the end": The end of the Jewish age.

"desolations are determined": Until the end (2nd Advent) war and desolations will be the order of the day. Matt. 24.

IV. Daniel 9:27

"He": The Dictator of Palestine

"the covenant": Sacrifices in unbelief

"with many": With the Jews

"for one week": 7 years of Tribulation

"in the midst of the week": The middle of the Tribulation.

"he shall cause": The Dictator of Palestine

"the sacrifice and oblation to cease": No more sacrifices are offered in the temple because the Dictator of Palestine is going to set up the statue in the temple.

"for the overspreading of abominations": Protection from the Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire because of an alliance.

"he shall make it desolate": The Dictator of Palestine stops sacrifices.

"even until the consummation": The end of the Tribulation.
"and that": What is "determined"
"shall be poured upon the desolate": Desolater. The Jewish Dictator shall receive his just end from God.

Tribulation: Deliverance for Believers in Tribulation
(Category 598)

1. All Church Age believers go up in the rapture before the Tribulation begins.

2. People will be born again in the Tribulation. Church Age believers are gone but the Bible remains. Hebrews 4:12, "For the World of God is alive and powerful . . ."

3. "For the elect's (believers) sake those days (Tribulation) shall be shortened." Matt. 24:22, Mark 13:20. Time is shortened by Matt. 24:22, Mark 13:20. Time is shortened by deliverance in each case.

4. There is deliverance for believers from the judgments in the Tribulation:

   a. Those judgments are upon unbelievers for the purpose of bringing them to Christ.

   b. The judgments are the wrath of God, (Rev. 7:17) and believers are not subject to the wrath of God.

5. Daniel 12:1, " . . . and there will be a time of trouble (Tribulation) such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time (Trib.) thy people (Jews) shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book". (believing Jews).

6. There will be deliverance for Jewish believers in the first place when in the middle of the Tribulation the statute is set up. Fleeing to Edom, Moab and Ammon will keep them safe. Rev. 12:6, 14, Matt. 24:15-31, Daniel 11.

7. There will be deliverance for believers right before the 2nd Advent by staying and fighting. Rev. 14:19-20, Zech. 14:2.

8. Deliverance for some Tribulation believers will be death. Rev. 14:13.

Tribulation: Evangelists - 144,000
(Category 599)

1. These Tribulational Evangelists are Jews. Rev. 7:4.

2. The Age of Israel was interrupted by the Age of the Church. Tribulation completes the age of Israel.

3. In the Age of the Jews, Israel was only custodian of Divine Revelation but was responsible for its dissemination. They utterly failed.

4. Now the Jews have another chance. They will do more evangelizing in the Tribulation than they did all of the 483 years previously. Their converts will be Gentiles.

5. Under the 5th Cycle of Discipline, these Jews are scattered and will evangelize in Gentile languages.

6. Their ministry will be world wide. Rev. 7:9.

7. They will be saved immediately after the rapture. Rev. 14:4.

8. The description of the 144000 is given in Rev. 7:5-8.

   a. Judah is mentioned first: The ruling tribe.
   b. Reuben should have been mentioned first - first born.
   c. He lost the rulership to Judah
   d. He lost the priesthood to Levi
   e. He lost the double portion to Joseph
   f. Dan was omitted because it was the tribe of idolatry.
   g. Joseph, the father, is named with Manasseh, the son, as the double portion tribe, although it actually refers to the Tribe of Ephraim (who could not be mentioned because this tribe led in revolt against Judah.)

9. These tribes will be the GREATEST of evangelists:

   a. They consistently use rebound. Rev. 14:5
   b. They live under the law of supreme sacrifice - celibacy - male or female.
   c. They work together as a team.

10. They were sealed: Rev. 7:3-4

   a. Perservation: They will live thru the entire Tribulation.
   b. Protection: From the events of Rev. 6
   c. Guarantee: Validity of the message is guaranteed. The salvation of the converts is guaranteed.

11. The results of their evangelism are the converts found in Rev. 7:9-14.

Tribulation: Evangelism in the Tribulation (Category 600)

1. Salvation is always the same in any Dispensation - faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. Romans 1:1-5.

2. Opportunity of grace exists in the Tribulation. Rev. 14:1-7

3. Tribulation is the most religious period of all history.

4. The Tribulation also has the greatest period of evangelism in human history. No national entity is omitted.

5. There is always a struggle between religion and regeneration. It has two facts:

   a. The Unseen struggle between demons and elect angels.
   b. Visible struggle on earth between the forces of religion under Satan and the forces of regeneration under the Lord Jesus Christ.

6. Evangelism is maximum dissemination of the Gospel.

7. The Earth is evangelized four ways in the Tribulation (grace approach).

   a. The Ministry of the 144,000 Jews. Rev. 7:1-8, 14:1-5.
   b. The Converts of the 144,000. Rev. 7:9-14, 6:9, 12:11.
   c. The two witnesses in Jerusalem. Rev. 11:1-14
   d. Angels evangelize the entire world just prior to the 2nd Advent (probably take on human form). It happens only once in all of world history. Rev. 14:6-7

8. PRINCIPLE: Grace always precedes judgment. The catastrophe described in Rev. 6 will take place only after the 144,000 Jews evangelize the earth.

9. We have evangelism by disaster (Vial Judgment - Rev. 16) as a final thrust to awaken the religious person to his need of Jesus Christ as Saviour.

10. This maximum pressure is bona fide evangelism, providing it does not tamper with human volition.

11. There are two categories of evangelism: Love (grace) and fear.

12. There are four categories of people in the Tribulation:

    a. Believers: Those who follow instruction and escape judgment. Some get on the fringe of judgment because they get involved in ecclesiastical religion.

    b. Unbelievers: Some make final negative decision, receive the Mark of the Beast, are recipients of judgments. Some who have not received the Mark of the Beast, so they are being evangelizee by the judgments.

Tribulation: General Outline of Judgments
(Category 601)

This category is an overall general view of the judgments, without details, to be used to preview the judgments before giving the details of each. Check the following: "Seven Seals", "Trumpet Judgments", and "Vial Judgments".

Seals:
1. White Horse
2. Red Horse
3. Black Horse
4. Pale Horse

} First Half

5.
6. ---------- Second Half

7. Out of this seal comes: Trumpet Judgments

Trumpet Judgments

1.
2.
3.
4.
} First Half (uses nature)

5. 1st Woe----------> (Invasion)
6. 2nd Woe----------> (Invasion)
3rd Woe----------> (Announcement of the 2nd Advent)

Seven Angels of Judgment (See Category on this)

Vial Judgments: All seven during the last half of the Tribulation.

1. These are against religion and adherents. It is
2. the answer to prayers of martyred believers.
3.

4.
5.
6.
7.
} Within the last two months.

Tribulation: Identity of the Two Witnesses-Rev. 11
(Category 602)

I. Why One of the Witnesses is NOT ENOCH:

A. Probably the most often expressed guess with regard to the identity of the two witnesses is:

1. Enoch: Translation of Enoch was one of the 3 signs of the flood.

a. Noah preached 120 years.
b. Methuselah would die.
c. Enoch would go up.

2. Elijah: Went up without death.

B. Enoch is a Gentile: The Tribulation is the end of the Jewish Age. The King who is returning is the son of David, a Jewish King. A Jewish King has Jewish Heralds.

1. 1st Advent: John the Baptist was a Jew.
2. 2nd Advent: Elijah and Moses are Jews.

C. In the Jewish Age, the Jews are responsible for dissemination of the Gospel. The two witnesses are evangelists (called prophets) and will be Jews. Enoch is a Gentile.

II. Why These Two Witnesses are Moses and Elijah:

A. Moses and Elijah are the two heralds of the 2nd Advent.

B. Jesus revealed the names of the two heralds (witnesses). Matt. 16:28 - 17:3.

C. On the Mount of Transfiguration you have a picture of the 2nd Advent. Jesus Christ is transformed as He will appear at the 2nd Advent and His 2 heralds are there: Moses and Elijah.

D. John (who took Elijah's place) was Herald at the 1st Advent. Matt. 17:10 - 13.

E. John is not Elijah and said so. John 12:21

F. Luke 1:16-17 points out that John, as a herald, has the same spirit and power as Elijah.

G. In Matt. 11:12-14 this Elias is said to be John the Baptist.

H. Malachi 4:5-6 says Elijah will be the herald of the 2nd Advent.

I. The two witness had power to:

A. Cause drought: As did Elijah.
B. Turn water into blood: As Moses did.
C. Send plagues: As did Moses.

Tribulation: Internationalism in the Tribulation
(Category 603)

1. Internationalism is the governing of more than one nation under on head.

2. When Satan finds he needs a new religion somewhere, to counter the truth, he starts one compatible with the culture of that area.

3. Some of his religions are international in nature and some are local.

4. The Tribulation will be the greatest period of internationalism that the world has ever known.

5. There are two types of internationalism in the Tribulation.

   a. Religious: Romanism, World Council of Churches
   b. Political: The United Nations, Communism.

6. Babylon represents religious internationalism (the Revived Roman Empire and its religious system) in the Tribulation.

7. Any international religious organization is under demon influence (Mohammedanism, Muslims, Black Muslims, Oriental religions of the East and so on).

8. A bona fide internationalism (a theocracy) comes into existence when the return of Christ to the earth (He rules personally) but there are still nations operative. Rev. 20:4-22:2.

Tribulation: Introduction to the Two Sets of Witnesses
(Category 604)

1. In Rev. 11:1-14 we have the Lord's 2 witnesses.
In Rev. 13 we have the devil's two witnesses.

2. The Lord's 2 witnesses are Heralds of the 2nd Advent.
The Devil's 2 witnesses are Heralds of the 2nd Fall of Satan.

3. The setting for the Lord's two witnesses is the restoration of the Jewish temple in Jerusalem, which will be restored in unbelief. Because religion will infiltrate and distort the concept, it will be impossible for the truth to be taught in that temple, therefore it will be necessary for the two witnesses to speak.

4. The two recorded areas of evangelism in the Tribulation are Israel and Western Europe. There are others but these are the two specifically indicated.

5. Therefore in these two areas of evangelism the devil has special emissaries:

   a. One from Israel: The Dictator of Palestine
   b. One from Western Europe: The Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire.

   Each one is a political and religious dictator.

6. The Beast out of the sea (1st Beast) is the Dictator of the Revived Romand Empire.

7. The Beast out of the land (2nd beast) is the dictator of Palestine.

Tribulation: Israel's Flight in Mid-Trib.: Matthew 24:13-20, Rev. 12
(Category 605)

Matthew 24:

1. v. 13: "shall endure": Stay alive
"unto the end": End of the Tribulation
"shall be saved": Delivered, physically by the 2nd Advent of Jesus Christ.

2. v. 14: "this gospel of the kingdom": Same Gospel as we have.
"unto all nations": Gentiles. Evangelism is world-wide.
"end come": The end of grace (Trib.) 2nd Advent.

3. v. 15: "SOME ADVICE TO BELIEVING JEWS IN JUDEA."

"when": The middle of the Tribulation
"ye": Believing Jews in the Tribulation
"abomination of desolation": The statue of the Roman Dictator.
"holy place": The temple. This is part of the alliance between the Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire and the Jewish Dictator. The signal for them to flee.
"whoso readeth, let him understand": You cannot apply what you do not know. Those who stayed behind were killed.

4. v. 16: "then": SIGNAL--GO!
"flee into the mountains": Edom, Moab, and Ammon

5. v. 17: "housetop": Gardens were on the roof then.

6. v. 18: Agricultural economy. Today: Shop, office, etc.

7. v. 19: Hard to travel under these conditions.

8. v. 20: "winter": More difficult to survive and to get into the hill country in winter.
"sabbath day": Congested traffic

9. v. 21: "great tribulation": The last half of the Tribulation.

10. v. 22: "elect's sake": Jewish believer. Once Satan is cast out of heaven so he cannot return, so he is going to take out all his wrath on the Jews.

11. v. 23: They will try to deceive the believers in the mountains, no doubt using sound trucks etc., saying, "Christ is here, there, etc . . ." DON'T BELIEVE IT TRIBULATIONAL Saints.

12. v. 24: "signs and wonders": Satanic tongues, healing, etc.
"very elect": Believers up in the mountains, they need discernment.

13. v. 25-26: At the 2nd Advent, "every eye shall see Him."

Tribulation: Length of the Tribulation (Category 606)

1. Rev. 11:2, "But the court which is without the temple leave out, and measure it not: for it is given unto the Gentiles: and the holy city shall they tread under foot forty and two months."

2. For 3½ years the Gentiles will control Jerusalem. They were to leave out the court because this was the place where the Gentiles were permitted to come when Jesus Was on earth. Why they are in control this isn't necessary.

3. At mid-point a statue of the Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire (which is the abomination of desolation spoken of in Daniel) is set up in the temple.

   The temple worship is discontinued and worship of this image is started. Matt. 24:15; Daniel 9:27.

4. It takes the D/RRE 3½ years to establish himself in Rome, and then he continues another 3½ years. Rev. 13:5, " . . . and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months": 3½ years.

5. This establishes 7 years:

   a. 3½ years: The Jewish temple is under the control of the Gentiles in Jerusalem.

   b. 3½ years: When the statue of the D/RRE is set up and is worshipped.

      The two Jewish witnesses witnessed outside the temple because it was apostate.

6. Daniel 9:27 confirms the 7 years:

   "And he (Dictator of Palestine) shall confirm the covenant (sacrifices, etc.) with many (the Jews) for one week (7 years); and in the midst of the week (7 years of Tribulation) he (Dictator of Palestine) shall cause the sacrifice and oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations (alliance) he (Dictator of Palestine) shall make it desolate, even until the consummation (end of the Tribulation). . ."

Tribulation: Lord's Two Witnesses--Human Heralds of 2nd Advent
(Category 607)

Bible Background: Revelation 11:1-4:

1. The 2 WITNESSES are not specified by name due to the PRINCIPLE: It is not the man but the message.

2. Their identity: Moses and Elijah

3. They were indwelt with the Holy Spirit during their ministry. v. 4, "two olive trees."

4. They had a testimony because of the F/HS, v. 4, "two candlesticks."

5. They were protected by God until their mission was finished. v. 5

6. They had power to: v. 6

   a. Cause drought: Elijah
   b. Turn water to blood: Moses
   c. Send plagues: Moses

7. God permitted their death when their job was finished.

8. Their bodies lay in the streets of Jerusalem for 3½ days, with wide TV coverage.

9. Unbelievers are happy to get rid of the two witnesses and they celebrate - the DEVIL'S Xmas - send gifts. v. 10.

10. The soul and the spirit comes back into the bodies of the two witnesses and they walk around long enough to establish their resurrection and to shock those rejoicing over their death. v. 11.

11. When the witnesses ascend up into heaven, the city of Jerusalem will be judged with some fantastic judgments. v. 12, 13.

12. Within 10 days the 2nd Advent takes place. v. 14.

Tribulation: Mark of the Beast
(Category 608)

Bible Background: Rev. 13:16-18

1. The mark of the beast is some sort of identification card. (The word "mark" (charagma) is the Greek word for the Latin word describing a Roman recruit passing basic training.)

2. This mark identifies you as a member of the Ecumenical Religious System of the Tribulation.

3. This mark is an ID which is necessary for an individual to conduct social or business activity for survival (buying food, engaging in business, or being socially accepted). It sets up a monopoly for religion.

4. Those who do not possess this mark (ID Card) will be starved and ostracized; and finally tortured, imprisoned and executed.

5. To receive this mark (ID card) one must worship the beast - 1st Dictator. (In Palestine, it is the image in the Temple.)

6. This ID Card will be necessary throughout any area where the Roman Empire's Ecumenical Religion is accepted - the 10 nation confederation in the Tribulation.

7. There are three ways in which one can qualify under this system: Rev. 13:17-18

   a. "mark": ID Card

   b. "name of the beast": The special type of card carried by the clergy or priesthood of Satan.

   c. "number of his name": Apparently there is a number type of identification, equivalent to some kind of ration book, or like a modern day Credit Card--qualifier.

8. The Number "666".

   a. Six is the number of man.
   b. Three is the number of God.

   Three sixes simply indicates man being deified.

9. Apparently anyone receiving the Mark of the Beast has made his choice and it is irrevocable-the same as dying. Rev. 13:8

Tribulation: Martyred Believers
(Category 609)

I. Who are the Martyrs?

A. The Jewish Tribulational believers will be martyred because:

1. Of their testimony. Rev. 12:11, Matt. 24:9

2. Because they fail to follow instructions: All Jews are told to flee in the middle of the Tribulation to the mountains. Matt. 24:13-27.

B. Gentile believers (converts of the 144,000, Rev. 7:9) will be martyred and will be found in heaven where they shall "neither hunger, thirst, etc." Rev. 7:16. Bible background is Rev. 7:9, 14-17.

C. Two Witnesses: Moses and Elijah in Rev. 11:7-9

II. The Prayers of the Martyred Believers:

A. The souls of the martyred believers are under the altar in heaven where they cry out for judgment. Rev. 6:9-11

B. Their last act of Faith-Rest: The imprecatory prayers (prayers of revenge) in which dying believers in the Tribulation are going to turn over to the Lord matters of vengeance. Rev. 6:10, 8:3-5. They are praying according to God's will. Rom. 12:19, "vengeance is mine saith the Lord."

C. These believers perpetuate the FR technique to the maximum. Rev. 14:12-13, "patience of the saints".

D. They will have great impact for Christ in this dying period. They will die under the principle of dying grace, knowing that the Lord will handle the situation. Rev. 13:10b.

E. They put their problems in the Lord's hands, using:

1. Psalm 55:22, "Cast thy burden upon the Lord . . ."
2. 1 Peter 5:7, "Casting all your care upon Him . . ."

III. The Victory of Believers in the Tribulation before Martyrdom. (Not all believers, are, of course, martyred in the Tribulation.)

They have four areas of victory: Rev. 15:2

A. "over the beast": THE PRESSURE OF PERSONALITY.

The dictator of the Revived Roman Empire has a very scintillating personality, like his master - Satan. They have this victory because of Bible Doctrine.

B. "over his image": OVER RELIGIOUS PRESSURE

Wherever the ecumenical religious system of the Tribulation exists, there will be a statue of this dictator. These believers realize that ritual without reality is meaningless. Man, by the way, is ATTRACTED to ritual.

C. "over his mark": Economic pressure.

D. "over the number of his name": Public opinion pressure. The concept of the public image.

IV. Retribution:

A. No one ever enslaves a child of God, or kills a child of God without God taking care of the matter. Rev. 13:10a.

B. RELIGIOUS PEOPLE (Rev. 16:2) are responsible for shedding the blood of Tribulational believers. Rev. 16:6, cf. v. 2. The Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire is mentioned specifically. Rev. 13:7. The Vial Judgments are against religion and its adherents because of Rev. 13:6.

C. The 6th Trumpet Judgment is specifically against those who killed believers in the Tribulation. Rev. 9:13-21, sixth trumpet. Vial judgments are against religion and those who adhere to it.

V. Victory in Eternity:

A. The Victory song is sung in Eternity: Rev. 15:3-4

B. The Martyred believers get a resurrection body at the 2nd Advent and reign with Jesus Christ 1,000 years. Rev. 20:4

Tribulation: Panorama of the Tribulation (Category 610)

I. General Introduction: Panorama

A. First Half:

1. The Church is gone.
2. Bibles stay, resulting in the salvation of the 144,000 Evangelists.
3. The 144,000 Jewish Evangelists have converts among the Gentiles.
4. Judaism is revived in Palestine.
5. The Temple is constructed in unbelief
6. The first 4 Trumpet judgments occur (general judgments)
7. 2 Beasts (Dictators) become evident.

B. Middle of the Tribulation:

1. Satan is cast out of heaven.
2. Anti-Semitism increases
3. An alliance is made between the 2 dictators and--
4. A statue is set up in the temple in Jerusalem.
5. Believers in Jerusalem flee to the mountains (for safety).
6. The two witnesses begin their evangelism.
7. Probably the Mark of the Beast is put into operation full force (goes along with the Statue).

C. Last Half (worst half)

1. Evangelism by the 2 witnesses and
2. Evangelism by disaster (vial judgments)
3. The Last 3 trumpet judgments (includes invasion from outer space.)
4. The Start of the Armageddon Campaign
5. The Fall of Ecumenical Religion
6. The 2nd Advent of Christ
7. The Armageddon Campaign conclusion:

   a. Destiny of Beast and False Prophet
   b. Satan Bound
   c. Operation Footstool
   d. Resurrection of "C" Company
   e. The Baptism of Fire: Gentiles
   f. The Regathering of Israel
   g. The Baptism of Fire: Jews
   h. The Marriage Supper of the Lamb
   i. The Kingdom Established (Ushering in of Millennium).

8. The Operation of the Holy Spirit is the same as in the Old Testament.
9. The Tribulation is the end of the Age of Israel.

II. The Characteristics of the Tribulation:

A. The greatest period of Internationalism.

Tribulation: Panorama of the Tribulation (Category 610)

I. General Introduction: Panorama

A. First Half:

1. The Church is gone.
2. Bibles stay, resulting in the salvation of the 144,000 Evangelists.
3. The 144,000 Jewish Evangelists have converts among the Gentiles.
4. Judaism is revived in Palestine.
5. The Temple is constructed in unbelief
6. The first 4 Trumpet judgments occur (general judgments)
7. 2 Beasts (Dictators) become evident.

B. Middle of the Tribulation:

1. Satan is cast out of heaven.
2. Anti-Semitism increases
3. An alliance is made between the 2 dictators and--
4. A statue is set up in the temple in Jerusalem.
5. Believers in Jerusalem flee to the mountains (for safety).
6. The two witnesses begin their evangelism.
7. Probably the Mark of the Beast is put into operation full force (goes along with the Statue).

C. Last Half (worst half)

1. Evangelism by the 2 witnesses and
2. Evangelism by disaster (vial judgments)
3. The Last 3 trumpet judgments (includes invasion from outer space.)
4. The Start of the Armageddon Campaign
5. The Fall of Ecumenical Religion
6. The 2nd Advent of Christ
7. The Armageddon Campaign conclusion:

   a. Destiny of Beast and False Prophet
   b. Satan Bound
   c. Operation Footstool
   d. Resurrection of "C" Company
   e. The Baptism of Fire: Gentiles
   f. The Regathering of Israel
   g. The Baptism of Fire: Jews
   h. The Marriage Supper of the Lamb
   i. The Kingdom Established (Ushering in of Millennium).

8. The Operation of the Holy Spirit is the same as in the Old Testament.
9. The Tribulation is the end of the Age of Israel.

II. The Characteristics of the Tribulation:

A. The greatest period of Internationalism.

B. The greatest period of anti-Semitism.

C. The greatest period of religion.

D. The greatest period of evangelism.

E. The greatest use of the faith-rest technique in history. (System of spirituality).

F. Period of dictatorship, resulting in power politics.

G. Period of warfare.

H. Period of famine and inflation.

I. Period of death.

J. Martyrdom of believers.

K. Unusual natural and celestial disturbances.

L. Spheres of influence are dominant.

M. Certain personalities are dominant.

N. The Tribulation is worse in the Holy Land than in other places.

III. The Principles Evident:

A. Grace before Judgment:

1. Church Age before Tribulation.
2. Evangelism before the judgments in the Tribulation.

B. All judgment is for the purpose of bringing the unbeliever to a realization of his need for salvation.

1. The only time a believer gets involved in these judgments is if he gets involved in religion and religion is being judged.

2. Martyred believers are killed by religion, not by any judgment from God in the Tribulation.

IV. Nomenclature (Vocabulary) in the Book of Revelation (Generally)

A. "angel of the church": The Minister (Rev. 2-3)

B. "beasts": Living creatures (angels) (Rev. 4, 6)

C. "24 elders": Angels (Rev. 4)

D. "beasts": Rev. 13 - 2 Dictators (men). Rev. 13

Tribulation: Reasons Church Does Not Go Through the Tribulation
(Category 611)

1. The CHURCH and ISRAEL are two separate entities representing Christ.

2. The Tribulation is the end of the Jewish Age and therefore the Church is not present. See Category: Daniel's 70th week.

3. The 144,000 Evangelists in the Tribulation are Jews (Rev. 7:4). During the Age of Israel they are administrators, responsible for the dissemination of the Gospel.

4. Rev. 2 & 3 depict the conditions of the Church Age starting on the Day of Pentecost and ending with the rapture. In the message to the church at Philadelphia, Rev. 3:10 says:

5. Seven times the phrase "let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches" is used up until Rev. 3:22. (Rev. 2:7, 11, 17, 29; 3:6, 13, 22). The next time is Rev. 13:9 where it cuts off after "hear" indicating that the church has been removed before the Tribulation (Rev. 7-19).

6. Rev. 4:1, "after this (Church Age - Rev. 2-3) I will shew thee things which must be hereafter" in the Tribulation.

7. Rev. 4:6: The Church is pictured in heaven as a "sea of glass", the Church at rest. "Sea" refers to people. Rev. 15:2. Sea must be interpreted in context--at other times sea has a different connotation.

8. Law of Double Jeopardy: Jesus Christ was judged on the cross. Believers are the body of Christ. Jesus Christ breaks the seals of judgment (Rev. 6) and Jesus Christ would be bringing judgment upon Himself if the Church were present. (When Paul was persecuting the Church, Jesus Christ said that Paul was persecuting Him.) Acts 9:4.

9. The reason for Vial #3 (Rev. 16:6) is that they have shed the blood of "saints and prophets"--Jewish Age nomenclature, NOT "saints and preachers" (a Church Age term).

10. The Church has gone up in the rapture - All Believers - 1 Thess. 4:14-17. The Tribulation starts with unbelievers only. Rev. 13:6. "them that dwell in heaven", refers to Church Age believers already raptured. The first beast is trying in this passage to explain away the rapture.

There are hundreds of Scriptural reasons for a rapture at the end of the Church Age. The Pre-Tribulational Rapture is definitely Scriptural in contrast with the false teaching of the Post-Trib.

Tribulation: Religion in the Tribulation
(Category 612)

I. Part I: General: Rev. 1:7, 18; 13:4-8; 16:17-21

A. The Tribulation is the most religious period of all times. The Holy Spirit's restraint is gone. No Universal indwelling. 1 Thess. 2:7.

B. Religion's greatest problem is to explain the Rapture, so this is attacked. Rev. 13:6.

C. Religion will claim unbelievers, the Gospel will claim believers.

D. The religious system in the Tribulations is developed by a maximum saturation of the Gospel. When people go on negative signals at the point of God-consciousness and Gospel hearing, they create a vacuum for religion. Romans 1:21. In the Tribulation they have more chances to say "no" than at any other time.

E. God uses two approaches:

1. Evangelism by love (grace)
2. Evangelism by disaster (judgment)

F. Religious people go on negative volition no matter what system is used. They will be evangelized by four waves of Gospel proclamation.

G. Religion is permitted to operate, without restraint, in the Tribulation for two reasons:

1. It is part of the Angelic Conflict and, as such, Satan must have a free hand in certain areas.

2. It is a challenge to believers to learn doctrine. Lack of Doctrine causes believers to get into religion.

H. Religion of the Tribulation, does what all religion is designed to do: Worship Satan (the author of "do-goodism". Any religion that seeks to solve man's problems by man's efforts is Satanic in nature and is basically a worship of Satan.

I. In the Tribulation religion will be able to use political power in order to persecute and destroy those who are born-again.

J. All judgments on religion in the Tribulation are designed to awaken the unbeliever to his need for the Lord Jesus Christ and is therefore fair. Most of the judgments are against religion and those who adhere to it. (Specifically: 5th, 6th Trumpets; 2, 3rd Angels, and all Vial Judgments.)

K. Believers who do not separate from religion will get involved in the judgments of religion. Rev. 18:4-5.

II. Specific Operation of Religion in the Tribulation.

A. Analogy of Revelation 17:

1. Whore: Lust in the OSN: Sex lust
Money: Customers pay money.

2. Religion: Lust in the OSN: Approbation & Power Lust
Money: Religious organization costs money--is wealthy.

B. Ecumenical religion in the Tribulation is:

1. International in Scope: Rev. 17:12
2. Glamerous, wealthy, powerful, has lots of pleasure--a program of entertainment.
3. Gains converts by appealing to emotion, to lust pattern of the OSN (approbation, power, religious). This is called fornication. Rev. 18:3.

C. Ecclesiastical Religion in the Tribulation is called Babylon:

1. In the OT: Babylon refers to the original city (destroyed --account in Isaiah).

2. In the NT: Babylon refers to Rome (RRE), last headquarters for the Ecclesiastical Religion system of the Tribulation.

D. The Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire is the political head of the 10 nation confederation--he is also head of the Ecclesiastical religious system.

E. Religion gains political ascendacy; and in the RRE religion will control the state, will be the state. Then you have loss of freedom.

F. Ecclesiastical religion has adherence in all nations - sometimes 90%, sometimes 100%, but at least lip service will be given. Religion will dominate national entities, but national entities will exist politically.

G. There are three ways in which people are attracted to religion:

1. Beast: Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire, outstanding personality and leadership.

2. Image: The system of ritual and worship.

3. Mark: Economic pressure

H. Ecclesiastical religion falls at the peak of her power; destruction is so great that humans are wiped out - only demons left. Rev. 18:2, 19:2-3, Judgment of religion.

J. Judgment from God takes place in one day. Rev. 18:8. The political finally puts down religion, Rev. 17:16 fulfulling God's will.

K. Fall elicits a wail from politicans, and transportation industry. Rev. 18:9, 12, 17, 18.

L. Ecclesiastical religion of the Revived Roman Empire must be accepted (at least on the surface) in the land (Palestine). This is done by setting up the statue.

M. Religion infiltrates the concept of the Jewish temple in Jerusalem, making it impossible to teach the truth, therefore the necessity to evangelize outside the temple. (144,000 and the 2 witnesses).

Tribulation: The Rise and Fall of the Unholy Trinity
(Category 613)

I. Satan: (Note Rev. 12:4, 9 and also Rev. 16:13 plus other texts).

A. Satan has four aliases:

1. "dragon": Refers to tremendous power. Rev. 12:4, 9

2. "that old serpent": Whenever you find the devil called a serpent, it is always referring to the devil's activities whereby man became a sinner.

3. "the devil": Slanderer, maligner, Greek word is transliterated.

4. "Satan": Hebrew word for adversary, enemy.

Satan is the basic enemy of the believer and God. Satan is the antagonist in the Angelic Conflict.

B. Satan's original status is found in Ezekiel 28:12-15. Satan is a cherub. Originally he was the defender of Divine Essence, guarding the throne room of God. He was replaced by four angels.

C. Satan's First Fall: Ezek. 28:15

D. Satan is operative (also his demons) now.

E. Satan continues this type of operation until the middle of the Tribulation when we see SATAN'S SECOND FALL. Ezek. 28:16, Rev. 12:9.

F. At the 2nd Advent Satan is bound for 1,000 years during the time of perfect environment. Rev. 20:1-3.

G. Satan is released at the end of 1,000 years and causes a revolt, which proves that Perfect Environment (PE) is not the answer. Rev. 20:7-8.

H. Fire comes down from heaven and stops the revolt. Rev. 20:9, 10.

I. Satan is cast into the Lake of Fire at the end of the millennium. Rev. 20:10, Matt. 25:41. THIS IS THE FINAL FALL OF SATAN. Ezek. 28:18.

II. The Dictator of the Revived Empire:

A. Satan, as a ruler of this world, made a bona fide offer to Jesus Christ: Matt. 4:8-10, Christ rejected. Again he offers the kingdoms of the world - this time to the Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire and he will accept.

B. See Tribulation Category: First Beast, D/RRE.

C. His fall is prophesied in Rev. 13:10.

D. His fall occurs in Rev. 19:20

III. The Dictator of Palestine:

A. See Tribulation Category: Second Beast, False Prophet.

B. These dictators go to battle at Armageddon. Rev. 16:13-14.

C. They go down to defeat at Armageddon and are cast into the Lake of Fire. Rev. 19:20. This is the 2nd Advent.

D. They are still there at the end of the millennium when Satan is cast into the Lake of Fire. Rev. 20:10.

E. Therefore we know that the Lake of Fire is eternal punishment - that the soul lives forever.

Tribulation: Seven Angels of Judgment
(Category 614)
Rev. 14:6-20

Elect angels do a lot of judging as the administrators of the Lord Jesus Christ. Probably these angels will take on human form. They evangelize in two ways. Love and fear.

I. The First Angel: 14:6-7 Give warning. His job is to present the principle of grace before judgment.

II. The Second Angel: 14:8 The responsibility is to administer judgment to religion. Religion is the Satanic counterfeit of true relationship with God.

III. The Third Angel: 14:9-13 Judges those who adhere to religion. Both the system and those who are a part of the system are judged. In the 10 nation confederation we have union of Church and State.

IV. The Fourth Angel: 14:14-16 MILITARY JUDGMENT

The prologue of the Armageddon campaign. Judgments (slaughter of armies involved) which follow are authorized by Jesus Christ, who is seated and has a sharp sickle in His hand. Reason: Rejection of Jesus Christ; anti-Semitism. Detials in Rev. 19:15-21.

V. The Fifth Angel: 14:17 MILITARY JUDGMENT

This angel is responsible for killing off part of the army in the Armageddon Campaign.

VI. The Sixth Angel: 14:18 MILITARY JUDGMENT

Unsaved military personnel will be judged.

VII. The Seventh Angel: 14:19-20

Those who are about to be killed are "fully ripe" for judgment--they are over due for judgment.

Tribulation: 7 Heads, 10 Horns
Rev. 12:3, 13:1, 17:7-13
(Category 615)

I. "Seven Heads": SEVEN EMPIRES WHICH HAVE ADMINISTERED EITHER the 4th or 5th Cycle of Discipline to Israel. Rev. 12:3.

A. Egypt: Basis of enslavement before the Cycles of Discipline begin.

B. Assyria: Administered the 5th Cycle of Discipline to the Northern Kingdom, and the 4th Cycle to the Southern Kingdom (Judah). Began in 721 BC.

C. Chaldean Empire: Administered the 5th Cycle of Discipline to the Northern Kingdom, and the 4th Cycle to the Southern Kingdom in 586 BC.

D. Media Persia: Administered the Jews during the 5th Cycle and sponsored their return to the land, also terminated the 5th Cycle in 516 BC. Began sending back in 536 BC.

E. Greico Macedonian Empire: (Helenistic Empires, Greece) administered 4th Cycle of Discipline.

F. Roman Empire: Went primarily to the Rhine, Danube, and Euphrates. Started the administration of the 5th Cycle.

G. Revived Roman Empire: This will be most of the nations found within the borders of the old Roman Empire - primarily Western Europe and three other countries in the Western Hemisphere. These end the 5th Cycle of Discipline.

II. "ten horns": This is the 10 nation confederation that forms the Revived Roman Empire. Daniel 2:41-45, 7:20-22. Rome is headquarters for the political and religious organization that controls the RRE. This is comparable to the 10 toes of the image, which is said to be made up of 2 types of material:

A. Iron: Nations formerly in the old Roman Empire.

B. Clay: Nations not in the old Roman Empire.

In the Revived Roman Empire we have union of religion and state, which destroys the freedom of the individual.

III. "seven crowns": Rev. 12:3 refers to 7 out of 10 nations. 3 were conquered by the Dictator. 7 still maintain their crowns.

IV. "ten crowns": Rev. 13:1. They started out as independent nations and for one reason or another they were finally pulled into the confederation. Crowns indicate they had a form of self-government and were a national entity. They lost that in the operation of Dictatorship and sphere of influence.

Tribulation: Seven Seals--General Characteristics
Rev. 6:1-17, 8:1
(Category 616)

I. Introduction:

A. The Tribulation is the end of the Jewish Age, which was not completed because of the death of the Lord Jesus Christ and the ushering in of the Church Age.

B. The Church has been raptured and is now in heaven.

C. Rev. 4 & 5 gives us a glimpse of what was going on in heaven! A book with 7 seals needed to be opened and the angels were looking for someone worthy to open it.

D. Rev. 5:6-8 we see the Lamb (Lord Jesus Christ) take the Book.

E. The Description of the Book (Ancient Scroll)

A sheet of paper rolled up, sealed at the break. The Lord Jesus Christ breaks the first seal and it unrolls a little bit. He breaks the 2nd seal and it unrolls a little more. He continues breaking the seals until six have been broken. These reveal the characteristics of the Tribulation.

F. The 7th Seal is not opened until Rev. 8. Rev. 7 is evangelism in the Tribulation. Principle: Grace before Judgment. Out of the 7th seal comes the TRUMPET JUDGMENT.

II. The Seven Seals: (Four Horsemen) Rev. 6:1-17, 8:1

A. First Seal: 6:1-2

1. Period of Dictatorship: A period of power politics, through projecting the PERSONALITY of a person in place of his ethics, character, etc.

2. Principle: Judgment will come through dictators.

3. White Horse: Symbol of conquest (Napoleon, Japanese generals, Roman generals all rode white horses).

B. Second Seal: 6:3-4

1. Period of Warfare:

2. Principle: Until Christ returns to the earth, there is going to be war. Matt. 24:6.

3. Red Horse: War horse (red is the color of blood)

C. Third Seal: 6:5-6

1. Period of Famine and inflation.

2. Black Horse: Balances and scales stand for:

   a. Inflation
   b. Scarcity of food, therefore
   c. Famine

D. Fourth Seal: 6:7-8

1. Period of Death

2. Pale Horse: Ashen - deathly green.

   a. "sword": INAMINATE thing. Warfare

   b. "hunger": INAMINATE: famine

   c. "death": INAMINATE: disease

   d. "beasts of the earth": ANIMATE, violence other than warfare. Crime: Evil personalities, wild animals.

E. Fifth Seal: 6:9-11 Martyrdom of Tribulational Believers.

F. Sixth Seal: 6:12-13 Unusual Natural and Celestial Disturbances. Two sources of Natural Catastrophe:

1. Activity of certain divine laws--unusual weather conditions.

2. Floods, earthquakes, etc.

CELESTIAL DISTURBANCES: Meteorites, etc.

REVELATION 7: Evangelism in the Tribulation--PRINCIPLE: Grace always precedes JUDGMENT.

G. Seventh Seal: Rev. 8:1

Out of the 7th seal comes the Seven Trumpet Judgments, which are so terrifying there is silence.

Tribulation: Seven Things Found in Heaven Just Before the Tribulation Begins
(Category 617)

Bible Background: Rev. 4 & 5:1-7

1. Trinity: Rev. 4 & 5:1-7.

2. 24 Elders: Rev. 4:4

3. Signs of Judgment: 4:5

   a. "lightnings": Visual
   b. "thunderings": Audio
   c. "voices": Vocal - noise of a wind: PRINCIPLE: Divine judgment comes from heaven to the earth.

   d. "seven lamps of fire": Lamp represents testimony. Fire represents judgment.

   e. "seven spirits of God": Characteristics of God. PRINCIPLE: Judgment comes from God's perfect character. Essence Box.

4. Church at Rest: 4:6a

   "sea (large mass of people) of glass": Church at rest in heaven.

5. Four Living Creatures: 4:6b - 9 (Angels--see Ezekiel 1:5)

   Principle of Angelic Worship: v. 10-11

6. Book of Judgment: 5:1-4

   The book of the seals, showing the characteristics of the Tribulation. Out of the 7th seal will come the 7 trumpet judgments.

7. Judge of the Earth: 5:5-7 Jesus Christ

   Presentation of the Judge: Jesus Christ who is worthy to open the book and to pour out Divine wrath on the earth.

Tribulation: Spheres of Influence
(Category 618)

1. A sphere of influence in power politics is made up of a group of nations under one leadership. Four are quite prominent in the Tribulation.

2. POSITION YOURSELF IN PALESTINE, thereby orienting yourself to who these people are, and where they are.

3. The Dictator of Palestine:

   The hub of these events is Palestine.

4. The King of the North:

   Comparable to the Communist (Soviet) Block now.
   Objective: To conquer Africa. Daniel 11:40-42.

5. The Kings of the East:

   Pan Oriental Block (Chinese today)
   Rev. 16:12
   Isa. 63:1-3

6. The King of the South: Pan Arabic Block. Daniel 11:40.

   Genesis 16:12 says the Arabs have always been nomads, but at the time of the end, they will become one sphere of influence (United Sphere of Power) even as they are forming under the intense nationalist movement in the Arab world today. This movement is the first successful one in history.

7. The King of the West:

   The Revived Roman Empire. The 10 Nation Confederation (Western Union of Europe). Daniel 7:7, 23, 24; Rev. 13:1-10; 17:8-10.

   Daniel 2: Comparable to 10 toes of the image, which is made of 2 types of material.

   a. Iron: Nations that were formerly in the Old Roman Empire.

   b. Clay: Nations that were not in the Old Roman Empire, but that will be under the influence of the Revived Roman Empire.

Union of Church and State: The Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire is head of the 10 nation confederation and head of Ecumenical Religion in the Tribulation.

Tribulation: Trumpet Judgments
(Category 619)

I. Introduction to the Trumpets:

A. A trumpet is a judgment which takes place in the Tribulation.

B. These judgments are directed toward the Gentile unbelievers who were responsible for the death of the Tribulation martyrs. Rev. 9:20-21.

C. Rev. 8:3-5 is the hearing of the prayers of believers who are martyred during the Tribulation, which results in those judgments.

D. In Rev. 8 there are only four of the seven trumpets. The rest are in Rev. 9 and 11:15.

E. The first four trumpets use nature for the judgment and are described in 7 verses (Rev. 8:7-13).

F. The last three trumpets are directed against mankind and are described in 22 verses. (Rev. 9 and 11:15). Emphasis is on the last three trumpets.

G. The trumpet judgments are held up until the 144,000 evangelists are sealed. Rev. 7:1-3 occurs before Rev. 8.

The first 6 seals (warning) are in Rev. 6 and the 7th seal, which contains these trumpets, is in Rev. 8, after the sealing of the 144,000.

H. The 7th trumpet is the announcement of the 2nd Avent of the Lord Jesus Christ.

II. The Trumpets:

A. The First Four Trumpets: Rev. 8

These represent three categories in the 1st half of the Tribulation.

Agricultural: 1st trumpet
Aquatic: 2nd trumpet - sea. 3rd - fresh water
Astronomic: 4th - sun, moon, stars. (These affect all types of life on earth).

1. First Trumpet: 8:7, Against vegetation.

a. 1/3 part of sea life dies.
b. 1/3 part of transportation of sea is destroyed.

2. Second Trumpet: 8:8-9 Against Transportation

a. 1/3 part of sea life dies.
b. 1/3 part of transportation of sea is destroyed

Tribulation: Trumpet Judgments
(Category 619)

I. Introduction to the Trumpets:

A. A trumpet is a judgment which takes place in the Tribulation.

B. These judgments are directed toward the Gentile unbelievers who were responsible for the death of the Tribulation martyrs. Rev. 9:20-21.

C. Rev. 8:3-5 is the hearing of the prayers of believers who are martyred during the Tribulation, which results in those judgments.

D. In Rev. 8 there are only four of the seven trumpets. The rest are in Rev. 9 and 11:15.

E. The first four trumpets use nature for the judgment and are described in 7 verses (Rev. 8:7-13).

F. The last three trumpets are directed against mankind and are described in 22 verses. (Rev. 9 and 11:15). Emphasis is on the last three trumpets.

G. The trumpet judgments are held up until the 144,000 evangelists are sealed. Rev. 7:1-3 occurs before Rev. 8.

The first 6 seals (warning) are in Rev. 6 and the 7th seal, which contains these trumpets, is in Rev. 8, after the sealing of the 144,000.

H. The 7th trumpet is the announcement of the 2nd Avent of the Lord Jesus Christ.

II. The Trumpets:

A. The First Four Trumpets: Rev. 8

These represent three categories in the 1st half of the Tribulation.

Agricultural: 1st trumpet
Aquatic: 2nd trumpet - sea. 3rd - fresh water
Astronomic: 4th - sun, moon, stars. (These affect all types of life on earth).

1. First Trumpet: 8:7, Against vegetation.

a. 1/3 part of sea life dies.
b. 1/3 part of transportation of sea is destroyed.

2. Second Trumpet: 8:8-9 Against Transportation

a. 1/3 part of sea life dies.
b. 1/3 part of transportation of sea is destroyed

3. Third Trumpet: 8:10-11 Against sanitation, fresh water.

1/3 of the waters for domestic use are polluted. It knocks out the fresh water supply.

4. Fourth Trumpet: 8:12 Against illumination

Darkness in both day and night will be increased. Total darkness at night will be added terror.

B. The Last Three Trumpets: These are JUDGMENTS against people. Revelation 9.

1. Fifth Trumpet: 9:1-12 First Woe FIRST INVASION

TORTURE WITHOUT DEATH IN THE middle of the Tribulation. The bound angels from Tartarus are released. They torture the unbeliever until he desires death.

2. Sixth Trumpet: 9:13-21 Second Woe SECOND INVASION

TORTURE WITH DEATH. Last half of the Tribulation. The purpose is to judge and destroy those guilty of killing believers in the Tribulation. The prayers of Tribulational martyrs are received and answered.

Four SUPER ANGELS from underworld (under the command of Satan) lead an army made up of 200 million angels.

1/3 Human Race killed.

Means of death:

a. Fire: Burned to death; 9:17
b. Smoke: Deprived of oxygen (suffocated)
c. Brimstone: Sulphur, shock or detonation by gunpowder.

PARENTHESIS: Rev. 10:1-11:14, Heralds of the 2nd Advent.

3. Seventh Trumpet: Rev. 11:15 (Third Woe) THE BAPTISM OF FIRE.

The announcement of the 2nd Advent. Within 10 days after the 2 witnesses ascend, the 2nd Advent will take place. Rev. 8, 9, 11:15.

The Baptism of Fire is the blood bath of judgment on all unbelievers at the 2nd Advent.

Tribulation: Vial Judgments
(Category 620)

Part I:

1. Rev. 15 is the introduction to Rev. 16, where we have the final judgments of the Tribulation before the 2nd Advent.

2. 7 angels administer these seven last plagues.

3. These vials are God's judgment of ecumenical religion at its peak.

4. Reason for these 7 last plagues is just and fair because the Tribulational religious system (ecclesiastical religion) persecutes and martyrs those who are believers.

5. The source of the 7 last plagues is from the temple of the tabernacle in heaven.

6. These 7 last judgments represent the principle that the last hope for the unbeliever is evangelism by disaster. However God never tampers with the free will of man but puts them in a condition where they will give the gospel a hearing.

7. The 7 angels hold the rank to administer these judgments (15:6) and this is necessary because they are going to be opposed by demons. Rev. 16:2ff.

8. These plagues are similar to some of the plagues which Moses performed in Egypt.

   a. 1st plague Moses turned water to blood. Exodus 7:18
   2nd, 3rd vials also turn water into blood. Rev. 16:3-4

   b. 2nd plague, frongs come through the land. Ex. 8:2
   6th vial has demons like frogs operating against the rulers of the earth. Rev. 16:13.

   c. 6th plague produced boils. Ex. 9:8
   1st vial produces cancerous sores on the skin of religious people. Rev. 16:2.

   d. 7th plague - hail. Ex. 9:22
   7th vial also produces hail. Rev. 16:17-21

   e. 9th plague - darkness. Ex. 10:21
   5th vial produces darkness. Rev. 16:10

9. Each plague is designed with one purpose in mind: To hit the world with maximum pressure at the end of the Tribulation in order to wake them up so that they realize their need of Jesus Christ as Saviour. Maximum pressure is bonafide provided it does not tamper with human volition.

Part II: The Vial Judgments: Revelation 16

A. Introduction

All seven vials (drinking goblets) are judgments against religious unbelievers: designed to evangelize those who do not have the mark of the Beast (which is the final decision). Does not touch believer.

B. The Ecclesiastical religious system will reject the work of Christ on the cross, and therefore God gives them 7 cups, each containing the wrath of God. Each will be poured out upon the earth and upon those who reject the work of Jesus Christ.

C. The Seven Vials:

1. First Vial: Rev. 16:2 LOSS OF HEALTH

A skin cancer that is not designed to kill them but to make them realize they are very close to dying and designed to awaken them to their need of Jesus Christ.

2. Second Vial: 16:3 LOSS OF FOOD (From the sea)

Designed to make them realize they need something beside food and materialistic things in life.

3. Third Vial: 16:4-7 LOSS OF FRESH WATER

An angel protects the water supply. The fact that all people drink water and are sustained thereby is the Grace of God.

THE LAST FOUR ARE NEAR THE END OF THE TRIBULATION: 6 weeks, 2 months.

4. Fourth Vial: 16:8-9 WEATHER CATASTROPHE

This is EXTREME HEAT for a short period of time, but not enough to tamper with their volition.

5. Fifth Vial: 16:10-11 JUDGMENT BY EPIDEMIC

Darkness, sores, pain. "Seat of the Beast": Rome

6. Sixth Vial: 16:12-16 MILITARY DISASTER

This prepares the way for the Kings of the East and brings military forces to a place for their slaughter at the 2nd Advent.

7. Seventh Vial: 16:17-21 AGAINST LEADERSHIP OF ECCLESIASTICAL RELIGION. Four types of Judgment:

a. v. 18: Natural distrubance
b. v. 19: Judgment of cities
c. v. 20: Topographical upheaval
d. v. 21: Hailstones

They still rejected free will. Neither LOVE approach nor JUDGMENT can swerve the unbeliever from -V.

Tribulation: Warfare in Heaven
(Category 621)

Bible Background: Rev. 12:7-10

1. Until the middle of the Tribulation Satan spends a great deal of time in heaven attending angelic convocations, accusing believers. Example: Job. He is not shut out of heaven until the middle of the Tribulation.

2. Warfare is between the two angelic forces:

   a. Elect angels led by Michael and
   b. Fallen angels led by Satan

3. Until this time Michael doesn't have permission to strike Satan. He had previously come into conflict with Satan over the body of Moses, who is one of the two witnesses in the Tribulation.

4. In Mid-Tribulation Satan is thrown out by Michael. Demons are thrown out by elect angels.

5. At the 2nd Advent of Jesus Christ, at the end of the Tribulation, Jesus Christ tosses Satan off the earth. The Church Age believers toss demons off.

6. Every believer has a guardian angel. Heb. 1:14.

7. When the Church Age believer is raptured, each guardian angel goes up.

8. Apparently the elect angels with Michael are the guardian angels of the believers, therefore the same in number as the demons.

9. The result of this warfare was Satan and his angels being cast out of heaven.

10. Once Satan is cast to the earth he gets very tough with the human race, seeking to completely destroy the Jews, but they overcame him through the blood of the Lamb. Rev. 12:11.

11. Satan persectues Israel to a great extent and this results in the middle of the Tribulation flight of the Jews to the mountains.

12. Probably Satan's first act after being cast out of heaven (with God's permission) was to release the invading demons from the bottomless pit. Rev. 9:1. 5th Trumpet Judgment.

Test for Doctrinal Moxie: Questionnaire
(Category 622)

See if you can answer the questions honestly, directly and briefly--though thorougly enough to cover each intelligently and scripturally. Answer in your own works, then support with Scripture references.

I. THEOLOGY: Doctrine of God

1. What do you believe about the Trinity?
2. Prove from Scripture the deity of the Holy Spirit.
3. What are God's characteristics? (Doctrine of Divine Essence)

II. BIBLIOLOGY: Doctrine of the Bible

4. In what way is the Bible the inspired Word of God?
5. Is ALL of the Bible inspired and free from human error in the original writings?
6. What other divine writings has God given to man?
7. Do you have any authority other than the Bible for doctrine and walk?

III. HAMARTIOLOGY: Doctrine of Sin

8. Is man a product of age-long evolution or of direct creation by God?
9. In God's sight, how sinful is man?
10. State the difference between imputed sin, inherent sin, and personal sin.
11. What efforts can a lost person exert to please God?
12. Is everyone born with a sinful nature? Explain.
13. Describe the old sin nature and its position in the life of the Believer.
14. Who is the devil?

IV. SOTERIOLOGY: Doctrine of Salvation

15. Since Adam, how many ways of salvation has God provided?
16. Explain how a sinner gains salvation.
17. What must a believer do to maintain his salvation? Explain.

18. What is your concept of "believe in Christ"?

19. What other conditions besides believing are necessary for salvation?

20. Name several results occurring on the believer's behalf at the moment of salvation.

21. Can a saved person ever be lost? Prove with Scripture.

22. Explain the meaning of Grace as related to God and mankind.

23. Briefly define the following doctrines:

    a. Redemption

    b. Propitiation

    c. Reconciliation

    d. Predestination

    e. Election

24. Where are unbelievers who have died?

25. Can an unbeliever ever be saved after death?

26. Where are believers who have died?

V. CHRISTOLOGY: DOCTRINE of the Person and Word of Christ

27. Who is Jesus Christ?

28. Explain the Hypostatic Union.

29. Was it absolutely necessary that Jesus Christ be born of a Virgin' Explain.

30. Why did He die on the Cross?

31. Was His death on the cross absolutely necessary? Explain.

32. Explain the Blood of Christ.

33. Did He actually rise bodily from the grave?

34. What is He doing now?

35. Is He coming back to earth again? When?

VI. PNEUMATOLOGY: Doctrine of Person and Work of Holy Spirit

36. If the Holy Spirit a real person? Prove from Scripture.

37. What is the ministry of the Spirit to:

    a. Unbelievers

    b. Believers at the moment of salvation

    c. Believers after salvation

38. What is involved in living the Christian way of life?

39. What is a carnal Christian?

40. What is a spiritual Christian?

41. Explain Spirituality as related to good works.

42. Is there a difference between Spirituality and Maturity?

43. How can a believer be filled with the Holy Spirit?

44. What do you believe about the so-called second blessing of the Spirit?

45. What do you believe concerning faith healing?

46. What do you believe concerning speaking in tongues?

47. Do you believe these are bona fide gifts today?

VII. ECCLESIOLOGY: Doctrine of the Church

48. Define the "body of Christ".

49. What do you believe about dispensationalism?

50. What do you believe concerning:

    a. Water baptism?

    b. The Lord's table?

51. What are the functions of a local church?

52. What is your concept of the indigenous church principle?

53. What is your attitude toward denominationalism?

54. What is your attitude toward the National and World Council of Churches?

55. What form of local church government do you teach?

56. What conditions do you require for local church membership?

57. What part does church membership play in salvation?

VIII. ESCHATOLOGY: Doctrine of Last Things

58. What do you understand by the terms:

    a. Amillennial?

    b. Premillennial?

    c. Postmillennial?

59. Which, if any do you believe in?

60. What do you believe about the rapture of the church?

61. Where do you expect to be during the great Tribulation? Why?

62. Describe the second coming of Christ to the earth.

63. Do you believe that the reign of Christ will be personal and literal?

64. What is your concept of:

    a. Heaven?

    b. Lake of fire?

IX. THE CHRISTIAN LIFE

65. Why is a believer left here on earth?

66. When a Christian sins, how does he regain fellowship with the Lord?

67. What two doctrines would you first teach a new Christian? Why?

68. How would you teach a new believer to study the Word personally?

69. How would you teach a new believer to pray?

70. What is your view concerning spiritual gifts? Which ones are available today? How are they obtained?

71. For what will a believer be rewarded at the judgment seat of Christ?

72. What do you believe about the so-called New Nature as is commonly taught today?

73. What do you believe concerning the eradication of the old sin nature?

74. Explain the difference between Human Good and Divine Good.

75. What spiritual gift(s) has the Holy Spirit given to you?

Trinity
(Category 623)

1. The TRINITY is revealed as a bonafide doctrine in Scripture. 1 Peter 1:2, 2 Cor. 13:14, Matt. 28:19, John 10:30 with Psalm 110:1, Isa. 48:16.

2. The phrase "let us" again indicates more than one person in the Godhead. Gen. 1:26, 3:22, 11:7.

3. The Trinity is: God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Spirit.

4. Jesus Christ is the only visible member of the Trinity. John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Tim. 6:16, 1 John 4:12. He is the God-Man.

5. Each person in the Trinity has identical character (Essence) making each one equal to the other. John 16:15. When the Bible speaks of God being one, it is always referring to ESSENCE, never to persons.

   When the Bible distinguishes between the person of the Godhead, it is a reference to the activity or operation of a specific person in the Godhead.

6. Each member of the Trinity performs a different function in relationship to mankind, angels. Illustration: Salvation: Phase 1.

   a. The Father planned salvation
   b. The Son executed salvation (cross)
   c. The Holy Spirit reveals salvation (makes the Gospel clear)

7. Each phase of the Plan of God for mankind is performed by a different member of the Godhead. Basically:

   a. Phase 1: Salvation: Jesus Christ
   b. Phase 2: Time: The Holy Spirit
   c. Phase 3: Eternity: The Father

8. The believer's relationship with the:

   a. Father: A child (relationship)
   b. Lord Jesus Christ: Friend (fellowship)
   c. Holy Spirit: Functional

Trinity 1
(Category 624)

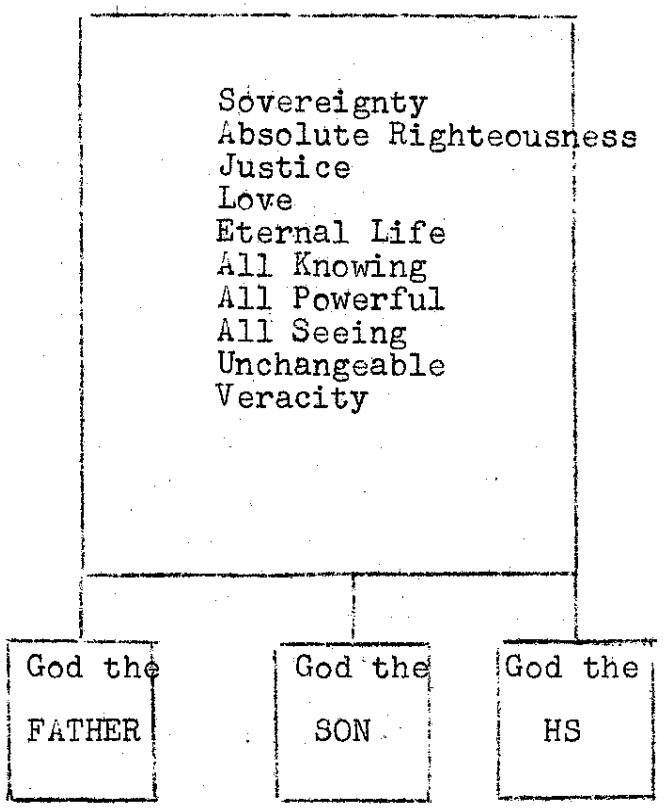
1. God is One is Essence, Three in Personality.

2. One in Essence: Not three Gods, but one God, without blending or dividing of substance; and has one name: Matt. 28:19 in "the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit."

   Isaiah 6:3b, "Holy (Father), Holy (Son) Holy (Holy Spirit) is THE LORD OF HOSTS." ONE LORD.

3. God is Three in Personality. One in Essence (big box), three in personality (three bottom boxes).

   When distinction is made it is in referece to ACTIVITY or OPERATION of a SPECIFIC MEMBER of the God-head.



Essence Box

4. Each one is made up of the same Divine Characteristics, making each equal to each other. John 16:15.

5. Jesus Christ is the visible member of the God-head. John 1:18, John 6:46. " . . . image of the invisible God." Col. 1:15

6. One time all 3 members of the Godhead were manifest - at the baptism of Jesus Christ. Matt. 3:13-17.

7. Each member had a part in creation:

   a. The Father planned it: 1 Cor. 8:6a
   b. The Son did original creation: Col. 1:16-17
   c. The Holy Spirit restored creation: Psalm 104:30

   Memory Verse: Isa. 6:3b.

Trinity 2
God the Father: The Planner
(Category 625)

I. God the Father is the Planner of all things. 1 Cor. 8:6a

A. Creation
B. Salvation

II. The PLAN is GRACE: God does for man what he cannot earn and does not deserve. Eph. 2:8-9. Grace is who and what God is--not who and what man is.

III. As the PLANNER he is Sovereign:

A. The Supreme Being of the Universe: Heb. 6:13. Therefore He is the highest King: Psalm 47:7.

B. God has Absolute will and does whatsoever He pleases. Psalm 115:3, 135:6.

C. In His SOVEREIGNTY He pleased to give man FREE WILL. "whosoever will . . ."

D. The Meeting Place of the 2 wills is the cross.

IV. God's SOVEREIGN PLAN for the Human Race is:

A. Phase 1: Salvation: Believer on the Lord Jesus Christ--Acts 16:31.

B. Phase 2: Time: ISSUE: Spirituality - Eph. 5:18

PRODUCTION: (Possible only through the filling of the Holy Spirit - 1 John 1:9).

1. Prayer: Toward God
2. Absorpion of Doctrine: Toward self
3. Witnessing: Toward others

C. Phase 3: Eternity: Eternal Life

V. The Divine PLAN eternally centers in the Person of the Lord Jesus Christ (Eph. 3:110 in Whom we (believers) are elected and accepted. Eph. 1:11.

VI. The Perfect Planner: God the Father

The Perfect Plan: Salvation
The Perfect Saviour: The Lord Jesus Christ
The Perfect Plan for Time: Romans 8:28-29
The Perfect Plan for Eternity: "absent from the body, present with the Lord." 2 Cor. 5:8.

Memory work: John 3:16-18

Trinity 3
(Category 626)
God the Father of Our Lord Jesus Christ

1. He is called the FATHER by the Lord Jesus Christ because the Father is the PLANNER, and Jesus Christ (the son) obeyed the plan of the Father in order to provide salvation. Phil. 2:8.

2. In Christ's DEITY there is a FATHER-SON relationship, making Jesus Christ the Son from all eternity. Matt. 16:16. "Thou art THE Christ (Deity), the Son of the living God."

3. In Christ's HUMANITY there is a God-man relationship.

   Hebrews 10:7, "I come . . . to do thy will, O God." Jesus as a baby (HUMANITY) spoke to the first person of the Trinity and called Him "God". vs. 5-9

4. In Christ's HUMANITY there is ALSO a FATHER-SON relationship. Luke 1:35, " . . . that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God."

5. In this same manner we, as believers, call Him FATHER because we are spiritually alive. Eph. 2:1, "dead": spiritually dead.

   Memory Verse: 2 Cor. 1:3, "Blessed be God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies, and the God of all comforts."

Trinity 4
The God, the Father of All Believers
(Category 627)

1. God the Father is the FATHER OF ALL BELIEVERS. Gal. 3:26

2. God the Father is NOT THE FATHER of UNBELIEVERS. John 8:42, 44. No human being has the power to make himself a child of God. John 1:12.

3. God the Father is ALSO the GOD of all BELIEVERS.

4. God the Father is the GOD OF THE ENTIRE HUMAN RACE. (By virtue of creation - whether acknowledged or not). Jer. 32:27, "Behold, I am the Lord, the God of all flesh . . ."

5. He who WAS GOD is NOW FATHER ALSO, by means of Regeneration (New Birth). Titus 3:5.

6. This position (In Christ) is eternal. John 14:20, Romans 8:38, 39

7. Since God the Father is OUR Father He provides for HIS children. Matt. 7:11.

Galatians 3:26: "For ye are all the children of God (How?) by faith in Christ Jesus."

Trinity 5
God the Son, His Incarnation; Earth
(Category 628)

1. God chose to reveal Himself by:

   a. The Written Word: Bible, 1 Cor. 2:16
   b. The Living Word: The Lord Jesus Christ: John 1:1

2. "The Word was MADE (Became) FLESH and dwelt among us . . ."

3. The purpose of the incarnation was:

   a. To reveal the Essence Box: Col. 1:15
   b. To execut the Plan of the Father. Eph. 2:8-9

4. Jesus Christ, in His Deity, could not be our Saviour. He had to become True Humanity (God-Man). Heb. 2:14-16.

5. Jesus Christ, the Unique Person of the Universe - the God-Man) WAS QUALIFIED (Virgin Birth) to become our Saviour. No inherent sin, no imputed sin, no personal sin, 2 Cor. 5:21.

John 1:14, "And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth."

Trinity 6
God the Son, The Mediator
(Category 629)

I. Sin caused enmity (wall, barrier) between God and man. Isa. 59:2.

II. Amediator is necessary to establish fellowship between God and man. Job 9:2, 32, 33.

III. A Mediator (man in the middle) must be equal with both parties. Phil. 2:6-8, John 1:14.

A. To satisify God: Be on the same level with God. Be without sin.

B. To help man: Must be man because He must take man's place and die in the place of the sinner.

IV. The Mediator was provided

A. Gal. 4:4-5, "when the fullness of time was come, God sent forth His Son . . ."

B. 1 Tim. 2:5, "For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the MAN Christ Jesus."

V. Therefore He was qualified to:

A. Propitiate (satisfy) God: 1 John 2:2

B. Reconcile man: Reconciliation--Col. 1:21

VI. Two Areas requiring a Mediator:

A. Phase 1: He removes the Barrier between God and man - salvation. RECONCILIATION. Eph. 2:14-18.

B. Phase 2: He is the believer's DEFENSE ATTORNEY when Satan accuses the believer. 1 John 2:1.

1 Tim. 2:5-6a, "For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus; who gave Himself a ransom for all . . ."

Trinity 7
God the Son, His Ministry
(Category 630)

I. His birth was planned in ETERNITY PAST. Psalm 3:7

II. He matured as a normal human being. Isaiah 53:2

III. He was educated in Doctrine by God the Father. Isa. 50:4-5

IV. His humanity was sustained by the Holy Spirit during His time on earth.

V. He was baptized (an unique baptism) signifying that He had come to do the Father's will. He was identified with water, the water signifying the Father's will.

VI. He explained His own ministry in Luke 4:14-21, 30--quoting from Isaiah 61:12.

A. To preach the Gospel to the poor (anyone needing salvation).

B. To heal the broken hearted (to give inner peace through salvation).

C. To preach deliverance to the captives. Col. 1:13, to set them free from the powers of darkness (Satan and His fallen angels).

D. To recover sight for the blind. Spiritually blind. John 8:12.

E. To set at liberty them that are bruised. Isa. 53:5. He paid the penalty, was bruised for us.

F. To preach the acceptable year of the Lord (the year of acceptance of the Lord). He told the Jews He was the promised redeemer.

VII. He had a ministry to His disciples - The Sermon on the Mount was a crash program to train them so they could reach the multitudes.

VIII. He had a ministry with His disciples - to the tax collectors and the prostitutes.

IX. He had a ministry in miracles and in parables.

Matthew 20:28, "EVEN as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give His life a ranson for many."

Trinity: Activity
(Category 631)

I. The Trinity in General:

A. The Father is the PLANNER OF ALL THINGS:

B. The Son does the WORK relative to GOD'S PLAN. PROVISION

C. HOLY SPIRIT REVEALS the plan, also MECHANICS.

II. The Trinity in Creation:

A. Father: Planned all things, 1 Cor. 8:6a--"of whom are all things."

B. Son: Original Creation of the Universe. Creation of the Man.

1. 1 Cor. 8:6b, " . . . by whom are ALL THINGS."
2. Ephesians 3:9, " . . . created all things by JC."
3. Heb. 1:10, " . . . has laid the foundation of the earth . . ." Context: Lord Jesus Christ.
4. John 1:3, " . . . all things were made by Him."
5. Col. 1:16-17, " . . . for by Him were all things created"

C. Holy Spirit: RESTORED, RECONSTRUCTED THE EARTH.

1. Genesis 1:2b, "spirit of God moved upon . . ."

2. Psalm 104:30, "thou renewest the face of the earth." Exodus 20:11a.

Cannot renew what did not exist.

III. The Trinity in Salvation:

A. Father: Planned

B. Son: Provided

The work of the Lord Jesus Christ is GENERAL: It is provided for the whole world (Unlimited Atonement), whether or not it is accepted.

C. Holy Spirit: Performs the Mechanics of Salvation. In contrast the work of the Holy Spirit is SPECIFIC (Personal), activated by the use of a person's positive volition in regard to the cross.

Trinity: Manifestation
(Category 632)

I. Introduction to Matthew 3:13-17:

A. ONE SPECIFIC TIME THE TRINITY (All 3) was made manifest to the human race:

B. Matthew 3:13-17, is a perfect example of God revealing Himself to mankind as three distinct persons at the same time (voice from haven, coming down through the air, on earth).

C. God had told John (John 1:32-34) that the one on whom the Holy Spirit descended in the form of a dove would be the Lord Jesus Christ.

II. Exposition of Matthew 3:13-17

A. v. 13: John had just told them (v. 11) and then "cometh Jesus." DRAMATIC APPEARANCE.

B. v. 14: John has been announcing Jesus Christ as King. Jesus requests baptism, but He is NOT a sinner.

C. v. 15: "fulfills all righteousness": All righteousness was fulfilled at the cross.

1. In His Deity: He was +R
2. In His Humanity: He was -R

He rejected man's righteousness. NO WORKS acceptable. Romans 4:4.

Righteousness brought Jesus to the cross where sin brings the human race for salvation.

D. v. 17: "well pleased": The Father showed that He was well pleased with His Son.

1. The Son showed that He was willing to do the will of the Father. Heb. 10:7-9. v. 9

2. v. 9: "the first": Mosiac Law
"the second": New Covenant (Salvation)

Jesus Christ is the VISIBLE member of the Godhead.

3. The Holy Spirit showed:

That He would live inside the Son (INDWELL) and sustain Him; just as we are sustained by the Holy Spirit.

John 3:34, " . . . for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto Him."

Trinity: One in Essence
(Category 633)

1. Webster's DEFINITION OF THE TRINITY: Union of three in one.

2. The Trinity is revealed as a bona fide doctrine in Scripture. 1 Peter 1:2, 2 Cor. 13:14, Isaiah 48:16.

3. The doctrine of the Trinity declares that God is one in Essence and Three in Personality.

4. God is spirit: John 4:24

5. God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are not three Gods, but ONE GOD, without blending or dividing of substance.

6. YET, they are presented with distinctions as three separate persons in the UNION OF ONE.

7. Each one is made up of the same DIVINE CHARACTERISTICS making each one equal to the other. John 16:15.

Each one is	SOVEREIGN	OMNISCIENCE
	RIGHTEOUS	OMNIPRESENCE
	JUSTICE	OMNIPOTENCE
	LOVE	IMMUTABILITY
	ETERNAL LIFE	VERACITY

8. When the Bible speaks of God being ONE, it is always referring to ESSENCE, never to persons.

9. God has a title - ONE NAME - a threefold name.

   a. Matthew 28:19, " . . . name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit . . ." Singular.

   b. Psalm 138:2, " . . . for thou hast magnified thy word above all thy name." Singular. This verse emphasizes the importance of knowing Bible Doctrine.

10. Deut. 6:4, Mark 12:29b: Speaks of "One Lord".
    John 10:30: "I and the Father are ONE":
    Psalm 110:1: "The Lord (Father) said unto my Lord": (LJC)

11. Isaiah 6:3b, "Holy (Father), Holy (Son), Holy (Holy Spirit) IS THE LORD OF HOSTS. ONE LORD.

Trinity: Three in Personality
(Category 634)

1. When the Bible distinguishes between persons of the Godhead, it is in reference to an activity or operation of a specific person in the Godhead.

2. Each person in the Trinity has an identical essence or charater. John 16:15.

3. Each member is:

Sovereignty	Omnisience
Righteousness	Omnipresence
Justice	Omnipotence
Love	Immutability
Eternal Life	Veracity

4. Who was with God when He said:

   "Let us make man in our image."? Gen. 1:26

   a. Genesis 1:2b, God the Holy Spirit was with God the Father.

   b. Genesis 48:16, John 1:1, God the Son was with God the Father.

5. All three are named in 2 Cor. 13:14, Isa. 61:1.

6. LIGHT is ANALOGOUS to God. There are 3 separate properties, but one in Essence.

   Analogy:

   a. Actinic: Neither seen nor felt: FATHER
   b. Luminiferous: Seen and felt: SON
   c. Calorific: Not seen, but felt: HOLY SPIRIT

7. Jesus Christ is the only visible member of the Trinity - the God-Man. John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Tim. 6:16, 1 John 4:12.

8. Each member of the Trinity performs a different function in relationship to mankind.

   See related Categories:

   Holy Spirit: Sustaining ministry to Jesus Christ
   Hypostatic Union
   Trinity
   Trinity, Activity

Two Circles #1
(Category 635)

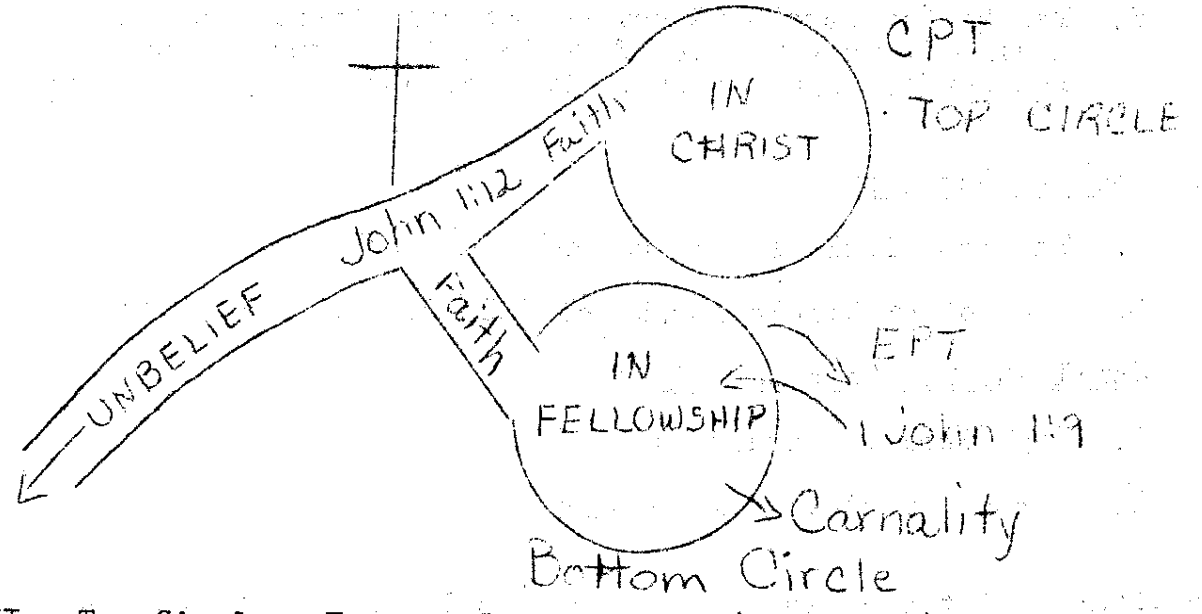
I. Positional Truth: Galatians 2:20

A. Retroactive: "I am crucified with Christ": RaPT

B. Current: "nevertheless I live": Eternal life: CPT

C. Experiential: "yet not I, but Christ liveth in me": ESP

You live the life of Christ when filled with the Holy Spirit.



II. Top Circle: Eternal Relationship (in Christ) CPT

A. Enter int: At the moment of salvation.
B. By: Belief on the Lord Jesus Christ. Acts 16:31
C. Place of: Eternal Security. Romans 8:38-39, John 10:28-29.

You can never get out of the top circle. The top circle is the work of God and is PERMANENT.

III. Bottom Circle: Temporal Fellowship. EPT

A. Enter into: At moment of salvation.
B. Get out: By sinning, 1 John 1:8, 10.
C. Get back in: By confession (naming) 1 John 1:9
D. Naming is identifying a sin that has been judged.
E. Place of: Filling of the Holy Spirit (Spirituality)
F. Commanded: Eph. 5:18. Keep on being FILLED (controlled) with the Holy Spirit. (F/HS)

IV. Spirituality is an ABSOLUTE STATUS: YOU ARE EITHER:

A.	In the Bottom Circle	or out of the Bottle Circle
B.	Spiritual	or Carnal
C.	Filled with the Spirit	or NOT filled with the Spirit

D. In Fellowship or out of Fellowship
E. Walking in the Spirit or Walking in the Flesh
F. Walking in the Light or Walking in Darkness
G. Producing Divine Good or Producing Human Good

Issue: Who controls your life? The Holy Spirit or the OSN? The believer out of fellowship is subject to discipline.

V. Note Contrast:

A. The Top Circle is entered once: Eternal Salvation. Water Baptism illustrates salvation--done once.

B. The Bottom Circle is entered at salvation, but entered again if one gets out of fellowship through rebound. The Lord's Supper illustrates fellowship--is done many times.

VI. Another Contrast:

A. The Top Circle speaks of SONSHIP. John 1:12

B. The Bottom Circle speaks of FRIENDSHIP. John 15:15

VII. Still another Consideration:

A. Top Circle: Romans 1-5

B. Bottom Circle: Romans 6-16

The Diagram of the cross and the two circles is valuable. Master it. It can be used to present the Gospel. It can be used to clarify with a mixed up believer who isn't sure whether they are saved or not. From it rebound can be taught, spirituality can be taught, and the two ordinances.

So happy application.

Two Circles #2
(Category 636)

I.	TOP CIRCLE	BOTTOM CIRCLE
A.	Eternal Fellowship	Temporal Fellowship
B.	Relationship with Christ	Relationship with the Holy Spirit
C.	Christianity	Spirituality
D.	Grace	Grace
E.	Jesus Christ Does the Work	Holy Spirit does the Work
F.	Salvation	Spirituality
G.	Area we are born into (New birth)	Area we should live in
H.	Place of the Indwelling HS	Place of the Filling of the HS

II. Top Circle:

A. In Christ (Union with Christ) eternal relationship. John 14:20, "I am in my Father, ye in me, and I in you."

B. Believers share His:

1. Life: 1 John 5:11-12
2. +R: 2 Cor. 5:21
3. Sonship: Gal. 3:26, John 1:12
4. Heirship: Rom. 8:16-17
5. Kingship: 2 Peter 1:11, 1 Thess. 2:12, Rev. 1:6
6. Priesthood: 1 Peter 2:5-9 where we have the privilege of:
   a. Worship
   b. Giving
   c. Prayer
   d. Praise
7. Sanctification: Eph. 1:6 (Set apart)
8. Election: Eph. 1:4, 1 Peter 1:2
9. Destiny: Eph. 1:5, 11

Believers are accepted "in the beloved", Eph. 1:6. Jesus Christ is ELECTED, PREDESTINED. The believer is IN Christ. Therefore, IN Christ we share His election, predestination, sonship, etc.

III. Bottom Circle:

A. IN: Controlled by the Holy Spirit (in fellowship)
Character of Christ is Produced: Gal. 5:22-23
Gets BD into the mind as a staging area for applying faith (erection edification of the soul).
Results in Divine Good (God, Silver, Precious stones)
Perception of the Word. 1 Cor. 2:13
Witness: Acts 1:8 Guidance: John 16:13
Worship: John 4:24 Prayer: Eph. 5:18
Helping other Christians rebound. Gal. 6:1

Therefore we glorify Christ. John 16:14-15.

B. IN AND OUT: (Inner conflict): Holy Spirit and OSN

1. We can be IN THE BC when WE ARE IN THE TC.

2. We can get of the BC by sinning (Act of negative volition toward control of the Holy Spirit)

3. We get back IN by confession of sin: 1 John 1:9

PRINCIPLE: Yieldedness (BEING IN BC) RESULT
PRACTICE: Confession (GETTING IN BC) MEANS

(Do NOT confuse means and results)

C. OUT: Controlled by the OSN (Out of fellowship - Carnal)
Here the Holy Spirit is quenched or grieved. 1 Thess. 5:19; Ephesians 4:30.

1. The believer does not produce the character of Christ.

2. Does not imitate the unbeliever. 1 Cor. 3:3

3. Think Human Viewpoint.

4. Resulting in:

a. Human good (Wood, hay, stubble) which glorifies self. Romans 8:8

b. Sin: Which causes believers to be:

5. Subject to DIVINE DISCIPLINE: Heb. 12:5-15

a. v. 7: TRANSLATION: "Endure chastening. God deals with you as sons. For what son is he whom the Father chastens not?"
b. v. 11: Cursing to blessing. "afterward": After rebound.
c. v. 12: Rebound: Use of 1 John 1:9
d. v. 13: Profit by discipline
e. v. 15: Isolation of sin

Union with Christ
(Category 637)

I. Because we in Union with Christ WE ARE: 2 Cor. 5:17

A. "in Christ": In Union with Christ, in the Top Circle

B. "new creature": New Birth - receives a human spirit

C. "old things are passed away": Spiritual death

D. "all things are become new": Spiritual life

II. Because of Union with Christ WE SHARE: (9 things)

A. Jesus Christ is EL, we have His life. 1 John 5:11-12, John 1:12.

B. Jesus Christ is +R, we have His +R. 2 Cor. 5:21

C. Jesus Christ is THE SON, we share His sonship. Gal. 3:26

D. Jesus Christ is the HEIR of God, we are joint-heirs with Him. Rom. 8:16, 17; 1 Peter 1:4-5

E. Jesus Christ has a Kingship, we share His Kingship. Rev. 1:6

F. Jesus Christ is our High Priest, every believer is a priest. 1 Peter 2:5-9

G. Jesus Christ is Sactified (set apart unto God), we are sanctified. 1 Cor. 1:2

H. Jesus Christ is Elected forever, we share His election. 1 Peter 1:2, Eph. 1:4

I. Jesus Christ is Predestined, we share His destiny. Eph. 1:5, 11.

III. Christ is one with the Father, therefore, because of Union with Christ, we have the Father as well as the Son. 1 John 2:23, John 14:20.

IV. We have UNIFICATION OF BELIEVERS: Eph. 4:3-5

A. v. 3: "unity of the Spirit": Unity which belongs to the Spirit. The Holy Spirit enters believers into Union with Christ.

B. v. 4:

1. "one body": All believers are members of the body of Jesus Christ.

2. "one spirit": Same Holy Spirit indwell believers.

3. "one hope of your calling": All are going to have the same type of resurrection body at the rapture.

C. v. 5

1. "one Lord": Every believer has the same Lord: Jesus Christ. He IS your Lord the moment you are saved.

2. "one faith": All saved the same way

3. "one baptism": Baptism of the Holy Spirit. UNIFICATION of BELIEVERS.

V. We have Dictinctions Removed: Gal. 3:26-28

A. Racial: "neither Jew nor Greek"

B. Social: "neither bond"

C. Sexual: "neither male nor female":
(Women have equality under Christianity)

United States of America: Ten Misconceptions Prevalent in April 1971 (Category 638)

1. Misconception No. 1: There is no such thing as absolute or eternal truth. This is the assumption that everything is relative, and that everything changes, and therefore to hold convictions about anything is to be narrow-minded.

   a. To stand for principle is to be bigoted.

   b. People demand that both sides of everything be taught, without indicating right or wrong, good or bad, moral or immoral.

   c. And this opens the door to communism and socialism which are of course kissing cousins.

   d. The rejection of absolute truth is replaced by "scientific determinism", coupled with subjectivity.

   Solution to the MISCONCEPTION: Malachi 3:6, "I am the Lord I change not." Also John 14:6, "Jesus saith unto Him, I am the way, the truth, the life; no man cometh unto the Father but by me."

2. Misconception No. 2: Materialistic change is progress. This is the assumption that all the changes we have had in this country; the electronic advances, the guided missles, the wonder drugs, etc are beneficial overt changes--HOWEVER -- they are superficial at best because they do not include inner change and improvement.

   People often says, "Isn't it wonderful that we have accomplished this or that" but material progress does not change the soul of man or keep him from emotional revolt. Only Bible Doctrine is beneficial to the inner man.

   Solution to the MISCONCEPTION: 1 John 2:17, "And the world passeth away, and the lust (desire) thereof; but he that doeth the will of God abideth forever."

3. Misconception No. 3: Physical survival is the highest goal in life.

   Some say that there is nothing worth dying for. That it is better to be red than dead. Or live by a philosophy that it is better to co-exist than not exist. These are surrender concepts in the minds of many people today.

   We no longer hear from men like Patrick Henry, "Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains, or slavery. Forbid it Almighty God. I know not what course others may take, but as for me, give me liberty--or give me death."

   You don't hear that any more, except from believers who have doctrine.

   Solution to the MISCONCEPTION: Mark 8:36, "For what shall it profit a man, if he shall gain the whole world and lose his own soul."

4. Misconception No. 4: Friendship can be purchased with money. This has helped destroy our economy. The Marshall plan was a demonstration of this, and since that time the American taxpayer's money has gone into many areas of the world to bolster up communistic programs.

Solution to the MISCONCEPTION: Mark 8:36 again, "For what shall it profit a man, if he shall gain the whole world and lose his own soul."

5. Misconception No. 5: That people are born equal.

This is a long-standing misconception, however the man Jefferson did not say that people were born equal but that citizens were born equal. Thomas Jefferson did not believe in the equality of men. What he meant is that people have the right to be born free in a national entity.

Obviously people don't have equality of mentality when born, or equality of physical life--some are born handicapped. But man does have free will (volition) and this country has had the principles which protect man's freedom. He is free to marry, to pursue a vocation, to accept or reject Jesus Christ, to worship in the church of his sort and so on.

One of the side effects of this misconception is to reduce everyone to the moron level. For example:

a. This delusion says that to be selective about friends and associates is to be non-democratic. Since every man is equal, and you have a business, one man will be as good a worker as another. Thus as a filling station manager you, under this principle, are forced to hire help which will ultimately bankrupt you.

b. This attempt to make everybody equal pulls people's individuality apart, as well as their personality, it destroys initiative and free enterprise, and finally robs a nation of its vigor.

c. The only true basis of equality in Homo sapien is NOT SOCIALISM but REGENERATION.

d. Christianity puts every believer on the highest plane possible position in Christ. This misconception puts everyone on the lowest level possible--a moronic vegetable who doesn't think.

Solution to the MISCONCEPTION: John 8:32, "And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free."

6. Misconception No. 6: The majority is always right. However, the majority rule is a technique of making a decision, no more, no less. It may be the right decision, it may be wrong.

a. A mob may be a majority in an area--but a mob never would make a right decision.

b. Lets say that the majority of legislators in the USA believe that registering weapons, or relieving people of their weapons is a deterrent to crim. Does that make it right? No!

Solution to the MISCONCEPTION: Titus 3:8, "This is a faithful saying, and these things I will that thou affirm constantly, that they which have believed in God might be careful to maintain good works. These things are good and profitable unto men".

7. Misconception No. 7: Crime can be deterred by gun legislation.

a. As a tradition of the American heritage Americans have always owned guns. We have the "right to own and bear arms."

b. The Communists have discovered that if they can have all guns registered, then when they go into a nation they can pick up those guns immediatly. This happened in Czek. where a large number of private citizens had their own weapons.

c. There have always been those who feel that private citizens have no business with weapons--and herd leader types feel that people should submit weakly and meekly.

d. Also the subjectivity of our law does not protect us-- If someone is robbing you, you cannot resist them, and shoot them, you can only submit to it, unless some police officer happens to come along. If the duly appointed public defender is not there--then you have had it.

e. The reasons people give for gun registration is as follows:

(1) Guns are dangerous, you might shoot yourself with one. THAT IS TRUE, Guns are dangerous--they are supposed to be.

(2) Or that the feebleminded may use them in a fit of temper.

(3) Or the prevalence of guns, especially hand guns constitute a hazard to police work.

(4) Or guns are used by criminals and therefore should be prohibited by law abiding citizens (THIS IS DEEP, TAKE NOTE).

(5) Or you should not resist a criminal because someone might get hurt.

(6) Or having a gun around--means sooner or later you are going to use it and cause trouble. Yes, some will cause trouble with guns. BUT THAT IS WHY WE HAVE LAWS AND JAILS.

The ABOVE REASONING approximates the concept that since a certain number of children are born idiots, the entire population of this country should be confined to play-pens, and fed with spoons.

e. Some thoughts:

(1) Obviously guns are dangerous--they are intended to be so--they would be useless if they were not dangerous.

(2) Of course there are other things that are dangerous--automobiles, blondes, oil stoves, electric fans, and even surgery.

(3) People again guns like to quote statistics to prove that more people are killed with guns than ice-picks, but you remove the guns and then see how the ratio would look--then you would have to have everyone register their icepicks.

f. Yes, criminals do abuse guns, that is why they are criminals. (THIS IS DEEP OF COURSE).

g. What effect would gun legislation have on law-breakers? None. They don't keep the law anyway--they are law-breakers. It is the law-abiding citizen that is unarmed, not the criminal.

h. Still one of the greatest deterrents on crime is a woman with a sawed off shotgun loaded with Double 00 buckshot facing you across the room. This has done more to discourage crime than anything else.

Solution to the Misconception: Luke 22:35-38, "And he said to them, When I sent you without purse, and script, and shoes, lacked ye anything? And they said, nothing. Then said he unto them, but now, he that hath a purse, let him take it, and likewise his scrip: and he that hath no sword, let him sell his garmet, and buy one. For I say unto you, that this that is written must yet be accomplished in me. And he was reckoned among the transgressors: for the things concerning me have an end. And they said, Lord, behold, here are two swords. And he said unto them, it is enough."

8. Misconception No. 8: Warfare can be outlawed by disarmament. That is like stopping crim by abolishing our law enforcement agencies. Our disarmament is leading to our destruction, the Communistic countries are constantly arming. See the Doctrine of War and the hundreds of passages involved.

God armed the Israelites, He taught them how to war. Try 1 Chronicles 5:19-22 , " . . . because the war was of God."

Solution to the Misconception: Deut. 20:13, "And when the Lord thy God hath delivered it into thine hands, thou shalt smite every male thereof with the edge of the sword." (The sword is the equivalent of the gun in protection--it shows they were armed--and fought.)

Remember that the swords and spears being beat into plow-shares and pruning hooks is millennial. At the present time there are "wars and rumors of wars." A strong military protects a nation.

9. Misconception No. 9: Internationalism can solve man's problems.

Be sure to understand the four divine institutions thoroughly. God's order is nationalism.

a. God has ordained nations: Acts 17:26, Gen. 9-10.

b. The only way the Angelic Conflict can be solved is through nationalism, never internationalism.

Solution to the MISCONCEPTION: Acts 17:26, "And hath made of one (blood is not in the better manuscripts) all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth and hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation."

10. Misconception No. 10:

The devil keeps selling the idea to peopl that improved environment is the answer to starving humanity, diseased humanity, deprived humanity and so on. But improved environment is the devils attempt to start the millennium before the 2nd Advent of Jesus Christ. Christ at that time establishes the millennium.

Civilization actually weakens the nations according to such passages as Isaiah 14 and Ezekiel 28.

Solution to the MISCONCEPTION: Matthew 4:4, "But He answered and said, it is written, man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God."

Conclusion: There is a CONSPIRACY promoting these things in America today. Jeremiah faced them--and came through because he was a man who knew doctrine. He had a soul of iron.

See the next category, the doctrine of conspiracy for more information

United States of America: The Doctrine of Conspiracy----
(Category 639)

1. A conspiracy is a combination of people trying to overthrow duly constituted authority. It is a group of people suitably organized for an evil or unlawful purpose.

2. There are six types of conspiracy according to the Word of God:

   a. A National Conspiracy: Jeremiah 11:9

   b. A Local Conspiracy: Jeremiah 11:21-23. The Anathoth conspiracy. This was Jeremiah's home town, at one time he was extremely popular, but now the locals are out to get him.

   c. A Family Conspiracy: Jeremiah 12:6, "For even thy brethren (brothers) and the house of your father . . ."

   d. A Personal Conspiracy: Jeremiah 12:7, "I have given the dearly beloved of my soul (Jeremiah's right woman) into the hand of her enemies."

   e. A Religious Conspiracy: Ezekiel 22:23-31

   f. An Internatal Conspiracy: The conspiracy of the Emotional Revolt. Jeremiah 17:9-10. The old sin nature in a believer has a love affair with the emotions. The emotions in turn affect the frontal lobe. A good illustration of this insanity is the tongues movement which is simply SPIRITUAL MASTURBATION.

3. A Conspiracy has Three Organized Categories:

   a. The PLOTTERS: This is the brains of the conspiracy, sometimes in the background--but definitely the nerve center of all conspiracies. In Jeremiah's time this was the men of Judah, Jer. 11:9. In the Communistic conspiracy--this is the leaders of Red China and Russia--who will even use Ping Pong to get their way.

   b. INTRIGUE: (The Dupes) The second part of a conspiracy involves DUPES. This is a system of scheming involving petty and underhanded methods. It also involves uninformed and unthinking people, like "my friend--right or wrong."

      In Jeremiah 11:9 this is the "inhabitants of Jerusalem":

      In the Communistic conspiracy this is the people of our own country who have rejected the Word of God, are socialistic, the long-haired type in rebellion against duly constituted authority.

   c. MACHINATION: These are the troublemakers, the violent type, the group who through a crafy and torturous process harress and destruct. This would involve the Communistic party in the United States.

This would involve the Black Panthers, the Weathermen. Those who blow up buildings, wreck duly constituted authority by hit and run violence.

In Jeremiah this came often through his right woman who hated him, and stirred up violent plots against him.

4. A conspiracy develops because of the rejection of Bible Doctrine. Jeremiah 11:8

"Yet, they obeyed not": Qal Perfect in the Hebrew. They were negative toward BD.

"nor inclined their ear": Stronger--no concentration.

a. They were there but didn't listen--
b. "I ought to go, but I don't like to leave the house at night!"
c. "I ought to go but this is one of those once in a life-time parties."
d. "I ought to go but I have company."
e. "I ought to go BUT . . . BUT . . . BUT . . . BUT . . . BUT!

PRINCIPLE: What does that mean? That means there is something more important than that point of time when Bible Doctrine is communicated in your mind. THAT MEANS YOU ALREADY HAVE WARNING BELLS IN YOUR SOUL!

They knew they should come and get Bible teaching, but THEY HAD AN EXCUSE!

"but walked every one in the imagination of their evil heart" (Heart speaks of the right lobe--they were in emotional revolt)

"but walked": Their life pattern was to walk this way--Qal Imperf: THEY KEP ON FOLLOWING THIS PATTERN!

"imagination": Stubborness, hard-headedness, obstancy, it is a Hebrew term for scar tissue.

"evil heart": The emotional revolt running the right lobe. BLADDER TROUBLE IN THE BRAIN!

"therefore I will bring upon them": Them in emotional revolt and therefore conspiracy.

"all the words of this covenant": (Those of emotional revolt) will receive the cursings of the Mosiac Covenant, Deut. 27:15-26 as well as the passage in Deut. 28:15-48.

"which I commanded": Piel imperfect--this is an intense command.
"to do": Obey commandments--yet it is rejected.

"but they did not": They did not manufacture out of doctrine, out of blessings that belong to grace. THEY CHOSE CURSING RATHER THAN BLESSING. And so cometh the 5th cycle!

5. A religious conspiracy is the worst because it involves every category of humanity. Ezekiel 22:23-31, Acts 23:13.

   a. Illustrated by Paul: Acts 23:13

      (1) Plot: The Pharisees (Legalists in the Sanhedrin)

      (2) Intrigue: 40 young men, knuckleheads who would not eat until Paul was assassinated. They were the DUPES.

      (3) Machination: The Judaisers who folloed Paul around.

   b. Illustrated by Ezekiel: Ezekiel 22:23-31.

6. Conspiracy was the basis for one of the most tragic revolutions of all time: The Absalom revolt. 2 Samuel 15:12-13.

   Absalom was the favorite son of David. If ever a father loved his son, David loved Absalom. No one ever hurt David like Absalom his son did!

   a. There was the plot: It was a carefully devised plan (and Absalom was not in the plot).

   b. Then there was intrigue: Absalom became the dupe--he became the FRONT!

   c. Also the machination involved the crafy and torborous tactics of Saul's relatives who were still around.

   This makes for quite a study--and how you can get drawn into a conspiracy without even knowing it--in fact often people in category 2 & 3 says, "There is no organized activity."

7. Conspiracy has been the basis of many assassinations.

   Joash is an example in 2 Kings 12:19-21.

8. Conspiracy was the basis for the assassination of the son of Joash, Amaziah. 2 Kings 14:17-19, 2 Chron. 25:27.

   This is interesting when a conspiracy goes from one generation to the next. The conspiracy in each generation reached a climax in each generation when the target was liquidated.

9. Conspiracy destroyed the Northern Kingdom among other things. The last king of the Northern 10 tribes was Hoshea. He came to the throne in 732 BC. 2 Kings 15:30.

   He loved conspiracy--he couldn't get his hands on enuf.

   a. He conspired against Assyria: 2 Kings 17:4--and as such he was the last king of the Northern 10 tribes.

   b. And Assyria took them captive (5th Cycle). 2 Kings 17:5-6

Unlimited Atonement
(Category 640)

I. Definition: Jesus Christ died for the sins of the whole human race. (Unlimited atonement)

1 John 2:2, "And He (JC) is the propitiation (satisfaction) for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world."

II. Jesus Christ paid for the sins OF ALL members of the human race, not just for the redeemed (ones who accept Jesus Christ).
2 Peter 2:1, " . . . even denying the Lord that bought them".
(he false prophets, teachers, etc.)

III. He died for all: 1 Tim. 2:6, Heb. 2:9, Titus 2:11, 2 Cor. 5:14, 15, 19; Ezek. 18:4.

IV. Application of Unlimited Atonment to Salvation:

A. Jesus Christ died for all

B. Why? Because (Romans 3:23)

1. "All have sinned": All are spiritually dead.
2. "Imputed sin: All sinned when Adam sinned
All were counted guilty because Adam was counted guilty.

3. 2 Cor. 5:14-15, "if one died for all, then were all dead."

V. The VOLITION of man is the issue in salvation. Will man choose FOR CHRIST OR AGAINST CHRIST?

VI. If man chooses against Christ, he stands on his own good works against the GOOD WORK OF CHRIST - cross.

VII. The issue at the last judgment (GWT) is human good vs. divine good.

VIII. Unlimited atonement in the Old Testament: Isaiah 44:22-23

"Jacob": Unbeliever
"Israel": Believer

"Vengeance is Mine: I Will Repay": Romans 12:19
(Category 641)

1. Romans 14:14 tells us that we are not to malign another person in return. By not paying back in like kind, we are placing the whole matter in the Lord's hands.

2. When the believer stays felled with the Holy Spirit, and stays out of emotional revolt; he stays out of the Lord's way as he disciplines in these cases; and is actually blessed during persecution and pressure.

3. Nonretaliation then becomes the basis of attracting a lost and dying world to Christ.

4. This means that rapport can exist even when there is antagonism on the part of one party.

5. Nonretaliation means holding off, maintain your mental attitude which accompanies the filling of the Holy Spirit.

6. When you retaliate you lower yourself to the level of the person who initiated the action. You are out of fellowship and therefore carnal--as is the person who crossed you.

7. Stay out of the way of your temper, retaliation does not belong to you.

8. It is in the Lord's hands. Stay out of the Lord's way or you confuse the issue.

9. God takes care of the discipline.

10. Retaliation always boomerangs.

11. Retaliation always destroys inner beauty.

12. See exegesis: Romans 12:19-20, 1 Peter 3:9

13. The erection of an edification complex of the soul is the greatest deterrent to the subject of "personal vengeance."

14. Do not confuse this verse with acts of justified war when a nation defends itself against enemies. Then you fight to win. The current Viet Nam war is not pouring vengeance on the enemy.

SO--DON'T GET SOMEONE'S discipline on you. Let the Lord handle it.

Volition: Hardness of Pharaoh's Heart (Right Lobe) (Category 642)

I. Pharaoh hardened his own heart (right lobe). He went on negative volition. Exodus 7:22-23, 8:15, 23, 9:34. Jesus Christ died for Pharaoh's sins, but Pharaoh hardened his own heart.

II. After Pharaoh continually rejected the gospel as he heard it, then we have the phrase "God hardened Pharaoh's heart" which means that God used Pharaoh's negative volition after he had hardened it. Why? For the purpose of judgment. After all God had given him more information than nearly any other person. Exodus 9:12, 16; Ex. 10:1, 20, 27.

The more Gospel information Pharaoh received, the stronger his negative volition became. God did not tamper with Pharaoh's volition.

III. God used the negative volition of Pharaoh to emphasize and reveal His own person and plan. This is why Exodus 9:16 is quoted in Romans 9:17.

IV. God in His Sovereignty explained:

A. God in His Sovereignty, always saves anyone who will believe in Christ (Love and Eternal Life), and always deals with every believer on the principle of grace.

B. God, in His Sovereignty, always judges every person who rejects the Lord Jesus Christ (-R and J).

C. Therefore God's Sovereignty is always consistent, absolutely perfect and without deviation.

V. Consequently God's decisions, which come from His Sovereignty, are consistent with His Essence:

A. God always treats the believer in grace. (Love and EL)

B. God always treats the unbeliever in judgment (+R and J)

Such treatment is always fair and is never incompatible with either God's +R or his love.

VI. When God treats someone in +R and J, it is not imcompatible with His love, or when God treats someone in Love and Eternal Life, it is not incompabible with His +R and J.

VII. In the analogy the child is to the mother as God is to Pharaoh.

A. God: Keeps giving Pharaoh the Gospel. Pharaoh keeps saying no! He becomes more hard (set) in rejection.

B. A Mother: A child keeps asking to go swimming. She says no! As he keeps asking she becomes more hard (set) in her original decision.

Volition: Jacob, Esau - Rom. 9:11-14
(Category 643)

1. This category explains Romans 9:14, "Is there unrighteousness with God?"

2. The alternatives of volition toward Christ are given in John 3:36, "everlasting life . . . wrath of God."

3. The difference between Jacob and Esau is not good and evil, but Jacob became a believer (used positive volition) and Esau did not (he used negative volition).

4. The Lord Jesus Christ died for both Esau and Jacob. (1 John 2:2) Obviously then if Christ did exactly the same thing for both Esau and Jacob on the cross, then the difference between them is THEIR own decision. They had FREE WILL!

5. The Sovereignty of God expresses itself through +R and J in JUDGMENT, therefore when God judges, His judgment is perfect. Psalm 18:30.

6. Esau was the recipient of the expression of God's Sovereignty through His +R and J because he exercised negative volition in regard to the cross, where +R and J were satisfied.

7. The Sovereignty of God also expresses itself through Love and Eternal Life. This is "Operation Grace".

8. Jacob was the recipient of GRACE because he exercised positive volition in regard to the Lord Jesus Christ.

9. The Sovereignty of God expresses itself toward Esau an unbeliever, in terms of JUDGMENT, and is declared in terms of "I have hated". (God's will: 2 Peter 3:9)

10. The Sovereignty of God expresses itself to Jacob, a believer, in Love and Eternal Life (Grace) and is declared in terms of "Jacob have I loved".

11. God sovereignly chose to deal with Jacob in love with Esau in judgment (hate) because of the choice that each of them made with regard to the cross.

12. God, OMNISCIENT, knew billions of years ago that Esau would be an unbeliever and Jacob a believer. Therefore He simply expresses the direction of His Sovereignty: God is free to save all who believe. God is free to judge all who reject.

13. Romans 9:11, "purpose of God according to election": This was God's plan of salvation (grace) to be extended to the human race. Christ was elected and believers share His election.

Volition of Man
(Category 644)

1. Definition: The act or power of willing or exerting choice.

2. Volition is the decider of the soul, located in the frontal lobe.

3. We have the right to make our own decisions and the obligation to assume our own responsibilities resulting from our decisions. Acts 3:23.

4. God has absolute will. Psalm 135:6. He does whatsoever He pleases. Psalm 115:3. God, in His Sovereignty, PLEASED to give man free will.

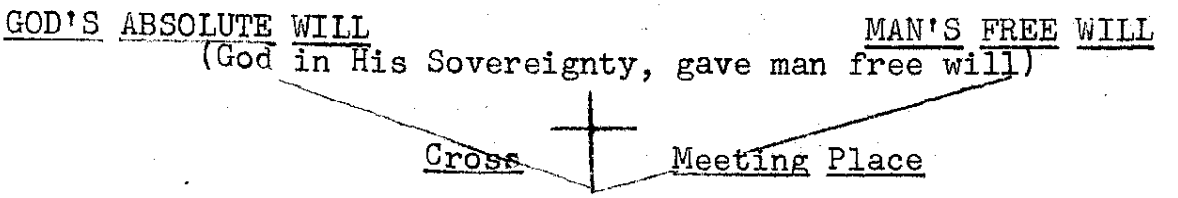
5. The Bible indicates the existence of human volition.

   a. Every 3rd class condition.
   b. Every subjunctive mood (probability)
   c. Every alternative such as John 3:36 indicates this.

6. The very nature of the fall of man presents the fact of free will, for the only way in which Adam could fall was his volition acting independently of God.

7. Any statement of the will of God and/or the will of God not being accomplished indicates the free will of man.

8. Man's free will first meets the Sovereign will of God at the cross. 2 Peter 3:9.



9. Therefore, the ISSUE IN THE HUMAN RACE is: Will the free will of man act in conjunction with the Divine will of God or act independently of it?

10. Volition operates in the realm of the soul for the unbeliever and the believer.

11. As a believer your volition also operates in the realm of the human spirit, where you learn and store doctrine--and this doctrine (epignosis) is the building material for the edification complex.

12. When the believer is filled with the Holy Spirit (operation positive volition, Eph. 5:18) the HS stimulates the proper doctrine at the right time (granted the doctrine has been moved from the mind to the human spirit by faith.)

13. If your human spirit sends doctrine to your volition, you have compliance with the will of God, when not sent no compliance.

14. Be sure you understand the doctrine of VOLITION, IT IS A MAJOR DOCTRINE.

Volition: "Mercy on Whom I will Have Mercy": Romans 9:14-18
(Category 645)
Moses, Pharaoh

1. Explanation #2 to question in Romans 9:14.

2. God is Sovereign and He has the right to deal with man in Justice and +R, or the right to deal with man in Grace (Love and Eternal Life). It all depends upon what man does about Jesus Christ - positive or negative volition.

3. Moses requested to see the glory of God. Ex. 33:19.

4. God answered "I will have mercy . . . compassion": (v. 15) This was the basis on which Moses saw the glory of God. He didn't earn it or deserve it. He was going to see the glory of God because of who and what God is, not who and what Moses was.

   Mercy: Grace in Action
   Compassion: Exercising grace toward someone.

5. Moses is used as an illustration that God deals with the believer in grace.

6. Moses went on positive signals and God is now FREE to deal with him in Grace.

7. Pharaoh is used as an illustration that God deals with the unbeliever in wrath.

8. Pharaoh went on negative signals and God's Sovereignty must now express itself in +R and Justice.

9. Through the negative volition of Pharaoh, the whole known world was evangelized through the plagues.

   v. 18: "mercy on whom He will": Grace in action. God had mercy on the entire earth.

10. "Whom He will, He hardeneth": (The natural course of negative volition is scar tissue--there just isn't any other avenue open.)

11. God revealed Himself first in LOVE to Pharaoh. (Motivation for miracles was love). He rejected love.

    God revealed Himself in WRATH to Pharaoh. (Motivation for miracles was love). He rejected love.

    God revealed Himself in WRATH to Pharaoh - 10 plagues.
    He rejected revelation through wrath.
    People respond in two ways to the gospel:

    a. Love of the gospel
    b. Fear of the alternative

    Pharaoh had negative volition under both conditions, so he was fitted for destruction. v. 22.

Volition: Pride as a Hindrance
(Category 646)

I. The Development

A. When the right lobe is conquered by pride (emotional revolt) it destroys the freedom of human volition.

B. Pride becomes a conqueror, an enslaver. It causes soul slavery. That is why mental attitude sins are the worst. Pride destroys objectivity, and replaces with subjectivity.

C. When pride gains complete control of the frontal lobe, free will does not operate on a bona fide basis: The basis of dealing with the facts.

D. Instead free will operates on the basis of who and what I AM, instead of on THE FACTS.

E. When pride gets into the frontal lobe, it is no longer: "What are the facts?", "what is the doctrine?" etc. but it is "who and what am I?" - it is WHO HE IS THAT COUNTS!

F. When people are operating on ego lust, then doctrine does not stimulate them. No one can understand the issue of the Gospel or be interested in doctrine, when he is operating on ego lust. This emotional revolt leads to temporary or permanent insanity.

II. An Illustration: Nebuchadnezzar (Daniel 4)

A. Nebuchadnezzar is not ready for Gospel hearing yet. He has to go through 7 years of living like an animal before he will consider the facts, rather than himself.

B. The principle of punishment for Nebuchadnezzar: Emotional revolt, category mental illness, whereby Nebuchadnezzar, who tried to exalt himself above man, is going to be so mentally ill that he will go below man and live like an animal for 7 years.

C. The purpose of this illness is so that God can keep His Word. God promises that when anyone reaches God-consciousness and goes on positive signals, God will provide information whereby they can be saved. John 7:17. God did "leave the stump" (v. 23-26) so that when Nebuchadnezzars ego got out of the way, he could evaluate the facts and make a decision.

D. This terrible illness must take place in order for the issue to be clear, in order for Nebuchadnezzar to be objective toward the Gospel.

E. Nebuchadnezzar could not make a decision until he could see the issue. Pride blinded blinded him to the issue. Through this judgment God removed the pride so his volition could decide concerning the Gospel. God had to keep His promises to show the gospel to anyone on positive volition at God-consciousness.

Volition: The Three Wills
(Category 647)

I. Absolute Will (Sovereignty of God)

A. God is a SELF-DETERMINING PERSONALITY (Sovereign - Psalm 135:6).

B. His Sovereignty is ETERNAL (Everlasting), Psalm 45:6 and is INFINITE (Unlimited) -- Luke 1:37.

C. God is the SUPREME BEING OF THE UNIVERSE. 1 Chron. 29:11, 12; Heb. 6:13.

D. God is the KING OF ALL THE EARTH. Psalm 47:7, Heb. 8:1, Isaiah 66:1, Psalm 24:10, 8:1, Psalm 47 and 93 call Him "King."

E. God does whatsoever HE PLEASES. 1 Sam. 2:6-8, Psalm 115:3.

F. God, in His Sovereignty, PLEASED to give angels and man FREE WILL.

G. God does not ignore His other characteristics, nor does He operate outside His plan, Phases 1, 2, 3.

II. Free Will of Angels: (See Categories on Satan's 5 "I wills", as well as info on the Angelic Conflict).

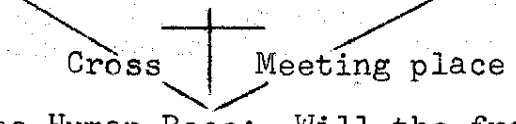
III. Free Will of Man:

A. Every 3rd class condition
Every subjunctive mood (probability)
Every "whosoever will"
Every alternative, such as John 3:36
Man in the "image of God" (who has volition) indicates the existence of human volition.

B. The very nature of the fall of man presents the fact of free will, for the only way in which Adam could fall was his volition working independently of God.

C. Man's free will first meets the Sovereign Will of God at the cross. 2 Peter 3:9.

GOD'S ABSOLUTE WILL — MAN'S FREE WILL
(God in His Sovereignty gave man free will



D. The issue in the Human Race: Will the free will of man act in conjunction with the Sovereign Will of God or act independently of it?

Volition: Vessels of Wrath, Mercy
(Category 648)
Romans 9:20-23 (Honour, Dishonor)

1. Explanation #3 to question in Romans 9:14.

2. God is Sovereign and has ABSOLUTE WILL. Psalm 135:6
He does whatsoever He pleases.

3. He PLEASED to give man FREE WILL.

4. He will not (SOVEREIGN DECISION) and cannot (IMMUTABILITY) coerce that free will. (+R and JUSTICE).

5. God has absolute right and authority over His creatures (VESSELS) by virtue of creation.

6. God has absolute right to dispose of His works as it may please Him. (Potter has power over the clay. Romans 9:21).

7. Regeneration and condemnation are the doing of God. He makes the vessel unto honour and dishonour.

8. But this doing of God is done ONLY upon the exercise of the individuals volition, either negative or positive.

9. The believer is a vessel of honour because of who and what God is, and what Jesus Christ did on the cross and the Holy Spirit did at the moment of salvation.

10. The unbeliever is a vessel of dishonour because he superimposes his volition over God's volition ("not willing that any should perish": 2 Peter 3:9)

11. THEREFORE, the individual chooses (positive or negative) and GOD DOES THE DOING.

12. Romans 9:19, Paul is anticipating the question the heretics will present:

    a. Why does God find fault with Pharaoh? (keep judging)
    b. How can God blame Pharaoh for what happened when God is Sovereign? Answer:

        (1) Application of Divine Essence: +R and J
        (2) Points 6, 7, 8 above
        (3) Point 11 of Category: Volition: Mercy on whom . . .

13. Will the free will of man act in conjunction with the Sovereign will of God, or act independently of it?

Wedding Between Grace and Faith
(Category 649)

I. Grace and Faith are like the right man and the right woman in Category 2 love. (Doctrine of Adam's rib). Gen. 2:21-25

A. Grace is analogous to the right man.

B. Faith is analogous to the right woman.

II. The Relationship of Grace to Faith is as follows:

A. Grace initiates: John 1:14, 1:17

B. Faith responds: Eph. 2:8-9

III. Just as there is only one man for one woman so then in the analogy grace is the only one for faith, and faith is the only one for grace.

IV. Grace and Faith meet at the cross by God's Design and marry. Ephesians 2:8-9

A. God has designed the right time for the right man and the right woman to meet.

B. And God has designed the right place for grace and faith to meet, and that place is the cross.

C. Just as marriage is the framework of Category 2 love, so the cross is the framework for grace and faith. 1 John 5:4-5.

V. At the Cross, Faith responds to Grace resulting in the salvation of the one believing. Ephesians 2:8-9. This union results in a spiritual conception--the new birth. Grace initiates (God's plan--person and work of Christ) and faith responds.

VI. As in marriage--the wife keeps on responding to the husband, so in the Christian way of life faith keeps on responding to grace.

A. You were married on a faith principle--also saved on a faith principle.

B. You kept enjoying marriage by faith--keep on walking by faith.

C. Now after you have become a believer by faith in Christ Jesus it is time for GAP, faith-rest--transferring gnosis to the human spirit (becoming epignosis) by faith. Col. 2:6, 2 Cor. 5:7, Heb. 11:6.

VII. Faith Excludes Works or Human Merit:

A. When you marry the wrong woman, it is hell on earth--and that is exactly what happnes when you marry works.

B. Works is the harem that faith will not tolerate (spiritual adultery)

1. Believe and (Won't save)
2. Confess and (Won't allow growth)

Bringing works to grace results in spiritual idiocy. And the only thing you will understanding is prophecy, and you will be cross eyed spiritually.

C. The harem of works is human good or legalism. Gal. 2:16 (The harem is the works of the law).

1. So faith excludes works or human merit, works is the wrong woman, works is the harem that faith will NOT tolerate. Eph. 2:9, Titus 3:5.

2. For example, "Believe and be baptized" would be bringing a human work to salvation. It is "having believed, be baptized because your sins have been remitted . . ."

3. In spirituality, it would be a believer confessing and feeling sorry for his ins, confessing and vowing to never do it again, confessing and asking forgiveness--. These are works--which add to God's grace application. 1 John 1:9.

D. Grace is a true lady--when a smelly human work tries to make union, she steps aside--grace is made only for faith.

VIII. Since Faith is the ONLY true responder to grace, faith transfers gnosis (knowledge in the recessive lobe to epignosis (full knowledge) in the human spirit. Eph. 3:17

IX. Grace and Faith become one at the cross, therefore they must live together in Phase 2.

A. If you are born-again, then once in your life you have tasted grace.

B. Divorce is when the believer switches to the works concept, instead of the grace concept.

X. Therefore all other works concepts of perception are excluded:

A. Rationalism: The intellectual approach--use of logic, academic approach based on reason along. Liberalism, religion.

B. Empiricism: The five senses approach: Seeing is believing. As Thomas--if I can touch Christ, I'll believe it is Christ. Pentecostalism--the tongues movement today. Works is to grace what scar tissue is to the lungs of the soul.

C. Faith: The only bona fide method perception.

XI. The Marriage of Grace and Faith at the Cross Demands Production in Phase 2:

A. When grace and faith acts on a promise--that produces full knowledge--and God labels it true lasting production.

B. The continual use of faith--to God's grace plan causes continual conception in Phase 2 (the Christian way of life) in the human spirit.

C. Therefore the responder--which is faith--gransfers that doctrine from the mind to the spirit--here doctrine concieves and becomes epignosis.

1. Gnosis (head knowledge does not produce
2. Epignosis (full knowledge in the human spirit) does produce.

XII. This Conception in the Human Spirit leads to four kinds of Children.

A. First Child: Frame of reference children. Cycling of epignosis from the human spirit to the right lobe results in a frame of reference. Doctrine is built on doctrine.

B. Application children: Epignosis is exhaled out the right and left bank of the soul, toward God and toward others.

C. Eyesight children: Epignosis gives sight to the soul. See God with the eyes of faith.

D. Edification Complex Children:

On residual doctrine is built the following structure:

1. Grace Orientation
2. Mastery of the Details of Life
3. Mental attitude love (RMA)
4. Capacity to love in all three categories
5. Inner happiness

Point 12 is developed from such passages as Col. 1, 3; Ephesians 3 & 4, 1 Cor. 1 & 2, and many other passages.

A Point to Ponder

Conception cannot take place in your mind, (left lobe) if conception could take place there you could use human IQ plus divine IQ. However there is only one type of IQ in the Christian life--that is epignosis in the human spirit--it is never your genius, your human ability, or talent that cuts it.

You can use your human mind under the filling of the Spirit to do your job if it calls for rationalism or empiricism, but you cannot use your human mind for anything other than a staging area for the Word.

Woman, Introduction: What is the Woman Like?
(Category 650)

1. Woman originally was created FOR THE MAN, in the image of Adam. Adam was created in the image of God.

2. She was created for man because he was lonely.

3. A woman then is basically a RESPONDER (not the initiator). Only in this situation is she truly happy. She is a helper of the same species.

4. Then in the marriage relationship, the woman fulfills the man; man is complete by having the woman. Genesis 2:23.

5. Woman's capacity to respond is hindered by certain things.

6. Basically a woman is beautiful because of what she thinks: An inner mental attitude of love minus envy, jealousy, hatred, bitterness, implacability, etc.

7. Beauty on the inside survives the attacks of time. 1 Peter 3:1-7

8. If the woman does not have something to which to respond she becomes bitter, frustrated and/or practices some form of escapism, such as clubs, drink etc.

9. The interrelationship between husband and wife must be on of co-operation rather than one of competition.

10. A woman's (believer) stability comes from the daily function of GAP, the building of the ECS, and keeping off emotional revolt.

11. Before marrying a woman should ask, "Can I willingly surrender my soul and body to this fellow for life?"

12. This submission is mental rather than sexual. Sex is an expression of this submission, but there must first of all be the mental attitude.

13. Love is a mental attitude (agapao love). Sex is one of the many expressions of love.

14. Biological differences in the woman and man indicate that man is the initiator, the woman is the responder.

15. Man is told to love the woman with mental attitude love. She will then respond with rapport love. Titus 2:4 compared with Ephesians 5:25.

16. The Bible makes provision for happiness in single status as well as in marriage.

Woman: Eve, First Woman
(Category 651)

1. Even was created by God.

2. Eve was created a grown woman.

3. Eve was created FOR Adam.

4. Eve was made from the rib of Adam.

5. Adam lost something when the rib was taken from him, but God gave it back to him in the form of a beautiful woman.

   Man: "ish" Woman: "ishah"

6. Eve was brought to Adam to be a help to him.

   PRINCIPLE: A woman does not have to hunt for the right man. God has the right man for her.

7. This help was from his own species, not from lower creation. Genesis 2:20. Lower creation is not compatible with human beings, eliminating the concept of common original evolution.

8. Eve was made like Adam:

   a. Body:

   b. Soul: Ability to have fellowship with ADAM

Self-consciousness:	Awareness of Adam
Mind	Thought of Adam
Volition	Decided to please Adam always
Emotion	Appreciated Adam
Conscience	Norms and Standards were Adams

   c. Human spirit: Ability to have fellowship with God

9. Eve was deceived by Satan. She was equally guilty with Adam, who deliberately sinned. 1 Tim. 2:14. (He saw Eve spiritually dead, before he sinned)

10. The only way Adam and Eve could sin (without an OSN) was by the use of their negative volition. This caused spiritual death and brought into existence the OSN.

11. Eve could fellowship with Adam after sinning in her soul. She lost fellowship with God - died spiritually - human spirit - died. She now has scar tissue.

12. Condition of Eve after spiritual death. See category on ADAM.

Works: Evaluation of Believer's (Church Age)
(Category 652)

I. The Evaluation takes place at the Judgment Seat of Christ.

II. The foundation on which the believer builds is the Lord Jesus Christ. Our position in Christ. 1 Cor. 3:11.

III. There are two categories of materials: "work" = production

A. Abestos: (Acceptable to God)

1. Gold speaks of Deity: Anything in your life that is glorifying to God: Faith-rest life, spirituality properly executed, the erection of the ECS, " . . . do all in the name of our LJC."

2. Silver: This speaks of redemption. Witnessing in the power of the Lord Jesus Christ.

3. Precious Stones: These are used to adorn: The manifestation of the Spirit-filled life: Love, joy, peace and on on in Gal. 5:22-23.

B. Combustionable: (Unacceptable to God)

1. Wood: Can be beautiful, but will not stand up under fire. Any activity in the energy of the flesh (OSN) which glorifies self. (Motivation is lust).

2. Hay: Feeds animals, so it is good but burnable. Any energy of the flesh situation where you witness for Christ in the energy of the flesh (out of the bottom circle).

3. Stubble: Good things that people do out of spite, envy, hostility. (People try to get even with people by doing good little things, as well as bad things.)

IV. Observations:

A. Fire will be the tester. Only divine good production will stand. All carnal good works will be burned.

B. Thus everything done by the power of the Holy Spirit will be rewarded.

C. Evaluation is based upon divine norms and standards.

D. False motivation destroys any possibility of rewards during the period that false motivation exists.

E. When you really understand grace you will not be thinking of rewards, but will receive them nontheless.

F. The Judgment Seat of Christ for believers in other dispensations beside the Church Age is found in Rev. 11:18.

Worldiness: 1 John 2:15-17, Mental Attitude of OSN (Category 653)

I. Statement of Worldiness: 1 John 2:15

A. "Stop living the world, neither the things that are in the world."

1. "Love" is a mental attitude - something you think, an absence of mental attitude sins. Romans 5:5, "hearts" refers to the right lobe.

2. "World": To love the world (worldiness) is to have a mental attitude of human viewpoint in your mind. Romans 12:2, "transformed by the renewing of your MIND."

B. PRINCIPLE: The love of the Father and the love of the world cannot co-exist in your mind. They are mutually exclusive. One drives out the other. Isa. 55:8-9.

C. After salvation the first thing that must be straightened out is not hwat you do--but WHAT YOU THINK!

D. Proverbs 23:7, YOU ARE WHAT YOU THINK!

II. There are two viewpoints described in the Word: Divine and human viewpoint, mutually exclusive. Isaiah 55:8-9

III. When you are controlled by the Holy Spirit, with the Holy Spirit teaching the human spirit the Word, this causes the right lobe to be full doctrinally--and is the antithesis of worldiness.

IV. Worldiness goes on IN THE MIND: Overt acts may or may not result.

V. Worldiness is:

A. Thought content in the mind.

B. Anything that excludes the Divine Viewpoint and fails to orient to life on the basis of doctrine.

C. Not determined by where you go or what you do but by what goes on in your mind.

D. Any mental attitude which is contrary to the Word.

E. What you think when controlled by the OSN. Then all of a believer's thinking is worldly, either good thoughts from the area of strength in the OSN, or bad thoughts from the area of weakness in the OSN.

F. Rejection of 1 John 1:9 or thinking you have to do something for forgiveness.

VI. Three factors are necessary to elimate worldiness: The filling of the Holy Spirit, functioning daily under GAP, and staying off emotional revolt.

Welfare: Doctrine of
(Category 654)

1. Since the fall God has ordained that mankind work hard. Genesis 3:19, "In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground; for out of it . . ."

2. This hard work is equated with eating: Genesis 3:17, " . . . cursed is the ground for thy sake; in sorrow shalt thou eat of it all the days of thy life."

3. The capacity for man to hold down a job and get profit for his labors is based on the grace of God. Prov. 10:3, "The Lord will not permit the soul of the righteous to famish . . ."

4. If a man does not provide for his household (a believer) he is worse than an infidel (an unbeliever). 1 Tim. 5:8.

5. Not working results in idleness which breds the busybody and often a bad mental attitude, "The world owes me a living." 2 Thess. 3:6, 10, 11, 12.

6. Welfare is a bona fide principle among the helpless and hopeless.

   a. Among widows in Acts 6:1-7, James 1:27.

   b. Among the fatherless: Orphans: James 1:27 (or a parent deserts)

   c. Among the physically handicapped: Luke 5:17-26

   d. Among the ages: 1 Tim. 5:9, 16

   e. Among those in an emergency: Good Samaritan: Luke 10:30-42. Luke 11:5-10.

7. The abuse of welfare can destroy a nation: 2 Thess. 3:6, 10-12. Proverbs 24:30ff, and Proverbs 30:15 which describes the "give me" attitude.

   a. Welfare is abused when it promotes a mental attitude of laziness.
   b. Welfare is abused when it promotes a lack of initiative.

   c. When it promotes a "society owes me a living" mentality.

8. Welfare can cause excessive taxation: Study the word tribute. Proverbs 12:24, Romans 13:6-7.

9. Illegitimate welfare is the child of socialism where the state cares for every need of the citizen, however it is always is a suicidal path. Lamentations 1:1. Also like Issachar--he became the servant to tribute.

10. What is the Biblical solution to excessive welfare and taxation--lack of motivation in a nation?

In other words where is our nation headed--will it retreat in excessive taxation. No, it won't.

But God does has His solution for national cancer.

a. Judgment:

(1) Economic collaspe: Leviticus 26:26

(2) Slavery: (Slaves do not pay taxes). This is occupation by a foreign power. Lev. 26:25. War which results in slavery.

b. Bible Doctrine: If enough believers will study Bible Doctrine get an edification complex of the soul, they will perserve a nation because of the salt/light principle.

However, up the 4th Cycle the tide can be turned, 26:27. But when a nation gets into the 5th Cycle it is too late.

As the sin unto death is to a believer, the 5th Cycle of Discipline is to a nation.

Wisdom on Old Age
(Category 655)

I. Old Age is a Mental Attitude: 1 Timothy 5:9, Daniel 12, Luke 2:36-38.

II. The Older one becomes as a believer, the better life should become: Old age is last because it is best.

A. You should now have maturity: Edification Complex of the Soul.

B. You should now have only a few years or less until your promotion into glory.

III. Happiness in old age is often dependent upon REMEMBERING YOUR CREATOR IN THE DAYS OF YOUR YOUTH: Eccl. 12:1.

IV. A 20 Fold Description of Old Age: Eccl. 12:3-7
This was written about 1,000 years before Christ was born. Or about 3,000 years ago. See if this description of old age tallies with old age in the 20th century--1971.

A. "When the keepers of the house shall tremble": The arms of the body being shaky, trembling. v. 3

B. "the house": The body: The arms groom the body--feed it, etc. v. 3

C. "the strong men": The legs "shall bow themselves" are unable to support the weight of the body. v. 3

D. "the grinders": The teeth "cease because they are few" Lack of teeth. No false teeth in those days. v. 3

E. "those that look out of the windows": The eyes "be darkened They become blind. No specs in that day--glasses. v. 3

F. "the doors" (the mouth and the ears) "shall be shut" (unable to speak and hear). v. 4

G. "the sound of the grinding" (the gums) "is low": The sound of gums chewing rather than teeth. v. 4

H. "he shall rise up at the sound of a bird": Insomonia v. 4

I. "and all the daughters of music shall be brought low:" He has a problem with his hearing. v. 4

J. "They shall be afraid of that which is high": Altitude bothers older people. They dislike going up stairs, escalaters, they get dizzy at times standing on the edge of a cliff. v. 5

K. "and fears shall be in the way": Very uncertain of themselves, fear loss of health, loss of job, what will I do after retirement? V.5

L. "and the almond tree shall flourish": Once a beautiful head of hair, but the hair has fallen out like almonds fall off a tree. Baldness. v. 5

M. "and the grasshopper shall be a burden": The least weight is a burden to carry, is in a weakened physical condition, has a bad back. v. 5

N. "and desire shall fail": The appetites and passions shall subside, little initiative, they want to die--the mourners are going about the streets. v. 5

O. "or ever the silver cord be loosed": The spinal cord deteriorates, causes loss of faculties, resulting in death. It affects the nervous system, also the respiratory system has problems. v. 6

P. "or the golden bowl be broken": Speaking of an injury to the head caused by falling, or milder problems such as headaches, the inability to concentrate. v. 6

Q. "or the pitcher (heart) be broken at the fountain (heart attack)": The heart failing to function properly. The foundation deals with circulation of blood. v. 6

R. "or the wheel broken at the cistern": Lung problems. Shortness of breath, panting, not enough residual air to properly function. v. 6

S. "then shall the dust return to the earth as it was": The dust (body) returns to earth (it shall die) and go back to what it once was. v. 7

T. "the breath shall return to God": Talking about death. v. 7

Now that is a picture of old age, a very thorough one. Did anything found familiar?

V. The Answer to Old-Age: Eccl. 12:9-14

A. Come into old age as a believer, having been saved previously.

You may have been a hard worker, and lived comfortably.
You may have been kind and helpful, a good neighbor.
You may have been a stable and dependable man--
BUT ALL IS FOR NAUGHT if you have never believed in Jesus Christ, receiving Him as personal Saviour.

B. Come into old age as a mature believer: 12:9

You have functioned under the F/HS
You have functioned under GAP
You therefore have an ECS
You have spent minimum time under Emotional Revolt

Yieldedness, Doctrine of
(Category 656)

1. God the Holy Spirit is +R and will not control when sin is in the life and the OSN controls. Eph. 4:30, 1 Thess. 5:19.

2. When you are controlled by your OSN, you have yielded to your OSN (negative volition) and you cannot yield to God.

3. Therefore use of 1 John 1:9 (Rebound) is necessary to get sin out of your life. Confess plus nothing.

4. When the believer is out of fellowship, the OSN (the old man, the flesh) is in control and the doing is done by man and man receives the glory.

5. When the believer is IN fellowship, God the Holy Spirit is in control. The doing is done by God and God receives the glory.

6. The believer IN FELLOWSHIP (in the bottom circle) is in a state of yieldedness.

7. Yieldedness is the RESULT of BEING in fellowship.

8. 1 John 1:9 is the MEANS OF GETTING into fellowship.

9. YIELDEDNESS is the Principle. 1 John 1:9 is the Practice.

10. Volition is involved in sinning.

11. Volition is used in confession, resulting in YIELDEDNESS (state of being).

12. Upon confession of your sin God:

    a. Forgives the sin you confess to the Father
    b. "cleanses from all unrighteousness": The Unknown or forgotten sins.
    c. Puts you in a condition (experientially +R) whereby He can use you, i. e. YIELDEDNESS.

13. Summation:

    a. Yieldedness is not a one shot experience. It is the PRINCIPLE of BEING in the bottom circle.

    b. The PRACTICE of GETTING THERE is 1 John 1:9.

    c. Command: Romans 12:1, "present": Aorist tense. This is Rebound. You are to consistently use 1 John 1:9 when necessary.

    d. Principle of yieldedness is given in Romans 6:13.

    e. Mechanics of yieldedness is given in 1 John 1:9

    f. Definition: Being willing to do the will of God before you know what the will of God is.

Yieldedness: Syntax
(Category 657)

I. The world "yield" is paristemi in the Greek:

Par = to be beside
Istemi = to stand up

Means to stand beside and be in subservience to someone.

II. Yield is in the Aorist tense, point of time, indicates that the believer is to use rebound when not yielded (out of fellowship).

III. Yield in the PRESENT TENSE: Means "keep on being":

A. State of BEING CONTROLLED by the Holy Spirit (spirituality)

B. Doing the will of God declared in Eph. 5:16-18.

IV. Yield in the PRESENT TENSE PLUS THE NEGATIVE means: The state of being controlled by the OSN (Carnality). Somewhere in the context you will be warned to break control of the OSN. 1 John 1:9 is positive volition.

V. Yield: Aorist tense - practice (means) 1 John 1:9 (Point of time).

VI. Yield: Present tense - principle (result) filling of the Holy Spirit. (State of being - continuous action in present time.)

VII. So what you need to determine is:

A. Are you in fellowship (yielded, present tense)?

B. Are you out of fellowship (unyielded, present tense plus the negative.) If so are you going to get back into fellowship--Aorist--confess sin Biblically.

VIII. Romans 6:13

"neither yield": Present tense plus the negative
"unto sin": OSN, state of control of the OSN.

"but yield": Aorist - point of time use 1 John 1:9.
"as those who are alive from the dead": Spiritually.

Live on the basis of your position. This recognizes that you are in Union with Christ and that you are out of fellowship.

v. 16: "yield": Present tense, habitual state--stay in fellowship.

v. 19: "yielded": Present plus the negative, "yield": Aorist

IX. Romans 12:1, "present": paristemi: Yield, aorist tense.

If you are out of fellowship, use 1 John 1:9. Keep on doing thi as often as necessary.

Heart: Doctrine of the
(Category 658)

Taken from Jeremiah Series: Jer. 20:12, taught 2-28-71 (Started)
Jer. 11:20b, taught 4-2-71 (Finished)

I. Definition of the Heart: In the mentality of the soul there are two frontal lobes. The left lobe is the perceptive lobe called the MIND. The right lobe is the dominant lobe called the HEART.

The unbeliever has a system of wiring that goes from his left lobe to his right. His left lobe is his staging area, but his restrainer, his conscience is probably in his left lobe. Reason--no human spirit--no ruak.

Someimes the heart is replaced by the word "conscience" like sunedesis. Titus 1:15.

II. Essence of the heart: To make it a dominant lobe it must have three things:

a. Frame of reference with memory center.

b. A conscience with norms or standards: Titus 1:15. (vocabulary and experience)

c. A viewpoint which is your opinion of anything in life. The viewpoint can be human or divine, depending upon the doctrinal content of the frame of reference. Isa. 55:7-9, Ezek. 19:11-21.

III. The Doctrinal Content of the Soul: The heart is that part of the soul that contains doctrine and therefore vital in the function of GAP. Remember the human spirit is not soul. Doctrine resides in the human spirit for building the ECS. The only place doctrine is stored in the soul is in the right lobe.

A. 1 Kings 3:9-14: The prayer of Solomon when he was positive.

In the function of GAP there are two target areas for doctrine.

1. The human spirit where it is stored and used for the ECS.

2. The heart: Here is the function of the soul. "understanding heart": The ultimate in greatness from DVP is doctrine in the right lobe.

B. Proverbs 8:5:

"O you stupid ones, UNDERSTAND WISDOM (Hiphil Command) and you fools be you of an understanding heart."

C. Proverbs 15:14:

"The heart of him that has understanding keeps on seeking doctrine, but the mouth of fools feedeth on foolishness."

D. Job 38:36:

Continuing 3rd point: Doctrine activates life through the right lobe. Psalm 19:14.

IV. The Analogy of the Heart: (Goes back to RM, RW). As the dominant lobe in the mentality of the soul is the right man, so the right woman is the emotions. Jer. 17:10, 20:12, Psalm 26:2.

V. The emotions as a responder have capacity for life, the heart is the authority and agressor that gives them such capacity.

The dominant lobe, or the heart, has the content, has the doctrine and gives capacity for life in the following areas.

A. Positive:

1. Love: Deut. 6:4, "Love the Lord your God with all your heart", then the soul (including the emotions). Deut. 11:13, Joshua 22:5.

2. Happiness: Psalm 9:8, 28:7.

a. 19:7: "The law of the Lord (BD) is perfect (His thinking is perfect, doctrine in His thinking, doctrine is perfect) converting the soul (accomplishment of the Word--and changes are made in the soul) the testimony (communication) of the Lord is definite (stabilized) making wise the stupid."

b. 19:8: "The statutes of the Lord are right, rejoicing the heart (happiness is having BD in the RL) the commandment of the Lord is pure, enlightening the eyes." THIS IS APPLICATION!

c. 28:7: "The Lord is my strength and my shield (awareness of Divine Protection) my heart trusted in him (right lobe) I am helped, therefore my heart rejoicing rejoiced and with my song will I praise Him."

3. Dynamics: "He is wise in heart, and mighty in strength; who hath hardened himself against him, and hath prospered." Job 9:4.

B. Negative: Lack of doctrine in the right lobe produces the following in connection with emotional revolt.

1. Sorrow: This is the wrong kind of sorrow. Neh. 2:2, Lev. 26:16.

2. Pressure: Psalm 34:18

3. Discouragement: Numbers 32:7

4. Cowardice: Joshua 14:8

VI. The heart becomes an area of cursing due to lack of doctrine. Lamentations 3:65, Deut. 28:47-48

A. The heart is related to psychosis: Isa. 13:7-8. This passage describes a national psychotic condition.

B. Mental attitude sins are related to the heart: Psalm 66:18

"If I regard iniquity in my heart, the Lord will not hear me."

Also check out Psalm 101:5, and Proverbs 6:18, Matt. 12:35.

C. Revenge is a function of the heart: Prov. 24:1-2

1. Ezek. 25:15-17: Revenge had to have a start. It had to start with a mental attitude sin in the OSN, then it refluxed into the emotions--got them on a revolt, and when they hit the mentality, and destroys it.

2. Jeremiah 17:9: "The deceitful heart is desperately wicked." THE DECEITFUL HEART is the emotional revolt carried to the maximum.

VII. The heart is a way of life for mankind: Prov. 14:10, 23:7 (Capacity for life)

"As a man thinketh in his heart, so he is"

IT ISN'T WHAT YOU THINK IN YOUR MIND (only a staging area) it is what you think in your heart.

A. The heart is related to the grace function: Prov. 24:17

B. The heart is also related to grace orientation: Ex. 23:9

C. The heart is related to the happiness spectrum: 1 Sam. 2:1

D. The heart is the basis of stability in a crises: Psalm 112:7-8

VIII. The Heart is the motivator for spiritual life in 1 Cor. 9:7

"Every man accordingly as he thinks)purposes) in his heart."

IX. The heart is the motivator for temporal life in Exodus 35:25-26; Exodus 36:8.

X. The heart is used as an anthropopathism (Where God is said to have a heart). 1 Sam. 2:35, Psalm 78:72, Jer. 23:20, 30:24.

Ascribing to God something man uses to explain God's policy.

XI. The heart is related to negative volition:

A. The Pharaoh of the Exodus hardened his own heart. Ex. 7:22-23 8:15, 32, 9:34.

1. After he had hardened his heart over a period of time he was locked in negative and therefore God used his hardened heart--meaning that GOD USED HIM IN A HARDENED CONDITION. Exodus 9:12, 16; 10:1, 20, 27. God did not harden his heart.

2. God allowed Pharaoh's heart to go beyond the normal limits of restraint--so he had maximum scar tissue, maximum Emotional Revolt, which brought out God's maximum power. THIS BECAME THE BASIS OF EVANGELIZING THE WORLD IN THAT DAY.

2. Another illustration of a hardened heart was Sihon of Heshbon. See Deut. 2:30.

3. Also check out Deut. 15:7, Psalm 95:8, Heb. 3:8, 1 Sam. 6:6, 2 Kings 17:14, Neh. 9:16, Prov. 21:29, 28:14, Jer. 7:26, 19:15.

XII. The heart is related to positive volition: Romans 10:9-10

XIII. The heart is the basic area for happiness in life:

A. "Gladness of heart": Judges 18:20, 1 Samuel 1:13, 10:9, 16:7, 17:32, 1 Kings 8:66, 2 Chron 7:10, Esther 5:9

B. "Merry heart": Prov. 17:22, 1 Samuel 15:36, 2 Sam. 6:16; 13:28, 1 Kings 3:9, 12; 8:17; 1 Chron. 15:29, many others.

Appendix

Note of Explanation:

Due to the constantly daily teaching of R. B. Thieme Jr. a need arises to keep this notebook current. For example some of the categorical studies in Jeremiah are found in this notebook, but many are not included.

Therefore, it is hoped that by an appendix to this notebook everyone who has received or will receive this notebook can be kept current.

These categories will not be alphabetical, but they will have the date of the tape and the series if possible. Supplements may be sent out when the categories run to 50-100 pages. However to do this--you must keep me posted on your address. It takes too much time to send out a letter to everyone, and the cost of postage is prohibitive. Page numbers will be used to keep things straight here at our end.

You may wish to insert the appendix categories into your notebook in alphabetized order. That is fine. Anything that works for you. The indexes I send out will be ordered as per page number, not per alphabetical arrangement.

In this third section (Pages 607 to 902) I have included only one appendix category, the Doctrine of the Heart (right lobe).

The demand for this Categorical Notebook has been greater than anyone of us here in Brookings anticipated. Therefore sections run out--from time to time. Currently this is the status (May 1, 1971).

1. First section: 1-304) Currently out, will run as soon as the 3rd section is run off.

2. Second Section: 305-607: Good quantity

3. Third Section: 608-902: All stenciled, and partially mimeographed, will be sent out before college students get out in late May of 1971.

Eventually all who desire the complete notebook will get them. However, it may take some patience on everyone's part.

Happy studying.

Categorically yours,

Ralph G. Braun

Ralph G. Braun
P. O. Box 1135
Brookings, Oregon.

The Doctrine of the Ingredients of a Good Congregation
Philippians 2:25-30

1. The ability to identify the one teaching as your right pastor. (Doesn't mean to have to like him personally or that you like his personality, or anything about him--but you can identify him through his teaching as your right pastor.)

   Of course, no one can be your right pastor unless he teaches from the ICE standpoint (isagogically, categorically, and exegetically).

2. Therefore recognition of the pastor's authority and submission to it is a must. Heb 13:7,17

3. Therefore, positive volition toward doctrine (concept of expectation--) προσέρχομαι resulting in assembling to hear doctrine. πρός shows face to face teaching. Heb 10:25; Phil 2:29

4. As the right pastor-teacher teaches doctrine the capacity of the congregation to love Jesus Christ increases.

   a. This capacity is increased because they are functioning under the GRACE APPARATUS FOR PERCEPTION (first in category 1 and then the others follow).

   b. Again, this is only possible as a pastor functions under the ICE concept.

5. The congregation that has its right pastor should have inner happiness or +H from the intake of doctrine as well as the ECS and maximum doctrine in the right lobe.

   a. This means freedom from reversionism.

   b. This means freedom from reverse process reversionism.

6. The ability of objectivity: the right congregation must have objectivity,

   So that the congregation can benefit from the pastor's ministry without getting tangled up in or disillusioned by the pastor's old sin nature.

7. To function in a congregation and at the same time to respect the privacy and the rights of other believer priests.

   When a right pastor and a right congregation get together the inevitable result is that relaxed atmosphere of live and let live.

The Spiritual Gift of Evangelism and its Communication Ministry

I. The Origin of the Gift: Given by God the Holy Spirit at the point of salvation to some men. Eph 4:11 compared to 1 Cor 12:1-31

II. The Purpose of the Gift: To teach evalgelism to all nations: Matt 28:19. Explain teaching evangelism--the Evangelistic Home Bible Class.

III. The Scope of the Gift: Matt 28:19

A. The evangelist is responsible for pre-evangelism, today evangelism and post evangelism up to and including the doctrine of water baptism. Matt 28:19

B. Upon performing the function of water baptism, the evangelist turns the convert over to his pastor-teacher. Matt 28:20

IV. The Content of the Gift:

A. The evangelist has a specialized ministry in the area of giving out information that:

1. Brings the individual to God-consciousness: Romans 1; Matt 18

a. Pre-age of accountability
b. Post-age of accountability

2. Brings the individual to Gospel-hearing: Romans 10:13-21
The Covenants--Abrahamic, Palestinian, Davidic and New

B. The evangelist has the responsibility to followup:

1. On Basic Doctrine to the point of baptizing the convert:

a. He will teach the cross and two circles
b. He will teach positional truth
c. He will teach rebound
d. He will teach faith-rest
e. He will teach how divine good is produced

2. Then he will turn the convert over to a categorical pastor-teacher in one of several ways:

a. He will start a church with the converts
b. A "traveling" pastor-teacher will come in Matt 28:20

Start teaching Baby Doctrine
Start teaching the Techniques
Get him to the place of Grace Orientation, starting his ECS

c. Then a permanent P-T will come on the field.

V. The Contrast of the Gift (Evangelism) with that of the Pastor-Teacher:

A. The evangelist will have a burning desire to see souls won to Christ--and leads souls to Christ; whereas the pastor has a burning desire to see his sheep walk in truth: 3 John 4 compared with the Great Commission

B. The evangelist deals (in the function of his ministry) with unbelievers, whereas the pastor-teacher deals with believers. Ephesians 4:12 and following, also Matt 28:18-20

C. The evangelist deals with teaching evangelism, whereas the pastor-teacher deals with teaching the whole counsel of doctrine.

(The evangelist however knows as much doctrine as the P-T--his gift does not enable him to communicate it as a shepherd of the flock.)

D. The evangelist upon occasion can do the "work of a pastor" and the pastor the "work of an evangelist." 2 Tim 4:5

E. The evangelist, however, is not to pastor a local church for any length of time; this is the ministry of the pastor-teacher.

F. The evangelist visits, goes out into the highways and hedges where the unbelievers are--the pastor-teacher does not visit, his gift demands that he be in one place--studying, teaching, troubleshooting and family. Close study of the pastoral epistles (1 and 2 Timothy, Titus)

However the evangelist comes in two packages:

The one that constantly travels--and has mass meetings.
The one that stays stationary--and works a local community from a local church.
Both will always have a home church and pastor and the pastor keeps him straight.

G. The evangelist uses much one-on-one method (personal work) in his ministry, the pastor-teacher uses no one-on-one method; but ministers in public assembly under the doctrine of privacy. (Example: the obstetrician waives aside privacy in physical birth.)

H. The evangelist will always look at the Word of God from the standpoint of his spiritual gift (how can I be equipped to reach the unbeliever) and the pastor-teacher will always look at the Word of God from the standpoint of his spiritual gift, how can I build up a believer in the faith.

VI. The Occupational Hazard of the Gift:

A. Trying to make everybody (pastor and lay people) into evangelists.

B. Trying to get everyone to win souls as the prime purpose of the Christian life.

C. Building the entire body of doctrine in the Word around evangelism--such as spirituality, growth and maturity.

D. Not studying--having four or five canned messages, or 10 or 12--and do a rerun night after night.

E. Not having a home church and putting himself under a pastor-teacher who will keep him straight.

F. Getting into the following snares:

1. Christian celebrity time (big name speakerism--or the foreign Bible teacher).

2. Mass promotions--with set-up men--involvement men.

3. Promoting yourself--as No. 1 or No. 2, or as this or that. World traveling, has made 14 trips to the Holy Land, etc.

4. Not handling finances correctly.

5. Getting so big, you cannot control your team.

VII. <u>The Reward of the Gift:</u> Daniel 12:3; 1 Peter 5:4

Doctrine of Adam's Rib

I. There are three grace gifts from Jesus Christ to the human race. (They cannot be purchased; they cannot be earned; they cannot be deserved; they cannot be worked for.)

A. The Right Woman: Jesus Christ built her

B. The Right Salvation: Jesus Christ did it (Person and Work)

C. The Right Doctrine: Jesus Christ thought it

II. The Gift of right woman is the OLDEST gift in human history. Gen 1:26-27; 5:1-2; 2:7, 18-25.

A. When man was created Jesus Christ said, "Not good that man should be alone." Gen 2:18

B. Therefore in grace Jesus Christ built a right woman for the right man and He brought her to the man.

C. The relationship was established from the beginning (during innocence) and continued after the fall!

D. It was designed for maximum human happiness.

E. Even an unbeliever whose life is a total failure and has an otherwise miserable life, has great happiness in this grace gift from Jesus Christ. Eccl 9:9

III. The Greatest Attack on this Gift (and this divine law): (from the soul)

A. Carnality resulting in scar tissue

B. Emotional revolt resulting in scar tissue

C. Reversion resulting in scar tissue

These attacks are accompanied by:
1. Fornication
2. Promiscuity

Jer 31:22; Prov 5; Eccl 7:26-29; 1 Cor 11:3-16; Prov 6:20-32 (These passages deal with the attack.)

IV. The Perversions of Right Man, Right Woman:

A. Autoerotism (masturbation) Self responds to self

B. Homosexuality, lesbianism Self responds to the same sex
Lev 18:22; Romans 1:26,27

C. Beastiality Lev 18:23 Self responds to animals

D. Adultery (fornication) Exodus 20:14; Prov 5:20; 6:32--wrong man Self responds to wrong man or wrong woman

V. Mental attitude sins are also destructive to right man, right woman relationship: (Jealousy is the best illustration, Song of Solomon 8:6,7; Prov 27:4; 6:34 (in that order).

VI. Negative volition toward doctrine destroys right man-right woman relationship: Jeremiah's snit: Jer 15:15-21; 16:21,22; 17:9-11; 12:7-9, back to 15:8,9.

VII. Analogies to right man-right woman:

A. The Lord and Israel: Jer 2; 3; 13; Ezek 16; 23.

B. The Lord and the Church: Eph 5:26-33

C. The function of GAP: James 1:19-22

D. The right man is the shepherd and bishop of the right woman's soul, just as Jesus Christ is the shepherd and bishop of the believer's soul: 1 Peter 2:25 cf. 1 Peter 3:1

E. The right woman is the glory of the man just as the believer's ECS is the glory of God. 1 Cor 11:7

VIII. The Principle of Right Man-Right Woman is related to the laws of establishment:

A. Monogamy is ordained of God to remind mankind that there is only one right man for one right woman (and vice-versa). 1 Cor 7:2-4

B. Under the laws of establishment RM-RW relationship becomes divine institution No. 2 , which is marriage.

C. Marriage is the protection for category two love. Heb 13:4; 1 Cor 7:9; 1 Tim 5:14; Romans 7:2,3; Gen 2:24-25; Eph 5:22,25,28,31,33.

D. Marriage forms the basis for stability in society and rejects the thecry of both anarchy, promiscuity, and communal living.

E. Since the RM-RW relationship was designed for the ultimate in human happiness, marriage is both a protection and a boundary for category two love.

F. Marriage is also protected by DI #3 where the parents have responsibility for training their children for both life and marriage.

G. Before parents existed they were mentioned for that reason in Gen 2:24.

H. The husband (or the man) is the authority in marriage. Eph 5:22

I. But God protects the woman from tyranny for the man who has that authority is first of all a little boy loved and taught by his mother. His mother teaches him respect for womanhood, which keeps him from becoming an animal; Prov 31:1 "... the doctrine that his mother taught him."

IX. The Relationship of RM-RW must also be related to mankind at the time of the fall: (the relationship to the fall)

A. God confirms that the authority of the husband is not changed after the fall: Gen 3:16b; Eph 5:22, "... he shall rule over thee."

B. However in the fall man and woman reverse their roles

1. Adam responded to the woman: Gen 3:6.

2. Eve was the aggressor.

C. Until this time (fall) sex had been simply for ultimate and human happiness. This concept is continued, but something else is added to sex which was not there before (it is the means of perpetuation of the human race--but in sex this is secondary--its primary function is pleasure, happiness and delight of RM-RW).

D. Therefore the woman bears the children: Gen 3:16 and through the woman Christ comes into the world so that He can go to the cross: Gen 3:15.

X. An amplification of the grace aspect of the gift of right woman:

A. There are two miseries that cause a man a great deal of unhappiness Prov 19:13

1. A foolish son
2. The contentions of a wife (a continual dropping)

B. There are two things in life where you are graced (in this context) Prov 19:14

1. An inheritance from your parents
2. A right woman with Bible doctrine (she either has it when you marry her, or gets it after marriage).

C. There are two passages which describe a grace lady, right woman type: (A right woman who GAPed until you came along--YOU'VE BEEN GRACED!)

1. Prov 19:14b: "... and a prudent wife is from the Lord." The RW is a GRACE GIFT FROM THE LORD!

a. "Prudent:" Hiphil participle of sakal. "to be continually caused to be a wise (BD) wife is from the Lord." part.= continual function

b. She had a continual affair with BD while she was single and waiting--and this means she will have a continual fantastic happiness in the marriage relationship.

2. Prov 18:22, "Whoso findeth (qal perfect of matsa)" It means to discover--implies soul climax.

a. This is the word "to discover" and it is the soul recognition of RM towards his RW.

b. The Lord brought the first man to the first woman in grace.

c. When Adam saw the first woman he said ISHAH! He recognized her in his soul. Ishah was the expression of the first soul climax in history.

d. The burning of 1 Cor 7:9 is not a wave of libido, but that soul climax in which every compartment of the soul's essence is stimulated to total concentration (on what the Lord has brought).

e. The extension of this soul concentration on the RM, or RW will be the fulfillment of category two love.

"He who has identified his RW has found (discovered) good (tobh which is the same word as in Gen 2:18) and obtaineth (hiphil imperfect of poutz) and receives ratson (grace and an object of delight)."

Literally, "He who has found his right woman has found the good and has received grace the object of delight from the Lord ..."

Tests, failures and successes of Peter

I. Pre-Choosing of Apostles Period: (the call--salvation) Luke 4-6:11
(Salvation doctrine--cross and two circles)

II. The Choosing of Apostles: Luke 6:12-19
(Ready for ECS doctrine)

A. Grace Orientation: Peter passes: Luke 9:18 (Person and work of Christ)

B. Mastery of the Details of Life: (BEARCAT TO PASS!)

1. Challenge: Luke 9:23-26 (Daily study in the Word of God)

2. Flunked: Luke 9:27-36 (Transfiguration test)
Instead of being occupied with Christ, he felt the detail of rock tabernacles was the answer.

3. Flunked: Luke 9:37-43 (Details of service--couldn't handle them)

4. Illustration of flunking a detail test: Luke 9:57-62

Detail of where to live-- (being tied down)
Detail of family (in-laws)
Detail of explanation to family--why I'm doing thus and so.

5. Passed: Luke 14:25-27 (Lots of detail doctrine in ch.10-14--14:16-20)
Repetition of Luke 9:23-26--indicates that now they finally passed the test!

C. Relaxed Mental Attitude:

1. Flunked: Matthew 15:23, "Send her away ..."

2. Flunked: Matthew 16:22 "this shall not be ..."

3. Passed: Matthew 18:21 Forgiveness, grudges--RMA!

D. Capacity to Love: Rapport Test

1. Challenged to pass: Luke 22:31-34

2. Flunked: Luke 22:54-62; Mark 14:17 (Horrors of being out of fellowship)

3. Passed: John 21:15ff

E. Plus H (Inner divine happiness)

1. Challenged to pass: Luke 24:36ff, note especially vs. 41,44.

2. Passed: Luke 24:50-53
Peter's first and second sermons: Acts 2:14 40;3:12ff

The Doctrine of Suffering: The Three Groans

I. The Groan of Nature: Rom 8:18-22 (Analogy to Suffering)

A. The suffering of nature is used to illustrate the suffering of man. Groaning (looks back to the sin of Adam). Travail--looked forward to the Second Advent.

B. Not realized widely but creation is under a terrible handicap, a terrifc burden and it groans under its curse: "cursed the earth for your sake." Genesis 3

II. The Groan (Suffering) of the Believer: 8:23-25 (Principle of Suffering)

A. Vs. 23: "And not only they:" referring to nature

1. "but ourselves also:" the believer in phase 2.

2. "which have even the first-fruits of the Spirit:" appositional genitive Referring to five things the Holy Spirit does at the moment of salvation:

a. Regenerates: Titus 3:15
b. Baptism of the Holy Spirit: 1 Cor 12:13
c. Seals to the day of redemption 2 Cor 1:22
d. Indwells the believer: 1 Cor 6:19,20
e. Gives at least one spiritual gift: 1 Cor 12

This is the down payment on the inheritance in phase 3, Eph 1:14. The Holy Spirit is the basis of spirituality in phase 2.

"We keep on having the first-fruits ..." lit.

3. "we keep on groaning" pres.act.ind. (Suffering is covered as a principle.) Refers to the believer's suffering in time for at least 20 different reasons.

4. "within ourselves:" all suffering is connected with the inner man (within the soul).

5. "waiting for the adoption:" pres.act. part.--eager anticipation in the right lobe.

a. Adoption of positional sanctification: in Christ we all have the rights of full sons.

b. Adoption of ultimate sanctification: in heaven with a new resurrection body.
So the self-consciousness, mentality, volition, conscience and emotions can be affected by the body or sufferings--and sometimes you can be reduced to helplessness.

B. Vs. 24: We will be DELIVERED: PHASE 3--is our hope.

1. "Hope:" refers to phase 3 in the plan of God. This is hope placed in eternity future. We are delivered by hope.

2. Hope is a mental attitude--it is the reality of phase 3 doctrine.

3. "a hope that is seen is not a hope:" This is not referring to confidence in phase 2; this is referring to what is in store for us in eternity.

4. "for what a man is seeing, he is not hoping for it--it is there." He has it.

C. Vs. 25: Hope is an extension of the faith-rest technique.

1. You faith-rest it until you are face to face with the Lord.

2. Your patience is rewarded--lots of things in life are based on waiting. For example: the Lord Jesus Christ is waiting--for the process of time--to solve the Angelic Conflict.

3. Patience is a mental attitude--it is the attitude of maturity--where Bible Doctrine is understood, absorbed, and applied.

And you don't go to faith-healers. You evaluate suffering in the light of doctrine--in your sane moments.

III. The Groan of the Holy Spirit: 8:26,27

A. Vs. 26: THE PLAN OF GOD IS GREATER THAN THE WORST SUFFERINGS life can offer. (Grace in suffering: how cursing is turned to blessing)

1. "In a similar manner"

2. δὲ καὶ Two particles which indicate that the ministry of the Holy Spirit is distinct from and greater than the groaning of creation, and believers. FAR SUPERIOR! PARTICLES CANNOT BE TRANSLATED. There is no system of particles in the English language.

a. English is not an intellectual language (sometimes a literary language but never an intellectual language).
b. It is not an organized language whereby one sentence can mean one thing by interpretation. There is no system of suffixes; there is no system of morphology.

3. "the Holy Spirit helps"

sunantilambanetai, P.M.I.

a. "helpeth:" A triple compound verb: συναντιλαμβάνεται "with, instead of, to receive" equals--sun is a preposition of assistance, anti is in turn, or in place of, and the root means to seize, to assist.

It means, "to support someone who is in a hopeless and helpless situation." To come to the aid of someone. IT MEANS TO COME INSTEAD OF THEM WITH A PRAYER.

ANYTIME A BELIEVER IS PUT INTO A POSITION WHERE HE CANNOT UTILIZE DOA (Divine Operating Assets), Romans 8:28 still holds true because of this.

In what ways can a believer be helpless?

1. Mental illness when the volition is stuck in neutral.
2. In a coma, when one is unconscious
3. When one is in shock but conscious
4. When an imbalance of hormones occurs, as for example in a woman.
5. When one is paralyzied, as in electrocution.
6. When one is delirious, hysteria, tantrums, panic, deranged.
7. An unexpected tragedy which leaves one completely speechless, unable to think.

b. "our infirmities" ἀσθένεια
It means our hopelessness (in context), our helplessness, to be weak, to lack strength, to not know what to do, to be impotent, to have lots of inability.

ἀ negative, σθενός strength.
It takes thought to pray, to use faith, to apply. THERE ARE TIMES WHEN YOU CANNOT.

PRINCIPLE: THE HOLY SPIRIT PROTECTS you and prays for you--so no one can tamper with your volition--when it cannot operate. IT IS THE SAME PRINCIPLE AS CHILDREN IN INNOCENCE, when they are not volitionally able to exercise.

c. "for we know not:" οὐκ οἴδαμεν ouk oidamen. The perfect act.ind. used with the strongest negative. It is used as a dramatic present.
The soul is not functioning (self-consciousness, mentality, etc.)

d. "we should pray for:" future middle ind. Middle means the Holy Spirit benefits us when we cannot benefit ourselves.

Prayer from the believer would only be beneficial when the believer can think--but when that is knocked out the Holy Spirit takes over.

προσεύχομαι: proseuchomai--the Holy Spirit is face to face with the Father in intercession!
The believer cannot confess his sins; he JUST CANNOT FUNCTION!
The Holy Spirit takes over.

PRINCIPLE: You come out of a period of suffering, not because you know doctrine, but because of the great unseen ministry of the Holy Spirit praying from inside the believer.

e. "because HE HIMSELF makes intercession:" pres.act.ind. of
hupereutugchano
ὑπερεντυγχάνω (only used onced in NT) It means to plead continually on behalf of one (uper) who is helpless.

f. "with groanings that cannot be uttered"
Unutterable groanings; the content of the prayer is not given, but the prayer is offered by the Holy Spirit from inside of the believer.
You do not pray to the Holy Spirit or to Jesus, ONLY TO THE FATHER.

B. Vs. 27 The Father who answer the prayer

1. "And He (the Father) who keeping on searching (pres.act.participle)

   a. The Father knows when you can think and when you cannot.

   b. The Father keeps track of our soul--and when in shock, in neutral, in the throes of mental or severe physical illness.

2. "the heart:" (five things--self-consciousness, mentality, etc.)

3. "knows:" God the Father understands the prayers of God the Holy Spirit. Perfect tense used as a present.

4. "the mind of the Spirit:"
   Prayer is mental communication, it may be verbal--but thoughts were behind those words.

5. "because he (pres.act.ind.) keeps on making intercession"
   This is a continuous ministry of the Holy Spirit; He is faithful in all generations of believers.

6. "kata" is according. It is according to the norm or standard of Bible doctrine, God's mind.

The basic mental attitude orientation to any suffering in life is the Romans 8:28 passage.

Guidelines When Conversing With Negative People

I. ONLY a maximum amount of doctrine can keep the tongue in line: James 3:2, 8, 17.

A. "A perfect man:" τελείος ἀνήρ completed, mature; Heb 5:14, "full grown"

B. "to bridle:" Aor.Act.Inf. of χαλιναγωγέω. To guide with a bridle, to hold in check.

II. BADMOUTHING IS symptomatic of EVERY KIND of human viewpoint: Jm 3:16. Illustrations follow:

A. He is unapproachable, YOU CAN'T TALK WITH HIM.

B. He is too dogmatic, YOU CAN'T REASON WITH HIM.

C. He is never wrong, YOU CAN'T CORRECT HIM.

1. "An authoritarian manner of declaration that approaches blind dogmatism"

2. "An all encompassing omniscience on all subjects he undertakes to discuss"

3. "An unapproachable, intolerant spirit, unwilling to be taught and unreachable with discussion on opposing views."

D. He is too conceited, YOU CAN'T TOUCH HIM.

E. He is a little dictator, YOU CAN'T TELL HIM ANYTHING.

III. BADMOUTHING attacks in two areas:

A. The Person of the COMMUNICATOR: 2 Cor 10:1,2,9

B. The MESSAGE of the COMMUNICATOR: 2 Cor 10:4-6

IV. BADMOUTHING is ultimately against the Essence of God and the Mind of God

A. The Preaching is TOO strong and personal

B. There is too little preaching and too much teaching.

C. Categorical doctrine is the only right way--therefore all other ministers no matter how fundamental have been all wrong.

D. The Original Languages are used to snow me, I can't check him out! (sheep checking out the shepherd?)

E. The language in the pulpit is crude, it offends me.

F. The necessity of daily teaching bothers me, no previous generations have emphasized it.

G. The local church is emphasized to the exclusion of Bible colleges, seminaries, camp programs, DVBS, Child Evangelism, missions, etc.

H. His message is intolerant of other views, churches, denominations, individuals.

I. He does not have a loving message.

J. He (in his message) neglects the social needs of his congregation.

K. He does not give an invitation--how can people get saved here?

L. He is a very subtle, false teacher, he is the devil incarnate.

V. <u>The Solution to people who BADMOUTH?</u>

A. Stay in fellowship, function under GAP daily.

B. Consider the source, Gal 6:1 "RESTORE:"
1. Possibly they need more information "What do you think..."
2. Possibly they need to be questioned "Are you in fellowship ...?"
3. Possibly they need to be set straight "Look, I don't have to listen to you stating garbage like that ..." CHALLENGE HVP 2 Cor 10:3,5
4. Possibly it is Scriptural to AVOID THEM 2 Cor 6:11,12; Rom 16:17,18

C. Have you talked face to face with the Pastor about this? Titus 2:15 (I always put a person on the defensive--)

E. You are simply out of line, period. Do you understand me?? (Let's go and see the pastor together.)
1. Do they come to Bible Class daily?
2. Are they quoting what someone else says--
3. Are they the spokesman for a group of people (but won't give any names) "There are a number of people who are dissatisfied."

F. Remember, if people have rejected grace--in 1 John 1:9 or asking Jesus into their heart, you are dealing with carnal believers--emotional revolt believers--or reversion believers.

The Doctrine of Reversion

1. Definition: Reversionism is the believer going from the ECS or an approximation of it to the emotional revolt of the soul; while for the unbeliever, reversionism is going from the establishment in the conscience to an emotional revolt of the soul.

   This is why young people can be conservative in high school, liberals in college, and afterwards degenerate idiots--or go back to the establishmen

   Without the establishment there is no freedom.

2. Mechanics: Reversion takes place when a believer begins to neglect BD and fails to function daily under GAP. 1 Cor 10:12; 2 Peter 2 in regard to the unbeliever.

3. Three Illustrations of Reversionism:

   a. Mizpeh crowd of Jeremiah's generation: Jer 42-44
   b. Exodus generation in their attitude toward Moses
   c. Illustration of the Corinthians: 2 Cor 10:1,2

4. The Principle of reversionism is described by a phrase in Gal 5:4: "... falling from grace." Does not mean to lose salvation; it means to fail to utilize grace and substitute legalism, apostacy, reversionism.

5. Mental attitude sins are a major contributor to reversionism: Heb 12:15.

6. The recipients of the Hebrew epistle were involved in reversion: Heb 5:11-14.

7. Reversion recovery involves:

   a. Rebound

   b. GAP--in the realm of basic doctrine Heb 6:1,2

8. Reversion recovery is impossible under circumstances of apostacy Heb 6:3-6. This is a passage with five aorist participles, the last of which says, "having fallen away it is impossible to renew them again in regard to the ABC's of the Gospel so long as they crucify the Son of God afresh (the crucifying of the Son of God afresh continued their reversionism).

   What was "crucifying the Son of God afresh"? Believers in Jerusalem were entering the temple with animal sacrifices. They had believed in Christ as the Supreme sacrifice--and then to go back to the animal sacrifices--was tantamount to blasphemy. They were equating Christ as a literal animal lamb and not the Son of God.

9. Reversionists always reject the authority of great Bible teachers.

   a. Moses: Ex 16:20; 17:3; Num 11:5

   b. Jeremiah: Jer 44:16

   c. Apostle Paul: 2 Cor 10:1,2

10. Those involved in reversion are overpowered by their circumstances and suffer from a tortured soul. 2 Peter 2:7,8 The tortured soul is scar tissue on the right and left banks. THIS WAS LOT'S CONDITION IN SODOM.

11. Reversionism is also described as an unstable soul in 2 Peter 2:14. Such a believer becomes classified as cursed. These are victims of false teachers who are unbelievers.

    In Jude we have false teachers who are believers.

The Doctrine of Reversion Applied

(Watching a Nation Die)

I. The Reality of Reversion: Ezekiel 33:23-33

A. Loss of Individual Freedom: 33:23-27

B. Loss of National Freedom: 33:28,29

C. Loss of Bible Doctrine: 33:30,31

1. Increased Church attendance: 33:30 (on Sunday morning)

2. Increased hearing: 33:30

3. Decreased application: 33:31

a. Expressed in MOUTH love: "Smile, God loves you."
b. Expressed in MENTAL ATTITUDE SINS.

4. Increased apostacy: 33:32

a. Lovely personality
b. Friendly church
c. Pleasing musical services
d. Pleasant surroundings

D. Loss of Prophet (Bible teacher) 33:33

II. The Doctrine of Reversion:

A. Definition:

1. For a believer: Going from ECS (G/O, MDL, RMA, Rapport Love, +H) to emotional revolt of the soul.

2. For an unbeliever: Going from the Divine Institutions (Establishment, morality) to emotional revolt of the soul (2 Peter 2:19-22).

B. Mechanics: Reversion takes place when a believer neglects Bible doctrine and circulation in the soul 1 Cor 10:12.

C. Illustrations: Attitude of a reversionist: they knock categorical teaching and the teacher.

1. Mizpeh crowd of Jeremiah's generation: Jer 42-44.

2. Exodus generation in their attitude toward Moses: Ex 17; Num 20; 1 Cor 10.

3. Corinthian's attitude toward Paul: 2 Cor 10:1,2.

Where do you fit in?

D. The Slogan of the Reversionist: LOVE AND PEACE (believer and unbeliever) (But it is a pseudo love and peace)

1. Psalm 28:1ff. Notably verse 3.

"speak peace:" This verse is dedicated to the admission of Red China to the United Nations. The UN is used as one big spy organization.

2. Ezek 33:31: "show much love:" "Smile, God loves you." Button evangelism. The face of a moron smiling at you.

3. Jeremiah 9:8, "speaketh peaceably"

4. Jeremiah 42-44: Begins with "we will obey... ends with "thou speakest falsely."

5. 1 Thess 5:3, "for when they shall say (false clergymen) PEACE AND SAFETY: then sudden destruction ..."

The answer to this: Salvation, filling of the Holy Spirit, function under GAP, stay off emotional revolt--that is, DON'T REVERT!!

E. The Condition of the Reversionist: Isaiah 29:9

1. HE IS ASLEEP: Isaiah 29:10

This signifies being out of fellowship: Eph 5:14, "wherefore he saith, Awake thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and Christ shall give you light." Their temporal fellowship with Christ is gone.

2. HIS LEADERSHIP IS BLINDED:
   a. Prophets (to declare): those working with the spoken Word
   b. Rulers: those in places of government--politicians
   c. Seers (to see): the scribes--those who worked with the written Word.

3. HIS EDUCATED LEADERSHIP doesn't know the WORD OF GOD and therefore cannot teach it, vs. 11.

4. His FRIENDS have no answer--I've not been educated in the Bible, vs. 12.

5. He and his gang bad-mouth the Lord and those who faithfully teach the Word of God. (I'm talking about Christians who bad-mouth.)
   a. Their understanding of Christianity is MOUTH: it may be chanting, reciting, reading, responding or whatever--BUT IT IS MOUTH. Lip, "Smile, God loves you."
   b. They have no heart (soul): frame of reference, conscience, viewpoint.

6. HE WILL KNOW THE TERROR OF THE FIVE CYCLES OF DISCIPLINE which take a nation out:
   a. Prov. 30:11, "There is a generation that curseth their father, and doth not bless their mother."
   b. Lev 26:14, "But if you will not hearken unto me ..." The five cycles of discipline follow.

Doctrine of Emotions

1. The vocabulary problem: Anatomy in the languages of the ancient world always doubled for functions of the soul because they did not have a psychological vocabulary--a vocabulary for the soul.

   There are three words used for emotions in the Bible:
   a. Belly: (stomach) Prov 13:25; 18:8; 26:22; Rom 16:17,18; Phil 3:19.
   b. Bowels: Gen 43:30; 1 Kis 3:26; Jer 4:19; 31:20; Lam 1:20; 2:11; Phil 1:8, Philemon 12,20.
   c. Reins: Psalm 7:9; 26:2; 139:13; Prov 23:16; Jer 12:2; 17:10; 20:12.

The heart in the Bible is not used in Scripture for the pump; it is used generally for the right lobe. It is always important to know the right lobe is the most important, the left lobe is always a staging area.

Left Lobe (staging area) recessive lobe
1. Staging area for information which goes in and you drop it immediately, it goes out.
2. Or it may cycle into the human spirit by faith.
3. Or it may be retained long enough to pass a test.
4. Or it may be remembered long enough to tell someone else (like a dirty joke)

Right Lobe (dominant lobe)
1. Frame of reference with memory center
2. Conscience: norms and standards
3. Viewpoint: preferably divine viewpoint

2. Definition and Function of the Emotions:
   a. Emotions are the responder and appreciator of the right lobe (heart--dominant lobe).
   b. The right lobe is analogous to the right man, while the emotion is comparable to the right woman.
   c. As there are two kidneys, two adrenal glands, so there are two emotions in the soul (fem. plural of kiljah).

      This always shakes up the troops, one man--two women. Looks like plurality of wives.
   d. So two emotions would indicate breaking the analogy like two women; however, there are no harems in the soul structure.

e. One woman has two parts (the emotion is one woman with two parts)--body and soul. The woman's soul responds to her right man in love; the woman's body responds to her right man in sex.

f. In a similar manner both reins or emotions respond to the heart or right lobe.

(1) The left rein is capacity for spiritual life and responds to spiritual phenomena.
Everyone has two lives, a spiritual life and a temporal life. They are very closely related and inter-related but for analysis they must be separated.

(2) The right rein is capacity for temporal life and responds to temporal phenomena (human).
Everyone has a temporal response.

g. Positive response from the heart produces the spectrum of happiness (variety of happinesses). (As a point of doctrine, +H is in the soul.)

You run a gamet of responses that makes you aware of happiness. Happiness in the frontal lobe elicits happiness in the emotions.

Responder may be enthusiastic happiness; may be tranquility happiness.

Principle: The happiness responses are in the emotion of the soul.

(1) Happiness is there but emotions give you an appreciation of happiness.

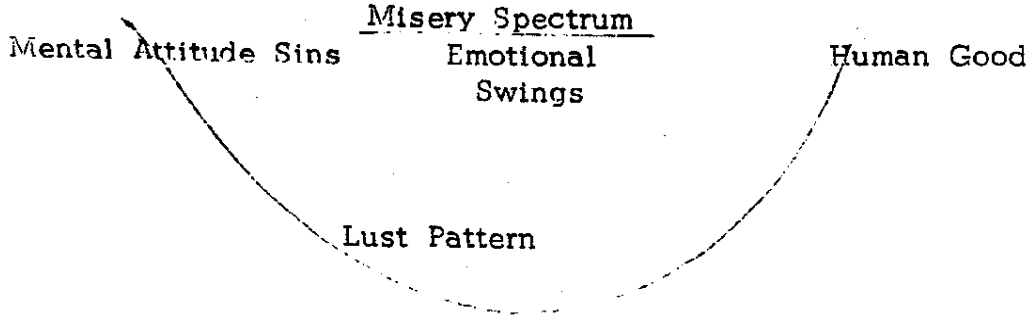
(2) All the responders of the soul are emotions.

h. Negative response from the heart produces the spectrum of misery. (Back up of MAS, the emotional revolt, psychosis of the soul, wide emotional swings)

The bladder backs up into the kidneys, eventually the kidneys are destroyed--just so the MAS back up into the mentality.

The tongues movement--spiritual fornicators, pride--they will tell you at the drop of a hat how they had their estatic breakthrough (which is nothing more than their bladder backing up into their emotions).

THE DOMINANT LOBE MUST RUN THE SOUL!!! MUST DOMINANT THE SOUL!



i. Since the emotions were never designed to dominate the soul, wide emotional swings demonstrate the inability of the emotions to dominate.

You take your homebody wife--responding to you, Mr. Big D, "yes, my lord" and put her up as head of a corporation--then try to live with her at home. Headaches and tension result.

Emotions can be feminine or witchy--THE EMOTIONS WEREN'T DESIGNED TO RUN THE SOUL!

j. The emotion is the woman, the right lobe is the man--the dominator of the soul. RM-RW THIS IS WHY THE RIGHT LOBE CONTAINS:

(1) Frame of reference
(2) Conscience THE EMOTION DOES NOT HAVE THIS!
(3) Viewpoint

k. So for this reason the heart contains the frame of reference, the conscience, and the viewpoint and thus the heart is the dominant lobe.

So by definition the emotions are the appreciator of the soul; by function the emotions respond to the right lobe.

3. Emotions are tested by God Ps 7:9; 26:2; Jer 11:20; 17:10; 20:12; Rev 2:23.

a. In every one of these verses we have ananthropomorphism (attributing human form or attributes to deity).

God does not test your emotions and heart at some specific time, but His omniscience knew billions of years ago the status of your soul at any given time.

God doesn't have to test you--to know what is going on!

b. You cannot strap anything on God. He read your tape billions of years ago; you will never be able to hide anything from God--never will. YOU CAN'T FOOL GOD!

c. The condition of your soul is known at all times, now, in time and before time in eternity past.

d. Therefore, testing here means God analyzes your capacity for life--in order to challenge you for more capacity for life.

e. Since capacity for life is based on the amount of BD in the right lobe of your soul, testing the reins has to do with response of the emotions to this information.

f. Frame of reference elicits bonafide response in both reins. Because Jeremiah had doctrine here, he also had an emotional response--double blessing, double appreciation.

g. Conscience: compatible with God's norms and standards. Nationalism, patriotism, military

h. Viewpoint: turn on TV and hear a pastor teaching categorical Bible doctrine. Then the next TV show has Kate Smith singing "God Bless America" and the Marine Corp Hymn.

4. Emotions can be destroyed. Job 16:13; Ps 73:21; Lam 3:13

a. Just as the kidneys can be destroyed by the refluxing of the bladder, so the emotions can be destroyed by the OSN bombarding them with MAS. The emotions were never designed to respond to Mental Attitude Sins.

b. This motivates the emotions to revolt against the dominant lobe. So you have revolution in the soul.

c. The result: instability, wide emotional swings, revolution, chaos. Chaos is temporary or permanent psychosis.

d. Emotional revolt explains apostacy (why he can go apostate) sublimation, lack of capacity for life, lack of capacity for love--degeneracy.

There is a fine line between emotions in a happiness spectrum and between emotions in a misery spectrum--ISSUE, WHICH WAY DO THE ARROW'S GO?!

5. (last downhill point) Emotions react to tragedy. Jer 4:19

a. Jeremiah is in revolt and the heart is in pain. The bladder refluxed jealousy, jealousy revolted against the heart--who is in pain, the object, Jerry!

b. My heart is screaming--

c. "I cannot hold my peace:" lack of tranquility on the happiness spectrum

d. "O my soul:" his reaction to the 5th cycle. Lam 1:20

(1) Heart responds to the emotions--who are revolting.
(2) Emotion dominates, heart is troubled, grievious rebellion.

Lam 2:11

(1) Emotion reacting
(2) Tears
(3) Misery

End of downhill--point 6b is uphill.

6. Emotion is the appreciator of love. Gen 43:30; 1 Kis 3:26; Phil 1:8; IJn 3:17.

Joseph had always loved his brother in his heart. Gen 43:30

a. Always had Benjamin in his frame of reference.
b. His viewpoint included category 3 love for his brother.
c. But it was not until Benjamin came on the scene that he came into memory center and then he was reminded how much he loved his younger brother.

Remember that the emotions have no doctrinal content. The emotions are simply responders. The moon is a reflector of light--the sun has the light.

d. This is temporal capacity--so the left rein responded.

e. This caused Joseph to weep.

1 Kings 3:26 - Solomon and the two mothers

a. Start at 3:24; two women claimed the child, obviously only one woman can be the mother.

b. 3:25 - Cut the child in two

c. 3:26 - "Her emotions yearned upon her son."
She has a son; she loves him (soul love).
Son comes into memory center (emotion does not possess doctrine).
She (her emotions) responds.

Going on with point 6 - Emotional response makes one very much aware of the existence of love in his soul.

Illustration of the woman in her everyday world--after a busy, hectic day her Right Man shows some unexpected thoughtfulness--EMOTION MAKES HER REALIZE HOW MUCH SHE LOVES HIM! EMOTION DOES NOT CONTAIN THE LOVE, it merely responds!

Woman at a football game--doesn't love football--looking around at what the other ladies are wearing, etc.

If you have love in the right lobe for God, you respond to that love in your emotions. (You don't go around thinking about God all day long.) THAT'S WHY WE HAVE THE COMMUNION TABLE! But you don't bring your emotions, tears, along and break down. What keeps you from that? Ritual in the communion table!

The purpose of ritual: (1) to communicate, (2) to allow controlled emotiong. But they don't break down and act like a bunch of Holy Rollers on one of their special victory marches.

7. Emotion stimulates happiness: Prov 23:16; Philemon 7,20.

a. Prov 23:15,16
Vs. 15 establishes that happiness is in the right lobe.
Vs. 16, "Yea my reins (emotions) shall rejoice." Where is the happiness? The happiness is in the right lobe--BUT the reins, the emotions, respond and he becomes aware of what he has in his right lobe.

If the right man is happy, the woman responds and is happy!

b. Enlarged heart:
Frame of reference: Provides information from memory center which stimulates response in the emotions. Like music. THEREFORE THE EMOTIONS BECOME A STIMULUS TO HAPPINESS.

R.B.Thieme: "I am the director of music. Some solo and deut work makes me tense up. Some hymns make me cringe. I like music that relaxes me, makes the congregation get ready for the teaching of Bible doctrine.

Some of you probably want your favorite hymns--"Shall we gather at the river," "Tell Mother I'll be there." THOSE TUNES DON'T DO A THING FOR ME! CHURCHIANITY! I can hear "Stardust" and be aware of the Grace of God. REMEMBER, EMOTIONS HAVE NO CONTENT. AND WHEN EMOTIONS RUN YOUR SOUL, you have no content at all. You are a jackass."

A woman was never designed to run anything--except a home.

All a psychiatrist does is talk your emotions back into order!

The conscience (where you have your norms and standards): The conscience turns on the emotions stimulating the function of the priesthood. They cause you to have esprit de corps (with a local church). Esprit de corps is emotional response or stimulation to your norms and standards. For instance, I'm proud to be a Texan!

The viewpoint also provides a stimulus or viewpoint in the emotions. When you see a film on TV that is doctrinal, disciplined, your emotions respond. Like the film Patton. You are very stimulated when you hear something on TV that represents divine viewpoint.

8. Emotions as related to the Dispensations:

a. Spirituality and emotions in the church age:

(1) Christ is absent from the earth during the church age, therefore the filling of the Holy Spirit produces the character and glory of Christ without emotion being an integral part of spirituality. Gal 5:22,23; Gal 4:19; Rom 5:5.

(2) Emotion is never designed to produce character but to respond to character (spirituality produces character).

(3) Just as GRACE glues the essence of God together, so EMOTION AS A RESPONDER is distilled grace (appreciated grace).

(4) Emotion as an aggressor is distilled legalism.

(5) Emotion was never designed to produce character but to respond to character; therefore emotion and estatics cannot have spiritual content in the church age.

(6) Emotion can respond to the filling of the Holy Spirit or emotion can react to the filling of the Holy Spirit in carnality--but emotion cannot be the F-HS.

(7) The F-HS causes the function of GAP, produces the character of Christ, provides power for the function of the priesthood, BUT EMOTION IS NOT INCLUDED IN THIS POWER.

EMOTION HAS NO POWER OR DYNAMICS IN THE CHURCH AGE. NONE! Tongues: Definition--emotional mastimbation.

b. Spirituality and emotions in the millennium

(1) Christ is present on earth during perfect environment.

(2) The Angelic Conflict is suspended (Satan and the demons are tossed out of the earth).

(3) As during the church age all believers are indwelt by the Spirit and commanded to be filled with the Spirit.

(4) Because of millennial conditions, emotion is a bona fide function of the Spirit (F-HS).

(5) Why? Because the F-HS in the millennium is designed to appreciate Christ, rather than to produce the character of Christ. (Emotion is an appreciator, not a character builder.) Joel 2:28,29; Isa 29:19; 32:15; 44:3; Ezek 39:29; Zech 12:10.

9. Emotion of the Negative Believer hinders the learning of doctrine under GAP 2 Cor 6:11,12. "Ye are not limited by us, but you are limited by your own emotional pattern."

a. The emotional revolt backed by the OSN causes emotion to become the aggressor rather than the responder.

b. This causes emotion to become the criterion rather than the doctrinal content of the right lobe.

c. Therefore the emotional revolution against the establishment of the soul causes the malfunction or total failure of GAP. "and their end shall be stupid wicked."

d. The failure of GAP makes the Christian life and God's plan impossible to fulfill.

10. Therefore the command to separate from the emotional revolt is given. Rom 16:17,18

They serve their emotions and there is nothing in the emotion. "Deceive the hearts of the stupid"--RECRUITMENT of the Tongues Crowd.

a. Believers who live by their emotions are believers whose emotional revolt has produced chaos of the soul.

b. The emotion is no longer a responder but an aggressor.

c. Believers with such chaos of the soul are troublemakers, therefore other believers are commanded to separate from them.

d. This means separation from those involved in the tongues movement.

e. The tongues movement is an emotional revolt against the divine establishment of the soul.

11. The doctrine of the emotional revolt

a. The emotional revolt is found in Rev 2:23.

b. In effect the emotional revolt is the emotion fornicating with the OSN, just as Jeremiah's right woman fornicated with her paramours. The emotions were never designed to fornicate with the OSN; when they do, they produce human good, lust, sin.

c. Instead of responding to doctrine in the right lobe, the emotion responds to mental attitude sins, approbation and power lust and human good.

d. Remember that the emotions have no doctrinal content; it can only respond to doctrine in the heart (right lobe).

e. Once emotion revolts against the heart and becomes the aggressor, it loses all capacity for life (replaced with frustration) and comes under the influence of the OSN (probably grieving the Holy Spirit).

BIBLE STUDY

I. Priorities for the BABE:

A. Essence of God--including TRINITY

B. Essence of Man--

1. Body, Soul, Spirit
2. Old Sin Nature--human good, human bad (sin), trends, patterns

C. Salvation

1. Barrier

a.	Redemption Col 1:14 Unlimited atonement	Sin
b.	Expiation Col 2:14	Penalty
c.	Regeneration John 3:3	Birth
d.	Propitiation 1 John 2:2	Character of God
e.	Justification Rom 3:24 Imputation Rom 3:22	Righteousness of man
f.	Positional Truth 1 John 5:11-12	Life

2. 36 things God does for man at the point of salvation

D. Relationship and Fellowship

1. Retroactive positional truth
2. Current Positional Truth
3. Baptisms
4. Spirituality
5. Rebound as related to the OSN
6. Lord's Supper

E. Use of Techniques

1. Rebound
2. Claiming promises (Faith-Rest) (Basic GAP)
3. Living in the Word (Bible Study Systems)
4. Spirituality
5. Occupation with Christ

F. Dispensations

1. Time line (Broad)
2. Chronology (Detailed)
3. Prophecy

G. Concept of GRACE (Legalism)

H. Four Divine Institutions

I. Judgment (Hell)

1. Divine discipline for the Believer--
2. Resultant scar tissue
3. Punishment for the Unbeliever--
4. Hell, Lake of Fire

J. Resurrection

1. Lord Jesus Christ
2. Church
3. Old Testament and Tribulation
4. Millennium

K. Doctrines pertaining to the dangers of Babehood--

II. Priorities for the ADOLESCENT

A. Angelic Conflict

1. Angels are divided into two categories:
   a. Unfallen: Holy and Elect: 1 Tim 5:21; Mark 8:38
   b. Fallen: Headed by Satan
      (1) Operational (demons) 1 Tim. 4:1
      (2) Imprisoned (2 Peter 2:4, those of Genesis 6)
2. Fallen angels, plus Satan, are sentenced to the Lake of Fire. Matt 25:41. This sentence took place in the past.
3. Satan objected to the judgment and, in objecting, he charged the character of God. "How can a loving God cast His creatures into the Lake of Fire?" No specific Scripture worded in this way--rather a Scriptural deduction from many, many passages.
4. Satan's negative volition is the pattern for man's negative volition. Isa 14:12-14
5. To resolve the Angelic Conflict an inferior creature was placed on one planet, earth. Heb 2:7
6. Man's volition is tested under two systems:
   a. Before the fall: in innocence he was ignorant of sin, he had no sin nature. Man had volition.
   b. After the fall: in sinfulness he had an old sin nature, and volition (free will) AND a new tree--the cross. Man could exercise positive volition--non-meritorious faith.
7. Man's faith in Christ resolves the Angelic Conflict. Issue: Will mankind (inferior to angels by birth) choose the work of Christ? If so, this resolves the Angelic Conflict. Heb 1 and 2.
8. Jesus Christ became a man through physical birth (virgin birth). By birth, Jesus Christ was lower than the angels. Humanity of Christ is now higher than angels as He sits at the right hand of God. In Christ we, positionally, are at the right hand of God; therefore we are, positionally, higher than angels: therefore we have a servant--a guardian angel, Heb 1:4-14.
9. Mankind is under angelic observation. The angels learn divine judgment of God by watching the human race. Luke 15:7,10; Eph 3:10; 1 Tim 3:21; 1 Peter 1:12; 1 Cor 4:9; 6:3; 11:10.
10. Through the fall of man Satan gained control of this planet. Faith in Jesus Christ frees man from Satan's domination. 2 Cor 4:4; John 12:31; 14:30; 16:11; Eph 2:2.

B. Military Commitment, Doctrine of Leadership

1. War will always exist in history in spite of man's efforts for peace. Isa 2:4; Micah 4:3; Eccl 3:8; Matt 24:6-7
2. But War is for adults: Numbers 1:3; 26:2 (over 20)
3. The objective of justified war is the annihilation of the enemy and thus his decisive defeat--THIS BRINGS PEACE. Joshua 11:23; 14:15; Psalm 46:8-11.

4. Justified war is from God. 1 Chron 5:19-22
5. There comes a time when it is sinful not to go to war. Numbers 32:5ff.
6. However, going to war demands training: Numbers 31:3-5
7. But warfare demands a mental attitude of MORAL COURAGE, AND BATTLE COURAGE. Deut 20:1-20
8. The Believer in War: Psalm 27:3-4
9. It is important that military leaders have divine viewpoint minus the mental attitude sins: Prov 24:1-10
10. God prepares believers for TRAINING: 2 Sam 22:35; Psalm 18:34; Psalm 144:1.
11. Believers are protected in war by God. Job 5:20
12. There are always those who plot warfare: Psalm 55:20-23; 68:30; 120:6-7; 140:1-2.
13. Peace Propaganda is used as a weapon of warfare: Micah 3:5-7
14. War is used as a national discipline: Judges 5:8; 2 Chr 16:9; Isa 16:3-26; Jer 4:19-31
15. War is used as personal discipline: Job 10:1,17
16. The last point deals with the misnomer of war: Matt 26:52

C. Spiritual Gifts

1. Source
2. Definition
3. List
4. Temporary, Permanent
5. Use

D. Church

1. Church: Definition
2. Church: Day of Pentecost
3. Church: Doctrine of Intercalation (Great Gap)
4. Church: Members (Jew, Gentile)
5. Church: Doctrine of the Mystery
6. Church: Team Concept: Detail
7. Church: Team Concept: Principle
8. Church: "Upon this rock:" Construction
9. Church: Consummation

E. Evangelism

1. Doctrines you must know to witness
2. Principles of witnessing:
   a. Holy Spirit's work
   b. Place of the Bible
   c. Place of the believer
   d. Make the issue clear
   e. Don't be pushy
   f. Don't argue
   g. Don't get side-tracked
   h. Deal on a one on one principle or through mass meetings
   i. Use common vocabulary--not flowerly theological language or 1611 King James English

3. Techniques of witnessing: (No canned stuff)
4. The pattern for personal witnessing: 1 Thess 2:1-12
5. The response
6. The reward

F. Giving: You should know 24 principles from 2 Cor 8-9

G. Verbal Inspiration (Including Hebrew and Greek)
1. 2 Timothy 3:16-17
   a. Definition
   b. Modus Operandi: Inhale, exhale.

H. Mental Attitudes (Control of thought life) and Application
1. Thought life 'Control, Communication'
2. Negative communication: Gossip, maligning, badmouthing

I. Emotional Revolt

J. Suffering
1. Six circumstances under which the human race suffers:
   a. Health
   b. People
   c. Privation
   d. Weather
   e. Mental
   f. Justice
2. Categories of suffering in time:
   a. The Person of Jesus Christ: suffering on the cross.
   b. The Unbeliever: to awaken to his need of the Lord Jesus.
   c. The Believer: (19 reasons why he suffers).
3. Nineteen reasons why Believers suffer: (see 69-70 Basics for a thorough study.)
   a. Suffering caused by the details of life: Ecclesiastes (With scar tissue on the soul, everything you touch turns to misery.)
   b. Suffering from guilt reaction to sin and the suppression of the sin in the self-conscious: 1 Tim 1:5-6, 19-20; 3:9
   c. Suffering from failure to isolate sin: Heb 12:15. The doctrine of chain-sinning. (Lighting a new sin off a confessed sin.)
   d. Suffering from scar tissue of the soul: Eph 4:17-19
   e. Suffering from the rejection of authority: Judges 19-21; Matt 7:29-8:13; Jer 7; Prov 30.
   f. Suffering from the rapid and accelerated construction of the edification complex of the soul. James 1:1-6
   g. Suffering from interrelationship with those who suffer. 1 Cor 12:26; Romans 14:7; 1 Chron 21.
   h. Suffering from the rejection of the right man, or right woman. Ezekiel 16, 23.
   i. Suffering from Divine discipline: Heb 12:6
   j. Suffering from the rejection of the Word; therefore rejection of the Lord as the right man. Jer 13
   k. Suffering directly related to the Angelic Conflict: 1 Peter 1:12; 3:17; Eph 3:9-13.

l. Suffering to demonstrate the power and provision of grace. 2 Cor 12:1-10
m. Suffering to learn the value of doctrine. Psalm 119, especially note verse 67, 68, 71.
n. Suffering from national disaster: Isa 59:15-21
o. Suffering from temporary loss of norms (right lobe). Jer 2:24-25
p. Suffering from war: Deut 21, 24; Matt 24:6-7
q. Suffering from emotional short-circuit in time of tragedy or disaster. John 20:9-18
r. Suffering in the process of dying: Job 5:20 ff.
s. Suffering because of a specific spiritual gift: (as Paul suffered, many passages.)

K. Doctrine of erecting the Edification Complex of the Soul

L. Advanced G.A.P.

M. Utilization of time

N. Doctrine of Communication
1. Positive
2. Negative--Gossip, Maligning

O. Doctrine of False Teachers and Content

P. Doctrine of Right Man-Right Woman - Basic (Song of Solomon)

Q. Doctrines pertaining to the dangers of adolescence! (Preventative Doctrine)

III. Priorities for the MATURE BELIEVER

A. Priesthood of the Believer

B. How to maintain the Edification Complex of the Soul

C. The Doctrine of Prosperity

D. Ascension of Christ

E. Divine Decrees (Predestination, Foreknowledge, Foreordination, Election)

F. Divine Guidance (Major decisions should be made after 20)

G. Doctrine of Right Man and Right Woman applied

H. Doctrine of Prime of Life Production (like woman winning husband--1 Peter 3)

I. Doctrine of Thorn in the Flesh 2 Cor 12

J. Doctrine of Inheritance

K. Incarnation of Christ (The Gospels)

L. Doctrine of Dangers in Maturity

A Letter written on June 6, 1944

Dear George:

At 0700 hours this morning BBC announced the landing of the Allied paratroops, so this is it. This group of unconquerable heroes whom I command are not yet in it, but we will be soon. I wish I was there now as it is a lovely sunny day for battle. I have no immediate idea of being killed, but one can never tell and none of us can live forever (apart from faith in Christ, of course). So if I should go don't worry but set yourself to do better than I have. All men are timid on entering a fight, whether it is the first fight or the last fight. Cowards are those who let their timidity get the better of their manhood. You will never do that because of your blood lines on both sides. Your knees may shake, but they will always carry you toward the enemy.

There are apparently two types of successful soldier. Those who get on by being unobtrusive and those who get on by being obtrusive. I am of the latter type and seem to be rare and unpopular, but it is my method. One has to choose a method and stick by it--people who are not themselves are NOBODY.

To be a successful soldier you must know history and read it objectively. Dates and even minute details of tactics are useless. What you must know is how man reacts. Weapons change, but the man who uses them changes not at all. To win battles you do beat weapons, but beat the soul of your enemy. You must read biography and autobiography. If you do that you will find out that war is simple. Decide what will hurt the enemy the most in the limits of your capabilities and then do it. Take calculated risks, which is quite different from being rash. My personal belief is that if you have a 50% chance you should take it because of the superior fighting qualities of American soldiers, etc.

You cannot make war safely. But no dead General has ever been criticized, so you have that way always. I'm sure that if every leader who goes to battle will promise himself that he will come out either a conquerer or a corpse--he is sure to win. Defeat is due not to losses but to the destruction of the souls of military leaders, "to live to fight another day" doctrine. The most vital quality a soldier can possess is self-confidence, utter, complete and bumptious. You can have doubts about your good looks, your intelligence, about your self-control--but to win in war you have no doubts about your ability as a soldier. What success I have had results from the fact that I have always been certain that my military reactions were correct. Many people do not agree with me; they ARE WRONG! The unerring jury of history written long after both of us are dead will prove me correct. Note that I speak of military reactions. No one is born with them, no more than one is born with the measles. You can be born with a soul capable of correct military reaction or a body capable of having big muscles. But both

qualities must be developed by hard work. Soldiers, in fact, all men are hero worshippers; officers with a flair for command realize this and emphasize it in their conduct, dress and deportment, that is the qualities they seek to reproduce in their men.

The troops I have commanded have always been well dressed, been smart saluters, been prompt and bold in action because I have personally set the example in these qualities. The influence one man can have on thousands is a never-ending source of wonder to me. You are always on parade. Officers who through laziness or foolish desire to be popular fail to enforce discipline and the proper wearing of equipment not in the presence of the enemy will also fail in battle and if they fail in battle, they are potential murderers.

There is no such thing as a good field soldier. You are either a good soldier or a bad soldier. Well, this has been quite a sermon, but don't get the idea this is my swan song, because it is not. I have not yet finished my job.

Your affectionate father,

George S. Patton

He wrote this letter on D DAY to his son who at that time was a cadet at West Point!

"The Right Woman Acrostic"

I. The Introduction to the Chapter: Proverbs 31

A. Superscription 31:1

B. The Three Whats 31:2

C. The Warning against Wrong Women 31:3a

D. The Warning Against Drinking 31:3b

E. The Amplification of this warning 31:4-9 (made by Bathsheba)

1. Wine attacks leadership judgment and a true sense of responsibility and objectivity in authority, vs 4.

2. Wine destroys certain leadership functions described in verse five.

3. Wine has some correct uses in vs. 6,7; however, the correct uses have to be set aside for a ruler of a nation.

   a. For medicine
   b. For a stimulant

4. The important of fairness (justice) coming from a clear head for the administration of a national entity, vs 8,9.
   (You have family problems but no drinking involved. Inject drinking into it and problems accelerated.)

II. The Acrostic Identification of the Right Woman: Proverbs 31:10-31
(Bathsheba was a woman of doctrine.)

A. The Aleph File: an ox : represents prosperity under an agricultural economy. Vs 10

Princ: The height of human prosperity is the right man and right woman brought together. Remember the height of happiness is a right man having his right woman. Eccl 9:9

1. "woman of" esheth (ishah in the construct form)

2. "virtue:" chayil - ordinarily means strength, ability, integrity, valor--here it is a technical word for capacity.

   "A woman of capacity..." it is technical for right woman. Prov 18:22 "whosoever discovers a right woman"

3. "who can find?" mi. lit. "who can discover her?" qal imperfect of matsah.
   a. The woman of capacity is the woman designed for you. (For every man there is designed a right woman.)

How do you know your right woman? Size, shape, coloring, bone structure are missing--because they come in all sizes, shapes and descriptions.

b. The world is filled with women. However, it is not a woman's world.

c. Even the same woman is entirely different from time to time: women are classified in medicine as:
(1) Pre menstrual
(2) Mid menstrual
(3) Post menstrual
(4) Pre menopausal
(5) Mid menopausal
(6) Post menopausal

d. YOUR RIGHT WOMAN WILL HAVE CERTAIN THINGS FOR YOU THAT SHE DOES NOT HAVE FOR ANYONE ELSE! (The woman is brought to the man, the man must identify the woman.)

He must recognize her first and be aggressive. She doesn't ID him and ring his bell. He identifies her and rings her doorbell. Some of you guys are still waiting around, waiting to be introduced.

The man makes the identification first and if it is true, not phony, she will begin to make some identifications as they get to know each other.

YOUR RIGHT WOMAN IS A WOMAN OF CAPACITY--and that means FOR YOU! Everything about her is designed for you! And you can thank the Father that Jesus Christ had you personally in mind in this area. EVERYONE ELSE IS EXCLUDED, they may get the benefits of the overflow--but everything and everyone else is excluded.

e. "whoso discovers a right woman discovers the good and obtains (receives-intensive) grace (or an object of delight) from the Lord." Prov. 18:22

f. Eccl 7:26-29: matsah occurs in every verse--bitterness passage. "and I find." matsah--and I discover (He didn't discover his right woman, he discovered a lot of wrong woman) vs 26.

"and behold and this I have discovered" vs 27 matsah "counting one by one to discover the result"

"which my soul seeks, but I discover not." vs 28 matsah

"Lo only this have I discovered ..." vs 29 matsah

<u>So Solomon discovered everything but his right woman.</u>

Back to Proverbs 31. What is prosperity for the human race--a right man identifying his right woman. That is the ultimate in human happiness. That is the Aleph file. Some of you think prosperity is having
Money, Traveling, A nice home, Clothes, Partying.
IT IS RIGHT WOMAN! That is what counts!

Literal: "A woman of capacity, who can discover her ...",

4. "for her price is far above rubies:"

   a. This is not rubies--any of those types of gems are mined, or dug out of the ground.

   b. This is a pearl--comes out of the water. A pearl is manufactured out of suffering. That is the right woman waiting for you!

      The pearl immersed in the water of BD! Best way to find her!

      Singular for pearl is peninah--here is peninim. Lots of right women, one each. About the only precious gem not related to the ground; it is related to the water and oysters and sand.

      (1) A genuine pearl has perfect symmetry.
      (2) Symmetry of soul
      (3) Symmetry of body
      (4) Symmetry of compatibility

      You want to watch out--your right woman will even know what you are thinking from time to time.

   c. "for her worth:" (her value) meker

Literal: "A woman of capacity, who can discover her, for far beyond pearls (no verb) her value."

B. The Beth file: Vs 11 ב House--put the dagesh in there--you have a person dwelling in the house.

PRINCIPLE: The right woman becomes home to the right man! Home is a woman, a right woman.

1. "heart:" lebh (right lobe) frame of reference, memory center, vocab., and categorical norms and standards and viewpoint.

   When he finds his right woman, all these facets of the heart have an application. She, too, has a heart. Long before there is any touching, there is a mutual frame of reference, mutual conscience, etc. SOUL CLIMAX. This is soul burning (not libido).

2. The right lobe of her "ba-al." It is lord! Only a right woman can call her right man LORD! Hooked on to the end of it is a 3rd person singular fem. suffix.

   a. "HER LORD" No woman ever finds her right man until her soul and her body looks at ONE MAN and calls him LORD!
   Example of Bathsheba in 1 Kings 1
   Example of Sarah in 1 Peter 3:5-8

   b. "doth safely trust:" Qal perfect of batach
   It means here "to have confidence." It means that he has perfect confidence that when he is away from her she will never:

(1) Flirt
(2) Tease
(3) Drink with some other guy
(4) Become involved
(5) Be unfaithful sexually, socially, mentally

This is the kind of woman every military man must have! So when he is out fighting wars and doing his job--he has perfect confidence that his wife thousands of miles away is ABSOLUTELY, TOTALLY FAITHFUL TO HIM! EVERY WAY!!

Probably more than any other profession--the military--needs the right woman in the military marriages.

Literal: vs. 31:11, "The right lobe of her lord has confidence in her ..."

Summary: 1. This is called "love security of the soul."
2. Man can have no such security with regard to any woman but his right woman. (The wrong woman will be socially unfaithful, mentally unfaithful, sexually unfaithful--she will be unfaithful in some way at some time.) A wrong woman is an ego booster!
3. The wrong woman obviously is going to go for someone else. She may be funsville and she may make you think you are the greatest thing in the world, but listen, she can make a hundred guys think the same thing! THAT IS CALLED SHARING. NO PLACE! This is for you and no one else!

A characteristic of having the right woman is celebrating your 25th, your 33rd, your 50th or your 60th!
ONCE A WOMAN FINDS HER RIGHT MAN SHE IS JUST NOT INTERESTED IN ANY ONE ELSE! (no flirting, teasing, she is not going to smile at you and think about some other guy)

3. "so that he shall have no need:" qal imperfect of chaser (not chaser--Kay-sayrr) He shall not lack, he shall not be without.

4. "of spoil:" noun of shalal - gain or profit.

Literal: "The right lobe of her lord has confidence in her so that he shall not be without profit (or gain)."

a. He is gone--Joe Blow asks her to go out and she says, "hell no."
b. Some friends want to ask her to go to a party to cheer her up--she says, NO! (Doesn't need cheering up.)

That is the Beth file--the right woman is your home! "A shanty in old shanty town, its roof is so slanty that it reaches the ground."

C. The Gimel file: Vs 12 גמל Camel--traveller, much travel; therefore much knowledge about different subjects, also the camel was a blessing because it was the camel that brought the merchandise, goods that pleased people.

Principle: Your right woman is your pleasure in life.

1. "She will do him:" qal perfect of gamal. To do, to show, to cause. You don't know what is being done, shown or caused until you get an object.

2. "good:" the right woman does not make life miserable for her right man. It is tobh. "Not good that man should be alone." same word as in Gen 2:18.
   a. That is lo tobh, take the lo away and what do you have? tobh!
   b. She will do, show and cause him GOOD! She shows him a lot of good, causes him a lot of good and causes him a lot of good. (THIS IS THE WAY THE RIGHT WOMAN FUNCTIONS.)

3. "and not evil:" lo ra
   a. Literally, "no evil."
   b. A right woman is no trouble at all!
      A right woman brings pleasure and happiness into the life of her right man--but not trouble or difficulty.

4. "all the days of her lives (plural)"
   a. She lives one day at a time.
   b. And every day is a lifetime when you have your right woman.
   c. RIGHT WOMAN EVERY DAY. It is intensive. Every day she does him good and not evil.

D. The Daleth File: Vs 13 ד Door--refers to decisions.

Principle: The right woman makes many decisions to please her right man! Not necessarily things she wants to do--but things that please her right man!

Now--right away some of you ladies are going to tie up--because you may not be good housekeepers (and housekeeping is more a matter of genes than training anyway). For example, sisters in the same family.

How you keep your house is not even an issue in the Hebrew, as such.

In fact, this passage indicates that some men have right women who are business women!

Some of you may think, "It can't be my right woman, unless she is good in the house." Some men have a woman (right) who is good in the house, others are good in the office. Rather shocking!

This passage is not a treatise on good housekeeping because that is a matter of over active women, plus talent, energy and ability. ANY UNSAVED WOMAN UNDER SUCH CONDITIONS CAN KEEP A BEAUTIFUL HOUSE.

Some of you have been reading ahead:
1. You're good housekeepers; you are self-righteous; I'm OK here.
2. You poor housekeepers; oh, oh, I'll never measure up.
3. And some of you single gals think that you have never got your right man because you can't cook or keep house. That doesn't make any difference to your right man!

SO DON'T READ AHEAD. JUST WAIT UNTIL I GET THERE. Don't try to outguess me ...

Read verse 13: Now can you imagine this beautiful doll--sitting there hands calloused, bleeding--spinning, spinning, spinning. IS THAT THE QUINTESCENCE OF YOUR EROTIC DREAMS?

Now remember this is the Daleth file--and it deals with making decisions--walking in and out of a door.

1. "she seeketh:" qal perfect of darash: to search for. She searches diligently for wool and flax.

2. "wool and flax:"
   a. Wool and flax were materials used for the manufacturing of clothing. (In the ancient world, the woman made her own clothes or bought them off of a caravan.)
   Wool for colder weather. Flax for warmer weather.

   b. Principle: The right woman dresses to please her right man and NO ONE ELSE! (And that is why she cleans her house.)

   c. The right woman does not dress to IMPRESS OTHER WOMEN or OTHER MEN!

   d. The right woman's soul is so occupied with her RIGHT MAN that she is motivated to always appear in clothing that he APPRECIATES.

   e. There is something wrong with a woman who dresses to impress other women or other men (celebrities, relative strangers).

   f. For the single man, if you are dating a girl who dresses to impress women or who dresses to impress other people (people she may or may not have met) or dresses in her finest to go to a party where you are not present--YOU DON'T HAVE YOUR RIGHT WOMAN!

   Good Test! You are gone; she goes to a party and she dresses up in her finest and you have never even seen it. The next time you see her she is in robes and slacks, hair curlers but she is really dressing up when others are around. REMEMBER THE DALETH FILE. SHE IS TROUBLE!

Principle: She is making decisions where you are not even in the picture and if you are not in her soul, you don't have anything!! Got it???

   g. When you are away and you come home:
      (1) She has cleaned the house the way you would want it--
      (2) She is dressed exactly the way you would want her to be dressed.
      (3) She will cook a meal exactly the way you like it.
      (4) She will have managed household affairs exactly in accordance with your frame of reference.

The right woman only dresses and undresses for the right man!

h. SO SHE IS SEARCHING DILIGENTLY FOR THE THINGS THAT WILL PLEASE HER RIGHT MAN!

(1)Some of you boobs often knock the fact that your wife spends so much time shopping, DON'T KNOCK IT IF SHE IS DOING IT TO PLEASE YOU.

(2) And you ladies, let's say you are taking care of everybody else's needs and you are neglecting your husband and your house; say, TO HELL WITH OTHER PEOPLE and get back in the groove. HE IS YOUR RIGHT MAN!

(3) If she goes to the dress shop to look nice for you, YOU HAVE GOT TO HAVE ROCKS IN YOUR HEAD to knock it!

3. "worketh willingly with her hands:"

a. "worketh:" qal imperfect of asah

b. "with chapetz:" with pleasure. lit. "works with pleasure with her hands

But if she works with her hands and has her right man in mind, the drudgery is gone because of what she has in her mind.

Now, you correct me, I have never seen any housework that was not drudgery--the making of a bed, the cleaning of a rug, the cooking of meals.

But women do it willingly, why? The right man in their soul!!

Literal: Vs 13, "She searches willingly for wool and flax (that is, she dresses to please her right man) she works with pleasure with her hands."

Now we break off at this point and run into two types of women: one is a domestic frau (next two verses are devoted to that) and then when you get to vs. 16 you have the business frau. They are two different types of women!

E. The He File: Vs 14 | | a window--represents perspective. The right woman's ability in the field of perspective!

1. There are in this passage at least three types of right women categorized for some right man.
   a. First category: the domestic woman
   b. Second category: the business woman
   c. Third category: the woman who supports a handicapped man, or an evangelist or pastor-teacher in training (unable to work).

2. Read vs 14 (she is not a tanker). And it sounds like its going to get cold before it gets there. Like room service in any first class hotel; they bring their food from afar and it tastes like it. It has atrophied.

2. "she has become:" hayah, qal perfect - she has become

3. "like the merchant's ships:" this is the extra effort a woman goes to to get foods that are pleasing to the right man.

a. The right woman doesn't spend all of her time at the "Stop and Go" or the "7-11."

b. Principle: She is so occupied with her right man that she makes an extra effort to please him.

In the ancient world ships would sail right out of the Mediterranean Sea through now what is called the Straits of Gibralter--trade up and down the coast of Africa. They were very adventuresome. Solomon sent out merchant ships that came back with apes and peacocks.

So like the merchant ships, she is adventuresome for her right man.

3. "she bringeth her food from afar:" the hiphil imperfect of bo. She causes to bring, causative active voice. Just as a merchant ship goes great distances to find interesting things, so the right woman goes to extra effort to bring something to her RM that is pleasing to him.

She looks out of the window of life and does everything in perspective of him.

Literal: Vs 14, "She has become like the ships of the merchant man, from afar she causes her food to be brought."

The analogy: gives her interest in her husband. It could be associated with many different things.

THIS WILL BE ASSOCIATED WITH THE WAW FILE.

F. The Waw File: Vs 15] Nail, peg or hook.

Principle: The RW is the peg upon which the household hangs. Her MENTAL ATTITUDE is the key to the household (household equals right man, right woman, children, maids, etc.)

The right man (this passage teaches) can be out of sorts and things still move along. The children can be out of sorts and things still survive. When the RW is out of sorts, it is the end of the line--nothing goes right. This is the responsibility of oikos despot (household manager). A man takes guff in the world in which he lives; it is his Angelic Conflict. To come home and have a woman pouting around or worse--tears him up.

So the Waw file indicates that she is the key to the household! He may be the king in the house, but it is the queen who is important.

Now look at this. I dedicate this to all of you ladies who get up by 10:00 in the morning. You have your first cup of coffee down by 10:15 and by noon you have your face on and you are ready for another glowing day.

1. "she rises:" qal imperfect of koom. This means to rise up for a purpose. Some people get up in the morning without purpose. They just wander through the day trying to find themselves. Life has no meaning; they have no capacity for life.

2. "while it is still dark ...night."

a. This indicates an excellent mental attitude. You have to when it is dark.

b. She is motivated with occupation with her right man.

c. She places her love from him above her personal comfort. (It is not necessarily still comfortable for her to get up while it is still dark.)

d. But her RM's happiness is more important to her than her own comfort. (When you find a man who is more important to you than your own comfort--you'll get beeps on that one that sound like right man, right man, right man!) YOU MUST BE HONEST.
   (1) I dedicate this to you men who get notes every morning, "You will find the coffee pot on the stove, turn such and such a nob to the right until ti says 300 and heat till ready--or something like that."
   (2) Then there is always the man who goes to the local hash-house and says, "I want two over easy, and yell at me so I'll feel at home."

THIS IS A PHENOMENAL MENTAL ATTITUDE. Women are not constructed usually to get up early--before everyone else.

3. "and gives meat to her household:" meat = food. She sees that the launching pad for her husband is in order.

   a. She sees that everything is in order.

   b. Her children are a reminder of something she has shared with her RM (no sharing outside of marriage).

4. "even an assigned job to her maids" literally.

   a. The principle here: SHE IS THE KEY TO THE RUNNING OF THE HOUSE!

   b. She may do it herself; she may have help.

Principle: There are some people who are designed in life to be servants--and nothing else! It is right, proper and happiness all the way around when these people are doing that kind of work. You can't take these people and turn them around--and have them in a great professional capacity; they can't hack it.

But the welfare state, socialism has ruined this class. Prov 30:22 When a person is designed for service, they are happy in service. "You can't make a silk purse out of a sow's ear." A race house is not designed to pull a plow!

You say, it is a matter of not being able to afford it? No. It is a matter of the welfare state destroying the servant class. They have helped uproot society. You can't take an expert servant and make him an expert ruler. Prov 30:22 A general cannot have a corporal mentality.

   c. The reason today so many ladies are having troubles around the home is that they have been denied the freedom of having maids (a form of slavery in our society). Not everyone has to have a certain element of life.

d. The oikos despot: notice she is head of her household. She gives food, she tells her maids what to do.

Maids have not changed. They need to be told what to do. Certain ladies (women) will always be that way. They must be told what to do. You take these people and make them head of Woman's Lib--they are miserable.

<u>You cannot educate people beyond their ignorance</u>. You take people who are happy as servants and haul them out through the welfare state--then they destroy happiness and if that doesn't work, they'll hit the landowner with some more taxes.

e. She is the peg, the nail--around which the household revolves.

f. Another principle: if she doesn't have a household to manage or servants in that household to manage, then she walks out the door and tries to find something to manage and WE ARE ALL IN TROUBLE.

But put her right back in there, give her a flock of good servants, she is beautiful, magnificient. She will be happy, they will be happy. There is something to be said for certain types of slavery, other types no.

G. The Zayin File: Vs 16 ז a sword, or weapon. It represents the RW who is aggressive in her responsiveness. This is the business type of woman.

1. "she considers:" qal perf of zamam

a. This means to consider a business proposition.

b. This is a woman in business--business thinking.

PRINCIPLE: All right women are NOT household types. That goes way back to the ancient world. Woman were in business then, women are in business now! Some RW are in the office; while others are in the home. They do not follow a pattern.

Literal: "She puts together a business deal and ... seizes a field."

2. "buys a field:" qal imperfect of lakak - she seizes. She sees possibilities of the land and she jumps in there and gets it before anyone else. She outdid her male competitors. She had a good business mind and she pounced on it. She got it right now while everybody else was consulting with their board of directorsand everything. AND SHE MAKES A PILE OUT OF IT!

3. "and with her capital she plants a vineyard" This RW pleases her RM with business deals, just like another RW pleases her husband in the home.

H. The Heth File: Vs 17 ח an enclosure, or a fenced-in area.

Principle: The RW is always enclosed by her RM. She is inside of the fence. No matter whether she is a domestic or whether she is a business woman, she belongs to one man only! Her soul and her body is at his disposal.

What does a woman do when she is fenced in? No two women are the same.

1. "she girdeth her loins with strength:"

   a. "she girdeth:" qal perfect of charag. This means to encircle. She is in the pasture or corral of her RM. "She encircles or equips her loins."

   b. "loins:" motan (dual) it has to do with her sex response. This is the fence around her. They have a soul relationship in other verses; this describes the physical relationship.

      SHE RESPONDS TO ONLY ONE MAN! She is always faithful to him. Sex is designed for RM-RW.

Literal: "She encircles her sex response with (his) strength"

   c. "strength:" oz refers to the activities of her physical life with her RM. Inside the fence--various and varied responses. Outside the fence--perversions. His strength is her protection.

2. "and strengtheneth her arms:" (Does this mean you ladies should be doing 50 push-ups per day?

   a. "strengthen:" piel imperfect of ahmatz- it means to strengthen in the qal but in the piel it means to encourage.

   b. She encourages him with her arms: this is her embrace. (She embraces within the fence.)

      And remember ladies: category 3 love is not a touching love. You can have male friends but no touching. The embrace is for inside of the fence. (That answers the handholding, kissing, embracing junk of the American teenage, college age.) THE FENCE IS ONE MAN!

Literal: She encircles her loins with his strength and encourages him with her arms. (The RW is enclosed on all sides by one man only.)

I. The Teth File: Vs 18 ט to roll together, relationship, association.

Principle: The RW associates with the RM.

A. "she perceives that her merchandise is good"

   1. qal perfect from ta-am; it means to taste. "perceives"

   2. "merchandise:" sachar means her profit.

      a. Analogy is from the stimulation of the taste buds.
      b. He is a good taste to her always.

   3. "is good:" they have a good relationship around the clock.

B. "her candle goes not out by night:"

   1. Naer: her lamp illustrates prosperity and happiness.

   2. "shall not be extinguished:" qal imperfect of kabah

   3. "by night:" adversity

Literal: "She has tasted that her gain or profit is good, her lamp (prosperity and happiness) shall not be extinguished at night." (in disaster periods) This is the quintessence of happiness.

Because of her relationship and association with her RM she is both stimulated and in a state of permanent happiness. This is maximum human happiness.

J. The Yodh File: Vs 19 the hand.

Principle: The hands of the RW are occupied with those things that bless her RM. She does not give him cause for concern. She does not flirt or tease other men. She does not play games or exercise vindictiveness.

The hand of the RW is to be constructive, not destructive.

1. "she layeth her hands to the spindle" piel imperfect of shalach
   a. It is used here with handling a machine with dexterity.
   b. "spindle:" kishon - modern language it is a sewing machine

Literal: "Her hands work the weaving machine...and her fingers manipulate the ball of yarn."

2. "her fingers support the distaff:" palek. A staff on a turning basin, yarn wraps around it and it feeds the sewing machine over here. And the result is woven cloth. She has skillful handsand fingers.
   a. It does not mean that all women have to sew.
   b. It means her hands are an extension of her soul. In her soul she is occupied with one man so she is doing something to please ONE MAN!

K. The Koph File: Vs 20] ⊤ Kaph - hollow of a hand.

Principle: The RW is the overflow of grace to others. Because she is so happy with her RM, this happiness (human) overflows to others.

1. "she stretches out her hand to the poor:"
   a. "stretches out:" parash - to extend out, to spread with her hands.
   b. "her hand:" koph
   c. "poor:" ani. This is not to impress another person or a female, no social life. It means the poor, afflicted, the needy. People with genuine needs.
2. "she reaches forth:" shalach, piel stem.
3. "needy:" ebhyon - the totally wretched, poor white trash.

Literal: She reaches out her hand to the poor (needy and afflicted) and stretches out her hand to the totally wretched.

L. The Lamedh File: Vs 21 ל ox goad - keeps the ox moving in the fields. This is the disaster file. The disaster is the snow.

1. "she is not afraid of the snow for her household:"

a. Qal imperfect of yare plus the negative lo. Disaster in life which can be anticipated; everyone who lives in the north in winter knows it is going to snow. They know it is going to get cold, anticipated pressure.

b. Literal - "She does not fear for her house because of the snow."

2. "for all her house are being clothed in double garments of crimson"
   a. Labash, qal passive part. "are being clothed"
   b. "with scarlet:" shani--dual word. Means double red clothing; double clothing keeps warm in extreme cold.

Points of Doctrine:

1. The RW anticipates certain types of disaster and heads them off. (The wrong woman could care less.)

2. There are certain times of the year when snow and cold can be anticipated, long before the snow arrives. Therefore, long before that the right woman has made provision for such a disaster.

3. Once a woman finds her RM there are certain instincts of love which head off many disasters.

4. Her instincts of love keep her concentrating on her RM (no flirting, teasing, she doesn't try to hurt, she doesn't try to play games to make her RM jealous); she is a header-off of disaster.

5. She no longer depends upon parties, outside friends and fun and games.

6. She doesn't try to hurt her RM who is so vulnerable to her social life activities or energies.

7. The lamedh file is the RW's faithfulness to her RM; a woman's love instincts whereby she clothed her RM with a double warmth of her love (soul and sex). There is the double garment and scarlet is a warm and rich color--category 2 love.

L. The Mem File: Vs 22 At the start of the word ם , end ם . It signifies water. Water is often used to represent BD as in Eph 5:26.

But also water in a fountain, water in a well is used to signify some type of RM-RW relationship. The well is the RW. The fountain is the sex drive of the RM (Prov 5:15).

The Mem File signifies the RW making herself attractive to her RM through Bible doctrine.

1. "the bed of the right woman:" (compare Prov 7:16). This is referring to the fact that the bed is to be the most attractive piece of furniture in the whole house. If the house has orange crates for furniture, then the bed ought to be an army cot. It ought to be better than anything else. She reflects her mental attitude in the way she decorates her bedroom.

a. "she maketh:" qal perfect of asah. In the ancient world the woman had to manufacture the accessories to the bed.

b. "for herself pillows:" the bed pillows

2. The body of the right woman:

a. "her clothing:" qal active part. of labash. It means "she is being clothed in" constantly.
b. "silk:" it is very fine white linen.
c. "purple:" signifies wearing beautiful clothing for her RM, even expensive.

This is just the opposite of the dumb female today. In the house are two areas; the bed, line one and the woman, line two. The woman makes the bed as beautiful as possible and in the house makes herself as beautiful as possible.

The average woman hangs around her house looking like a zombie. And when she goes out that is when she dresses up; her husband is at work but by the time he is home, she is back in her grubbies again. ALL BACKWARDS!

Ladies, your feet ought to be hurting right now, because I am standing all over them. You don't dress up for a bunch of dumb women to impress them. So some woman says, you look nice my dear, so what!

Ba-al--lord. From that day you'll really improve. Most woman have fetters in their head when it comes to dressing. If you look terrible at the start of the day when your husband is around, great through the part when he is gone and then back in the grubbies when he is home--that is abnormal. MAYBE YOU NEVER THOUGHT OF THAT!

But the woman who dresses her bed and her body to please her RM is fantastic. And he rules a kingdom in his home; that is really something! It is worth pearls.

Some of you single women your personal discipline is a joke. Some day the RM is going to come into your life and he is going to say, "shape up, baby" and you are going to shape up.

Your bedroom is a private room; people generally do not see it. Lots of you spend all your money on your living room. That's where you see all your friends, that is your show place. You dress up your living room and your bedroom looks terrible!

Literal: "Pillows she makes for herself; with white linen and purple she is clothed."

By the way--it might just be--if you are working like a dog and getting nowhere in life that you have the wrong job. There should be prosperity in a Christian home.

N. The Nun File: Vs 23]] Fish standing up on his tail - concentration. The fish represents concentration. The husband of the RW can concentrate on his right job without distraction. He doesn't have a nag at home; he doesn't have a problem at home; he doesn't have an alcoholic bitch stumbling over the furniture. He can concentrate on his job.

Principle: The wrong woman (WW) is a constant source of distraction and irritation, while the RW makes it possible for her RM to leave the house and concentrate on his profession, on his job, whatever he has to do in life.

1. "her husband:" baal = her lord and master. Things really settle down and get sorted out when a woman can look at her husband and say, MY LORD.
2. "being known in the gates:" niphil part. of yada. In this case the man is an administrator of city government.
   a. Refers to the meeting of the city council.
   b. Literal - "being known in the gates is her lord when he sits"
3. "when he sits:" yahasbh: to sit in (qal inf.) a place of prominence, of authority.
4. "among the rulers of the land"

Principle:
1. The RW compliments and implements but never competes with her RM.
2. She is his glory, not his destroyer.
3. She stimulates him, but does not cremate him.
4. She seduces him, but never traduces him (never detracts, villifies, belittles).

O. The Samekh File: Vs 24 ○ Prop, fulcrum.

Principle: The RW supports with fanatical loyalty and love her RM. (This woman supports her husband; she earns the living.) The husband is handicapped (the third category of right woman).

It does not take away his manhood. It follows after the previous passage where she does not bad-rap, does not compete with him, does not put him down, does not ridicule him.

1. "she makes fine linen:" qal imperfect means she manufactures it (asah). "linen" sadidh - undergarments
2. "she sells them for a profit:" qal imperfect of makar
3. "and delivers:" nathan - she gives
4. "her undergarments to the Phoenicians (Canaanites):"
   a. They take these garments on consignment and travel throughout the ancient world and sell them.
   b. Italy, Spain

The fact that the man is not making a living is a matter of privacy--but it does not hinder the relationship. DON'T CRITICIZE THIS TYPE.

P. The Ayin File: Vs 25 ע it is a fountain, and an eye. Here it refers to the fountain as the male sex drive as in Prov 5:15; 5:18. This refers again to the fact that the RW is the glory of her RM and she wears his glory in her soul.

So this file emphasizes the glory of the woman's soul which includes a WOMAN having a sense of humor (not little girls having the giggles).

1. "strength:" oz - means a fortification, stability or glory; majesty or splendor.

   Here it denotes stability from relationship with the RM. Stability from the standpoint of soul stability, soul majesty, soul glory, soul splendor.

   The whole point of oz is beauty of soul (based on BD, ECS, inner beauty).

2. "honor:" chadar - glamour, ornamental glamour.

3. "she shall rejoice:" sachaq, qal imperfect= she will laugh at the next day
   a. Sachaq means a very deep seated laughter based on RMA, on humor, on the inner beauty of the soul.
   b. She keeps on laughing. The laughter is the result of being double-graced by God. She is graced in the first place by: Bible doctrine and by having her RM.

4. "in time to come:" la yom - the next day.

Literal: "Inner beauty and glamour of soul her clothing; she shall laugh at the next day." Why? Because her RM is with her, they have a perfect relationship of soul and of body and her soul is prepared for the next day--and the laughter here refers to the total satisfaction of a RM-RW relationship which means soul and body. The pillow and the fountain.

   a. At this point in the presence of her RM she is not clothed with anything else.
   b. Her body and soul is naked to him--and she receives maximum satisfaction so she is fulfilled and can laugh at the next day. ONE DAY AT A TIME. THE NEXT DAY, NOT THREE DAYS.

<u>Let's run this through the categories of women:</u>

(1) The housewife: Laughs at the fact that she will be around the house working the next day.

(2) The business woman: Laughs at the fact that she will be around the office the next day. She has the RM--at the end of the day! The guy at the office mumbles around, smokes cigars--but he doesn't bother her.

(3) The bread-winning woman: Tomorrow is going to be a tough day because she has to reach a certain quota for the Phoenician traders; she laughs.

Instead of dreading, instead of becoming weary about tomorrow--she laughs!

P. The Pe File: ﭖ The mouth file. Vs 26 - this file deals with verbal conversation with the RW. She talks to her RM. When she opens her mouth, her soul is turned inside out--as it were. Wisdom comes out when she talks.

1. "she opens her mouth:" pathach-this is the word that connects the thoughts of the soul with verbal, audible communication. Lit. "her mouth she opens with doctrine"
2. "wisdom:" khakmah - doctrine in the human spirit cycled into the right lobe 2 Cor 10:5,6 (epignosis).
   a. Even though a responder, BD protects her and she is not impressed with impressionable things--a celebrity, history, etc.
   b. BD is fantastic.
3. "on her tongue the law:" torah - doctrine communicated.
4. "kindness:" chesedh; lit. "on her tongue, the law of grace."
   a. The law of grace keeps her from maligning,
   b. Gossipping
   c. Being vindictive
   d. Assassinating character
   e. Writing poisonous notes, the works.

You can always tell a woman who has her RM; you know why? She doesn't have time to run around and rip everyone to pieces, to undermine, to express MAS, to judge. She has plenty of bona fide things to occupy her time.

The worst troublemakers in any church are the frustrated females who spend their time assassinating the characters of others.

R. The Tasade File: Vs 27 צ a reaping hook.

This is the principle of the harvest of the RW's soul.

1. "she looks well to the ways of her household" qal act.part. of tsaphah
   a. It means to alert, to keep watch.
   b. She knows the needs, the joys, the difficulties of her household. Lit. "she is alert to the ways of her household"
2. "and does not eat the bread of indolence:"
   a. Her soul is not fat, slow, and repulsive.
   b. She is animated because of her love and esteem for her RM.

S. The Qoph File: Vs 28 ק the back of the head or the subconscious. The Qoph letter is used in any acrostic file for flash backs, for retrospection. The children may not be happy at the time but they remember her.

1. "her sons rise up (grow up):"
   a. And when they grow up, their mature evaluation, SHE IS GREAT! THAT IS WHY YOU HAVE TO LEAVE MOTHER!
   b. The man always leaves mother; the son will never go back to mother. If the marriage doesn't work out then the daughter may go back, but NEVER the son! Never!

c. And it is the influence of the mother that gives him an appreciation for womanhood.

2. "and call her blessed:" piel imperfect of asher, "to be happy, to make happy." Intensive. Lit., "Her sons grow up and recall her with happiness" (She is teaching a son, same is true for girls.) The boy will appreciate his mother; the daughters the father--because he protects the girl, etc.

3. "her husband also:" baal, "her lord"

4. "he praiseth her:" piel imperfect of hallel, intense. (Because a father loves to have a great son) When he has this type of son, he turns around and praises the mother--intensively.

T. The Resh File: Vs 29 ⌐ refers to the head, to the frontal lobe. We just have had sons growing up, now we come to daughters growing up.

1. "many daughters"

2. "have accomplished or done:" asah (or manufactured)

3. "virtuously:"
   a. Chayil in a man means strength.
   b. Chayil in a woman means ability, talent, integrity, virtue, good character.

   There are many women like the above, thank God, but there is only one right woman.

4. "but you and only you excel them all:" qal perfect of alah - to surpass.
   a. In a world of many fantastic women of ability, beauty, character, spirituality and maturity
   b. YOU AND ONLY YOU SURPASS THEM ALL!
      What is a man's attitude toward other women? He may admire them, recognize them as beautiful, talented, full of integrity--or the opposite, BUT IN THE MIDST OF ALL SUCH WOMEN--THERE IS ONLY ONE! THIS IS THE RIGHT WOMAN!

U. The Shin File: Vs 30 ש refers to a tooth--right out of lower jaw. Concept of eating. This file shows the result of a RW GAPing it daily. Obviously the result is occupation with Christ or maximum category 1 love toward Jesus Christ.

1. "favor:" kane - can be grace but it is elegant beauty, glamorous beauty. Some women are very beautiful but you men in identification of your RW, do no ID on the basis of her elegant beauty!

2. "is deceitful:" shequer "is a lie"
   a. Let's say you come to church and you try to find the most beautiful woman here; and say that is my RW.
   b. But wait until she talks.
   c. This is saying that EVERYTHING THAT IS BEAUTIFUL ISN'T FUN.

d. Some of you fellows are looking for a Christian Miss America and its too bad, she is already married--to me.
e. This passage is difficult. There are some very glamorous women in the world and they have a RM,but you don't ID on this basis. SHE IS NOT FOR YOU, HANDS OFF!

3. "dazzling beauty:" hebel - useless, empty

Summary of Vs 30:

1. A man may be attracted to the glamorous and attractive beauty but this is not the basis for the recognition of RW.

This disregards the soul climax. Recognition signals are not related to the body but to the soul. 1 Cor 7:9 The burning comes before the body. If it was the other way around the honeymoon would come before the marriage and that ain't the way it is!

EVERY WOMAN IS BEAUTIFUL BUT DON'T ID ON THAT BASIS!

For a man to ID his RW, he must see something in her soul. Not courtship, "cageship." The two of you get into a cage and CHAT--no touching--that makes it subjective.

Living room, restaurant, automobile--no touching. What are you ever going to discover in a woman's soul if you are grabbing the body? There will be plenty of time for that if you make the proper ID.

2. Solomon fell into this trap. He was a body scanner. All he did was chase beautiful woman.

He collected 1,000 of them--but not one of them could he pour into his mold--why? Woman is a gift--to the man!

When Solomon met the Shulamite woman, she was so occupied with her RM (soul) Solomon in all his glory couldn't even get close to her. The shepherd lover was in her soul; Solomon was trying to get to her body.

3. This does not imply that your RW will not be beautiful but body beautiful is not God's way of identifying the right one.

a. When it comes to ID of you RW, it is in soul.
b. But one day you discover the most beautiful body in the world because it was made just for you.
c. You women are suckers to let every jackass tough you, check you out.
d. But when the RM comes along, he may want to reach over the table and touch you or reach under the table and touch you--but somewhere-you have GOT TO TALK! ID takes conversation.

So tie your hands behind your back and go on that date. Drive your car with your knees.

You all want to touch too soon! You recognize her first--then you spend the rest of your life having glorious experience! And any body experience you have before that will be detrimental, detrimental, detrimental!

Just remember a principle and you'll have a very happy life: KEEP YOUR HANDS OFF WOMEN.

4. The occupational hazard of being everyone's beautiful woman is pride, indolence, lust, bad temper and being spoiled.
   a. It takes a lot more to recognize a glamorous, beautiful woman as your RW because she has been spoiled.
   b. Too many people have told her how beautiful she is. Sometimes she has thousands of fingerprints all over her body.
   c. She is full of approbation lust and she believes she is beautiful or pretty. And, God help you, you are going to have a terrible time IDing her.
   d. When you ladies look at yourself in the mirror--and admire yourself (and you do it, don't kid me) you are emphasizing the wrong thing--AND YOU ARE ASKING FOR TROUBLE! YOU NEED A BEAUTIFUL SOUL.
   e. Some beautiful women never have their RM ID them; they are stuck on themselves, their beautiful body.

5. "a woman" ishah "that feareth the Lord:" no verb but a noun here. Yarih - stronger than a verb--it means the woman occupied with the Lord shall be praised.

6. "shall be praised:" hithpael imperfect of halal. It is usually reflexive, but here it is a strong passive.

Literal: "Glamour is a lie, beauty is empty and useless; the woman occupied with the Lord shall receive praise from her RM."

If she has her ECS, the woman will be ID-ed. And she shall be praised, not touched, but PRAISED! Halal is the soul climax.

V. The Taw File: Vs 31 ת signature. After all the soul ID, the woman signs off with:

1. The woman in private: "give her of the fruit of her hands:" the woman in touching.
   a. Give is a qal imperative of nathan. Lit., "give unto her (your RW) love (touching love) from the production of her own hands (woman's tactial response to her RM)." PRIVATE
   b. A woman who has her RM wants to get her hands on him.
   c. And if you women never want to touch your man, he is not your man.
   d. And a woman who responds becomes aggressive with her hands and her lips.
   e. The man has initiated so she wants to touch him all over--this is her man!
   f. And this is dedicated to the Christian fundy women--who have been taught by some dear old fundy Christian pastor that--

      your wifely duty is to lie down on the bed, close your eyes, grit your teeth--and say, "FOR GOD AND AMERICA!"

Now hear this, there is no prostitute, no whore, no $100-a-night call girl who with all her ability can ever duplicate the RW in her tactile response to her RM. She (whore) can fake it--but there is one man, just one! for one woman!!

2. The woman in public:
   a. What do they do in public? There are a number of jerks who want to demonstrate how much they love each other, so they paw each other in public. They look like they are both trying to climb a vine up the side of house at the same time.
   b. Go as wild as you want to in private but when you get in public, it shows without ever touching.
   c. "and praise her occupation in the gates:" her right man! (in the gates means in public)
      When all is right in private, in public they don't have to prove anything to anyone.

Conclusion: Proverbs 12:4

"A woman of capacity is a crown to her lord (he is a king and his kingdom is his RW--and she calls him lord)."

"but (conjunction of contrast, hiphil part. of bosh) the wrong woman causing confusion, frustration and disappointment is like cancer to his bones."

What destroys him? Hiphil participle

The Use of the Term Baptism in Scripture

I. Why Be Baptized?

A. It is commanded in Scripture, Matthew 28:19.

B. It was practiced by believers in the Bible (check references given below).

C. It is an act of obedience (the Lord commands it, I do it).

D. It is a public declaration of faith to the saved and unsaved community (again check the places in Scripture where people are baptized and who observed it).

II. Use of the word Baptize and related forms in Scripture (115 uses).

A. "Baptism:" Matt 3:7; 20:22,23; 21:25; Mark 1:4; 10:38,39; 11:30; Luke 3:3; 7:29; 12:50; 20:4; Acts 1:22; 10:37; 13:24; 18:25; 19:3,4; Romans 6:4; Eph 4:5; Col 2:12; 1 Peter 3:21.

B. "Baptisms:" Hebrews 6:2

C. "Baptist:" (used exclusively of John the Baptizer (literally) Matt 3:1; 11:11,12; 14:2; 16:14; 17:13; Mark 6:14,24,25; 8:28; Luke 7:20,28,33; 9:19. "Baptist's:" Matt 14:8.

D. "Baptize:" Matt 3:11; Mark 1:4,8; Luke 8:16; John 1:26,33; 1 Cor 1:17.

E. "Baptized:" Matt 3:6,13,14,16; 20:22,23; Mark 1:5,8,9; 10:38,39; 16:16; Luke 3:7,12,21; 7:29,30; 12:50; John 3:22,23; 4:1,2; 10:40; Acts 1:5; 2:38,41; 8:12,13,16,36,38; 9:18; 10:47,48; 11:16; 16:15,33; 18:8; 19:3-5; 22:16; Romans 6:3; 1 Cor 1:13-16; 10:2; 12:13; 15:29; Gal 3:27.

F. "Baptizeth:" John 1:25,33; 3:26.

G. "Baptizing:" Matt 28:19; John 1:28,31; 3:23.

III. Definition of the word: No one should be baptized until he or she understands clearly its significance.

A. It is not translated--it is transliterated.

1. Transliteration: The Greek letters are given English letters.

βαπτίζω is literally baptidzo.

2. Translation: Basic root means to identify with.

B. There are many uses of βαπτίζω in secular Greek sources. It always has the idea of identification.

1. Ninth century B.C. Homeric literature uses the word in this way. When the one-eyed Cyclops was speared, the sound was a hissing noise as when a blacksmith baptizes a piece of hot metal in the water. The iron was identified with the water causing it to be tempered.

2. Four hundred years later the word baptize was used in the dipping of a battle spear point into hog's blood to identify the spear with battle.

3. It was used in connection with a sunken ship. Before it was a floating ship; now it was on the bottom--it was identified with the water, being under it.

4. A piece of cloth was said to be baptized in dye and thus a change of identity was the result.

5. A pasture was baptized by fire, that is, its identity was changed from being green to being burned black.

C. Conclusion: The word baptize has the basic meaning of a change of identity or identification with someone or something.

IV. There are two categories of Baptism in Scripture--Real and Ritual.

A. Real Baptism: Not a ritual, no water, these four are dry.

1. Baptism of Moses: 1Cor 10:1,2

a. Moses and his people were identified with the cloud (cloud is the Lord Jesus Christ) and the sea in deliverance. The people were identified with Moses as well.

b. Water here speaks of judgment--and the only ones immersed on that occasion were the Egyptians; they lost their lives.

2. Baptism of the cup: Matthew 20:20

a. The cup is the cross and into the cup is poured out the sins of the world. Jesus Christ drank this cup on the cross.

b. This speaks of Christ being identified with our sins with the result that we receive salvation when we believe.

3. Baptism of fire: Luke 3:16; Matthew 24 in analogy, the parables illustrate it such as the "wheat and the tares, the good and bad fish, the wise and foolish virgins."

This speaks of unbelievers at the end of the tribulation being identified with the fire of judgment.

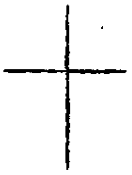
4. Baptism of the Holy Spirit: Many passages, some of which are Acts 1:5; 1 Corinthians 12:13.

a. This did not occur in the OT, note future tense use in Acts 1:5.

b. In 1 Cor 12:13, it says that by "one Spirit are we all identified placed into, the body of Christ." This is done at the moment of salvation.

c. A believer is identified with Christ in two ways:

(1) Retro-active Positional Truth

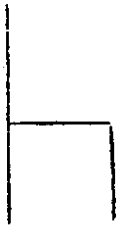


When Christ died on the cross over 1900 years ago, in position I died with Him; I was buried with Him; I rose with Him. This did not become REAL to me until I received Him and at the point of salvation His death, burial and resurrection become retroactive. Even though it happened many years ago it became actual when I believed.

When Christ died on the cross He judged sin once and for all AND REJECTED HUMAN GOOD.

Now since water baptism symbolizes the mechanics of salvation, when I go under the water the water symbolizes cleansing of sin and also DOWN WITH HUMAN GOOD. When I come into the air, it symbolizes up with Divine Good! Hence water baptism illustrates POSITIONAL TRUTH.

(2) Current Positional Truth



Because of RAPT (above) I currently enjoy certain things, I share certain things with Christ.

(a) Christ is currently seated at the right hand of God the Father and I share this position.
(b) He is eternal life; I share that life.
(c) He is absolute righteousness; I share that righteousness through position and imputation.
(d) He is King; we shall share this kingship and reign with Him.
(e) He is elected; we share His election.
(f) He has a predestiny; we share His destiny.
(g) He is the Son of God; we become sons of God.
(h) He is the heir of God; we share this inheritance; we are joint-heirs with Jesus Christ.

Everything Christ has He shares with us because WE ARE NEW CREATURES IN CHRIST JESUS. 2 Cor 5:17 is speaking of our position in Christ. The things that are new are eternal life, His righteousness, inheritance, etc. Overt activity is not in view in 2 Corinthians 5:17.

B. Ritual Baptism (Water is used and it symbolizes some truth.)

1. The Baptism of John the Baptist (Baptizer, literally) Matthew 3; John 3 and other verses

a. Water represented or symbolized the kingdom of God.

b. After the individual had repented (believed in the coming Christ, First Advent) he was baptized. Luke 3:3

c. Since the water represents the kingdom of God and the one baptized identifies with water, thus he identified with the kingdom of God.

2. The Baptism of Jesus Christ: Matthew 3; John 3

   a. Water represents the Father's will for the incarnation of Christ (Christ coming to earth in a human body).

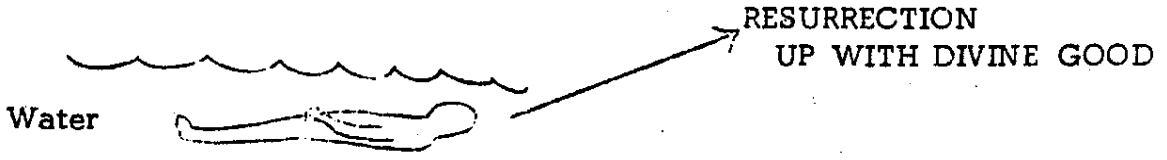
   b. It was the Father's will that Jesus Christ go to the cross and bear the sins of the world. Hebrews 10:7

   c. By going into the water He was saying He was willing to do the will of God.

3. Believer's Baptism

   a. Water represents identification with Christ in His death.

   b. Romans 6:3-5 is not speaking of water baptism but of Spirit baptism which is symbolized by water baptism.

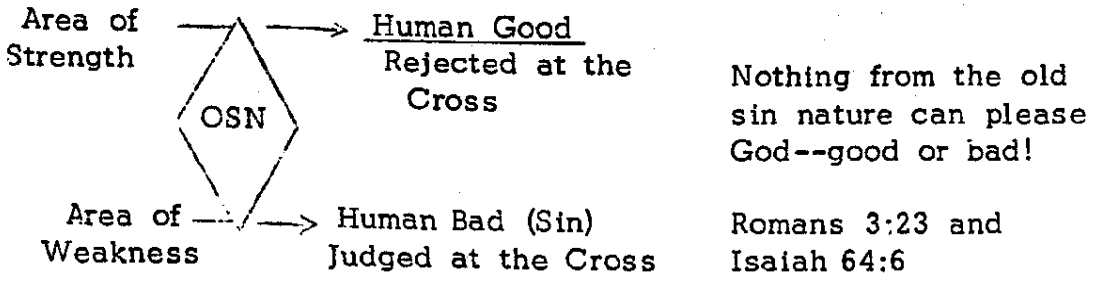


   c. When you go under the water you recognize that:

      (1) Christ's death, shedding of blood, cleanses of sin (cleansing of the water of the Word) by believing.

      (2) Christ on the cross also rejected human good. Human good has no place in the plan of God for a believer. Human good is never acceptable to God for salvation or growth. Isaiah 64:6

      (3) Obviously the only kind of good we can perform when out of fellowship is human good and it is no good because human good is from the source of the old sin nature.

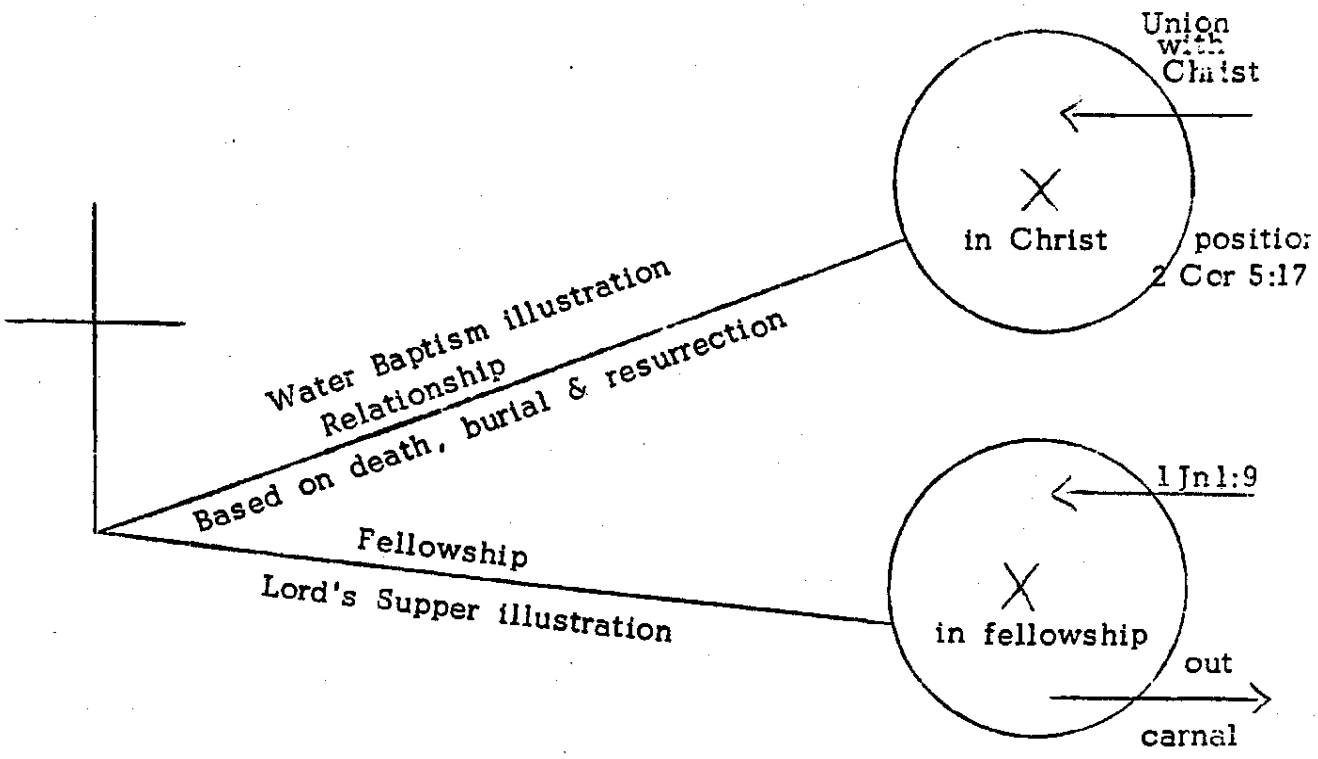


   d. When the believer comes up into the air (resurrection), he identifies with current positional truth. As such the candidate for baptism should understand eternal security and believe it. Thus coming into the air is a picture of eternal security coupled with positional truth.

   e. Breathing: performing divine good while in the bottom circle.

f. So the statement, DOWN WITH HUMAN GOOD AND SIN AND UP WITH DIVINE GOOD.

g. DIVINE GOOD IS THE FILLING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT.



The person who is being baptized should understand that he is identified with Christ in His death and therefore positionally he has rejected human good. He is identified with Christ who is seated at the right hand of God the Father, therefore positionally he cannot lose his salvation; he is a new creature in Christ. Therefore he should realize that in fellowship with Christ it is the filling of the Holy Spirit which is the basis of producing Divine Good (the fruit of the Spirit, the character of Christ).

So essentially water baptism coversthe entire scope of doctrine from the point of salvation to the production of divine good and basically is a recognition of what God has provided for the individual in phase 2 (the Christian walk).

Conclusion:

1. You should understand that once you have believed in Christ you are in union with Him, identified with Him in His death, identified with Him in His resurrection. THEREFORE YOU CANNOT LOSE YOUR SALVATION.
2. You should understand that human good has no place in your life because God has provided something better, the production of DIVINE GOOD. This comes through the filling of the Holy Spirit.
3. Baptism is administered once, but one can always go back to the point of his baptism and realize the principles involved.

4. Romans 6 is a chapter giving the relationship between positional truth and spirituality. Water baptism illustrates positional truth; the Lord's Supper illustrates spirituality (fellowship).

5. Consequently, water baptism illustrates the following principles:
   a. Principle of positional truth
   b. Principle of production of divine good and rejection of human good.
   c. Principle of eternal security (as related to positional truth).
   d. Principle of the filling of the Holy Spirit.
   e. Principle of staying in fellowship (confessing sin Biblically).

6. Water baptism doesn't save you or make you a better person; it is an illustrator of basic Bible doctrine.

7. Water divides:
   a. The candidate is dead to human good.
   b. He is alive to givine good.

8. They were baptized quickly after salvation in New Testament times because immediately after believing they were thoroughly instructed in the doctrines which water baptism symbolizes.

9. Once one understands these doctrines, there is nothing hindering a believer to be baptized.

10. Various Scriptures that often arouse questions:
    a. 1 Cor 15:29, "... baptized for the dead." This refers to believers who take the place of those who have died and gone on to their rewards. They are baptized "in place of those" who have gone on. No merit here; no authority to baptize as the Mormons do for the dead.
    b. Ephesians 4:5, "One Lord, one faith, one baptism," this refers to Spirit baptism, 1 Cor 12:13. Water baptism is not in view here.
    c. Hebrews 6:1,2: "Of the doctrine of baptisms ..." Note baptisms plural. This refers to the seven baptisms mentioned in the Word of God.
    d. Nowhere in the NT is someone "baptized" out of a bowl, urn, pan, bucket or even a tub. A river or body of water is used. Note John the Baptist baptizing in the Jordon, Philip baptizing in an oasis in the desert.
    e. In fact, the Scriptures indicate "much water" is the norm. John 3:23, "And John also was baptizing in Aenon near to Salim, because there was much water there: and they came and were baptized." By no stretch of the imagination is there much water when someone is sprinkled.

f. The body of water was large enough for Philip and the eunuch for both to go down into the water, Acts 8:38 and they both "were come up out of the water." Acts 8:39 This is impossible under conditions of infant baptism or present day sprinkling.

g. It is simple to see the analogy of the death, burial and resurrection of Christ in water baptism but what analogy does sprinkling bring out? Generally the false forms of "baptism" are taught at a very early age and as such are believed, not on the basis of Scripture but because mother believed in it, my church did this or as a child I was taught that this was Biblical. Not one Scripture can be cited in defense of sprinkling or even infant baptism.

12. Is infant baptism Scriptural? No. Proponents in the light of no Scriptural proof have built this entire ritual on an analogy. Even as the Israelite child "of the covenant" was circumcized the eighth day, even so should the child today be baptized as an infant.

However the two bona fide rituals today (water baptism and the Lord's Supper) are built on expression of positive volition. A child cannot exhibit positive volition (at 8 days or 180 for that matter) until he reaches the age of accountability.

Baptism is based upon positional truth, the baptism of the Spirit, the personal acceptance of Christ as Saviour. It would have no meaning to a child.

If a careful study of the term baptism is conducted, it is an ordinance carried out on the basis of understanding certain doctrines in the Word of God.

Then where do such spurious doctrines come from? Easily answered, from false "systems" of theology which fill in various gaps with human teachings and viewpoints of men.

13. The concept of the three gifts and the relation of water baptism to the second gift.

Three gifts of grace are given on a volitional basis (man must choose) to mankind:

a. The gift of the woman (Adam and Eve, Genesis 2):
   (1) Invisible identification: Adam's ID of woman's soul Gen 2:23,24.
   (2) Visible identification: Adam's ID of woman's body, consummation in marriage Gen 2:25.

b. The gift of salvation:
   (1) Invisible ID: Faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. This completely saves the individual. John 3:16

(2) Visible identification: water baptism after salvation which pictures visibly what happened invisibly. Acts 8:36-39

c. The gift of Bible doctrine (for the Christian way of life):

(1) Invisible identification: functioning under the grace apparatus of perception; that is, by faith-patience-prayer transferring Bible doctrine from the pages of the Bible to the heart. James 1:2-6

(2) Visible identification: production in time. Performing divine good works. James 2:14-20

If this foregoing study does not make sense, the burden is on your shoulders.

SUGGESTED ORDINATION QUESTIONS

1. The structuring of the evangelistic message of the NT (Peter, Stephen, Paul) is based on the unconditional covenants--what is that structure?

2. What is the session of our Lord Jesus Christ? The time from ascension to second advent, while Christ is seated at the right hand of God.

3. Is Adam the federal head of the human race? If so--what does that headship signify.

4. The sin unto death: What is it--and illustrate it with people who died under it. Is it functioning today?

5. Distinguish between the two advents.

6. What is the difference Biblically between fornication and the sin of adultery?

7. What is an ambassador?

8. Define the Angelic Conflict.

9. Is anger always sin?

10. Why do conservative organizations often go anti-semitic?

11. What significance do the Levitical offerings have today?

12. Do you believe in limited or unlimited atonement? Explain.

13. Is Jesus Christ a defense attorney or prosecuting attorney? Give some details on the doctrine of the attorneyship of Jesus Christ.

14. What authority does a pastor have? Is it scriptural to have a check and balance system on him? Explain.

15. How many baptisms are there in Scripture? (7) Is there such a thing as a dry baptism?

16. What is the baptism of the cup?

17. What is the baptism of fire?

18. What is the baptism of the Holy Spirit? When does it happen?

19. Give the six categories in the barrier. Six doctrines that take care of it as well.

20. In interpreting the sermon on the mount--to which dispensation does it apply?

21. Why did Christ get baptized?

22. Does John the Baptist, the herald of Christ's first advent, have any further ministry on earth during the tribulation?

23. Who then are the two witnesses of Revelation 11?

24. Does a believer have a new nature? Pursue.

25. What is your position on drinking, smoking, as it pertains to a minister of the gospel?

26. How is overt activity curtailed on the part of a stronger brother in regard to a weaker brother?

27. What is the basis of unity among believers?

28. What does it mean to "live in the Word" as we use the term here?

29. What significance do the bones of Joseph have?

30. Do you believe in capital punishment? Why?

31. What significance does vocabulary have in the Christian Way of Life?

32. What is a Christophany?

33. Why did Christ become true humanity?

34. What is the hypostatic union?

35. Define the Church Universal and the Church local.

36. What is the significance of circumcision?

37. Do you believe in infant baptism? Infant dedication?

38. How much of a threat is communism today? Catholicism? The cults?

39. How do you confess sin Biblically at the point of salvation? At the point of being out of fellowship in CV L?

40. How does the Communion ordinance illustrate obsolute spirituality?

41. Give the chronology of creation.

42. In the doctrine of rewards, what is the significance of crowns?

43. Distinguish between the spiritual death of Christ and the physical death of Christ.

44. What is the significance of the blood of Christ?

45. Discuss briefly the doctrine of dying grace.

46. Can a believer be demon possessed? What is demon possession?

47. What is divine discipline? Give the different categories of divine discipline.

48. Do you believe in dispensationalism? Give the four divisions of the Bible dispensationally.

49. Is there a difference in the plan of salvation in the OT as compared with the New Testament?

50. How were people saved in the OT? Prove.

51. What is the difference between church age spirituality and OT spirituality?

52. Does the animal system of sacrifice become reinstituted during the Tribulation and Millennium? Why?

53. What is the significance of the millennial temple and priesthood in Ezekiel 40-48?

54. How would you handle the mentally ill in your congregation?

55. Give some principles from the Bible on divine guidance.

56. What is your understanding of the doctrine of drinking in the Bible?

57. Give some principles applicable to "doubtful things."

58. What is the edification complex of the soul?

59. What is the emotional revolt of the soul?

60. What is reversion in a believer? In an unbeliever?

61. What is Grace Apparatus for Perception?

62. What is the doctrine of election--predestination?

63. Do you believe in eternal security?

64. Give some proofs of eternal security.

65. Doesn't belief in eternal security lead to lawless living?

66. How important is the doctrine of eternal decrees? What is the doctrine?

67. In the doctrine of evangelism--what is the responsibility of the local church?

68. Diagram the doctrine of divine essence, illustrating the Trinity.

69. Distinguish between inhale and exhale faith.

70. Is it proper to say that there is a wedding between grace and faith?

71. Are we to fast today? What is the significance of fasting in the Bible?

72. How many Jewish feasts were there? What in shadow did the feasts portray?

73. Discuss the word incarnation.

74. What is OPERATION FOOTSTOOL?

75. What is your understanding of foreknowledge?

76. Do you personally believe that Genesis 6 was an angelic infiltration into the human race??

77. Give point by point the doctrine of grace. (page 257ff. in Categorical Notebook)

78. Do you believe in tithing? What will you do when the church financial statement is in the hole--deep?

79. Give your whole concept of grace giving.

80. Constrast the Judgment Seat of Christ (Evaluation) and the Great White Throne Judgment.

81. The Original Languages are: How important are they? Are they related to any particular doctrine?

82. There are at least four reasons why people appear to be, or are healed. Give several.

83. Distinguish between hell and the lake of fire.

84. Distinguish between the filling of the Holy Spirit and the indwelling of the Holy Spirit.

85. What does it mean to grieve and or to quench the Holy Spirit?

86. What is the doctrine of intercalation?

87. What process does the Holy Spirit go through in making the Gospel clear to an unbeliever when he has no human spirit?

88. Distinguish between human good, divine good, and morality.

89. How many civilizations are there recorded in the Word of God? What are they?

90. What is the Biblical concept of humility?

91. In what way are we to imitate God? Eph. 5:1.

92. Distinguish between imputation and justification.

93. Does one learn Bible doctrine on the basis of human I.Q., spiritual I.Q., or both?

94. What is the woman's occupational hazard?

95. What is the significance of inner beauty in a woman?

96. What is internationalism? Does it violate doctrinal passages? In what way?

97. Give in very brief detail the essence of each of the 5 cycles of discipline in Leviticus 26.

98. What is involved in the doctrine of isolation of sin?

99. What is the significance of Israel in returning to the land today?

100. When will the official regathering be?

101. What relationship does the Tribulation have to the OT Age of Israel?

102. Is is possible that the mental attitude sin of Jealousy--is worse than other mental attitude sins?

103. What is the New Jerusalem in Rev. 21?

104. Is the believer to judge other believers? What about discernment?

105. What is the holiness bypass?

106. Distinguish between killing and murder.

107. What is the significance of the term "kiss" in Scripture? Like "kiss the Son ..."?

108. Distinguish between law and grace.

109. What does the term legalism connote to you? Are you legalistic? Do you believe that certain laws are to be kept?

110. Does libido pose a threat to a single person in the pursuit of RM-RW?

111. Name some tools you would use in Bible Study.

112. How was Jesus Christ sustained on the cross?

113. Was the Virgin Birth necessary in the case of Jesus Christ? How so?

114. Explain the Impeccability of Christ.

115. Did Jesus Christ function under GAP?

116. Give three Greek words for love, and distinguish between them.

117. What is the essence of man?

118. Are there any bona fide reasons for divorce in the Bible?

119. Distinguish Biblically between divorce and separation.

120. What in marriage precedes sexual love?

121. How would you counsel a husband or wife who came to you and said they were not right man and right woman?

122. What are the five priorities of a woman? (Any married believing woman)

123. The four priorities as taught for a pastor-teacher?

124. What is the greatest problem in marriage?

125. Distinguish between the soul of a woman and the soul of a man.

126. Is long hair becoming a man?

127. Should a woman wear a hat to church?

128. How is Jesus Christ our mediator?

129. In the doctrine of mental attitudes, how are thoughts controlled or brought into captivity?

130. Distinguish between the two lobes of the mentality.

131. What three things are in the heart lobe?

132. What do you understand about the subconscious mind?

133. What is the military responsibility of a believer?

134. Are you pacifistic in your military thinking?

135. When is war justified? Not justified?

136. What chapter in the Bible gives the length of the millennium?

137. Distinguish between the Church Age and the Millennium in the matter of war.

138. Who goes into the millennium? Who is destroyed at the end?

139. What should the local churches attitude be toward missions?

140. What is your thinking concerning deputation? Mission boards? Going to the field as an "independent?"

141. What spiritual gifts should a missionary have?

142. What do you understand about the doctrine of the mystery?

143. What is a believer's responsibility to his country in the area of taxes, keeping law, involvement in the community, marriage laws, and funeral laws?

144. Would you recommend cremation to a family in your church? Why?

145. Would you recommend a funeral service with the casket, viewing of the body? Would you permit this in the church if the family persisted?

146. Do you believe in graveside ceremonies?

147. What about the sanctity of the body--after the soul and spirit have left it (believer)?

148. Where do babies go who die before the age of accountability?

149. Give the essence of the old sin nature.

150. What is the remedy to the old sin nature?

a. Eradication
b. Dominance over
c. Co-existence
d. Nullification
e. Ignore

151. What do you understand about the Omni-attributes?

152. What is a parable?

153. Why did Christ use parables in his earthly ministry?

154. Do you believe in the literal interpretation of the Bible? What then do you do with figurative speech?

155. Do you believe that every word (in print) of the King James Bible is inspired?

156. Is the hippie concept of peace and love Biblical? Why not?

157. When did the church start? Was the church in the OT?

158. Are OT saints members of the "body of Christ?"

159. Define retroactive positional truth and current positional truth.

160. Relate your appreciation of the doctrine of prayer.

161. Is it bona fide to have group prayer meetings? Prayer cells?

162. Prove that you have a completed Canon of Scripture in your hand. Why only 66 books? What about the extra books in some Catholic Bibles?

163. What is pride? Explain beyond it being a mental attitude sin.

164. The doctrine of privacy is based on the priesthood of the believer. What other functions does a believer-priest perform and why is privacy needed to do this?

165. Was the prodigal son saved or lost? What is the point of the passage?

166. Prove that there are degrees of punishment in the lake of fire.

167. Distinguish between the doctrine of propitiation and reconciliation.

168. The spiritual gift of administration is very important. How much should a pastor-teacher be an administrator?

a. Should he have say-so in the musical department? How much?

b. Who has final authority in board meetings? In doctrine--yes--but how about procedure?

c. Is it proper for a board to give permission for the pastor to do so and so?

d. Who has say-so on the temperature of the physical plant, the seating, the quietness of the people--to concentrate?

e. "Not as being lords of God's heritage." Is a pastor a dictator? If not, where does he stop short of being a dictator?

169. Should the pastor be concerned about the dress of the people coming to his church?

170. Should believers be permitted to smoke in the church building? Non-believers?

171. What is your position on Bible institutes and Seminaries? Is there any place for them today in your thinking?

172. Should all giving be directed through the local church? What percentage is to be given under the concept of grace?

173. Define the difference between religion and Christianity?

174. Is the rapture a distinct event, apart from the Second Advent? Does this mean that you believe that the Second Coming of Christ has two distinct phases?

175. What is the difference between relationship and fellowship?

176. Briefly discuss the doctrine of fragrance of memories.

177. Give the four stages of the resurrection unto life. (Christ the first-fruits, etc)

178. Can you think through the high-lights of the OT and NT geographically, and individually? (Using certain people)

179. Diagram emotional revolt.

180. Give your view on revolution, good or bad.

181. Why don't we worship on Saturday today? In eternity, what will be the day of worship?

182. Discuss the three concepts of sanctification in Scripture. The term "sanctification" has a root concept, what is it?

183. In the Angelic Conflict, Satan heads up the opposition. How has he structured his demonic powers?

184. What is Satan's purpose in the Angelic Conflict?

185. In Matt. 25 what does the parable of the Ten Virgins teach?

186. What is your basic thinking concerning separation of church and state?

187. Does the Holy Spirit convict of personal sin in the life of the unbeliever? The believer?

188. Did God create sin? What use has sin in the plan of God?

189. Are there degrees of sin or is "sin, sin!".

190. What is scar tissue of the soul?

191. Give at least four causes of scar tissue of the soul.

192. How is scar tissue removed?

193. When does one receive a spiritual gift?

194. Distinguish between a temporary spiritual gift and a permanent spiritual gift.

195. Is the present day tongues movement genuine?

a. What stand do you intend to take in your church on this issue?
b. How would you prove that tongues are not genuine after 70 AD, when the Canon of Scripture closed in 96 AD?

196. Do you believe in "faith-healers?"

197. What about the radio preachers today? How do they fit in with the plan of God?

198. What about Campus Crusade, Navigators, Child Evangelism, and other organizations? Is their operation supported by the Scriptures?

199. Give some prevalent 20th centure perversions of Spirituality.

200. What is Biblical spirituality?

201. Define the doctrine of reversion--for both believer and unbeliever.

202. In the 102 Principles of Christian Courtship, what is the main priority in courtship?

203. Explain why category 3 love must precede category 2 love (generally) in right man, right woman.

204. Does a believer lose his salvation as a suicide? How would you explain suicide to the deceased loved ones? (All believers)

205. Will you be performing marriage ceremonies? If so, whom will you marry, and not marry?

206. Give three of the 26 laws of Study.

207. Relate scientific discoveries with Scriptural data.

208. In what way is Christ superior?

209. Do you believe in a Friday crucifixion or a Wednesday crucifixion?

210. In the Great Tribulation, distinguish between the beast and the false prophet.

211. What is the significance of the term Armageddon?

212. Give the very important place of Daniel's 70 weeks in Prophecy and break down your answer into a three fold division.

213. Who are the first-fruits of the Tribulation?

214. Give the four-fold wave of evangelism in the Tribulation.

215. At one time Israel in the Tribulation (believers) are told to flee and another time to fight. Distinguish.

216. Is Matthew 24 primarily Church Age or Tribulational?

217. Why does the Lord pour out so much judgment during the Tribulation?

218. When is Satan denied all access to heaven?

219. What are some misconceptions prevalent today in the USA?

220. Is there a conspiracy abroad today in the United States? What type?

221. How much salary do you believe a church should pay you--so you could be full-time? Or would you work part-time to support yourself?

222. What will you do when someone crosses you, stabs you in the back, in the ministry?

223. Do you ascribe to volitional theology? Are you Calvinist in your doctrinal position or Armenian?

224. How much freedom does a man have?

225. Describe a "worldly Christian."

226. How much privacy do you expect to have in the parsonage?

227. What is your wife's duty to the church? What will she be expected to do (by you) in Christian work?

228. Do you know your wife's spiritual gift?

229. Do you believe in a daily quiet time?

230. Do you believe in daily Bible study as a family?

231. Is welfare to be carried on by the government or by the local church, or by a combination of both?

232. Give a brief account of the stages of growth.

233. Can you know if you have your ECS?

234. How much Greek and Hebrew do you need to know in order to effectively pastor a local church?

235. Discuss the doctrine of yielding and its relationship to spirituality.

236. Give the priorities of old age. (First when does it start, the ministries of old age, and the hazards of old age.)

237. What is the doctrine of prosperity?

238. In what ways can a believer be prospered? Does it have its hazards? Elaborate.

239. Why do believer's suffer?

240. Describe an "emotional seizure."

241. Do you expect better or worse times in the United States of America?

242. Do you keep up on current events? Do you daily read a newspaper?

243. Do you believe that personal cleanliness has anything to do with your Christian testimony?

244. How should a Christian dress?

245. How important is knowing OT Introduction, NT Introduction, Hermeunetics, archeology, and other related subjects in ministering the Word?

246. How much study time (when you are not working) will you be doing to maintain your teaching ministry?

247. Do you believe that teaching the Word of God daily is commanded of a pastor-teacher?

248. What is your stand on the church s attitude toward your children, if any?

249. What is the Biblical attitude that you should have toward the younger women in your congregation?

250. Do you intend to be a pastor-teacher for the rest of your life?

Doctrine of Divine Essence

I. Introduction

A. There are three basic systems of perception--we learn everything through one of them.

1. Rationalism - what the mind says is true regardless of any other factor.

2. Empiricism - the scientific method; everything is checked out by the sensory pattern correlated with the mind.

3. Faith - the original system of perception. We accept things to be true and build upon it, for example, in math. Faith is the means by which we understand spiritual phenomena whose nature is complex (Heb 11:1).

B. Logical approaches to the Existence of God.

1. Religious - God exists because men believe in Him. This does not often occur but it does happen.

2. Ontological - The mind has the concept of an absolute being and, therefore, such an absolute being must exist. The human mind is relative. Therefore if a relative factor can find an absolute factor and believe in its existence and find reality in it, then such an absolute factor must exist. Therefore, God must exist.

3. Theological - The structure of the universe demands there be an absolute being behind it--a Master Designer.

4. Moral - Man possesses a conscience with the urge to choose between right and wrong, preferring right.

II. What is God Like - The Doctrine of Divine Essence

A. Sovereign - God has a will. He is eternal, infinite, self determining. (Dan 4:35; Deut 4:39; 1 Chron 29:12; Job 9:12; Psa 47:2; 83:18; 93:1; 135:6; Acts 17:24; 2 Chron 20:6) He makes decisions, policies, sets up principles. This is divine volition.

B. Absolute righteousness - He is absolute perfection. It is impossible for Him to do anything wrong (Ezra 9:15; Psa 48:10; 119:137; 145:17; Jer 23:6; 1 John 2:29).

C. Eternal Life - There never has been a time when He did not exist and there never will be a time in the future when He will not exist. His life has no beginning and no ending (Ex 15:18; Deut 32:40; 33:27; Job 36:26; Psa 9:7; 135:13; 145:13; Lam 5:19; 1 Tim 1:17; Rev 1:8; Isa 43:13).

D. Absolute justice - He is absolutely just; it is impossible for Him to do anything unfair (Deut 32:4; Isa 45:21).

E. Love - perfect relaxed mental attitude (John 3:16; Eph 2:4; 1 John 3:1; 4:9,16).

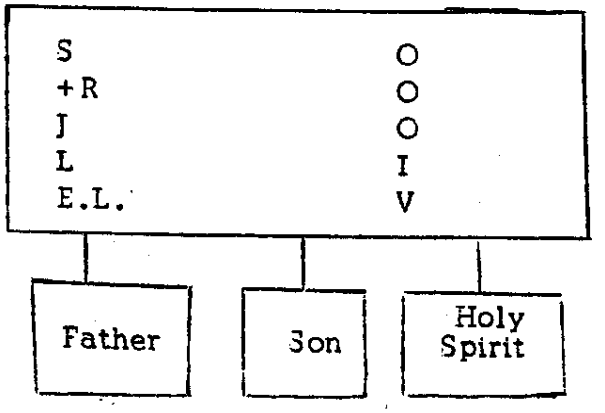
F. Omnicient - He has all knowledge. There never was a time when he did not know everything that would ever happen - (Job 26:6; 31:4; 34:21; Psa 147:5; Heb 4:13; 1 John 3:20; Prov 15:3).

G. Omnipresent - infinite presence, everywhere present (Josh 1:9; Gen 28:15; 31:3; Deut 4:39; 31:6; Psa 139:8; Prov 15:3; Isa 66:1; Jer 23:24; Acts 17:27; Heb 13:5).

H. Omnipotent - all powerful, "He is able" (Job 42:2; 26:7; Psa 115:3; 135:6; Hab 3:6; Matt 19:26; Mark 14:36; Luke 1:37; Rev 19:6).

I. Immutable - unchangeable (Num 23:19; Psa 33:11; 102:27; Heb 1:12; 13:8; James 1:17).

J. Veracity - absolute truth (Deut 32:4; 2 Sam 7:28; Psa 33:4; 146:6; Isa 65:16).



The Second Coming of Christ
(Rapture - Second Advent)

I. The "Church" did not exist in the Old Testament nor was it revealed in the Old Testament. Ephesians 3:1-12

A. "... the dispensation of the grace of God" Eph 3:2 is contrasted with "other ages" 3:5.

1. Other ages: Gentiles only, Genesis 1-11

2. Other ages: Jews and Gentiles, Genesis 12 and following

B. This age or dispensation characterized by:

1. "That the Gentiles should be fellow-heirs and of the same body" Eph 3:6

2. "Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints." Col 1:26 What is made plain? Jews and Gentiles one in the body of Christ.

C. Although the "Church" was not in the Old Testament, there were many believers such as those listed in Hebrews 11. The designation can be Old Testament saints.

II. The Purpose of the "Church" is the "taking out of a people for His name." Acts 15:14

A. This is a manifestation of grace. "That in the ages to come (kingdom on earth and eternal state) He might shew the exceeding riches of His grace in His kindness toward us through Jesus Christ." Eph 2:7

B. This is the production of the indwelling and filling Holy Spirit.

1. Christ's character is formed in the believer: Gal 4:19

2. The Spirit's fruit is produced in the believer: Gal 5:22,23

3. The believer is conformed to His image: Rom 8:28,29

III. The "Church" began at Pentecost. Acts 2

A. At that time the unique Baptism of the Holy Spirit began: Compare Acts 1:5; 2:4; 11:15 with 1 Cor 12:13.

1. The Baptism of the Holy Spirit occurs at the point of salvation in all believers; it is the placing of the individual into the body of Christ, the Church, when he believes. He is placed "in Christ." 2 Cor 5:17

2. At the time of salvation the Holy Spirit identifies the individual with the body of Christ. (The term baptism means to identify.)

B. At the moment of salvation the individual is indwelt by the Holy Spirit and filled by Him. 1 Cor 6:19

1. Indwelling in once for all. 1 Cor 6:19

2. The filling or controlling ministry of the Holy Spirit is needed every time you get out of fellowship and is assured through the correct use of 1 John 1:9. Note Ephesians 5:18.

Indwelling and filling are found only in the church age in EVERY BELIEVER.

C. Unique to the church age is positional truth, expressed by being "in Christ" 2 Cor 5:17. 36 different things are ours at the moment of salvation, forever.

D. Unique to the church age is the fact of Jew and Gentile ONE in Christ. Col 1:26,27

IV. The Church Age ends at the Rapture, seven years before the Second Advent.

The term rapture is from rapere, found in the expression "caught up" in the Latin translation of 1 Thess 4:17.

There are two major interpretations of Scripture, one called pretribulationalism (rapture before the seven years of tribulation) and postribulationalism (rapture after the tribulation).

The following development of the rapture and the second advent will indicate that the second coming in its two phases is a "cross-roads" doctrine. It is very important that one has the correct interpretation of end events. So carefully study the Word of God; it ought to be quite clear on the subject.

A. Pretribulation rapturism rests essentially on one major premise--the literal method of interpretation of the Scriptures.

1. As an adjunct to this, the pretribulationist believes in a dispensational interpretation of the Word of God.

2. He finds the Word making many distinctions between Israel and the Church.

3. Also, that the church is a mystery unrevealed in the Old Testament.

B. Only the pretrib position guards the Biblical teaching of imminence (Christ can return for the church at any time).

1. Posttribs say that the pretrib position is quite new, having started with the Darbyites, known as Plymouth Brethren.

2. However, the early church believed in the imminent return of Christ. 1 Thess 4:13-18 Paul looked for the imminent blessed hope, Titus 2:13. Many of the church fathers believed in an imminent return in the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th centuries AD. This documentation can be given upon request

C. A distinction must be made between the rapture and second advent in the area of signs. Since the church is given the hope of an imminent return of Christ there can be no signs given to her as to when this event will take place.

There are many signs concerning the Second Advent--study Matthew 24 but no signs concerning the church. However certain conditions exist at the end of the church age. It is in the area of denial:

1. There is a denial of God: 2 Tim 3:4,5.
2. There is a denial of Christ: 1 John 2:18; 4:3; 2 Peter 2:6.
3. There is a denial of Christ's return: 2 Peter 3:3,4.
4. There is a denial of the faith: 1 Tim 4:1,2.
5. There is a denial of sound doctrine: 2 Tim 4:3,4.
6. There is a denial of the separated life: 2 Tim 3:1-7.
7. There is a denial of Christian liberty: 1 Tim 4:3,4.
8. There is a denial of morals: 2 Tim 3:1-13; Jude 18.
9. There is a denial of authority: 2 Tim 3:4.

D. Believers in every age have had tribulation. In fact, tribulation is very intense for believers during the church age because of the Angelic Conflict. Every believer is a target of Satan and his demons.

1. However, the great tribulation is a time of preparation for Israel's restoration (Deut 4:29,30; Jer 30:4-11) not the church for glory.
2. None of the OT passages on the tribulation mention the church (Deut 4:29,30; Jer 30:4-11; Dan 9:24-27; 12:1,2).
3. None of the New Testament passages on the tribulation mention the church (Matt 24; 1 Thess 1:9,10; 5:4-9; Rev 4-19).

E. The rapture of the church is never mentioned in any passage dealing with the Second Advent of Christ after the tribulation.

The leading exponent of the posttrib view George Ladd in his book, "The Blessed Hope," page 165 says, "With the exception of one passage, the author will grant that the Scripture nowhere explicitly states that the Church will go through the Great Tribulation. God's people are seen in the Tribulation, but they are not called the Church but the elect or the saints. Nor does the Word explicitly place the Rapture at the end of the Tribulation. Most of the references to these final events lack chronological indications ... However, in one passage, Rev 20, the Resurrection is placed at the return of Christ in Glory. This is more than an inference.

1. If the Word of God is our final authority, shouldn't there be more Scriptural documentation for a posttrib view than this stated above?

2. The fact that Rev 20 states there is a resurrection after the tribulation is true. However, it is not referring to the rapture of the church, but the resurrection of Old Testament saints.

F. A proper literal interpretation of Daniel's 70 weeks, Dan 9:9:24-27, finds that 69 of them are historically fulfilled; but the last week (term meaning seven years) is yet future. Daniel's prophecy refers to Israel. The age of Israel stops at the cross, seven years short, and is picked up again after the rapture of the church. The tribulation is Jewish in flavor, not church.

G. The church is not appointed to the wrath to be poured out on Israel and unsaved Gentiles (Romans 5:9; 1 Thess 1:9,10; 5:9). The church therefore cannot enter "the great day of their wrath." Rev 6:17

H. The church will not be overtaken by the Day of the Lord (1 Thess 5:1-9) which includes the tribulation.

The believers there had been under such severe persecution that they thought they were in the tribulation. Paul tells them that before the tribulation can begin, the rapture will take place first and then will the man of sin be revealed and so on. Read 1 and 2 Thessalonians carefully.

I. The church of Philadelphia was promised deliverance from the "hour of trial, that hour which is come upon the whole world, to try them that dwell upon the earth." Rev 3:10

J. It is characteristic of divine dealing to deliver believers before a divine judgment is inflicted upon the world as illustrated in the deliverance of Noah, Lot, Rahab, etc. 2 Peter 2:6-9

K. At the time of the translation of the church, all believers go to the Father's house in heaven (John 14:3) and do not immediately return to the earth after meeting Christ in the air as the posttribs teach.

L. The godly remnant of the tribulation are pictured as Israelites not members of the church. Matt 24:22,31; 25:1-13

M. The pretrib as opposed to the posttrib does not confuse general terms like <u>elect</u> and <u>saints</u> which apply to the saved of all ages with specific terms like <u>church</u> and those <u>in Christ</u> which refer to believers of this age only.

N. The church is uniformly exhorted to look for the coming of the Lord while believers in the tribulation are directed to look for signs. Study carefully Matthew 24.

O. The Holy Spirit is omnipresent whether the church is absent or present. However, when the Holy Spirit is removed as the Indweller of the church, the restraint of evil is removed. This is a specific type of evil that He restrains, ecumenical religion (the mystery of iniquity). When the true church is raptured, the false apostate church is left behind, under the man of sin. Study 2 Thess 2 carefully on this.

P. If the expression, "except the falling away come first" be translated literally, "except the departure come first," it would plainly show the necessity of the rapture taking place before the beginning of the tribulation. 2 Thess 2:3

Q. There is a necessity of an interval between the Rapture and Second Advent--for the following reasons:

1. According to 2 Cor 5:10, all believers of this age must appear before the judgment seat of Christ in heaven, an event never mentioned in the detailed accounts connected with the Second Advent.

2. The rapture (Christ coming for His bride) must take place before the Second Advent for the wedding feast. Rev 19:7-10

3. Living tribulation saints are not raptured at the Second Advent but carry on ordinary occupations as farming and building houses and shall bear children. Isa 65:20-25 This would be impossible if all saints were translated at the Second Advent as the posttrib teaches.

4. The judgment of the Gentiles following the Second Advent (Matt 25: 31-46) indicates that both saved and unsaved are still in their natural bodies, which would be impossible if the translation had taken place at the Second Advent.

5. If the translation took place in connection with the Second Advent, there would be no need of separating the sheep from the goats at a subsequent judgment; but the separation would have taken place in the very act of the translation of the believers before Christ actually sets up his throne on earth. Matt 25:31

6. The judgment of Israel (Ezek 20:34-38) which occurs subsequent to the Second Advent indicates the necessity of regathering Israel. The separation of the saved from the unsaved in this judgment obviously takes place sometime after the Second Advent and would be unnecessary if the saved had previously been separated from the unsaved by translation (rapture).

R. The Distinctions between the rapture and the Second Advent.

Take all the Scriptures on the Second coming of the Lord and see if these distinctions are valid.

1. The rapture involves the removal of all believers; the Second Advent involves the manifestation of the Son of God.

2. The rapture pictures the saints caught up into the air; at the 2nd Advent Christ returns to earth.

3. In the rapture Christ comes to claim His bride; in the 2nd Advent He returns with His bride.

4. The rapture results in the removal of the church and the inception of the tribulation; the 2nd Advent results in the establishment of the millennial kingdom.

5. The rapture is imminent, while the 2nd Advent is preceded by a multitude of signs.

6. The translation (rapture) brings a message of comfort, while the 2nd Advent is accompanied by a message of judgment.

7. The rapture is related to the program for the church, while the 2nd Advent is related to the program for Israel and the world.

8. The rapture is a mystery, while the 2nd Advent is predicted in the Old and New Testaments.

9. At the rapture believers are judged but at the 2nd Advent Gentiles and Jews are judged.

10. The rapture leaves creation unchanged, while the 2nd Advent entails the change in creation.

11. At the rapture Gentiles are unaffected, while at the 2nd Advent Gentiles are judged.

12. At the rapture Israel's covenants are unfulfilled but at the 2nd Advent all her covenants are fulfilled.

13. The rapture is for believers only but the 2nd Advent has its effect on all men.

14. The rapture is said to take place before the day of wrath but the 2nd Advent follows it.

15. The expectation of the church in regard to the rapture is "the Lord is at hand," while the expectation of Israel in regard to the 2nd Advent is "the kingdom is at hand." Matt 24:14

16. The expectation of the church at the translation is to be taken into the Lord's presence, while the expectation of Israel at the 2nd Advent is to be taken into the kingdom.

Thus there must be two different programs; the first, the rapture and the second one, the 2nd Advent in the coming of Christ.

S. The relation of the church to government

In the New Testament the church is instructed to pray for governmental authorities, since they are God-appointed. 1 Tim 2:1-4 The church is further instructed to be in subjection to such powers in 1 Peter 2:13-16; Titus 3:1; Romans 13:1-7 because these governments are God's representatives to carry out God's will.

But during the tribulation the government will be Satanic controlled. Revelation 13:4 The church must be delivered before this time for it could not be subject to such a government.

T. The silence concerning the tribulation in the Epistles.

Much instruction is given concerning trials and tribulations but none of the nature mentioned in Revelation 6-19.

U. The Sealing of the 144,000 Jews Revelation 7,14

As long as the church is on earth, none are saved to a special Jewish relationship. All who are saved are placed in a positional relationship to Christ. Col 1:26-29; 3:11; Eph 2:14-22; 3:1-7.

During the great tribulation the church must be absent because God seals 144,000 Jews, 12 from each tribe, reflecting the fact that these seven years are Jewish in flavor rather than neither Jew nor Gentile, bond nor free.

V. The only church mentioned in Rev 6-19 is the false, harlot church. The true church, if present on earth, would not be ignored with specific vocabulary.

It is hoped that this study will be clear and pertinent on the subject of the rapture and the Second Advent. Many more things could be said but this will suffice.

Rev 22:17,20: "And the Spirit and the bride say, Come... And he that heareth, let him say Come...He who testifieth these things saith, Yea: I come quickly. Amen: come Lord Jesus."

The Doctrine of Tapestry

Proverbs 31:22

1. "Coverings of tapestry" is used twice in the Hebrew Old Testament:

   a. In a wrong sense: Prov 7:16. This is wrong only in the sense that it involves the wrong woman. See the context. The prostitute has a history of making sex attractive and the surroundings for sex attractive.

   b. In a right sense: Prov 31:22 (between right man and right woman).

2. Biblically this is referring to the fact that the bedroom ought to be the most attractive room in the house.

   a. The livingroom
   b. The kitchen — ALL ARE ACCESSABLE TO OTHER PEOPLE
   c. The bathroom — (not the bedroom)

3. The clutter of your bedroom can be a mental extension of your attitude toward the physical side of marriage.

   Even the ancient world used:
   a. Perfume
   b. Spices
   c. Beautiful drapings
   d. Ornate pillows
   e. Beautiful sheets and bedspreads
   f. Beautiful furniture

4. The wrong woman makes herself available, desirable and beautiful; yet the right woman often makes herself unavailable, undesirable and flakey--.

5. The wrong woman has all night; the right woman (in marriage) says, "Let's make it short tonight, I'm tired." Prov 6:18

6. It would be better to make your livingroom a junk room and your bedroom a showplace (for only two people) as far as BD is concerned.

7. The right woman makes her nest and makes it attractive and --

8. The bed is right and the body is right: "...her clothing is silk and purple."

9. She wears beautiful and expensive clothing for her right man.

   This is just the opposite today. The average woman hangs around her house looking like a zombie. She dolls up after RM leaves. And she goes shopping or to a woman's club or something and is really dressed up.

Then by the time hubby comes in--from work, she is back into her grubbies, looking like hell.

Ladies, you don't dress for a bunch of dumb women. You say, "Well, Lilly complimented me today." So what!

You need to call your right man, "Lord." From that day you'll really improve.

10. The woman who dresses her bed and her body to please the right man is fantastic. And he rules a kingdom in his home that is really something.

11. Single women: You keep your house so the right man can come in, make his soul identification without falling flat on his face in the process.

    a. Your personal discipline is terrible.
    b. And some time your right man is going to walk into your life and at first the sound may be muffled--but he'll say "shape up, baby!" and you will shape up!

Ladies, if you can call your right man, Lord--you haven't any problem with this doctrine. If you say, well he is lucky to be able to see me dressed up once a month, or the bed--well I'm incubating duck eggs and raising three litters of pups and one of pigs--he can have the couch. Something is wrong with you.

12. In the doctrine of right man, right woman--there are housekeeping priorities--bed and body. You take it from there.

The Contrast of Mary and Martha--Kitchen Doctrine

Luke 10:38-42

I. Luke 10:38

(Now it came to pass--not in the original)

A. Pres. Act. Infinitive of πορεύεσθαι "as they went"
It means to go from one place to another--the reality of it)

B. "Martha received him into her house:" Aor. Middle Ind. ὑποδέχομαι

1. Anadechomai: to receive again and again.
2. Prosdechomai: to receive the Word with open arms--welcome it.
3. Upodechomai: to welcome with open arms because of authority (to entertain a guest who carries authority).

Martha is the older sister.

First Point of Doctrine: Martha in receiving the Lord gladly indicates that she is in fellowship with the Lord.

II. Luke 10:39

A. "Mary, which also sat at Jesus' feet:" καρακαθέζομαι
Aor. Passive Participle

1. It means to sit down beside--has nothing to do with the feet.
2. Martha is out in the kitchen fixing something; Mary sits down beside him and listens to him teach.

B. "and kept on listening:" Imperfect Act. Indicative of ἀκούω.

1. She accepted His authority.
2. She concentrated on what He said.

II. Luke 10:40

A. "Martha ... cumbered about with much serving:" περισπάτω

1. To have your face drawn through pressure--
2. To be distracted, overburdened, to be weighed down and to show it.

This is Imperfect Passive Ind.

Mary is sitting down and constantly listening--ACTIVE VOICE--she is doing something, Martha is doing something--but it is GETTING HER DOWN, passive voice.

It keeps hitting her, how is she going to do this alone. How is she going to get the food prepared for all these people.

NOW THEY ARE BOTH DOING WHAT THEY WANT TO DO. Martha is a hustler--and Mary is a listener. But one is upset--and the other is not.

Second P.O.D: There is a vast differencebetween people, a case in point, the two sisters. One is a hustler (hard worker); the other is prone to sit around and study doctrine. There is a principle of LIVE AND LET LIVE.

Third P.O.D: The one who listens to doctrine will always be picked at, downgraded, bad-mouthed.

1. You ought to be in the kitchen.
2. You ought to be doing this, doing that.
3. You ought to be preparing the bedrooms--cleaning the house.

Fourth P.O.D: The people who hustle (who are hard workers) have an occupational hazard. They always get burdened down and then get critical. PASSIVE VOICE--receive burdening.

And the ones who want to get doctrine are inclined to not do anything else. Both sisters, entirely different.

B. "and came to Jesus:" ἐπιστῆμι

1. She burst in on Him. She interrupted Him. She just finally blew up.

2. Notice: one has an inclination toward legalism, another toward grace.

Fifth P.O.D: The hustlers always want those who are not doing anything to work. There is a place for hustlers but their occupational hazard--they just can't stand people who aren't doing anything. They are critical of them. THE GRACE PEOPLE ALWAYS HAVE AN INTRUSION ON THEIR PRIVACY.

Sixth P.O.D: In the light of eternity--what was important? We do not have one single line about what was served. But we have several lines on what was taught and who was benefitted.

It takes a lot of maturity to hustle around a kitchen alone--when everybody is sitting on their duff; it takes a lot of maturity to stay in fellowship and not get your face under pressure.

Seventh P.O.D: Remember, you who are inclined to listen to doctrine, all your life someone is going to be inclined to pick at you. You just have to stick with it and listen. Imperfect tense of ἀκούω.

Notice no men were expected to work in the KITCHEN.

C. "do you not care" impersonal word, μέλει. It means, Lord, what about me??? Don't you care I'm not getting any help.

D. "that she has left:" imperfect act.ind. of καταλείπω. She has left off helping me just to get doctrine!

Eighth P.O.D: A woman or man out of fellowship is rude. She is being rude--why? Martha says, "Why she has gone AWOL; she has forsaken the kitchen."

E. "she has left me to serve:" διακονεω. She is no help.

Ninth P.O.D: People who are hard workers often feel alone and inclined to feel sorry for themselves when they are getting no help. THEY MUST DO THEIR MINISTRY IN FELLOWSHIP AND AS UNTO THE LORD!

1. I've never seen a church where there weren't people who really worked hard or gave a lot or were johnny-on-the spot a lot.
2. And people who didn't.

EVERYBODY should work hard! Everybody should have a job at some time or another.

Men, I believe that some of your have wives if they work outside of the home--you'll ruin them; other wives--no problem at all.

3. A woman who can do nothing well is the type that can ultimately please a man--she is always available--NO "WAIT A MINUTE, HARRY!"
4. A woman who is a hustler has a much harder time pleasing her husband than the other. THAT'S RIGHT, BUT YOU'LL HAVE TO THINK IT THROUGH.

The criticism is for the girl in the kitchen. Martha breaks in--Lord, she's not even helping me. And further, whoever the authority is--MAKE HER DO IT, LORD.

F. "bid her:" aorist act. imperative of λεγω. You tell her. Ingressive aorist, tell her now.

G. "that she must come in and help me:" aor.middle subj. of συναντιλαμβανω.
with,against,to seize. To take hold (strong) and help is the meaning. She is just about to shake her sister and drag her in.

IV. Luke 10:41: Jesus had an answer

A. And He said, you are CAREFUL: Pres.act.ind. of μεριμναω
You are worried. It means to be divided in mind and therefore worried.

B. You are TROUBLED: θορυβαζομαι. It means to be disturbed because of pressure you have built up in yourself.

Tenth P.O.D: The details of life (to a hard worker) will be a rough test to pass, without many failures. YOU MUST STAY IN FELLOWSHIP! NO TWO WOMAN ARE THE SAME!

Eleventh P.O.D: Whether a hustler or passive type of woman--live your life as unto the Lord. Jesus condemns Martha for her mental attitude sins.

V. Luke 10:42

A. "but one thing is needful:" What is that??? BD BEING TAUGHT! It is more important that eating Job 23:12. Pres.act.ind. of _____. It will always be important; there never will be a time when it is not.

1. "needful" is χρεία: "one thing keeps on being absolutely necessary.

2. "And Mary has chosen" aor.middle ind. of ἐκλέγω. She choose - active; she is benefitted - middle; reality of her action - ind.

B. "that good part:" GET THIS NOW! THAT IS FANTASTIC. WHAT A SENSE OF HUMOR OUR LORD HAS. τὴν ἀγαθὴν μερίδα

"She (Mary) has selected the BEST DISH." What is that?? Doctrine.

C. "which shall not be taken away from her." future passive indicative: ἀφαιρεω: ultimate source--never cut off from her.

Twelfth P.O.D: THE GRACE LADY ALWAYS CHOOSES (SELECTS) THE BEST DISH--BIBLE DOCTRINE (that is the dish that stays with you permanently).

Now you know the different between the two girls. Let me give you a test.

WHO IS THE BEST DISH??????

Doctrine of Depression and

Doctrine of Happiness

I. Introduction

A. Everyone gets depressed at one time or another except the very low IQ types.

B. Generally the smarter you are the more you get depressed; the more things bug you. Very few people can live with or understand a genius.

C. Paul will be our subject in depression & several Greek words which can be translated "depression."

D. Various things make people depressed. They may be happy one day but horribly depressed the next.

II. Some General Reasons for Depression

Principle: You can be in fellowship and be depressed. You can have a headache and be depressed and be in fellowship.

A. People: 2 Cor 7:1,2

1. "We have wronged no man:" People often misrepresent you. This can cause depression.

   Example: A woman said I hung up on her. Now I've hung up on people who use abusive language, etc.--but not in this instance. Then they tell it around.

2. "We have corrupted no man:" When a pastor is really meeting the need of young people, some one will sooner or later accuse him of corrupting the youth.

3. "We have defrauded no man:" Unscruplous, unfair, dishonest. People accuse; they malign; they murder mentally.

B. Pressure: 2 Cor 7:3-5

1. "Tribulation:" θλῖψις (pressure, oppression, affliction) outside

   a. Distress brought about by outward circumstances.
   b. Same word used of the "great tribulation."
   c. Distress caused by war.
   d. Distress experienced by a woman bearing a child.
   e. Distress experienced in the realm of dying.
   f. Suffering of Christ in bearing our sins: Col 1:24
   g. Affliction in the mind: 2 Cor 2:4

2. "No rest:" θλίβω inside "troubled" squeeze tube of pressure from the Angelic Conflict.

a. To press up--as a crowd presses: Mark 3:9

b. To compress, make narrow--to become restricted--narrow--a road that comes to nothing. Matt 7:14

c. To compress the soul--through many testings and sufferings. 2 Cor 7:5 Like a creditor pressing you, a debt to pay.

3. "Cast down" ταπεινός.

a. Used of "position, power and esteem of LOW position" Jm 1:9

b. Used of an abject, depressed person as here: Paul was constantly the target of the Angelic Conflict. Paul was constantly being maligned by Christians (Alex the Coppersmith, Demas, Hymenaeus, etc.) Paul had the forces of legalism constantly against him.

c. He had battles outside

d. He had phobos on the inside--"fears:" HE HAD PRESSURE. Most of us don't have a clue what Paul had to face.

(1) Why even church music can be depressing
(2) Soloist singing a funeral dirge
(3) A dragging humn

C. Details of Life (the good, human details of just living are enemies of divine good)

1. What kept you from studying the Word Sunday? and in public assembly during the week? Heb 10:25

2. What kept you from studying the Word through tapes this last week?

3. How many promises did you use? Did you need 1 John 1:9 or were you in fellowship the whole week? What got you out of fellowship?

4. Does your life prove one fact--that you get BD regardless of what happens?

D. Physiological change: Disease, illness, change of hormone balance, any organic illness is a potential here. Study the healing in the Gospels.

E. Mental illness can cause depression: Job 3

F. Loneliness can cause depression: 2 Timothy 4:10 ff

G. Carnality (being out of fellowship) can cause depression (worry, fear, frustration, anxiety, moodiness) Numerous passages

III. Solution to Depression: 2 Cor 7:6

A. First Solution: Doctrinally-oriented believers with which you have rapport 2 Cor 7:6,13,14

1. These are believers you can TRUST:

a. And it is relaxing to be around those believers.
b. In fact, I spend very little, if any time, around believers I don't trust.

2. These are believers you enjoy being around.

3. These are rare believers (Titus was the only one and perhaps John Mark who had this ministry with Paul) with the rare ability to snap a believer out of depression.

Many believers are a pain in the neck!

B. Second Solution: Believer's responding to Bible doctrine 2Cor 7:7 (What really encourages a pastor?)

1. Regular, punctual attendance regardless of the details. When you don't show up for a service it is like your being a foreman in the woods and your employees don't show up or a business man with no clerks or parts men.

2. A systematic, enthusiastic response to the Word of God apart from a critical spirit.

C. Third Solution: Col 1:9-14 The Edification Complex of the Soul The picture of the believer in victory.

Under this let's take up the Doctrine of Inner Happiness--the fifth floor of the ECS. "so that I rejoiced the more:" 2 Cor 7:7

1. Happiness is older than the human race. Happiness is resident in the Trinity--a result of the character of God. Gal 5:22,23 is said to describe the character of Christ; JOY.

2. In Eternity Past God desired to share his happiness with man in time (doctrine of divine decrees). This has to be done through salvation and getting into Bible doctrine. Eph 1:3

3. God's happiness is transferred to man via grace. Eph 2:8,9 GAP is designed to bring happiness to the believer. 1 John 1:4

4. Such happiness is definitely confined to the plan of God. Acts 16: 31-34 Salvation means the possibility but not the reality of such happiness.

5. Ultimate happiness is found in the edification complex of the soul. John 17:13,17. Note also perfect passive participle πεπληρωμένοι Eph 3:19

6. Happiness prior to salvation is temporary and superficial. It does not sustain in any pressure or any adversity situation. Fleeting and unstable. Daniel 5:1-6

   a. The unbeliever's human happiness depends upon circumstances as a rule or compatability with human beings.

   b. For happiness the unbeliever often goes into a form of slavery, like drinking.

7. God has designed Phase 2 happiness to be permanent and stabilized through the edification complex. John 17:13,17

   The ECS sustains in every circumstance; therefore GAP is the basis of this happiness. 1 John 1:4

8. Principle: Divine happiness is double happiness:

   a. Filling of the Holy Spirit produces the fruit of joy. Gal 5:22,23

   b. Edification complex produces joy. Col 1:9,10
      (1) Plural form in Hebrew - ashere "blessed" happinesses
      (2) Plural form in Greek - makarioi "blessed" happinesses

9. Inevitably the perpetuation of inner happiness is the doctrine of GAP used daily. James 1:25; Matt 4:4; Jer 15:16

   Some of you don't have enough doctrine to keep happiness going.

10. Happiness (divine) protects from three areas of disillusion:

   a. Disillusion from the circumstances of life: Phil 4:11,12

   b. Disillusion from the details of life: Heb 13:5,6

   c. Disillusion with believers: Heb 12:2-4
      You will sooner or later discover that just because a person is a Christian does not mean that he is nice, honest, truthful or even dependable.

      Disillusion with believers is a very serious and very dangerous situation because you may use this as an excuse to get away from Bible doctrine. You get away from the Word. Angelic conflict knocks you out. YOU SHOULDN'T HAVE YOUR EYES ON PEOPLE IN THE FIRST PLACE! Jer 17:5, "Cursed is the man that puts his trust in man."

11. Inner happiness enhances the capacity for love: Jer 15:16; John 13:17; 1 John 1:4.

12. The believer is commanded to be happy and God never makes a command unless He provides a way for its fulfillment. Phil 4:4

VERB MAKING CHART

OLD TESTAMENT (Hebrew language):

stem:
- QAL - simple active.
- NIPH'AL - simple passive.
- PI'EL - intensive active.
- PU'AL - intensive passive.
- HIPH'IL - causitive active.
- HOPH'AL - causitive passive.
- HITHPA'EL - reflexive.

* * * * * * *

tense:
- PERFECT - completed action.
- IMPERFECT - incompleted action.

* * * * * * *

- IMPERATIVE - command.
- PARTICIPLE - state of continued activity (... ing)
- INFINITIVE CONSTRUCT - emphasis on action.
- INFINITIVE ABSOLUTE - denotes purpose (to ...)

NEW TESTAMENT (Greek language):

tense:
- PERFECT - completed action with finished results in present time.
- IMPERFECT - continuous action in past time.
- PRESENT - continuous action happening at the present time.
- FUTURE - action planned for a future time.
- AORIST - action which occurs in a point of time.
- PLUPERFECT - completed action with finished results in past time.

* * * * * * *

voice:
- ACTIVE - subject produces the action of the verb.
- MIDDLE - subject participates in the results of the action of the verb
- PASSIVE - the subject receives the action of the verb.

* * * * * * *

mood:
- INDICATIVE - the mood of reality or certainty.
- SUBJUNCTIVE - the mood of potentiality or probability.
- OPTATIVE - mood of desire or possibility, preceded by would or should.
- IMPERATIVE - mood of command or volition.

* * * * * * *

- INFINITIVE - used to express purpose or result.
- PARTICIPLE - describes the subject as the doer of the verb's action.
- AORIST PARTICIPLE - action which precedes the action of the main verb.

The Doctrine of the Gospel

1. Etymology of the word: the gospel means good news, period (excludes all bad news). εὐαγγέλιον

2. Meaning of the Gospel: the doctrines pertaining to salvation: redemption, expiation, reconciliation, propitiation, imputation, justification, positional truth (sanctification). Also the doctrines pertaining to Christ, the ONLY Saviour, like the Hypostatic union, Impeccability, etc.

3. Six uses of the term Gospel in the New Testament:

   a. The GOSPEL of Christ: Romans 1:16-17 "I am not ashamed of the Gospel of Christ." This is emphasis on the Person of the Gospel.

   b. My GOSPEL: Romans 2:16 That means that the GOOD NEWS belongs to every believer.

   c. Our GOSPEL: 2 Cor 4:3,4 Same as above, the believer's possession of the Gospel and the importance of communicating it as God gives opportunity in witnessing.

   d. The GOSPEL of peace: Eph 6:15 This emphasizes the doctrine of Reconciliation in the Gospel.

   e. The everlasting GOSPEL: Rev 14:6 This emphasizes the proximity of eternity for unbelievers in the Tribulation.

   f. The GOSPEL of the kingdom: Matt 24:14 This emphasizes the fulfillment of the Unconditional Covenant to the born-again of Israel.

   THIS DOES NOT MEAN A DIFFERENT GOSPEL as C. Stam promotes. There is no such thing as the full Gospel. That is another Gospel of Galatians 1.

4. There is no such thing as the FULL GOSPEL. This is absolute apostacy.

5. The boundaries of the Gospel is given in 1 Cor 15:1-4.

   a. Christ died as a substitute for our sins (spiritual death - "It is finished.")

   b. Christ died physically (buried).

   c. Christ rose from the dead. This is good news to emphasize in witnessing.

6. The enemy of the Gospel is Satan 2 Cor 4:3,4 (as the ruler of this world).

7. The attitude toward the Gospel:

   a. Rom 1:16, "I am not ashamed."

   b. Rom 1:20; 1 Cor 1:17; 9:16

The Doctrine of Salvation in the Old Testament - #2

(see page 667)

1. Positive volition existed in Old Testament times--God consciousness and Gospel hearing. Ex 33:7; Isa 55:6

2. The Gospel was clearly stated in Old Testament times. Isa 53:5,6 This passage has exactly the same boundaries that you find in 1 Cor 15:3. Dan 12:2,3 has the boundary of resurrection.

3. Jesus Christ was first revealed as Saviour at the time of man's fall. Gen 3:15 He is represented as the "Seed of the Woman."

4. Abraham was saved by faith in Christ and Abraham is the pattern of such salvation. Gen 15:6; Romans 4:1-5

   He didn't, by the way, invite Christ into his heart.

5. Job gave perfect testimony to salvation in Gospel form--death, burial and resurrection. Job 19:25,26 Boundaries of the GOSPEL

6. The citizens of Nineveh responded to the Gospel when Jonah preached to them. Matt 12:41; Luke 11:32

7. The Levitical offerings were designed to emphasize both propitiation and reconciliation. Leviticus chapters 1-3

8. The Tabernacle revealed the Gospel as found in Romans 3:25,26.

THE NIGHTS OF CHRISTMAS

I. The Night of the BIRTH: Luke 2

A. It was a night of Life and Death: Luke 2:7, 12.

B. It was a night of Good News: 2:8-11.

C. It was a night of Heavenly Worship: 2:13

D. It was a night of Potential Peace: 2:14

E. It was a night of Reverent Seeking: 2:15-17.

F. It was a night of Witnessing: 2:18, 20.

G. It was a night of Quiet Meditation: 2:19

II. The Night of the FLIGHT: Matthew 2:14 ff.

A. To Egypt

B. To Escape Death

III. The Night of the SORROW: Matthew 2:16-18

A. Turn to Jeremiah 31:15,16 THE DEATH MARCH

B. WHATEVER WE MAY FACE IN 197_ -- GOD'S PLAN IS GREATER, GREATER, GREATER!

Divine Essence Scriptures

1. Sovereign: Dan 4:35, "And all the inhabitants of the earth are reputed as nothing; and he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth, and none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What doest thou?"

2. Absolute righteousness: Psalm 145:17, "The Lord is righteous in all his ways, and holy in all his works."

3. Absolute justice: Deut 32:4, "He is the Rock, his work is perfect; for all his ways are judgment: a God of truth and without iniquity, just and right is he."

4. Love: Eph 2:4, "But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,"

5. Eternal Life: 1 Tim 1:17, "Now unto the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise God, be honour and glory for ever and ever. Amen."

6. Omnicient: 1 John 3:20, "For if our heart condemn us, God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things."

7. Omnipresent: Jer 23:24, "Can any hide himself in secret places that I shall not see him? saith the Lord. Do not I fill heaven and earth? saith the Lord."

8. Omnipotent: Rev 19:6, "And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth."

9. Immutable: Heb 13:8, "Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and today, and for ever."

10. Veracity: Psalm 33:4, "For the word of the Lord is right; and all his works are done in truth."